



3 1761 03593 5741

HANDBOUND
AT THE



84871
2

Englische Textbibliothek

Herausgegeben von

Dr. Johannes Hoops

o. Professor an der Universität Heidelberg

16

Geoffrey Chaucer's Canterbury Tales

Nach dem Ellesmere Manuscript

mit Lesarten, Anmerkungen und einem Glossar

herausgegeben

von

John Koch



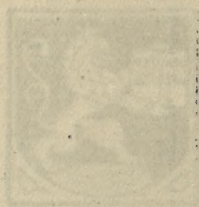
210427
18. 3. 27

Heidelberg 1915

Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung

Alle Rechte, besonders das Recht der Übersetzung in fremde Sprachen, werden
vorbehalten.

PR
1866
K6



Germany

Inhalt.

	Seite
I. Einleitung	I
II. Text und Lesarten	12
I. Fragment (A).	
1. The General Prologue	12
2. The Knyghtes Tale	27
3. The Milleres Tale	66
4. The Reues Tale	79
5. The Cokes Tale	88
II. Fragment (B 1).	
6. The Mannes Tale of Lawe	90
III. Fragment (D).	
7. The Wyues Tale of Bathe	112
8. The Freres Tale	135
9. The Somonours Tale	143
IV. Fragment (E).	
10. The Clerkes Tale	155
11. The Marchantes Tale	177
V. Fragment (F).	
12. The Squieres Tale	198
13. The Frankeleyns Tale	211
VI. Fragment (C).	
14. The Phisiciens Tale	229
15. The Pardoners Tale	234
VII. Fragment (B 2—7).	
16. The Shipmannes Tale	246
17. The Prioresses Tale	254
18. Chaucers Tale of Thopas	259
19. Chaucers Tale of Melibeus	262
20. The Monkes Tale	293
21. The Nonnes Preestes Tale	309
VIII. Fragment (G).	
22. The Seconde Nonnes Tale	321
23. The Chanouns Yemannes Tale	331
IX. Fragment (H—I).	
24. The Maunciples Tale	349
25. The Persouns Tale	357
III. Anhang (Längere lat. Rand- glossen)	414
IV. Glossar	419
Berichtigungen, etc.	474

Index

Page	Page
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48
49	49
50	50
51	51
52	52
53	53
54	54
55	55
56	56
57	57
58	58
59	59
60	60
61	61
62	62
63	63
64	64
65	65
66	66
67	67
68	68
69	69
70	70
71	71
72	72
73	73
74	74
75	75
76	76
77	77
78	78
79	79
80	80
81	81
82	82
83	83
84	84
85	85
86	86
87	87
88	88
89	89
90	90
91	91
92	92
93	93
94	94
95	95
96	96
97	97
98	98
99	99
100	100

I. Einleitung.

1. Überlieferung.

Wie beliebt die *Canterbury Tales*, das Hauptwerk Geoffrey Chaucers (geb. um 1340, gest. 1400), des größten englischen Dichters des Mittelalters und ersten Humoristen, war, beweist vor allem die Tatsache, daß noch über 60 Handschriften derselben, teils vollständig, teils nur Bruchstücke enthaltend, vorhanden sind, die zwar gruppenweise in gewissem verwandtschaftlichen Verhältnis miteinander stehen, von denen jedoch kaum eine als direkte Vorlage einer andern angesehen werden kann, so daß im 15. Jahrhundert, dem sie alle angehören, über 100 Exemplare verbreitet gewesen sein müssen. Und daß Chaucer auch in späterer Zeit sich einer steten Verehrung erfreut hat, geht aus den zahlreichen Drucken dieser Dichtung in Einzel- oder Gesamtausgaben seiner Werke hervor, von denen die von Caxton, Pynson und Wynkyn de Worde noch in demselben Jahrhundert entstanden, dem im 16. und 17. die von Thynne, Stowe und Speght, im 18. die von Urry, Tyrwhitt, Bell, im 19. die von Th. Wright, R. Morris u. a. folgten.*) Die eigentlich kritische Periode für die Erforschung des Textes und seine Erklärungen beginnt aber erst mit der Gründung der *Chaucer-Society* im Jahre 1868, deren unermüdlicher Leiter F. J. Furnivall († 1910) zunächst für einen diplomatisch genauen Abdruck der von ihm für die sechs besten gehaltenen Hss. der C.T. in dem sog. Six-Text sorgte. Die Lücken dieser füllte er aus verschiedenen andern Codices aus und fügte später noch zwei Einzeldrucke, 1885 das Harl. Ms. 7334, 1901 das Cambr. Ms. Dd. hinzu. Aber trotz dieser wertvollen Veröffentlichungen fühlte man doch, daß eine wirklich kritische Textausgabe nicht ausführbar sei, wenn man nicht auch die übrigen Mss., ob von früher her bekannt oder neuerdings entdeckt, in irgendeiner Weise dabei berücksichtigte. Dieser umfangreichen Aufgabe unterzog sich nun Jul. Zupitza seit dem Jahre 1891, und zwar wählte er die *Pardoner's Tale* zu diesem Zwecke, da gerade in dieser die schon bemerkten erheblichen Abweichungen einer Anzahl von Texten voneinander die beste Ausbeute versprachen. So beschaffte dann Furnivall die Abschriften der diesen Abschnitt enthaltenden alten Hss. und ältesten Drucke, die Z. in übersichtlicher Weise gruppierte.***) Doch war es diesem Gelehrten nicht vergönnt, sein begonnenes Werk zu Ende zu führen, dessen Vollendung nach seinem unerwartet frühen Tode dann mir übertragen wurde, worauf ich diese Untersuchungen noch dadurch zum Abschluß brachte, daß ich auch diejenigen Mss., welche nicht die *Pard. T.* enthielten, einer eingehenden Vergleichung mit den bereits publizierten unterzog, wozu mir der Text der *Clerk's Tale* diente.***)) Aber noch fehlte eine ebenso

*) Nähere Angaben s. in Eleanor Hammond's *Chaucer, A Bibliographical Manual*, New York 1908, S. 114 ff. u. 202 ff., ein Werk, das, trotz einzelner Mängel, als nützliches Nachschlagebuch zu empfehlen ist.

**) *Specimens of all accessible Mss. of the Pardoner's Prologue and Tale*; Chaucer Society, I. Series, LXXXI, LXXXV—LXXXVIII, XCI.

***)) Ebd. XCII—XCV, XCVII.

genaue Durchforschung des andern Teils der *C.T.*, die ich, ursprünglich im Auftrage der Ch.-Gesellschaft unternommen, erst kürzlich nach jahrelanger mühevoller Arbeit fertig gestellt habe.*) Freilich habe ich mich dabei auf jene bisher vollständig veröffentlichten acht Hss. des Six-Text und der beiden Einzeldrucke beschränkt, da die Heranziehung der übrigen ca. 55 Mss.**) einen Zeit- und Kostenaufwand verlangt hätte, den ein einzelner nie hätte bestreiten können. Überdies zeigen die bis jetzt erlangten Ergebnisse der Vergleichung, daß wir auch ohne einen solchen gewaltigen Apparat bezüglich der Herstellung eines kritischen Textes auf ziemlich festen Füßen stehen, da keine der sonst vorhandenen Hss., nach den erwähnten Proben zu urteilen, einen zuverlässigeren Text bietet als den, welchen die vollständig abgedruckten Codices enthalten, die außerdem noch Repräsentanten aller Hauptgruppen der verschiedenen Überlieferungen sind.

Demgemäß baut sich der Text der vorliegenden Ausgabe im wesentlichen auf folgenden Hss. auf, statt deren genaueren Beschreibung ich auf Furnivall's *Temporary Preface*, S. 44—85, und Miß *Hammond's Manual*, S. 150ff., der Kürze halber verweise:

Im Six-Text: 1. das *Ellesmere* Ms. (E.); 2. das *Hengwrt* Ms. (He.); 3. das Ms. Gg. 4.27 in der Universitätsbibliothek zu Cambridge (G.), 4. das Ms. im *Corpus Christi College* zu Oxford (C.); 5. das *Petworth* Ms. (P.); 6. das *Lansdowne* Ms. (L.); als Einzeldrucke: 7. das *Harleian* Ms. 7334 (H.⁴); 8. das Ms. Dd. 4.24 in der Universitätsbibliothek zu Cambridge (D.).

Von diesen sind, bis auf einzelne versehentliche oder willkürliche Auslassungen, wirklich vollständig erhalten nur E., P. und L., während alle übrigen durch Ausreißen mehrerer Blätter, besonders am Schlusse, mehr oder weniger verstümmelt sind, worüber sich nähere Angaben in den Lesarten vorfinden.

Zur Auffüllung dieser Lücken hat sich nun Furnivall verschiedener anderer Hss. bedient, von denen besonders die folgenden in Betracht kommen und daher gelegentlich in den Varianten zitiert werden: 9. das *Egerton* Ms. 2726 (Eg.), das für D. eintritt; 10. *Additional* Ms. 5140 (Ad.); 11. das Oxforder *Christ Church* Ms. 152 (Ch.); 12.—14. die *Harleian* Mss. 1758 (H.²), 7333 (H.³), 7335 (H.⁵); 15. das *Lichfield* Ms. (Li.); 16.—17. die *Royal* Mss. 17.D.xv (R.¹) und 18.C.II (R.²); 18. das *Selden* Ms. B. 14 (Se.); 20. das *Sloane* Ms. 1685 (Sl.).

Die hauptsächlichsten Ergebnisse der Vergleichung dieser Hss. sind nun, daß sie sich in zwei Typen spalten, **A** und **B** genannt, welche zusammen auf dieselbe verlorene, nicht mehr fehlerfreie Quelle zurückgehen, die direkt aus dem Original des Dichters geflossen sein mag. Zum **A**-Typus, der unzweifelhaft der bessere ist, gehören E., He., G., Eg., Ad., Ch., zum **B**-Typus, der häufigere Verderbnis zeigt, C., P., L., H.⁴, ², ³, ⁵, R.¹, ², Li., Se., Sl. Von diesen Hss. stehen zueinander in näherer Beziehung, d. h. vereinigen sich zu Gruppen und Untergruppen E. mit He., D. mit Eg., Ad. mit Ch.; C. mit L. und P.; ferner C. mit L. und H.³, P. wiederum mit H.², R.¹, ², Li., Sl., während G., H.⁴, Se. keine näheren Verwandten in den aufgezählten Hss. aufzuweisen haben. Die Erkenntnis dieser Verhältnisse wird freilich mitunter dadurch verdunkelt, daß einige Codices an gewissen Stellen die Lesarten einer andern Gruppe, als der, zu welcher sie in den Grundzügen gehören, angenommen haben, ja, daß bisweilen der Einfluß von mehr als einer weiteren Vorlage in ein und derselben Hs. ersichtlich ist; so finden wir solche Kontaminationen in He. mit der gemeinsamen Quelle von C.L.P., von C. und P. mit einer Hs. des A-Typus usw.

*) *A Detailed Comparison of the Eight Manuscripts of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales as completely printed in the Publications of the Chaucer-Society*. Heidelberg 1913.

**) S. hierüber auch meine Ausgabe von des *Pardoner's Prol. and Tale*, p. XXXIff.

Andererseits gibt es Fälle, die kaum anders erklärt werden können, als daß der Schreiber, so der von H.⁴, neben einer direkten Vorlage noch eine andere bessere Hs. benutzt hat, die jetzt verloren ist, oder daß ein späterer intelligenter Korrektor ihm unverständlich erscheinende oder seinem persönlichen Sprachgefühl widersprechende Stellen änderte, wobei er wohl mitunter das Richtige getroffen haben mag, aber gewiß ebenso oft fehlgriff. Weiter auf diese komplizierten Verhältnisse einzugehen, verbietet der mir zu Gebote stehende Raum, doch dürften diese kurzen Darlegungen zur Rechtfertigung meiner noch weiter zu erörternder Textbehandlung genügen.

Doch haben wir nicht nur die Verschiedenheiten der oft sehr voneinander abweichenden Lesarten in Betracht zu ziehen, sondern auch die Verschiedenheit in der Anordnung der einzelnen Fragmente der *Canterbury Tales*. Denn soviel steht unzweifelhaft fest, daß Chaucer dieses großartig angelegte Werk uns unvollendet zurückgelassen hat. Dies geht einmal daraus hervor, daß von den ursprünglich geplanten je vier Erzählungen für jeden der 30 Pilger (s. Gen. Prol. 792 ff.) im ganzen nur 24, davon zwei plötzlich abgebrochene (des Kochs und des Junkers), überliefert sind; ferner aus dem Fehlen von Bindegliedern zwischen gewissen Gruppen von Erzählungen, so daß diese im ganzen in neun unverknüpfte Fragmente zerfallen; dann aber auch aus einigen Widersprüchen im Inhalt (s. VV. 4516, 12924 ff., 16292 u. a.), die der Verfasser wohl beseitigt hätte, wenn er nicht vom Tode überrascht worden wäre. Jedenfalls sind keine Spuren von echten Fortsetzungen vorhanden, obwohl spätere Schriftsteller, darunter Lydgate, sich bemüht haben, solche unterzuschieben, ja, selbst von Kopisten elende Versuche gemacht worden sind, fehlende Verse durch ein eigenes Machwerk zu ersetzen.

Aus diesem Zustande der Dichtung folgt aber weiter, daß der Verfasser noch keinen Beschluß über die endgültige Anordnung aller der einzelnen Teile seines Werkes gefaßt hatte, zumal es noch galt, erhebliche Lücken zwischen den bereits zu Gruppen vereinigten Erzählungen auszufüllen. Es war daher ein verfehelter Schritt, den Furnivall tat, als er sich durch gelegentliche Hinweise der Pilger auf die an ihrem Wege gelegenen Ortschaften und die Tageszeiten bei der Fahrt bestimmen ließ, hiernach, wie auf Grund der Bezeichnung eines Erzählers in einer obskuren Hs., die Reihenfolge der Fragmente gegen alle Überlieferung umzugestalten (s. *Temporary Preface*, p. 9 ff., Chaucer Society, 2nd Ser., 3).

Nun ist die Anordnung der einzelnen Fragmente in den verschiedenen Hss. und Hss.-Gruppen allerdings keine einheitliche; doch wenigstens in den wichtigeren Hss. des A-Typus (bis auf He.) und großenteils auch in H.⁴ vom B-Typ dieselbe, nämlich: I. *General Prologue* (G.P.), *Knight* (Kn.), *Miller* (Mi.), *Reve* (R.), *Cook* (Co.); II. *Man of Law* (M.L.); III. *Wif of Bath* (W.B.), *Frere* (Fr.), *Somonour* (So.); IV. *Clerk* (Cl.); *Merchant* (Mer.); V. *Squier* (Sq.); *Frankeleyn* (Fra.); VI. *Phisicien* (Ph.); *Pardoner* (Pa.); VII. *Shipman* (Sh.), *Prioress* (Pr.); *Thopas* (Th.) & *Melibeus* (Mel.) — beide von Chaucer selbst vorgetragen —, *Monk* (Mo.), *Nonnes Preest* (N.P.); VIII. (in H.⁴ vor VI gestellt): *2nd Nun* (2 N.), *Chanon's Yeman* (Ch.Y.); IX. *Manciple* (Ma.), *Person* (Pe.). Von dieser Reihenfolge weichen nun die meisten Hss. des B-Typus so ab, daß sie Sq. und Mer. vermittelt eines wohl echten, doch schwerlich für diese Stelle bestimmten und augenscheinlich später verworfenen Prologs mit M.L. verknüpfen (s. hinter V. 5582) und VIII, ebenso wie H.⁴, vor VI bringen. He. wirft dagegen nach I. alles durcheinander (II. W.B., Fr., So.; III. Mo., N.P., M.L.; IV. Sq., Mer., Fra.; V. 2 N., Cl.; VI. Ph., Pa.; VII. Sh., Pr., Th., Mel.; VIII. Pe.), wobei Ch.Y. ganz ausfällt. Auch andere, hier nicht weiter zu besprechende Hss. zeigen eine ähnliche Verwirrung, doch stimmt keine im einzelnen mit He. überein, dessen Schreiber sich offenbar auch hier teils von einem Ms. des B-Typus beeinflussen ließ,

teils aber nach eigener Willkür verfuhr. Es ist daher Skeats Versuch*), diese Hs. als diejenige darzustellen, welche Chaucers ursprünglichen Plan am treuesten bewahrt habe, worauf in der weiteren Entwicklung die Gruppe C.L.P. usw. gefolgt sein soll, als mißlungen zu betrachten, da He. in seinen wesentlichen Zügen dem A-Typ angehört und nur stellenweise (z. B. in der Reihenfolge M.L., Sq., Mer.) eine Vorlage des B-Typs benutzt hat. Dagegen findet sich die bedeutsamste Eigentümlichkeit dieses, die Einfügung der von einem anderen, volksmäßigeren Verfasser herührenden Erzählung von Gamelyn hinter Gruppe I — deren Umarbeitung für den Yeman des Ritters Chaucer in Aussicht genommen zu haben scheint — nicht in He. vor.

Nach diesen Erwägungen wird man mir wohl zustimmen, daß ich in der Anordnung der Ellesmere-Hs. und ihrer Genossen (G., D., z. T. H.⁴) gefolgt bin**) und mich nicht, wie die neuern Herausgeber, dem Vorgange Furnivalls angeschlossen habe, der im Six-Text die obigen Fragmente folgendermaßen zusammenstellt und bezeichnet: I.: A; II. u. VII.: B; VI.: C; III.: D; IV.: E; V.: F; VIII.: G; IX, Ma.: H (aus unzureichendem Grunde vom folgenden getrennt); IX, Pe.: I. Ich habe somit dieselbe Bahn eingeschlagen, die der verdienstvollste Herausgeber des 18. Jahrh., Tyrwhitt, vorgezeichnet hat, wenn auch meine Verszählung, besonders infolge der Mitberechnung der Prosageschichten (von 13871—14671 und 18146 bis Ende) nicht genau mit der seinen übereinstimmt.***)

2. Entwicklung der C.T.

Die Reihenfolge der Erzählungen und ihre Verbindung zu Gruppen in den Hss. ist indessen nicht dasselbe wie die Reihenfolge ihrer Entstehung, mit der wir uns jetzt etwas beschäftigen wollen. Zu diesem Zwecke müssen wir uns nach einigen historischen Daten umsehen. Hierbei gehen wir am besten von Chaucers 'Legend of Good Women' (*L.G.W.*) aus, deren Prolog — hier gleichgültig, in welcher der beiden Redaktionen — füglich in das Jahr 1385 zu setzen ist. In der bekannten Stelle (V. 420 ff.) zählt der Dichter, um sich gegen die Vorwürfe des Liebesgottes zu verteidigen, der ihn wegen seiner Angriffe auf die Frauen in seiner Übertragung des Rosenromans und der Bearbeitung der Geschichte von *Troilus und Criseyde* tadelt, seine bis dahin entstandenen größeren Gedichte auf, in denen er den Preis der edlen Weiblichkeit gesungen habe. Darunter finden wir eins von *Palamon und Arcitas*, den Helden der späteren Erzählung des Ritters, und eins von der heiligen Cäcilie, deren Legende er nachmals die zweite Nonne erzählen läßt. Hieraus folgt einmal, daß Chaucer zu jener Zeit noch nicht mit der Verfassung seiner Canterbury-Geschichten beschäftigt war, und zweitens, daß er früher bearbeitete Stoffe später in diese Sammlung hinübernahm, den erstbezeichneten höchstwahrscheinlich†) nach Umformung einer ursprünglich strophischen Bearbeitung, den letzteren genau in der originellen Fassung. Daß aber die *L.G.W.* mit den *C.T.* in einem gewissen zeitlichen Zusammenhange stand, geht daraus hervor, daß der Dichter den Rechtsgelehrten (s. v. 4480 ff.) im Prolog zu seiner Erzählung nachdrücklich auf dieses Werk verweisen und ihn

*) S. dessen 'Evolution of the Canterbury Tales', 1903 (Ch.-Soc., 2. Ser. 38) und meine Rezension Engl. Stud. 41, S. 127 ff.

**) Vgl. ten Brink, *Gesch. d. engl. Lit.*, II, S. 155; auch Skeat ist neuerdings von der Richtigkeit eines solchen Verfahrens überzeugt worden; vgl. meine 'Comparison' etc., S. 5.

***) Doch ist neben der fortlaufenden Zählung auch die Furnivalls nach Fragmenten auf jeder Spalte notiert.

†) S. meine Besprechung von Tatlock's 'The Development and Chronology of Chaucer's Works' (1907) in Anglia, Beibl. XX, 131 ff.

«Legenden» aufzählen läßt, die er wohl geplant haben mochte, aber nachweislich nie ausgeführt hat. Mit dem genannten Datum stimmt ferner überein, daß der von unserm Autor gegen Ende der *Monk's Tale* (V. 15487 ff.)*) unter den Männern, deren tragischen Tod er beklagt, angeführte Barnabo Visconti im Dezember 1385 ermordet wurde: chronologisch das jüngste Ereignis in dieser Erzählung. Genauer läßt sich dann noch die Entstehung des Prologs der Frau von Bath dadurch bestimmen, daß wir im 'Geleit an Bukton', das 1396 anzusetzen ist, eine deutliche Anspielung hierauf finden, woraus allerdings nur zu folgern ist, daß dieses Stück damals bereits fertig war, doch nicht, um wieviel früher es geschrieben wurde. Weniger sicher, wenn auch keineswegs unwahrscheinlich, sind dann gelegentliche Anklänge an historische Ereignisse der Jahre 1387 und 1388 an verschiedenen Stellen der C.T. (V. 5065 ff., 8871 ff.**) , so daß wir also annehmen dürfen, daß Chaucer um diese Zeit bereits mit seinem größten Werke beschäftigt war, welches er, offenbar mit Unterbrechungen, bis zu seinem Tode fortführte. Auch mit seinen persönlichen Verhältnissen würde eine solche dichterische Tätigkeit sehr wohl im Einklang stehen, da er 1385 von den Lasten seines bisherigen Amtes befreit wurde und 1386 als 'Knight of the Shire', als Friedensrichter und Mitglied des Parlaments für Kent angeführt wird, woraus hervorgeht, daß er um diese Zeit seinen Wohnsitz in diese Grafschaft verlegt haben muß, von wo aus sich ihm am ehesten Gelegenheit bot, sich einer Pilgerfahrt nach Canterbury anzuschließen oder doch eine solche zu beobachten.

Schwieriger schon ist es, die Entstehungszeit der bisher noch nicht genannten § 8 Einzelerzählungen zu bestimmen. Jedenfalls müssen wir aber den G.P. und die mit ihm eng verbundenen vier Geschichten ziemlich an den Anfang der Bearbeitung der C.T. setzen, da der Dichter hier die später erzählenden Personen, trefflich charakterisiert, dem Leser vorstellt, doch bei der weiteren Ausführung seines Werkes in einigen Punkten (s. u. a. die erwähnte Zahl der in Aussicht genommenen Erzählungen) von den im Prolog gemachten Angaben abgewichen ist. Hier könnten uns die Berechnungen nach Chaucers astronomischen Andeutungen (s. V. 4425 und 18073 ff.) eine wertvolle Beihilfe zur genaueren Zeitbestimmung liefern, wenn die Beziehungen dieser nicht etwas zu unsicher wären, zumal wir nicht wissen, auf wieviel Tage der Verfasser sich die Wallfahrt ausgedehnt dachte, noch an welchem Tage die obigen Beobachtungen gemacht wurden. Denn während die Hss. E. und D. l. c. den 28. April bezeichnen, führt H.⁴ den 13., He. und die übrigen den 18. dieses Monats an.***) Nehmen wir das erstere Datum als das richtige an (wofür die Autorität jedoch nicht fest genug begründet ist), so würden wir zum Jahre 1393 gelangen, was entschieden zu spät ist; schenken wir dem 18. mehr Vertrauen, so kämen wir (wenn wir zweifelhaftere Berechnungsarten und die Ziffer 13 in H.⁴ als Schreibfehler außer acht lassen) auf das Jahr 1385, welches vielleicht etwas zu früh erscheinen möchte. Da auch die vorhin angegebenen Jahreszahlen nur ungefähre Anhaltspunkte bieten, müssen wir wohl darauf verzichten, zu einem feststehenden Datum der einzelnen Erzählungen oder Gruppen zu gelangen. Immerhin dürfte die Annahme, daß Chaucer in der Zeit von etwa 1386 an mit der Niederschrift des ersten Fragments beschäftigt war, auf keinen ernstlichen Widerspruch stoßen.

*) Hierhin gehören nach meiner Auffassung (s. E. Stud. 41, 135) die sog. 'Modern Instances', wo sie die Hss. des A-Typs als späteren Zusatz des Dichters bringen, während sie im B-Typ durch Zufall in die Mitte geraten sind.

**) S. ten Brink, l. c., S. 127 u. 162.

***) S. meine 'Chronology of Ch.'s Writings', Ch.-Soc., 2nd, Ser. 27, S. 48 ff.; doch halte ich meine dortigen Aufstellungen nur noch teilweise aufrecht.

9. In bezug auf einige der andern Stücke stehen wir insofern auf festerem Boden, als mehr oder weniger wörtliche Übereinstimmungen oder Anspielungen einen sicherern Schluß auf die Priorität unter ihnen gewähren. So ersehen wir aus der Benutzung gewisser Stellen aus dem *Melibeus**), der eine ziemlich genaue Übersetzung einer franz. Übertragung des '*Liber consolationis* etc.' von Albertanus Brixiensis (1246) ist, im *Mer.*, daß dieser Prosatraktat, der ursprünglich vielleicht für den Rechtsgelehrten (s. V. 4516) bestimmt war, vor der Erzählung des Kaufmanns fertig sein mußte. Ebenso mußte *Pe.*, die auf einer Zusammenschweißung zweier theologischen Abhandlungen in lat. Sprache beruht**), vor derselben Geschichte, wie vor *Ph.*, *Pa.*, *W.B.*, *So.* und vielleicht noch andern Stücken, vollendet sein, da die in diesen sich vorfindenden Anklänge an die Erzählung des Pfarrers offenbar von dieser, nicht umgekehrt, ausgehen. Da ferner *Mer.* auf *W.B.* verweist, und *Sh.* ursprünglich wohl der Frau von Bath zugeordnet war (V. 12924 ff.), so scheinen alle diese Stücke in einem gewissen Zusammenhange zu stehen, d. h. die Zeiten ihrer Abfassung dürfen nicht weit voneinander liegen und müßten mit dem schon erwähnten Jahre 1396 ihre äußerste Grenze finden.

Da sich behufs Datierung der übrigen Erzählungen nur Vermutungen aufstellen lassen, will ich mit einem Verweise auf ten Brinks Literaturgeschichte und auf Tatlocks schon zitierte Schrift (*Development* etc.), die manches Anregende in dieser Hinsicht bietet, über alle weiteren Einzelheiten hinweggehen***), und nur noch den Versuchen ten Brinks und Skeats gegenüber, die Geschichten von der frommen Konstanze (*M.L.*) und der geduldigen Griseldis (*Cl.*), wie auch die «Tragödien» des Mönchs (*Mo.*) in eine weit frühere Periode des dichterischen Schaffens Chaucers zu verlegen, nochmals hervorheben, daß wenn irgendeine dieser vor dem Prolog zur *L.G.W.* entstanden wäre, der Dichter schwerlich vergessen hätte, sie unter seinen dort aufgezählten Werken anzuführen, zumal besonders die beiden ersten wesentlich dazu gedient haben würden, den Zorn des Liebesgottes zu besänftigen.

10. Was den Grundgedanken zum Rahmen seiner Canterbury-Geschichten betrifft, so liegt es nahe genug, Boccaccios *Decamerone* als Vorbild Chaucers anzunehmen, da dieser ja andere Werke des Italieners (*Teseide*, *Filostrato* u. a.) als Quellen seiner eigenen Dichtungen ausgiebig benutzt hat. Indes ist eine bewußte Anlehnung dieser Art nicht streng nachweisbar, da Chaucer selbst in den Stücken, wo er ähnliche Stoffe wie Boccaccio behandelt, weder in der Darstellung noch irgendwo im Wortlaut mit diesem genau übereinstimmt (über Griselda s. u.), und die Ähnlichkeiten beider mehr in nebensächlichen Zügen bestehen, die sehr wohl auf der Benutzung derselben Quellen beruhen können. Höchstens wäre eine oberflächliche Bekanntheit des englischen Dichters mit dem *Decamerone* zuzugestehen†); denn eine eingehende Lektüre desselben hätte gewiß greifbarere Spuren hinterlassen. Und warum sollte nicht — da wir den Einfluß anderer in dieser Weise zusammengeführten Werke des Mittelalters ebensowenig strikte belegen können††) — ohne solche äußere Einwirkung Chaucer ein eigenes Erlebnis, eine Pilgerfahrt, auf den Gedanken gebracht haben, von ihm schon verarbeitete oder gesammelte Erzählungsstoffe in einen gemeinsamen Rahmen

*) S. E. Koepfel, Archiv 86, S. 29 ff.; 87, S. 33 ff.

**) S. Kate D. Petersen, *The Sources of the Parson's Tale*, Boston 1901. (Raymund de Pennaforte's *Summa casuum poenitencie*, III; Guil. Peraldus' *Tractatus de viciis*.)

***). Bezüglich einer mutmaßlichen Einwirkung persönlicher Lebensumstände — Verlust seiner Ämter usw. — auf seine dichterische Tätigkeit, s. Kirk, *Life-Records*, IV, XXXV ff. und meine *Chronology*, S. 68 f.

†) S. L. Morsbach, Engl. Stud. 42, 53 ff.; R. Root, ebd. 44, 1 ff.

††) S. *Essays on Chaucer*, Ch.-S., 2nd Ser. 18, S. 414 ff. u. Hammond, l. c. S. 150 ff.

zu fassen? Sind nicht auch die treffend charakterisierten Gestalten der Pilger, die zahlreichen, der Wirklichkeit abgelauschten, zum Teil realistisch derben Züge seiner Darstellungsart, das Gesamtbild des echt englischen Lebens und Denkens im Mittelalter seine eigene Schöpfung?

3. Quellen der C.T.

Diese will ich nur kurz, soweit wie bisher bekannt, namhaft machen und es § 11. dem wißbegierigen Leser überlassen, weitere Belehrung in Miß Hammonds 'Manual' zu suchen. Nur von verhältnismäßig wenigen Stücken ist uns die direkte Vorlage Chaucers bekannt; so ist die *Kn.T.*, eine freie Bearbeitung von Boccaccios 'Teseide', dessen lat. Werke: 'De casibus virorum et feminarum illustrium' und 'De claris mulieribus' neben Boethius' 'De consolazione philosophiae' und Dantes 'Inferno' er für die Erzählung des Mönches benutzt hat. Im *M.L.* folgte er hauptsächlich der franz. Chronik des Nic. Trivet, in *Cl. Petrarca's* lat. Übersetzung von Boccaccios Novelle von *Griselda* (Decam. X, 10), in *Ph.*, trotz seiner Berufung auf Livius, mehr der Darstellung der Virginiafabel im *Roman de la Rose* und vielleicht auch J. Gowers in der *Confessio Amantis*. In der Legende von der heiligen Cäcilie (2nd Nun) war im wesentlichen Jacobus a Voragine sein Vorbild, in *Ma.* meist Ovid, doch wohl auch Gower. Die Quellen der beiden Prosaerzählungen sind vorhin schon zitiert; bezüglich der des Pfarrers will ich nur noch bemerken, daß die von einigen angezweifelte Echtheit dieser nach neueren Untersuchungen*) endgültig erwiesen ist; nur dürfte die 'Retractatio' ein späteres Einschleusen von anderer Hand sein.

Von den übrigen Stücken kennen wir zwar nicht Chaucers unmittelbare Vorlage, wohl aber mehr oder weniger Analoga, die zum Teil orientalischen Ursprungs sind und allmählich in verschiedene Sprachen Europas übertragen wurden.**). Dies ist der Fall bei den Erzählungen des Kaufmanns, des Junkers, des Freisassen, des Ablaßkrämers, denen Redaktionen in Gestalt franz. Fabliaux oder lat. Versionen unserm Dichter am nächsten stehen dürften. Franz. Fabliaux liegen auch den Schwänken des Müllers, des Verwalters und des Seemanns zugrunde, während die Erzählung der Frau von Bath in letzter Linie auf irische Märchen zurückgeht, und die des Bettelmönchs und Büttels, wie auch die des Dienstmanns des Kanonikus mehr auf mündlicher Überlieferung zu beruhen scheinen. Die von der Äbtissin vorgetragene Wundergeschichte gehört in den umfangreichen Kreis der Marienlegenden, deren Zweig von dem von Juden ermordeten Knäblein gleichfalls weit verbreitet war. In der Travestie von Sir Thopas finden sich Anklänge an verschiedene megl. Romanzen, und in der Erzählung des Nonnenpriesters erkennen wir leicht ein Moment aus der Tiersage, dessen erhebliche Erweiterung allerdings Chaucers eigenes Werk ist, wie auch bei den übrigen Stücken die volkstümliche Einkleidung und Lokalisierung, öfters die geschickte Motivierung und besonders die Detailmalerei ihm als Verdienst angerechnet werden müssen. Freilich ist er auch für die nach unserm Geschmack etwas zu langatmigen gelehrten Exkurse und moralisierenden Betrachtungen verantwortlich, für die er nachweislich verschiedene lat. Autoren des Mittelalters, wie auch Sentenzensammlungen aus klassischer Zeit benutzt hat. Vor allem nennen wir hier Innozenz III., dessen Traktat 'De contemptu mundi' Chaucer nach eigener Angabe in der A-Redaktion des Prologs zur

*) H. Spies, 'Ch.'s religiöse Grundstimmung und die Echtheit der Parson's Tale' in 'Studien zur engl. Philologie' (Halle 1913).

**) Als besonders eifrige Forscher auf diesem Gebiete seien W. Clouston, H. Varnhagen und E. Koepfel namhaft gemacht.

L.G.W. übersetzt hat, und aus dem wir Zitate an verschiedenen Stellen wiederfinden (so in *M.L.*, *W.B. Prol.*, *Pa.*); ferner des Hieronymus Abhandlung *Adversus (Contra) Jovinianum* (s. *W.B. Prol.*, *Fra.*) und erinnern nochmals an die schon genannten Albertanus Brixiensis, Boethius, den franz. Rosenroman und Dante, wie er auch häufig, doch meist wohl indirekt, die Bibel zu Rate gezogen hat, müssen jedoch darauf verzichten, an dieser Stelle diejenigen Schriftsteller vollständig anzuführen (s. Glossar und Fußnoten), denen er nur einzelne Sätze oder Sprüche entlehnt hat, und von denen er manchen (wie Juvenal, Sueton) erst aus zweiter Hand (einem 'Florilegium') oder aus seiner direkten Quelle (so im Melibeus, wo u. a. öfters Catos Distichen und des Pseudo-Seneca Sentenzen zitiert werden) kennen gelernt haben wird. Ebensowenig sind die wiederholten Verweise auf verschiedene Kirchenväter in des Pfarrers Erzählung als Früchte der eigenen Belesenheit des Dichters anzusehen.

4. Ausgaben der C.T.

13. Nach der Aufzählung der wichtigsten älteren Ausgaben von Chaucers Werken, insbesondere der *C.T.*, am Eingange dieser Einleitung, erübrigt es noch, sich mit denjenigen zu beschäftigen, welche die umfangreichen Veröffentlichungen der Ch.-Soc. an Texten und exegetischem Material sich zunutze machen konnten. Von diesen können auf einen eigenen, mehr wissenschaftlichen Wert nur die vollständigen Ausgaben von W. W. Skeat*) und von W. Pollard in seinem Beitrage zur Globe-Edition**), wie die Ausgaben einzelner Teile von E. Mätzner, ten Brink, J. Zupitza und von mir Anspruch***), während die sonst erschienenen Editionen einfache Textabdrücke früherer sind oder nur gewisse Abschnitte, meist für die Zwecke engl. und amerik. Schulen bearbeitet, enthalten. Der bereits genannte Tyrwhitt (1775—1778; = Tw.) hatte seinem Texte zuerst Hss. des A-Typus zugrunde gelegt, wohingegen Th. Wright (Lond. 1847—1851; = Wr.) und R. Morris (Aldine Poets, Lond. 1866; = M.) dem Harl. Ms. 7334 (H.4) einen unverdienten Vorzug einräumten.†) Es war daher von Wichtigkeit, daß sowohl Skeat wie Pollard zu der Anschauung Tyrwhitts zurückkehrten und als relativ beste Handschrift Ellesmere (*E.*) wählten, die dem gleichen Typ, wie wir gesehen haben, angehört. Aber statt sich ein klares Bild vom Verhältnis der übrigen Hss. zu dieser und untereinander zu machen, sind beide mehrfach von der Lesart des *E.*-Ms. abgewichen, um diejenige bald dieses, bald jenes Codex oder einer andern Hss.-Gruppe an deren Stelle zu setzen. Es ist freilich nicht zu leugnen, daß *E.* öfters offenbare Fehler des Kopisten zeigt und auch sonst nicht durchaus zuverlässig ist, aber dann hätten die Fälle, wo Korrekturen nötig erschienen, genau vermerkt werden müssen, was aber in der Globe-Edition und in Skeats kleinerer Ausgabe (bisweilen auch in der größeren zu vermissen) nur hie und da einmal geschehen ist; andererseits haben diese Herausgeber mitunter auch dort geändert, wo kein wirklicher Zwang vorlag. Dazu kommt noch, daß Skeat eine willkürlich normalisierte Schreibweise eingeführt hat, die keinem der vorhandenen Mss. genau entspricht, so daß sein Text ein ganz schiefes Bild von der Überlieferung bietet. Pollard gibt die Orthographie von *E.* zwar sorgfältig wieder, doch ist auch sein Abdruck nicht überall streng diplomatisch und in grammatischer Hinsicht nicht immer korrekt.

*) Oxford 1894, 6 Bde.; von demselben: *Student's Chaucer*, 1895 u. ö.

**) London 1898 u. ö.; s. meine Rezensionen Archiv 102, 410 ff. u. E. St. 27, 17 ff.

***) S. Mätzners Altengl. Sprachproben (*Wife of Bath, Melibeus*), Berl. 1867—69; Ausgaben des Prologs von ten Brink, Marb. 1874, von Zupitza, Berl. 1882, und meine schon zitierte Ausgabe des *Pardoner*.

†) In neuerer Zeit (1909) hat Skeat sich bemüht, darzutun, daß diese Hs. eine vom Dichter revidierte Redaktion repräsentiere; vgl. jedoch Anglia, Bbl. XXII, S. 266 ff. und Tatlocks Gegenschift, ebd.

Demgemäß lag ein wirkliches Bedürfnis vor, eine handliche Ausgabe herzustellen, § 14. welche die Anforderungen einer gewissenhaften Textkritik besser befriedigt, die ich nach jahrelangen Vorstudien im vorliegenden Werke zu liefern bemüht gewesen bin. Aber wenn ich hiermit den Studierenden der neueren Sprachen, denen meine Arbeit vorzugsweise zugehört ist, auch eine willkommene Gabe zu bieten hoffe, darf ich nicht vergessen hervorzuheben, daß ich in Wort- und Sacherklärungen (s. Glossar) meinen Vorgängern, namentlich dem in der Exegese vortrefflichen Skeat, mancherlei Belehrung verdanke, wie diese selbst viel nützliches Material früheren Editoren entlehnt haben. In einigen Fällen, die der Fachmann leicht erkennen wird, bin ich jedoch in der Lage gewesen, neuere Forschung für meinen Text und meine Worterklärungen verwerten zu können; für diejenigen Stellen, an denen ich aus eigener Ansicht gebessert habe, werde ich mich jedoch in den Englischen Studien zu rechtfertigen suchen, da mir hier dazu der Raum gebreicht.

5. Einrichtung der vorliegenden Ausgabe der C.T.

Aus dem bisher Gesagten gehen diejenigen Grundsätze hervor, welche mich bei § 15. der Herstellung meiner Ausgabe geleitet haben. Wenn ich nun aber auch bestrebt war, den Text der Ellesmere-Hs., die am vollständigsten erhalten ist und die Sprache und Schreibweise Chaucers (außer dem mehrfach kontaminierten Hengwrt-Ms.) am getreuesten wiederzugeben scheint, bis auf alle Einzelheiten genau nach dem von Furnivall im Six-Text veröffentlichten Abdruck*) zu reproduzieren, so mußte ich freilich öfters von diesem Grundsatz abweichen, doch nie, ohne jede Änderung als solche gekennzeichnet zu haben. Im wesentlichen habe ich jedoch nur da eingegriffen, wo der Sinn der Stelle, Grammatik oder Versbau**) eine Korrektur mir unbedingt erforderlich zu machen schienen, doch dann die hinzugefügten oder veränderten Wörter und Buchstaben durch *kursiven* Druck hervorgehoben, die zu streichenden durch eckige Klammern [] eingeschlossen, über beides aber in den Varianten kurze Rechenschaft abgelegt, so daß derjenige, nach dessen Ansicht ich hierin zu weit gegangen oder zu vorsichtig gewesen sein sollte, leicht imstande sein wird, das nach seinem Ermessen Richtigere an die Stelle zu setzen. Doch will ich noch bemerken, daß, wenn ich gelegentlich die Lesart geringerer Hss. aufgenommen habe, ich mir stets bewußt war, daß diese nur dort als autoritativ gelten können, wo sie offenbare Versehen der besseren (z. B. Fortlassung eines End-*e*) vermeiden oder — absichtlich oder zufällig — überzeugend korrigieren; in zweifelhafteren Fällen habe ich diese Lesarten jedoch nur als Notbehelf betrachtet, um die betr. Stelle wenigstens annähernd so herzustellen, wie sie im Originale gelaute haben dürfte.

Bezüglich der Orthographie der Hs. lag es wohl nahe, eine gleichmäßigere § 16. Schreibweise einzuführen; doch habe ich davon Abstand genommen, da der hierdurch bedingte häufige Typenwechsel den Text zu buntscheckig gestaltet hätte, oder die Verwendung zahlreicher Notizen in den Lesarten, deren Beschränkung mir auferlegt war, notwendig geworden wäre. Ich habe mich daher damit begnügt, das Original nur dort zu ändern, wo es mir für die Lesbarkeit und das Verständnis meines Textes unerlässlich oder förderlich schien; d. h. ich habe die Verwendung großer und kleiner Anfangsbuchstaben nach jetzigem Brauche geregelt, doch durch *kursive* Schrift das Ursprüngliche kenntlich gemacht; z. B. bedeutet *m* am Anfang des Wortes, daß die Hs. hier *M* hat, *M*, daß hier *m* steht; nur bei den sehr häufig vorkommenden *God*

*) Flügel's Korrekturen nach erneuter Kollation sind stillschweigend berücksichtigt.

**) Ich folge hierin im wesentlichen den Brinks 'Chaucer's Sprache und Verskunst' (dessen Grundzüge ich bei jedem Benutzer meines Buches als bekannt voraussetze), lasse jedoch gelegentliches Fehlen des Auftaktes zu.

und *Crist* habe ich dies unterlassen. Ferner habe ich die moderne Interpunktion nach englischen Grundsätzen — wie es mich für einen englischen Autor angemessen dünkte — eingeführt, denn die Lesezeichen der Hs. — meist Schrägstriche, welche im Verse vielleicht die Zäsur andeuten sollten, mitunter gegen Ende häufiger werdende Punkte, seltener eine Art von Fragezeichen — sind zu unregelmäßig und teils offenbar falsch verwendet, so daß sie die Lektüre des Textes eher erschwert als gefördert hätten. Doch habe ich an zwei längeren Stellen (Cook's T. V. 4323—420, u. Pers. T. 19250ff.) wenigstens eine Probe des Gebrauchs dieser Zeichen liefern wollen. Dagegen habe ich die §-Zeichen (§) als charakteristisch beibehalten und die Bindestriche des Druckes der Deutlichkeit halber vermehrt.

17. Bedenklicher war es aber zu entscheiden, welches Verfahren mit den Querstrichen und Häkchen an den Endkonsonanten in Furnivalls Text am besten einzuschlagen sei; mitunter bezeichnen sie wohl ein schwaches End-*e*, wie auch die dort kursiv gesetzten *-e* an dieser Stelle eines Wortes, meist sind es aber gewiß bloße Schriftverzerrungen. Ich habe nun diese so angedeuteten *e* aufgenommen, wo sie grammatisch oder etymologisch gerechtfertigt sind, in zweifelhaften Fällen (z. B. *hir* als Pron. poss. Sing., *hire* als Pron. pers., mitunter poss. Plur.) in runde Klammern gesetzt, sonst jedoch unberücksichtigt gelassen; das deutlich ausgeschriebene *-e* aber eckig umklammert, wo es absolut falsch war, also nicht geändert, wo seine Verwendung möglich erscheint; z. B. in den Endungen *-yng* und *-ynge*, die der Dichter selbst, wie Reime lehren, nicht streng scheidet. Den Strich über *n* nach vorangehendem *a* oder *o* habe ich, dem sonstigen Gebrauch der Hs. gemäß, durch kursives *u* wiedergegeben (*-oun*, *-aunt*).

18. Was die Randglossen in E., öfters auch in He. D., seltener in andern Hss. betrifft, so mußten die längeren lateinischen Zitate — besonders in *M.L.*, *W.B. Prol.*, *Cl.*, *Mer.* und *Pa.* — in einen Anhang verwiesen werden, da sich ihrer Wiedergabe an der eigentlichen (mit einem †) markierten Stelle technische Schwierigkeiten in den Weg stellten. Kürzere Noten haben unter dem Texte ihren Platz gefunden. Die Glossen in den Prosastücken konnten eher wegb bleiben, da sie nur die Namen der sprechenden Personen (im *Mel.*) oder der zitierten Autoritäten und (in *Pers. T.*) Hinweise auf den Inhalt bieten. Da aber diese zur Übersichtlichkeit des Zusammenhanges in jenen langen Erzählungen einiges beitragen, habe ich die Namen oder Worte, welche die unterdrückten Randnoten enthalten, im Texte durch gesperrten Druck hervorgehoben, obwohl diese nicht immer buchstäblich übereinstimmen; z. B. am Rande: *nota secundum Gregorium*, im Texte: *seint Gregorie* usw.

19. Habe ich auf diese Weise gesucht, alle Eigenheiten des E.-Ms. möglichst festzuhalten, so verbot doch der vereinbarte Umfang meines Buches eine gleiche Ausführlichkeit bei den andern Hss. Ich habe mich deshalb darauf beschränkt, von den letzteren nur diejenigen Lesarten zu notieren, welche offenbare Fehler in E. korrigieren oder sonst bei unsicheren Varianten in Betracht kommen können. Doch habe ich auch in Parenthesen die Fälle vermerkt, wo die neueren Herausgeber (Sk. = Skeat, Gl. = Pollard i. d. Globe-Ed.) den E.-Text verlassen, fragliche Lesarten der minderwertigen Codices bevorzugt oder eigene Korrekturen vorgenommen haben. Mögen sie auf diesem Wege in manchen Fällen dem Originale näher gelangt sein, so entbehrt ein solches Verfahren doch der sichern Grundlage. Hoffentlich gelingt es indessen späterer Forschung, dergleichen zweifelhafte Punkte aufzuklären, doch wohl nur, wenn ihr noch mehr kritisch gesichtete Texte, wie der folgende es zu sein erstrebt, zu Gebote stehen werden.

20. Um meine Auffassung des Chaucerschen Verses in den C.T., der die Gleichmäßigkeit der romanischen Metrik nachahmt und keine doppelte Senkung oder das

Fehlen einer solchen zuläßt, deutlicher zum Ausdruck zu bringen und Ungeübten das Lesen dieser Verse zu erleichtern, habe ich unter die von mir als metrisch verstummend angesehenen Buchstaben, meist das tonlose *-e* im Auslaut oder bei mehrsilbigen in unbetonter Mittelsilbe, doch auch unter andere Laute, so unter *o* in *to* vor Vokalen, einen Punkt gesetzt (*-ę, tō, nę, thę*, z. B. V. 12, 110, 927), indes nicht in den Fällen, wo dieses Verstummen die Regel ist, d. h. vor anlautendem Vokal und *h*, noch in häufiger wiederkehrenden Adjektiven, Adverbien und Pronominibus (*owene, euene, euere, neuęre, euery, oure, youre, hise, thisę* usw.).*) Dagegen habe ich den Punkt über dem *e* verwandt, wo dieses in der bezeichneten Stellung — besonders da, wo der gelegentlich in der Verspause eintretende Hiatus sich nicht vermeiden läßt — ausnahmsweise lauten muß (*-ė*, z. B. V. 219, 298, 1078). Verschleifungen, meist von unbetontem *-y* oder *-ie* (z. B. V. 130), doch auch *-u* (V. 975), sind durch einen Bogen angedeutet (z. B. *many[^]a*), Verse mit fehlendem Auftakt durch einen Akzent auf der ersten Silbe (z. B. V. 131). — Tilgt man dann noch die von mir eckig eingeklammerten unfesten *-n* bei Infinitiven und Partizipien und hie und da ein überflüssiges Formwort (z. B. V. 140, 180, 260), so bleiben verhältnismäßig nur wenige Fälle übrig, wo gegen die Gesamtüberlieferung eine Änderung vorgenommen werden müßte, die gewöhnlich nahe genug liegt, doch, wenn sie zweifelhaft ist, nur in den Noten unter dem Texte vorgeschlagen wird.

Der Raumersparnis wegen habe ich den Texterläuterungen keinen besonderen § 21. Abschnitt gewidmet, sondern dieselben, an die betreffenden Ausdrücke oder Namen anschließend, in knappster Form in das Glossar verwiesen. Aus demselben Grunde habe ich dort alle Wörter fortgelassen, welche jeder Studierende nach seinen Vorkenntnissen des Englischen oder im Notfalle mit Hilfe eines beliebigen Lexikons selbst übertragen kann, und habe weder etymologische Notizen, noch bei der Angabe der verschiedenen Bedeutungen Stellenverweise hinzugesetzt, doch statt letzterer bei mehrdeutigen Ausdrücken die deutsche Entsprechung dem jedesmaligen Vorkommen dieser anzupassen gesucht, wobei mir Hertzbergs Übersetzung der Canterbury-Geschichten, weniger die v. Dührings, mitunter gute Dienste geleistet hat.

Möge das so eingerichtete Werk seinen Zweck erreichen und bei den Fachgenossen eine wohlwollende Aufnahme finden!

J. K.

*) Bei unbetontem *-e* mit folgender Liquida ist Umstellung anzunehmen; z. B. V. 400 *watre he*; umgekehrt nach Muta cum liquida, wo dieses *-e* vor Vokal lauten soll; z. B. V. 60 *nobel* statt *noble*. Einsilbige Geltung von *euer* und *neuer* (= (n)ēr?) s. z. B. V. 734.

II. Text und Lesarten.

Abkürzungen: **A.A.:** Anelida and Arcite; **Ad.:** Ms. Additional; **B.D.:** Book of the Duchesse; **Boeth.:** Boethius, De consolatione [**met.:** metrum; **pr.:** prosa]; **C.:** Corpus Ms.; **Ch.:** Christ Church Ms.; **D.:** Ms. Dd. 4.24 (Cambr.); **E.:** Ellesmere Ms.; **Edd.:** Herausgeber; **Eg.:** Egerton Ms.; **etc.:** die übrigen Handschriften; **f.:** fehlt, fehlen; **G.:** Ms. Gg. 4.27 (Cambr.); **Gl.:** Globe Edition; **H.²:** Harleian Ms. 1758, **H.³:** 7333, **H.⁴:** 7334; **He.:** Hengwrt Ms.; **H.F.:** Hous of Fame; **Hff.:** Handschriften; **id.:** ebenso; **L.:** Lansdowne Ms.; **I.:** Iles; **Lau.:** Laud Ms.; **L.G.W.:** Legend of Good Women; **Li.:** Lichfield Ms.; **M.:** Morris; **ü.:** öfter; **P.:** Petworth Ms.; **P.F.:** Parlement of Fowles; **Ro.:** Royal Ms.; **R.Rose:** Roman de la Rose; **Se.:** Selden Ms.; **Sk.:** Skeat; **Sl.:** Sloane Ms.; **Spr.:** Sprüche Salamons; **t.Br.:** ten Brink; **Tw.:** Tyrwhitt; [**über:** Interlinearglosse; **verb.:** verberbt; **Wr.:** Wright.

Die eckige Klammer in den Fußnoten schließt im Text fortzulassende Wörter oder Buchstaben, mitunter kurze Erklärungen ein.

I. Fragment (A).

1. The General Prologue.*)

Whan that Aprille with hise shoures
soote
The droghte of March hath perced to
the roote,
And bathed euery veyne in swich li-
cour,
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;
5 Whan Zephirus eek with his swete
breeth
Inspired hath in euery holt and heeth
The tendre croppes, and the yonge
sonne
Hath in the Ram his halfe cours yronne,
And smale fowles maken melodye,
10 That slepen al the nyght with open [e]yē
(So priketh hem nature in hir corages):
Thanne longen folk to goon on pil-
grimages,
And palmeres, for to seken straunge
strondes,

To ferne halwes, kowthe in sondry
londes;
And specially from euery shires ende
Of Engelond to Caunturbury they
wende,
The hooly blisful martir for to seke,
That hem hath holpen whan þat they
werē seeke.
Bifil that in that seson on a day,
In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay,
Redy to wenden on my pilgrymage
To Caunterbury with ful deuout corage,
At nyght werē come in to that hostelrye
Wel nyne and twenty in a compaignye
Of sondry folk, by aventure y-falle
In felaweshipe, and pilgrimes werē they
alle,
That toward Caunterbury wolden ryde.
The chambres and the stables weren
wyde,
And wel we weren esed atte beste,
And shortly, whan the sonne was to
reste,

*) Here bygynneth (the) Book of the tales of Caunterbury He., H.², Incipit prologus fabularum Cantuariensium L., Here b. the prolog of this book, etc. Se., f. E., etc. — 1—36 H.² für G., 1—72 Se. für C., 1—252 Eg. für D. — 8. halfe H.²P.(?) (Sk., Gl.), half E., etc.; [Randnote]: i. sol in Ariete E. 10. Iye He., yhe L, H.⁴, u. fo ü. 16. Spr. Caunterburgh? Ebenso 22. 23. were E., was Hen., etc. (Sk.).

So hadde I spoken with hem euerychon
 That I was of hir felaweshipe anon,
 And made forward erly for to ryse,
 To take oure wey ther-as I yow deuysen.
 35 But nathelees, whil I hauē tyme and
 space,
 Er that I ferther in this tale pace,
 Me thynketh it acordaunt to resoun
 Of ech of hem, so as it semed me,
 40 And whiche they weren, and of what
 degree,
 And eek in what array that they were
 inne,
 And at a knyght than wol I first bi-
 gynne.
 A knyght ther was, and that a worthy
 man, [¶ Knyght
 That fro the tyme that he first bigan
 45 To riden out, he loued chivalrie,
 Trouthe and honour, fredom and cur-
 teisie;
 fful worthy was he in his lordes werre,
 And therto hadde he riden, no man
 ferre,
 As wel in Cristendom as in Hethenesse,
 50 And euere honoured for his worthy-
 nesse.
 ¶ At Alisaundre he was whan it was
 wonne;
 fful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bi-
 gonne
 Abouen alle nacions in Puce,
 In Lettow hadde he reysed and in
 Ruce,
 55 No cristen man so ofte of his degree.
 In Gernade at the seege eek hadde
 he be
 Of Algezir, and ride[n] in Belmarye;
 At Lyeys was he and at Satalye,
 Whan they werē wonne, and in the
 grete See.
 60 At many a noblē armee hadde he be;
 At mortal bataillēs hadde he been fif-
 tene,

And foughten for oure feith at Tra-
 myssene
 In lystes thries, and ay slayn his foo.
 This ilke worthy knyght hadde been also
 Somtyme with the lord of Palatye 65
 Agayn another hethen in Turkye,
 And eueremoore he hadde a souereyn
 prys.
 And though þat he werē worthy, he
 was wys,
 And of his port as meeke as is a mayde.
 He neuere yet no vileynyē ne sayde 70
 In al his lyf, vn-to no maner wight,
 He was a verray parfit, gentil knyght.
 ¶ But for to tellen yow of his array,
 His hors werē[n] goode, but he was
 nat gay;
 Of fustian he wered a gypon, 75
 A l bismotēred with his habergeon,
 ffor he was late ycomē from his viage,
 And wente for to doon his pilgrymage.
 With hym ther was his sone, a yong
 Squier, [¶ Squier
 A louyere and a lusty bacheler, 80
 With lokkes crulle, as they werē leyd
 in presse.
 Of twenty yeer of age he was, I gesse;
 Of his stature he was of euene lengthe,
 And wonderly delyuēre and of greet
 strengthe,
 And he hadde been somtyme in chy- 85
 uachie
 In fflaundres, in Artoys, and Pycardie,
 And born him weel, as of so litel space,
 In hope to stonden in his lady grace.
 Embrouded was he, as it were a meede
 Al ful of fresshe floures, whyte and 90
 reede.
 Singynge he was or floytynge al the day,
 He was as fressh as is the monthe of
 May.
 Short was his gownē, with sleues longe
 and wyde;
 Wel koude he sitte on hors and faire
 ryde.

40. weren H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), were E., etc. 49. in f. He.H.⁴ (Sk.). 57. Of] At He.H.⁴. In Eg.; riden alle \$ff. 60. nobil G.; l. nobel? [Bgl. 6413]; Armee] aryue G.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk.). 70. He] Ne He.; ne] he He., f. Eg.L. 74. we(e)re He.G.C. (Sk.), was Eg.L.H.⁴; was] ne was He.H.⁴ (Gl.). 77. ycome E.C.P., come(n) He., etc. 82. he was of age He.H.⁴ 84. grete of Eg.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 86. and in picardye G.Eg.P.L.H.⁴ 87. of] in He.H.⁴ 93. gown Eg.

95 He koude songes make and wel endite,
Iuste and eek daunce, and weel pur-
treye and write.
So hoote he louȝe, that by nyghter-
tale
He slepte namoore than dooth a
nyghtyngale.
Curteis he was, lowely, and seruysable,
00 And carf bifrom his fader at the table.
A Yeman hadde he, and seruantz
namo [¶ Yeman
At that tyme, for hym liste ride soo;
And he was clad in cote and hood of
grene;
A sheef of pecok arwes, bright and kene,
05 Vnder his belt he bar ful thriftily.
Wel koude he dresse his takel yemanly;
Hise arwes drouped noght with fetheres
lowe,
And in his hand he baar a myghty
bowe.
A not-heed hadde he, with a broun
visage;
10 Of woodecraft wel koude he al the
vsage.
Vp-on his arm he baar a gay bracer,
And by his syde a swerd and a bokeler,
And on that oother syde a gay daggere,
Harneised wel and sharp as point of
spere;
15 A Cristophere on his brest of siluer
sheene.
An horn he bar, the bawdryk was of
grene;
A forster was he soothly, as I gesse.
Ther was also a nonne, a Prio-
resse, [¶ Prioressse
That of hir smylyng was ful symple
and coy;
20 Hir gretteste ooth was but by seinte
Loy,
And she was cleped madame Eglentyne.
fful weel she soong the seruice dyuine,
Entuned in hir nose ful seme[e]ly,

And frenssh she spak ful faire and
fetisly
After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe, 2
ffor frenssh of Parys was to hir(e)
vnknowe.
At mete wel ytaught was she with-alle;
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle,
Ne wette hir fyngres in hir sauce depe;
Wel kouȝe she carie a morsel and 3
wel kepe,
Thát no dropē ne fille vpon hir brist—
In curteisie was set ful muche[l] hir list;
Hir[e] ouer-lippe wyped she so clene,
That in hir coppe ther was no ferth-
yng sene
Of grece, whan she dronken hadde hir 3
draughte.
fful semely after hir mete she raughte,
And sikerly she was of greet desport,
And ful plesaunt, and amyable of port,
And peyned hir(e) to countrefete cheere
Of court, and [to] been estatlich of 4
manere,
And to ben holden digne of reuerence.
But for to speken of hir conscience,
She was so charitable and so pitous,
She wolde wepe if that she saugh a
mous
Kaught in a trappe, if it werē deed 4
or bledde.
Of smale houndes hadde she þat she
fedde
With rosted flessch, or milk and wastel
breed,
But soore wepte she, if any of hem
werē deed,
Or if men smoot it with a yerde smerte,
And al was conscience and tendre herte. 5
fful semyly hir wympul pynched was;
Hir[e] nose tretys, hir [e]yēn greye
as glas,
Hir mouth ful smal and ther-to softe
and reed,
But, sikerly, she hadde a fair forheed,

95. wel make and endite He.H.⁴ 98. sleep C.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 101. he hadde He.
10. koude he wel He.H.⁴ 20. seyte P., seint E., etc. (seinte Gl., sēynt Sk.; vgl. 509, etc.).
31. ne f. He.H.⁴; brist E.He., brest(e) G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 32. ful muche Sk., Gl., ful muchel
E.P.L., muchel He., ful meche (moche) G.Eg.C., al H.⁴; list E.He.G., lest(e) Eg., etc.
(Sk., Gl.). 40. to f. He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); sta(te)lyche Eg.L.; f. 281. 48. weep Sk.; any (ony)
E.Eg., oon He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 52. tretys] streight H.⁴, was st. C., etc.

55 It was almoost a spanne brood, I
trowe;
ffor, hardily, she was nat vnder-growe.
fful fetys was hir cloke, as I was war;
Of smal coral aboute hir arm she bar
A peire of bedes, gauded al with grene,
60 And ther-on heng a brooch of gold ful
sheene,
On which ther was first write a crown-
ed A,
And after: 'Amor vincit omnia'.
Another Nonne with hir(e) hadde she,
[¶ Nonne
That was hir[e] chapeleyne, and preestes
thre. [¶ preestes
65 A Monk ther was, a fair for the mais-
tric, [¶ Monk
An outrider(e), that louede venerie,
A manly man, to been an abbot able.
fful many¹⁶¹ a deyntee hors hadde he in
stable,
And whan he rood, men myghte his
brydel heere
70 Gynglen in a whistlyng wynd als
cleere
And eek as loude as dooth þe chapel-
belle,
Ther-as this lord was keper(e) of the
celle;
The reule of seint Maure or of seint
Beneit,
By cause that it was old and som-del
streit,
75 This ilke Monk leet olde thynges pace,
And heeld after the newe world the
space.
He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen,
That seith that hunters be[th] nat hooly
men,
Ne that a monk, whan he is reulelees,
80 Is likned til a fissh [þat] is waterlees,
That is to seyn: a monk out of his
cloystre.
But thilke text heeld he nat worth an
oystre,

A'nd I seyde his opinion was good;
What sholde he studie¹⁶² and make hym-
seluen wood
Vpon a book in cloystre alwey to 85
poure,
Or swynken with his handes, and la-
boure
As Austyn bit? How shal the world
be serued?
Lat Austyn haue his [owene] swynk to
him reserued!
Therfore he was a prikasour aright.
Grehoundes he hadde as swift as 90
fowel in flight;
Of prikyng and of huntyng for the
hare
Was al his lust, for no cost wolde he
spare.
I seigh his sleues ypurfiled at the
hond
With grys, and that the fyneste of a
lond;
And, for to festne his hood vnder 95
his chyn,
He hadde of gold [y]wroght a ful
curious pyn,
A loue-knotte in the gretter ende ther
was.
His heed was ballad, þat shoon as
any glas,
And eek his face as it hadde been
enoynt.
He was a lord ful fat and in good 00
poynt,
Hise [e]yën stepe and rollynge in his
heed,
That stemed as a forneys of a leed;
Hise bootes souple, his hors in greet
estaat:
Now certainly, he was a fair prelaat;
He was nat pale as a forpynd goost. 05
A fat swan loued he best of any roost.
His palfrey was as broun as is a berye.
A ffrere ther was, a wantown[e] and
a merye, [¶ ffrere

161. ther f. He.Eg.H.⁴; write E.Eg., writen He., etc., I writen H.⁴ 64. thre: entspricht nicht der Gesamtzahl V. 24 [verderbt?]. 70. Gyng(e)lyng Eg.C.P.L.; als E.G., also L., so H.⁴, as He., etc. (Sk.). 78. beþe L., been (be) He., etc. (Sk.); nat] none He.H.⁴, nought C.P.L. 79. reulelees Cloysterles H.⁴ (Sk.), rechelees E., etc. 80. þat: alle H.; vgl. 529, 594, etc. 88. [owene] nur E. 93. purfiled He.G.Eg.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 96. wroght He.Eg.C.P.L.; ful f. Har.⁴ (Sk.). 99. it] he He., etc. (Sk.). 202. of] I. or? 07. is a] any He., H.⁴, a Eg.

A lymytour, a ful solempne man;
 10 In alle the ordres foure is noon þat kan
 So muchel of daliaunce and fair langage.
 He hadde maad ful many^a mariage
 Of yonge wommen at his owene cost.
 Vn-to his ordre he was a noble post,
 15 And wel biloued and famulier was he
 With frankeleyns ouer-al in his contree,
 A'nd with worthy wommen of the toun;
 ffor he hadde power of confessioun,
 As seyde hym-self, moore than a curat,
 20 ffor of his ordre he was licenciat.
 fful swetely herde he confessioun,
 And plesaunt was his absolucioun.
 He was an esy man to yeue penaunce
 Ther-as he wiste to haue a good pit-
 aunce;
 25 ffor vnto a poure ordre for to yiue
 Is signe þat a man is wel yshryue;
 ffor, if he yaf, he dorste make avaunt
 He wiste that a man was repentaunt;
 ffor many^a man so hard[e] is of his
 herte,
 30 He may nat wepe al-thogh hym soore
 smerte.
 Therefore in stede of wepyng and
 preyeres
 Men mooten yeue siluer to the poure
 freres.
 His typet was ay farsed ful of knyues
 And pynnes, for to yeuen yonge wyues.
 35 And, certainly, he hadde a murye note;
 Wel koude he synge and pleyen on a
 rote;
 Of yeddynges he baar outrely the pris.
 His nekke whit was as the flour-delys,
 Ther-to he strong was as a champioun.
 40 He knew the tauernes wel in al the
 toun,
 And euerich hostiler and tappestere
 Bet than a lazor or a beggestere;

ffor vn-to swich a worthy man as he
 Accorded nat, as by his facultee,
 To haue with sike lazars *aqueyntaunce*; 45
 It is nat honeste, it may nat avaunce
 ffor to deelen with no swich poraille,
 But al with riche and selleres of vi-
 taille.
 And ouer-al, ther-as profit sholde arise,
 Curteis he was and lowely of seruyse, 50
 Ther nas no man nowher so vertuous.
 He was the beste begger(e) in his
 hous;
 ffor thogh a wydwe hadde noght a
 sho—
 So plesaunt was his 'In principio'—,
 Yet wolde he haue a ferthyng er he 55
 wente.
 His purchas was wel bettre than his
 rente;
 And rage he koude as it were right a
 whelp(e).
 In loue-dayes ther koude he muchel
 help(e),
 ffor there he was nat lyk a cloysterer
 With [a] thredbare cope, as is a poure 60
 scoler,
 But he was lyk a maister or a pope.
 Of double worstede was his semycope,
 That rounded as a belle out of the
 presse.
 Somwhat he lipsed for his wantown-
 esse,
 To make his englissh sweete vp-on his 65
 tonge;
 And in his harpyng, whan þat he
 hadde songe,
 Hise [e]yē twynkled in his heed, alyght
 As doon the sterres in the frosty nyght.
 This worthy lymytour was cleped Hu-
 berd.
 A Marchant was ther with a forked 70
 berd, [¶ Marchant
 I'n motlee, and hye on horse he sat,

211. multe He.Eg.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 15. And E., fful He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 17. And eek He., H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 19/20. f. Eg. 30. althogh] thogh þat He., though G.H.⁴; hym] he He.L. 34. yonge] faire He., etc. (Sk.). 40. al the] euery He., etc. (Sk.). 51. nas] was He.G.Eg.H.⁴ 52b.c. And yaf a certeyn ferme for the graunt Noon of his bretheren cam ther in his haunt: eingefügt He. 57. as it were right] right as it w. C.L., as it had be D., and pleye as H.⁴ 57/58. whelp: help G.D., whelpe: helpe C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 59. Cloysterer(e) E.He.P.L. 60. [a] alle þij; is f. C.P.L.H.⁴; poure f. G. 71. motteley(e) L.H.⁴ (Gl.), mottelee Sk.

Vp-on his heed a fflaundryssh beuer[e]-
 hat;
 Hise bootes clasped faire and fetisly.
 Hise resons he spak ful solempnely,
 75 Sownynge alway thencrees of his wyn-
 nyng.
 He wolde the see were kept for any
 thing
 Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle.
 Wel koude he in eschaunge sheeldes
 selle.
 This worthy man ful wel his wit bisette,
 80 Ther wiste no wight þat he was in
 dette,
 So [e]statly was he, of his gouernaunce,
 With his bargaynes and with his
 cheuyssaunce.
 ffor sothe he was a worthy man with-
 alle,
 But—sooth to seyn—I noot how men
 hym calle.
 85 A Clerk ther was of Oxenford also,
 [¶ Clerk of Oxenford]
 That vn-to logyk hadde longe ygo;
 As leene was his hors as is a rake,
 And he nas nat right fat, I vndertake,
 But looked holwe, and ther-to sobrelly.
 90 fful thredbare was his ouereste courte-
 py,
 ffor he hadde gete[n] hym yet no bene-
 fice,
 Ne was so worldly for to haue office.
 ffor hym was leuere haue at his beddes
 heed
 Twenty bookes, clad in blak or reed,
 95 Of Aristotle and his philosophie
 Than robes riche, or fithle, or gay
 sautrie.
 But al be that he was a philosophe,
 Yet haddē he but litel gold in cofre,
 But al þat he myghte of his freendes
 hente,
 00 On bookes and his lernynge he it
 spente,
 And bisily gan for the soules preye

Of hem þat yaf hym wher-with to
 scoleye.
 Of studie took he moost cure and
 moost heede;
 Noght o word spak he moore than was
 neede,
 And that was seyde in forme and 05
 reuerence,
 And short and quyk, and ful of hy
 sentence;
 Sownynge in moral vertu was his
 speche,
 And gladly wolde he lerne, and gladly
 teche.
 A Sergeant of the Lawe, war and wys,
 [¶ Sergeant of lawe]
 That often hadde been at the parvys, 10
 Ther was also, ful riche of excellence.
 Discreet he was and of greet reuerence;
 He semed swich, hise wordes were[n]
 so wise.
 Iustice he was ful often in assise,
 By patente and by pleyn commissioun, 15
 ffor his science and for his heigh
 renoun;
 Of fees and robes hadde he many oon.
 So greet a purchasour was nowher
 noon;
 Al was fee symple to hym in effect,
 His purchasyn myghte nat been infect. 20
 Nowher so bisy a man as he ther nas,
 And yet he semed bisier than he was.
 In termes hadde he caas and doomes
 alle
 That from the tyme of kyng William
 were [y]falle.
 Ther-to he koude endite and make a 25
 thyng;
 Ther koude no wight pynche[n] at his
 writyng,
 And euery statut koude he pleyn by
 rote.
 He rood but hoonly in a medlee cote,
 Girt with a ceint of silk with barres
 smale;

272. Beuere E.He.L., bemysch G. 81. statly C., stedefastly D. [vgl. 140]. 87. As
 And E.D., Al so H.^a 89. f. G. 91. geten: alle Hf. (Sk., Gl.). 300. his E.H.^a, on
 He., etc. (Sk.). 05. Al þat he spak it was of heye prudence H.^a; seyde spoke He.
 09. the f. He.D.H.^a 11. Ther E.He., He G., That D., etc. 13. were G.D.C.H.^a, wern P.
 24. the f. He.; yfalle E. (Sk.). 26. pynchen E.He.

30 Of his array telle I no lenger tale.
 A ffrankeleyn was in his compaignye.
 [¶ ffrankeleyn
 Whit was his heed as is a dayesyë,
 Of his complexioun he was sangwyn.
 Wel loued he by the morwe a sop(e)
 in wyn;
 35 To lyuen in delit was euere his wone,
 For he was Epicurus owene sone,
 That heeld opinioun that pleyn delit
 Was verray felicitee parfit.
 An housholder(e), and that a greet,
 was he,
 40 Seint Iulian was he in his contree.
 His breed, his alę was always after
 oon;
 A bettre envyned man was neuere
 noon;
 With-oute bake-metę was neuere his
 hous
 Of fissh and flessch, and that so plen-
 teuous,
 45 It snewed in his hous of mete and
 drynke,
 Of alle deyntees that men koude thynke.
 After the sondry sesons of the yeer,
 So chaunged he his mete and his
 soper.
 fful many^a fat partrich hadde he in
 muwe,
 50 And many^a breem and many^a luce
 in stuwe.
 Wo was his cook but if his sauce were
 Poynaunt and sharp, and redy al his
 geere.
 His table dormaunt in his halle alway
 Stood redy couered al the longe day.
 55 At sessiouns ther was he lord and sire;
 fful ofte tyme he was knyght of the
 shire.
 An anlaas and a gipser, al of silk,
 Heeng at his girdel, whit as morne
 milk.
 A shirreue hadde he been and a coun-
 tour;

Was nowher swich a worthy vauasour. 6
 An *Haberdassher(e)* and a Carpenter,
 [¶ *Haberdasshere*, Carpenter
 A Webbe, a Dyere, and a Tapyer
 [¶ *Webbe*, *Dyere*, *Tapicer*
Were with vs, clothed alle in o lyuere
 Of a solempne and [a] greet frater-
 nitee.
 fful fressh and newe hir geere apiked 6
 was;
 Hir knyues were chaped noght with
 bras,
 But al with siluer, wroght ful clene and
 weel
 Hir(e) girdles and hir pouches euery-
 deel.
 Wel semed ech of hem a fair burgeys
 To sitten in a yeldehalle on a deys; 7
 E'uerich for the wisdom þat he kan
 Was shaply for to been an *alderman*;
 ffor catel hadde they ynogh and rente,
 And eek hir wyues wolde it wel assente,
 And elles certeyn were they to blame: 7
 It is ful fair to been ycleped *ma dame*,
 And goon to vigilies al bifore,
 And haue a mantel roialliche ybore.
 A Cook they hadde with hem for the
 nones, [¶ *Cook*
 To boille the chiknes with the *mary-* 8
 bones,
 And poudre-marchant tart, and galyngale.
 Wel koude he knowe a draughte of
 Londoun ale;
 He koude rooste, and sethe, and boille,
 and frye,
 Máken *mortreux*, and wel bake a pye.
 But greet harm was it, as it thoughte 8
 me,
 That on his shyne a mormal haddé
 he;
 ffor blankmanger, that made he with
 the beste.
 A Shipman was ther, wonynge fer by
 weste; [¶ *Shipman*

332. heed] berd He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); a E., the He., etc. (Sk.) 40. he was Hen., etc., f. D. 42. neuere] now(h)er G.D.P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) 59. a f. E.He.G. 63. Were with vs] weren with uss eeke, alle f. H.⁴ (Sk.), And they were E., etc. 64. [a] f. D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); vgl. 558. 66. I-chapud H.⁴, y-chaped Sk. 75. were they E.G., hadde þei ben H.⁴, they were He., etc. 76. ycleped E.He., cleped G., etc., clept H.⁴ (y-clept Sk.). 83. broille He. C.P.L. (Sk.). 85. thoughte] semede G.H.⁴

- ffor aught I woot, he was of Derte-
mouthe.
- 90 He rood vpon a rouncy, as he kouthe,
I'n a gowne of faldyng to the knee.
A dagger(e) hangynge on a laas hadde
he
Aboute his nekke vnder his arm
adoun.
The hoot somer hadde maad his hewe
al broun,
- 95 And, certainly, he was a good felawe.
fful many a draughte of wyn haddē
he drawe
ffro Burdeuxward, whil that the chap-
man sleep.
Of nyce consciēce took he no keep;
If þat he faught, and hadde the hyer
hond,
- 00 By watre he sente hem hoom to euery
lond.
But of his craft to rekene wel his
tydes,
Hise stremes and hise daungers hym
bisides,
His herberwe and his moone, his lodē-
menage,
Ther nas noon swich from Hulle to
Cartage.
- 05 Hardy he was and wys to vndertake;
With many a tempest hadde his berd
been shake.
He knew alle the hauēnes, as they were
ffro Gootlond to the Cape of ffynystere,
And euery cryke in Britaigne and in
Spayne.
- 10 His barge ycleped was the Maudelayne.
With vs ther was a Doctour of Phisik;
[¶ Doctour of Phisik
In al this world ne was ther noon hym
lik
To speke of phisik and of surgerye,
ffor he was groundid in astronomye.
- 15 He kepte his pacient a ful greet deel
In houres by his magyk natureel;
Wel koudē he fortunē the ascendent
Of hise ymages for his pacient.
- He knew the cause of euerich maladye,
Were it of hoot, or cold, or moyste, 20
or drye,
And where [they] engendred, and of
what humour;
He was a verray parfit praktisour.
The cause yknowe and of his harm
the roote,
Anon he yaf the sike man his boote.
fful redy hadde he hise apothecaries 25
To sende him drogges and hise letuaries;
ffor ech of hem made oother for to
wynne,
Hir frendshipē nas nat newe to bi-
gynne.
Wel knew he the olde Esculapius,
And Deyscorides, and eek Rufus, 30
Olde Ypocras, Haly, and Galyen,
Serapion, Razis, and Auycen,
Auerrois, Damascien, and Constantyn,
Bernard, and Gatesden, and Gilbertyn.
Of his dietē mesurable was he, 35
ffor it was of no superfluitee,
But of greet norissyng and digestible.
His studie was but litel on the Bible.
In sangwyn and in pers he clad was
al,
Lyned with taffata and with sendal, 40
And yet he was but esy of dispence;
He kepte that he wan in pestilence,
ffor gold in phisik is a cordial;
Therfore he louēde gold in special.
A good Wif was ther of biside Bathe, 45
[¶ The goode Wif of Bathe
But she was som-del deaf, and þat
was scathe.
Of clooth-makyng she hadde swich an
haunt,
She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt.
In al the parisshe wif ne was ther
noon
That to the offryngē bifore hir(e) sholde 50
goon,
And if ther didē, certeyn, so wrooth
was she,
That she was out of alle charitee.

396. hadde He.G.C.P.; I-drawe G. (Sk., Gl.). 400. watre He., water E., etc.; hem: keine Gefangenen. 04. nas E.G.P., was He., etc. 07. knew wel H.⁴ (Sk.). 08. Scotlond H.⁴ 21. they E.G.H.⁴, it He.Eg.L. (engenderde it), f. C.P. (Sk.). 26. his drogges He.G. 30. Risus E., Rufus P., Rufijs G., Rusus He., etc.

Hir couerchiefs ful fyne were[n] of
ground—

I dorste swere they weyeden ten
pound—,

55 That on a Sondag were[n] vpon hir
heed.

Hir hosen weren of fyn scarlet reed,
fful streite yteyd, and shoes ful moyste
and newe.

Boold was hir face and fair, and reed
of hewe.

She was a worthy womman al hir lyue;
60 Housbondes at chirche-dore she hadde
fyue,

Withouten oother compaignye in
youth—

But ther-of nedeth nat to speke as
nowthe;

And thries hadde she been at Ie-
rusalem.

She hadde passed many[^]a straunge
strem;

65 At Rome she hadde been and at Bo-
loigne,

In Galice at Seint Iame and at Co-
loigne:

She koude muche[l] of wandryngē by
the weye.

Gat-tothed was she, soothly for to seye.
Vp-on an ambler(e) esily she sat,

70 Wympled wel, and on hir heed an
hat

As brood as is a bokeler or a targe;
A foot-mantel aboute hir hipes large,
And on hire feet a paire of spores
sharpe.

In felawship(e) wel koude she laughe
and carpe;

75 Of remedies of louē she knew per
chaunce,

For she koude of that art the olde
daunce.

A good-man was ther of religioun,
And was a poure Persoun of a toun,

[¶ Persoun of a toun

But riche he was of hooly thought
and werk.

He was also a lerned man, a clerk, 80
That Cristes gospel trewely wolde
preche,

Hise parissshens deuoutly wolde he
teche.

Benygne he was and wonder diligent,
And in aduersitee ful pacient,
A'nd swich he was preued ofte sithes. 85
fful looth were hym to cursen for hise
tithes,

But rather wolde he yeuen, out of
doute,

Vn-to hise poure parissshens aboute
Of his offryng, and eek of his sub-
staunce;

He koude in litel thyng hauē suffi- 90
saunce.

Wyd was his parisshe, and houses fer
a-sonder,

But he ne lafte nat, for reyn ne thonder,
In siknesse nor in meschief to visite
The ferreste in his parisshe, muche
and lite,

Vp-on his feet, and in his hand a staf. 95
This noble ensample to hise sheep he
yaf,

That firste he wroghte, and afterward
[that] he taughte;

Out of the gospel he tho wordes
caughte,

And this figure he added eek ther-to:
That, if gold ruste, what shal iren 00
doo?

For if a preest be foul on whom we
truste,

No wonder is a lewed man to ruste,
And shame it is, if a prest take keep,
A shiten shepherde and a clene sheep.
Wel oghte a preest ensample for to 05
yiue

By his clenness how þat his sheep
sholde lyue.

He sette nat his benefice to hyre,

453. weren E.H.⁴ 55. were D.H.⁴; vpon] on L. 63. Ierusalem: 3 jilbig; vgl. VV. 6077, 14931, 14980, 18122. 67. muchel E.He., meche, moche, muche G., etc. (Sk.; vgl. 132), 85. I-proued H.⁴, preued E., etc. (y-preved Sk., Gl.). 91. Epr. parssh? (vgl. parschens G. 488.) 97. afterward that E.P., after þat H.⁴, afterward He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 98. Matth. V, 13. 500. sholde He.D.L.H.⁴ or. on] in He., of L. 504—758. Eg. für D. 05. yiue He.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), yeue E., etc. u. jō öfter.

And leet his sheep encombred in the
myre,

And ran to Londoun vn-to seinte Poules

10 To seken hym a chaunterie for soules,
Or with a bretherhed to been with-
holde,

But dwellēth at hoom, and kepeth wel
his folde,

So that the wolf ne made it nat mys-
carie.

He was a shepherde, [and] noght a
mercenarie,

15 And though he hooly were and ver-
tuous,

He was to synful man nat despitous,
Né of his speche daungerous ne
digne,

But in his techyng discreet and benygne;
drawen folk to heuene by fairnesse,
good ensample, this was his bi-
synesse,

But it were any persone obstinat,
What-so he were, of heigh or lough
estat,

Hym wolde he snybben sharply for
the nonys:

A better prest I trowe þat nowher
noon ys;

25 He waiteth after no pompe and reue-
rence,

Ne maked him a spiced conscience,
But Cristes loore and hise Apostles
twelue

He taughte, but first he folwed it
hym-selue.

With hym ther was a Plowman, was
his brother, [¶ Plowman

30 That hadde ylad of dong ful many a
fother.

A trewe swynker(e) and a good was he,
Lyuyng in pees and parfit charitee;
God louēd he best with al his hoolle
herte

At alle tymes, thogh hym gamēd or
smerte,

And thanne his neighebor[e], right as 35
hym-selue.

He wolde thresshe and ther-to dyke and
delue,

For Cristes sake, for euery poure wight
Withouten hire, if it lay in his myght.
Hise tithes paydē he ful faire and
wel,

Bothe of his propre swynk and his 40
catel.

In a tabard he rood vpon a mere.
Ther was also a Reue and a Millere,

[¶ Millere

A Somnour and a Pardoner also,
A Maunciple and my-self—ther werē
namo.

¶ The Miller(e) was a stout carl for 45
the nones;

Ful byg he was of brawn and eek of
bones.

That proued wel, for ouer-al ther he
cam,

At wrastlyng he wolde haue alwey
the ram.

He was short-sholdred, brood, a thikke
knarre,

Ther was no dorē þat he nolde heue 50
of harre,

Or breke it at a rennyng with his
heed.

His berd as any sowe or fox was reed
And therto brood, as though it were a
spade.

Vp-on the cop right of his nose he
hade

A werte, and ther-on stood a toft of 55
herys,

Reed as the brustles of a sowes erys;
Hise nosethirles blake were and wyde.

A swerd and [a] bokeler bar he by
his syde.

509. Seinte C.H.⁴, saint E., etc. (sēynt Sk.) [vql. 120]. 10. Chaunterie C.P.L.H.⁴, chauntrie E., etc. 12. dwelte . . . kepte He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 14. [and]: alle ȝif.; no m. H.⁴ (Sk.). 16. to senful man nought H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); nat to (with Eg.) synful man (men He.G.Eg.C.P.L.) E., etc. 20. this f. H.⁴ (Sk.). 22. lough E.P., lowe He., etc. 24. [þat] ther He.H.⁴, f. G.Eg. 25. waiteth E., awayted Eg., wayted He., etc.; and] ne G.Eg.H.⁴ 28. but] and H.⁴ (Sk.). 34. hym] he E.Eg.P.L. 44. was H.⁴, nare C.P.L. 48. alwey] away C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.), f. Eg. 50. no(o)lde He.C.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), ne wolde E.P.L., wolde G.Eg. 58. [a.] f. C. (Sk.) [vql. 364]; bocler H.⁴

- His mouth as greet was as a greet
forneys.
- 60 He was a iangler(e) and a goliardeys,
And that was moost of synne and
harlotries.
Wel koude he stelen corn, and tollen
thries,
And yet he hadde a thombe of gold,
pardee.
A whit cote and a blew hood wered he;
65 A baggepipe wel koude he blowe and
sowne,
And ther-with-al he broghte vs out
of towne.
A gentil Maunciple was ther of a
temple, [¶ Maunciple
Of which achatours myghte take
exemple
ffor to be wise in byynge of vitaille;
70 ffor wheither that he payde or took
by taille,
Algate he wayted so in his achaaht,
That he was ay biforn and in good
staat.
Now is nat that of God a ful fair
grace
That swich a lewed mannes wit shal
pace
75 The wisdom of an heep of lerned
men?
Of maistres hadde he mo than thries
ten,
That were[n] of lawe expert and
curious,
Of whiche þer were[n] a duszeyne in
that hous,
Worthy to been stywardes of rente and
lond
80 Of any lord that is in Engeland,
To make[n] hym lyue by his propre
good
In honour dettelees, but if he were
wood,
Or lyue as scarsly as hym list desire,
And able for to helpen al a shire
85 In any caas þat myghte falle or happe:
- And yet this manciple sette hir aller
cappe.
The Reue was a sclendre colerik man;
[¶ Reue
His berd was shaue as ny as euer
he kan;
His heer was by his erys ful round
yschorn,
His top was doked lyk a preest biforn. 90
fful longe were his legges and ful lene,
Ylyk a staf, ther was no calf ysene:
Wel koude he kepe a gerner and a
bynne,
Ther was noon auditour koude of him
wynne.
Wel wiste he by the droghte and by 95
the reyn
The yeldynge of his seed and of his
greyn.
His lordes sheep, his neet, his dayerye,
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and
his pultrye
Was hoolly in this Reues gouernyng.
And by his couenant yaf the rekenyng, 00
Syn that his lord was twenty yeer of
age;
Ther koude no man brynge hym in
arriage.
Ther nas baillif, ne hierde, nor oother
hyne
That he *ne* knew his sleighte and his
couyne;
They were adrad of hym as of the 05
deeth.
His wonyng was ful faire vp-on an
heeth,
With grene treës shadwed was his
place.
He koude bettre than his lord pur-
chace.
fful riche he was astored pryuely;
His lord wel koude he plesen subtilly 10
To yeue and lene hym of his owene
good,
And haue a thank, and yet a gowne
and hood.

559. as greet] as wyde H.⁴ (Gl.). 73. fair] greet He. 77. weren E.He.L. 78. weren
E., was C.P.L. 81. maken E. 82. if f. G. (Sk., Gl.). 88. ny] neigh (nygh) He., etc.; 90
732 u. ð. 94. of E., on He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 603. ne f. He.G.; nor] ne G.Eg.L.H.⁴ (Sk.).
04. ne f. E.G. 07. I-schadewid G.H.⁴ 12. gowne E.Eg., co(o)te He., etc. (Sk.).

In youthe he hadde lerned a good
 myster:
 He was a wel good wrighte, a car-
 penter.
 15 This Reue sat vp-on a ful good stot,
 That was al pomely grey, and highte
 Scot.
 A long surcote of pers vp-on he hade,
 And by his syde he baar a rusty blade.
 Of Northfolk was this Reue of which
 I telle,
 20 Biside a toun men clepen Baldeswelle.
 Tukked he was, as is a frere, aboute,
 And eure he rood the hyndreste of
 oure route.
 A Somonour was ther with vs in that
 place, [¶] **Somonour**
 That hadde a fyr-reed Cherubynnes
 face;
 25 ffor sawcefleem he was, with [e]yēn
 narwe.
 As hoot he was and lecherous as a
 sparwe,
 With scaled browes blake and piled
 berd;
 Of his visage children were aferd.
 Ther nas quyk-siluer, lytarge, ne brym-
 stoon,
 30 Boras, ceruce, nè oille of tartre noon,
 Nè oynement that wolde clense and
 byte,
 That hym myghte helpen of the whelkes
 white,
 Nor of the knobbes sittynge on his
 chekes.
 Wel loued he garleek, oynons, and
 eek lekes,
 35 And for to drynken strong wyn, reed
 as blood.
 Thanne wolde he speke and crie as
 he werē wood;
 And whan þat he wel drunken hadde
 the wyn,
 Than wolde he speke no word but
 latyn.
 A fewe termes hadde he, two or thre,

That he had lerned out of som de- 40
 cree—
 No wonder is, he herde it al the day.
 And eek ye knowen wel how þat a iay
 Kan clepen 'watte' as wel as kan the
 pope.
 But who so koude in oother thyng
 hym grope,
 Thanne hadde he spent al his philo- 45
 sophie;
 Ay 'questio quid iuris' wolde he
 crie.
 He was a gentil harlot and a kynde,
 A bettre felawe sholde men noght
 fynde.
 He wolde suffre, for a quart of wyn,
 A good felawe to haue his concubyn 50
 A twelf-monthe, and excuse hym atte
 fulle.
 And priuely a fynch eek koude he
 pulle,
 And if he foond owher a good felawe,
 He wolde techen him to hauē noon
 awe
 In swich caas of the Ercedekenes curs, 55
 But if a mannes soule were in his
 purs;
 ffor in his purs he sholde ypunysshed
 be;
 'Purs is the Ercedekenes helle,' seyde
 he.
 But wel I woot he lyed right in dede;
 Of cursyng oghte ech gilty man *him* 60
 drede—
 ffor curs wol slee, right as assoillyng
 sauth—
 And also ware him of a 'Signifi-
 cauit.'
 In daunger hadde he, at his owene gise,
 The yonge girles of the diocese,
 And knew hir conseil, and was al hir 65
 reed.
 A gerland hadde he set vp-on his heed
 As greet as it werē for an *ale*-stake;
 A bokeler hadde he maad him of
 a cake.

613. he lerned hadde He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), I. he hade Eg.; lered P. 15. full wel He.Eg.P.H.⁴ 16. al a He.G.P.H.⁴ 37/38. f. He. 52. And E.L.H.⁴, ful He., etc. (Sk.). 57. ypunysshed E.He., pynded Eg., ponynschid, etc. G., etc. 60. him C.L. (Sk., Gl.), to Eg.P.H.⁴, f. E.He.G. 62. ware Eg.H.⁴, war E., etc.; sygnifycauth G.Eg.C.P.

With hym ther was a gentil Pardoner
 [¶ **Pardoner**
 70 Of Rounciuale, his freend and his
 compeer,
 That streight was comen fro the court
 of Rome.
 fful loude he soong: 'Com hider, loue,
 to me;'
 This Somounour bar to hym a stif bur-
 doun,
 Was neuere trompe of half so greet a
 soun.
 75 This Pardoner hadde heer as yelow
 as wex,
 But smothe it heeng as dooth a strike
 of flex,
 By ounces henge hise lokkes þat he
 hadde,
 And ther-with he hise shuldres ouer-
 spradde,
 But thynne it lay, by colpons oon
 and oon;
 80 But hood for iolitee wered he noon,
 For it was trussed vp in his walet.
 Hym thoughte he rood al of the newe
 iet,
 Discheuelee, saue his cappe, he rood
 al bare.
 Swiche glarynge [e]yēn hadde he as an
 hare.
 85 A vernycle hadde he sowēd vp-on his
 cappe,
 His walet biforn hym in his lappe,
 Bret-ful of pardoun, comē[n] from Rome
 al hoot.
 A voys he hadde as smal as hath a
 goot,
 No berd hadde he, ne neuere sholde
 haue,
 90 As smothe it was as it were late shaue;
 I trowe he were a geldyng or a mare.
 But of his craft fro Berwyk in-to Ware
 Ne was ther swich another pardoner;
 ffor in his male he hadde a pilwe-beer

Which þat, he seyde, was oure lady 95
 veyl.
 He seyde he hadde a gobet of the
 seyl
 That seint Peter hadde whan þat he
 wente
 Vp-on the see, til Ihesu Crist hym hente.
 He hadde a croys of latoun ful of
 stones,
 And in a glas he hadde pigges bones. 100
 But with thise relikes, whan þat he fond
 A poure person dwellynge vp-on lond,
 Vp-on a day he gat hym moore moneye
 Than þat the person gat in monthes
 tweye.
 And thus, with feyned flaterye and 105
 iapes,
 He made the person and the peple hise
 apes.
 But trewely to tellen atte laste,
 He was in chirche a noble ecclesiaste;
 Wel koude he rede a lessoun or a
 storie,
 But alderbest he song an offertorie. 110
 ffor wel he wiste, whan þat song was
 songe,
 He moste preche, and wel affile his
 tonge
 To wynne siluer, as he ful wel koude;
 Therefore he song the murierly and
 loude.
 NOW haue I toold you, shortly in a 115
 clause,
 The staat, tharray, the nombre, and
 eek the cause
 Why þat assembled was this com-
 paignye
 In Southwerk at this gentil hostelrye,
 That highte the Tabard, faste by the
 Belle.
 But now is tyme to yow for to telle 120
 How that we baren vs that ilke nyght,
 Whan we were in that hostelrie alyght.
 And after wol I telle of oure viage

669. was E., rood He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 75. zelw G., zelwe H.⁴, yellow E., etc. 80. ne wered H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 85. vp-on] on Eg.C.H.⁴ (Sk.). 86. ley biforn Eg.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 87. come G.Eg.H.⁴ 90. yshaue He.H.⁴ (Sk.). 92. vn-to Eg.H.⁴ (Gl.). 97. l. seinte? (Gl.) [Matth. 14, 28 ff.]. 713. ful E.He., right H.⁴, f. G., etc. 14. so mery Eg., so meriely C.P.L. (Sk.), ful m. H.⁴ 15. shortly E.H.⁴, soothly He., etc. 16. The staat E.Eg., Thestaat He.H.⁴ (Sk.), The estat G., etc. 18. at] as E.

And al the remenaunt of oure pil-
grimage.

25 But first I praye yow, of youre cur-
teisey,

That ye narette it nat my vileynye,
Thogh þat I pleylnly speke in this
mateere

To telle yow hir wordes and hir cheere,
Ne thogh I speke hir wordes proprely.

30 ffor this ye knowen al-so wel as I,
Who-so shal telle a tale after a man,
He moot[e] reherce, as ny as euere
he kan,

Euerich a word, if it be in his charge,
Al speke he neuere so rudeliche or
large,

35 Or ellis he moot telle his tale vntrewe,
Or feyne thyng, or fynde wordes
newe.

He may nat spare, al-though he were
his brother,

He moot as wel seye o word as another.
Crist spak hym-self ful brode in hooly
writ,

40 And, wel ye woot, no vileynye is it.
Eek Plato seith—who-so þat kan hym
rede—

‘The wordes mooten be cosyn to the
dede.’

Also I preye yow to foryeue it me,
Al haue I nat set folk in hir degree

45 Heere in this tale as þat they sholde
stonde;

My wit is short, ye may wel vnder-
stonde.

¶ Greet chiere made oure hoost vs
euerichon,

And to the soper sette he vs anon;
He serued vs with vitaille at the beste.

50 Strong was the wyn, and wel to drynke
vs leste.

A semely man oure hooste was with-
alle

ffor to been a marchal in an halle.

A large man he was with [e]yēn stepe;
A fairer burgeys was ther noon in
Chepe,

Boold of his speche, and wys, and wel[] 55
ytaught,

And of manhod hym lakkede right
naught.

Eek therto he was right a myrie man,
And after soper pleyen he bigan,

And spak of myrthe amonges othere
thynges,

Whan that we hadde maad oure reken- 60
ynges,

And seyde thus: ‘Now, lordynges, trew-
ely,

Ye been to me right welcome hertely.
ffor, by my trouthe, if that I shal nat
lye,

I^{ne} saugh [nat] this yeer so myrie^a a
compaignye

Atones in this herberwe as is now; 65
ffayn wolde I doon yow myrthe, wiste
I how?

And of a myrthe I am right now
bythoght,

To doon yow ese, and it shal coste
noght.

¶ Ye goon to Caunterbury—God yow
speede!

The blisful martir quite yow youre 70
meede!—

And wel I woot, as ye goon by the
weye,

Ye shapen yow to talen and to pleye;
ffor, trewely, confort ne myrthe is noon

To ride by the weye dounb as the
stoon.

And therfore wol I maken yow disport, 75
As I seyde erst, and doon yow som
confort,

And if yow liketh alle, by oon assent,
ffor to stonden at my iuggement,

And for to werken as I shal yow
seye,

725. preye L., pray E., etc. [f. 743]. 32. moot He.C., most(e) Eg.H.⁴ 34. or E., ne Eg.H.⁴, and He., etc. (Sk.). 41. who-so þat H.⁴; Plato f. Boethius, De consol. III, prosa 12. 43. preye G.C.L. (789 Sl.) [f. 3908]. 51. hoost C.P.H.⁴, hoost E., etc. [f. 3112]. 52. been] han been H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 56. lakkede G.C.H.⁴, lakked E., etc. 757—858. f. G., bafür Sl. 60. wel] he D.C.Sl. 64. ne saugh H.⁴, saugh (seigh, etc.) nat E., etc. 74. the stoon E., stoon He., any st. L., a st. Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 78. Now for to H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).

80 To-morwe, whan ye riden by the weye,
Now by my fader soule, that is deed,
But [if] ye be myrie, I wol yeue yow
myn heed.

(¶) Hoold vp youre hond withouten
moore speche!

Oure conseil was nat longe for to seche;

85 Vs thoughte it was noght worth to
make it wys,

And graunted hym with-outen moore
auns,

And bade him seye his voidrit as hym
leste.

¶ 'Lordynges,' quod he, 'now herkneth
for the beste,

But taak it nought, I preyę yow, in
desdeyn!

90 This is the poynt, to speken short and
pleyn,

That ech of yow, to shorte with oure
weye,

In this viage shal telle tales tweye
To Caunterburyward, I mene it so,

And homward he shal tellen othere two

95 Of auentures that whilom han bifalle;
And which of yow that bereth hym
best of alle—

That is to seyn, that telleth in this caas
Tales of best sentence and moost
solaas—

Shal haue a soper at oure aller cost

00 Heere in this place, sittynge by this
post,

Whan that we come agayn fro Caunter-
bury;

And, for to make yow the moore mury,
I wol my-seluen goodly with yow ryde,

Right at myn owene cost, and be youre
gyde,

05 And who-so wolę my iuggement with-
seye

Shal paye al that we spenden by the
weye.

And if ye vouche-sauf that it be so,
Telle me anon, with-outen wordes mo,
And I wol erly shape me therfore.'

¶ This thyng was graunted, and oure 10
othres swore

With ful glad herte, and preyden hym
also

That he wolde vouche-sauf for to do
so,

And that he wolde been oure gouer-
nour,

And of oure tales iuge and reportour,
And sette a soper at a certeyn pris, 15

And we wol reuled been at his deuys

(¶) In heigh and lough, and thus, by oon
assent,

We been accorded to his iuggement.

And ther-vp-on the wyn was fet anon;

We dronken, and to reste wente echon, 20

With-outen any lenger tarynge.

Amorwe, whan þat day gan for to
sprynge,

Vp roos oure hoost, and was oure
aller cok,

And gadrede vs togidre alle in a flok,

And forth we ride[n], a litel moore 25
than paas,

Vn-to the wateryng of Seint Thomas,

And ther oure hoost bigan his hors
areste,

And seyde, 'Lordynges, herkneth, if
yow leste!

¶ Ye woot youre foreward, and it yow
recorde,

If euen-song and morwe-song accorde; 30

Lat se now who shal telle the firste
tale!

As euere mote I drynke wyn or ale,

Who-so be rebel to my iuggement,

Shal paye for al þat by the wey is
spent.

Now draweth cut, er þat we ferrer 35
twynne.

782. if [f. He., etc.; I wol yeue yow] smyteþ of H.⁴ (Gl.). 83. hondes He.D.P.L.
86. wit E. 87. bade He.G.; voidrit E.He., verdyt D., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 89. taketh He.H.⁴
91. oure] zoure D.C.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 95. whilom] þer H.⁴ 99. zour H.⁴ 803. self E.He.D.;
goodly] gladly H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 08. Telle D.P.Sl.H.⁴ [vgl. 3132]. 16. wold(e) P.H.⁴ (Sk.).
22. whan þat E.He.H.⁴, whan D., etc.; day E.He., þe d. D., etc.; bigan He.C.H.⁴; for E.,
f. He., etc. (bigan to Sk.). 24. togydres He.; alle E.C.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 25. riden: alle þiff.
27. I. hoste gan? = P.L.; gan C.Sl. 28. lordynges E., lordes He., etc. 29. and it E.He.,
if ze it D., and I it Co., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 35. ferrer E.He., ferther(e) D., etc.

He which þat hath the shortestē shal
bigynne.'

'Sire Knyght,' quod he, 'my mayster
and my lord,

Now draweth cut, for that is myn
accord.'

'Cometh neer,' quod he, 'my lady
Prioress,

40 And ye, sire Clerk, lat be your shame-
fastnesse,

Ne studieth noght! Leye hond to,
euery man!

Anon to drawen euery wight bigan,
And, shortly for to tellen as it was—

Were it by auenture, or sort, or cas—

45 The sothe is this: the cut fil to the

Knyght,

Of which ful blithe and glad was
euery wyght,

And telle he moste his tale as was
resoun,

By forēward and by composicioun,
As ye han herd. What nedeth wordes

mo?

50 And whan this goode-man saugh þat
it was so,

As he that wys was and obedient
To kepe his forēward by his free

assent,

He seyde, 'Syn I shal bigynne the
game,

What, welcomē be the cut, a Goddes
name!

55 Now lat us ryde, and herkneth what
I seye.'

And with that word we ryden forth oure
weye,

And he bigan with right a myrie cheere
His tale anon, and seyde in this ma-
nere:

2. The Knyghtes Tale.

*Iamque domos patrias Scithice post
aspera gentis prelia laurigero &c.*

¶ Heere bigynneth the knyghtes tale.

Whilom, as olde stories tellen vs,
Ther was a duc þat highte Thesēus; 60
Of Atthenes he was lord and gouvernour
And in his tyme swich a conquerour,
That gretter was ther noon vnder the
sonne.

fful many^a riche contree hadde he
wonne;

What with his wysdom and his chiual- 65
rie,

He conquered al the regne of ffemenye,
That whilom was ycleped Scithia,

And weddede the quene Ypolita,
And broghte hir(e) hoom with hym

in his contree

With muchel glorie^{and} greet solemp- 70
nytee,

And eek hir faire suster Emelye.

And thus with victorie^{and} with me-
lodye

Lete I this noble duc to Atthenes ryde,
And al his hoost in armes hym bisyde.

¶ And certes, if it nere to long to heere, 75
I wolde haue toold yow fully the ma-
nere

How wonnen was the regne of ffemenye
By Thesēus and by his chiualrye,

And of the gretē bataille for the nones
Bitwixen Atthenes and Amazones; 80

And how asseged was Ypolita,
The fairē hardy queene of Scithia,

And of the festē þat was at hir wed-
dyng,

And of the tempest at hir hoom com-
yng.

But al that thyng I moot as now 85
forbere,

I haue, God woot, a large feeld to ere,
And wayke been the oxen in my

plough—

341. leye G.L. 54. a] in He.D., one L. 58. in this manere E.H., on þis m. D.,
as ye may heere He., etc. — Jamque domos, etc.: Statius, Theb. XII, 519. — 59—64. Sl.
für G. 68. weddede C.H.⁴Sl., wedded E., etc. 71. faire] yonge He., etc. (Sk.) [cp. 972].
76. han told zow H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), yow haue toold E., yow f. He., etc.

- The remenant of the tale is long
ynough.
I wol nat letten eek noon of this
route:
- 90 Lat euery felawe telle his tale aboute,
And lat se now who shal the soper
wynne!
And ther I lefte I wol ageyn bigynne.
This duc, of whom I make mencion,
Whan he was come almoost vn-to the
toun
- 95 In al his wele and in his mooste pride,
He was war, as he caste his [e]yē
aside,
Where that ther kneled in the *heighe*
weye
A compaignye of ladyes, tweye and
tweye,
Ech after oother, clad in clothes blake,
00 But swich a cry and swich a wo they
make,
That in this world nys creature lyuyng
That herde swich another wayment-
yng;
- And of this cry they nolde neuere
stenten,
Til they the reynes of his brydel henten.
- 05 ¶ 'What folk been ye, that at myn
hom comyng
Perturben so my feste with criyng,'
Quod Thesēus, 'hauē ye so greet enuye
Of myn honour, þat thus compleyne and
crye?
Or who hath yow mysboden or
offended?
- 10 And telleth me if it may be amended,
And why þat ye been clothed thus in
blak?'
- ¶ The eldestē lady of hem alle spak,
Whan she hadde swowned with a deedly
cheere,
That it was routhe for to seen and
heere,
- 15 And seyde, 'Lord, to whom ffortune
hath yiuen
Victorie and as a conquerour to lyuen,
- Nat greueth vs youre glorie and youre
honour,
But we biseken mercy and socour.
Hauē mercy on oure wo and oure
distresse!
Som drope of pitee, thurgh thy gen- 20
tillesse,
Vp-on vs wrecched wommen lat thou
falle!
ffor certes, lord, ther is noon of vs
alle,
That she ne hath been a duchesse or
a queene.
Now be we caytyues, as it is wel
seene,
Thanked be ffortune and hir false 25
wheel,
That noon estat assureth to be weel.
And certes, lord, to abyden youre pre-
sence,
Heere in the temple of the goddessē
Clemence
We han ben waityng al this four-
tenyght.
Now help vs, lord, sith it is in thy 30
myght!
- ¶ I wrecche, which þat wepe and crie
thus,
Was whilom wyf to kyng Cappanēus,
That starf at Thebes—cursed be that
day!
And alle we, that been in this array,
And maken al this lamentacioun, 35
We losten alle oure housbondes at that
toun,
Whil that the seege ther aboute lay.
And yet now the olde Creon—weila-
way!
- That lord is now of Thebes the Citee,
ffulfilde of ire and of iniquitee, 40
He, for despit and for his tirannye,
To do the dede bodyes vileynye
Of alle oure lodes, whiche that been
slawe,
[He] hath allē the bodyes on an heep
ydrawe,

894. vn to E.H.⁴, to He., etc. 97. heighe f. E. 915. And E.D.H.⁴, She He., etc.;
yeuen E.P.H.⁴, I-geuen D. 920—1170. Eg. für D. 23. nath G.C.H.⁴ 27. And E.Eg.H.⁴,
Now He., etc. 28. the temple E.H.⁴, this t. He., etc. 31. crie E., waille He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
33. that day] the d. He.Eg. 43. I-slawe H.⁴ 44. He E.Eg., f. He., etc.

45 And wol nat suffren hem, by noon
 assent,
 Neither to been yburyed nor ybrent,
 But maketh houndes ete hem in despit.
 And with that word, with-uten moore
 respit,
 They fillen gruf, and criden pitously:
 50 'Haue on vs wrecched wommen som
 mercy,
 And lat oure sorwe synken in thyn
 herte!'
 ¶ This gentil duc down from his courser
 sterte
 With herte pitous, whan he herde hem
 speke.
 Hym thoughte þat his herte wolde
 breke,
 55 Whan he saugh hem so pitous and so
 maat
 That whilom weren of so greet estaat;
 And in his armes he hem alle vp hente,
 And hem conforteth in ful good entente,
 And swoor his ooth, as he was trewe
 knyght,
 60 He wolde doon so ferforthly his myght
 Vp-on the tiraunt Creon, hem to wreke,
 That al[l] the peple of Grece sholde
 speke
 How Creon was of Thesëus yserued,
 As he þat hadde his deeth ful wel
 deserued.
 65 And right anoon, with-uten moore
 abood,
 His baner he displayeth, and forth rood
 To Thebesward, and al his hoost bi-
 side,
 No neer Atthenes wolde he go ne ride,
 Ne take his ese fully half a day,
 70 But onward on his wey that nyght
 he lay,
 And sente anon Ypolita the queene
 And Emelye, hir yonge suster sheene,
 Vn-to the toun of Atthenes to dwelle,
 And forth he rit—ther is namoore to
 telle.
 75 The rede statue of Mars, with spere
 and targe,

So shyneth in his white baner large,
 That alle the feeldes glytteren vp and
 down;
 And by his baner born is his penoun
 Of gold ful riche, in which ther was
 ybete
 The Mynotaur, which that he slough 80
 in Crete.
 ¶ Thus rit this duc, thus rit this con-
 querour,
 And in his hoost of chivalrie the
 flour,
 Til þat he cam to Thebes, and alighte
 ffaire in a feeld ther-as he thoughte
 fighte.
 But shortly for to speken of this thyng, 85
 With Creon, which þat was of Thebes
 kyng,
 He faught, and slough hym manly
 as a knyght
 In pleyn bataille, and puttē the folk
 to flyght,
 And by assaut he wan the citee after,
 And rente adoun bothe wal[l], and 90
 sparre, and rafter;
 And to the ladyes he restored agayn
 The bones of hir housbondes, that
 were[n] slayn,
 To doon obsequies, as was tho the
 gyse.
 But it were al to longe for to deuyse
 The grete clamour and the wayment- 95
 ynge
 Thát the ladyes made at the brennynge
 O'f the bodies, and the grete honour
 That Thesëus, the noble conquerour,
 Dooth to the ladyes, whan they from
 hym wente,
 But shortly for to telle is myn entente. 00
 ¶ Whan þat this worthy duc, this
 Thesëus,
 Hath Creon slayn, and wonne Thebes
 thus,
 Stille in that feeld he took al nyght
 his reste,
 And didē with al the contree as hym
 leste.

962. al He.L.H.⁴ (Sk.), alle G., etc. [vgl. 1286]. 74. is] nys He.C. (Sk.). 78. is] was He.Eg.H.⁴ 80. slough E.G.H.⁴, wan He., etc. 92. housbondes E.Eg.H.⁴, freendes He., etc.; weren E.

05 ¶ To ransake in the taas of [the] bodyes
dede,
Hem for to strepe of harneys and of
wede,
The pilours didnen bisynesse and cure
After the bataille and disconfiture.
And so bifel þat in the taas they
founde,
10 Thurgh-girt with many a greuous blody
wounde,
Two yonge knyghtes liggyng by and
by,
Bothe in oon armes, wroght ful richely,
Of whiche two Arcita highte that oon,
A'nd that oother knyght highte Pala-
mon.
15 Nat fully quyke, ne fully dede they were,
But by here cote-armures and by hir
gere
The heraudes knewe hem best in spe-
cial
As they þat weren of the blood roial
Of Thebes, and of sustren two yborn.
20 Out of the taas the pilours han hem
torn,
And han hem caried softe vn-to the
tente
Of Theseus, and ful soone he hem
sente
To Athenes, to dwellen in prisoun
Perpetuëly, he nolde no raunsoun.
25 And when this worthy duc hath thus
ydon,
He took his hoost, and hoom he rood
anon,
With laurer crowned as a conquerour,
And ther he lyueth in ioye and in
honour
Térme of lyue—what nedeth wordes
mo?—
30 And in a tour, in angwissh and in wo,
This Palamon and his felawe Arcite
ffor eueremoore, ther may no gold hem
quite.

¶ Thus passeth yeer by yeer and day
by day,
Til[l] it fil ones, in a morwe of May,
That Emelye, þat fairer was to sene 35
Than is the lyliē vpon his stalke grene,
And fressher than the May with floures
newe—
ffor with the rose-colour stroof hir
hewe,
I noot which was the fyner of hem
two—
Er it were day, as was hir wonē to 40
do,
She was arisen and al redy dight—
ffor May wol[e] haue no slogardrie
a-nyght.
The sesoun priketh euery gentil herte,
And maketh hym out of his sleep to
sterre,
And seith, 'Arys, and do thyn ob- 45
seruaunce'
This maked Emelye haue remem-
braunce
To doon honour to May, and for to
ryse.
Yclothed was she fressh, for to deuyse;
Hir yelow heer was broyded in a tresse
Bihynde hir bak, a yerde long, I gesse; 50
And in the gardyn, at the sonne vp-riste,
She walketh vp and down, and, as hir(e)
liste,
She gadreth floures, party white and
rede,
To make a subtil gerland for hir hede,
And as an aungel heuenysshly she 55
soong.
The grete tour, þat was so thikke and
stroong,
Which of the castel was the chief
dongeoun—
Ther-as the knyghtes weren in prisoun
Of whiche I tolde yow, and tellen
shal—
Was euene ioynant to the gardyn wal, 60

1005. [the] f. He.G.H.⁴; taas] caas C.P.L.H.⁴ (id. 1009, 1020 [chaas H.⁴]). 22. he ful
soone He.C.P.L. (Sk.), he f. G. 26. rood E., ryt He., etc. 29. his lyf He., etc. (Sk., Gl.);
his f. E.G. [Ægl. 17707.] 31. Dwellen this P. and eek A. He.C.P.L. (Sk.), Dwellen thise
P. and his f. A. Eg. 33. This: alle §§. u. Edd. 39. fyner E.G.H.⁴, feireste L., fairer He.,
etc. (Sk.). 42. slogardrie E.Eg., slogardye He., etc. (Sk.). 44. hym E.Eg.H.⁴, it He., etc.
46. maked E.H.⁴, meyde Eg., maketh He., etc. 55. heueneliche G.Eg., heuenly P.H.⁴ (Sk.).

Ther-as this Emelye hadde hir pley-
yng[e].

Bright was the sonne, and cleer that
morwenyng[e];

And [this] Palamoun, this woful pri-
soner,

As was his wone, bi leue of his gayler,
65 Was rise[n], and romed in a chambre
an-heigh,

In which he al the noble citee seigh,
And eek the gardyn, ful of braunches
grene,

Ther-as this fresshe Emelye the sheene
Was in hir[e] walk, and romed vp and
doun.

70 This sorweful prisoner, this Palamoun,
Goth in the chambre romyngē to and
fro,

And to hym-self compleynyngē of his
wo;

That he was born, ful ofte he seyde,
'allas!'

And so bifel, by auenture or cas,

75 That thurgh a wyndow, thikke of
many[^]a barre

Of iren, greet and square as any sparre,
He cast his [e]yē vpon Emelya,
And ther-withal he bleynte, and cridē,
'A!'

As though he stongen were vn-to the
herte.

80 And with that cry Arcite anon vp sterte,
And seyde, 'Cosyn myn, what eyloth
thee,

That art so pale and deedly on to see?
Why cridestow? who hath thee doon
offence?

ffor Goddes louē, taak al in pacience
85 Oure prisoun, for it may noon oother
be.

Fortune hath yeue[n] vs this aduersitee;
Som wikke aspect or disposicioun
Of Saturne, by sum constellacioun,
Hath yeue[n] vs this; al-though we
hadde it sworn;

So stood the heuene whan þat we werē 90
born;

We mo[s]te endure—this is the short
and playn.'

¶ This Palamon answerde, and seyde
agayn,

'Cosyn, for sothe, of this opinioun
Thow hast a veyn ymaginacioun.

This prison caused me nat for to 95
crye,

But I was hurt right now thurgh-out
myn [e]yē

In-to myn herte, that wol my bane be.
The fairnesse of that lady þat I see
Yond in the gardyn romen to and fro
Is cause of al my cryyng and my wo. 00
I noot wher she be womman or god-
desse,

But Venus is it soothly, as I gesse.'
And ther-with-al on kneēs doun he fil,
And seyde, 'Venus, if it be thy wil
Yow in this gardyn thus to transfigure, 05
Bifore me, sorweful wrecche creature,
Out of this prisoun help þat we may
scapen,

And if so be my destynē be shapen
By eterne word to dyen in prisoun,
Of oure lynage hauē som compassioun, 10
That is so lowe ybrought by tirannye!
And with that word Arcite gan espye
Wher-as this lady romed to and fro;
And with that sighte hir beautee hurte
hym so,

That, if that Palamon *was* wounded 15
sore,

Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or
moore.

And with a sigh he seyde pitously,
'The fresshe beautee sleeth me sodeynly
Of hir(e) that rometh in the yonder
place.

And but I haue hir mercy and hir 20
grace,

That I may seen hir(e) atte leeste
weye,

1062. that E.H.⁴, þe Eg., in that He., etc.; morwenyngē E.G.H.⁴, mornyng He., etc.
63. [this] E., f. He., etc. 77. caste He.G. (Sk.). 86. yeve Eg.C.P.L. 87. wikked He.G.Eg.L.
89. yeve Eg. 91. mote He.C.P.; endure it He.G.L.H.⁴ (Sk.) [Bd. 1185.] 95. for f.
He.C.P.L. 1106. wrecche E.G., wrecched He., etc. 16. was f. E. 17. syk He.G.C.L.,
sight Eg.

I nam but deed—ther is namoore to seye.'

¶ This Palamon, whan he tho wordes herde,

Dispitously he looked, and answerde,

25 'Wheither seistow this in ernest or in pley?'

¶ 'Nay,' quod Arcite, 'in ernest, by my fey!

God help(e) me so—me list ful yuele pleye!

¶ This Palamon gan knytte his browes tweye;

'It nere,' quod he, 'to thee no greet honour

30 ffor to be fals, ne for to be traitour
To me, þat am thy cosyn and thy brother

Ysworn ful depe, and ech of vs til oother,

That, neuere for to dyen in the peyne,
Til þat deeth departe shal vs tweyne,

35 Neither of vs in loue to hyndren oother;
Nè in noon oother cas, my leuee brother,

But þat thou sholdest treweþy forthren me

In euery cas, as I shal forthren thee:
This was thyn ooth and myn also, certeyn,

40 I woot right wel—thou darst it nat withseyn!

Thus artow of my conseil, out of doute.
And now thow woldest falsly been aboute

To loue my lady, whom I loue and serue,

And euere shal til þat myn herte sterue.

45 Nay certes, false Arcite, thow shalt nat so!

I loued hir(e) first, and tolde thee my wo

As to my conseil, and [to] my brother sworn

To forthre me, as I hauē toold biforn,
ffor which thou art ybounden as a knyght

To helpen me, if it lay in thy myght, 50
Or elles artow fals, I dar wel seyn.'

¶ This Arcite ful proudly spak ageyn:
'Thow shalt,' quod he, be rather fals than I;

And thou art fals, I tellē thee outrely;
ffor par amour I loued hir(e) first er 55
thow.

What wiltow seyn? Thou wistest nat yet now

Wheither she be a womman or goddesse!

Thyn is affecioun of hoolynesse,
And myn is loue as to a creature,
ffor which I tolde thee myn auenture 60
As to my cosyn and my brother sworn.

I pose that thow louedest hir(e) biforn;
Wostow nat wel the olde clerkes sawe
That 'who shal yeue a louere any lawe?'

Loue is a gretter lawe, by my pan, 65
Than may be yeue of any erthely man.
And therfore positif lawe and swich decree

Is broke[n] al day for loue, in ech degree.

A man moot nedes loue, maugree his heed;

He may not fleen it, thogh he sholdē 70
be deed,

Al be she mayde, or wydwe, or elles wyf.

And eek it is nat likly al thy lyf
To stonden in hir grace—namoore 75
shal I;

ffor wel thou woost thy-seluen verrailly
That thou and I be dampned to prisoun.
Perpetuēlly, vs gaineth no raunsoun.
We stryue[n] as didē the houndes for the boon.

1122. is E.Eg., nys He., etc. (Sk.). 25. Wheither [pr. Wher [vgl. 1101]. 29. nere E.H.⁴, were He., etc.; to thee quod he He.Eg.G.C.P.L. 34. the deeth He.G.Eg.C.P. (Sk.). 35. hynderyn G. (hindren Sk.), hyndre He., hynder Eg., etc. 38. as E.Eg., and He., etc. (Sk.). 47. [to] E.G.Eg.H.⁴ 52. I. Arcite? 54. And E.He.Eg., But G., etc. (Sk.); outrely E.He., vttirly G.H.⁴ (Sk.), witterly Eg., etc. 56. woost He., wyst G., wost it Eg.H.⁴, wist it C.P.L. 64. [Randnote] Quis legem det amantibus. 66. of] to He., etc. (Sk.). 68. broke He.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 70. flee E.Eg.H.⁴, fligen L. 77. stryue He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.).

They foughte al day, and yet hir part
 was noon:
 Ther com a kyte, whil they werē[n] so
 wrothe,
 80 And baar away the boon bitwixe hem
 bothe.
 And therefore, at the kynges court, my
 brother,
 E'ch man for hym-self—ther is noon
 oother.
 Loue if thee list, for I loue and ay
 shal;
 And soothly, leue brother, this is al.
 85 Heerē in this prisoun moote we endure,
 And euerich of vs take his auenture!
 ¶ Greet was the strif and long bitwix
 hem tweye,
 If that I hadde leyser for to seye.
 But to theeffect. It happed on a day—
 90 To telle it yow as shortly as I may—
 A worthy duc that hightē Perothēus,
 That felawē was *in* to duc Thesēus
 Syn thilke day that they werē children
 lite,
 Was comē to Atthenes, his felawē to
 visite,
 95 And for to pleye as he was wont to do;
 ffor in this world he loued no man so,
 And he loued hym als tendrely agayn.
 So wel they louēde, as olde bookes
 sayn,
 That, whan þat oon was deed, soothly
 to telle,
 00 His felawē wente, and soughte hym
 down in helle—
 But of that storie list me nat to write.
 Duc Perothēus loued wel Arcite,
 And hadde hym knowe at Thebes yeer
 by yere;
 And finally, at requeste and preyere
 05 Of Perothēus, with-oute[n] any raun-
 soun,
 Duc Thesēus hym leet out of prisoun,
 ffrely to goon wher þat hym lyst
 ouer-al,

In swich a gyse as I yow tellen shal.
 ¶ This was the forward, pley[n]ly for
 tendite,
 Bitwixen Thesēus and hym, Arcite: 10
 That if so werē þat Arcitē were yfounded
 Euere in his-lif, by day, or nyght, or
 stounde,
 In any contree of this Thesēus,
 And he werē caught, it was acorded
 thus:
 That with a swerd he sholde lese his 15
 heed.
 Ther nas noon oother remediē ne reed,
 But takēth his leue, and homward he
 hym spedde.
 Lat hym be war: his nekke lith to
 wedde!
 ¶ How greet a sorwe suffreth now
 Arcite!
 The deeth he feeleth thurgh his 20
 herte smyte;
 He wepeth, wayleth, crieth pitously;
 To sleen hym-self he waiteth priuely.
 He seyde, 'Allas that day þat I was
 born!
 Now is my prisoun worse than biforn,
 Now is me shape eternally to dwelle, 25
 Nat in my purgatorie, but in helle.
 Allas, þat euere knew I Perothēus!
 ffor elles hadde I dwelled with Thesēus,
 Yfetēred in his prisoun eueremo,
 Thanne hadde I been in blisse, and nat 30
 in wo.
 Only the sighte of hir(e) whom þat
 I serue—
 Though þat I neuere hir grace may
 deserue—
 Wolde han suffised right ynough for
 me.
 O deere cosyn, Palamon, quod he,
 'Thyn is the victorie of this auenture! 35
 fful blisfully in prison maistow dure!
 In prisoun? Certēs nay, but in Para-
 dys!
 Wel hath ffortune y-turned thee the
 dys,

1179. whil E.D., whil þat He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 92. to E., to þis D., to þe H.⁴
 95. won E., wone G. 97. als E.C., also (as) P.L., as He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 1205. with-oute
 D.C.P.H.⁴ (Sk.). 23. the day He.D.H.⁴; I he E.D. 26. my E. (Gl.), f. He., etc. (Sk.)
 [vgl. 2228, 6071]. 27. I knew D.C.P.L. [better?]. 37. nay certes He.D.H.⁴, nay parde G.;
 in Paradys] in f. C.P.L.

That hast the sighte of hir(e), and I
thabsence.

40 ffor possible is, syn thou hast hir
presence,

And art a knyght, a worthy and an
able,

That *by* som cas, syn ffortune is
chaungeable,

Thow maist to thy desir som tyme
atteyne.

But I, þat am exiled and bareyne

45 Of alle grace, and in so greet dispeir,

That ther nys erthe, water, fir, ne eir,

Ne creature þat of hem maked is,

That may me heele, or doon confort
in this—

Wel oughte I sterue in wanhope and
distresse.

50 ffarwel, my lif, my lust, and my glad-
nesse!

¶ Allas, why pleyne folk so in com-
mune

On purueaunce of God, or of ffor-
tune,

That yeueth hem ful ofte in many^a
gyse

Wel better than they kan hem-self
deuyse?

55 Som man desireth for to han richesse,
That cause is of his moerdre or greet
siknesse;

And som man wolde out of his prisoun
fayn,

That in his hous is of his meynee
slayn.

Infinite harmes been in this mateerel

60 We witen nat what *thyng* we preyen
heere;

We fare[n] as he that dronke is as a
mous.

A dronke man woot wel [þat] he hath
an hous,

But he noot which the righte wey
is thider,

And to a dronke man the wey is slider;

And certes, in this world so faren we. 65

We seken faste after felicitee,

But we goon wrong ful often, trewely.

Thus may we seyen alle, and namely I,

That wende and hadde a greet opinioun

That, if I myghte escapen from pri- 70
soun,

Thanne hadde I been in ioye and
perfit heele,

Ther now I am exiled fro my wele.

Syn þat I may nat seen you, Emelye,

I nam but deed—ther nys no remedye.' 75

¶ Vp-on that oother syde Palamon, 75

Whan þat he wiste Arcite was agon,

Swich sorwe he maketh, þat the grete
tour

Resounded of his youlyng and clamour;

The pure fettres on his shynes grete

Were[n] of his bittre salte teeres wete. 80

'Allas,' quod he, 'Arcita, cosyn myn,

Of al oure strif, God woot, the fruyt

is thyn.

Thow walkest now in Thebes at thy

large,

And of my wo thow yeuest litel charge.

Thou mayst, syn thou hast wysdom 85

and manhede,

Assemblen al[le] the folk of oure kynre-

de,

And make a werre so sharp on this

citee,

That, by som auenture or som tretee,

Thow mayst haue hir(e) to lady and

to wyf

For whom þat I moste nedes lese 90

my lyf.

ffor as by wey of possibilitee,

Sith thou art at thy large, of prisoun

free,

And art a lord, greet is thyn auantage

Moore than is myn, þat sterue here

in a cage;

ffor I moot wepe and wayle, whil I 95

lyue,

With al the wo þat prison may me yue,

1242. by f. E. 48. heele E.D., helpe He., etc. (Sk.). 60. witen E., woot He., etc.; thyng f. E.D.; thyng þat He.G.C.P. 61. fare He., farn G. 62. þat E.G., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 68. seyen H.⁴, seyn E., etc. [vgl. 1886]; nameliche He.C.P.L. 72. Ther] That E.D. 78. Resounded E.D., Resowneth He., etc. (Sk.). 79. on E.D.L., of He., etc. 80. Weren E.G.H.⁴ 86. al He.L.H.⁴; vgl. 962. 90. moste] mot Sk., vieff. besser.

And eek with peyne þat loue me yeueth
 also,
 That doubleth al my torment and my
 wo.
 Ther-with the fyr of ialousie vp-sterne
 00 With-inne his brest, and hente hym
 by the herte
 So woodly, that he lyk was to biholde
 The boxtree, or the asshen dede and
 colde.
 ¶ Than he seyde he, 'O crueel goddes,
 þat gouerne
 This world with byndyng of youre
 word eterne,
 05 And writen in the table of atthamaunt
 Yourre parlement and youre eterne
 graunt!
 What is mankynde moore vn-to you
 holde
 Than is the sheep þat rouketh in the
 folde?
 ffor slayn is man right as another
 beest,
 10 And dwelleth eek in prison and arreest,
 And hath siknesse and greet aduersitee,
 And ofte tymes giltelees, pardee?
 ¶ What gouernance is in this prescience,
 That giltelees tormenteth innocence?
 15 And yet encresseth this al my pe-
 naunce,
 That man is bounden to his obser-
 vaunce
 ffor Goddes sake, to letten of his wille,
 Ther-as a beest may al his lust fulfille.
 And whan a beest is deed, he hath
 no peyne,
 20 But after his deeth man moot wepe
 and pleyne,
 Though in this world he haue care and
 wo;
 Withouten dout, it may stonden so.
 The answer of this lete I to dyuynys,
 But wel[l] I woot þat in this world greet
 pyne ys.
 25 Allas! I se a serpent or a thief,

That many a trewe man hath doon
 mescheef,
 Goon at his large, and where hym
 list may turne,
 But I moot been in prisoun thurgh
 Saturne,
 And eek thurgh Juno, ialous and eek
 wood,
 That hath destroyed wel ny al the 30
 blood
 Of Thebes, with hise waste walles wyde;
 And Venus sleeth me on that oother
 syde
 ffor ialousie and fere of hym, Arcite.'
 ¶ Now wol I stynte of Palamon a
 lite,
 And lete hym in his prisoun stille 35
 dwelle,
 And of Arcite forth I wol yow telle.
 ¶ The *sommer* passeth, and the nyghtes
 longe
 Encressen double wise the peynes
 stronge
 Bothe of the louere and the prisoner—
 I noot which hath the wofuller mester. 40
 ffor, shortly for to seyn, this Pala-
 moun
 Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoun,
 In cheynes and in fettres to been deed;
 And Arcite is exiled vpon his heed
 ffor euere-mo, as out of that contree, 45
 Ne neuere-mo he shal his lady see.
 Yow loueres axe I now this questoun:
 Who hath the worse, Arcite or Pala-
 moun?
 That oon may seen his lady day by
 day,
 Bút in prison he moot dwelle alway; 50
 That oother wher hym list may ride
 or go,
 But seen his lady shal he neuere-mo.
 Now demeth as yow liste, ye that kan,
 ffor I wol telle forth as I bigah.

¶ *Explicit prima Pars.**)

¶ *Sequitur pars secunda.*

1296. giue C.H.* u. so öfter (2417 auch He.). 1303. goddes cruel H.* 12. gilteles G.C.H.*; id. 1314; ähnl. 5094, 5482, 5493 u. ö. 19. he] it He.L. 20. man after his deeth (ded G.) He.G.H.* (Sk.) [better?] 23. I lete H.* (Sk., Gl.). 37. sonne E. 40. sorwefuller He., sorwefullest D.; myster He., etc. 46. he shal E.Eg., schal he H.*; ne shal He.P.L., he ne sh. C., schal G. 50. moot he He.D.C.P. 53. lyste G.L., luste H.*; list E., etc. (liste Sk., Gl.) *) Explicit, etc.: nur E.

- 55 **Whan** that Arcite to Thebes comen
was,
fful ofte a day he swelte, and seyde,
'allas'!
ffor seen his lady shal he neuere-mo;
And shortly to concluden al his wo,
So muche sorwe hadde neuere crea-
ture
- 60 That is, or shal, whil þat the world may
dure.
His sleep, his mete, his drynke is hym
biraft,
That lene he wex[eth] and drye as is
a shaft;
Hise [e]yē holwe, and grisly to bi-
holde,
His hewe falow and pale as asshen
colde,
- 65 And solitarie he was and euere allone,
And waillynge al the nyght, makynge
his mone.
And if he herde song or instrument,
Thanne wolde he wepe, he myghte nat
be stent.
So feble eek were hise spiritz and
so lowe,
- 70 And chaunged so, that no man koude
knowe
His speche nor his voys, though men
it herde,
And in his geere for al the world he
ferde,
Nat oonly lik the louteris maladye
Of Hereos, but rather lyk manye,
[¶ *Mania*]
- 75 Engendred of humour malencolik
Biforn, his owene celle fantastik;
And shortly, turned was al vp so down
Bothe habit and eek disposicioun
Of hym, this woful louter daun Arcite.
- 80 ¶ What sholde I al day of his wo
endite?
Whan he endured hadde a yeer or two
This cruell torment, and this peyne
and woo
At Thebes in his contree, as I seyde,
Vp-on a nyght, in sleep as he hym
leyde,
Hym thoughte how that the wynged 85
god Mercurie
Biforn hym stood, and bad hym to be
murie.
His slepy yerde in hond he bar vp-
righte,
An hat he werede vp-on hise heris
brighte;
Arrayed was this god, as he took
keep,
As he was whan þat Argus took his 90
sleep,
And seyde hym thus, 'To Atthenes
shaltou wende;
Ther is thee shapen of thy wo an ende.'
And with that word Arcite wook and
sterde.
'Now trewely, hou soore þat me smerte,'
Quod he, 'to Atthenes right now wol I 95
fare;
Ne for the drede of deeth shal I nat
spare
To se my lady that I loue and serue;
In hir presence I recche nat to sterue.'
¶ And with that word he caughte a
greet mirour,
And saugh þat chaunged was al his 00
colour,
And saugh his visage al in [an]other
kynde;
And right anon it ran hym in his
mynde,
That, sith his face was so disfigured
Of maladye the which he hadde en-
dured,
He myghte wel, if þat he bar hym 05
lowe,
Lyue in Atthenes eueremoore vnknowe,
And seen his lady wel ny day by day.
And right anon he chaunged his array,
And cladde hym as a poure laborer,
And all allone, saue oonly a squier 10
That knew his priuete and al his cas,
Which was disgised pourely, as he was,

1361. slep(e) E.He.Eg.P.L. (Gl.) 62. wexeth E.P. 64. falwe G.D.C.H.⁴ 76. Byforne in his H.⁴ (Sk. [Biforen], Gl.) [vgl. 590]; owene E.G.D., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 80. alway H.⁴ 85. how f. G.C. 88. vp E. 89. he] I E.D. 91. I. t'Atthenes? (Sk.); id. 1395, 1413. 1401. al] was H.⁴; another: alle ȝif. [vgl. 644, 16552, 561, etc.].

To Atthenes is he goon the nexte way;
 And to the court he wente vp-on a day,
 15 And at the gate he profreth his seruyse
 To drugge and drawe, what-so men wol deuysen.
 And, shortly of this materē for to seyn,
 He fil in offiç with a chamberleyn
 The which þat dwellynge was with Emelye;
 20 ffor he was wys, and koude soone espye
 Of euery seruauñt which that serueth here.
 Wel koude he hewen wode, and water bere;
 ffor he was yong and myghty for the nones,
 And ther-to he was long and big of bones,
 25 To doon that any wight kan hym deuysen.
 A yeer or two he was in this seruyse
 Page of the chambre of Emelye the brighte,
 And Philostrate he seyde þat he highte.
 But half so wel biloued a man as he
 30 Ne was ther neuere in court of his degree.
 He was so gentil of condicioun,
 That thurghout al the court was his renoun.
 They seyden that it were a charitee,
 That Theseus wolde enhauncen his degree,
 35 And putten hym in worshipful seruyse,
 Ther-as he myghte his vertu exercise.
 And thus with-inne a while his name is spronge
 Bothe of hise dedes and his goode tonge,
 That Theseus hath taken hym so neer,
 40 That of his chambre he made hym a squier,
 And gaf him gold to mayntene his degree.

And eek men broghte hym out of his contree,
 ffrom yeer to yeer, ful priuely his rente,
 But honestly and slyly he it spente,
 That no man wondred how þat he it 45 hadde.
 And thre yeer in this wise his lif he ladde,
 And bar hym so in pees and eek in werre,
 Ther was no man þat Theseus hath derre;
 And in this blisse lete I now Arcite,
 And speke I wol[e] of Palamon a lite. 50
 IN derknesse and horrible and strong prison
 Thise seuen yeer hath seten Palamon,
 fforpynd, what for wo and for distresse.
 Who feeleth double soor and heuy-nesse
 But Palamon, that loue destreyneth 55 so,
 That wood out of his wit he goth for wo?
 And eek ther-to he is a prisoner
 Perpetuēly, nocht oonly for a yer.
 ¶ Who koude ryme in englyssh properly
 His martirdom? ffor sothe, it am nat 60 I;
 Therefore I passe as lightly as I may.
 ¶ It fel that in the seuenthe yer, in May,
 The thridde nyght, as olde bookes seyn,
 That al this storie tellen moore pleyñ,
 Were it by auenture or destynē— 65
 As whan a thyng is shapen, it shal be—
 That, soone after the mydnyght, Palamoun,
 By helpyng of a freend, brak his prison,
 (¶) And fleeth the citee, faste as he may go.
 ffor he had[e] yeue his gayler drynke 70 so,

1415. profred D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 24. long] strong He.C.P.L. (Sk.). 25. that] what He. 62. of May He.C.P.L.

Of a claree, maad of a certeyn wyn
 With nercotikēs and opie of Thebes
 fyn,
 That al that nyght, thogh þat men
 wolde hym shake,
 The gayler sleep, he myghte nat awake.
 75 ¶ And thus he fleeth as faste as euere
 he may.
 The nyght was short, and faste by
 the day,
 That nedes-cost he moot hym-seluen
 hyde;
 And til a groue faste ther bisyde,
 With dredeful foot, thanne stalketh
 Palamon.
 80 ffor shortly, this was his opinion,
 That in that groue he wolde hym hyde
 al day,
 And in the nyght thanne wolde he take
 his way
 To Thebes-ward, his freendes for to
 preye
 On Thesēus to helpe hym to werreye.
 85 And shortly, outhēr he wolde lese his
 lif,
 Or wynnen Emelye vn-to his wyf.
 This is theeffect and his entente pleyn.
 ¶ Now wol I turne to Arcite ageyn,
 That litel wiste how ny þat was his
 care,
 90 Til þat ffortune had broght him in the
 snare.
 The bisy lark, messenger of day,
 Salueth in hir song the morwe gray,
 And firy Phebus riseth vp so brighte,
 That al the Orient laugheth of the
 lighte,
 95 And with hise stremes dryeth in the
 greues
 The siluer dropes, hangynge on the
 leues.
 And Arcita, that [is] in the court roial
 With Thesēus [h]is squier principal,
 Is risen, and looketh on the myrie
 day;

And, for to doon his obseruaunce to 00
 May,
 Remembrynge on the point of his desir,
 He on a courser, startlynge as the
 fir,
 Is ride[n] in-to the feeldes hym to pleye,
 Out of the court, were it a myle or
 tweye;
 And to the groue of which þat I yow 05
 tolde,
 By auenture, his wey he gan to holde,
 To maken hym a gerland of the greues,
 Were it of wodebynde or hawethorn
 leues,
 And loude he song ageyn the sonne
 shene:
 'Máy, with allē thy floures and thy 10
 grene,
 Wel-come be thou, faire fresshe May,
 In hope þat I som grene gete may!
 And from his courser, with a lusty
 herte,
 In-to the groue ful hastily he sterte,
 And in a path he rometh vp and down, 15
 Ther-as by auenture this Palamoun
 Was in a bussh, that no man myghte
 hym se;
 ffor soore afered of his deeth [thanne]
 was he;
 No-thing ne knew he that it was Ar-
 cite—
 God woot, he wolde hauē trowed it ful 20
 lite,—
 But sooth is seyð (go sithen many
 yeres)
 That feeld hath [e]yēn, and the wode
 hath eres.
 It is ful fair a man to bere hym euene,
 ffor al-day meeteth men at vnset
 steuene.
 fful litel woot Arcite of his felawe, 25
 That was so ny to herknen al his
 sawe;
 ffor in the bussh he sitteth now ful
 stille.

1472. With] Of E.; [Randg.] Opium Thebaicum. 77. moot] moste He., etc. (Sk.).
 97. Arcite D.H.⁴ (Sk.); is f. He.C.P.L. 98. his E.C.P.L.H.⁴, is G., the D., f. He. 1502—1931.
 Eg. fūr D. 1502. startlynge E.He., stertelynge G.Eg., stertyng C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 03. to L.;
 the f. H.⁴ 14. the] a E. (Gl.). 18. afered He.G. (ofered) H.⁴; thanne E.Eg., f. He., etc.
 24. meten He.P.

¶ Whan þat Arcite hadde romed al his
 fille,
 And songen al the roundel lustily,
 30 In-to a studie he fil al sodeynly,
 As doon thise loueres in hir queynte
 geres:
 Now in the crop(e), now down in the
 breres,
 Now vp, now down, as boket in a
 welle,
 Right as the ffriday, soothly for to
 telle,
 35 Now it shyneth, now it reyneth faste:
 Right so kan geery Venus ouer-caste
 The hertes of hir folk; right as hir
 day
 Is gereful, right so chaungeth she
 array.
 Selde is the ffriday al the wowke ylike.
 40 ¶ Whan þat Arcite had songe, he gan
 to sike,
 And sette hym down with-uten any
 moore.
 'Allas,' quod he, 'that day þat I was
 bore!
 How longe, Iuno, thurgh thy crueltee
 Woltow werreyen Thebes the citee?
 45 Allas! ybroght is to confusioun
 The blood roial of Cadme and Am-
 phioun,
 Of Cadmus, which þat was the firste
 man [¶ *Cadmus*
 That Thebes bulte, or first the toun
 bigan,
 And of the citee first was crouned
 kyng.
 50 Of his lynage am I and his of-spryng
 By verray ligne, as of the stok roial,
 And now I am so caytyf and so
 thral,
 That he that is my mortal enemy,
 I serue hym as his squier pourely.
 55 And yet dooth Iuno me wel moore
 shame;
 ffor I dar noght biknowe myn owene
 name;

But ther-as I was wont to highte Ar-
 cite,
 Now highte I Philostrate, noght worth
 a myte.
 Allas, thou felle Mars, allas Iuno!
 Thus hath your ire oure kynrede al 60
 fordo,
 Saue oonly me and wrecched Pala-
 moun,
 That Thesëus martireth in prisoun;
 And ouer al this, to sleen me outrely,
 Loue hath his firy dart so brennyngly
 Ystiked thurgh my trewe careful herte, 65
 That shapen was my deeth erst, than
 my sherte.
 Ye sleen me with youre [e]yën, Emelye,
 Ye been the cause wherfore þat I dye.
 Of al the remenant of myn oother
 care
 Ne sette I nat the montance of a tare, 70
 So þat I koudē doon aught to youre
 plesaunce.
 And with that word he fil down in
 a traunce
 A longe tyme, and after he vp-sterete.
 ¶ This Palamon, þat thoughtē þat
 thurgh his herte
 He felte a cöld swerd sodeynliche 75
 glyde,
 ffor ire he quook, no lenger wolde he
 byde.
 And whan þat he had herd Arcites
 tale,
 As he werē wood, with face deed and
 pale,
 He stirte hym vp out of the buskes
 thikke,
 And seide, 'Arcite, false traytour wikke! 80
 Now artow hent that louest my lady
 so,
 ffor whom þat I haue al this peyne
 and wo,
 And art my blood, and to my conseil
 sworn,
 As I ful ofte haue seyde thee heer
 biforn,

1530. al] E. (Gl.), so Eg., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 32. and now down C. 39. wowke E.G.Eg., wike (weke) He., etc. 60. kynrede E., lynage He., etc. 73. after E., afterward He., etc. (Gl.); he f. H.⁴ (Gl.). 75. sodeynly He.Eg.P.L. 84. seyde E.G., toold He., etc. (Sk.).

5 And hast byiaped heere duc Thesëus,
And falsly chaunged hast thy name
thus:

I wol be deed, or elles thou shalt dye,
Thou shalt nat loue my lady Emelye;
But I wol loue hire oonly, and namo!
90 ffor I am Palamon, thy mortal foo,
And though þat I no wepene haue in
this place,

But out of prison am astert by grace,
I drede noght þat outhur thow shalt
dye,

Or thou ne shalt nat louen Emelye.
95 Chees which thou wolt, or thou shalt
nat asterte.'

¶ This Arcite, with ful despitous herte,
Whan he hym knew, and hadde his talé
herd,

As fiers as leon pulled out his
swerd,

And seyde thus: 'By God þat sit aboue!
00 Nere it þat thou art sik and wood for
loue,

And eek þat thow no wepne hast in
this place,

Thou sholdest neuere out of this groue
pace,

That thou ne sholdest dyen of myn
hond!

ffor I defyë the seurete and the bond
05 Which that thou seist þat I hauë maad
to thee.

What, verray fool, thyng wel þat loue
is fre!

And I wol loue hir(e) mawgree al thy
myght.

But for as muchë thou art a worthy
knyght,

And wilnest to darreyne hire by ba-
taille,

10 Haue heer my trouthe! tomorwe I
wol nat faile,

With-oute wityng of any oother wight,
That heere I wol be founden as a
knyght,

And bryngen harneys right ynough for
thee;

And chees the beste, and leue the
worste for me.

And mete and drynke this nyght wol 15
I brynge

Ynough for thee, and clothes for thy
beddynge.

And if so be that thou my lady wynne,
And sle me in this wode ther I am
inne,

Thow mayst wel hauë thy lady, as for
me.'

¶ This Palamon answerde, 'I graunte it 20
thee.'

And thus they been departed til
amorwe,

Whan ech of hem had leyd his feith
to borwe.

O Cupide, out of alle charitee!

O regne, þat wolt no felawe hauë with
thee!

fful sooth is seyð þat loue ne lordshipe 25
Wol noght, hir thankes, hauë no
felaweshipe:

Wel fynden that Arcite and Palamon.
Arcite is ride[n] anon vn-to the toun;
And on the morwe, er it were dayes
light,

fful priuely two harneys hath he dight, 30
Bothë suffisaunt and mete to darreyne
The bataille in the feeld bitwix hem
tweyne.

And on his hors, allone as he was
born,

He carieth al the harneys hym biforn.
And in the groue, at tyme and place 35
yset,

This Arcite and this Palamon ben met.
To chaungen gan the colour in hir
face,

Right as the hunters in the regne
of Trace,

That stondeth at the gappe with a
spere,

1595. or] for H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) 96. [I. Arcita?]. 98. his] a G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 99. sit E., set G., sitteth He., etc. 1608. as muche as He.Eg.P.L. (al so m.), f. H.⁴ 10. wol] nyl He.G.P.H.⁴ 14. chees He.G.H.⁴, chese E., etc.; for] to He.G. 26. hir E.Eg., his He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 34. the] this He.G.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk.), his C.P.L. 37. To] Tho H.⁴ (Sk.). 38. hunters: Gen.; hunter Sk.

40 Whan hunted is the leon *or* the bere,
 And hereth hym comę russhyngę in
 the greues,
 And breketh bothe bowes and the
 leues,
 And thynketh: 'Heere cometh my mortal enemy!
 With-oute faile, he moot be deed or I;
 45 ffor outhur I moot sleen hym at the
 gappe,
 Or he moot sleen me, if þat me mys-
 happe.'
 So ferden they in chaungyng of hir
 hewe,
 As fer as euerich of hem oother knewe.
 ¶ Ther nas no good day, ne no saluyng,
 50 But streight, with-uten word or rehersh-
 yng,
 Euerich of hem heelp for to armen
 oother,
 As freendly as he were his owene
 brother.
 And after that, with sharpe speres
 stronge,
 They foynen ech at oother wonder
 longe.
 55 Thou myghtest wene that this Palamon
 I'n his fightyng were a wood leon,
 And as a cruel tigre was Arcite.
 As wilde bores gonne they to smyte
 That frothen whit as foom for ire
 wood—
 60 Vp to the ancle[e] foghte they in hir
 blood.
 ¶ And in this wise I lete hem fight-
 yng dwelle,
 And forth I wol[e] of Thesęus yow telle.
 The destinee, ministre general,
 That executeth in the world ouer-al
 65 The purueiaunce that God hath seyn
 biforn,
 So strong it is, þat though the world
 had sworn
 The contrarie of a thyng by ye or nay,
 Yet somtyme it shal fallen on a day

That fallęth nat eft with-inne a thou-
 sand yeer[e];
 ffor, certainly, oure appetites heer[e], 70
 Be it of werre, or pees, or hate, or loue,
 Al is this reuled by the sighte aboue.
 ¶ This mene I now by myghty Thesęus,
 That for to huntun is so desirus,
 And namely at the gretę hert in May, 75
 That in his bed ther daweth hym no
 day,
 That he nys clad, and redy for to ryde
 With hunte and horn, and houndes hym
 bisyde;
 ffor in his huntynghath he swich delit,
 That it is al his ioye and appetit 80
 To been hym-self the gretę hertes bane;
 ffor after Mars he serueth now Dyane.
 ¶ Cleer was the day, as I hauę toold
 er this,
 And Thesęus, with alle ioye and blis,
 With his Ypolita, the faire queene, 85
 And Emelye, clothed al in grene,
 On huntyngh be they riden roially;
 And to the grouę that stood ful faste
 by,
 In which ther was an hert, as men
 hym tolde,
 Duc Thesęus the streighte wey hath 90
 holde,
 And to the launde he rideth hym ful
 right,
 ffor thider was the hert wont haue his
 flight,
 And ouer a brook and so forth in his
 weye
 This duc wol han a cours at hym or
 tweye
 With houndes swiche as hym liste co- 95
 maunde.
 ¶ And whan this duc was come vn-to
 the launde,
 Vnder the sonne he looketh, and anon
 He was war of Arcite and Palamon,
 That foughten breme, as it werę bores
 two.

1640. or] and E. 41. russhyng E.Eg.C.P.; come r.] comyng H.^a 51. heelp E.He.,
 halp G. (Sk.), hilp C., helpeþ P.H.^a, helpe Eg.L. 60. Anceles He.G. (anches) Eg.
 69/70. year: heer He. 93. in E.H.^a, on He., etc. 95. as E.G.L.H.^a, as þat He., etc.
 (Sk., Gl.); lyst G., list (lust) E., etc. (Sk., Gl.); to comaunde C.H.^a 99. bores] boles
 He.C.P.L. (-y).

- 00 The brighte swerdes wenten to and fro
 So hidously, that with the leeste strook
 It semed as it wolde felle an ook.
 But what they were, no-thing he ne
 woot.
 This duc his courser with his spores
 smoot,
 05 And at a stert he was bitwix hem two,
 And pulled out a swerd, and cride,
 'Hoo!
 Namooore vp [on] peyne of lesyng of
 youre heed!
 By myghty Mars! he shal anon be
 deed
 That smyteth any strook that I may
 seen.
 10 But telleth me what mystier[s] men ye
 been,
 That been so hardy for to fighten heere
 With-outen iuge or oother officere,
 As it were in a lystes roially?
 ¶ This Palamon answerde hastily,
 15 And seyde, 'Sire, what nedeth wordes
 mo?
 We hauē the deeth deserued bothe
 two.
 Two woful wrecches been we, two
 caytyues
 That been encombred of oure owene
 lyues,
 And as thou art a rightful lord and
 iuge,
 20 Ne yif vs neither mercy ne refuge.
 But sle me first, for seinte charitee,
 But sle my felawe eek as wel as me;
 Or sle hym first, for though thou
 knowe[st] it lite,
 This is thy mortal foo, this is Arcite,
 25 That fro thy lond is banysshed on his
 heed,
 ffor which he hath deserued to be
 deed.
 ffor this is he þat cam vn-to thy gate,
 And seyde þat he highte Philostrate.
 Thus hath he iaped thee ful many^a
 yer,
 30 And thou hast maked hym thy chief
 squier,

And this is he that loueth Emelye.
 ffor sith the day is comē þat I shal
 dye,
 I make pleyonly my confessioun
 That I am thilke woful Palamoun
 That hath thy prisoun broken wikkedly: 35
 I am thy mortal foo, and it am I
 That loueth so hoote Emelye the
 brighte,
 That I wol dye present in hir sighte;
 Wherefore I axe deeth and my iuise—
 But sle my felawe in the same wise, 40
 ffor bothe han we deserued to be
 slayn!
 ¶ This worthy duc answerde anon
 agayn,
 And seyde, 'This is a short conclusioun:
 Youre owene mouth by youre con-
 fessioun
 Hath dampned yow, and I wol it re- 45
 corde.
 It nedeth noght to pyne yow with the
 corde,
 Ye shal be deed, by myghty Mars the
 rede!
 ¶ The queene anon, for verray wom-
 manhede,
 Gan for to wepe, and so dide Emelye,
 And alle the ladyes in the compaignye. 50
 Greet pitee was it, as it thoughte hem
 alle,
 That euere swich a chaunce sholde
 falle;
 ffor gentil-men they were of greet
 estaat,
 And no-thing but for loue was this
 debaat—
 And saugh hir bloody woundes, wyde 55
 and soore.
 And alle criēden, bothe lasse and
 moore,
 'Hauē mercy, lord, vp-on vs wommen
 alle!
 And on hir bare knees adoun they
 falle,
 And wolde hauē kist his feet ther-as
 he stood;
 Til at the laste aslaked was his mood, 60

1702. file E. 07. vp G.C.P.H.⁴ 10. mystiers E. (Gl.), myster He., etc. 16. disserued E.He. (Gl.). 20. yif He.G.E.L., yeue E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 23. knowe He.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk.).

ffor pitee renneth soone in gentil herte.
 And though he first for ire quook
 and sterte,
 He hath considered, shortly in a clause,
 The trespas of hem bothe, and eek the
 cause,
 65 And al-though þat his ire hir gilt
 accused,
 Yet in his reson he hem bothe ex-
 cused,
 And thus he thoughte wel þat euery man
 Wol helpe hym-self in loue, if that
 he kan,
 And eek deliuiere hym-self out of pri-
 soun;
 70 And eek his hertē hadde compassioun
 Of wommen, for they wepen euere
 in oon;
 And in his gentil herte he thoughte
 anon,
 And softe vn-to hym-self he seyde, 'ffy
 Vp-on a lord that wol hauē no mercy!
 75 But been a leon, bothe in word and
 dede,
 To hem þat been in repentaunce and
 drede,
 As wel as to a proud despitous man
 That wol maynteyne that he first bigan:
 That lord hath litel of discrecioun,
 80 That in swich cas kan no diuisioun,
 But weyeth pride and humblesse after
 oon.'
 And shortly, whan his ire is thus agoon,
 He gan to looken vp with [e]yē lighte,
 And spak thise same wordes al on
 highte:
 85 ¶ 'The god of loue, a, benedicite!
 How myghty and how greet a lord
 is he!
 Ayeyns his myght there gayneth none
 obstacles,
 He may be clepēd a god for hise
 myracles;
 ffor he kan maken, at his owene gyse,
 90 Of euerich herte as þat hym list diuyse.
 Lo heere this Arcite and this Palamoun,
 That quytly weren out of my prisoun,

And myghte han lyuē in Thebes
 roially,
 And wite[n] I am hir mortal enemy,
 And þat hir deth lith in my myght 95
 also—
 And yet hath louē, maugree hir [e]yē
 two,
 Bróght hem hyder bothe for to dye.
 Now looketh, is nat that an heigh folye?
 Whó may been a fool but if he loue?
 Bihoold, for Goddes sake, þat sit aboue! 00
 Se how they bledē! be they noght wel
 arrayed?
 Thus hath hir lord, the god of loue,
 ypayed
 Hir wages and hir fees for hir seruise,
 And yet they wenen for to been ful
 wyse
 That seruen louē for aught that may 05
 bifalle.
 But this is yet the beste game of alle,
 That she for whom they han this
 holitee
 Kan hem ther-fore as muche thank
 as me.
 She woot namoore of al this hoote
 fare,
 By God, than woot a cokkow of an 10
 hare.
 But al[l] moot ben assayed, hoot and
 coold,
 A man moot ben a fool, or yong or
 oold.
 I woot it by my-self ful yore agon;
 ffor in my tyme a seruant was I oon.
 And therfore, syn I knowe of loues 15
 payne,
 And woot hou soore it kan a man
 distreine,
 As he þat hath ben caught ofte in
 his laas:
 I yow foryeue al hoolly this trespas
 At requeste of the queen, þat kneleth
 heere,
 And eek of Emelye, my suster deere. 20
 And ye shul bothe anon vn-to me
 swere

1761: bgl. 9862. 67. And] As He.G.Eg.C. (Sk.). 74. [Ranbgl.] Notate domini E.,
 nota He. 97. I-brought H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 99. fole E.Eg.H.⁴ 1810. of] or G.Eg.P.L.H.⁴
 (Sk., Gl.).

That neuere-mo ye shal my contree
dere,
Ne make werre vp-on me, nyght ne
day,
But been my freendes in al that ye
may.

25 I yow foryeue this trespas euery-deel.
And they him swore[n] his axying faire
and weel,
And hym of lordshipe and of mercy
preyde,
And he hem graunteth grace, and thus
he seyde:

'To speke of roial lynage and richesse,
30 Though þat she were a queene or a
princesse,
Ech of you bothe is worthy, doute-
lees,
To wedden whan tyme is; *but nathe-
lees*

I speke as for my suster Emelye,
ffor whom ye hauē this strif and
ialousye.

35 Ye woot your-self, she may nat wedden
two
Atones, though ye fighten eueremo;
That oon of you, al be hym looth or
leef,

He moot go pipen in an yuy-leef;
This is to seyn: she may nat now han
bothe,

40 Al be ye neuer so ialouse, ne so
wrothe.

And for-thy I yow putte in this degree,
That ech of yow shal haue his destyne
As hym is shape, and herkneth in what
wyse;

Lo, heere your ende of that I shal
deuyse:

45 My wyl is this, for plat conclusioun,
With-outen any rê[p]plicacioun—
If that you liketh tak[e] it for the
beste—

That euerich of you shal goon where
hym leste

ffrely, with-outen raunson or daunger.
And this day fifty wykes fer ne ner, 50
Eeuerich of you shal brynge an hun-
dred knyghtes

Armed for lystes vp at alle rightes,
(¶) Al redy to darreyne hire by ba-
taille.

And this bihote I yow, with-outen faille
Vp-on my trouthe, and as I am a 55
knyght,

That wheither of you bothe þat hath
myght—

This is to seyn: that wheither he or
thow

May with his hundred, as I spak of
now,

Sleen his contrarie, or out of lystes
dryue—

Thanne shal I yeue Emelya to wyue 60
To whom þat ffortune yeueth so fair a
grace.

Tho lystes shal I maken in this place,
And God so wisly on my soule rewe,
As I shal euene iuge been and trewe,
Ye shul noon oother ende with me 65
maken,

That oon of yow ne shal be deed or
taken.

And if yow thynketh this is weel ysaid,
Seyeth youre auys, and holdeth you
apayd:

This is youre ende and youre con-
clusioun.

¶ Who looketh lightly now but Pala- 70
moun?

Who spryngeth vp for ioye but Arcite?
Who kouthe tellen, or who kouthe
endite

The ioye þat is makid in the place
Whan Thesëus hath doon so fair a
grace?

But down on knees wente euery maner 75
wight,

And thonken hym with al hir herte
and myght,

1826. swore P.H.⁴, sworne L. 28. thus] thanne He.Eg. 32. but nathelees] doutelees E.
37. lief E.He.P. 38. go f. E. 39. now f. C.L.H.⁴ (Gl.); han E.G., haue He., etc. (Gl.).
47. tak G.H.⁴ (Sk.), takeþ C.L. 60. Thanne] Him H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 62. Tho E., The
He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 68. Sey He.C.L.H.⁴ 72. telle: alle þi. (Sk., Gl.); koude it endyte
He.Eg.C.P.L. (Sk.). 76. thonken E.He., thonked Eg., etc. (Sk.).

And namely the Thebans often sithe.
And thus with good hope and with
herte blithe
They take[n] hir leue, and homward
gonne they ride

80 To Thebes, with hise olde walles wyde.

¶ *Explicit secunda pars.*

¶ *Sequitur pars tercia.*

I trowe men wolde deme it negligence
If I foryetē to tellen the dispenche
Of Thesēus, that gooth so bisily
To maken vp the lystes roially;
85 That swich a noble théâtre as it was,
I dar wel seyen, in this world ther
nas.

The circuit a myle was aboute,
Walled of stoon, and dyched al with-
oute.

Round was the shap, in manere of
compaas,

90 fful of degrees, the heighte of sixty
pas,

That, whan a man was set on o degree,
He lette nat his felawē for to see.

¶ Estward ther stood a gate of mar-
bul whit,

Westward right swich another in the
opposit;

95 ¶ And shortly to concluden: swich a
place

Was noon in erthe, as in so litel space;
ffor in the lond ther was no crafty
man

That gēométrie or *ars-metrik* kan,
Ne potreitour, ne keruer(e) of ymages

00 That Thesēus ne yaf *hym* mete and
wages,

The théâtre for to maken and deuyse;
And, for to doon his ryte and sacrificise,
He estward hath, vp-on the gate aboue,

In worshi(e) of Venus, goddess(e) of loue,
05 Doon make an *auter* and an oratorie.

And on the westward *sidē*, in memorie

Of Mars, he maked hath right swich
another,

That coste largely of gold a fother.
And northward, in a touret on the
wal,

Of alabastre whit and reed coral, 10

An oratorie, riche for to see,
In worship(e) of Dyane of chastitee
Hath Thesēus doon wrought in noble
wyse.

¶ But yet hadde I foryeten to deuyse
The noble keruyng and the portrei- 15
tures,

The shap, the contenance, and the
figures

That weren in thise oratories thre.

¶ ffirst in the temple of Venus maystow
se,

Wrought on the wal, ful pitous to bi-
holde,

The broken slepes and the sikes colde, 20
The sacred teeris and the wayment-

ynge,
The firy strokes of the desiryng(e),
That loues seruauantz in this lyf en-
duren;

The othes that her couenantz assuren;
Plesaunce and hope, desir, foolhardy- 25
nesse,

Beautee and youthe, bauderie, richesse,
Charmes and force, lesynges, flaterye,
Despense, bisynesse, and ialousye,
That werē of yelwe gooldes a ger-
land,

A'nd a cokkow sittynge on hir hand; 30

ffēstes, instrumentz, caroles, daunces,
Lust and array, and allē the circum-
staunces

Of louē, whiche þat I rekned haue and
[rekne] shal,

By ordre weren peynted on the wal,
And mo than I kan make of mencion. 35
ffor soothly, al the mount of Citheroun,

1878. with herte] with f. He.Eg.P.H.⁴ 79. taken E.L.H.⁴ (Gl.), take He., etc.
80. hise E.Eg., f. He., etc. 85. That] & H.⁴ 86. seyn (say): alle f. [vgl. 1268, 3032];
in] þat in H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 92. lette E., letted He., etc. (Sk.). 96. lite (litel) a He.Eg.C.L.
98. metrike C.P.H.⁴ 1900. hym gaf G., ne gain him C., ne gaue him P., ne gaf hem H.⁴;
hym f. E., etc. or. for f., to devise P.L. 05. maad He.Eg. 06. on the f. Eg.H.⁴ (of þe
C., in þe L.) (Sk., Gl.); side: nur P.; in the mynde and in memory H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).
22. of] and E.H.⁴ 33. þat f. P.H.⁴; haue: nur E.; rekned] reken G. (Sk., Gl.); [rekne]:
alle f. [vgl. 1360, 6089, 8521, 10914].

Ther Venus hath hir principal dwel-
 lyng,
 Was shewed on the wal in portrey-
 ynge,
 40 With al the gardyn and the lustynesse.
 Nat was foryete[n] the porter Ydel-
 nesse,
 Ne Narcissus the faire of yore agon,
 Ne yet the folye of kyng Salamon,
 (¶) And eek the grete strengthe of Er-
 cules,
 Thenchauntementz of Medea and Circes,
 45 Ne of Turnus, with the hardy fiers
 corage,
 The riche Cresus, kaytyf in seruage,
 Thus may ye seen þat wysdom ne
 richesse,
 Beaute ne sleighte, strengthe, hardy-
 nesse
 Ne may with Venus holde champartie;
 50 ffor as hire list the world than may she
 gye.
 Lo, alle thise folk so caught were in
 hir las,
 Til they for wo ful ofte seyde, 'allas'
 Suffiseth heere ensamples oon or two,
 And though I koude rekene a thou-
 sand mo.
 55 The statue of Venus, glorious for to se,
 Was naked, fletyng in the large see,
 And fro the nauple doun al couered
 was
 With wawes grene, and brighte as any
 glas.
 A citole in hir right hond hadde she,
 60 And on hir heed, ful semely for to se,
 A rose-gerland, fressh and wel smel-
 lyng;
 Aboute hir heed hir dowues flikerynge.
 Biforn hir(e) stood hir sone Cupido;
 Vp-on his shuldres wynges hadde he
 two,
 65 And blynd he was, as it is often
 seene;

A bowe he bar and arwes brighte and
 kene.
 ¶ Why sholde I nocht as wel eek telle
 yow al
 The portreiture that was vp-on the wal
 With-inne the temple of myghty Mars
 the rede?
 Al peynted was the wal, in lengthe and 70
 brede,
 Lyk to the estres of the grisly place
 That highte the grete temple of Mars
 in Trace,
 In thilke colde, frosty regioun
 Ther-as Mars hath his souereyn man-
 sioun.
 ¶ ffirst on the wal was peynted a forest, 75
 In which ther dwelleth neither man ne
 best,
 With knotty, knarry, bareyne treës olde,
 Of stubbes sharpe, and hidouse to bi-
 holde,
 In which ther ran a rumbel and a
 swough,
 As though a storm sholde bresten 80
 euery bough;
 And downward from an hille, vnder a
 bente,
 Ther stood the temple of Mars army-
 potente,
 Wroght al of burned steel, of which
 the entree
 Was long and streit, and gastly for to
 see;
 And ther-out cam[e] a rage and such[e] 85
 a veze,
 That it made al the gate for to rese.
 The northren light in at the dores
 shoon,
 ffor wyndowe on the wal ne was ther
 noon,
 Thurgh which men myghten any light
 discerne.
 The dores were al of adamant eterne, 90
 Yclenched ouerthwart and endelong

1940. foryete L.H.⁴ 42. And E.G., Ne He., etc.; id. 1943 (Sk., Gl.). 43. eek E.G.H.⁴,
 yet He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 48. ne hardynesse G.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 49. holde] maken He.D.
 59. I. righte (P.L.)... had (D.P.L.)? 65. is] was E. 76. dwelled C.L.H.⁴, wonneþ P.
 79. and E.P., in He., etc. 85. [über veze] i. impetus E.He., am Rande D. 86. gate]
 gates] C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 90. dore was E.He.D.P. [vgl. ital.: le porte eran]; al(l)e
 G., etc. (Sk.).

With iren tough; and for to make it
strong,
Euery pyler, the temple to sustene,
Was tonne greet, of iren bright and
shene.
95 ¶ Ther saugh I first the dirke ymagin-
yng
Of felonye and *al* the compassyng:
The crueel ire, reed as any glede;
The pykepurs, and *eek* the pale drede;
The smyler(e), with the knyf vnder
the cloke;
00 The shepne, brennyngē with the blake
smoke;
The tresoun of the mordryng[e] in the
bedde;
The open werre, with woundes al
bibleddē;
Contek, with bloody knyf and sharp
manace:
Al ful of chirkyng was that sory place.
05 ¶ The sleer(e) of hym-self yet saugh
I ther;
His herte-blood hath bathed al his
heer;
The nayl, ydryuen in the shode a-nyght;
The colde deeth, with mouth gapyng
vp-right.
Amyddes of the temple sat meschaunce,
10 With disconfort and sory contenaunce.
¶ Yet saugh I woodnesse, laughynge
in his rage;
Armed compleint, out-hees, and fiers
outrage;
The careyne in the busk, with throt
ycoreue,
A thousand slayn, and nat [oon] of
qualm ystorue;
15 The tiraunt, with the pray by force
yraft;
The toun destroyed, ther was no-thing
laft.
¶ Yet saugh I brent the shippes hop-
pesteres;

The hunte strangled with the wilde
beres;
The sowē freten the child right in
the cradel;
The cook yscalt for al his longe ladel. 20
¶ Noght was foryete[n] by the infor-
tune of Marte
The cartere ouer-ryden with his carte,
Vnder the wheel ful lowe he lay adoun.
¶ Ther were also of Martes diuisioun
The barbour, and the bocher, and the 25
smyth,
That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his
styth.
¶ And al aboue, depeynted in a tour,
Saugħ I conquest sittynge in greet
honour,
With the sharpe swerd ouer his heed
Hangynge by a soutil twynes threed. 30
¶ Depeynted was the slaughtre of Iu-
lius,
Of grete Nero, and of Antonius;
Al be þat thilke tymē they were vnborn,
Yet was hir deeth depeynted ther biforn
By manasyngē of Mars, right by fi- 35
gure;
So was it shewed in that portreiture,
As is depeynt[ed] in the cercles aboue
Who shal be slayn, or elles deed for
loue.
Suffiseth oon ensample in stories olde—
I may nat rekene hem alle, though 40
I wolde.
The statue of Mars vp-on a carte stood
Armed, and looked grym as he were
wood;
And ouer his heed ther shynen two
figures
Of sterres, that been cleped in scrip-
tures,
That oon Puellá, that oother Rubēus. 45
This god of armes was arrayed thus:
A wolf ther stood biforn hym at his
feet

1996. al f. E.G. 98. eek f. E.G. 2001. bed He.G.H.⁴ [vgl. 3267]. 02. bibledd He.G.H.⁴
10/11. verb., 12—17 f. H.⁴ 13. busk E.C.L., bussh He., etc. (Sk.). 14. [oon] E. 16. ng
laft: þäter E. 19. freetyng D.P.L. 20. yscalded: alle þij.; yscalt: f. t.Br., § 170e.
25. barbour] laborer E.G. 37. &ff. depeynted; depeynt: f. 12888; the cercles] sterres H.⁴;
the st. (Sk., Gl.), the certres E., etc. [vgl. Skogan 9]. 40. f. H.⁴

With [e]yën rede, and of a man he
eet.

With soutil pencil was depeynt[ed] this
storie

50 In redoutynge of Mars and of his
glorie.

NOw to the temple of Dyane the
chaste,

As shortly as I kan, I wol me haste
To telle yow al the descripsioun.

Depeynted been the walles vp and down
55 Of huntyng and of shamefast chastitee.

¶ Ther saugh I how woful Calistopee,
Whan þat Diane agreued was with
here,

Was turned from a womman til a
bere,

And after was she maad the loode-
sterre:

60 Thus was it peynt[ed], I kan seye
yow no ferre.

Hir sone is eek a sterre, as men may
see.

¶ Ther saugh I Dane yturned til a
tree—

I mene nat the goddesse Diane,
But Penneus doughter, which þat highte
Dane—;

65 ¶ Ther saugh I Attheon, an hert
ymaked

ffor vengeaunce þat he saugh Diane
al naked.

I saugh how þat hise houndes haue
hym caught

And freten hym, for þat they knew
hym naught.

¶ Yet peynted was a litel forther-moor
70 How Atthalaunte hunted the wilde
boor,

And Meleagree, and many another mo,
ffor which Dyane wroghte hym care
and wo.

¶ Ther saugh I many another wonder
storie,

The whiche me list nat drawn to me-
morie.

¶ This goddesse on an hert ful [wel] 75
hye seet,

With smale houndes al aboute hir feet,
And vndernethe hir feet she hadde
a moone;

Wexynge it was, and sholde wanye
soone.

In gaude grene hir statue clothed was,
With bowe in honde, and arwes in a 80
cas.

Hir [e]yën caste she ful lowe adoun,
Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.

¶ A womman trauaillinge was hir(e)
biforn;

But, for hir child so longe was vn-
born,

fful pitously Lucyna gan she calle, 85
And seyde, 'Help, for thou mayst best
of alle!'

Wel koude he peynten lifly that it
wroghte;

With many a floryn he the hewes
boghte.

NOw been the lystes maad, and The-
sëus,

That at his grete cost arrayed thus 90
The temples and the theatre euery-
deel,

Whan it was doon, hym lyked wonder
weel.

But stynte I wol[e] of Thesëus a lite,
And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

¶ The day approacheth of hir retourn- 95
ynge,

That euerich sholde an hundred
knyghtes brynge,

The bataille to darreyne, as I yow
tolde;

And til Athenes, hir couenant[z] for to
holde,

Hath euerich of hem broght an hundred
knyghtes,

Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes; 00
And sikerly, ther trowed many a man

That neuere sithen that the world bi-
gan,

2049. was depeynt Sk. [-ed \$ff.; bgl. 2037 u. 2060]; depeynted was H.⁴ (Gl.).
59. [Randgl.] Vrsa maior. 60. peynt Sk. [i. o.]; yow f. H.⁴; seye He.C. [E. 9199, etc.].
62. Dane] dyane Har. 4. 69. was f. E. 75. wel f. He.D.L.H.⁴, ful f. G. 89. the E., thise
He., etc. (Sk.).

As for to speke of knyghthod of hir
 hond,
 As fer as God hath makid see or lond,
 05 Nas of so fewe so noble a compaignye.
 ffor euery wight that louede chualrye,
 And wolde, his thankes, han a passant
 name,
 Hath preyed þat he myghte been of
 that game,
 And wel was hym that ther-to chosen
 was!
 10 ffor if ther fillē to morwe swich a caas,
 Ye knowen wel þat euery lusty knyght
 That loueth paramours, and hath his
 myght—
 Were it in Engelond or elles-where—
 They wolde, hir thankes, wilnen to be
 there,
 15 To fighte for a lady—benedicitee!
 It were a lusty sighte for to see!
 ¶ And right so ferden they with Pala-
 mon.
 With hym ther wenten knyghtes many
 on;
 Somme wol ben armed in an hau-
 bergeon
 20 And in bristplate, and in a light
 gypon;
 And somme woln haue a paire plates
 large;
 And somme woln haue a Pruce-sheeld
 or a targe;
 Somme woln ben armed on hir legges
 weel,
 And haue an *ax*, and somme a *mace*
 of steel:
 25 Ther is no newe gyse that it nas old.
 A'rmed were they, as I haue yow
 told,
 E'uerych after his opinioun.
 Ther maistow seen, comynge with Pala-
 mon,
 Lygurge hym-self; the grete kyng of
 Trace.
 30 Blak was his berd, and manly was his
 face;

The cercles of hise [e]yēn in his heed,
 They gloweden bitwyxen yelow and reed,
 And lyk a grifphon looked he aboute,
 With kempe heeris on hise browes
 stoute;
 Hise lymes grete, hise brawnes harde 35
 and stronge,
 Hise shuldres brode, hise armes rounde
 and longe;
 And, as the gyse was in his contree,
 fful hye vpon a chaar of gold stood
 he,
 With foure white boles in the trays.
 In stede of cote-armure ouer his har- 40
 nays,
 With nayles yelwe and brighte as
 any gold,
 He hadde a beres skyn, colblak, for-old.
 His longē heer was kembd bihynde his
 bak,
 As any rauēes fethere it shoon for-
 blak;
 A wrethe of gold, arm-greet, of huge 45
 wighte
 Vpon his heed, set ful of stones brighte,
 Of fyne rubyes, and of dyamauntz.
 Aboute his chaar ther wenten white
 alauntz,
 Twenty and mo, as grete as any steer,
 To hunten at the leon or [or] the deer, 50
 And folwed hym, with mosel faste
 ybounde,
 Colerēd of gold, and tourettēs fyled
 rounde.
 An hundred lordes hadde he in his
 route,
 Armed ful wel, with hertes stierne and
 stoute.
 With Arcita, in stories as men fynde, 55
 The grete Emetrēus, the kyng of Inde,
 Vp-on a steede bay trapped in steel,
 Couerēd in clooth of gold, dyapred
 weel,
 Cam ridynge lyk the god of armes,
 Mars;
 His cote-armure was of clooth of Tars, 60

2104. or] and He.D.G.L. 08. preyd E.He., preide P.L., preyed G., etc. 20. And
 f. H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); In a bright brest plat H.⁴; in a Brest plate He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); and a
 light (litel) D.P., and a H.⁴ 23. hir (here) E.H.⁴, his He., etc. 25. is] nys He.D.C.H.⁴
 (Sk.), nas P. 38. he: [päter E. 52. Colerēd] Coleres C.P.L. (Sk.). 55. Arcite E.P.

Couched with perles white, and rounde
and grete;

His sadel was of brend gold newe
ybete;

A' mantel vpon his shulder hangyng,
Brat-ful of rubyces rede, as fyr spark-
lyng.

65 His crispe heer lyk rynges was yronne,
And that was yelow, and glytered as the
sonne;

His nose was heigh, his [e]yēn bright
citrin,

His lippes rounde; his colour was san-
gwyn;

A fewe frakenes in his face yspreynd,
70 Bitwixen yelow and somdel blak
ymeynd;

And as a leon he his lookyng caste.
Of fyue and twenty yeer his age I
caste;

His berd was wel bigonne for to
sprynge;

His voys was as a trompe thonderyng.
75 Vp-on his heed he wered of laurer
grene

A gerland, fressh and lusty for to
sene;

Vp-on his hand he bar, for his deduyt,
An egle tame, as any lilye whyt.

An hundred lordes hadde he with hym
there,

80 Al armed, saue hir heddes, in al hir
gere,

fful richely in alle maner thynges.
ffor trusteth wel þat dukes, erles,
kynges

Werē gadēred in this noble com-
paignye,

ffor loue and for encrees of chialrye.
85 Aboutē this kyng ther ran on euery
part

fful many a tamē leon and leopard.
And in this wisē thise lordes, alle and
some,

Been on the Sunday to the citee come

Aboutē pryme, and in the toun alight.

¶ This Thesēus, this duc, this worthy
knyght,

Whan he had broght hem in-to his
citee,

And inned hem, euerich in his degree,
He festeth hem, and dooth so greet

labour
To esen hem and doon hem al honour,

That yet men weneth þat no mannes wit 95
Of noon estaat ne koude amenden it.

¶ The mynstralcyē, the seruice at the
feeste,

The grete yiftes to the meeste and
leeste,

The riche array of Thesēus paleys;
Ne who sat first ne last vp-on the deys; 100

What ladyes fairest been or best daunc-
yng,

Or which of hem kan *carole* best and
syng,

Ne who moost felyngly speketh of
loue;

What haukes sitten on the perche
aboue,

What houndes liggen in the floor 105
adoun—

Of al this make I now no mencioune,
But al theeffect, that thynketh me the

beste:

Now cometh the point, and herkneth
if yow leste.

The Sunday nyght, er day bigan to
sprynge,

Whan Palamon the larkē herde syng— 110
Al-though it nere nat day by houres
two,

Yet song the larke, and Palamon also—
With hooly herte and with an heigh

corage,
He roos to wenden on his pilgrimage

Vn-to the blisful Cithereā benigne— 115
I mene Venus, honourable and digne—

And in hir house he walketh forth a-
paas

2163. Mantelet He.D.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). [§gl. 472.] 64. Bretful He., etc. (Sk.).
74. thondryng E.P.L. (Gl.). 80. heddes E.He., hedis G., etc. 92. in] after P., at He., etc.
95. maner E. 2200. ne] or He.G., and P. 02. carole] dauncen alle §ff. (Sk., Gl.); vgl.
B.D. 848/49; and E.He., or G., etc. 05. in E.G.H.⁴, on He., etc. (Sk.). 12. also E.G.H.⁴,
right tho He., etc. 15. Cythera G.P.H.⁴

Vn-to the lystes, ther hir[e] temple
 was,
 And doun he kneleth with ful humble
 cheere
 20 And herte soor, and seyde in this
 manere:
 [¶ *The preyere of Palamon.*
 [¶ *to Venus goddess of loue.*
 'Faireste of faire, o lady myn Venus,
 Doughter to Ioue and spouse of Vul-
 canus,
 Thow glader(e) of the Mount of Cithe-
 ron!
 ffor thilke loue thow haddest to Adoon,
 25 Hauē pitee of my bittre teeris smerte,
 And taak myn humble preyere at thyn
 herte!
 Allas! I ne haue no langage to telle
 Theffectes ne the tormentz of myn
 helle.
 Myn herte may myne harmes nat bi-
 wreye,
 30 I am so confus, that I kan noght seye
 But mercy, lady bright, that knowest
 weele
 My thought, and seest what harmes
 þat I feele!
 Considere al this, and rewe vp-on my
 soore
 As wisly as I shal for eueremoore,
 35 Emforth my myght, thy trewe seruant
 be,
 And holden werre alwey with chastitee:
 That make I myn auow, so ye me
 helpe.
 I kepe noght of armes for to yelpē,
 Nē I ne axē nat tomorwē to hauē
 victorie,
 40 Ne renoun in this cas, ne veyne-glorie
 Of pris of armes blowen vp and doun,
 But I wolde haue fully possessioun
 Of Emelye, and dye in thy seruyse—
 ffynd thow the manere hou, and in
 what wyse!
 45 I recche nat but it may bettre be

To hauē victorie of hem, or they of
 me,
 So that I hauē my lady in myne
 armes.
 ffor though so be that Mars is god of
 armes,
 Youre vertu is so greet in heuēne aboue,
 That, if yow list, I shal wel hauē my 50
 loue.
 ¶ Thy temple wol I worshiþe eueremō,
 And on thyn auter, where I ride or go,
 I wol doon sacrifice, and fires beete.
 And if ye wol nat so, my lady sweete,
 Thanne preye I thee, tomorwe with a 55
 spere
 That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere:
 Thanne rekke I noght, whan I hauē
 lost my lyf,
 Though that Arcita wyne hir(e) to his
 wyf.
 This is theffect and ende of my preyere:
 Yif me my loue, thow blisful lady 60
 deere!
 ¶ Whan the orison was doon of Pala-
 mon,
 His sacrifice he dide, and that anon
 fful pitously, with alle circumstaunces,
 Al telle I noght as now hise obseruaun-
 ces.
 But atte laste the statue of Venus 65
 shook,
 And made a signe, wher-by þat he took
 That his preyere accepted was that
 day;
 ffor thogh the signe shewed a delay,
 Yet wiste he wel þat graunted was his
 boone,
 And with glad herte he wente hym 70
 hoom ful soone.
 The thridde houre in-equal that Pala-
 mon
 Bigan to Venus temple for to gon,
 Vp roos the sonne, and vp roos
 Emelye,
 And to the temple of Dýane gan hye.

2219. with ful E., and with He., etc. (Sk.); cheer E. 20. and E.H.⁴, he He., etc. (Sk.); in this manere E., as ye shal heere He., etc. (Sk.). [39l. 858.] 22. of Ioue He.H.⁴; of Vulcanus E.G., to V. He., etc. 63/64. circumstance: obseruaunce E.G. 74. gan she P.H.⁴ (Gl.).

75 Hir maydens þat she thider with hir(e)
ladde,
fful redily with hem the fyr they hadde,
Thencens, the clothes, and the reme-
nant al
That to the sacrifice longen shal:
The hornes fulle of meeth, as was the
gyse—
80 Ther lakked noght to doon hir sacri-
fise.
¶ Smokynge the temple, ful of clothes
faire,
This Emelye, with herte debonaire.
Hir body wessh with water of a welle.
But hou she dide hir ryte I dar nat
telle,
85 But it be any-thing in general;
And yet it were a game to heeren al.
To hym þat meneth wel it were no
charge,
But it is good a man been at his
large.
¶ Hir brighte heer was kempd, vn-
tressed al;
90 A coroune of a grene ook cerial
Vp-on hir heed was set ful fair and
meete.
Two fyres on the auter gan she beete,
And dide hir thynges, as men may
biholde
In Stace of Thebes and thise bookes
olde.
95 Whan kyndled was the fyr with pitous
cheere,
Vn-to Dyanę she spak as ye may heere:
[¶ *The preyere of Emelye to
dyane goddesse of Maydens.*
'O chaste goddesse of the wodes grene,
To whom bothe heuene and erthe and
see is sene,
Queene of the regne of Pluto derk and
lowe,
00 Goddess of maydens, that myn herte
hast knowe
fful many a yeer, and woost what I
desire—

As keep(e) me fro thy vengeaunce and
thyn ire,
That Attheon aboughte cruelly!
Chaste goddessel wel wostow þat I
Desire to ben a mayden al my lyf, 05
Ne neuere wol I be no loue ne wyf.
I am, thow woost, yet of thy com-
paignye
A mayde, and loue huntynge and
venerye,
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,
And noght to ben a wyf, and be with 10
childe;
Noght wol I knowe the compaignye of
man.
Now help me, lady, sith ye may and
kan,
ffor tho thre formes þat thou hast in
thee!
And Palamon, that hath swich loue
to me,
And eek Arcite, that loueth me so 15
soore,
This grace I preye thee with-oute
moore,
As sende loue and pees bitwixe hem
two;
And fro me turne away hir hertes so,
That al hir hoote loue and hir desir,
And al hir bisy torment, and hir fir 20
Be queynt, or turned in another place.
And if so be thou wolt do me no grace,
Or if my destynee be shapen so,
That I shal nedes haue oon of hem
two,
As sende me hym þat moost desireth 25
me.
Bihoold, goddesse of clene chastitee,
The bittre teeris that on my chekes
falle!
Syn thou art mayde and kepere of vs
alle,
My maydenhedę thou kepe and wel
conserue,
And whil I lyue a mayde I wol thee 30
serue!

2276. ladde E. 87. nere He.C.L. 88. been E.D., be He., etc. 94. thise] othere He.D., þe H.⁴ [nidht in Statius, sonbern in Tes. VII, 75f.]. 2311. the E.H.⁴, f. He., etc. (Sk.). 17. As He.D. (Sk., Gl.), And E., etc. [vgl. 2325]. 21. or] and He.G.D. 22. do me no E.P.H.⁴, noght do me He., etc. (Sk.). 23. Or] And E.

¶ The fires brenne vp-on the auter
cleere,
Whil Emelye was thus in hir preyere.
But sodeynly she saugh a sighte
queynte:
ffor right anon oon of the fyres queynte,
35 And quyked again, and after that anon
That oother fyr was queynt and al agon,
And as it queynte, it made a whist-
lynge,
As doon thise wete brondes in hir
brennynge,
And at the brondes ende out ran
anon,
40 As it were bloddy drops many oon,
ffor which so soore agast was Emelye,
That she was wel ny mad, and gan to
crye;
ffor she ne wiste what it signyfyed.
But oonly for the feere thus hath she
cried,
45 And weep, that it was pitee for to
heere.
And ther-with-al Dyane gan appeere,
With bowe in honde, right as an
hunteresse,
And seyde, 'Doghter, stynte thyn heu-
nesse!
[¶ *The answeere of Dyane*
[¶ *to Emelye.*
Among the goddes hye it is affermed,
50 And by eterne word write[n] and con-
fermed
Thou shalt ben wedded vn-to oon of
tho
That han for thee so muchel care and
wo;
But vn-to which of hem, I may nat
telle.
ffarwel! for I ne may no lenger dwelle.
55 The fires which that on myn auter
brenne
Shulle thee declaren, er that thou go
henne,
Thyn auenture of loue, as in this cas.'
And with that word the arwes in the
caas

Of the goddesse clatren faste and
rynge.
And forth she wente, and made a 60
vanysshynge,
ffor which this Emelye astoned was,
And seyde, 'What amounteth this, alas?
I putte me in thy proteccioun,
Dyane, and in thy disposicioun.'
And hoom she goth anon the nexte 65
weye.
This is theeffect, ther is namoor to
seye.
The nexte houre of Mars folwyng this,
Arcite vn-to the temple walked is
Of fierse Mars, to doon his sacrificise
With alle the rytes of his payen wyse. 70
With pitous herte and heigh deuocioun,
Right thus to Mars he seyde his orisoun:
[¶ *The orison of Arcite*
[¶ *to Mars god of Armes.*
'O stronge god, that in the regnes colde
Of Trace honoured art and lord y-
holde,
(¶) And hast in euery regne and euery 75
lond
Of armes al the brydel in thyn hond,
And hem fortunest as thee lyst deuyse,
Accepte of me my pitous sacrificise!
If so be that my youthe may deserue,
And þat my myght be worthy for to 80
serue
Thy godhede, þat I may been oon of
thyne:
Thanne preye I thee to rewe vp-on
my pyne.
ffor thilke payne and thilke hoothe fir
In which thou whilom brendest for
desir,
Whan þat thou vsedest the bēautee 85
Of faire yonge fresshe Venus free,
And haddest hir(e) in armes at thy
wille—
Al-though thee ones on a tyme mysfille,
Whan Vulcanus hadde caught thee in
his las,
And foonde thee liggyng by his wyf, 90
allas!—

2337. whistlynge E.He.C. 50. writt P., write H.⁴ (Sk.). 52. muchel E.C., muche, etc.,
He., etc. 56. declare E.C.H.⁴ 66. ther is] ther nys He.C.H.⁴ 85. gret bewte H.⁴ (Sk.).
[8gl. Ov., Met. IV, 171 ff.]

ffor thilke sorwe that was in thyn herte,
 Hauē routhe as wel vp-on my peynes
 smerte!
 I am yong and vnkonnyng, as thow
 woost,
 And, as I trowē, with loue offended
 moost
 95 That euere was any lyues creature.
 ffor she þat dooth me al this wo en-
 dure
 Ne reccheth neuere wher I synke or
 fleete,
 And wel I woot, er she me mercy
 heete,
 I moot with strengthe wynne hir(e) in
 the place;
 00 And wel I woot withouten help or
 grace
 Of thee ne may my strengthe noght
 auaille.
 Thanne help me, lord, tomorwe in
 my bataille
 For thilke fyr that whilom brente thee,
 As wel as thilke fyr now brenneth me,
 05 And do that I tomorwe hauē victorie:
 Myn be the trauaille, and thyn be the
 glorie!
 Thy souereyn temple wol I moost
 honouren
 Of any place, and alwey moost labouren
 In thy plesaunce and in thy craftes
 stronge;
 10 And in thy temple I wol my baner
 honge,
 And alle the armes of my compaignye;
 And euere-mo, vn-to that day I dye,
 Eterne fir I wol biforn thee fynde,
 And eek to this auow I wol me bynde:
 15 My beerd, myn heer, that hongeth long
 adoun,
 That neuere yet ne felte offensioun
 Of rasour nor of shere, I wol thee
 yue,
 And ben thy trewe seruant whil I lyue.
 Now, lord, hauē routhe vp-on my
 sorwes soore,

Yif me [the] victorie, I aske thee na- 20
 moore!
 The preyere stynt of Arcita the stronge,
 The rynges on the temple dorē that
 honge
 And eek the dores clatereden ful faste,
 Of which Arcita som-what hym agaste.
 The fyres brende[n] vp-on the auter 2
 brighte,
 That it gan al the temple for to lighte,
 And sweete smel the ground anon vp-
 yaf;
 And Arcita anon his hand vp-haf,
 And moore encens in-to the fyr he
 caste,
 With othere rytes mo, and atte laste 3
 The statue of Mars bigan his hauberk
 rynges,
 And with that soun he herde a mur-
 muryng
 fful lowe and dym, and seyde thus:
 'Victorie,'
 ffor which he yaf to Mars honour
 and glorie.
 And thus with ioye and hope wel to 3
 fare,
 Arcite anon vn-to his in is fare,
 As fayn as fowel is of the brighte
 sonne.
 ¶ And right anon swich strif ther is
 bigonne
 For thilke grauntyng in the heuene
 aboue
 Bitwixe Venus, the goddessse of love, 4
 And Mars, the stierne god armypo-
 tente,
 That Iuppiter was bisy it to stente;
 Til that the pale Saturnus, the colde,
 That knew so manye of auentures olde,
 ffoond in his olde experience an[d] 4
 art,
 That he ful soone hath plesed euery
 part.
 As sooth is seyde, elde hath greet
 auantage;
 In elde is bothe wysdom and vsage;

2420. [the] f. Sk. [Ægl. 2405.] 21. stynte G.C.L. (Sk.). 25. brende He.G. (Sk.).
 27. And] A He.G.D.H.⁴ 30. last E.D.P.H.⁴ 33. and seyde] þat s. G.C.P.L. (Sk.). 45. and
 E.D.P., an He., etc. 47 ff.: Rom. Rose 13022 ff.

- Men may the olde at-renne, and noght
at-rede.
- 50 Saturne anon, to stynten strif and
drede—
Al be it that it is agayn his kynde—,
Of al this strif he gan remedie fynde.
¶ 'My deere doghter Venus,' quod Sa-
turne,
'My cours, that hath so wyde for to
turne,
- 55 Hath moore power than woot any man.
Myn is the drenchyng in the see so
wan;
Myn is the prison in the derke cote;
Myn [is] the stranglyng and hangyng
by the throte,
The murmure and the cherles rebellyng,
- 60 The groynyng[e] and the pryue[e] em-
poysonyng.
I do vengeance and pleyn correccioun,
Whil I dwelle in signe of the leoun.
Myn is the ruyn of the hye halles,
The fallynge of the toures and of the
walles
- 65 Vp-on the mynour or the carpenter.
I slow Sampson, shakynge the piler;
And myne be the malaydes colde,
The derke tresons, and the castes olde.
My lookyng is the fader of pestilence.
- 70 Now weep namoore, I shal doon dili-
gence
That Palamon, that is thyn owene
knyght,
Shal haue his lady, as thou hast him
hight.
Though Mars shal helpe his knyght,
yet natheless
Bitwixe yow ther moot be som tyme
pees,
- 75 Al be ye noght of o compleccioun,
That causeth al-day swich diuisioun.
I am thyn aiel, redy at thy wille;
Weep now namoore, I wol thy lust
fulfille!
¶ Now wol I stynten of the goddes
above,
- Of Mars and of Venus, goddesses of 80
love,
And telle yow, as pleyndly as I kan,
The grete effect, for which that I
bygan.
¶ *Explicit tercia pars.*
¶ *Sequitur pars quarta.*
Greet was the feest in Atthenes that
day,
And eek the lusty seson of that May
Made euery wight to been in such 85
plesaunce,
That al that Monday iusten they and
daunce,
And spenten it in Venus heigh seruyse.
And by the cause that they sholde
ryse
E'erly, for to seen the grete fight,
Vn-to hir reste wenten they at nyght; 90
And on the morwe, whan þat day gan
sprynge,
Of hors and harneys noyse and clater-
ynge
Ther was in hostelryes al aboute;
And to the paleys rood ther many a
route
Of lordes vp-on steedes and palfreys. 95
Ther maistow seen deuisynge of har-
neys
So vnkouth and so riche, and wrought
so weel
Of goldsmythrye, of browdyng, and
of steel;
The sheeldes brighte, testeres, and
trappures,
Gold-hewen helmes, hauberkes, cote- 00
armures;
Lordes in paramantz on hir courseres;
Knyghtes of retenue, and eek squieres,
Nailyng the speres, and helmes boke-
lyng;
Giggyng of sheeldes, with layneres
lacyng;
There as nede is, they weren no-thing 05
ydel;
The fomy steedes, on the golden brydel

2456. [is]: alle 511. (Sk., Gl.). 60. pryuee E.He. [Ægl. 6696, 6718.] 62. in the signe He., etc. (Sk.). 64. and þe w. H.⁴ 66. in schakyng H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 82. Explicit, etc.: nur E. 87. spenden He., etc. (Sk.). [Ægl. 512, etc.] 89. fight] sight He.D. 91. whan þat E.G.C., whan He., etc.; the day He.D.L.H.⁴ 96. diuisiyng(e) E.C.P.L.

Gnawynge, and faste the armurers also,
 With fyle and hamer, prikyngē to and
 fro;
 Yemen on foote, and communēs many
 oon
 10 With shortē staues, thikke as they may
 goon;
 Pȳpes, trompes, nakērs, clariounes,
 That in the bataillē blowen blody
 sounes;
 The paleys ful of peples vp and doun,
 Heerē thre, ther ten, holdynge hir
 questioun,
 15 Dyuynynge of thise Thebanē knyghtes
 two.
 Somme seyden thus, somme seyde it
 shal be so;
 Somme helden with hym with the blake
 berd;
 Somme with the ballēd, somme with
 the thikke-herd;
 Somme seyde he looked grymme, and
 he wolde fyghte;
 20 He hath a sparth of twenty pound of
 wighte.
 Thus was the halle ful of diuynynge
 Longe after that the sonne gan to
 sprynge.
 The grete Thesēus, that of his sleep(e)
 awakēd
 With mynstralcie and noyse þat was
 makēd,
 25 Heeld yet the chambrē of his paleys
 riche,
 Til that the Thebanē knyghtes, bothe
 yliche
 Honoured, were in-to the paleys fet.
 Duc Thesēus was at a wyndow set,
 Arrayed right as he were a god in
 trone.
 30 The peple preeseth thiderward ful
 soone
 Hym for to seen, and doon heigh
 reuerence,

And eek to herkne his heste and his
 sentence.

¶ An heraud on a scaffold made an
 'Ool'

Til al the noyse of peple was ydo.

And whan he saugh the *peple of noyse* 35
 al stille,

Tho showed he the myghty dukes wille:

¶ 'The lord hath of his heih discrecioun
 Considered that it were destruccioun

To gentil blood to fighten in the gyse
 Of mortal bataillē now in this emprise. 40

Wherfore, to shapen þat they shal nat
 dye,

He wol[de] his firste purpos modifye.

¶ No man therfore, vp peyne of los
 of lyf,

No maner shot, *ne* polax, *ne* short
 knyf

In-to the lystes sende, *ne* thider brynge; 45

Ne short swerd for to stoke, with poynt
 bitynge,

No man *ne* drawe, *ne* bere by his syde;
 Ne no man shal vn-to his felawe ryde

But o cours with a sharp(e) ygrounde
 spere;

ffoyne, if hym list, on foote, hym-self 50
 to were;

And he that is at meschief shal be
 take,

And noght slayn, but be broght vn-to
 the stake

That shal be ordeyned on either syde,
 But thider he shal by force, and there

abyde.

¶ And if so be the cheuetayn be take 55

On outhir syde, or elles sleen his make,
 No lenger shal the turneinyng laste.

God spede you! gooth forth, and leye
 on faste!

With long swerd and with mace[s] fight-
 eth youre fille.

Gooth now youre wey—this is the lordes 60
 wille.'

2511. Nakers He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 15. Thebans He.D.P.H.⁴ 25. chambres He.D.C.L.
 [Beffer? Db. I. chamber? Bgl. 8200.] 28. was E.H.⁴, is He., etc. 33. Oo E.He.D.P., hoo
 G. etc. (Sk., Gl.). 34. the peple He., etc. 35. noyse of peple E.G. 36. Tho E.G., Thus
 He., etc. 42. wol(e), etc. He., etc. (Sk.). 44. *ne* ~~vor~~ polax f. E.G. 45. *ne* E.G.L., or
 He., etc. (Sk.). 47. bere it He.G.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 55. be E., falle He., etc. (Sk., Gl.);
 chieftayn E.He., Chevetayn P., cheuynteyn, etc. G., etc. 56. outhir E.He., either D., etc.
 (Sk.). 58. go He.D.C.P.L.; leye P.L., leyth G. 59. mace He.D.H.⁴

- The voys of peple touchede the heuene,
 So loude cride they with murie steuene:
 'God saue swich a lord, that is so good!
 He wilneth no destruccion of blood.'
- 65 Vp goon the trompes and the melodye,
 And to the lystes rit the compaignye
 By ordinance, thurgh-out the citee large,
 Hanged with clooth of gold, and nat
 with sarge.
- ¶fful lik a lord this noble duc gan
 ryde,
- 70 Thise two Thebanes vp-on either side;
 And after rood the queene and Emelye,
 And after that another compaignye
 Of oon and oother, after hir degree.
 And thus they passen thurgh-out the
 citee,
- 75 And to the lystes come they by tyme.
 It nas not of the day yet fully pryme,
 Whan set was Thesëus ful riche and
 hye,
 Ypolita the queene and Emelye,
 And othere ladys in degrees aboute.
- 80 Vn-to the seet[t]es preeseth al the route,
 And westward, thurgh the gates vnder
 Marte,
 Arcite, and eek the hondred of his
 parte,
 With baner reed is entred right anon;
 ¶And in that selue moment Palamon
- 85 Is vnder Venus, estward in the place,
 With baner whyt and hardy chiere and
 face.
 In al the world to seken vp and doun,
 So euene, with-out[e]n variacioun,
 Ther nere swiche compaignyes tweye;
- 90 ffor ther was noon so wys þat koude
 seye
 That any hadde of oother auantage
 Of worthynesse, nè of estaat, nè age,
 So euene werē they chosen, for to
 gesse,
 And in two renges faire they hem
 dresse.
- 95 ¶Whan þat hir names rad were
 euerichon,
- That in hir nombre gyle werē ther noon,
 Tho werē the gates shet, and criēd was
 loude:
 'Do now youre deuoir, yonge knyghtes
 proude!'
- ¶Thē heraudes lefte hir prikyng vp
 and doun,
 Now ryngen trompes loude and clarioun. 00
 Ther is namore to seyn, but west and
 est
 In goon the speres ful sadly in arrest,
 In gooth the sharpe spore in-to the
 syde,
 Ther seen men who kan iuste and who
 kan ryde!
- Ther shyuēn shaftes vp-on sheeldes 05
 thikke;
 He feeleth thurgh the herte-spoon the
 prikke.
 Vp spryngen speres twenty foot on
 highte;
 Out goon the swerdes as the siluer
 bryghte;
 The helmes they tohewen and toshrede;
 Out brest the blood with stierne stremes 10
 rede;
 With mighty mace[s] the bones they
 tobrete;
 He thurgh the thikkeste of the throng
 gan threste.
 Ther stomblen steedes stronge, and
 doun gooth al!
- He rolleth vnder foot as dooth a bal;
 He foyneth on his feet with his 15
 tronchoun,
 And he hym hurtleth with his hors
 adoun;
 He thurgh the body[^]is hurt and sithe[n]
 ytake,
 Maugree his heed, and broght vn-to the
 stake,
 As forward was; right ther he moste
 abyde;
 Another lad is on that oother syde. 20
 ¶And som-tyme dooth hem Thesëus
 to reste,

2561. touched E.He.P.L., toucheth D.H.⁴ 70. Thebanes C.P.L. [vgl. 2623], thebenys G.
 81. [über Marte] i. sub Marte. 88. with-out[e] G., etc. 93. they f. E. 2602. the arest He.P.,
 the rest D.H.⁴, at rest G. 08. gooth E. (Gl.). 11. maces: alle Hj.; mace Plur.? Bgl. 2559.
 [t. Br. § 229.] 13. semblen E.G. 17. sithe G., sib is P.; ytake E.He., take G., etc.

Hem to *refresshe*[n] and drynken if
hem leste.
fful ofte a day han thise Thebanes two
Togydre ymet, and wroght his felawē
wo;
25 Vnhorsed hath eech oother of hem
tweye.
Ther nas [no] *tygre* in the vale of
Galgopheye,
Whan þat hir whelp is stolē whan it
is lite,
So crueel on the hunte as is Arcite
ffor ielous herte vpon this Palamon,
30 Nē in Belmarye ther nys so fel leon
That hunted is, or for his hunger
wood,
Nē of his praye desireth so the blood
As Palamon to sleen his foo Arcite.
The ielous strokes on hir helmes byte,
35 Out renneth blood on bothe hir sydes
rede.
¶ Som-tyme an endē ther is of euery
dede;
ffor, er the sonne vn-to the reste wente,
The stronge kyng Emetrēus gan hente
This Palamon as he faught with Arcite,
40 And made his swerd depe in his flessch
to byte,
And by the force of twenty is he take
Vnyolden, and ydrawe vn to the stake.
And in the rescus of this Palamoun
The stronge kyng Lygurge is born
adoun,
45 And kyng Emetrēus, for al his
strengthe,
Is born out of his sadel a swerdes
lengthe:
So hitte hym Palamon er he werē
take,
But al for noght—he was broght to
the stake.
His hardy herte myghte hym helpe
naught:
50 He moste abyde, whan that he was
caught

By force and eek by composicioun.
¶ Who sorweth now but woful Pala-
moun,
That moot namoore goon agayn to
fighte?
And whan þat Thesēus hadde seyn this
sightē,
Vn-to the folk þat foghten thus echon 55
He crydē, 'Hoo! namoore! for it is
doon.
¶ I wol be trewe iuge and no partie.
Arcite of Thebes shal haue Emelie,
That by his fortune hath hir(e) faire
ywonne.'
Anon ther is a noyse of peple bigonne 60
ffor ioye of this so loude and heighe
with-alle,
It semed that the lystes sholde falle.
What kan now faire Venus doon aboue?
What seith she now? What dooth this
queene of loue
But wepeth so for wantynge of hir wille, 65
Til that hir teeres in the lystes fille?
She seyde, 'I am ashamed, doutelees!'
¶ Saturnus seyde, 'Doghter, hoold thy
pees!
Mars hath his wille, his knyght hath
al his boone,
And, by myn heed! thou shalt been 70
esed soone.'
The trompes, with the loude *mynstral-*
cie,
The heraudes, that ful loude yolle and
crie,
Been in hir welē for ioye of Daun
Arcite.
But herkneth me, and stynteth now a
lite,
Which a myracle ther bifel anon! 75
¶ This fierse Arcite hath of his helm
ydon,
And on a courser, for to shewe his
face,
He priketh endelong the large place,
Lókyngē vpward vp-on Emelye,

2622. fresshen E., frossche G. 26. no: alle H[ilf]. [vgl. 2630]; the f. C.P. 42. vnto E.D.H.⁴, to He., etc. 56. vor 55. C.P.L.H.⁴; diese lesen: Ne non schal lenger to (vnto H.⁴) his felaw(e) gon f[ür] Vn-to the folk, etc. 57. no E.G.D., nat He., etc. 71. trompours He.D.C.P.L. 72. yolle E.H.⁴, yelle He., etc. 74. now E.G., noyse He.D.C., vois P., noy L., but H.⁴ 79. his Emelye H.⁴, this Emelye He.G.D.C.L. (Sk., Gl.).

- 80 And she agayn hym caste a freendlich
[e]yē,
And was al his *in* chiere as in hir
herte.
¶ Out of the ground a furie~infernall
sterre,
ffrom Pluto sent at requeste of Saturne,
ffor which his hors for fere gan to
turne,
85 And leep aside, and foundred as he
leep;
And er that Arcite may taken keep,
He pighte hym on the pomel of his
heed,
That in the place he lay as he were
deed,
His brest tobrosten with his sadel-
bowe.
90 As blak he lay as any cole or crowe,
So was the blood yronnen in his face.
Anon he was yborn out of the place,
With herte soor, to Thesēus paleys.
Tho was he koruen out of his harneys,
95 And in a bed ybrought ful faire and
blyue,
ffor he was yet in memorie~and alyue,
And alwey crynge after Emelye.
¶ Duc Thesēus, with al his compaignye,
Is comen hoom to Atthenes, his citee,
00 With alle blisse and greet solempnitee.
Al be it that this auenture was falle,
He nolde noght discomforten hem alle.
Men seyde eek that Arcite shal nat
dye,
He shal been heeled of his maladye.
05 ¶ And of another thyng they were[n]
as fayn:
That of hem alle was ther noon yslayn,
Al were they soore yhurt, and namely
oon,
That with a sperē was thirled his brest-
boon.

To othere woundes and to broken armes
Somme hadden salues, and somme 10
hadden charmes;
ffermacies of herbes and eek saue
They dronken, for they wolde hir lymes
haue;
ffor which this noble duc, as he wel
kan,
Conforteth and honoureth euery man,
And made reuel al the longe nyght 15
Vn-to the straunge lordes, as was right.
Ne ther was holden no disconfitynge,
But as a iustes or a tourneiynge.
ffor soothly, ther was no disconfiture,
ffor fallynge nys nat but an auenture, 20
Ne to be lad by force vn-to the stake
Vnyolden, and with twenty knyghtes
take,
O' persone allone, with-outen mo,
And haryed forth by arme, foot, and
too,
And eek his steede dryuen forth with 25
staues
With footmen, bothe yemen and eek
knaues,
It nas aretted hym no vileynye;
Ther may no man clepen it cowardye.
¶ ffor which anon duc Thesēus leet
crye,
To stynten alle rancour and enuye, 30
The gree as wel of o syde as of oother,
And eyther syde ylik as ootheres
brother;
Ad yaf hem yiftes after hir degree,
And fully heeld a feeste dayes three;
And conuoyed the kynges worthily 35
Out of his toun a iournee largely,
And hoom wente euery man the righte
way—
Ther was namoore, but 'far[e]wel, haue
good day!'
Of this bataille I wol namoore endite,

Zwischen 2680 u. 81 [siehe]ben C.P.L.H.⁴ (auch Eg.) ein: ffor women as (as for H.⁴) to
speken in (speketh the Eg.) comune/Thei folwen all(e) þe fauour of fortune (Sk., Gl.).
81(83). And she was He.D. (Sk.); in chiere Tw. W. M. Gl.; his herte: alle 81j. (Sk., Gl.)
(as his in herte Tw.); as] and H.⁴ 82. furie E.He.G., fir(e) D., etc. (Gl.). 86. [I. Arcita?
89gl. 1152.] 87. [Ranbgl.] Nota periculum E. 2705. wern G., were He., etc. 12. lyues
D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 17/18. f. P. 23. O E.G., (On) D., A He., etc. 24. arm E.He.G.D., arme
C., etc. [ob. I. arm and?] 28. clepe He., etc.; held H.⁴ [verb.]. 30. alle E.G.C. (Sk., Gl.),
al He., etc.; and al enuye H.⁴ 35. conueyed He., etc. (Sk.). 38. far G.C.H.⁴ (Sk.);
id. 2758, 2778 (C.H.⁴), 5283 (H.⁴), etc.

40 But speke of Palamon and of Arcyte.
 Swelleth the brest of Arcite, and the
 soore
 Encreeseth at his herte moore and
 moore.
 The clothered blood, for any leche-
 craft,
 Corrupteth, and is in his bouk ylaft,
 45 That neither veyne-blood, ne ventus-
 ynge,
 Ne drynke of herbes may ben his
 helpynge.
 The vertu expulsif, or animal,
 ffro thilke vertu cleped natural
 Ne may the venym voyden, ne expelle.
 50 The pipes of his longes gonne to swelle,
 And euery lacerte in his brest adoun
 Is shent with venym and corrupcioun.
 Hym gayneth neither, for to gete his
 lif,
 Vomyt vpward, ne dounward laxatif—
 55 Al is tobrosten thilke regioun.
 Nature hath now no dominacioun,
 And certainly, ther Nature wol nat
 wiche,
 ffar[e]-wel phisik! go ber the man to
 chirchel
 This al and som, that Arcita moot dye;
 60 ffor which he sendeth after Emelye
 And Palamon, that was his cosyn deere.
 Thanne seyde he thus, as ye shal after
 heere:
 ¶ 'Naught may the woful spirit in myn
 herte
 Declare o point of allē my sorwes
 smerte
 65 To yow, my lady, that I loue moost.
 But I biquethe the seruyce of my goost
 To yow abouen euery creature,
 Syn þat my lyf ne may no lenger dure.
 Allas, the wol! allas, the peynes stronge
 70 That I for yow hauē suffred, and so
 longe!
 Allas, the deeth! allas, myn Emelye!
 Allas, departynge of oure compaignye!

Allas, myn hertes queene! allas, my
 wyf,
 Myn hertes lady, endere of my lyf!
 What is this world? what asketh men 75
 to haue?
 Now with his louē, now in his colde
 graue
 Allone, with-outen any compaignye!
 ffar[e]-wel, my swete foo, myn Emelye!
 And softe taak me in youre armes tweye
 ffor loue of God, and herkneth what 80
 I seye:
 I haue heer with my cosyn Palamon
 Had strif and rancour, many a day
 agon,
 ffor loue of yow and for my ialousye.
 And Iuppiter so wys my soule gye
 To speken of a seruaut proprely, 85
 With alle circumstaunces trewely—
 That is to seyn trouthe, honour, knyght-
 hede,
 Wysdom, humblesse, estaat, and heigh
 kynrede
 ffreedom, and al that longeth to that
 art—
 So Iuppiter haue of my soule part, 90
 As in this world right now ne knowe I
 non
 So worthy to ben loued as Palamon,
 That serueth yow, and wol doon al
 his lyf,
 And if that euere ye shul ben a wyf,
 fforyet nat Palamon, the gentil-man! 95
 And with that word his speche faille
 gan;
 ffor from his feet vp to his brest was
 come
 The coold of deeth, that hadde hym
 ouercome,
 And yet moore-ouer [for] in hise armes
 two
 The vital strengthe is lost and al ago. 100
 Only the intellect, with-outen moore,
 That dwelled in his herte syk and soore,
 Gan failen, whan the herte felte deeth,

2741. Explicit secunda pars, etc. He. 50. gan He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 52—55. Eg. für D. 56. now f. He.G.C.P.L. 64. o E., on G., a He., etc. 68. ne Tw. Gl.; f. jonst. 75. axeth He., axed C., asken D., etc. 77—80. f. He.D. (in Eg.). 86. circumstaunces alle He.D.C.P.L. 87. seyne G.L.; and knighthede C.P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 97. ffor] And E.; feet] herte E.G.H.⁴ 99. [for] f. H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 2803. when E.

Dusked hise [e]yën two, and failed
breeth.
05 But on his lady yet caste he his [e]yë—
His laste word was 'mercy, Emelye!'
His spirit chaunged hous, and wente
ther
As I cam neuere—I kan nat tellen,
wher.
Therefore I stynte—I nam no diuinistre;
10 Of soules fynde I nat in my registre,
Ne me ne list thilke opinions to telle
Of hem, though þat they writen wher
they dwelle.
Arcite is coold, ther Mars his soule
gye!
Now wol I speken forth of Emelye.
15 Shrighte Emelye, and howleth Pala-
mon,
And Thesëus his suster took anon
Swownynge, and baar hir(e) fro the
corps away.
What helpeth it to tarien forth the day,
To tellen how she weep bothe eue
and morwe?
20 fför in swich cas wommen hauē swich
sorwe,
Whan þat hir housbondes *been* from
hem ago,
That for the moore part they sorwen
so,
Or ellis fallen in swich maladye,
That at the laste certainly they dye.
25 ¶ Infinite been the sorwes and the
teeres
Of olde folk and eek of tendre yeeres
In al the toun for deeth of this Theban;
ffor hym ther wepeth bothe child and
man.
So greet a wepyng was ther noon, cer-
tayn,
30 Whan Ector was ybrought al fresch
yslayn
To Troye; alas! the pitee þat was
ther,

Cracchyng of chekes, rentynge eek
of heer!
'Why woldestow be deed,' thise wom-
men crye,
'And haddest gold ynough and Emelye?'
¶ Nô man myghte gladen Thesëus, 35
Sauynge his olde fader Egëus,
That knew this worldes transmutacioun,
A's he hadde seyn it vp and down,
Ioye after wo, and wo after gladnesse,
And shewed hem ensamples and lik- 40
nesse.
'Right as ther dyed neuere man,' quod
he,
'That he ne lyuēde in erthe in som
degree,
Right so ther lyuēde neuer man', he
seyde.
'In al this world þat som tyme he ne
deyde;
This world nys but a thurghfare 45
of wo,
And we been pilgrymes, passynge to
and fro.
Deeth is an ende of euery worldes
soore.'
And ouer al this yet seyde he muchel
moore
To this effect, ful wisely to enhorten
The peple, that they sholde hem recon- 50
forte.
Duc Thesëus, with al his bisy cure,
Caste now wher that the sepulture
Of goode Arcite may best ymaked be,
And eek moost honorable in his degree.
And at the laste he took conclusioun 55
That ther-as first Arcite and Palamoun
Hadden for louē the bataille hem bi-
twene,
That in that selue groue, swoote and
grene,
Ther-as he hadde hise amorousē desires,
His compleynte, and for loue hise hooite 60
fires,

2820. can haue H.⁴ 21. housbond is E. 23. swich a He.D.C.L. 26. and eek E., and folk He., etc. (Sk., Gl.), þat ben H.⁴ 27. the deeth He.D.; V. umgeſtelt H.⁴ 29. a f. He.C.P.L. 30. ybrought E.H.⁴, broght He., etc. 38. seyn it chaungen bothe vp He.D., s. it torne vp H.⁴ (s. it chaungen up Sk., Gl.). 40. ensamples E.G., -e He., etc. 41. [Kantbl.] Argumentum. 47. worldes E., worldly He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 52. Caste He.; now] busily H.⁴ (Gl.). 58. that] the He., etc.

He wolde make a fyr in which the
 office
 ffúneral he myghte al accomplice;
 And leet comande anon to hakke and
 hewe
 The okes olde, and leye hem on
 a rewe
 65 In colpons, wel arrayed for to brenne.
 Hise officers with swifte feet they renne,
 And ryde[n] anon at his comandement.
 And after this Thesëus hath ysent
 After a beere, and it al ouer-spradde
 70 With clooth of gold, the richeste þat
 he hadde;
 And of the same suyte he cladde Arcite.
 Vp-on his hondes hadde he gloues
 white;
 Eek on his heed a coroune of laurer
 grene,
 And in his hond a swerd ful bright
 and kene.
 75 He leyde hym, bare the visage, on the
 beere;
 Ther-with he weep that pitee was to
 heere,
 And, for the peple sholde seen hym
 alle,
 Whan it was day, he broghte hym to
 the halle,
 That roreth of the crying and the soun.
 80 ¶ Tho cam this woful Theban Pala-
 moun,
 With flotery berd and rugged asshy
 heeres,
 In clothes blake, ydropped al with
 teeres,
 And passyng othere of wepyng,
 Emelye,
 The rewefulleste of al the compaignye.
 85 In as muche as the seruyce sholde be
 The moore noble and riche in his
 degree,
 Duc Thesëus leet forth thre steedes
 brynge,

That trapped were in steel al gliter-
 ynge,
 And couered with the armes of daun
 Arcite.
 Vp-on thise steedes *that were* grete and 90
 white,
 Ther sitten folk, of whiche oon baar
 his sheeld,
 Another his sperè in his hondes heeld,
 The thridde baar with hym his bowe
 Turkeys—
 Of brend gold was the kaas, and eek
 the harneys—,
 And riden forth a-paas with sorweful 95
 cheere
 Toward the groue, as ye shul after
 heere.
 The nobleste of the Grekes that ther
 were
 Vp-on hir shuldres caryeden the beere,
 With slak paas and [e]yðen rede and
 wete,
 Thurgh-out the citee by the maister- 00
 strete,
 That sprad was al with blak, and
 wonder hye
 Right of the samè is the strete ywrye.
 Vp-on the right hond wente old[e]
 Egëus,
 And on that oother syde duc Thesëus,
 With vessel in hir hand of gold ful fyn, 05
 Al ful of hony, milk, and blood, and
 wyn;
 Eek Palamon, with ful greet com-
 paignye,
 And after that cam woful Emelye
 With fyr in honde, as was that tyme
 the gyse,
 To do the office of funeral seruyse. 10
 Heigh labour and ful greet apparail-
 lynge
 Was at the service and the fyr-makynge,
 That with his grene top the heuene
 raughte,

2863. anon comaunde He.D.C.P.L. 67. ryde He., etc. (Sk.). 72. hadde he E., were his H.⁴ his He., etc. 73. croune C.P.H.⁴ (Sk.). 81. ruggy He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 90. that weren H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), f. E., etc. 91. sitten E.L., stoden P., seten He., etc. (Sk.). 92. in E., vp in H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [Besser? ob. Siat?], vp on He., etc. 99. slakke D.C.L. (Sk., Gl.). 2902. al the str. H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [f. 2892]. 03. old G.D. (Sk.). 05. vessels He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). [Bgl. 14932.] 10. þoffice C.H.⁴ (Sk.). 13. raughte] laught D., f. E.

And twenty fadme of brede the armes
straughte;
15 This is to seyn: the bowes were[n] so
brode.
Of stree first ther was leyd ful many[^]a
lode;
But how the fyr was maked vp-on
highte,
Nē eek the names that the treēs highte,
As ook, firre, birch, aspe, alder, holm,
popeler,
20 Wylwe, elm, plane, assh, box, chasteyn,
lynde, laurer,
Mapul, thorn, bech, hasel, ew, whippel-
tree;
How they were[n] feld, shal nat be
toold for me;
Ne hou the goddes ronnen vp and
doun,
Disherited of hir habitacioun,
25 In which[e] they woneden in reste and
pees,
Nýmphes, ffawnes, and amádrides;
Ne hou the beestes and the briddes
alle
ffledde[n] for fere, whan the wode was
falle;
Ne how the ground agast was of the
light,
30 That was nat wont to seen the sonne
bright;
Ne how the fyr was couched first with
stree,
And thanne with drye stokkes cloue[n]
a-thre,
And thanne with grene wode and spi-
cerye,
And thanne with clooth of gold and
with perrye,
35 And gerlandes, hangynge with ful
many[^]a flour,
The mirre, thencens, with al so greet
odour;
Ne how Arcite lay among al this;

Ne what richesse aboute his body is;
Ne how that Emelye, as was the gyse,
Putte in the fyr of funeral seruyse; 40
Ne how she swowned whan men made
the fyr;
Ne what she spak, ne what was hir
desir[e];
Ne what ieweles men in the fyr(e)
caste,
Whan þat the fyr was greet, and brente
faste;
¶ Ne how somme caste hir sheeld, and 45
somme hir spere,
And of hire vestimentz, whiche þat
they were,
And coppes ful[l] of wyn, and milk,
and blood
In-to the fyr, that brente as it were
wood;
Ne how the Grekes, with an huge route,
Thries riden al the place aboute 50
Vp-on the left hand, with a loud shout-
ynge,
And thries with hir speres claterynge,
And thries how the ladyes gonne crye;
And how þat lad was homward Emelye;
Ne how Arcite is brent to asshen 55
colde;
Né how that lych-wake was yholde
Al thilke nyght; ne how the Grekes
pleye
The wake-pleyes; ne kepe I nat to
seye
Who wrastleth best naked, with oille
enoynt,
Ne who that baar hym best in no 60
disioynt.
¶ I wol nat tellen eek how that they
goon
Hoom til Atthenes, whan the pley is
doon,
But shortly to the point thanne wol
I wende,
And maken of my longe tale an ende.

2916. ful E.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 18. that] what G., how He., etc. (Sk.). 20. Wylw G.H.⁴, Wylugh E., Wylow He., etc. (Sk.). 22. fild E. [vgl. 1702]. 2925—3014. Eg. für D. 26. Nymphus E.G.; madrides Eg., amadries G.C.P.L.H.⁴ 32. clouen: alle f. (Sk., Gl.). 35. with ful] ful of He.Eg. 36. odour] sauour He.Eg. 41. the f. E. 43. fyr He.G.H.⁴; 40 cast H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 47. Mylk and wyn He.Eg.C.P.L. 50. place E., fyr He., etc. (Sk.). 54. And E.He.Eg., Ne G., etc. (Sk.). 56. lyche G.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.), light Eg., V. f. H.⁴ 61. eek how that E.G.H.⁴, al how He., etc.

55 By processe and by lengthe of certeyn
 yeres,
 Al styntyd is the mornynge and the
 teres
 Of Grekes by oon general assent.
 Thanne semed me ther was a parle-
 ment
 At Atthenes vpon certein poyntz and
 caas,
 70 Among the whiche poyntz yspoken was
 To hauē with certein contrees alliaunce,
 And haue fully of Thebans obeissaunce;
 ffor which this noble Thesēus anon
 Leet senden after gentil Palamon,
 75 Vnwist of hym what was the cause
 and why.
 But in hise blake clothes sorwefully
 He cam at his comandement in hye;
 Tho sente Thesēus for Emelye.
 Whan they werē set, and hust was al
 the place,
 80 And Thesēus abiden hadde a space
 Er any word cam from his wise brest,
 Hise [e]yēn sette he ther-as was his
 lest,
 And with a sad visage he siked stille,
 And after that right thus he seyde his
 wille:
 85 'The firste moeuere of the cause aboue,
 Whan he first madē the faire cheyne
 of loue,
 Greet was theeffect, and heigh was his
 entente.
 Wel wiste he why, and what ther-of
 he mente;
 ffor with that faire cheyne of loue he
 bond
 90 The fyr, the eyr, the water, and the
 lond
 In certeyn boundes, that they may
 nat flee.
 That samē prince and that samē
 moeuere,' quod he,

'Hath stablissed in this wrecched world
 adoun
 Certeyne dayes and duracioun
 To al that is engendred in this place, 95
 Ouer the whiche day they may nat
 pace,
 Al mowē they yet tho dayes wel
 abregge—
 Ther nedeth noght noon auctoritee
 allegge,
 ffor it is preued by experience,
 But that me list declaren my sentence. 00
 Thanne may men by this ordre wel
 discerne
 That thilke moeuere stable is and
 eterne.
 Wel may men knowe, but it be a
 fool,
 That euery part dirryueth from his
 hool;
 ffor nature hath take[n] his bigynnyng 05
 Of no partie or [of] cantel of a thyng,
 But of a thyng that parfit is and stable,
 Descendynge so, til it be corrupable.
 And therefore, of his wise purueiaunce,
 He hath so wel biset his ordinaunce, 10
 That specēs of thynges and progres-
 siouns
 Shullen enduren by successiouns,
 And nat eterne be, with-outen [any] lye:
 This maistow vnderstonde, and seen
 at [e]yē.
 Loo the ook, þat hath so long a 15
 norisschyng [¶ *Exemplum*
 ffrom tyme þat it first bigynneth
 sprynge,
 And hath so long a lif, as we may
 see,
 Yet at the laste wasted is the tree.
 ¶ Considereth eek how that the harde
 stoon [¶ *Exemplum*
 Vnder oure feet, on which we trede and 20
 goon,

2966. stynt He.Eg.C.P.L. 69. a certeyn poynt He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 80. hath He.Eg.C.P.L.
 81. fram E., fro C., etc. 85ff.: vgl. Boeth. II, metr. 8. 92. that moeuere He.Eg.L. (Sk.),
 and moeuere eek H.⁴ 96. which E.He.Eg., f. H.⁴ 98. noght E.C., f. He., etc.; to allege He.Eg.,
 tallegge H.⁴, to legge G.C.P.L. 3001. wel by this o. He.Eg.C.L.H.⁴, wel f. P. 04. dirryueth]
 dryuyth G., darreynd C.L., darrayneth P., is diryueth He., is dareined Eg. 05. hath
 E.G., hath nat He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); take L.H.⁴ [296. Boeth. III, pr. 10.] 06. or of] nor of
 C.L., ne H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 11. speces: vgl. 2559; specie C.L., specyfie G.P. 13. eterne be,
 any f. H.⁴ (Sk.). 16. the tyme He.G.D.C.P.L.; gynneth He.H.⁴ 17. we E.G.H.⁴, ye He., etc.

- Yit wasteth it as it lyth by the weye.
 The brode ryuer somtyme wexeth dreye;
 The grete tounes se we wane and wende;
 Thanne may ye se þat al this thyng hath ende.
- 25 ¶ Of man and womman seen we wel also,
 That nedes in oon of thise termes two—
 This is to seyn: in youthe or elles age—
 He moot be deed, the kyng as shal a page;
 Som in his bed, som in the depe see,
 30 Som in the large feeld, as men may se.
 Ther helpeth noght, al goth that ilke weye:
 Thanne may I seyen al this thyng moot deye.
 ¶ What maketh this but Iuppiter the kyng,
 That is prince and cause of alle thyng,
 35 Conuertynge al vn-to his propre welle
 ffrom which it dirryued, sooth to telle?
 And here agayns no creature on lyue,
 Of no degree, auailleth for to stryue.
 ¶ Thanne is it wysdom, as it thyneketh me,
 40 To maken vertu of necessitee,
 (¶) And take it weel that we may nat eschue,
 And namely that to vs alle is due;
 And who-so gruccheth ought, he dooth folye,
 And rebel is to hym thal al may gye.
- 45 And certainly a man hath moost honour
 To dyen in his excellence and flour,
 Whan he is siker of his goode name;
 Thanne hath he doon his freend, ne hym, no shame,
 And gladder oghte his freend be of his deeth,
- Whan with honour vp-yolden is his 50
 breeth,
 Than whan his name apalled is for age,
 ffor al forgotten is his vassellage.
 Thanne is it best, as for a worthy fame,
 To dyen whan þat he is best of name.
 ¶ The contrarie of al this is wilful- 55
 nesse;
 Why grucchen we? Why hauē we heuy-
 nesse
 That good[e] Arcyte, of chiualrie flour,
 Departed is with duetee and honour
 Out of this foule prisoun of this lyf?
 Why grucchen heere his cosyn and his 60
 wyf
 Of his wel-fare that loued hem so weel?
 Kan he hem thank? Nay, God woot,
 neuē-a-deel,
 That bothe his soule and eek hem-self
 offende,
 And yet they mowe hir lustes nat
 amende.
 What may I conclud[e] of this longe 65
 serye
 But, after wo, I rede vs to be merye,
 And thanken Iuppiter of al his grace?
 And er that we departen from this
 place,
 I rede þat we make of sorwes two
 O parfit ioye, lastynge eueremo; 70
 And looketh now, wher moost sorwe
 is her-inne,
 Ther wol we first amenden and bi-
 gynne.
 Suster,' quod he, 'this is my fulle
 assent,
 With al thavy's heere of my parlement,
 That gentil Palamon, *youre* owene 75
 knyght,
 That serueth yow with willē, herte, and
 myght,

3023. toures E. 24. may ye se E., may I say G., may I see H.⁴, se ye He. D., 3e see C.L., þe see P. 26. nedes D., wendeþ H.⁴, nedeth E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 30. men E.G.H.⁴, ye He., etc. 32. seyen] seyn E.G., seyn þat He., etc. (Sk., Gl.), see wel þat H.⁴ 34. That] The which H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 36. it] he He.; derreynd D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 50. yolden is vp He., is 3. vp G.L.H.⁴, y-y. is vp C.P.; vp f. D. 54. þat E., f. He., etc.; he] a man H.⁴ 58. with honour He.C.P.L. 61. louen D.H.⁴, loueth He., etc.; him D.C.L.H.⁴ 65. concluden E.D. 69. þat H.⁴ 72. we E.H.⁴, I He., etc. 72—86. Sl. für G. 75. youre] thyn E. (Gl.). 76. and herte He.C.L. (herte wil H.⁴).

And euere hath doon, syn þat ye first
 hym knewe,
 That ye shul of youre grace vp-on hym
 rewe,
 And taken hym for housbonde and
 for lord.
 0 Lenę me youre hond, for this is oure
 accord,
 Lat se now of youre womanly pitee!
 He is a kynges brother sonę, pardee!
 And though he were a poure bachelor,
 Syn he hath serued yow so many^a
 year,
 5 And had for yow so greet aduersitee,
 It mooste been considered, leeueth me;
 ffor gentil mercy oghtę to passen right.
 ¶ Thanne seyde he thus to Palamon
 ful right:
 'I trowę ther nedeth litel sermonyng
 0 To make yow assente to this thyng.
 Com neer, and taak youre lady by the
 hond!
 Bitwixen hem was maad anon the bond
 That highte matrimoigne or mariage,
 By al the conseil and the baronage.
 5 ¶ And thus with alle blisse and melodye
 Hath Palamon wydded Emelye,
 And God, þat al this wyde world hath
 wrought,
 Sende hym his louę that *hath* it deere
 aboght.
 ffor now is Palamon in alle wele,
 0 Lyuynge in blisse, in richesse, and in
 heele,
 And Emelye hym louęth so tendrely,
 And he hir(e) serueth *also* gentilly,
 That neuere was ther no word hem
 bitwene
 Of ialousie or any oother tene.
 5 Thus endeth Palamon and Emelye,
 And God saue al this faire compaignye!
 Amen.
 ¶ Heere is ended the knyghtes tale.

3. The Milleres Tale.

a) (Prologue.)

¶ Heere folwen the wordes bitwene
 the hoost*) and the Millere.

Whan that the knyght had thus his
 tale ytold,
 In al the route nas ther yong ne oold
 That he ne seyde it was a noble storie,
 And worthy for to drawen to memorie, 10
 And namely the gentils euerichon.
 Oure hooste lough, and swoor, 'So moot
 I gon!
 This gooth aright! vnboked is the
 male.
 Lat se now who shal telle another tale?
 ffor trewely, the game is wel bigonne. 15
 Now telleth on, sir(e) Monk, if that
 ye konne,
 Sumwhat to quite with the knyghtes
 tale.'
 The Miller(e), that for-dronken was al
 pale,
 So that vnnethe vp-on his hors he sat,
 He nolde aualen neither hood ne hat, 20
 Ne abyde no man for his curteisie,
 But in Pilates voys he gan to crie,
 And swoor by armes, and by blood
 and bones:
 'I kan a noble tale for the nones,
 With which I wol now quite the 25
 knyghtes tale!
 Oure hooste saugh that he was dronke
 of ale,
 And seyde, 'Abyd, Robyn, my leeu
 brother!
 Som better man shal telle vs first
 another.
 Abyd[e], and lat vs werken thriftily!
 ¶ 'By Goddes soule,' quod he, 'that 30
 wol nat II
 ffor I wol speke, or elles go my wey.'
 Oure hoost answerde, 'Telle on a deuele
 wey!

3077. þat: nur E. 80. Leue? E. 88. ful right] the knyght He.D.C.P.L. 91. taketh
 He.D.P.L. 97. wyde f. He.D.C.P.L. 98. hath f. E. 3102. also H.⁴, so E., etc. 03. neuere
 f. He.D.C.L. — *) The prologe of the Milleres tale He., The p. of the M.D., f. G. — 08. route]
 compaignie He.D.C.P.L.; ne was E.D. 12. hooste P.L., hoost E., etc.; vgl. 3126 (oste L.,
 f. P.); þo lowh H.⁴ 16. on E., now H.⁴, ye He., etc. (Sk.). 26. saugh wel how dronke
 he was H.⁴ 27. my f. He.D.C.P.L. 32. tel E.He.H.⁴, seye P. [vgl. 3431].

Thou art a fool, thy wit is ouercome!
¶ 'Now herkneþ,' quod the Millere,
'alle and some!

35 But first I make a protestacioun
That I am dronke, I knowe it by
my soun;
And therefore, if that I mysspeke or
seye,
Wyte it the ale of Southwerk, I *you*
preye.

ffor I wol telle a legende and a lyf
40 Bothe of a carpenter and of his wyf,
How that a clerk hath set the wrightes
cappe.'

The Reue answerde, and seyde, 'Styntē
thy clappe!

Lat be thy lewed dronken harlotrye!
It is a synne and eek a greet folye
45 To apreyen any man or hym defame,
And eek to bryngen wyues in swich
fame;

Thou mayst ynogh of othere thynges
seyn.'

¶ This dronke Millere spak ful soone
ageyn,

And seyde, 'Leue brother Osewold,
50 Who hath no wyf, he is no cokewold.
But I seye nat therfore that thou art
oon;

Ther been ful goode wyues many oon,
And euere a thousand goode ayeins
oon badde,

That knowestow wel thy-self, but if
thou madde.

55 Why artow angry with my tale now?
I haue a wyf, pardee, as wel as thou;
Yet nolde I, for the oxen in my plough,
Taken vp-on me moore than ynogh,
As demen of my-self that I were oon;

60 I wol bileue wel that I am noon.
An housbonde shal nat been inquisityf
Of Goddes pryuetee, nor of his wyf;
So he may fynde Goddes foyson there,
O'f the remenant nedeth nat enquire.'

¶ What sholde I moore seyn? but this 65
Miller(e),

He nolde his wordes for no man for-
bere,

But tolde his cherles tale in his manere.
Mathynketh that I shal reherce it .
heere;

And therfore euery gentil wight I
preye,

ffor Goddes loue, demeth nat that I 70
seye

Of yuel entente, but that I moot
reherce

Hir tales alle, be they bettre or werse,
Or elles falsen som of my mateere;
And therfore, who-so list it nat yheere,
Turne ouer the leef, and chese another 75
tale,

ffor he shal fynde ynowe, grete and
smale,

Of storial thyng that toucheth gen-
tillesse,

And eek moralitee and hoolynesse.

Blameth nat me if that ye chese amys;
The Millere is a cherl, ye knowe wel 80
this;

So was the Reue, and othere manye
mo,

And harlotrie they tolden bothe two.
Auyseth yow, putteth me out of blame,
And eek men shal nat make[n] earnest
of game.

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Millere
his tale.

Whilom ther was dwellynge at Oxen- 85
ford

A riche gnof, that gestes heeld to bord,
And of his craft he was a carpenter.
With hym ther was dwellynge a poure
scoler,

Hadde lerned art, but al his fantasye
Was turned for to lerne astrologye, 90
And koude a certeyn of conclusiouns

3138. you f. E.He.G.D. 42. stinte L. 51. sey E. 53/54. f. He.D. (Eg.) C.P.L.
58. Taken D.G. 59. Though þat þou deme þiself þat þou be oon H.* (Gl.).
70. Demeth noght for goddes loue He.D.C.P.L. 71. that E.L., for He., etc. (Gl.).
74. yheere E.He., here G.P., to h. D., etc. 81. and othere manye E.G., eek and othere
He., etc. 83. putteth E., put G., and putteþ C., and put He., etc. (Sk.). 84. maken
E.He.G. 90. leere He.P.L.

To demen by interrogaciouns,
 If þat men asked hym in certain houres
 Whan þat men sholde hauē droghte or
 elles shoures,
 5 Or if men asked hym what sholde
 bifalle
 Of euery-thing—I may nat rekene hem
 alle.
 ¶ This clerk was cleped hende Nicho-
 las;
 Of deerne loue he koude and of solas,
 And ther-to he was sleigh and ful
 priuee,
 10 And lyk a mayden meke for to see.
 A chambrē hadde he in that hostelrye
 Allone, with-outen any compaignye,
 fful fetisly ydight with herbes swoote,
 And he hym-self as sweete as is the
 roote
 15 Of lycorys or any cetewale.
 His Almageste and bookes grete and
 smale,
 His *astrelabie*, longynge for his *art*,
 His *augrym* stones layen faire a-part,
 On shelues couched at his beddes heed;
 20 His presse ycovered with a faldyng
 reed.
 And al[1] abouē ther lay a gay sautrie,
 On which he made a-nyghtes melodie
 So swetely, that al the chambre rong;
 And 'Angelus ad virginem' he song,
 25 And after that he song the kynges
 noote;
 fful often blessed was his myrie throte,
 And thus this sweete clerk his tyme
 spent
 After his freendes fyndyng and his
 rente.
 ¶ This carpenter hadde wedded newe
 a wyf,
 30 Which that he louēde moore than his
 lyf.
 Of XVIII. yeer she was of age;
 Ialous he was, and heeld hir(e) narwe
 in cage,

ffor she was yong and wylde, and he
 was old,
 And demed hym-self been lik a coke-
 wold.
 He knew nat Catoun, for his wit was 25
 rude,
 That bad man sholde wedde his simy-
 litude:
 Men sholde wedden after hir estaat,
 ffor youthe and elde is often at debaat.
 But sith that he was fallen in the
 snare,
 He moste endure, as oother folk, his 30
 care.
 ¶ ffair was this yonge wyf, and ther-
 with-al,
 As any wezele, hir body gent and smal.
 A ceynt she werēde, ybarred al of
 silk,
 A barmeclooth, as whit as morne-milk,
 Vp-on hir lendes, ful of many a goore; 35
 Whit was hir smok, and broyden al
 bifoore
 And eek hihynde on hir coler aboute,
 Of colblak silk, with-inne and eek with-
 oute.
 The tapes of hir white voluper
 Were of the same suyte of hir coler; 40
 Hir filet brood of silk and set ful hye,
 And sikerly she hadde a likerous [e]yē.
 fful smale ypulled were hir(e) browes
 two,
 And tho were bent and blake as any
 sloo.
 She was ful moore blisful on to see 45
 Than is the newe pereionette tree,
 And softer than the wolfe is of a
 wether;
 And by hir girdel heeng a purs of
 lether,
 Tasseled with grene, and perled with
 latoun:
 In al this world, to seken vp and doun, 50
 Therē nas no man so wys þat koude
 thenche

3203. dight He.D.C.P.L. 21. eightene G., eygteteene H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 23. yong and wylde E., wilde and yong He., etc. (Sk.). 33. ybarred E., þe seynt G., barred He., etc. (Sk.). 34. barmeclooth E.He.D.C., b. eek H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 36. broyden E.He., I-brouded G., enbrauded P., browded D., etc. (brouded Sk.). 44. any] is a He.G.D. 49. grene E., silk He., etc. (Sk.). 51. nas E., nys He.D.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), is G., etc.

So gay a popelote, or swich a wenche.
 fful brighter was she shynynge of hir
 hewe
 Than in the *Tour* the noble yforged
 newe.
 55 ¶ But of hir song, it was as loude and
 yerne
 As any swalwe sittynge on a berne;
 Ther-to she koude skippe and make
 game
 As any kyde or calf, folwynge his dame.
 Hir mouth was sweete as bragot or
 the meeth,
 60 Or hoord of apples, leyd in hey or
 heeth.
 Wynsynge she was, as is a ioly colt,
 Long as a *mast*, and vpright[e] as a
 bolt.
 A brooch sche baar vp-on hir loue-
 coler,
 As brood as is the boos of a bokeler.
 65 Hir shoes werē laced on hir legges hye.
 She was a prymerole, a piggesnye,
 ffor any lord to leggen in his bedde,
 Or yet for any good yeman to wedde.
 NOW, sire, and eft, sire, so bifel the
 cas,
 70 That on a day this hende Nicholas
 ffil with this yonge wyf to rage and
 pleye,
 Whil that hir housbonde was at
 Oseneye,
 As clerkes ben ful subtile and ful
 queynte;
 And priuely he caughte hir(e) by the
 queynte,
 75 And seyde, 'Ywis but if ich hauē my
 wille,
 ffor deerne loue of thee, lemman, I
 spille'—
 And heeld hir(e) harde by the haunch-
 bones,
 And seyde, 'Lemman, loue me al atones,
 Or I wol dyen, also God me saue!'
 80 And she sproong as a colt doth in the
 traue,

And with hir heed sche wryed faste
 away,
 And seyde, 'I wol nat kisse thee, by
 my fey!
 Why, lai be, quod ich, lai be, Nicholas!
 'Or I wol crie "out, harrow, and allas!"
 Do wey youre handes for youre cur- 85
 teisyel'
 ¶ This Nicholas gan mercy for to crye,
 And spak so faire, and profred hir(e)
 so faste,
 That she hir loue hym graunted atte
 laste,
 And swoor hir ooth by seint Thomas
 of Kent,
 That she wol been at his comandement, 90
 Whan þat she may hir leyser wel espie:
 'Myn housbonde is so ful of ialousie,
 That, but ye wayte wel and been priuee,
 I woot right wel I nam but deed,'
 quod she.
 'Ye moste been ful deerne, as in this 95
 cas.'
 ¶ 'Nay, ther-of care thee noght,' quod
 Nicholas,
 'A clerk hadde litherly biset his whyle
 But if he koude a carpenter bigyle.'
 And thus they been accorded and
 ysworn
 To wayte a tyme, as I hauē told 00
 biforn.
 ¶ Whan Nicholas had doon thus eueri-
 deel,
 And thakked hire aboute the lendes
 weel,
 He kist hire sweete, and taketh his
 sawtrie,
 And pleyeth faste, and maketh melodie.
 Thanne fil it thus, þat to the paryssh 05
 chirche,
 Cristes owene werkes for to wirche,
 This goode wyf went on an haliday.
 Hir forheed shoon as bright as any
 day,
 So was it wasshen whan she leet hir
 werk.

3256. sittynge] chitering C.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 63. loue] lowe G.D. (Sk.). 82. And E., I H.⁴,
 She He., etc. 87. hire E. (Sk.), hym He., etc. (Gl.). 90. wol E.H.⁴, wolde He., etc.
 3303. kiste He.L., kyssith G.D.P.

¶ Now was ther of that chirche a
 parisssh clerk,
 The which that was ycleped Absolon.
 Crul was his heer, and as the gold it
 shoon,
 And strouted as a fanne, large and
 brode;
 fful streight and euene lay his ioly
 shode;
 5 His rode was reed, hise [e]yën greye as
 goos;
 With Powles wyndow coruen on his
 shoos,
 In hoses rede he wente fetisly.
 Yclad he was ful smal and proprely
 Al in a kirtel of a lyght waget,
 10 fful faire and thikke been the poyntes
 set;
 And ther-vp-on he hadde a gay surplys,
 As whit as is the blosme vp-on the rys.
 A myrie child he was, so God me
 saue.
 Wel koude he laten blood, and clippe,
 and shaue,
 15 And make[n] a chartre of lond or acquit-
 aunce.
 In twenty manere koude he trippe and
 daunce—
 After the scole of Oxenforde tho—
 And with his legges casten to and fro,
 And pleyen songes on a smal[] ru-
 bible;
 20 Ther-to he song som-tyme a loud quy-
 nyble,
 And as wel koude he pleye on his
 giterne.
 In al the toun nas brewhous ne tauerne
 That he ne visited with his solas,
 Ther any gaylard tappestere was.
 25 But, sooth to seyn, he was somdel
 squamous
 Of fartyng, and of speche daungerous.
 ¶ This Absolon, þat iolif was and gay,
 Gooth with a sencer on the haliday,
 Sensynge the wyues of the parissshē
 faste,

And many a louely look on hem he 40
 caste,
 And namely on this carpenteres wyf;
 To loke on hir(e) hym thoughte a
 myrie lyf,
 She was so propre, and sweete, and
 likerous;
 I dar wel seyn, if she hadde been a
 mous,
 And he a cat, he wolde hir(e) hente 45
 anon.
 ¶ This parisssh clerk, this ioly Absolon,
 Hath in his herte swich a louē-long-
 ynge,
 That of no wyf took he noon offrynge;
 ffor curteisie, he seyde, he wolde noon.
 The moone, whan it was nyght, ful 50
 brighte shoon,
 And Absolon his gyterne hath ytake,
 ffor paramours he thoghte for to wake;
 And forth he gooth, iolif and amorous,
 Til he cam to the carpenteres hous,
 A litel after cokkes hadde ycrowe, 55
 And dressed hym vp by a shotwyn-
 dowe
 That was vp-on the carpenteres wal.
 He syngeth in his voys gentil and
 smal:
 ‘Now, deere lady, if thy wille be,
 I praye yow that ye wolē thynke on 60
 me,’
 fful wel acordaunt to his gyternynge.
 This carpenter awook, and herde synge,
 And spak vn-to his wyf, and seyde
 anon,
 ‘What, Alison, herestow nat Absolon,
 That chaunteth thus vnder oure boures 65
 wal?’
 And she answerde hir housbondē ther-
 with-al:
 ‘Yis, God woot, Iohn, I heere it euery-
 del.’
 ¶ This passeth forth—what wol ye bet
 than weel?—
 ffro day to day [to day] this ioly
 Absolon

3319. lyght] fyn H.⁴ 20. Schapen with goores in þe newe get H.⁴ 25. maken E.He., make G., etc. 27. Oxenford E.He.D., Oxenforthe G., -forde C., etc. 31. his E., a He., etc. 37. ioly He., etc. 48. ne took He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 60. thynke E., rewe He., etc. (Sk.); preyre G.L.H.⁴ 62. herde hym He., etc. (Sk.).

70 So woweth hir(e), that hym is wo-
bigon.
He waketh al the nyght and al the
day;
He kembeth hise lokkes brode, and
made hym gay;
He woweth hir(e) by meenes and broc-
age,
And swoor he wolde been hir owene
page;
75 He syngeth, brokkyng as a nyght-
yngale;
He sente hir(e) piment, meeth, and
spiced ale,
And wafres, pipyng hoot out of the
gleede,
And for she was of toune, he profreth
meede;
ffor som folk wol ben wonnen for
richesse,
80 And somme for strokes, and somme for
gentillesse.
¶ Somtyme, to shewe his lightnesse
and maistrye,
He pleyeth Herodes [vp] on a scaffold
hye.
But what auailleth hym as in this
cas?
She loueth so this hende Nicholas,
85 That Absolon may blowe the bukkes
horn:
He ne hadde for his labour but a scorn;
And thus she maketh Absolon hir ape,
And al his earnest turneth til a iape.
fful sooth is this prouerbe, it is no
lye;
90 Men seyn right thus: 'Alwey the nye
slye
Maketh the ferre leewe to be looth.'
ffor though that Absolon be wood or
wrooth,
By cause that he fer was from hir
sighte,
This nye Nicholas stood in his lighte.
95 NOw ber[e] thee wel, thou hende Nicho-
las!

ffor Absolon may waille and synge
'allas!'
And so bifel it on a Saterdag,
This carpenter was goon til Osenay,
And hende Nicholas and Alisoun
Accorded been to this conclusioun, 00
That Nicholas shal shapen hym a wyle
This sely ialous housbonde to bigyle;
And, if so be the game wente aright,
She sholde slepen in his arm al nyght;
ffor this was his desir and hir(e) also, 05
And right anon, with-outen wordes mo,
This Nicholas no lenger wolde tarie,
But dooth ful softe vn-to his chambre
carie
Bothe mete and drynke for a day or
tweye,
And to hir housbonde bad hir(e) for 10
to seye,
If that he axed after Nicholas,
She sholde seye she nyste where he
was,
Of al that day she saugh hym nat with
[e]yë;
She trowed that he was in maladye,
ffor for no cry hir mayde koude hym 15
calle,
He nolde answerë for thyng that
myghte falle.
¶ This passeth forth al thilke Sater-
day,
That Nicholas stille in his chambre
lay,
And eet and sleep, or dide what hym
leste,
Til Sondag, that the sonne gooth to 20
reste.
¶ This sely carpenter hath greet mer-
ueyle
Of Nicholas, or what thyng myghte
hym eyle,
And seyde, 'I am adrad, by Seint
Thomas,
It stondeh nat aright with Nicholas—
God shilde that he deyde sodeynly! 25
This world is now ful tikel, sikerly;

3372. kembed He.C.L., kempte G. (Sk.), To kembe H.^a 78. profred He., etc. (Sk.).
80. [Raubg.] vnde Ouidius Ictibus Agrestis. 82. on H.^a (Sk., Gl.); heraudes D.C.P.L. (-e).
98. til E.He., to G., etc. 3403. the] this He.G.H.^a 05. hir d. and his He.G.D.H.^a 16. no
thyng He.G.C.L., nouzt P.H.^a (Gl.).

I saugh to-day a cors yborn to chirche
That now on Monday last I saugh
hym wirche.

¶ 'Go vp,' quod he vn-to his knaue
anoon,

0 'Clepe at his dore, or knokke with a
stoon,

Looke how it is, and telle me boldely.'

¶ This knaue gooth him vp ful sturdily,
And at the chambre-dore whil that
he stood,

He cride and knokked as that he were
wood:

5 'What, how! what do ye, maister Nicho-
lay?

How may ye slepen al the longe day?'

¶ But al for noght—he herde nat a
word.

An hole he foond ful lowe vp-on a
bord,

Ther-as the cat was wont in for to
crepe;

0 And at that hole he looked in ful
depe,

And at the laste he hadde of hym a
sight.

This Nicholas sat capynge euere vp-
righte,

As he had kiked on the newe moone.
Adoun he gooth, and tolde his maister
soone

5 In what array he saugh that ilke man.

¶ This carpenter to blessen hym bigan,
And seyde, 'Help vs, seinte ffrydes-
wyde!

A man woot litel what hym shal bityde.

This man is falle with his astromye

0 In som woodnesse or in som agonye.

I thoghte ay wel how that it sholde be!

Men sholde nat knowe of Goddes
pryuetee.

Ye, blessed be alwey a lewed man

That noght but oonly his bileue kan!

5 So ferde another clerk with astromye:

He walked in the feeldes for to pry
Vp-on the sterres, what ther sholde
bifalle,

Til he was in a marleput yfalle;

He saugh nat that; but yet, by seint
Thomas!

Me reweth soore of hende Nicholas. 60

He shal be rated of his studyng,

If that I may, by Ihesus, heuene kyng!

¶ Get me a staf, that I may vnder-
spore,

Whil þat thou, Robyn, heuest of the
dore.

He shal out of his studyng, as I 65
gesse!

And to the chambre dore he gan hym
dresse.

His knaue was a strong carl for the
noones,

And by the haspe he haaf it of atones;

In-to the floor the dore fil anon.

This Nicholas sat ay as stille as stoon, 70

And euere caped vpward in-to the eir.

This carpenter wende he were in despeir,

And hente hym by the sholdres myghti-
ly,

And shook hym harde, and cride spi-
tously,

'What, Nicholay! what, how! what, 75
looke adoun!

Awak[e], and thenke on Cristes pas-
sion!

I crouche thes from elues and fro
wightes!

Ther-with the nyghtspel seyde he anon-
rightes

On foure halues of the hous aboute,

And on the thresshold of the dore 80
with-out:

'Ihesu Crist and seinte Benedight!

Blésse this hous from euery wikked
wight!

ffor nyghtes uerye, the white pater
noster;

3427. born He.G.P.L. 31. tel E.He.L. [vgl. 7002]. 33. that f. H.⁴ (Gl.). 42. gapyng
G.D.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 3471, 3841]. 45. that E.P., this He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 49. astromye
E.He.L., astronomeye (-omye) G., etc.; id. 3455 (L. = G., etc.). 58. Marle pit He., etc.
(marbil p. G.). 59. Thomas: [pater He. 60. of] for He.H.⁴, f. P. 64. of E.D., vp He., etc.
(Sk.). 67: vgl. 545. 68. of E.G.D.C., vp He., etc. (Sk.). 71. caped E.He.C.H.⁴, gapede
G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 75. what looke E., man l. H.⁴, looke He., etc. 81. seinte H.⁴, seint
E., etc. 83. nyghtes E.H.⁴, the n. He., etc.; uerye] mare D., verray H.⁴

Whére wentestow, seint Petres soster?"

85 ¶ And atte laste this hende Nicholas
Gan for to sike soore, and seyde, 'Allas!
Shal al this world be lost eftsoones
now?"

¶ This carpenter answerde, 'What sey-
stow?"

What! thenke on God, as we doon, men
þat swynke!"

90 ¶ This Nicholas answerde, 'Fecche me
drynke!

And after wol I speke in pryuetee
Of certeyn thyng that toucheth me
and thee;

I wol telle it noon oother man, cer-
teyn."

¶ This carpenter goth doun, and comth
ageyn,

95 And broghte of myghty ale a large
quart.

And whan þat ech of hem had dronke
his part,

This Nicholas his dore faste shette,
And doun the carpenter by hym he
sette.

¶ He seyde, 'Iohn, myn hooste lief
and deere,

00 Thou shalt vp-on thy trouthe swere
me heere

That to no wight thou shalt this con-
seil wreye;

ffor it is Cristes conseil that I seye,
And if thou telle man, thou art forlore,
ffor this vengauce thou shalt han
therfore,

05 That, if thou wreye me, thou shalt
be wood."

'Nay, Crist forbede it, for his hooly
blood!"

Quod tho this sely man, 'I nam no
labbe,

Ne, though I seye, I am nat lief to
gabbe.

Seye what thou wolt, I shal it neuere
telle

To child ne wyf, by hym that harwed 10
helle!"

'NOW Iohn,' quod Nicholas, 'I wol
nat lye,

I have yfounde in myn astrologye,
As I haue looked in the moone bright,
That now a Monday next, at quarter
nyght,

Shal falle a reyn, and that so wilde and 15
wood,

That half so greet was neuere Noees
flood.

This world,' he seyde, 'in lasse than an
hour

Shal al be dreynt, so hidous is the
shour:

Thus shal mankynde drenche, and lese
hir lyf."

¶ This carpenter answerde, 'Allas, my 20
wyf!

And shal she drenche? alas, myn
Alisoun!"

ffor sorwe of this he fil almoost adoun,
And seyde, 'Is ther no remedie in this
cas?"

¶ 'Why, yis, for gode,' quod hende
Nicholas,

'If thou wolt werken after loore and 25
reed,

Thou mayst nat werke[n] after thyne
owenè heed;

ffor thus seith Salomon, that was ful
trewe,

"Werke al by conseil, and thou shalt
nat rewe."

And if thou werken wolt by good
conseil,

I vndertake, with-outen mast and seyl, 30
Yet shal I sauen hir(e) and thee and
me.

Hastow nat herd hou saued was Noë,
Whan þat oure Lord haddē warned
hym biforn

That al the world with water sholdē
be lorn?"

3484. wentestow] wonyst þou now G.D.H.⁴; seinte He.G.C.L.H.⁴ 87. This] the He., etc. (Sk.). 89. thenk He.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), thynk E., etc. [f. 3476]. 99. hooste C.P.L. [vgl. 751, etc.] u. fo öfter. 3503. telle it man He., etc. (Sk.); t. ony m. D. 08. am E.D.H.⁴, nam (ne am) He., etc. 09. Saie L. 24. Gode Gl. [?]. 26. werken E.He.G.D. (Sk., Gl.), worke H.⁴, worken (worchen) C.P.L. 28. nicht Sal.; f. 3. Eitrad XXXII, 19. 30. and E.H.⁴, or He., etc.

35 ¶ 'Yis,' quod this carpenter, 'ful yoore ago.'
 ¶ 'Hastou nat herd,' quod Nicholas, 'also
 The sorwe of Noë with his felawe-shipe,
 Er þat he myghte brynge his wyf to shipe?
 Hym hadde be leuere, I dar wel vnder-take,
 40 At thilke tymē than alle hise wetheres blake,
 That she hadde had a ship hir-self allone;
 And ther-fore, woostou, what is best to doone?
 This asketh haste, and of an hastif thyng
 Men may nat preche or maken tari-yng.
 45 ¶ Anon go gete vs faste in-to this in A knedyng-trogh, or ellis a kymelyn ffor ech of vs, but lokē þat they be large,
 In whiche mowe swymme as in a barge,
 And han ther-inne vitaille suffisant
 50 But for a day—fy on the remenant! The water shal aslake and goon away Aboute pryme vp-on the nexte day. But Robyn may nat wite of this, thy knaue,
 Nē eek thy mayde Gille I may nat saue.
 55 Axe nat why, for though thou aske me,
 I wol nat tellen Goddes pryuetee. Suffiseth thee, but if thy wittes madde, To han as greet a grace as Noë hadde. Thy wyf shal I wel sauē, out of doute.
 60 Go now thy wey, and speede thee heer aboute.
 ¶ But whan thou hast for hir(e) and thee and me
 Ygeten vs thise knedyng-tubbes thre,

Thanne shaltow hange hem in the roof ful hye,
 That no man of oure purueiaunce spyē. And whan thou thus hast doon as I 65
 haue seyde,
 And hast oure vitaille faire in hem yleyd,
 And eek an ax to smyte the corde atwo,
 Whan þat the water comth, that we may go,
 And broke an hole an-heigh vp-on the gable
 Vnto the gardynward, ouer the stable, 70
 That we may frely passen forth oure way,
 Whan þat the grete shour is goon away:
 Thanne shaltow swymme as myrie, I vndertake,
 As dooth the white doke after hir drake.
 Thanne wol I clepe, "How Alison, how 75
 Iohn!
 Be myrie, for the flood wol passe anon!"
 And thou wolt seyn "Hayl, maister Nicholay!
 Good morwe! I se thee wel, for it is day."
 And thanne shul we be lordes al oure lyf
 Of al the world, as Noë and his wyf. 80
 ¶ But of o thyng I warne thee ful right:
 Be wel auysed on that ilke nyght
 That we ben entred in-to shippes bord,
 That noon of vs ne speke nat a word,
 Ne clepe, ne criē, but be[en] in his 85
 preyere;
 ffor it is Goddes owenē heeste deere.
 ¶ Thy wyf and thou moote hange fer atwynne,
 ffor that bitwixe yow shal be no synne,
 Na-moore in lookyng than ther shal in deede,

3538. brynge E., he gat H.⁴, gete He., etc. (Sk.). 39. be E.G.D., f. He., etc.
 60. spede D.P.L. 64. espye He.D.C.P., aspye G.L.H.⁴ 69. broke E.C.P., breke He., etc.
 73. shal I E. 74. hir E.D.H.⁴, his He.C.L., the G.P. 85. be H.⁴ [ʃon]., been E., etc.
 (Sk., Gl.).

90 This ordinance is seyde, so God thee
speede!

Tomorwe at nyght, whan folk ben alle
aslepe,

In-to oure knedyng-tubbes wol we
crepe,

And sitten there, abidyng Goddes grace.
Go now thy wey! I hauē no lenger
space

95 To make of this no lenger sermonyng.
Men seyn thus: "Sende the wise, and
seye no-thing."

Thou art so wys, it nedeth thee nat
to teche.

Go saue oure lyf, and that I the
biseche.'

¶ This sely carpenter goth forth his
wey;

00 fful ofte he seith 'allas and weylawey,'
And to his wyf he tolde his pryueteē,
And she was war, and knew it bet
than he

What al this queynte cast was for to
seye.

But natheles she ferde as she wolde
deye,

05 And seyde, 'Allas, go forth thy wey
anon,

Help vs to scape, or we been lost
echon!

I am thy trewe, verray wedded wyf—
Go, deere spouse, and help to saue
oure lyf!

Lo, which a greet thyng is affeccoun!

[¶ *Auctor*

10 Men may dyen of ymaginacioun,
So depe may impressioun be take!

This sely carpenter bigynneth quake,
Hym thinketh verrailly that he may
see

Nóes flood comē walwyngē as the
see

15 To drenchen Alisoun, his hony deere;
He wepeth, weyleth, maketh sory
cheere;

He siketh with ful many a sory swogh;
He gooth, and geteth hym a knedyng-
trogh,

And after that a tubbe and a kyme-
lyn,

And pryuely he sente hem to his in, 20

And heng hem in the roof in pryueteē.
His owenē hand than made laddres
thre,

To clymben by the ronges and the
stalkes

In-to the tubbes hangyngē in the balkes,
And hem vitailleth, bothe trogh and 25
tubbe,

With breed and chese, and good ale in
a iubbe,

Suffisyngē right ynogh as for a day.
But er that he hadde maad al this
array,

He sente his knaue, and eek his wenche
also

Vp-on his nedē to London for to go; 30
And on the Monday, whan it drow to
nyght,

He shette his dorē with-oute candel-
lyght,

And dresseth alle thyng as it shal be.
And shortly: vp they clomben alle
thre;

They sitten stille wel a furlong way. 35

¶ 'Now, Pater noster—clom,' seyde
Nicholay.

And 'clom' quod Iohn, and 'clom'
seyde Alisoun.

This carpenter seyde his deuocioun,
And stille he sit, and biddeth his
preyere,

Awaityngē on the reyn, if he it heere. 40

¶ The dede sleep, for very bisynesse,
ffil on this carpenter, right as I gesse,
Aboutē corfew-tyme or litel moore.
ffor trauaille of his goost he groneth
soore,

And eft he routeth, for his heed mys- 45
lay.

3590. so E.D.P.H.⁴, go He., etc. (Sk.). 91. folk E., we G., men He., etc. (Sk.). 97. to
f. He.G.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); preche E., teche He., etc. 3600. seyde He., etc. 06. lost E.,
dede He., etc. 19. that E.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 22. With his G.; þan H.⁴; he made
He.G.D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 25. vitailed He., etc. (Sk.). 33. dressed He., etc. (Sk.); al
D.P.L., al þis H.⁴ (Gl.); sholde He., etc. (Sk.). 35. seten He.D.P.H.⁴, setten C.L.
40. Ay waytyng H.⁴ (Gl.). 41. wery] verray G.D.H.⁴ (Gl.).

Doun of the laddre stalketh Nicholay
 And Alisoun—ful softe adoun she
 spedde;
 With-uten wordes mo they goon to
 bedde.
 Ther-as the carpenter is wont to lye,
 Ther was the reuel and the melodye,
 And thus *lyth* Alison and Nicholas
 In bisynesse of myrthe and of solas,
 Til that the belle of laudes gan to
 rynge,
 And freres in the chauncel gonne synge.
 This parish clerk, this amorous Absolon,
 That is for loue alwey so wo-bigon,
 Vp-on the Monday was at Oseneye
 With [a] compaignye, hym to disporte
 and pleye,
 And axed vp-on cas a cloisterer
 fful priuely after Iohn the carpenter;
 And he drough hym a-part out of the
 chirche,
 And seyde, 'I noot, I saugh hym
 heere nat wirche
 Syn Saturday—I trowe that he be
 went
 ffor tymber ther oure abbot hath hym
 sent;
 ffor he is wont for tymber for to go,
 And dwellen at the grange a day or
 two;
 Or elles he is at his hous, certeyn—
 Wher(e) that he be, I kan nat soothly
 seyn.'
 ¶ This Absolon ful ioly was and light,
 And thoghte, 'Now is tyme wake al
 nyght!
 ffor, sikirly, I saugh hym nat stiryng
 Aboute his dore syn day bigan to
 sprynge.
 ¶ So moot I thryue, I shal at cokkes
 crowe
 fful pryuely knocken at his wyndowe
 That stant ful lowe vp-on his boures
 wal.
 To Alison now wol I tellen al

My loue-longynge, for yet I shal nat
 mysse
 That at the leste wey I shal hir(e)
 kisse.
 Som maner confort shal I hauē, par-
 fay!
 My mouth hath icched al this longe 80
 day:
 That is a signe of kysying atte leste;
 Al nyght me mette eek I was at a
 feeste.
 Therfore I wol goon slepe an houre
 or tweye,
 And al the nyght thanne wol I wake
 and pleye.
 Whan that the firste cok hath crowe, 85
 anon
 Vp rist this ioly louer(e) Absolon,
 And hym arraieth gay, at poynt deuys,
 But first he cheweth greyn and lycorys
 To smellen sweete, er he hadde kembd
 his heer.
 Vnder his tonge a trewe-loue he beer; 90
 ffor ther-by wende he to ben gracious.
 He rometh to the carpenteres hous,
 And stille he stant vnder the shot-wyn-
 dowe—
 Vn-to his brist it raughte, it was so
 lowe—,
 And softe he knocketh with a semy- 95
 soun:
 'What do ye, hony-comb, sweete Ali-
 soun,
 My faire bryd, my sweete cynamome?
 Awaketh, lemman myn, and speketh
 to me!
 Wel litel thynken ye vp-on my wo,
 That for youre loue I swete ther I go. 00
 No wonder is thogh that I swelte
 and swete,
 I moorne as dooth a lamb after the
 tete.
 Ywis, lemman, I hauē swich loue-
 longynge,
 That lik a turtel trewe is my moorn-
 ynge,

3651. lyth (lyn D.), f. E. 58. [a] E. 59. Cloistrer E.He.P.L. 63. Syn E.G.H.⁴, Sith He., etc.; trow E.D.H.⁴ 70. wake E.H.⁴, to w. He., etc. 74. knocke E.G., go knocke H.⁴ (Gl.). 88. and) of E. 94. brist E., brest He., etc. (Sk.). 95. knocketh E. (Gl.), cogheth He.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), koughed D.C., coude G., couched L. [vgl. 3674 u. 3786]. 3700. swelte H.⁴

05 I may nat ete na-moore than a mayde.
 ¶ 'Go fro the wyndow, Iakke-fool!' she
 sayde,
 'As 'helpe me God! it wol nat be "com
 pa me;"
 I loue another—and elles I were to
 blame—
 Wel bet than thee, by Ihesu, Absolon!
 10 Go forth thy way, or I wol caste a
 ston,
 And lat me slepe, a twenty deuel weyl'
 ¶ 'Allas,' quod Absolon, 'and weyla-
 way,
 That trewe loue was euere so yuel biset!
 Thanne kysse me, syn it may be no bet,
 15 ffor Ihesu loue, and for the loue of
 mel'
 ¶ 'Wiltow thanne go thy way?' quod
 she.
 ¶ 'Ye certes, lemman,' quod this Abso-
 lon.
 ¶ 'Thanne make thee redy,' quod she,
 'I come anon.'
 And vn-to Nicholas she seyde stille,
 20 'Now hust! and thou shalt laughen
 al thy fille.'
 ¶ This Absolon down sette hym on
 his knees,
 And seyde, 'I am lord at alle degrees;
 ffor after this I hope ther cometh
 moore.
 Lemman, thy grace, and, sweete bryd,
 thyn oorel'
 25 ¶ The wyndow she vndoth, and that in
 haste,
 'Hauē do,' quod she, 'com of, and
 spede the faste,
 Lest that oure neighebores thee espie.'
 ¶ This Absolon gan wpe his mouth ful
 drie.
 Dirk was the nyght as pich, or as the
 cole;
 30 And at the wyndow out she putte hir
 hole.
 And Absolon—hym fil no bet ne wers—

But with his mouth he kiste hir naked
 ers
 fful sauourly, er he was war of this.
 Abak he stirte, and thoughte it was
 amys,
 ffor wel he wiste a womman hath no 35
 berd.
 He felte a thyng al rough and long
 yherd,
 And seyde, 'ffy, allas! what haue I
 do?'
 ¶ 'Teheel' quod she, and claptē the
 wyndow to,
 And Absolon gooth forth a sory pas. 40
 ¶ 'A berd, a berd!' quod hende Ni-
 cholas,
 'By Goddes corpus! this gooth faire
 and weel.'
 ¶ This sely Absolon herde euery-deel,
 And on his lippe he gan for anger
 byte,
 And to hym-self he seyde, 'I shal
 thee quyte!'
 ¶ Who rubbeth now, who froteth now 45
 his lippes
 With dust, with sond, with straw, with
 clooth, with chippes
 But Absolon?—that seith ful ofte, 'Allas!
 My soule bitake I vn-to Sathanas,
 But me were leuere than al this toun,'
 quod he,
 'Of this despit awroken for to be. 50
 Allas,' quod he, 'allas, I ne hadde
 ybleynt!'
 His hote loue was coold and al yqueynt;
 ffor fro that tyme that he hadde kist[e]
 hir ers,
 Of paramours he sette nat a kers;
 ffor he was heeled of his maladie. 55
 fful ofte paramours he gan deffie,
 And weep as dooth a child that is
 ybete.
 A softe paas he wente ouer the strete
 Vn-til a smyth men cleped daun
 Gerueys,

3707. helpe G.L.; ba Sk., Gl. 13. yuel ylle H.⁴ 14. kys E.He.G. (kisseth H.⁴); syn
 bat He. 16. ther-with nach wey He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 19/20: nur E. 22. a lord He., etc.
 (Sk.) [ober Siat?]. 26. spede D.P.L. 29. Derk He., etc. (Sk.). 30. pitte E. (Gl.).
 50. awreken He.D. 51. nadde H.⁴ 53. kist He., etc. (kissed L.). 59. clepen He.C.P.L.,
 callen D., clepith H.⁴

60 That in his forge smythed plough-
harneys,

He sharpeth shaar and kultour bisily.
This Absolon knokketh al esily,
And seyde, 'Vndo, Gerueys, and that
anon!'

¶ 'What? who artow?' 'I am heere,
Absolon.'

55 'What, Absolon, for Cristes swete treel
Why rise ye so rathe? *Ey*, benedicitee!
What eyleth yow? *Som* gay gerl, God
it woot,

Hath broght yow thus vp-on the viri-
toot.

By seinte *Note*, ye woot wel what I
mene!

70 ¶ This Absolon ne roghte nat a bene
Of al his pley, no word agayn he
yaf;

He hadde moore tow on his distaf
Than Gerueys knew, and seyde, 'ffreend
so deere,

That hootte kultour in the chymenee
heere,

75 As lene it me, I hauē ther-with to
doone,

And I wol brynge it thee agayn ful
soone.'

¶ Gerueys answerde, 'Certes, were it
gold,

Or in a poke nobles alle vntold,
Thou sholdest have, as I am trewe
smyth;

80 *Ey*, Cristes foo, what wol ye do ther-
with?

'Ther-of,' quod Absolon, 'be as be may,
I shal wel telle it thee to-morwe day,'
And caughte the kultour by the colde
stele.

fful softe out at the dore he gan to
stele,

85 And wente vn-to the carpenteres wal.
He cogheth first, and knokketh ther-
with-al

Vp-on the wyndowe, right as he dide
er.

¶ This Alison answerde, 'Who is ther
That knokketh so? I warante it a
theef.'

¶ 'Why, nay,' quod he, 'God woot, my 90
sweete leef!

I am thyn Absolon, my deerelyng.
Of gold,' quod he, 'I hauē thee broght
a ryng;

My mooder yaf it me, so God me
saue!

fful fyn it is, and ther-to wel ygraue:
This wol I yeue thee if thou me 95
kisse.'

¶ This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,
And thoughte he wolde amenden al the
iape,

He sholde kisse his *ers* er that he scape.
And vp the wyndowe dide he hastily,
And out his *ers* he putteth pryuely 00
Ouer the buttoke to the haunche-bon.
And ther-with spak this clerk, this Abso-
lon:

'Spek, sweete bryd, I noot nat where
thou art.'

¶ This Nicholas anon leet fle a fart
As greet as it had been a thonder-dent, 05
That with the strook he was almost
yblent;

And he was redy with his *iren* hoot,
And Nicholas amydde *thē* *ers* he smoot.

¶ Of gooth the skyn an hande-brede
aboutel

The hootte kultour brende so his toute, 10
And for the smert he wende for to
dye.

As he werē wood, for wo he gan to
crye,

'Help! water, water! help, for Goddes
herte!'

¶ This carpenter out of his slomber
sterre,

And herde oon crien 'water,' as he 15
werē wood,

And thoughte, 'Allas, now comth Nowelis
flood!'

He sit hym vp with-uten wordes mo,

3764. I am heere E., it am I He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 65. for E.C.H.⁴ [þāter], what He., etc. 68. merytot G., verytrot H.⁴ 76. And E., f. He., etc. 82. to-morwe] another He.D. 98. ers f. E. 3808. amydde E.G.H.⁴, in He., etc.; the f. E. 16. comth E., cometh He., etc.; Noes D.P.L.H.⁴ 17. sit E.G.H.⁴, sette He., etc.

And with his *ax* he smoot the corde
atwo,
And doun gooth al—he foond neither
to selle

20 Ne breed nè *alē*, til he cam to the selle
Vp-on the floor, and ther aswowne
he lay.

¶ Vp stirte hire Alison and Nicholay,
And criden 'Out and harrow!' in the
strete.

The neighebores, bothe smale and
grete,

25 In ronnen for to gauren on this man.
That yet aswowne he lay bothe pale
and wan;

ffor with the fal he brosten hadde his
arm.

But stonde he moste vn-to his owenē
harm;

ffor whan he spak, he was anon bore
doun

30 With hende Nicholas and Alisoun.
They tolden euery man that he was
wood,

He was agast so of 'Nowelis' flood
Thurgh fantasie, that of his vanytee
He hadde yboght hym knedyng-tubbes
thre,

35 And hadde hem hanged in the roof
aboue,

And þat he preyde hem, for Goddes
loue,

To sitten in the roof par compaignye.
The folk gan laughen at his fantasie.
In-to the roof they kiken, and they
cape,

40 And turned al his harm vn-to a iape;
ffor what-so þat this carpenter ans-
werde,

It was for noght, no man his reson
herde.

With othes grete he was so sworn
adoun,

That he was holde wood in al the toun.

ffor euery clerk anonright heeld with 45
oother;

They seyde, 'The man was wood, my
leeue broother;'

And euery wight gan laughen of this
stryf.

Thus swyued was this carpenteres wyf
ffor al his kepyng and his ialousye;
And Absolon hath kist hir nether [e]yē, 50
And Nicholas is scalded in the towte.
This tale is doon, and God saue al the
rowte!

¶ Heere endeth the Millere his tale.

4. The Reues Tale.

a) ¶ The prologe of the Reues tale.

Whan folk hadde laughen at this
nyce cas

Of Absolon and hende Nicholas,
Diuerse folk diuersely they seyde; 55
But for the moore part they loughe and
pleyde.

Nè at this tale I saugh no man hym
greue,

But it were oonly Osewold, the Reue.
By-cause he was of carpenteres craft,
A litel ire is in his herte ylaft; 60
He gan to grucche, and blamed it a
lite.

¶ 'So theek,' quod he, 'ful wel koude
I yow quite

With bleryng of a proud milleres [e]yē,
If that me liste speke of ribaudye.
But ik am oold, me list no pley for 65
age:

Gras-tyme is doon, my fodder is now
forage,

This white top writeth myne olde yeris,
Myn herte is mowled also as myne
heris,

But if I fare as dooth an openers;

¶ That ilke fruyt is euer leng the wers, 70

3820. Ne E.He., No C.L.H.⁴, Neyber G., f. D.P.; Celle E.He.D. 26. yet...he E.G., f. He., etc. (he f. Gl.). 27-52. Sl. für G. 35. roue E. [Dat.?). 39. cape E.He.C., gape D., etc. [vgl. 3442]. 47. of E.D., at He., etc. 48. this E., the He., etc. (Sk.). — Here is ended the Millers t. He.; Thus endeth D., etc. — 53-88. Sl. für G. 60. ylaft E.He., laft D., etc. 62. yow E.Sl.L., thee He., etc. (Gl.). 65. no E.He., nat D., etc. 68. also mowled He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 69. I] ik He. 70. leng E., longe L., lenger He., etc. (Gl.).

Til it be rote[n] in mullok or in
stree.

We olde men, I drede, so fare we:
Til we be roten kan we nat be rype,
We hoppen ay, whil that the world
wol pype;

75 ffor in oure wyl ther stiketh euere a
nayl,

To haue an hoor heed and a grene
tayl,

As hath a leek; for thogh oure myght
be goon,

Oure wyl desireth folie euere in oon;
ffor whan we may nat doon, than wol
we speke,

80 Yet in oure asshen olde is fyr yreke.
¶ ffourē gledes han we, whiche I shal
deuyse:

Avaunting, liyng, anger, coueitis;e;
Thise foure sparkles longen vn-to eelde.
Oure olde lemes mowē wel been vn-
weelde,

85 But wyl ne shal nat failen, that is
sooth.

And yet ik haue alwey a coltes tooth,
As many a yeer as it is passed henne,
Syn that my tappe of lif bigan to
renne.

ffor sikerly, whan I was bore, anon

90 Deeth drough the tappe of lyf, and leet
it gon.

And euer sithe hath so the tappe
yronne,

Til that almoost al empty is the tonne.
The stream of lyf now droppeth on the
chymbe,

The sely tonge may wel rynge and
chymbe

95 Of wrecchednesse that passed is ful
yoore;

With olde folk, sauē dotage, is na-
moore.'

Whan that oure hoost hadde herd
this sermonyng,

He gan to speke as lordly as a kyng;

He seide, 'What amounteth al this
wit?

What shul we speke alday of hooly 00
writ?

The deuel made a reue for to preche,
And of a souter(e) shipman or a leche.
Seyē forth thy tale, and tarie nat the
tyme;

Lo Depeford!—and it is half wey pryme.
Lo Grenewych! ther many a shrewe is 05
inne.

It were al tyme thy tale to bigynne!
'NOW, sires,' quod this Osewold the
Reue,

'I praye yow alle that ye nat yow greue,
Thogh I answeere, and somdeel sette
his howue;

ffor leuful is with force force of- 10
showue.

¶ This dronke Miller(e) hath ytoold vs
heer

How that bigyled was a carpenteer,
Perauerture in scorn, for I am oon,
And, by youre leue, I shal hym quite
anoon;

Right in this cherles termes wol I 15
speke.

I praye to God his nekke mote breke!
He kan wel in myn [e]yē seen a
stalke,

But in his owene he kan nat seen a
balke.'

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Reues tale.

At Trumpyngtown, nat fer fro Cante-
brigge,

Ther gooth a brook, and ouer that a 20
brigge,

Vp-on the whiche brook ther stant a
melle;

And this is verray sooth þat I yow
telle.

A millere was ther dwellynge many a
day;

As eny pecok he was proud and gay.

3871. rote H.⁴ 74. ay E., alwey He., etc.; that f. C., etc. 76. heed E.H.⁴, heer He., etc. 84. lymes He., etc. 86. ik E.D., I He., etc. 89. sikerlik He.H.⁴; ik He.D. 3902. And E.G., Or He., etc. (Gl.). o8. preye G.L., 3916 auch D.C.; ähnl. 4129 u. ö. 10. [Standgl.] vim vi repellere E. 16. breke E.G., he b. L., alto-b. P., to b. He., etc. 21. which E.He.G.

25 Pipen he koude, and fisshe, and nettes
 beete,
 And turne coppes, and wel wrastle and
 sheete;
 And by his belt he baar a long panade,
 And of a swerd ful trenchant was the
 blade;
 A ioly popper(e) baar he in his pouche:
 30 Ther was no man, for peril, dorste
 hym touche;
 A Scheffeld thwitel baar he in his
 hose.
 Round was his face, and camuse was
 his nose;
 As piled as an ape was his skulle.
 He was a market-beter(e) atte fulle;
 35 Ther dorste no wight hand vp-on hym
 legge,
 That he ne swoor he sholde anon
 abegge.
 A theef he was of corn and eek of
 mele,
 And that a sly, and vsaunt for to stele.
 His name was hoote 'deynous Syme-
 kyn.'
 40 A wyf he hadde, ycome[n] of noble kyn:
 The person of the toun hir fader was;
 With hir(e) he yaf ful many[~]a panne
 of bras
 ffor that Symkyn sholde in his blood
 allye.
 She was yfostred in a nonnerye,
 45 ffor 'Symkyn wolde no wyf, as he
 sayde,
 But [if] she werē wel ynorissed and
 a mayde,
 To sauen his estaat of yomanrye;
 And she was proud and peert as is
 a pye.
 A ful fair sightē was it vp-on hem
 two;
 50 On haly-dayes biforn hir(e) wolde he go
 With his tynet bounden aboute his
 heed,

And she cam after in a gyte of reed,
 And Symkyn hadde hosen of the same.
 Ther dorste no wight clepen hir(e) but
 'dame;'
 Was noon so hardy that wentē by 55
 the weye
 That with hir(e) dorste rage or ones
 pleye,
 But if he wolde be slayn of Symekyn
 With panade, or with knyf, or boide-
 kyn.
 ffor 'alous folk ben perilous eueremo,
 Algate they wolde hir(e) wyues wenden 60
 so.
 And eek, for she was somdel smoter-
 lich,
 She was as digne as water in a dich,
 As ful of hoker and of bisemare.
 Hire thoughte þat a lady sholde hir(e)
 spare,
 What for hir kynrede and hir nortelrie 65
 That she hadde lerned in the nonnerie.
 ¶ A doghter hadde they bitwixe hem
 two
 Of twenty yeer, with-uten any mo,
 Sauynge a child þat was of half yeer
 age,
 In cradel it lay, and was a propre page. 70
 This wenche thikke and wel ygrowen
 was,
 With kamuse nose, and [e]yēn greye as
 glas,
 Buttokes brode, and brestes rounde and
 hye;
 But right fair was hir heer, I wol nat
 lye.
 ¶ This person of the toun, for she 75
 was feir,
 In purpos was to maken hir(e) his
 heir
 Bothe of his catel and his mesuage,
 And straunge he made it of hir mariage.
 His purpos was for to bistowe hir(e)
 hye

3927. And E.He., Ay G., etc. (Ny P.). 37. of corn and eek of Mele E., for sothe
 of c. and m. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 39. Symekyn H.⁴ (Gl.), Symkyn E., etc. (Sk.); id. 3957.
 40. ycomen E., come C.H.⁴, comen He., etc. 46. [if] E. 51. boundyn G.P., ybounde H.⁴
 (Gl.), wounnden He., etc. 59. perlous L. 63. As] And He.G. (Sk.), So D.; bis(s)emare
 C.H.⁴ 73. And buttokkes H.⁴, With b. He.D., etc. (Sk.). 75. This E.G., The He., etc. (Sk.);
 so feir He.G.P.L.

- 80 In-to som worthy blood of auncetrye.
ffor hooly chirches good moot been
despended
On hooly chirches blood that is de-
scended;
Therefore he wolde his hooly blood
honoure,
Though that he hooly chirche sholde
deuoure.
- 85 Gret sokene hath this miller(e), out of
doute,
With whete and malt of al the land
aboute,
And nameliche ther was a greet Col-
legge,
Men clepe[n] the Soler-halle at Cante-
bregge;
Ther was hir whete and eek hir malt
ygrounde.
- 90 And on a day it happened in a stounde,
Sik lay the maunciple on a maladye—
Men wenden wisly that he sholde dye—,
ffor which this millere stal bothe mele
and corn
An hundred tyme moore than biforn
(ffor ther-biforn he stal but curteisly,
95 But now he was a thief outrageously),
ffor which the wardeyn chidde, and
made fare.
But ther-of sette the miller(e) nat *a
tare,
He craketh boost, and swoor it was
nat so.
- 00 ¶ Thanne were ther yonge poure clerkes
two,
That dwelten in this halle of which
I seye.
Testif they were, and lusty for to
pleye,
And, oonly for hir myrthe and reuel-
rye,
Vp-on the wardeyn bisily they crye
05 To yeue hem leue but a litel stounde,
- To goon to mille, and seen hir corn
ygrounde,
And hardily they dorste leye hir nekke,
The miller(e) sholde nat stele hem half
a pekke
Of corn by sleighte, ne by force hem
reue;
And at the laste the wardeyn yaf hem 10
leue.
Iohn highte that oon, and Aleyn heet
that oother;
Of o toun were they born, that highte
Strother,
ffer in the North—I kan nat telle
where.
¶ This Aleyn maketh redy al his gere,
And on an hors the sak he caste anon. 15
fforth goth Aleyn the clerk, and also
Iohn,
With good swerd and bokeler by hir
side.
Iohn knew the wey, hem nedede no
gyde;
And at the mille the sak adoun he
layth.
Aleyn spak first, 'Al hayl, Symond, 20
yfayth!
Hou fareþ thy faire doghter and thy
wyf?'
¶ 'Aleyn, welcome,' quod Symkyn, 'by
my lyf!
And Iohn also! how now, what do ye
heer?'
¶ 'Symond,' quod Iohn, 'by God, nede
has na peer!
Hym boes serue hym-selne that has 25
na swayn,
Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes sayn.
Oure manciple—I hope he wil be deed,
Swa werkes ay the wanges in his heed;
And forthy is I come, and eek Alayn,
To grynde oure corn, and carie it ham 30
agayn;

3988. clepeth He.G.C., clepe it H.; at] of He.D.C.H.⁴ 99. craked He.C.P.H.⁴, crakke L.
4000. clerkes E.G., scolers He., etc. 01. this E.G., the He., etc. 03. reuelrye D.L.H.⁴
[l þäter], reuerye E., etc. 11. heet E., highte He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 17. and with bokeler
He.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), his He.C.L. 18. hym He.C.P.L.; nedede C., nedyth G.D.L.H.⁴
20. in fayth He., etc. 24. By god quod Iohn Symond He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 25. boes E.,
muste G., falles H.⁴, bihoues He., etc. (-eþ P.L.); self He., etc. (Gl., selve Sk.). 29. forthy
E.D., ther-fore He., etc. 30. heem He., hom G.P., mele D.

I praye yow, spede vs heythen that
ye may.'

¶ 'It shal be doon,' quod Symkyn,
'by my fay!

What wol ye doon whil that it is in
hande?'

¶ 'By God, right by the hopur wil I
stande.'

35 Quod Iohn, 'and se how that the corn
gas in.

Yet saugh I neuere, by my fader kyn!
How that the hopur wagges til and
fra.'

¶ Aleyn answerde, 'Iohan, wiltow swa?
Thanne wil I be bynethe, by my croun!

40 And se how þat the mele falles doun
In-to the trough: that sal be my disport,
ffor Iohn, yfaith, I may been of your(e)
sort,

I is as ille a miller(e) as are ye.'

¶ This miller(e) smyled of hir nycetee,
45 And thoghte, 'Al this nys doon but
for a wyle;

They wene þat no man may hem
bigile,

But by my thrift, yet shal I blere
hir [e]yð

ffor al the sleighte in hir philosophy!
The moore queynte creakes that they
make,

50 The moore wol I stele whan I take;
In stide of flour yet wol I yeue hem
bren.

"The gretteste clerkes been noght
wisest men,"

As whilom to the wolf thus spak the
mare.

Of al hir art I counte noght a tare!

55 ¶ Out at the dore he gooth ful pryuely,
Whan þat he saugh his tyme, softly;
He looketh vp and doun til he hath
founde

The clerkes hors, ther-as it stood
ybounde

Bihynde the mille, vnder a leuesel,
And to the hors he goth hym faire and 60
wel;

He strepeth of the brydel right anon,
And whan the hors was laus, he
gyneth gon

Toward the fen, ther wilde mares renne,
fforth with 'weheel' thurgh thikke and
thurgh thenne.

¶ This miller(e) gooth agayn, no word 65
he seyde,

But dooth his note, and with the clerkes
pleyde,

Til that hir corn was faire and weel
ygrounde.

And whan the mele is saked and
ybounde,

This Iohn goth out, and fynt his hors
away,

And gan to crie, 'Harrow and weilaway! 70
Oure hors is lorn! Alayn, for Goddes
banes,

Step(e) on thy feet, com out, man, al
atanes!

Allas! our wardeyn has his palfrey
lorn!

This Aleyn al forgat bothe mele and
corn,

Al was out of his mynde his hous- 75
bondrie.

'What? whilk way is he geen?' he
gan to crie.

¶ The wyf com lepyng in ward with'
a ren;

She seyde, 'Allas! youre hors goth to
the fen

With wilde mares as faste as he may
go!

Vnthank come on his hand that boond 80
hym so,

And he þat bettre sholde han knyht
the reyne!

¶ 'Allas!' quod Iohn, 'Aleyn, for Cristes
payne,

4031. that] what He.D., as G. 34. hoper He., etc. (Sk.). 38. Iohan He.P., Iohn and H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), Iohn E., etc. 42. yfaith E.G., in faith He.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), in faath C.P.L. 52. the wisest He.D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 54. I counte G. (Sk.), ne c. I H.⁴ (Gl.), c. I E., etc. 55. at] of He.C. 59. lefsel E.He.D. 64. fforth E., For H.⁴, And forth He., etc.; and thenne He.D., and eek þurgh þ. H.⁴ 68. is] was He.H.⁴ 71. lorn E.G., lost He., etc. 72. out] on H.⁴, of He., etc. 76. gane He.D.L.H.⁴, gon G., etc. 82. Iohn (ohan H.⁴) f. E.G.

Laye down thy swerd, and I wil myn
 alswa!
 I is ful wight, God waat, as is a raa;
 85 By God herte, he sal nat scape vs
 bathe!
 Why nadstow pit the capul in the
 lathe?
 Ilhayl, by God, Aleyn, thou is a
 fonne!
 ¶ Thise sely clerkes han ful faste yronne
 To-ward the fen, bothe Aleyn and eek
 Iohn.
 90 ¶ And whan the miller(e) saugh þat
 they werē gon,
 He half a busshel of hir flour hath
 take,
 And bad his wyf go knede it in a
 cake.
 He seyde, 'I trowe the clerkes were
 aferd,
 Yet kan a miller(e) make a clerkes
 berd,
 95 ffor al his art—now lat hem goon hir
 weye!
 Lo! wher they goon! ye, lat the children
 pleye.
 They gete hym nat so lightly, by my
 croun!
 ¶ Thise sely clerkes rennen vp and
 down
 With 'keepē, keepē! stand, stand!,
 iossa, warderere!
 00 Ga, whistle thou! and I sal kepe hym
 heere!
 But shortly, til that it was verray nyght,
 They koude nat, though they do al
 hir myght,
 Hir capul cacche, he ran alwey so
 faste,
 Til in a dych they caughte hym atte
 laste.
 05 Wery and weet, as beest is in the
 reyn,

Comth sely Iohn, and with him comth
 Aleyn.
 'Allas,' quod Iohn, 'the day that I
 was born!
 Now are we dryue til hethyng and
 til scorn!
 Oure corn is stoln, me wil vs fooles
 calle,
 Bathe the wardeyn and ourē felawes 10
 alle,
 And namely the miller(e), weylaway!
 ¶ Thus pleyneth Iohn, as he gooth by
 the way
 Toward the mille, and Bayard in his
 hond.
 The miller(e) sittynge by the fyr he
 fond,
 ffor it was nyght, and forther myghte 15
 they noght,
 But for the loue of God han hym bi-
 soght
 Of herberwe and of ese, as for hir
 peny.
 ¶ The millere seyde agayn, 'If ther
 be eny,
 Swich as it is, yet shal ye hauē youre
 part.
 Myn hous is streit, but ye han lerned 20
 art,
 Ye konne by argumentes make a place
 A myle brood of twenty foot of space.
 Lat se now if this place may suffise,
 Or make it rowm with speche, as in
 youre gise.'
 'Now Symond,' seyde Iohn, 'by seint 25
 Cutberd!
 Ay is thou myrie, and this is faire ans-
 werd.
 I haue herd seyde, "man sal taa of twa
 thynges
 Slyk as he fyndes, or taa slyk as he
 brynges."
 But specially I praye thee, hooste deere,

4085. god E.He., goddis G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); vgl. 4185. 86. ne had thow He.D.C.P.L., nad þou H.⁴; Capul E.D., capil (-el) He., etc. 88. This E.He.H.⁴ 92. a f. E. 95. now E.G., ye He.D. (3a) H.⁴, yet C.P.L. 96. he gooth He.G.C.L. 4100. whistle] wightly H.⁴ (Gl.); sal He.H.⁴, shal E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 02. do(n) E.G., dide He., etc. (Gl.). 03. away H.⁴ 08. dryuen He.G.D.C.P.L. 09. me E., men He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 17. han] they alle 511. (Sk., Gl.). 21. Argumentz E.He., -ment(e) P.L. 24. in E., is He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 27. tan G., tak He.C., etc. 28. Slyk E.D.H.⁴, Swilk He.C.L., Swich G.P.; taa E.D., tak He., etc. 29. ful deere H.⁴

30 Get vs som mete and drynke, and make
vs cheere,
And we wil payen trewely atte fulle;
With empty hand men may none
haukes tulle:
Loo, heere oure siluer, redy for to
spende.
¶ This miller(e) in-to toun his doghter
sende
35 ffor ale and breed, and rosted hem a
goos,
And boond hir hors, it sholde nat goon
loos;
And in his owene chambre hem made
a bed,
With sheetes and with chalons faire
yspred,
Noght from his owene bed ten foot
or twelue.
40 His doghter hadde a bed al by hir-
selue,
Right in the same chambre by and
by;
It myghte be no bet, and cause why?
Ther was no rommer herberwe in the
place.
They soupen, and they speke hem to
solace,
45 And drynken euere strong ale atte
beste.
Aboute mydnyght wente they to reste.
¶ Wel hath this miller(e) vernysshed
his heed;
fful pale he was for-dronken, and nat
reed.
He yexeth, and he speketh thurgh
the nose,
50 As he were on the quakke or on the
pose.
To bedde he goth, and with hym goth
his wyf;
As any iay she light was and iolyf:

So was hir ioly whistle wel y-wet.
The cradel at hir beddes feet is set
To rokken, and to yeue the child to 55
sowke.
And whan þat dronken al was in the
crowke,
To bedde wente the doghter right anon,
To bedde wente Aleyn, and also Iohn;
Ther nas na-moore, hem nedede no
dwale.
This miller(e) hath so wisely bibbed 60
ale,
That as an hors he fnorteth in his
sleep,
Né of his tayl bihynde he took no
keep.
His wyf bar him a burdon, a ful strong,
Men myghte hir rowtyng heere two
furlong;
The wenche rowteth eek par compaigne 65
nye.
¶ Aleyn the clerk, that herde this me-
lodye,
He poked Iohn, and seyde, 'Slepestow?
Hérdtow euere slyk a sang er now?
Lo, whilk a cowplyng is ymel hem
alle!
A wilde fyr vp-on thair bodyes falle! 70
Wha herkned euere slyk a ferly thyng?
Ye, they sal hauē the flour of il
endyng!
This lange nyght ther tydes me na
reste,
But yet nafsors, al sal be for the beste;
ffor, Iohn,' seyde he, 'als euere moote 75
I thryue!
If þat I may, yon wenche wil I swyue.
Som esement has lawe yshapen vs;
ffor, Iohn, ther is a lawe that says
thus:
"That gif a man in a point be ygreued,
That in another he sal be releued." 80

4132: vgl. 5997. 36. nat E.G., namoore He., etc. 43. rowmer He.G.D. (Sk., Gl.).
45. drynke E., dronkyn G.H.⁴ 58. wente E., gooth He., etc. (Sk.). 59. nedede C.,
nedeth D., neded E., etc. 62. fnorteth E., snorteth He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 64. two E.,
too G., a He., etc. (half a L.). 66. herd E.D.H.⁴ 68. Herd thow He.D.P., Herdist þou
(Herdestow) G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 69. whilk E., slike D.P.H.⁴, swilk He., etc.; cowplyng
E.C.H.⁴, conplyng He.P., complyng D., compline L. (Sk., Gl.). 70. vp-on E.H.⁴, on
He., etc. 71. swilk He.H.⁴, swich G. 75. mote G.C.P.L. 77. yshapen E.G., shapen
He., etc. 79. greued D., aigreued He.C., etc.

Oure corn is stoln, *soothly* it is ne
 nay,
 And we han had an il fit al this day;
 And syn I sal hauē neen amendement,
 Agayn my los, I wil haue esement.
 85 Bȳ God sale! it sal neen other bee!
 ¶ This Iohn answerde 'Alayn, auyse
 thee!
 This miller(e) is a perilous man,' he
 seyde,
 'And gif that he out of his sleep abreyde,
 He myghte doon vs bathe a vileynye.'
 90 ¶ Aleyn answerde, 'I counte hym nat
 a flye!'
 And vp he rist, and by the wenche he
 crepte.
 This wenche lay vp-righte, and faste
 slepte,
 Til he so ny was er she myghte espie,
 That it had been to late for to crie;
 95 And shortly for to seyn, they were
 aton.
 Now pleye, Aleyn, for I wol speke
 of Iohn.
 This Iohn lith stille a furlong wey or
 two,
 And to hym-self he maketh routhe and
 wo.
 'Allas,' quod he, 'this is a wikked
 iape!
 00 Now may I seyn that I is but an ape.
 Yet has my felawē som-what for his
 harm,
 He has the milleris doghter in his
 arm.
 He aunted hym, and has his nedes
 sped,
 And I lye as a draf-sek in my bed.
 05 And when this iape is tald another
 day,
 I sal been halde a daf, a cokenay.
 I wil arise, and auntre it, by my fayth!
 "Vnhardy is vnseely," thus men sayth.'
 And vp he roos, and softly he wente

Vn-to the cradel, and in his hand it 10
 hente,
 And baar it softe vn-to *his* beddes feet.
 ¶ Soone after this the wyf hir rowtyng
 leet,
 And gan awake, and wente hir(e) out
 to pisse,
 And cam agayn, and gan hir cradel
 mysse,
 And groped heer and ther, but she 15
 foond noon.
 'Allas,' quod she, 'I hadde almoost
 myssoon!
 I hadde almoost goon to the clerkes
 bed—
 Ey benedicite, thanne hadde I foule
 y-sped!'
 And forth she gooth til she the cradel
 fond;
 She gropeth alwey forther with hir 20
 hond,
 And foond the bed, and thoghte noght
 but good,
 By cause that the cradel by it stood,
 And nyste wher she was, for it was
 derk.
 But, faire and wel—she creep in to the
 clerk,
 And lith ful stille, and wolde han 25
 caught a sleep.
 With-inne a while this Iohn the clerk
 vp leep,
 And on this goode wyf he leith on
 soore.
 So myrie a fit hadde she nat ful
 yoore!
 He priketh harde and soore as he
 were mad.
 This ioly lyf han thise two clerkes lad, 30
 Til that the thridde cok bigan to synge.
 ¶ Aleyn wax wery in the dawenyng,
 ffor he had swonken al the longe nyght,
 And seyde, 'Far[er]-weel, Malyne, sweete
 wight!

4181. shortly E.G. (Sk.); it f. E.; na He.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), no(n) G., etc. 82. al this E.G., to He., etc. 83. neen E., naan (non) He., etc.; id. 4185. 85. God E., godde H.⁴, Goddes He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 87. perlyous G.D., parlous L.H.⁴ 88. gif E.G.D., if He., etc. 93. asprie He.G.D.H.⁴, spyre C.P.L. 96. pleye P.L. 4204. sek E.G., sak He., etc. (Gl.). 05. tald E.D.H.⁴, told He., etc. 11. his] the E. 28. ne hadde He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 29. soore E.G., depe He., etc. (Sk.).

35 The day is come—I may no lenger
byde.

But eueremo, wher-so I go or ryde,
I is thyn awen clerk, swa haue I seel.'

¶ 'Now, deere lemman,' quod she, 'go,
far[e]weel!

But er thou go, o thyng I wol thee
telle:

40 Whan that thou wendest homward by
the melle,

Right at the entree of the dore bi-
hynde,

Thou shalt a cake of half a busshel
fynde,

That was ymaked of thyn owene mele,
Which that I heelp my fader for to
stele.

45 And, goode lemman, God thee saue and
kepe!

And with that word almoost she gan
to wepe.

Aleyn vp rist, and thoughte, 'Er þat
it dawe,

I wol go crepen in by my felawe,'

And fond the eradel with his hand
anon.

50 'By God,' thoughte he, 'al wrang! I
have mysgon,

Myn heed is toty of my swynk to-
nyght,

That makes me that I ga nat aright.
I wat wel by the eradel I hauē mysga.
Heere lyes the millere, and his wyf
alswa.'

55 And forth he goth, a twenty deuel
way,

Vn-to the bed ther-as the miller(e)
lay.

He wende haue copen by his felawe
Iohn,

And by the millere in he creep anon,

60 And caughte hym by the nekke, and
softe he spak;

He seyde, 'Thou Iohn! thou swynes-
heed, awak,

ffor Cristes saule, and heere a noble
game!

ffor by that lord that called is seint
Iame,

As I hauē thries in this shorte nyght
Swyued the milleres doghter bolt vp-
right,

Whil thou hast, as a coward, been 65
agast.'

¶ 'Ye, false harlot,' quod the miller(e),
'hast?

A! false traitour, false clerk!' quod he,
'Thow shalt be deed, by Goddes
dignitee!

Who dorste be so boold to disparage
My doghter, that is come of swich 70
lynage?'

And by the throte-bolle he caughte
Alayn,

And he hente hym despitously agayn,
And on the nose he smoot hym with
his fest—

Doun ran the bloody streem vp-on his
brest,

And in the floor, with nose and mouth 75
to-broke,

They walwe as doon two pigges in a
poke;

And vp they goon, and doun' agayn
anon,

Til that the miller(e) sporned at a
stoon,

And doun he fil bakward vp-on his
wyf,

That wiste no-tyng of this nyce stryf; 80
ffor she was falle aslepe a lite wight

With Iohn the clerk, that waked hadde
al nyght,

And with the fal out of hir sleep she
breyde.

'Help! hooly croys of Bromeholm!
she seyde,

'In manus tuas, Lord, to thee I calle! 85
Awak, Symond! the feend is on vs
falle!

4237. swa E., so He., etc. 44. halp G.D., hilp(e) C.H.*; fader E.G., sire He., etc. (owen self H.*). 52. makes D.H.*; maketh E., etc.; ga H.*; go E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 53. wat ... mysgaa D., woot ... go E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 54. lyes ... alswa D., lith ... also E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 55. a] on He.C.P., in H.* 61. heer E.C. (Sk., Gl.), here He., etc. 81. lite E.G., litel He., etc. 84. Bromeholm G.C.L. 86. vs] E.G., me He., etc. (in þin halle H.*).

Myn herte is broken—help! I nam
but deed—

Ther lyth oon [vp] on my wombe and
on myn heed—

Help, Symkyn! for the false clerkes
fightel'

90 ¶ This Iohn stirte vp as soone as
euer he myghte,

And gaspeth by the walles to and fro
To fynde a staf, and she stirte vp also,
And knew[e] the estres bet than dide
this Iohn,

And by the wal a staf she foond anon,

95 And saugh a litel shymeryng of a
light;

ffor at an hole in shoon the moone
bright,

And by that light she saugh hem bothe
two,

But sikerly she nyste who was who,
But as she saugh a whit thyng in hir
[e]yē.

00 And whan she gan the white thyng
espye,

She wende the clerk hadde wered a
voluteer,

And with the staf she drough ay neer
and neer,

And wende han hit this Aleyn at the
fulle,

And smoot the miller(e) on the pyled
skulle,

05 And doun he gooth, and cride, 'Harrow,
I dye!'

Thise clerkes beete hym weel, and lete
hym lye,

And greythen hem, and tooke hir hors
anon,

And eek hir mele, and on hir wey they
gon;

And at the mille yet they tooke hir
cake

10 Of half a busshel flour, ful wel ybake.
Thus is the proude miller(e) wel ybete,

And hath ylost the gryndynge of the
whete,

And payed for the soper euerideel

Of Aleyn and of Iohn, þat bette hym
weel;

His wyf is swyued, and his doghter 15
als.

Lo, swich it is a miller(e) to be fals!
And therfore this prouerbe is seyde
ful sooth:

'Hym thar nat wene wel that yuele
dooth'—

A gylour shal hym-self bigyled be.
And God, þat sitteth heighe in Trinitee, 20
Saue al this compaignye, grete and
smale!

Thus have I quyt the Miller(e) in my
tale.—

¶ Heere is ended the Reues tale.

5. The Cokes Tale.

a) ¶ The prologe of the Cokes Tale.

The Cook of Londoun/, whil [that] the
Reue spak,

ffor ioye him thoughte/he clawed him
on the bak.

'Ha.ha.' quod he/, 'for Cristes pas- 25
sioun!

This Miller(e) hadde a sharp con-
clusioun

Vp-on his argument of herbergage.

Wel seyde Salomon in his langage:

"Ne bryngē nat euery man in-to thyn
hous,"

ffor herberwyng[e] by nyghte is peri- 30
lous.

Wel oghte a man/auysed for to be,
Whom that he broghte/in-to his pryue-
tee.

I praye to God/so yeue me sorwe and
care,

If euere, sitthe/I highte Hogge of
Ware,

Herde I a miller(e) bettre yset a- 35
werk!

He hadde a iape of malice in the
derk.

But God forbede/that we styntē heere!

4288. vp my wombe C.L. (Sk.), vpon my w. E., etc.; vp myn hed He.C.L. (Sk.).
4300. the E.G., this He., etc. 06. bette He.P., bet L. 20. Trinitee E., magestee He., etc.
(Sk.). — endeth He.D.P.H. — 23. [that] E. 28. j. 3. 31. XI, 29. 37. [über heere] hic E.He.

And therfore/, if ye vouche-sauf to
heere

A tale of me/, that am a poure man,
40 I wol yow telle/, as wel as euere I
kan,

A litel iape/that fil in oure citee.

¶ Oure hoost answerde/, and seide, 'I
graunte it thee!

Now telle on, Roger/, lookę that it
be good!

ffor many^a pastee/hastow laten blood,

45 And many^a lakke-of-Douere hastow
sould

That hath been/twies hoot and twies
coold;

Of many^a pilgrym/hastow Cristes
curs;

ffor of thy percely/yet they fare the
wors

That they han eten/with thy stubbel-
goos;

50 ffor in thy shoppe/is many^a flye loos.
Now telle on/, gentil Roger by thy
name,

But yet I prayę thee/, be nat wroth
for game;

A man may seyę ful sooth/in game
and pley.'

¶ 'Thou seist ful sooth/,' quod Roger,
'by my fey!

55 But "sooth pley, quaad pley"/, as the
Flemyng seith.

And ther-forę/, Herry Bailly, by thy
feith,

Be thou nat wrooth/, er we departen
heer,

Though that my tale/be of a hosti-
leer.

But natheles/I wol nat telle it yit,

60 But er we parte/, ywis thou shalt be
quit/.'

And ther-with-al/he lough, and made
cheere,

And seyde his tale, as ye shul after
heere.

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Cookes tale.

A Prentys whilom dwellęd in oure
citee,

And of a craft of vitailliers was hee;
Gaillard he was/as goldfynch in the 65
shawe,

Broun as a berye/, a propre short fe-
lawe,

With lokkes blake/, ykempd ful fetisly.

Dauncen he koude/so wel and iolily,

That he was cleped Perkyn Reuelour.

He was/as ful of loue and paramour 70

As is the hyve/ful of hony sweete;

Wel was the wenche/with hym myghte
meete!

At euery bridale/wolde he synge and
hoppe;

He loved bet the tauerne than the
shoppe.

¶ ffor/whan ther/any ridyng was in 75
Chepe,

Out of the shoppe/thider wolde he
lepe;

Til that he haddę/al the sighte yseyn,

And daunced wel/, he wolde nat come
ayeyn,

And gadęred hym/a meynee of his
sort

To hoppe and synge/, and maken swich 80
disport.

And ther/they setten steuęne for to
meete

To pleyen/at the dys in swich a streete;

ffor in the toun ne was ther no prentys

That fairer koude caste/a paire of dys

Than Perkyn koude/, and ther-to he 85
was free

Of his dispense/in place of pryuetee.

That fond his maister wel in his chaf-
fare;

ffor often tyme/he foond his box ful
bare.

ffor sikerly/a prentys reuelour;

That haunteth dys/, riot, or paramour, 90

His maister/shal it in his shoppe abyen,

4338. [über heere] audire E.He.; beagl. 12113/14 (+D); 16705/07. (C.P.L.H.⁴ 4338
vor 4337). 48. persle He., persly H.⁴ 53. f. H.⁴ 4363—4420. Sl. für G. [verstimmt].
72. wenche hat He.H.⁴ 73/74. f. H.⁴ 77. [Giat? ob. neunhüßig?]. 83. ne was H.⁴ (Gl.),
nas E., etc.; toune P.L. (Sk.).

Al haue he/no part of the mynstralcy; /
ffor thefte and riot. they been conuer-
tible,
Al konne he pleye on gyterne/or ri-
bible.

95 Reuel and trouthe/, as in a lowe degree,
They been ful wrothe al day/, as men
may see.

¶ This ioly prentys/with his maister
bood,

Til he werę ny/out of his prentishood,
Al were he snybbed/bothe erly and
late,

00 And somtyme/lad with reuel to Newe-
gate.

But atte laste/his maister hym bithoghte
Vp-on a day/, whan he his papir soghte,
Of a prouerbe/that seith this same
word:

‘Wel bet is roten appul/out of hoord
05 Than þat/it rotie al the remenaunt.’

¶ So fareth it by a riotous seruauunt:
It is wel lassę harm/to lete hym pace
Than he shende/allę the seruantz in the
place.

Therfore/his maister/yaf hym acqui-
tance,

10 And bad hym go/with sorwe and with
meschance;

And thus this ioly prentys/hadde his
leue.

Now lat hym riote al the nyght/or
leue!

And for ther is no theef/with-oute a
lowke,

That helpeth hym/to wasten and to
sowke

15 Of that he brybe kan/, or borwe may,
Anon he sente his bed/and his array
Vn-to a compeer/of his owene sort,
That louęde dys/, and reuel, and dis-
port,

And hadde a wyf/, that heeld for con-
tenance

A shoppe/, and swyued for hir suste- 20
nance.

II. Fragment (B), V. 1—1131.*

6. The Mannes Tale of Lawe.

a) ¶ The wordes of the Hoost to the
campaignye.

¶ Ovre hooste saugh wel that the brighte
sonne

The ark of his artificial day hath ronne
The ferthe part, and half an houre and
moore,

And though he werę nat depe ystert
in loore,

He wiste it was the eighte-and-twentiethę 25
day

Of Aprill, that is messenger to May,
And saugh wel that the shadwe of
euery tree

Was, as in lengthe, the same quantitee
That was the body erect that caused
it.

And therfore by the shadwe he took 30
his wit

That Phebus, which þat shoon so clere
and brighte,

Degrees was fyue-and-fourty clombe on
highte,

And for that day, as in that latitude,
It was ten at the klokke, he gan
conclude—

And sodeynly he plighte his hors aboute. 35

¶ ‘Lordynges,’ quod he, ‘I warne yow,
al this route:

The fourthe party of this day is gon.
Now, for the loue of God and of
Saint Iohn,

4394. rubible He.G.C.P.H.^a 4405. rotie E.C., rotte (rote) He., etc. 07. wel E., moche P., ful He., etc. 13—20. f. H.^a 13. nys He.D.C. 17. compier E. (Gl.), compeer He.D., conper P.L., Coupere C.Sl.; sort: E. später. — Of this Cokes tale makid Chaucer na moore He. [am Rande]; 22 3l. u. 1 Blatt offen E. [In C.P.L.H.^a folgt die unechte Tale of Gamelyn (902 VV.) als Fortsetzung der Cokes Tale; vgl. Einl., §. 4.] — *) Folgt in E.G.D.C.L.H.^a auf A. — The prohemie of the Mannes tale of Lawe He., (And) here bygynnes the prologe of the man of l. P.H.², (et) Incipit prologus Legis Periti D.L. — 21—30. H.² für G. 24. ystert E.He.D., expert C.P.L.H.² (Sk., Gl.), f. H.^a 25. eight and twenty D., þrettenþe H.^a, xviii the He., etc. (eighthetthe Sk., Gl.). 37. ferthe He.D.C.L.

[B 19—44]

[B 45—76]

Leseth no tyme as ferforth as ye may!
 40 Lordynges, the tyme wasteth nyght
 and day,
 And stelēth from vs—what pryuely slep-
 ynge,
 And what thurgh neglige[n]ce in oure
 wakyngē—
 As dooth the stream that turneth neuere
 agayn,
 Descendynge fro the montaigne in-to
 playn.
 45 ¶ Wel kan Senec and many^a philo-
 sophre
 Biwailen tyme moore than gold in
 cofre;
 “ffor losse of catel may recouēred be,
 But losse of tyme shendeth vs,” quod
 he,
 It wol nat come agayn, with-outen drede,
 50 Namore than wol[e] Malkynes mayden-
 hede,
 Whan she hath lost it in hir wantown-
 nessel
 Lat vs nat mowlen thus in ydelnessel
 ¶ Sir(e) man-of-lawe,’ quod he, ‘so hauē
 ye blis!
 Telle vs a tale anon, as forward is;
 55 Ye been submytted thurgh youre free
 assent
 To stonden in this cas at my iugge-
 ment.
 Acquiteth yow now of yourē biheeste,
 Thanne hauē ye do youre deuoir atte
 leeste.’
 ¶ ‘Hooste,’ quod he, ‘depardieux, ich
 assente!
 60 To breke forward is nat myn entente;
 Biheste is dette, and I wol[e] holde
 fayn
 Al my biheste—I kan no better sayn;
 ffor swich lawe as [a] man yeuēth
 another wight,
 He sholde hym-seluen vsen it by right.

Thus wol[e] oure text; but natheles 65
 certeyn,
 I kan right now no thrifty tale seyn
 That Chaucer, thogh he kan but lewedly
 On metres and on rymyng craftily,
 Hath seyde hem in swich englissh as he
 kan
 Of olde tyme, as knoweth many^a man. 70
 And if he hauē noght seyde hem, leue
 brother,
 In o book, he hath seyde hem in another.
 ffor he hath toold of louteris vp and
 doun
 Mo than Ouide made of mencion
 In hise epistles, that been ful olde. 75
 What sholde I tellen hem syn they
 ben tolde?
 ¶ In youthe he made of Ceys and
 Alcione,
 And sithen hath he spoke[n] of euerich-
 one
 Thise noble wyues and thise louteris eke.
 Who-so that wole his large volume 80
 seke,
 Cleped the seintes legende of Cupide,
 Ther may he seen the large woundes
 wyde
 Of Lucesse and of Babilan Tisbee;
 The swerd of Dido for the false Enee;
 The tree of Phillis for hir Demophon; 85
 The pleinte of Dianire and of Hermyon,
 Of Adriane and of Isiphilee;
 The bareyne yle stondynge in the see;
 The dreynte Leandre for his Erro;
 The teeris of Eleyne, and eek the wo 90
 Of Brixseyde and of thee, Ladomya;
 The crueltee of thee, queene Medea,
 Thy litel children hangynge by the
 hals
 ffor thy Iason, that was in louē so fals!
 O Ypermystra, Penelope, Alceste, 95
 Yourē wifhede he comendeth with the
 beste!

4440. it wasteth He.G.C.P.L., passeþ H.⁴. 45: Seneca, Epist. I. 57. now of] and holdeþ H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 63. a f. G. (Sk., Gl.). 67. That] But D. (Sk., Gl.). 71. ne haue He. 75. Epistles L.H.⁴G. (?), epistles E., etc. 76. tellen He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 78. sithen He.D.C.L.; spoken E.D.L. 83. Tesbee E.D. 84. swerd] sorwe H.⁴ 86. Diane E.G.D.H.⁴ (and Hermyon Sk.). 90. eek f. E. [f. Eleyne?]. 91. and the E. [f. Brixseyda? (vgl. H.F. 398) ob. Laodomya? C. 11761]; thee Sk., the E., etc.; f. H.⁴ 92. thee Sk., the E., etc.; f. C.P.L. 93. Thy E.G.D., The He., etc. 94. thy] þe C.P., þilke H.⁴ 95. Penolopee E.He.G. [vgl. B.D. 1081, A. A. 82].

[B 77-105]

[B 106-133]

¶ But certainly, no word ne writeth
he

Of thilke wikke ensample of Canacee,
That loued hir owene brother synfully,
00 Of swiche cursed stories I sey fy!
Or ellis of Tyro Appollonius,
How that the cursed kyng Antiochus
Brafte his doghter of hir maydenhede,
That is so horrible a tale for to rede,
05 Whan he hire threw vp-on the paue-
ment.

And therefore he, of ful auysement,
Nolde neuere write in none of his
sermons

Of swiche vnkynde abhomynacions;
Nè I wol noon reherce, if that I may.

10 ¶ But of my tale how shal[l] I doon this
day?

Me weere looth be likned, doutelees,
To Muses that men clepe Pierides—
Metamorphosios woot what I mene.
But nathelees, I recche nought a bene

15 Though I come after hym with hawe-
bake.

I speke in prose, and lat hym rymes
make.'

And with that word he, with a sobre
cheere,

Bigan his tale, as ye shal after heere.

b) ¶ The prologe of the mannes tale
of lawe.

● hateful harm, condicion of pouertel
20 With thurst, with coold, with hunger
so confoundid!

To asken help thee shameth in thyn
herte;

If thou noon aske, so soore artow
ywoundid,

That verray nede vnwrappeth al thy
wounde hid.

Maugree thyn heed, thou most for
indigence

25 Or stele or begge, or borwe thy des-
pence.

Thow blamest Crist, and seist ful
bitterly

He mysdeparteth richesse temporal;
Thy neighebor[e] thou wytest syn-
fully,

And seist thou hast to lite, and he
hath al.

'Parfay,' seistow, 'somtyme he rekene 30
shal,

Whan that his tayl shal brennen in
the gleede,

ffor he noght helpeth needfulle in
hir neede.'

Herke, what is the sentence of the
wise!

'Bet is to dyen than haue indigence.'
Thy selue neighebor wol thee despise, 35

If thou be poure, farwel thy reuerence!
Yet of the wise man tak[e] this sen-
tence:

'A'lle dayes of poure men been wikke.'
Be war therfore, er thou come to that
prikke!

If thou be poure, thy brother hateth 40
thee,

And alle thy freendes fleen from thee,
allas!

O riche marchauntz, ful of welþ been
yee,

O noble, o prudent folk, as in this cas!
Youre bagges been nat fild with ambes
as,

But with sys synk, that renneth for 45
youre chaunce;

At Cristemasse myrie may ye daunce!

Ye seken lond and see for yowre
wynnynges;

As wise folk ye knowen al[l] thestaat
Of regnes; ye been fadres of tidynges 50

And tales, bothe of pees and of debaat.
I were right now of tales desolaat
Nere that a marchant—goon is many a
yeere—

Me taughte a tale, which that ye shal
heere.

4502--55. Sl. für G. 05. hire D.L. — Heere bigynneth the tale He.; ... incipit fabula ... D., etc. — 22. so soore E.D., with nede He., etc. (Sk.). 33. Herke E.He., Herkeneth D.H., Herkne C., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 14435 ff.]. 38. Alle E.Sl., Alle the He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 40. C. Spr. Caf. XIV, 20.

[B 134—158]

[B 159—187]

c) ¶ Heere begynneth the man of
lawe his tale.)*

In Surrye whilom dwelte a com-
paignye

55 Of chapmen riche, and therto sadde
and trewe,

That wyde-where senten hir spicerye,
Clothes of gold, and satyns riche of
hewe.

Hir chaffare was so thrifty and so
newe,

That euery wight hath deyntee to
chaffare

60 With hem, and eek to sellen hem hir
ware.

Now fil it that the maistres of that
sort

Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende,
Were it for chapmanhode or for disport.
Noon oother messagē wolde they thider
sende,

65 But come[n] hem-self to Rome, this
is the ende;

And in swich place as thoughte hem
auantage

ffor hir entente, they take hir herber-
gaye.

¶ Soiourmed han thise marchantz in
that toun

A certain tyme, as fil to hir[e] plesance,
70 And so bifel that the excellent renoun
Of the emperoures doghter, dame

Custance,

Reported was, with euery circumstance,
Vn-to thise Surryen marchantz in swich
[a] wyse

ffro day to day, as I shal yow deuyse.

75 ¶ This was the communē voys of
euery man:

'Oure emperour of Rome—God hym
see!—

A doghter hath that, syn the world
bigan,

To rekeṇe as wel hir goodnesse as
beautee,

Nas neuere swich another as is shee.
I preyē to God in honour hir(e) susteene, 80
And wolde she were of al[l] Europe
the queene!

In hir(e) is heigh beautee with-out
pride,

Yowthe with-out grenehede or folye;
To alle hir(e) werkes vertu is hir gyde;
Humblesse hath slayn in hir(e) al 85
tirannye;

She is mirour of alle curteisye;

Hir herte is verray chambre of hooly-
nesse,

Hir hand, ministre of fredom for al-
messe.'

And al this voys was sooth, as God
is trewe.

But now to purpos lat vs turne agayn. 90
Thise marchantz han doon fraught hir
shippes newe,

And whan they han this blisful mayden
sayn,

Hoom to Surrye been they went ful
fayn,

And doon hir nedes as they han doon
yoore,

And lyue[n] in wele—I kan seye yow 95
namoore.

¶ Now fil it that thise marchantz
stode in grace

Of hym that was the sowdan of Surrye;
ffor whan they came from any strange
place,

He wolde, of his benigne curteisye,
Make hem good chiere, and bisily espye 00
Tidynges of sondry regnes, for to leere
The wondres that they myghte seen or
heere.

Amonges othere thynges specially,
Thise marchantz han him toold of dame
Custance

So greet noblesse in earnest, ceriously, 05
That this sowdan hath caught so greet
plesance

To han hir figure in his remembrance,

*) Nur in E. — 4565. cam(e) L.H.⁴, comen E., etc. 70. And E.D., But He., etc. 71. thempourys G.H.⁴ (Sk.), the Emperoures D. (Gl.), the Emperours E.He., þe Emperour C.P.L. 73. [a] E.D., f. He., etc. 81. [Randnote] Europa est tercia pars mundi; lāngere lat. Glosfen, im folg. durch †) bezeichnet, f. im Anhang. 98. coome He.G.D.H.⁴, came C.P., cam E.L. 4605. [über seriously] i. ceriose E.He.

[B 188—219]

[B 220—250]

That al[l] his lust and al his bisy cure
Was for to loue hir(e) while his lyf
may dure.

10 Parauenture in thilke large book
Which þat men clepē the heuene y-
written was

With sterres, whan that he his birthe
took,

That he for louē sholde han his deeth—
allas!

For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,

15 Is writen—God woot who-so koude it
rede—

The deeth of euery man, withouten
drede.

In sterres many^a wynter ther bi-
forn†)

Was writē[n] the deeth of Ector,
Archilles,

Of Pompei, Iulius, er they werē born;

20 The strif of Thebes, and of Ercules,

Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates

The deeth; but mennes wittes ben so
dulle,

That no wight kan wel rede it atte fulle.

¶ This sowdan for his priuee conseil
sente,

25 And, shortly of this matiere for to pace,

He hath to hem declared his entente,

And seyde hem certein, but he myghte
haue grace

To han Custance with-inne a litel space,

He nas but deed, and charged hem in
hye

30 To shapen for his lyf som remedye.

¶ Diuerse men diuerse thynges seyden;

They argumenten, casten vp and doun,

Many^a subtil resoun forth they leyden;

They speke[n] of magyk and abusoun,

35 But finally, as in conclusioun,

They kan nat seen in that noon auan-
tage,

Nē in noon oother wey, sauē mariage.

Thanne sawē they ther-inne swich
difficultee

By wey of reson, for to speke al playn,

By cause that ther was swich diuersitee 40
Bitwene hir bothe lawes, that they
sayn

They trowe þat 'no cristene prince
wolde fayn

Wedden his child vnder oure lawes
sweete,

That vs werē taught by Mahoun, oure
prophete.'

¶ And he answerde, 'Rather than I 45
lese

Custance, I wol be cristned, doutelees;

I moot been hires, I may noon oother
chese.

I preyē yow, hoold youre argumentz
in pees,

Saueth my lyf, and beth noght recche-
lees

Fo geten hir(e) that hath my lyf in 50
cure;

For in this wo I may nat longe endure.'

¶ What nedeth gretter dilatacioun?

I seye, by tretys and embassadrie,

And by the popes mediacioun,

And al the chirche, and al the chialrie, 55

That, in destruccioun of maumetrie,

And in encrees of Cristes lawe deere,

They been accorded so as ye shal heere:

How that the sowdan and his baro-
nage,

And alle his liges sholde ycristned be, 60

And he shal han Custancē in mariage,

And certein gold—I noot what quan-
titee—

And heer-to founden sufficient surtee;

This same accord was sworn on eyther
syde.

Now, faire Custance, almyghty God 65
thee gyde!

¶ Now wolde som men waiten, as I
gesse,

That I sholde tellen al the purueiance

That themperour of his grete noblesse

Hath shapen for his doghter, dame

Custance.

Wel may men knowē[n] þat so greet 70
ordinance

4611. clipe E.; men clepe] cleped is G.P., is cl. H.⁴, þei cleped C., cleped L.
18. write C.H.⁴ 31. bgl. 9345, 10518. 51. no longer dure H.⁴ 61. [l. haue (G.D.P.L.H.)?
oþer ȝiat?] 70. knowe G.C.P.H.⁴ (Sk.).

B 251—279]

[B 280—306]

May no man tellen in a litel clause,
As was arrayed for so heigh a cause.

Bisshopes been shapen with hir(e)
for to wende,

Lórdes, ladies, knyghtes of renoun,

75 And oother folk ynogh—this is the
ende.

And notified is thurgh-out the toun
That euery wight with greet deuocioun
Sholde preyen Crist that he this mariage
Receyue in gree, and spede this viage.

80 ¶ The day is comen of hir depart-
ynge—

I seye: the woful day fatal is come—,
That ther may be no lenger tarynge,
But forthward they hem dressen, alle
and some.

Custance, þat was with sorwe al ouer-
come,

85 fful pale arist, and dresseth hir(e) to
wende;
ffor wel she seeth ther is noon oother
ende.

Allas! what wonder is it thogh she
wepte

That shal be sent to strange nacioun
ffro freendes, þat so tendrely hir(e)
kepte.

90 And to be bounden vnder subieccioun
Of oon she knoweth nat his condicioun!
Housbondes been alle goode, and han
been yooore,

That knowen wyues—I dar saye [yow]
na-moore.

¶ 'ffader,' she seyde, 'thy wrecched
child Custance,

95 Thy yonge doghter, fostred vp so
softe;

And ye, my mooder, my souerayn ples-
ance

Ouer alle thyng, out-taken Crist on
lofte,

Custance, youre child, hir(e) recomand-
eth ofte

Vn-to youre grace, for I shal to Surrye,

Ne shal I neuere seen yow moore with 00
[e]yē.

Allas! vn-to the Barbre nacioun
I moste goon, syn that it is youre wille.
But Crist, that starf for oure sauacioun,
So yeue me grace hise heestes to ful-
fille!

I, wrecche womman, no fors though 05
I spille!

Wommen are born to thraldom and
penance,

And to been vnder mannes govern-
ance.'

¶ I trowe at Troye, whan Pirrus
brak the wal,

Or Ilion brende, at Thebes the Citee,
Nat Rome, for the harm thurgh Hany- 10
bal,

That Romayns hath venquysshed tymes
thre,

Nas herd swich tendre wepyng for
pitee

As in the chambrē was for hir depart-
ynge—

But forth she moot, wher-so she wepe
or synge.

¶ O firste moeuyng, crueel firma- 15
ment, †)

With thy diurnal sweigh that crowdest
ay,

And hurlest al from Est til Occident,
That naturelly wolde holde another
way!

Thy crowdyng set the heuene in swich
array

At the bigynnyng of this fierse viage, 20
That crueel Mars hath slayn this
mariage.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,
Of which the lord is helples falle,
allas!

Out of his angle in-to the derkeste hous;
O Mars! o Atazir, as in this cas! 25
O fieble Moone, vnhappy been thy
paas!

4675. thende E.He. 86. nys He., nas H.⁴ 93. seie P.; yow f. H.⁴ 4702. goon E.D., anon He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 03. sauacioun E.D., redempcioun He., etc. (Sk.). 08ff.: vgl. 16140ff. 09. brende at Thebes G. (Sk., Gl.), brende Th. E.D., brent hadde Th. He., þat brende Th. C., etc. 10. Ne at D.H.⁴ 13. partynge H.⁴ (Gl.). 15. moeuer He. [vgl. Astrolab. I, § 17].

[B 307—336]

[B 337—362]

Thou knytest thee ther thou art nat
receyued,

Ther thou werę weel, fro thennes
artow weyued.

Imprudent emperour of Rome, allas! †)

30 Was ther no philosophre in al thy toun?

Is no tyme bet than oother in swich cas?

Of viage is ther noon eleccioun,

Namely to folk of heigh condicioun,

Noght whan a roote is of a burthe
yknowe?

35 Allas, we been to lewed or to slowel

¶ To ship is *brought* this woful faire
mayde

Solempnely, with euery circumstance.

'Now Ihesu Crist be with yow alle,' she
sayde.

Ther nys namoore but 'far[e]wel, faire
Custance!'

40 She peyneth hir(e) to makę good con-
tenance,

And forth I lete hir(e) saille in this
manere,

And turne I wol[e] agayn to my matere.

¶ The mooder of the sowdan, welle of
vices,

Espied hath hir sones pleyn entente,

45 How he wol lete hise olde sacrifices.

And right anon she for hir conseil sente,

And they been comę to knowe what she
mente.

And whan assembled was this folk
in feere,

She sette hir(e) down, and seyde as ye
shal heere.

50 ¶ 'Lordes,' she seyde, 'ye knowen
euerichon

How that my sone in point is for
to lete

The hooly lawes of oure Alkaron,

Yeuen by Goddes messagę Makomete.

But oon auow to grete God I heete:

55 The lyf shal rather out of my body
sterne

Than Makometes lawe out of myn
herte!

What sholde vs tyden of this newe
lawe

But thraldom to oure bodies and pen-
ance?

And afterward in helle to be drawe,
ffor we reneyed Mahoun oure creance? 60

But, lordes, wol ye maken assurance,

As I shal seyn, assentyngę to my
loore,

And I shal make vs sauf for euere-
moore?'

¶ They sworn and assenten euery
man

To lyuę with hir(e) and dye, and by 65
hir(e) stonde;

And euerich, in the beste wise he
kan,

To strengthen hir(e) shal alle his frendes
fonde.

And she hath this emprise ytake on
honde,

Which ye shal heren that I shal deuysel,

And to hem alle she spak right in 70
this wyse:

¶ 'We shul first feyne vs cristen-
dom to take;

Coold water shal nat greue vs but a
lite,

And I shal swich[e] a feeste and reuel
make,

That, as I trowe, I shal the sowdan
quite;

ffor thogh his wyf be cristned neuer 75
so white,

She shal hauę nedę to wasshe away
the rede,

Thogh she a font-ful water with hir(e)
lede.'

O sowdanesę, roote of iniquitee!
[¶ *Auctor*

Virago thou, Semyrame the secounde!

O serpent vnder femynynytee, 80

Lik to the serpent depe in helle
ybounde!

O feyned woman! al that may con-
founde

4727. nart He.C. 36. broght] come E. 39. far C.H.⁴ 50. she seyde E.D., quod she He., etc. (Sk.). 56. Than E.He., Er D., Or C., etc. (On G.). 78. Auctor: nur E.; so meist in folg.

[B 363—389]

[B 390—418]

Vertu and innocēce thurgh thy malice
Is bred in thee, as nest of euery vice!
85 O Sathan, enuious syn thilke day
That thou werē chased from oure heri-
tage,
Wel knowestow to wommen the olde
way!
Thou madest Eua brynge vs in seruage,
Thou wolt fordoon this cristen mariage.
90 Thyn instrument—so weylawey the
while!
Makestow of wommen whan thou wolt
bigile.
¶ This sowdanesse, whom I thus
blame and warye,
Leet priuely hir conseil goon hir way,
What sholde I in this tale lenger tarye?
95 She rydeth to the sowdan on a day,
And seyde hym that she wolde reneye
hir lay,
And cristendom of preestes handes
fonge,
Repentyng hir(e) she hethen was so
longe;
Bisechyng hym to doon hir(e) that
honour,
00 That she moste han the cristen folk
to feeste:
'To plesen hem, I wol do my labour.'
The sowdan seith, 'I wol doon at
youre heeste,'
And knelyng thanketh hir(e) of that
requeste;
So glad he was, he nyste what to seye.
05 She kiste hir sone, and hoom[e] she
gooth hir weye.
¶ *Explicit prima pars.**
¶ *Sequitur pars secunda.*
Arryued been this cristen folk to
londe
In Surrye, with a greet solempne route,
And hastifliche this sowdan sente his
sonde
ffirst to his mooder, and al[l] the regne
aboute,

And seyde, his wyf was comen, out[e] of 10
doute,
And preyde hir(e) for to ryde agayn the
queene,
The honour of his regne to susteene.
Greet was the prees, and riche was
tharray
Of Surryens and Romayns met yfeere.
The mooder of the sowdan, riche and 15
gay,
Receyueh hir(e) with also glad a cheere
As any mooder myghte hir doghter
deere,
And to the nexte citee ther bisyde
A softe paas solempnely they ryde.
¶ Noght trowe I the triumphe of 20
Iulius,
Of which that Lucan maketh swich a
boost,
Was roialler or moore curius
Than was thassemblee of this blisful
hoost.
Bút this scorioun, this wikked goost,
The sowdanesse, for al[l] hir flaterynge, 25
Caste vnder this ful mortally to styng.
¶ The sowdan comth hym-self soone
after this
So roially, that wonder is to telle,
And welcometh hir(e) with alle ioye
and blis.
And thus in murthe and ioye I lete hem 30
dwelle,
The fruyt of this matiere is that I telle.
Whan tyme cam, men thoughte it for
the beste
The reuel stynte, and men goon to hir
reste.
¶ The tyme cam this olde sowdanesse
Ordeyned hath this feeste of which I 35
tolde,
And to the feeste cristen folk hem
dresse
In general, ye, bothe yonge and olde.
Heere may men feeste and roialtee
biholde,

4801. wol] shall He. — *) Desinit pr. p., Incipit s. p. D., f. He., etc. — o8. hastiliche G.D.C., hastily He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 16. Recyueh E. (-ed C.H.⁴). 21: Lucanus, Pharsalia III, 79 [Ch. ungenau]. 22. or E.D., ne He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 29. And E.H.⁴, He He., etc. 33. The E., That He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 419—448]

[B 449—476]

And deyntees mo than I kan yow
deuyse,
40 But al[l] to deere they boghte it er
they ryse!

O sodeyn wo, that euer art suc-
cessour†)
To worldly blisse! Spreynd with bitter-
nesse
The ende of the ioye of oure worldly
labour!

Wo occupieth the fyn of oure gladnesse.
45 Herke this conseil for thy sikernes-
se:
Vp-on thy glade day haue in thy mynde
The vnwar wo or harm þath comth
bihynde!

ffor *shortly* for to tellen at o word,
The sowdan and the cristen euerichone
50 Ben al tohewe and stiked at the bord,
But it were oonly dame Custance allone.
This olde sowdanesse, cursed krone!
Hath with hir freendes doon this cursed
dede;
ffor she hir-self wolde al[l] the contree
lede.

55 Né was Surryen noon that was
conuerted,
That of the conseil of the sowdan woot,
That he nas al tohewe er he asterted.
And Custance han they take anon foot-
hoot,
And in a ship al[l] steerelees—God
woot—

60 They han hire set, and bidde[th] hir(e)
lerne saille
Out of Surrye agaynward to Ytaille.
A certain tresor that she with hir(e)
ladde,
And, sooth to seyn, vitaille greet plentee
They han hir(e) yeue[n], and clothes eek
she hadde;

65 And forth she sailleth in the salte see.
O my Custance, ful of benignytee!
O emperoures yonge doghter deere,
He that is Lord of ffortune be thy
steere!

She blesseth hir(e), and with ful
pitous voys
Vn-to the croys of Crist thus seyde 70
she:

‘O cleere, o welful auter, hooly croys!
Reed of the lambes blood, ful of pitee,
That wessh[e] the world fro the olde
iniquitee,
Me fro the feend and fro his clawes
kepe
That day that I shal drenchen in the 75
depe!

Victorious tree! proteccioun of trewe,
That oonly worthy were for to bere
The kyng of heuene with his woundes
newe,
The white lamb þat hurt was with the
spere,
fflemer(e) of feendes out of hym and 80
here

On which thy lymes feithfully extenden,
Me help[e], and yif me myght my lyf
tamenden!’

¶ Yeres and dayes fleteth this crea-
ture
Thurghout the See of Grece vn-to the
Strayte

Of Marrok, as it was hir auenture. 85
On many^a sory meel now may she
bayte;

After hir deeth ful often may she wayte,
Er that the wilde wawes wol hir(e) dryue
Vn-to the place ther she shal arryue.

Men myghten asken why she was 90
nat slayn
Eek at the feeste? Who myghte hir
body saue?

And I answerē to that demande agayn:
Who saued Danyel in the horrible
caue,

Ther euery wight saue he, maister and
knaue,
Was with the leon frete er he asterte? 95
No wight but God, that he bar in his
herte.

4842. spreynd is with C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 48. soothly E. 55. was E.D., here was G.L.H.⁴ (Sk.), ther nas He.C.P. (Nether was Gl.). 60. bidde He.G. (Sk.), biddeth E. (Gl.), bad H.⁴, bidden D., etc. 62. with hir(e) E., thider He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 67. Emperours E.He.P.L. 71. woful E., wilful G. 79. the spere E., a sp. He., etc. 82. helpe E. (Gl.), kepe He., etc. (Sk.). 83. fletth G., flette H.⁴, fleet He.C.P. (Sk.). 86. On E.G., O He., etc.

[B 477—504]

[B 505—531]

God listē to shewe his wonderful
myracle

In hir(e), for we sholdē seen his myghty
werkis.

Crist, which that is to euery harm
triacle,

00 By certeinē meenes ofte, as known
clerkis,

Dooth thyng for certein ende that ful
derk is

To mannes wit, that for oure ignorance
Ne konnē noght knowe his prudent
purueiance.

¶ Now sith she was nat at the feeste
yslawe,

05 Who kepte hir(e) fro the drenchyng in
the see?

Who kepte Ionas in the fisshes mawe,
Til he was spouted vp at Nynyuee?
Wel may men knowe it was no wight
but he

That kepte peple Ebrayk from hir
drenchyng,

10 With drye feet thurgh-out the see pas-
syng.

¶ Who bad the foure spiritēs of
tempest,

That power han tanoyen lond and see:
'Bothē North and South, and also West
and Est,

Anoyeth neither see, ne land, ne tree?"

15 Soothly, the comandour of that was he
That fro the tempest ay this womman
kepte,

A's wel whan she wook as whan she
slepte.

¶ Where myghtē this womman mete
and drynkē haue?

Thre yeer and moore how lasteth hir
vitaille?

20 Who feddē thē Egypcien Marie in the
caue,

Or in desert? No wight but Crist, sanz
faillē.

ffyuē thousand folk it was a greet
meruaille

With loues fyue and fisshes two to feede.
God sente his foyson at hir grete neede.

¶ She dryueth forth in-to oure Occian 25
Thurgh-out oure wilde see, til atte laste,
Vnder an hooold that nempnen I ne kan,
ffer in Northumberlond the wawe
hir(e) caste,

And in the sond hir ship stiked so faste,
That thennes wolde it noght of al a 30
tyde:

The wyl of Crist was þat she sholde
abyde.

¶ The constable of the castel down is
fare

To seen this wrak, and al the ship
he soghte,

And foond this wery womman ful of
care;

He foond also the tresor þat she 35
broughte.

In hir langage mercy she bisoghte,
The lyf out of hir[e] body for to
twyne,

Hir(e) to deliūere of wo that she was
inne.

A maner latyn corrupt was hir
speche,

But algatēs ther-by was she vnder- 40
sonde.

The constablē, whan hym lyst no
lenger seche,

This woful womman broughte he to
the londe.

She kneleth down, and thanketh Goddes
sonde;

But what she was, she wolde no man
seye

ffor foul ne fair, thogh þat she sholde 45
deye.

She seyde she was so mazed in the
see,

That she forgat hir mynde, by hir
trouthe.

The constable hath of hir(e) so greet
pitee,

And eke his wyf, that they wepen for
routhe.

She was so diligent, with-outen slouthe, 50
To serue and plesen euerich in that
place,

4900 ff.: vgl. Boeth. IV, pr. 6. 4912/13: vgl. Offenb. Joh. VII, 1—3. 17. awok H.⁴
33. this] his E.D. 4950—5131. Eg. für D. 51. plesen Sk., please E., etc.

[B 532—557]

[B 558—581]

That alle hire loue[n] that looken in hir
face.

¶ This constable and dame Hermen-
gyld, his wyf,
Were payens, and that contree euery-
where,

55 But Hermengyld loued hir(e) right as
hir lyf,

And Custance hath so longe sojourned
there

In orisons, with many a bitter teere,
Til Ihesu hath conuerted thurgh his
grace

Dame Hermengyld, constablesse of that
place.

60 In al that lond no cristen dorste
route,

Alle cristen folk been fled fro that
contree

Thurgh payens, that conquereden al
aboute

The places of the North by land and
see.

To Walys fledde the cristyanytee

65 Of olde Britons, dwellynge in this yle;
Ther was hir refut for the meene while.

But yet nere cristene Britons so
exiled,

That ther nere somme that in hir
priuete

Honoured Crist, and hethen folk bigil-
ed;

70 And ny the castel swiche ther dwelten
three.

That oon of hem was blynd, and myghte
nat see

But it were with thilke [e]yē of his
mynde,

With whiche men seen whan þat they
ben blynde.

Bright was the sonne, as in that
someres day,

75 ffor which the constable, and his wyf
also,

And Custance han ytake the righte way
Toward the see, a furlong wey or two,

To pleyen and to romen [to romen] to
and fro;

And in hir walk this blynde man they
mette,

Croked and oold, with [e]yē faste 80
yshette.

'In name of Crist,' cride this olde
Britoun,

'Dame Hermengyld, yif me my sighte
agayn!'

This lady weex affrayed of the soun,
Lest that hir housbonde, shortly for
to sayn,

Wolde hir(e) for Ihesu Cristes loue han 85
slayn,

Til Custance made hir(e) boold, and bad
hir(e) wirche

The wyl of Crist as doghter of his
chirche.

¶ The constable weex abasshed of
that sight,

And seyde, 'What amounteth al[] this
fare?'

Custance answerde, 'Sire, it is Cristes 90
myght,

That helpeth folk out of the feendes
snare.'

And so ferforth she gan oure lay
declare,

That she the constable, er that it were
eue,

Conuerteth, and on Crist maketh hym
bileue.

This constable was no-thing lord of 95
this place

Of which I speke, ther he Custance
fond,

But kepte it strongly, many wyntres
space,

Vnder Alla, kyng of al Northhumbre-
lond,

That was ful wys and worthy of his
hond

Agayn the Scottes, as men may weel 100
heere;

But turne I wol[e] agayn to my mateere.

4952. in E.G.Eg., on He., etc. (Sk.). 59. that E.G.Eg.P., thilke He.C.L., þe H.⁴
73. whan E.Eg., after He., etc. (Sk.). 81. olde E.H.⁴, blynde He., etc. (Sk.). 93. were E.,
was He., etc. 94. maketh E.Eg., made He., etc. (Sk.). 97. wynter He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 98. al f. H.⁴L.

[B 582—610]

[B 611—639]

¶ Sathan, that euere vs waiteth to
bigile,
Saugh of Custance al hir perfeccioun,
And caste anon how he myghte quite
hir while,
05 And made a yong knyght, þat dwelte
in that toun,
Loue hir(e) so hoothe of foul affeccioun,
That verrailly hym thoughte he sholde
spille,
But he of hir(e) myghte ones haue his
wille.
He woweth hir(e), but it auailleth
noght,
10 She wolde do no synne, by no weye,
And for despit he compassed in his
thoght
To maken hir(e) on shameful deeth to
deye.
He wayteth whan the constablen was
awaye,
And pryuely, vp-on a nyght, he crepte
15 In Hermengylde's chambre whil she
slepte.
Wery, for-waked in hir(e) orisouns,
Slepeth Custance, and Hermengyld also.
This knyght, thurgh Sathanas temp-
taciouns,
Al[!] softly is to the bed ygo,
20 And kitte the throte of Hermengyld
atwo,
And leyde the blody knyf by dame
Custance,
And wente his wey, ther God yeue hym
meschance!
¶ Soone after cometh this constable
hoom agayn,
And eek Alla, þat kyng was of that lond,
25 And saugh his wyf despitously yslayn,
ffor which ful ofte he weep, and wroong
his hond.
And in the bed the blody knyf he fond
By dame Custance; allas, what myghte
she seye?
For verray wo hir wit was al awaye.
30 To kyng Alla was toold al this
meschance,

And eek the tyme, and where, and
in what wise
That in a ship was founden dame
Custance,
As heer-biforn that ye han herd deuyse.
The kynges herte of pitee gan agryse,
Whan he saugh so benigne a creature 35
ffalle in disese and in mysaventure.
ffor as the lomb toward his deeth
is broght,
So stant this innocent bifore the kyng.
This false knyght, þat hath this tre-
soun wrought,
Berth hir(e) on hond þat she hath doon 40
thys thyng.
But natheles, ther was ful greet moorn-
yng
Among the peple, and seyn they kan
nat gesse
That she had doon so greet a wikked-
nesse.
ffor they han seyn hir(e) euere so
vertuous
And louynge Hermengyld right as hir 45
lyf.
Of this baar witness euerich in that
hous
Saue he þat Hermengyld slow with
his knyf.
This gentil kyng hath caught a greet
motyf
Of this witness, and thoughte he wolde
enquere
Depper in this, a trouthe for to lere. 50
¶ Allas, Custance! thou hast no cham-
pion,
Ne fighte kanstow noght, so weylaway!
But he that starf for our redempcioun,
And boond Sathan, and yet lith ther
he lay,
So be thy stronge champion this day! 55
ffor, but if Crist open myracle kithe,
Withouten gilt thou shalt be slayn as
swithe.
She sit hir(e) down on knees, and
thus she sayde:
'Immortal God! that sauedest Susanne

5018. Sathans E.He., satanys G. 32. dame E., this He., etc. (Gl.). 41. ful Sk.,
f. E., etc. [f. a?].

[B 640—666]

[B 667—694]

60 ffró fals blame, and thou, merciful
mayde,
Mary I meene, doghter to Seint Anne,
Bifore whos child angeles synge
'Osanne'!

If I be gillees of this felonye,
My socour be!—for ellis shal I dye.'
65 Hauē ye nat seyn som-tyme a pale
face,
Among a prees, of hym þat hath be
lad

Toward his deeth, wher-as hym gat no
grace,
And swich a colour in his face hath
had,
Men myghte knowe his face, that was
bistad,

70 Amonges allē the faces in that route?
So stant Custance, and looketh hir(e)
aboutē.

O queenes, lyuynge in prosperitee,
Duchesses, and ye ladyes, euerichone,
Haueth som routhe on hir aduersitee!

75 An emperoures doghter stant allone,
She hath no wight to whom to make hir
mone—

O blood roial, that stondest in this
drede,
ffer been thy freendes at thy grete
nedel!

This Alla kyng hath swich compas-
sioun,

80 As gentil herte is fulfild of pitee,
That from hise [e]yē ran the water
doun.

'Now hastily do fecche a book,' quod
he,

'And if this knyght wol sweren how
þat she

This womman slow, yet wol we vs
auyse

85 Whom þat we wolē that shal been
oure iustise.'

A Britoun book, written with Euaun-
giles,

Was fet, and on this book he swoor
anoon

She gilty was, and in the meene whiles
An hand hym smoot vpon the nekke-
boon,

That doun he fil atones as a stoon, 90
And bothe his [e]yēn broste out of his
face

In sighte of euery-body in that place.

¶ A voys was herd in general au-
dience,

And seyde, 'Thou hast desclaundred
gilletees

The doghter of hooly chirche in heigh 95
presence!

Thus hastou doon, and yet holde I my
pees.'

Of this meruaille agast was al the
prees;

As mazed folk they stoden euerichone
ffor drede of wreche, sauē Custance
allone.

¶ Greet was the drede and eek the 00
repentance

Of hem that hadden wrong[e] suspe-
cioun

Vpon this sely innocent Custance,
And for this miracle, in conclusioun,
And by Custances mediacioun

The kyng and many another in that 05
place

Conuerted was, thanked be Cristes
grace!

¶ This false knyght was slayn for his
vntrouthe

By iuggement of Alla, hastily,
And yet Custance hadde of his deeth
greet routhe.

And after this Ihesus, of his mercy, 10
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely

This hooly mayde[n], that is so bright
and sheene,

And thus hath Crist ymaad Custance a
queene.

But who was woful, if I shal nat lye,

4060. false G.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 61/62: vgl. 16299/300. 73. ye f. E.L. 75. em-
peroures (-is) C.G.H.⁴ 80: vgl. 9861, 10795. 96. holde I E.Eg., I h. He.G.H.⁴, I moot h.
C.P.L. 5108. hastily He.Eg.C.L.H.⁴ [Bgl. 5467.] 12. mayde H.⁴ 13. ymaad E.Eg.H.⁴.
maad He., etc.

[B 695—722]

[B 723—747]

15 Of this wedding but Donegild and namo,

The kynges mooder, ful of tirannye?
Hire thoughte hir cursed herte brast
atwo;

She wolde noght hir soné had do so;
Hire thoughte a despit that he sholde
take

20 So strange a creature vn-to his make.

¶ Me list nat of the chaf or of the
stree

Maken so long a tale as of the corn.
What sholde I tellen of the roialtee
At mariages, or which cours goth bi-
forn?

25 Who bloweth in the trumpe or in an
horn?

The fruyt of euery tale is for to seye:
They ete, and drynke, and daunce, and
syng, and pleye.

They goon to bedde, as it was skile
and right;

ffor thogh þat wyues be ful hooly
thynges,

30 They moste take in pacience at nyght
Swiche [manere] necessariës as been
plesynges

To folk þat han ywedded hem with
rynges,

And leye a lite hir hoolynesse aside
As for the tyme, it may no bet bitide.

35 On hir(e) he gat a *knaue* child anon,
And to a bisshop and his constable eke
He took his wyf to kepe whan he is
gon

To Scotlandward, his foomen for to
seke.

Now faire Custance, that is so humble
and meke,

40 So longe is goon with childe, til that
stille

She halt hir chambre, abidyng Cristes
wille.

The tyme is come a *knaue* child she
beer;

Mauricius at the fontstoon they hym
calle.

This constable dooth forth come a
messageer,

And wroot vn-to his kyng, that cleped 45
was Alle,

How that this blisful tidying is bifalle,
And othere tidynges spedeful for to
seye.

He taketh the lettre, and forth he
gooth his weye.

¶ This messenger, to doon his auant-
age,

Vn-to the kynges mooder rideth swithe, 50
And salueth hir(e) ful faire in his
langage:

'Madame,' quod he, 'ye may be glad
and blithe,

And thanketh God an hundred thou-
sand sithel

My lady queene hath child, with-uten
doute,

To ioye and blisse to al this regne 55
aboute.

Lo, heerē the lettres seled of this
thyng,

That I moot berē with al the haste I
may!

If ye wol aught vn-to youre sonē the
kyng,

I am youre seruant, bothe nyght and
day.'

Donegild answerde, 'As now at this 60
tyme, nay;

But heere al nyght I wol thou take thy
reste;

To-morwe wol I seye thee what me
leste.'

This messenger drank sadly ale and
wyn,

And stolen were hise lettres pryuely
Out of his box, whil he sleep as a 65
swyn;

And countrefeted was ful subtilly
Another lettre, wrought ful synfully,

5118. [I. hadde = G.Eg.C.?] 21. or E., nor G. (Sk.), ne He., etc. (Gl.). 24. mariages E.He., marriage G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 25. the trumpe E., trompe He.P., a t. G., etc. 31. maner(e): alle Hfl. (Sk., Gl.). 34. no bet E.D., noon other He., etc. 35. *knaue*] E. *geänbert* in man; id. 5142; vgl. 8318. 47. *tidynges*] *pinges* H.⁴ 48. *taketh*] *tath* He. G., *hath* D. 55. to al E.G.D., of al He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 748—778]

[B 779—805]

Vn-to the kyng direct of this mateere
ffro his constable, as ye shal after heere.

70 The lettre spak, 'the queenē deliuered
was

Of so horrible a feendly creature,
That in the castel noon so hardy was,
That any while dorste ther endure.
The mooder was an elf; by auenture

75 Ycome[n], by charmes, or by sorcerie,
And euērich hateth hir compaignye.'

Wo was this kyng whan he this
lettre had sayn,

But to no wight he tolde his sorwes
soore,

But of his owenē hand he wroot agayn:

80 'Wel-come the sonde of Crist for euere-
moore

To me, that am now lerned in his loore!
Lord, wel-come be thy lust and thy
plesaunce!

My lust I putte al in thyn ordinaunce.

Kepeth this child, al be it foul or feir,

85 And eek my wyf vn-to myn hoom-
comynge.

Crist, whan hym list, may sende me
an heir

Moore agreable than this to my lik-
ynge.'

This lettre he seleth, pryuely wepynge,
Which to the messenger was take soone,

90 And forth he gooth—ther is na-moore
to doone.

O messenger, fulfild of dronkenesse!†)

Strong is gire breeth, thy lymes faltren
ay,

And thou biwreyest alle secreenesse;
Thy mynde is lorn, thou ianglest as
a iay,

95 Thy face is turned in a newe array!

Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,
Ther is no conseil hyd, with-outen
doute.

O Donegild! I ne hauē noon eng-
lishh digne

Vn-to thy malice and thy tirannye;
And therfore to the feend I thee
resigne,

Lat hym enditen of thy traitorie!
ffy, mannyssh, fy!—o nay, by God,
I lye!

ffy, feendlych spirit! for I dar wel
telte,

Thogh thou heere walke, thy spirit is
in helle.

¶ This messenger comth fro the kyng
agayn,

And at the kynges moodres court he
lighte,

And she was of the messageer ful fayn,
And plesed hym in al that euēr she
myghte.

He drank, and wel his girdel vnder-
pighte;

He slepeth, and he fnorteth in his
gyse

A'[] nyght, til the sonne gan aryse.

Eft were hise lettres stolen euerychon,

And counterfeted lettres in this wyse:
'The king comandeth his constable
anon,

Vp peyne of hangyng and on heigh
iuyse,

That he ne sholde suffren in no wyse
Custance in-with his reawme for tabyde
Thre dayes and o quarter of a tyde.

But in the same ship as he hir(e)
fond,

Hir(e) and hir yonge sone, and al hir
geere

He sholde putte, and croude hir(e)
fro the lond,

And chargen hir(e) she neuēr eft coome
there.'

O my Custance! wel may thy goost
hauē feere,

And slepyng in thy dreem been in
penance,

Whan Donegild caste al this ordinance. 2

5171. feendly E.H.⁴, fendlich He., etc. 75. ycome C.P.L., Bycome H.⁴ 76. euerich E.He., euery wyzt G.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.), euerich man D.H.⁴ 91ff.: Innoc., De cont. mundi II, 19; bgl. 12489ff. 98. ne f. G.C.H.⁴ 5210. fnorteth E.He.C., snortith G.D., fronteb P.L., fareb H.⁴, snoreth Sk., Gl. [Bgl. 4161.] 11. nyghte Gl.; til] to D.P., vnto H.⁴, vntil Sk. 17. Reawme E., regne He., etc. (Sk.). ~ 22. þat she He.G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 25. caste He.G.C. (Sk.), cast E., etc.

[B 806—833]

[B 834—861]

- ¶ This messenger on morwe whan
he wook,
Vn-to the castel halt the nexte way,
And to the constable he the lettre
took.
And whan þat he this pitous lettre say,
30 fful ofte he seyde 'Allas and weylaway!
'Lord Crist,' quod he, 'how may this
world endure?
So ful of synne is many a creature!
¶ O myghty God! if that it be thy
wille,
Sith thou art rightful iuge, how may it
be
35 That thou wolt suffren innocentz to
spille,
And wikked folk regne[n] in prosperi-
tee?
O goodę Custance! Allas, so wo is me
That I moot be thy tormentour, or deye
On shames deeth—ther is noon oother
weyl'
40 ¶ Wepn boþe yonge and olde in
al that place,
Whan þat the kyng this cursed lettre
sente,
And Custance, with a deedly pale face,
The ferthe day toward the ship she
wente.
But nathelees she taketh in good en-
tente
45 The wyl of Crist, and knelynge on the
stronde,
She seyde, 'Lord, ay wel-come be thy
sonde!
He that me kepthe fro the false blame,
While I was on the lond amonges yow,
He kan me kepe from harm and eek
fro shame
50 In salte see, al-thogh I se noight how.
As strong as euere he was, he is yet
now;
In hym triste I, and in his mooder
deere,
That is to me my seyl and eek my
steere.'

Hir litel child lay wepyng in hir arm,
And knelynge pitously to hym she 55
seyde,
'Pees, litel sone, I wol do thee noon
harm.'
With that hir couerchief of hir heed
she breyde,
And ouer hise litel [e]yē she it leyde,
And in hir arm she lulleth it ful faste,
And in-to heuene hir(e) [e]yē vp she 60
caste.
¶ 'Mooder,' quod she, 'and mayde
bright, Marie!
Sooth is that thurgh wommanes egge-
ment
Man-kynde was lorn, and damned ay to
dye,
ffor which thy child was on a croys
yrent—
Thy blisful [e]yē sawe al his tor- 65
ment—
Thanne is ther no comparison bitwene
Thy wo and any wo man may sustene.
Thow sawe thy child yslayn bifore
thyne [e]yē,
And yet now lyueth my litel child,
parfay.
Now, lady bright, to whom alle woful 70
cryen,
Thow glorie of wommanhedę, thow
faire May,
Thow hauen of refut, brightę sterre of
day!
Rewe on my child, that of thy gentillesse
Ruest on euery reweful in distresse!
¶ O litel child! alas, what is thy gilt, 75
That neuere wroghtest synne as yet,
pardee?
Why wil thyn harde fader han thee
spilt?
O mercy, deere constable!' quod she,
'As lat my litel child dwelle heer with
thee,
And if thou darst nat sauē hym fro 80
blame,
Yet kysse hym ones in his fadres name!'

5236. regne H.⁴L. (Sk., Gl.). 39. nys He.P. 43. the ship E.L., hir sh. He., etc. (Sk.).
50. þe salte se G., þe see H.⁴ 57. keerchef P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.); of] ouer E.He.G.D. 69. litel
f. E.L. 72: ugl. 16305. 80. fro(m) G.D.L., for E., etc. 81. kys E.He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).

[B 862—886]

[B 887—915]

Ther-with she looked bakward to the
londe,
And seyde, 'Far[e]wel, housbonde
routhelees!
And vp she rist, and walketh down the
stronde
85 Toward the ship; hire folweth al the
prees.
And euere she preyeth hir child to
holde his pees,
And taketh hir leue, and with an
hooly entente
She blissed hir(e), and in-to ship she
wente.

Vitailed was the ship, it is no drede,
90 Habundantly for hir(e), ful longe space,
And othere necessities that sholden nede
She hadde ynogh, heryed be Goddes
grace!
ffor wynd and weder, almyghty God,
purchase,
And brynge hir(e) hoom!—I kan no
bette seye,

95 But in the see she dryueth forth hir
weye.

¶ *Explicit secunda pars.**)

¶ *Sequitur pars tercia.*

Alla the kyng comth hoom soone
after this

Vn-to his castel, of the which I tolde,
And asketh where his wyf and his
child is.

The constable gan aboute his herte
colde,

00 And pleynly al the manere he hym
tolde,

As ye han herd—I kan telle it no
bette—,

And sheweth the kyng his seel and his
lette;

And seyde, 'Lord, as ye comanded me
Vp peyne of deeth, so haue I doon
certein.'

05 This messenger tormented was til he
Moste biknowe, and tellen plat and
pleyn,

ffro nyght to nyght, in what place he
had leyn.

And thus by wit and subtil enquiryng
Ymagineð was by whom this harm
gan sprynge.

¶ The hand was knowe that the lettre 10
wroot,

And al the venym of this cursed dede,
But in what wise, certainly I noot.
Theffect is this, þat Alla, out of drede,
His mooder slow—that may men pleyn-
ly rede—

ffor þat she traitour was to hir ligeance. 15
Thus endeth olde Donegild with mes-
chance.

The sorwe that this Alla nyght and
day

Maketh for his wyf and for his child
child also,

Ther is no tonge that it telle may.
But now wol I vn-to Custance go, 20
That fleteth in the see, in peyne and wo,
ffyuē yeer and moore, as liked Cristes
sonde,

Er that hir ship approched vn-to the
londe.

¶ Vnder an hethen castel atte laste,
Of which the name in my text noght 25
I fynde,

Custance and eek hir child the see vp-
caste.

Almyghty God, that saued al man-
kynde!

Haue on Custance and on hir child som
mynde,

That fallen is in hethen hand eft-soone,
In point to spille, as I shal telle yow 30
soone.

¶ Doun fro the castel comth ther
many a wight

To gauren on this ship and on Custance.
But, shortly, from the castel on a nyght
The lordes styward—God yeue him
meschance!—

A theef that hadde reneyed oure 35
creance,

5282. looketh He.G.C.P. (Sk.). 85. here (hire) G.D.P. 89. blesseth He., etc. 93. ffor
I. fro? — *) Explicit, etc.: nur E. — 5302. seelè Gl. (?!); and [eek] his Sk. 23. the londe
E.G.D., londe He., etc. (Sk.). 27. saued E.D., saueth He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 916—943]

[B 944—971]

Cam[e] in-to [the] ship allone, and seyde
he sholde

Hir lemman be, wher-so she wolde or
nolde.

¶ Wo was this wrecched womman
tho bigon—

Hir child cride, and she cride pitously.

40 But blisful Marie heelp hir(e) right
anon;

ffor with hir struglyng wel and mygh-
tily

The thief fil ouer bord al sodeynly,
And in the see he dreynte for venge-
ance;

And thus hath Crist vnwemmed kept
Custance.

45 O foule lust of luxurie, lo, thyn
ende! [¶ *Auctor*

Nat oonly that thou feytest mannes
mynde, †)

But verrailly thou wolt his body shende.
Thende of thy werk or of thy lustes
blynde

Is compleynyng; hou many[^]oon may
men fynde

50 That noght for werk som-tyme, but for
thentente

To doon this synne, been outhere slayn
or shente!

How may this wayke womman han
this strengthe

Hir(e) to defende agayn this renegat?

O Goliath! vnmesurable of lengthe,

55 Hou myghte Dauid make thee so maat?

So yong and of armure so desolaat,
Hou dorste he looke vp-on thy dred-
ful face?

Wel may men seen it nas but Goddes
grace.

Who yaf Iudith corage or hardynesse

60 To sleen hym, Oloferne, in his tente,

And to deliueren out of wrecchednesse
The peple of God? I seye, for this
entente,

That, right as God spirit of vigour
sente

To hem, and saued hem out of mes-
chance,

So sente he myght and vigour to 65
Custance.

¶ fforth gooth hir ship thurgh-out
the narwe mouth

Of Iubaltare and Septe, dryuynge alway,
Som-tyme West, and som-tyme North
and South,

And som-tyme Est, ful many[^]a wery
day,

Til Cristes mooder—blessed be she 70
ay!—

Hath shapen, thurgh hir endeles good-
nesse,

To make an ende of al hir heuynesse.

Now lat vs stynte of Custance but
a throwe,

And speke we of the Romayn emperour,
That of Surrye hath by lettres knowe 75
The slaughtre of cristen folk and dis-
honour

Doon to his doghter by a fals traytour,
I mene the cursed wikked sowdanesse,
That at the feestē leet sleen bothē
moore and lesse;

ffor which this emperour hath sent 80
anon

His senatour, with roial ordinance,
And othere lordes, God woot, many
oon,

On Surryens to taken heigh vengeance.
They brennen, sleen, and brynge hem
to meschance

Ful many[^]a day; but shortly, this is 85
thende:

Homward to Rome they shapen hem
to wende.

¶ This senatour repaireth with vic-
torie

To Rome-ward, saillynge ful roially,
And mette the ship dryuynge, as seith
the storie,

In which Custance sit ful pitously. 90
Nó-thing knew he what she was, ne
why

5236. Cam He.G., Com(e) D., etc.; [the] E.G.D. [vgl. *Ännözenz*, l. c.]. 58. nas E.H.⁴, is L., was He., etc. 60. Oloferne E.D., Olofernes H.⁴, Olofernus He., etc. (Sk.). 67. alway E.D., ay He., etc. (Sk.). 91. ne knew He.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).

[B 972—1001]

[B 1002—1027]

She was in swich array, ne she nyl seye
Of hir estaat, *al*-thogh she sholde deye.

He bryngeth hir(e) to Rome, and to
his wyf

95 He yaf hir(e), and hir yonge sone also,
And with the senatour she ladde hir
lyf.

Thus kan oure Lady bryngen out of wo
Woful Custance and many another mo.
And longe tyme dwelled she in that
place

00 In hooly werkes euere, as was hir grace.
The senatoures wyf hir aunte was,
But for al[l] that she knew hir(e) neuþ
the moore.

I wol no lenger tarien in this cas,
But to kyng Alla, which I spake of
yoore,

05 That wepeth for his wyf, and siketh
soore,

I wol retourne, and lete I wol Custance
Vnder the senatoures gouernance.

Kyng Alla, which that hadde his
mooder slayn,

Vp-on a day fil in swich repentance,

10 That, if I shortly tellen shal and playn,
To Rome he comth to receyue[n] his
penance,

And putte hym in the popes ordinance,
In heigh and logh, and Ihesu Crist
bisoghte

fforyeue hise wikked werkes þat he
wroghte.

15 ¶ The fame anon thurgh-out the toun
is born,

How Alla kyng shal come[n] on pil-
grymage,

By herbergeours that wenten hym bi-
for[n];

ffor which the senatour, as was vsage,
Rood hym agayns, and many of his
lynage,

20 As wel to shewe[n] his heighe magni-
ficence

As to doon any kyng a reuerence.

¶ Greet cheere dooth this noble sena-
tour

To kyng Alla, and he to hym also,
Euerich of hem dooth oother greet
honour;

And so bifel that, in [with] a day or 25
two,

This senatour is to kyng Alla go
To feste, and shortly, if I shal nat
lye,

Custances sone wente in his compaignye.

¶ Some men wolde seyn, at requeste
of Custance

This senatour hath lad this child to 30
feeste;

I may nat tellen euery circumstance—
Be as be may—ther was he at the
leeste.

But sooth is this, that, at his moodres
heeste,

Biforn Alla, duryng the metes space,
The child stood lookynge in the kynges 35
face.

¶ This Alla kyng hath of this child
greet wonder,

And to the senatour he seyde anon,
'Whos is that faire child that stondest
yonder?'

'I noot,' quod he, 'by God and by seint
Iohn!

A mooder he hath, but fader hath 40
he noon

That I of woot.' And shortly, in a
stounde,

He tolde Alla how that this child was
founde.

'But, God woot,' quod this senatour
also,

'So vertuous a lyuere in my lyf
Ne saugh I neuere as she, ne herde 45
of mo

Of worldly women, mayde, ne of
wyf.

I dar wel seyn hire hadde leuere a
knyf

5393. *al* þough H.⁴, þough þat P., thogh E., etc. 5401. Senatoures (-ys) C.G.H.⁴; id. 5407. 05. for his wyf wepeth He.G. (wepede) C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 11. receyue G.D.H.⁴ 15. out the E.D., Rome He., etc. (Sk.). 16. come G.D.L.H.⁴ (Sk.); on E.D., in He., etc. (Sk.). 20. schewe L. 25. with-in G.D., on L.H.⁴, in He., etc. 41. And] but E.D. (Gl). 46. ne] nor G. (Sk.), or L.H.⁴ 47. hir E.He., sche C., etc.

[B 1028—1055]

[B 1056—1085]

Thurgh-out hir brest than ben a wom-
man wikke;

There is no man koude brynge hir(e)
to that prikke.'

50 ¶ Now was this child as lyk[e] vn-to
Custance

As possible is a creature to be.

This Alla hath the face in remembrance
Of dame Custance, and ther-on mused
he

If that the childes mooder were aught
she

55 That is his wyf, and pryuely he sighte,
And spedde hym fro the table that he
myghte.

'Parfay,' thoughte he, 'fantome is in
myn heed!

I oghte deme, of skilful iuggement,
That in the salte see my wyf is deed.'

60 And afterward he made his argument:
'What woot I if that Crist haue hyder
ysent

My wyf by see, as wel as he hir(e)
sente

To my contree fro thennes that she
wente?"

And after noon, hoom with the sena-
tour

65 Goth Alla for to seen this wonder
chaunce.

This senatour dooth Alla greet honour,
And hastily he sente after Custaunce;
But trusteth weel hir(e) liste nat to
daunce

Whan þat she wiste wherfore was that
sonde;

70 Vnnethe vp-on hir feet she myghte
stonde.

¶ Whan Alla saugh his wyf, faire
he hir(e) grette,

And weep, that it was routhe for to see;
ffor at the firste look he on hir(e)
sette

He knew wel verrailly that it was she;

75 And she for sorwe as dounb stant as
a tree:

So was hir herte shet in hir distresse,
Whan she remembered his vnkynde-
nesse.

Twyes she swowned in his owene
sighte;

He weep, and hym excuseth pitously:
'Now God,' quod he, 'and his halwes 80
brighthe

So wisly on my soule as haue mercy,
That of youre harm as giltelees am I
As is Maurice, my sone, so lyk youre
face—

Elles the feend me fecche out of this
place!

¶ Long was the sobbyng and the 85
bitter peyne

Er that hir woful hertes myghte cesse,
Greet was the pitee for to heere hem
pleyne,

Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo
encrease.

I praye yow alle my labour to relesse—
I may nat telle hir wo vn-til to-morwe, 90
I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.

But finally whan that the sothe is
wist

That Alla giltelees was of hir wo,
I trowe an hundred tymes been they
kist,

And swich a blisse is ther bitwix hem 95
two,

That, sauē the ioye that lasteth euere-
mo,

Ther is noon lyk that any creature
Hath seyn or shal, whil þat the world
may dure.

Tho preyde she hir housbonde
mekely,

In relief of hir longe pitous pyne, 00

That he wolde preye hir fader specially,
That of his magestee he wolde enclyne
To vouche-sauf som day with hym to
dyne;

She preyde hym eek he wolde by no
weye

Vn-to hir fader no word of hir(e) seye. 05

5461. haue E.D., hath He., etc.; ysent E.G., sent He., etc. 67. hastily E.P., hastilyche G., hastily He., etc. 78. swowneth He.G.C.P. 80. and alle his H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 10016, 15298]. 89. alle E.C.P.H.⁴, al He.L. (Sk., all Gl.), Alla D., of G. 5504. wolde E.D., sholde He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 1086—1115]

¶ Some men wolde seyn how þat
the child Maurice

Dooth this message vn-to this emperour.
But, as I gesse, Alla was nat so nyce
To hym that was of so souereyn ho-
nour

10 As he that is of cristen folk the flour
Sende any child, but it is bet to deeme
He wente hym-self, and so it may wel
seeme.

¶ This emperour hath graunted gen-
tilly

To come to dyner, as he hym bisoughte,
15 And wel rede I, he looked bisily
Vp-on this child, and on his doghter
thoghte.

Alla goth to his in, and, as him oghte,
Arrayed for this feste in euery wise
As ferforth as his konnyng may suffice.

20 ¶ The morwe cam, and Alla gan
hym dresse,

And eek his wyf, this emperour to
meete,

And forth they ryde in ioye and in
gladnesse.

And whan she saugh hir fader in the
strete,

She lighte down, and falleth hym to
feete.

25 'fader,' quod she, 'youre yonge child
Custance

Is now ful clene out of youre remem-
brance.

I am youre doghter Custance,' quod
she,

'That whilom ye han sent vn-to Surrye;
It am I, fader, that in [the] salte see

30 Was put allone, and dampned for to
dye.

Now, goode fader, mercy I yow crye.
Sendē me namore vn-to noon hethe-
nesse,

But thonketh my lord heere of his
kyndenesse!

¶ Who kan the pitous ioye tellen al

35 Bitwixe hem thre syn they been thus
ymette?

[B 1116—1145]

But of my tale make an ende I shal—
The day goth faste—I wol no lenger
lette.

This glade folk, to dyner they hem
sette;

In ioye and blisse at mete I lete hem
dwelle

A thousand-foold wel moore than I 40
kan telle.

¶ This child Maurice was sithen em-
perour

Maad by the pope, and lyued cristenly;
To Cristes chirche he dide greet honour.

But I lete al[1] his storie passen by,
Of Custance is my tale specially; 45

In the olde Romanē geestes may men
fynde

Maurices lyf—I bere it noght in mynde.

¶ This kyng Alla, whan he his tyme
say,

With his Custance, his hooly wyf so
sweete,

To Engelond been they come the righte 50
way,

Wher-as they lyue in ioye and in quiete.
But litel while it lasteth, I yow heete;†)

Ioye of this world for tyme wol nat
abyde,

ffro day to nyght it changeth as the
tyde.

Who lyued euere in swich delit o 55
day†)

That hym ne moued outhur conscience,
Or ire, or talent, or som kynnes affray,

Enuye, or pride, or passion, or offence?
I ne seye but for this ende this sent-
ence,

That litel while in ioye or in plesance 60
Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.

ffor deeth, that taketh of heigh and
logh his rente,

Whan passed was a yeer, euene as I
gesse,

Out of this world this kyng Alla he
hente,

ffor whom Custance hath ful greet 65
heuynesse.

5511. Sente: alle þi. (Sk., Gl.) [both Infinitiv; f. 5508]. 29. [the] f. L. [vgl. 5250].
33. thonketh E.D., thonke He., etc. 44. his] this He.D.P. 55. o E., oo D., a He., etc.
57. kynnes (kenys) E.G., maner D.H., kyn He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 1146—1163]

Now lat vs praye to God his soule
blesse!

And dame Custance, finally to seye,
Toward the toun of Rome goth hir
weye.

¶ To Rome is comē this hooly crea-
ture,

70 And fyndeth *ther* hir(e) freendes hoole
and sounde.

Now is she scaped al hir auenture,
And whan þat she hir fader hath
yfounde,

Doun on hir kneës falleth she to
grounde;

Wepynge for tendrenesse in herte
blithe,

75 She heryeth God an hundred thousand
sithe.

¶ I'n vertu and hooly almes-dede
They lyuen alle, and neuere a-sonder
wende;

Til[1] deeth departed hem, this lyf they
lede.

And fareth now weel, my tale is at an
ende!

80 Now Ihesu Crist, that of his myght
may sende

Ioye after wo, gouerne vs in his grace,
And kepe vs alle that been in this place!
Amen.

¶ Heere endeth*) the tale of the man
of Lawe.

[(And) here bygynneþ þe prologe
of the sqwiere.**)

¶ Owre oost vpon his stiropes stood
anoon,

[B 1164—1190]

And seyde, 'goode men, herkeneþ euer-
ych on,

This was a thrifty tale for þe nones.
Sire parissche prest, quod he, for
goddess boones,

Telle vs a tale, as was þi forward yore. (5)

I se wel þat ye lerned men in loore
Can moche good, by goddès dignete!
The parson him answerde 'benedicitee!
What eyleþ þe man so synfully to
swere?'

Oure ost answerde. 'O Ianekyn, be (10)
ye þere?

I smelle a lollere in þe wynd,' quod he.
'how goode men, quod oure host,
herkeneþ me!

Abydeþ for goddès digne passioun!
ffor we schal han a predicacioun;

This lollere heer wil prechen vs som (15)
what.'

'Nay, by my fader soule! þat schal he
nat,'

Seyde þe Esquier, 'heer schal he nat
preche,

He schal no gospel glosen here ne
teche!

We leuen alle in þe grete god,' quod he.

'he wolde sowen som difficulte (20)

Or springen Cokkel in oure clene corn,

And þerfore, oost, I warne þe biforn.

My Ioly body schal a tale telle,

And I schal clynken zou so mery
a belle,

That I schal waken al þis compaignie. (25)

But it schal not ben of philosophie,

Ne Phislyas, ne termes queinte of lawe,

Ther is but litel latyn in my mawe.]

6566. to god E.D., þat g. H.⁴, god He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 70. fynt hir fr. þer boþe hool H.⁴ (fyndeth, etc. Gl.); ther Sk., f. E., etc. [hire 2 silbig²]. 76. and in holy H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); almus E. 78. departeth He.G.D., departe C., etc. — * is ended He.; ... the man of lawe hise tale G.H.⁴ (hinter B 1185); Explicit, etc. C.L., Hic finitur fabula legis periti D. — ** Dieser Abschnitt, stets im Anschluß an den Man of Law, findet sich nur in Hff. des B-Types, im Six-Text nach C (hier als Grundlage) P.L.; ferner nach Se., Ro.², Sl.¹; außerdem in H.⁴ Nach 16 andern Hff. abgedruckt Six-Text I, 2ff. Obwohl anscheinend echt (vgl. Einl., S. 3), sind diese Übergangsverse offenbar später vom Dichter verworfen oder einstweilen, bis er geeignete Verwendungen dafür gefunden, zurückgestellt worden, daher vom A-Type mit Recht fortgelassen. Die Zuweisungen an verschiedene Erzähler in den Hff. (Sl. 17; f. u.) sind alle gleich unbegründet. — Überschrift nach P. (= Sl.¹); f. C.H.⁴, Incipit Prologus Armigeri L. — (5) out für vs H.⁴ (7) ben dicite H.⁴ (12) how] Now H.⁴ (13) f. H.⁴, Sl. offen. (15) lollard P. (16) my fader] godes Se. (17) squier Ro.², Sl.¹, P., L., Shipman Se. (Sk., Gl.), sompnour H.⁴ (= Ro.¹, Ra.²). (19) he leueþ C.P.L.Ro.²Sl.¹; quod f. ebb. (23—28) f. H.⁴ (27) physices Sk., phisyk Gl.

[D 1—20]

[D 21—45]

III. Fragment (D).

7. The Wyues Tale of Bathe.

a) ¶ The Prologe of the Wyues tale of Bathe.)*

Experience, though noon auctoritee
Were in this world, were right ynogh
to me

85 To speke of wo that is in mariage.
ffor, lordynges, sith I XII. yeer was of
age—

Ythonked be God, that is eterne on
lyue!—

Housbondes at chirche-dore I haue
had fyue—

ffor I so often haue ywedded bee—
90 And alle were worthy men in hir degree.
But me was toold certeyn—nat longe
agoon is—

That, sith that Crist ne wente neuere
but onis

To weddyng in the Canē of Galilee,
[¶ In Cana Galilee

Bý the same ensample taughte he me
95 That I ne sholde wedded be but ones.†)
Hérkne eek which a sharp word for
the nones

Beside a welle Ihesus, God and man,
Spak in repreue of the Samaritan.
'Thou hast yhad fyue housbondes,'
quod he,

00 'A'nd that man the which þat hath
now thee,

Is noght thy housbondē—thus seyde
he certeyn.

What that he mentē ther-by, I kan
nat seyn.

But þat I axē, why that the fifthe man
Was noon housbondē to the Samaritan?
How manye myghtē she haue in mari-
age?‡)

Yet herde I neuere tellen in myn age
Vpon this nombre diffinicioun;
Men may deuyne and glosen vp and
doun.

But wel I woot expres, with-oute lye,
God bad vs for to wexe and multiplye;‡)
That gentil text kan I wel vnderstonde.
Eek wel I woot he seyde myn hous-
bondē

Sholde lete fader and moder, and take
me,

But of no nombre mencion made he,
Of bigamy or of octogamy;
Why sholde men speke of it vileynye?

¶ Lo, heerē the wise kyng dann Salo-
mon;

I trowe he hadde wyues mo than oon,
As wolde God it were leueful vn-to
me

To be refresshed half so ofte as he!
2 Which yifte of God hadde he for alle
hise wyuys!

No man hath swich þat in this world
alyue is.

God woot, this noble kyng, as to my
wit,

The firste nyght had many a myrie fit
With ech of hem—so wel was hym on
lyue.

Yblessed be God that I haue wedded
fyue!

Welcome the sixte, whan that euere
he shal!

) Folgt in E.G.D.H. unmittelbar auf M.L.; in allen Hss. vor Sh. (B 1191 ff., S.T.). — überchr. ähnl. He.P.Sl.(G.)H.*; lat. D.C.L. — 5583—5659. Sl. für G. 84. were E., it were H.*; is He., etc.; to] for He., etc. 86. sith þat He., syn D.C.L., syns H.*; twelf, etc. He., etc. 87. I thank it H.*; Thonked He., etc. (Sk.). 88. atte (at the) He., etc. 89. ffor E.H.*; If He., etc.; often D.C.P.; myghte han wedded He., etc. 92. f. Co.; sith that E.He., sithen D., etc. 93: Joh. II, 1. 94. That by He., etc. (Sk.); thoughte me E. 5595—5952. lat. Randglossen aus Hieronymus' 'Adversus Iovinianum', f. Anhang. 96. Herke(n) H.*Sl., loo herkene D., Herke eek lo He., etc. (Sk.). 98: Joh. IV, 7 ff. 5600. that ilke man which (f. C.P.L.Sl.) that now hath the He., etc. (thilke Sk., that ilk Gl.). or. he seyde He.H.* 10: I. Mos. I, 22. 11. wel f. E. Matth. XIX, 5]. 12. seyde þat He.D. 13. take to me He., etc., folwe me H.* 16. men thanne speke He.D., men þenne haue C., m. (y) þen ... han P.L., m. ... haue G. 17. [über heere] audi E. 18. mo than] many He. 19. were leueful (leful) vn-to E.H.*; it leueful were to He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) 26. Yblessed E.H.*; Blessed He., etc. (Sk.). [D. fügt hiernach 6 VV. ein, deren Echtheit zweifelhaft ist (vgl. jedoch Sk.)].

[D 46—71]

[D 72—97]

ffor sothe, I wol nat kepe me chaast
 in al;†)
 Whan myn housbonde is fro the world
 ygon,
 Som cristen man shal wedde me anon;
 ffor thanne thapostle seith þat I am
 free†)
 To wedde, a Goddes half, wher(e) it
 liketh me.
 He seith *that* to be wedded is no
 synne,†)
 Bét is to be wedded than to brynne.†)
 What rekketh me thogh folk seye viley-
 nye
 Of shrewed Lameth and of bigamy?†)
 I woot wel Abra[ha]m was an hooly
 man,
 And Iacob eek, as ferforth as I kan,
 And ech of hem hadde wyues mo than
 two,
 And many another *hooly* man also.
 Whanne saugh ye euere, in *any* maner
 age,
 That hye God defended mariage
 By expres word? I praye you telleth
 me.
 Or wher comanded he virginitee?
 I woot as wel as ye, it is no drede,
 Whán thapostel spekeþ of maydenhede,
 He seyde that precept ther-of hadde
 he noon;
 Men may conseille a womman to been
 oon,
 But conseillyng is nat comandement;
 He putte it in oure owene iuggement.
 ffor thapostel God comanded maydenhede,
 Thanne hadde he dampned weddyng
 with the dede;
 And certein, if ther were no seed y-
 sowe,

Virginitee wher-of thanne sholde it
 growe?
 Poul [ne] dorste nat comanden atte 55
 leeste†)
 A thyng of which his maister yaf noon
 heeste.
 The dart is set vp of virginitee:†)
 Cacche who-so may, who renneth best
 lat see!
 ¶ But this word is nat take[n] of euery
 wight,
 But ther-as God lust gyue it of his 60
 myght.
 I woot wel the Apostel was a mayde;
 But nathelees, thogh that he wroot
 and seyde
 He wolde þat euery wight were swich
 as he,†)
 Al nys but conseil to virginitee;
 And for to been a wyf, he yaf me leue 65
 Of indulgenc; so it is no repreue
 To wedde me, if *that* my make dye,
 With-uten excepcion of bigamy.
 Al were it good no wommen for to
 touche,†)
 He mente as in his bed or in his 70
 couche;
 ffor peril is bothe fyr and tow tas-
 semble—
 Ye knowe what this ensample may
 resemble.
 This is al and som that virginitee
 Moore profiteth than weddyng in frele-
 tee;
 ffreelte clepe I, but if that he and she 75
 Wolde leden al hir lyf in chastitee.
 ¶ I graunte it wel I haue noon envie,
 Thogh maydenhede preferre bigamy:
 Hem liketh to be clene, body and
 goost,

5628. sothe E.L.H.⁴, syn D., sith He., etc. [I. Þor. VII, 9]. 29. agon He., goon D.L.Sl. 31: f. I. Þor. VII, 28; þat f. E.; id. 5633 (seith Gl. u. 5. 2!). 36. and (or) of E.H.⁴, and his He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [I. Moif. IV, 19]. 37. abram H.⁴ 38. ferforth as E.H.⁴, fer as euere He., etc. 40. hooly f. E.Sl. 41. Whanne saugh ye euere E.H.⁴ (euere f.), Where kan ye seye He., etc.; any f. E. 46. Thapostle whan he He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [I. Þor. VII, 25]. 49. nys (is) no He., etc. (is no Sk.). 53. certes He., etc. (Sk.). 54. thanne wher-of He., etc., wher-on H.⁴ 55. [ne] E.H.⁴ 57. of E. [vgl. Gloffe], fro C., vpon H.⁴, for He., etc. (Sk.). 59. taken E.H.⁴ (Gl.). 60. lust E.G., list He.H.⁴ (Sk.), wol (wolde) D., etc. 61. the Apostel E., that thapostle (that the A.) He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 62. and E.G., or He., etc. [I. Þor. VII, 7]. 66. it is E., nys it He.H.⁴, is D., is it G.C.P.L. 67. that f. E.G. 73. is f. He.C.L.; that E.G., he heeld (holdith H.⁴) He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 74. profiteth E.G., parfit He., etc. (Sk.). 76. leden He.H.⁴ 79. Hem liketh E.G., It liketh hem He., etc.

[D 98—123]

[D 124—147]

0 Of myn estaat I nyl nat makę no boost;
ffor wel ye knowe: a lord in his
household,
He nath nat euery vessel al of gold;
Sommę been of tree, and doon hir
lord seruise.
God clepeth folk to hym in sondry
wyse,
5 And euerich hath of God a propre
yifte, †)
Sóm this, som that, as hym liketh
shifte.
¶ Virginitee is greet perfeccion,
And continence eek with deuocion. †)
But Crist, that of perfeccion is welle,
0 Bád nat euery wight sholde go selle
Al[!] that he hadde, and gyue it to the
poore,
And in swich wise folwe hym and his
foore.
He spak to hem that wolde lyuę parfitly,
And, lordynges, by youre leue, that
am nat I.
5 I wol bistowe the flour of al myn age
In the actes and in fruyt of mariage.
¶ Telle me also to what conclusion
Were membres [y] maad of generacion?
And for what profit was a wight
ywroght?
0 Trusteth right wel, they were nat maad
for noght.
Glose who-so wole, and seye bothe
vp and down
Thát they were maad for purgacioun
Of vryne, and oure bothe thynges smale
Were eek to knowe a femelę from a
male,
5 And for noon oother cause—seye ye
no?

The experience woot wel it is noght
so;
So that the clerkes be nat with me
wrothe,
I seye yis, that they *maked been* for
bothe,
This is to seye, for office and for ese
Of engendrure, ther we nat God dis- 10
plese.
Why sholde men elles in hir bookes
sette
That [a] man shal yelde to his wyf
hir dette?
Now wher-with sholde he make his
paiement
If he ne vsed his sely instrument?
Thanne were they maad vp-on a crea- 15
ture
To purge vryne and eek for engendrure.
¶ But I seye noght þat euery wight
is holde,
Thát hath swich harneys as I of tolde,
To goon and vsen hem in engendrure,
Thanne sholde men take of chastitee no 20
cure.
Crist was a mayde, and shapen as a
man,
And many a seint, sithen the world
bigan;
Yet lyued they euere in perfit chasti-
tee.
I nyl nat enuye no virginitee;
Lat hem be breed of pured whete seed, 25
And lat vs wyues hoten barly breed;
And yet with barly breed, Mark telle
kan,
Oure Lord *Ihesu* refresshed many a
man.
In swich estaat as God hath cleped vs, †)

5680. I nyl nat E.G., I nyl H.⁴, ne wol I He., I wol nat D., I wole C.P.L. 82. He nath E.H.⁴, He hath G. (Sk.), Ne hath He.D., haþ C.P.L. [II. Tim. II, 20]. 86. as þat D.; to schift(e) L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 90. he sholde go He. (Sk.), schulde G., he shuld D.C.P.L., schuld go and H.⁴ [Matth. XIX, 21]. 92. [über foore] steppes E. [vgl. lore für foore C.P.L.]. 94: vgl. 9332. 95. al f. E.H.⁴ [vgl. 5756]. 98. ymaad E. 99. for what profit was E.G., in what wyse H.⁴, of so parfit wys He.D., etc. 5702. makyd G. (-ed Sk., Gl.), I-made D. 03. Of vryne and oure bothe] Of v. bothe and E.G., Oure boþe vryn and H.⁴. 04. Were(n) D.C.P.L., Was He.H.⁴, And E.G. 05. seye C.P.L. [f. u.]. 08. seye G.D.C.P. [vgl. 6151]; yis E., this He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); beth (ben) maked E.G. (Gl.). 09. This] That He.G.H.⁴. 12. [a] E.G.; men D. [I. Kor. VII, 8]. 16. eek f. E.G. 18. I of E.G., I to yow He.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), I to yow of C.L., I to you haue P. 20. They shul nat E.G. 22. sith E., sithe G., sith (syn) that He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 24. nat E.G., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 27: Matth. VI, 41. 28—99. Se. für Co. 28. Ihesu f. E.G.H.⁴ [I. Kor. VII, 20].

[D 148—173]

[D 174—199]

30 I wol perseuere, I nam nat precius.
In wyfhode I wol vse myn instrument
As frely as my makere hath it sent.
If I be dangerous, God yeue me
sorwe!

Myn housbonde shal it hauē bothe
eue and morwe,

35 Whan þat hym list comē forth and paye
his dette.

An housbonde I wol haue—I nyl nat
lette—

Which shal be bothe my dettour and
my thral,†)

And haue his tribulacion with-al

Vp-on his flessch whil *that* I am his
wyf;

40 I hauē the power duryng al my lyf
Vp-on his propre body, and noght he:
Right thus the Apostel tolde it vn-to
me,†)

And bad oure housbondes for to loue
vs weel;

Al this sentence he liketh euery-deel.

45 Vp stirtē the Pardoner, and that anon.
'Now, dame,' quod he, 'by God and
by seint Iohn!

Ye been a noble prechour in this cas.
I was aboutē to wedde a wyf, allas!
What sholde I bye it on my flessch so
deere?

50 Yet hadde I leuere wedde no wyf to-
yeere.

¶ 'Abyd[e],' quod she, 'my tale is nat
bigonne!

Nay, thou shalt drynken of another
tonne,

Er that I go, shal sauour(e) wors than
ale.

And whan þat I haue toold forth my tale

55 Of tribulacion that is in mariage,

Of which I am expert in al myn age—
This to seyn: my-self hauē been the
whippe—:

Than maystow chese wheither thou wolt
sippe

O'f that tonne that I shal abroche:
Be war of it er thou to ny approche! 60
ffor I shal telle ensamples mo than
ten:

"Who-so þat *nyl* be war by othere
men,

By hym shul othere men corrected be:"
The same wordes writeth P[ro]tholo-
mee,

Rede [it] in his Almageste, and take it 65
there!

¶ 'Dame, I wolde prayen, if youre
wyl it were,'

Seyde this Pardoner, 'as ye bigan,
Télle forth youre tale, spareth for no
man,

And teche vs yonge men of youre
praktike!

¶ 'Glädly,' sires, sith it may yow like. 70
But yet I praye to al this compaignye,
If that I speke after my fantasye,
As taketh not agrief *of* that I seye,
ffor myn entente *nys* but for to pleye.—
NOW, sire, now wol I telle forth my 75
tale.

As euere moote I drynken wyn or ale,
I shal seye sooth of tho housbondes
[þat] I hadde,

As thre of hem were goode, and two
were badde.

The thre men were goode, and riche,
and olde;

Vnnethe myghte they the statut holde 80
In which that they were bounden vn-to
me—†)

5731. wol I He.D.Se.P.L. 35. come G.D.P. 36. wol I He.G.D.Se.; nyl] wol
He.D.Se.L.H.⁴ 39. that f. E.G. 42: *Cph.* V, 25. 54. toold thee He.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).
55. that is f. He.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 57. This is He.D.Se.P.L.H.⁴ [vgl. 7932, etc.]; haue
E., hath He., etc. 59. that tonne E.G., thilke t. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 62. nyl(e) He.D.H.⁴,
wol nat E.G.Se.P., wil L. 64. The E.G.H.⁴, Thise He., etc.; ptholome P., tholome L.,
Protholome E., etc. [vgl. 5906]. 65. [it] E.G. 66. pray(e) yow He.D.Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).
69. techeth He.D., tellith G. 70. Gladly sire(s) E.G., Gl. quod she He., etc. (Sk.); syn
He., syn that D., if L., syns H.⁴ 71. yet E.G., that He., etc. 73. of f. E.G. 74. nys He.
(Sk., Gl.), is E.G., is nat D., etc. (Gl.). 75. sire E.He.G., sires D., etc. (Sk.); now E.G.H.⁴,
thanne He., etc. 77. of f. He.D.Se.P.L. (Sk.); tho (the D.L.) f. G.H.⁴ (Gl.); [þat] alle
¶ u. Edd. 79. The thre men E.He.G. (Sk.), The th. of hem D., Tuo of hem H.⁴; The
thre were goode men Se.P.L. (Gl.).

[D 200—225]

[D 226—253]

Ye woot wel what I meene of this,
 pardee.
 As helpē me God, I laughe whan I
 thyнке
 How pitously anyght I made hem
 swynke!
 85 And by my fey! I tolde of it no stoor.
 They had me yeue[n] hir *lond* and hir
 tresoor,
 Me neded nat do lenger diligence
 To wynne hir loue, or doon hem reuer-
 ence.
 They loued me so wel, by God aboue!
 90 That I ne tolde no deyntee of hir loue.
 A wys womman wol sette hir(e) euere
 in oon
 To gete hir loue ther-as she hath noon.
 But sith I hadde hem hoolly in myn
 hond,
 And sith they hadde me yeuen al[l]
 hir lond,
 95 What sholde I taken heede hem^e for
 to plese,
 But it werē for my profit and myn ese?
 I sette hem so a-werke, by my fey,
 That many^e a nyght they songen 'weila-
 wey!'
 The bacon was nat fet for hem, I trowe,
 00 That somē men han in Essex(e) at Dun-
 mowe.
 I gouerned hem so wel after my lawe.
 That ech of hem was ful blisful and
 fawe
 To brynge me gaye thynges fro the
 fayre.
 They werē ful glad whan I spak to
 hem faire;
 05 ffor, God it woot, I chidde hem spi-
 tously.
 ¶ Now herkneth hou I baar me pro-
 prely!
 Ye wise wyues, that kan vnderstonde,

(¶) Thus shul ye speke, and beren
 hem on honde;
 ffor half so boldely kan ther no man
 Sweren and lyen as kan a womman. 10
 I seye nat this by wyues þat been
 wyse,
 But if it be whan they hem mysauyse.
 A' wys wyf, if that she kan hir good,
 Thal beren hym on hond: the cow is
 wood,
 And take wisse of hir owene mayde 15
 Of hir assent; but herkneth how I
 sayde:
 ¶ 'Sir(e) olde kaynard, is this thyn array?
 Why is my neighebores wyf so gay?
 She is honoured ouer-al ther she gooth,
 I sitte at hoom, I hauē no thrifty 20
 clooth.
 What dostow at my neighebores hous?
 Is she so fair? artow so amorous?
 What rowne ye with oure mayde?
 Benedicite!
 Sir(e) olde lecchour, lat thy iapes be!
 And if I haue a gossib or a freend, 25
 With-uten gilt thou chidest as a
 feend,
 If that I walke or pleye vn-to his hous.
 Thou comest hoom as dronken as a
 mous,
 And prechest on thy bench with yuel
 preef;
 Thou seist to me, "It is a greet mes- 30
 chief
 To wedde a poure womman for
 costage;"
 And if she be riche and of heigh pa-
 rage,
 Thanne seistow, "It is a tormentrie
 To soffre[n] hir pride and hir malen-
 colie."
 And if *that* she be fair, thou verray 35
 knaue!

5783. helpe G.D.Se.P. 85. And E.He., But G., etc. 86. yeve Se.P.L.H.⁴; land] gold E. (Sk.) [vgl. 5794]. 91. sette E.G., bisye He., etc. 92. ye ther He.Se.P.L. 94. sith that He.P.L., syn that D., synnes H.⁴, that Se.; yeuen me He.D.Se.P.L. 95. heede E.G., kepe He., etc. (f. L.). 97. a werk E.He.D. 5802. ful blisful was He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 07. konne He.G. 08. shul E.G., sholde He., etc.; hem E., hem wrong He., etc. (Sk.). 10. Sweren ... lyen D. (Sk.); a (f. P.) womman kan He.D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 11. seye G.C.L. [vgl. 5708, etc.]. 13. A wys] I-wis a H.⁴ (Gl.). 14. beren H.⁴ 26. ye chiden He.D.C.P.L. 32. if E.G., if that He., etc. (Sk.); and f. He.D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 33. that it He.D.C.P.L.(Sk.). 34. suffre He., etc. 35. that f. E.

[D 254—278]

[D 279—303]

Thou seyst that euery holour wol hir(e)
haue.

She may no while in chastitee abyde,
That is assailed vp-on ech a syde.

¶ Thou seyst [that] som folk desire[n]
vs for richesse,

40 Somme for oure shap, and somme
for oure fairnesse,

And somme for þat she kan synge and
daunce;

And somme for gentillesse and [som
for] daliaunce;

Somme for hir handes and hir armes
smale—

Thus goth al to the deuel by thy tale!

45 Thou seyst, "Men may nat kepe a
castel-wal,

It may so longe assailed been oueral."

¶ And if that she be foul, thou seist
that she

Coueiteth euery man that she may se;
ffor as a spaynel she wol on hym
lepe,

50 Til þat she fynde som man hir(e) to
chepe.

Ne noon so grey a goos gooth in the
lake,

A's, seistow, wol been with-oute make.

And seyst, "It is a hard thyng for to
welde

A thyng þat no man wol[e] his thankes
helde."

55 Thus seistow, lorel, whan thou goost to
bedde,

And þat "no wys man nedeth for to
wedde,

Ne no man that entendeth vn-to
heuene."

With wilde thonder-dynt and firy leuene
Moote thy welked nekke be to-broke!

60 ¶ Thow seyst "that droppying houses,
and eek smoke,

And chidyng wyues maken men to
flee

Out of hir owene hous[es]"—a! benē-
dicitee!

What eyleth swich an old man for to
chide?

¶ Thow seyst [þat] "we wyues wol oure
vices hide

Til we be fast, and thanne we wol 65
hem shewe."

Wel may that be a prouerbe of a
shrewe.

¶ Thou seist þat "oxen, asses, hors,
and houndes,

They been assayed at diuerse stoundes;
Bácyns, lauours, er that men hem bye,
Spoones and stoolēs, and al swich hous- 70
bondrye,

And so been pottes, clothes, and array;
But folk of wyues maken noon assay
Til they be wedded"—olde dotard
shrewe!

Thanne, seystow, we wol oure vices
shewe.

¶ Thou seist also that "it displeseth 75
me

But if that thou wolt preyse my beautee,
And but thou poure alwey vp-on my
face,

And clepe me 'faire dame' in euery
place;

And but thou make a feeste on thilke
day

That I was born, and make me fressh 80
and gay;

And but thou do to my norice honour,
And to my chamberere with-inne my
bour,

And to myadres folk and hise allyes"—
Thus seistow, olde baryl ful of lyes!

¶ And yet of oure apprentice Iane- 85
kyn,†)

5838. eche syde C.P.H.⁴ (Gl.). 39. [that] E.G.H.⁴, f. He., etc.; desire C.P.L.H.⁴
40. and f. E.G. (Gl. shape?). 41. somme He.G., etc. [and] 42/43; for þat H.⁴; synge and
E.G.H.⁴, outhur (either) s. or He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 42. [som for] E.G.; and d. He.D. (Sk.,
Gl.), or d. H.⁴, verb. 3l. C.P.L. 45. men: man. 46: vgl. 5838. 51. a goos H.⁴ (Gl.),
goos E., etc.; goos þat goth G.; goth ther in He.D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 53/54. wolde: holde
He.H.⁴ 60: vgl. 13998 u. 18819. 62. houses E.He.D.C., hous G., etc. 64. seyst þat E.G.
68. assayd E.P.L. 69. Bacynes He.G.C. 70. and stoolēs E.G., and f. He., etc. 74. And
thanne He.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), And . . . þanne C.P.L. 82. chamberere E.He., chambre C.P.L.
85. Iankyn He., etc; id. 5965.

[D 304—327]

[D 328—352]

ffor his crispe heer, shynynge as gold
so fyn,
And for he squiereth me bothe vp and
doun,
Yet hastow caught a fals suspicioun:
I wol hym noght, thogh thou werē
deed tomorwe.
90 ¶ But telle me, why hydestow with
sorwe
The keyes of *thy* cheste away fro me?
It is my good as wel as thyn, pardee!
What, wenestow [to] make an ydiot of
oure dame?
Now by that lord that called is seint
Iamel
95 Thou shalt nat bothe, though thou were
wood,
Be maister of my body~and of my
good.
That oon thou shalt forgo, maugree
thyne [e]yē!
What nedeth thee of me to enquire
or spyen?
I trowē thou woldest lokē me in thy
chiste.
00 Thou sholdest seye, "Wyf, go wher
thee liste,
Taak youre disport! I wol leue no
talys,
I knowē yow for a trewe wyf, dame
Alys."
We louē no man that taketh keep[e]
or charge
Wher that we goon; we wol ben at oure
large.
05 ¶ Of alle men yblessed mootē he be,
The wise astrologien Daun P[ro]tho-
lome,
That seith this prouerbe in his Al-
mageste:
"Of alle men his wysdom is the hyeste
That rekketh neuere who hath the
world in honde."†)

By this prouerbe thou shalt vnder- 10
stonde:
Hauē thou ynogh, what thar thee recche
or care
How myrily that othere folkes fare?
ffor certeyn, olde dotard, by youre leue,
Ye shul haue queynte right ynogh at
eue.
He is to greet a nygard that wolde 15
werne
A man to lighte his candle at his lan-
terne.
He shal hauē neuēr the lasse light,
pardee!
Hauē thou ynogh, thee thar nat pleyne
theel
¶ Thou seist also þat, "if we make vs
gay
With clothyng and with precious array, 20
That it is peril of oure chastitee."
And yet with sorwē thou most enforce
thee,
And seye thise wordes in the Apostles
name:†)
"In habit, maad with chastitee and
shame,
Ye wommen shul apparaille yow," quod 25
he,
"And noght in tressed heer and gay
perree,
As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes
riche."
After thy text, ne after thy rubriche
I wol nat wirche as muchel as a gnat.
¶ Thou seydest this, that I was lyk a 30
cat;
"for who-so wolde senge a cattes skyn,
Thanne wolde the cat wel dwellen
in his in;
And if the cattes skyn be slyk and
gay,
She wol nat dwelle in housē half a
day.

5888. a (and C.L.) f. He.G. 90. tel E.He.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); t. me this He.D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.); why] wher-for H.⁴ 91. thy] my E.G. 93. [to] E.G.D. 95. thogh þat He.D.L. (Sk.). 98. nedeth thee E.D., helpeth it He., etc.; or] and He.D.C.P.L. 5901. wol (wil) E.P., nyl He.G.H.⁴, wol nat D.C.L. (Sk., Gl.). 05. yblessed He.D.H.⁴; mootē He.G.C.; id. 6114, 8048, āññl. 5943 u. ð. 06. ptholomee C.P.L. 08. the f. He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 09. neuere E.G., nat He., etc. 11. rekke He.D.C.P.L. 13. certeyn E.G., certes He., etc. [vgl. 5653]. 16. his candle E., a c. He., etc. 23. I. Tim. II, 9. 25. shal He., shulde D.P.L.H.⁴ 29. muchel E.C.P., muche He., etc.; as is He., as doth D.

[D 353—375]

[D 376—397]

35 But forth she wol[e], er any day be
dawed,
To shewe hir skyn, and goon a-cater-
wawed;"

This is to seye: if I be gay, sir(e)
shrewe,
I wol renne out my borel for to shewe.
¶ Sire olde fool, what eyleth thee to
spyen?

40 Thogh thou preye Argus with hise
hundred [e]yēn
To be my wardecors, as he kan best,
In feith, he shal nat kepe me but *me*
lest;

Yet koude I make his berd, so moote
I thee!

¶ Thou seidest eek that "ther been
thynges thre,†)

45 The whiche thynges troublen al this
erthe,
A'nd þat no wight may endure the
ferthe."

O leeuē sir(e) shrewe, Ihesu shortē
thy lyf!

Yet prechestow, and seyst "an[d] hateful
wyf
Yrekened is for oon of thise mes-
chances."

50 Been ther none otherē of thise re-
semblances
That ye may likne youre parables to,
But if a sely wyf be oon of tho?

¶ Thou likenest wommenes louē to
helle,†)

To bareynē lond, ther water may nat
dwelle.

55 ¶ Thou liknest it also to wilde fyr:
The moore it brenneth, the moore it
hath desir
To consume[n] euery-thing þat brent
wol[e] be.

Thou seyest, "Right as wormes shen-
de[th] a tree,†)

Right so a wyf destroyeth hir hous-
bonde;

This knowe they that been to wyues 60
bonde."

Lordynges, right thus as ye haue vnder-
stonde

Baar I stifly myne olde housbondes on
honde

That thus they seyden in hir dronke-
nesse;

And al was fals, but that I took wit-
nesse

On Ianekyn and on my nece also. 65
O Lord! the payne I dide hem and
the wo

ffful giletees, by Goddes sweete pyne!
ffor as an hors I koude byte and
whyne.

I koude pleyne, thogh I were in the
gilt,

Or elles often tyme hadde I been 70
spilt.

Who-so *that first to mille comth*, first
grynt:

I pleynd first, so was oure werre
y-stynt.

They werē ful glade to excuse[n] hem
blyue

Of thyng of which they neuere agilde
hir lyue.

¶ Of wenches wolde I beren hym on 75
honde,

Whan that for syk vnnethes myghte
he stonde;

Yet tikled it his herte, for that he
Wendē þat I hadde of hym so greet
chiertee.

I swoor þat al my walkynge out by
nyghte

5939. eyleth E.G., helpeth He., etc.; tespyen He., to aspien G.D.H.⁴ 40. Ov., Met., I 625. 42. me f. E. 43. so] as He., also D., bough, etc., H.⁴ 46. ne may P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 50. of þese G., of þy H.⁴ (Gl.), maner C.P.L. (Sk.), f. E.He.D. 51. vnto H.⁴ (Gl.). 53. liknest E.He.P.; I eek He.D.; wommanes He., etc. (Sk.). 57. consumen E.He. (Gl.). 58. seyst alle þi, seist þat C.P. (Sk.); shendeth E.L., shenden D.H.⁴, consume G., shende He., etc. [Spr. XXV, 20 (Vulg.)]. 69. thogh I were] & zit was G., zet I was H.⁴, and I was He., etc. 70. I hadde He., etc. 71. that f. E.G.H.⁴; comth (come) first to Mille E.G., first cometh to the m. D.H.⁴ (Gl.). 72. y-stynt E.D., stynt, etc. He., etc. 73. glad(d)e C.L.; ful blyue He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 75. hym] hem He., etc. (Gl.). 76. he f. G.; they myghte vnnethe(s) He., etc. (u. m. thay Gl.). 77. it E., I He., etc.

[D 398—425]

Was for tespye wenchies þat he dighte.
Vnder that colour hadde I many^a myrthe;

ffor al swich thyng was yeue[n] vs in
oure byrthe:

Deceite, wepyng, spyngnyng God hath
yue

To wommen kyndely whil that they
may lyue.

85 And thus of o thyng I auaunte me:
Atte ende I hadde the better in ech
degree,

By sleighte, or force, or by som maner
thyng,

As by continuēel murmur or grucchyng.
Namely abeddē hadden they mes-
chaunce;

90 Ther wolde I chide, and do hem no
plesaunce.

I wolde no longer in the bed abyde,
If that I felte his arm ouer my syde,
Til he had maad his raunson vn-to
me;

Thanne wolde I suffre hym do his
nycetee.

95 And therfore euery man this tale I
telle—

Wynne who-so may, for al is for to
selle!

With empty hand men may none
haukes lure.

ffor wynnyng wolde I al his lust endure,
And make me a feyned appetit—

00 And yet in bacon hadde I neuere delit.
That made me that euere I wolde
hem chide;

ffor thogh the pope hadde seten hem
byside,

I wolde nat spare hem at hir owene
bord;

ffor, by my trouthe! I quitte hem word
for word,

05 As help(e) me verray God omnipotent!
Though I right now sholdē make my
testament,

I ne owe hem nat a word þat it nys
quit;

[D 426—455]

I broghte it so aboute by my wit,
That they moste yeue it vp as for the
beste,

Or elles hadde we neuere been in reste,
ffor thogh he looked as a wood leon,
Yet sholde he faille of his conclusion.

¶ Thanne wolde I seye, 'Goode lief,
taak keep,

How mekely looketh Wilkyn, ourē
sheep!

Com neer my spouse, lat me ba thy
cheke!

Ye sholde been al pacient and meke,
And han a sweete spiced conscience,
Sith ye so preche of Iobes pacience.
Suffreth alwey, syn ye so wel kan
preche,

And but ye do, certein, we shal yow
teche

That it is fair to haue a wyf in pees.
Oon of vs two moste bowen, doutelees,
And sith a man is moore resonable
Than womman is, ye moste been suf-
frable.

What eytleth yow to grucche thus and
grone?

Is it for ye wolde haue my queynte
allone?

Wy, taak it al! lo, haue it euery-deel!
Peter! I shrewē yow but ye loue it
weel!

ffor if I wolde selle my bele chose,
I koude walke as fressh as is a rose;
But I wol kepe it for youre owene
tooth,

Ye be to blame—by God, I seye yow
sooth!

¶ Swiche manere wordes hadde we on
honde.

Now wol I speken of my fourthe hous-
bonde.

[¶ *Of the condicion of the
fourthe housbonde of this goode
wyf. And how she serued hym*

My fourthe housbonde was a reuelour;
This is to seyn: he hadde a paramour,
And I was yong and ful of ragerye,

5982. thyng was E., wit is He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. that f. He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).
97: vgl. 4132. 6027. Wy E.He.P., we D., Whi C., etc. (Sk.). 30. as is a E.He., as ony
(any) G.D.P.H.⁴, as a C.L.

[D 456—484]

[D 485—513]

Stibourne and strong, and ioly as a
pye.

Wel koude I daunce to an harpe
smale,

- 40 And synge ywis as any nyghtyngale,
Whan I had dronke a draughte of
sweete wyn.

Metellius, the foule cherl, the swyn,†)
That with a staf birafte his wyf hir[e]
lyf,

ffor she drank wyn; thogh I hadde
been his wyf,

- 45 He sholde nat han daunted me fro
drynke!

And after wyn on Venus moste I thynke.
ffor al-so sikȝ as cold engendreth hayl,
A likerous mouth moste han a likerous
tayl.

In wommen vinolent is no defence,

- 50 This knowen lecchours by experience.
¶ But, Lord Crist! whan that it re-
membreth me

Vp-on my yowthe, and on my iolitee,
It tikleth me aboutȝ myn herte-roote!
Vn-to this day it dooth myn herte
boote

- 55 That I haue had my world as in my
tyme!

But age, alas! that al wol[e] enuenyme,
Hath me biraft my beautee and my
pith.

Lat go! far[e]-well! the deuel go ther-
with!

The flour is goon—ther is namoorȝ to
telle;

- 60 The bren, as I best kan, now moste
I selle;

But yet to be right myrie wol I fonde.
Now wol I tellen of my fourthe hous-
bonde.

¶ I seye I hadde in herte greet despit
That he of any oother had delit.

- 65 But he was quit, by God and by
seint Iocel!

I made hym of the same wode a croce;

Nat of my body in no foul manere,
But certainly, I made folk swich cheere,
That in his owene grece I made hym
frye

ffor anger and for verray ialousye.
By God! in erthe I was his purgatorie,
ffor which, I hope, his soule be in
glorie.

ffor, God it woot, he sat ful ofte and
song,

Whan þat his shoo ful bitterly hym
wroght.

Ther was no wight, sauȝ God and he,
þat wiste

In many wisȝ how soore I hym twiste.
He deyde whan I cam fro Ierusalem,
And lith ygraue vnder the roode-beem,
Al is his tombe noght so curyus

As was the sepulcre of hym, Daryus,
Which that Appelles wroghte sub-
tilly—†)

It nys but wast to burye hym precious-
ly.

Lat hym fare well! God yeue his soule
reste!

He is now in his graue and in his
cheste.

[¶ *Of the fifthe housbonde of
this wyf. and how she bar
hir(e) ayens hym*

NOw of my fifthe housbonde wol I telle.
God lete his soule neuere come in helle!
And yet was he to me the mooste
shrewe,

That feele I on my ribbes al by rewe,
And euere shal vn-to myn endyng day.
But in oure bed he was ful fressh
and gay,

And ther-with-al so wel koude he me
glose,

Whan that he woldȝ han my bele chose,
That, thogh he haddȝ me bet on euery
bon,

He koude wynne agayn my loue anon.
I trowe I loued hym best, for that he

6039. Wel E.G., How He.H.⁴, Tho D., lord how C.L., lord P. 45. He E.G.D., Ne He., etc. 49. wommen E.H.⁴, womman He., etc. (Sk.). 68. certein E., certainly He., etc. 70. angre E.He. [vgl. 7563]. 77. Ierusalem: vgl. 463. 81. Appellus He.H.⁴, Appollus D., Arpelles G. 86. lete E.G.H.⁴, lat He., etc. 90. ful E.D., so He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 95. beste G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), þe bet C.P., bette L.

[D 514—541]

Was of his loue daungerous to me.
 We wommen han, if that I shal nat lye,
 In this matere a queynte fantasye;
 Wayte what thyng we may nat lightly
 haue,
 Ther-after wol we crie al day and
 craue;
 fforbede vs thyng, and that desiren we;
 Preesse on vs faste, and thanne wol
 we fle.
 With daunger oute we al oure chaffare;
 Greet prees at market maketh deere
 ware,
 And to greet cheep is holde at litel
 prys:
 This knoweth euery womman that is
 wys.
 ¶ My fifthe housbonde—God his soule
 blesse!
 Which þat I took for loue and no
 richesse,
 He som-tyme was a clerk of Oxenford,
 And hadde left scole, and wente at
 hom to bord
 With my gossib dwellynge in oure
 toun—
 God haue hir soule!—hir name was
 Alisoun.
 She knew myn herte and eek my
 pryuetee
 Bet than oure parisshe-preest, as moote
 I thee!
 To hir(e) biwreyed I my conseil al.
 ffor hadde myn housbonde pissed on a
 wal,
 Or doon a thyng þat sholde han cost
 his lyf,
 To hir(e), and to another worthy wyf,
 And to my nece, which þat I loued
 weel,
 I wolde han toold his conseil euery-deel.
 And so I didē ful often, God it woot,
 That made his face ful often reed and
 hoot
 ffor verray shame, and blamed hym-
 self, for he

[D 542—574]

Had toold to me so greet a pryuetee.
 ¶ And so bifel that ones in a Lente, 25
 So often tymes I to my gossyb wente—
 ffor euere yet I loued to be gay,
 And for to walke in March, Auērill,
 and May
 ffro hous to hous, to heere sondry
 talys—
 That Iankyn clerk, and my gossyb 30
 dame Alys,
 And I my-self in-to the feeldes wente.
 Myn housbonde was at London al the
 Lente,
 I hadde the bettre leysur for to pleye,
 And for to se, and eek for to be seye
 Of lusty folk; what wiste I wher my 35
 grace
 Was shapen for to be, or in what
 place?
 Therefore I made my visitaciouns
 To vigilies and to processions,
 To prechyng eek, and to thise pil-
 grimages,
 To pleyes of myracles, and [to] 40
 mariages,
 And werē vpon my gaye scarlet gytes.
 Thise wormes, ne thise mothes, ne thise
 mytes,
 Vpon my peril, frete hem neuē-a-deel;
 And wostow why? ffor they were vsed
 weel.
 Now wol I tellen forth what happed 45
 me.
 I seye that in the feeldes walked we,
 Til[l] trewely we hadde swich daliance,
 This clerk and I, that of my purueiance
 I spak to hym, and seyde hym how
 þat he,
 If I werē wydwe, sholde wedde me. 50
 ffor certainly, I seye for no bobance,
 Yet was I neuē with-uten purueiance
 Of mariagē, nof othere thynges eek.
 I holde a mouses hertē nat worth a
 leek,
 That hath but oon holē for to sterte to, 55
 And if þat faille, thanne is al ydo.

6111. [i. ourē?]. 14. as E.He., so G., etc. (Sk.). 22. ful E.D., f. He., etc. 32. the E.,
 that He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 40. [to] E.He., of G., etc., f. H.⁴ (Sk.). 49. seyde hym E.He.,
 seyde G., etc. 51. sey E.H.⁴ [f. 5708, etc.].

[D 575—600]

[D 601—630]

- ¶ I bar hym on honde he hadde en-
chaunted me—
My dame taughte me that soutiltee,—
And eek I seyde I mette of hym al
nyght
60 He wolde han slayn me as I lay vp-
right,
And al my bed was ful of verray
blood;
But yet I hope that he shal do me
good,
ffor blood bitokeneth gold, as me was
taught.
And al was fals—I dremed of it right
naught,
65 Bút I folwed ay my dames loore,
As wel of this as [of] othere thynges
moore.
¶ But now, sire, lat me se what I shal
seyn—
A ha, by God!—I hauē my tale ageyn!
¶ Whan þat my fourthe housbonde was
on beere,
70 I weep algate, and made sory cheere,
As wyues mooten, for it is vsage,
And with my couerchief couered my
visage.
But for þat I was purueyed of a
make,
I wepte but smal, and that I vndertake.
75 ¶ To chirche was myn housbonde born
a-morwe
With neighebores, that for hym maden
sorwe,
And Iankyn, ourē clerk, was oon of
tho.
As helpē me God! whan þat I saugh
hym go
After the beere, me thoughte he hadde
a paire
80 Of legges and of feet so clene and
faire,
That al myn herte I yaf vn-to his hoold.
He was, I trowe, a twenty wynter oold,

And I was fourty, if I shal seye sooth.
But yet I hadde alwey a coltes tooth;
Gat-tothed I was, and that bicam me 85
weel,
I hadde the prente of seinte Venus
seel.
As helpē me God! I was a lusty oon,
And fair[e] and riche, and yong, and
wel bigon,
And trewely, as myne housbondes
tolde me,
I hadde the beste quonyam myghte be. 90
ffor certes I am al Venerien
In feelynge, and myn herte is Marcien.
Venus me yaf my lust, my likerous-
nesse,†)
And Mars yaf me my sturdy hardy-
nesse.
Myn ascendent was Taur, and Mars 95
ther-inne.
Allas, allas! þat euere louē was synnel
I folwed ay myn inclinacioun
By vertu of my constellacioun,
That made me I koude noght withdrawe 00
My chambre of Venus from a good
felawe.
Yet haue I Martes mark vp-on my face,
And also in another priuee place.
ffor God so wys be my sauacioun,
I ne loued neuere by no discrecioun,
But euere folwede myn appetit; 05
Al were he short, or long, or blak, or
whit,
I took no keep[e], so that he liked me,
How poore he was, né eek of what
degree.
¶ What sholde I seye? but, at the
monthes ende,
This ioly clerk Iankyn, þat was so 10
hende,
Hath wedded me with greet solempny-
tee,
And to hym yaf I al the lond and
fee

6157—66. f. He.C. (bafür Se.), P. (Ro.¹), L. (Ii) H.⁴ 57. [hym: zu freichen?]; hadde f. G. 62. 7e shuln D.Se.Ro.¹ Ii. 65. But E.G., But as D., etc. (Sk.). 66. f. Ii; [of] E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 67. shal I He.G.P., I shuld D. 69. on] a He. 72. kercheue D.P.L.H.⁴ 78. helpe D.P.L. 82. a E.D., f. He., etc. 86. seint: alle Hj. [vgl. 120, etc.; oder prentè?]. 87—94 f. H.⁴, 91—94 f. He.C.P.L. 87. helpe D.P.L. 90. myghte E.He., that m. G., etc. 6201—08. f. He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 04. ne E.G., f. D., etc. 05. folwede G.Ro.¹

[D 631—657]

[D 658—688]

That euere was me yeuen ther-bifoore,
But afterward repented me ful soore.
15 He nolde suffre nothyng of my list;
By God! he smoot me ones on the
lyst,
ffor þat I rente out of his book a leef,
That of the strook myn ere wax al
deef.

Stibourne I was as is a leonesse,
20 And of my tonge a verray iangleresse,
And walke I wolde, as I had doon
biforn,
ffrom hous to hous, al-thogh he had
it sworn;

ffor which he often tymes wolde preche;
And me of olde Romayn geestes teche,
25 How he, Symplicius Gallus, lefte his
wyf,

And hir(e) forsook for terme of al his
lyf,
Noght but for open-heuēded he hire
say

Lokyng out at his dore vpon a day.
¶ Another Romayn tolde he me by
name,

30 That, for his wyf was at a someres
game
With-oute[n] his wityng, he forsook
hir(e) eke.

And thanne wolde he vp-on his Bible
seke
That ilke prouerbe of Ecclesiaste,
Wher(e) he comandeth, and forbedeth
faste,

35 Man shal nat suffre his wyf go roule
aboute,

Thanne wolde he seye right thus, with-
outen doute:

¶ "Who-so that buyldeth his hous al
of salwes, [¶ Nota.

And priketh his blynde hors ouer the
falwes,

(¶) And suffreth his wyf to go seken
halwes,†)

Is worthy to been hanged on the 40
galwes."

But al for noght! I sette noght an hawe
Of his prouerbes, nof his olde lawe,
Ne I wolde nat of hym corrected be.
I hate hym that my vices telleth me,
And so doo mo, God woot, of vs 45
than I.

This made hym with me wood al
outrely;

I nolde noght forbere hym in no cas.
¶ Now wol I seye yow sooth, by seint
Thomas!

Why þat I rente out of his book a
leef,

ffor which he smoot me so, þat I was 50
deef.

¶ He hadde a book þat gladly, nyght
and day,

ffor his desport he wolde rede alway;
He cleped it 'Valerie and Theofraste,'
At whiche book he lough alwey ful
faste.

¶ And eek ther was som-tyme a clerk 55
at Rome,

A cardinal, that highte Seint Ierome,
That made a book agayn Iouinian,
In whiche book eek ther was Tertulan,
Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowys,
That was abbesse nat fer fro Parys; 60
And eek the Parables of Salomon,
Ouides 'Art,' and bookes many on;
And alle thise werē bounde[n] in o
volume.

And euery nyght and day was his
custume,

Whan he hadde leyser and vacacioun 65
From oother worldly occupacioun,
To reden on this book of wikked
wyues.

He knew of hem mo legendes and
lyues

Than been of goode wyues in the Bible.
ffor trusteth wel, it is an impossible 70

6216. on the lyst] with hyse fyst G.D.H.⁴ 18. wax E.H.⁴, wex He.G.D. (Sk., Gl.),
[eeren] woxen, etc. C.P.L. 25. [Randgl.] Valerius. libro 6^o. folio 19^o. E. 27. heded D.H.⁴
(Sk., Gl.), hede C.P.L., poynt (?) G. 29. Romayn: Sempronius Sophus. 30. Wipoute
C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 33: 3. Sir. XXV, 25. 42. lawe] sawe He.G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 43. Ny He.
54. whiche P.L. 58. whiche G.D.L. 59. Tortula G.D.H.⁴, Trocula C.P.L. 63. bounde
C.H.⁴ 67. on E.G.L., in He., etc.

[D 689-717]

[D 718-743]

That any clerk wol speke good of
wyues,
But if it be of hooly seintes lyues,
Né noon oother womman neuȝer the
mo.
Who peyntede the leon, telle me who?
75 By God! if wommen hadde writen
stories,
As clerkes han with-inne her(e) ora-
tories,
They wolde han write[n] of men moore
wikkednesse
Than al[l] the mark of Adam may
redresse.
The children of Mercurië and Venus
80 Been in hir wirkyng ful contrarius;
Mercurie loueth wysdam and science,
And Venus loueth ryot and dispence;
And for hir diuerse disposicioun
Ech fallēth in otheres exaltacioun.†)
85 And thus, God woot, Mercurie is de-
solat
In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltat;
And Venus falleth ther Mercurie is
reysed.
Therfore no womman of no clerk is
preysed.
The clerk, whan he is oold and may
nought do
90 Of Venus werkes worth his olde sho,
Thanne sit he doun, and writ in his
dottage
That womman kan nat kepe hir mariage.
But now to purpos why I tolde thee
That I was beten for a book, pardee!
95 Vp-on a nyght I ankyn, þat was oure
sire,
Redde on his book, as he sat by the
fire,
Of Eua first, that for hir wikkednesse
Was al mankynde broght to wrecched-
nesse,
ffor which that Ihesu Crist hym-self was
slayn,

That boghte vs with his herte blood 00
agayn.
Lo, heere expres of womman may ye
fynde,
That womman was the los of al man-
kynde.
¶ Tho redde he me how Sampson loste
hise heres;
Slepyng, his lemman kitte it with hir
sheres,
Thurgh which treson loste he bothe 05
hise [e]yēn.
¶ Tho redde he me, if that I shal nat
lyen,
Of Hercules and of his Dianyre,
That caused hym to sette hymself afyre.
¶ No-thing forgat he the sorwe and
the wo
That Socrates hadde with hise wyues 10
two;
How Xantippa castē pisse vp-on his
heed.
This sely man sat stille as he werē
deed;
He wipēd his heed, namoore dorste he
seyen
But "er þat thonder stynte, comth a
reyn."
¶ Of Phasiffa, that was the queene of 15
Crete,
ffor shrewednesse hym thoughtē the
tale swete—
ffy, spek[e] namoore!—it is a grisly
thyng
Of hir horrible lust and hir likyng!
¶ Of Clitermystra, for hir lecherye
That falsly made hir housbonde for 20
to dye,
He redde it with ful good deuocioun.
¶ He tolde me eek for what occasioun
Amphiorax at Thebes loste his lyf.
Myn housbonde hadde a legende of his
wyf
¶ Eriphilem, that for an ouche of gold 25

6273. Ne E., Nof He., Ne of G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 74. peyntede G.; telle D.P. (Fab. d. Aesop, ed. Caxton IV, 15) [Handgl.] Quis pinxit leonem E. 77. wrete (write) G.H.⁴ 84. failleth He.D.H.⁴ 87. [über is reysed] -i. in Virgine E. 6299-6301. f. He.G.C.P.L.H.⁴ 99. that Ihesu f. E., that f. Se., Lau. (für L.). 6303: vgl. 14798 ff. 04. it hem G.D. 09. sorwe E.He., care G.D.H.⁴, penance C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.); the wo G.D., wo E., etc. 11. Exantippa G.D.H.⁴, ancipa C.P.L. 15. phasippa G., Phasipha D., etc.

[D 744—770]

[D 771—797]

Hath priuely vn-to the Grekes told
Wher that hir housbonde hidde hym
in a place,
ffor which he hadde at Thebes sory
grace.

¶ Of Lyuia tolde he me and of Lucyë;
30 They bothe made hir housbondes for
to dye,
That oon for loue, that oother was for
hate.

Lyuia hir housbonde [vp-]on an euen
late,
Empoysoned hath, for þat she was his
fo.

Lucia, likerous, loued hir housbondë so,
35 That, for he sholde alwey vp-on hir(e)
thynke,

She yaf hym swich a manerë loue-
drynke,
That he was deed er it werë by the
morwe;

And thus algates housbondes han
sorwe.

¶ Thanne tolde he me how [þat] oon
Latumys

40 Compleyned vn-to his felawe Arrius
That in his gardyn growed swich a
tree,

On which, he seyde, how that hise
wyues thre

Hanged hem-self for herte despitus.

¶ 'O leue brother,' quod this Arrius,
45 'Yif me a plante of thilke blissed tree,
And in my gardyn planted it shal bee.'

¶ Of latter date of wyues hath he red
That somme han slayn hir housbondes
in hir bed,

And lete hir lecchour dighte hir(e) al
the nyght,

50 Whan that the corps lay in the floor
vp-right.

¶ And somme han dryue nayles in hir
brayn

Whil þat they slepte, and thus they
han hem slayn.

¶ Somme han hem yeue poyson in
hir drynke.

He spak moore harm than herte may
bithynke;

And ther-with-al he knew of mo pro- 55
uerbes

Than in this world ther growen gras or
herbes.

'Bet is,' quod he, 'thyn habitacioun
Be with a leoun or a foul dragoun,
Than with a womman vsynge for to
chyde.

Bet is,' quod he, 'hye in the roof 60
abyde

Than with an angry wyf down in the
hous;

They been so wikked and contrarious,
They haten that hir housbondes loueth,
ay.'

He seyde, 'A womman cast hir shame
away

Whan she cast of hir smok,' and 65
further-mo:

'A fair womman, but she be chaast also,
Is lyk a gold-ryng in a sowes nose.'†)
Who wolde leeuën, or who wolde sup-
pose

The wo that in myn herte was, and
pyne?

¶ And whan I saugh he wolde neuere 70
fyne

To reden on this cursed book al nyght,
Al sodeynly thre leues haue I plyght
Out of his book, right as he radde,
and eke

I with my fest so took hym on the
cheke,

That in oure fyr he fil bakward adoun. 75
And he vp-stirte as dooth a wood

leoun,
And with his fest he smoot me on the
heed,

That in the floor I lay as I werë deed.
And whan he saugh how stille þat

I lay,

6329 u. 32. Lyma: alle Gff. (Sk., Gl.). 32. vp-on E.D., on He., etc. (Sk.). 39. [þat] E.He., f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 41: vgl. Cic., De orat. II, 69. 278. 43. hertes He.D.C.P.L. 46. it shal E.L., shal it (he P.) He., etc. (Sk.). 50. Whan] Whil(s) G.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 51: vgl. 2007. 52. slepte E.G., sleepe He., etc. 57: 3. Sir. XXV, 16. 60: Spr. XXI, 9. 63. louyn (-en) G.D.P.H.⁴ (Gl.). 66: Spr. XI, 22 [vgl. 18233]. 68. leuee E., wene He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 74. fest E.C., fist He., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 6377 (fest E.He.C.)]; hym f. He.

[D 798—823]

[D824—850]

- 80 He was agast, and wolde han fled
his way,
Til atte laste out of my swogh I
breyde.
'O, hastow slayn me, false thief?' I
seyde,
'And for my land thus hastow mordred
me?
Er I be deed, yet wol I kisse thee.'
85 ¶ And neer he cam, and kneled faire
adoun,
And seyde, 'Deere suster Alisoun!
As helpē me God, I shal thee neuere
smyte!
That I haue doon, it is thy-self to
wyte.
fforyeue it me! and that I thee biseke.'
90 And yet eft-soonēs I hitte hym on
the cheke,
And seyde, 'Theef, thus muchel am
I wreke!
Now wol I dye—I may no lenger
speke.'
But atte laste, with muchel care and
wo,
We fille acorded by vs-seluen two:
95 He yaf me al the bridel in myn hond,
To han the gouernance of hous and
lond,
And of his tonge and of his hond also,
And made hym brenne his book anon
right tho.
And whan that I hadde geten vn-to
me
00 By maistrie al the soueraynetee,
And that he seyde, 'Myn owene trewe
wyf,
Do as thee lust to terme of al thy
lyf;
Keep(e) thyn honour, and keep(e) eek
myn estaat'—
After that day, we hadden neuēr
debaat.
05 God help(e) me so! I was to hym as
kynde

As any wyf from Denmark vn-to Ynde
And also trewe, and so was he to me
I preyē to God, that sit in magestee
So blesse his soule for his mercy deere
Now wol I seyē my tale, if ye wo
heere.

¶ *Bihold[e] the wordes bitwene the
Somonour and the frere.*)*

The frere lough whan he hadde herd
al this,

'Now, dame,' quod he, 'so haue I ioy
or blis!

This is a long preambel of a tale!
And whan the Somonour herde the
frere gale,

¶ 'Lo,' quod the Somonour, 'Gode
armes two!

A frere wol entremette him euere-mo
Lo, goode men, a flye and eek a frere
Wol falle in euery dyssh and eek
mateere!

What spekestow of preambulacioun
What, amble, or trotte, or *pace*, or go si
doun!

Thou lettest oure disport in this ma
nere.'

¶ 'Ye, woltow so, sirē Somonour?' quod
the frere.

'Now, by my feith, I shal, er that I go
Telle of a somonour swich a tale o
two,

That alle the folk shal laughen in
this place.'

¶ 'Now elles, frerē, I bishrewē thy
face,'

Quod this Somonour, 'and I bishrewē
me,

But if I telle tales two or thre
Of freres er I comē to Sidyngborne
That I shal makē thyn herte for to
morne;

ffor wel I woot thy pacience is gon.

¶ 'Oure hooste cride, 'Pees, and tha
anon!'

6380. his way E.He., a-way G., etc. 87. helpe G.D.P.L. 97. of f. E.He.P. [ober tongē?] 6402. to E., for G., in H.⁴, the He., etc. (Sk.). — *) Biholde, etc.: mir E.; Heere maketh the frere an interempcion (interpretacion) of the wyues tale D.H.⁴; Here (Thus) endeþ þe prologe of þe (gode) wif of Baþe C.P. — 13. preambel H.⁴, preamble E., etc. (Sk., Gl.) 18. eek D.C.P.L. (?), f. E., etc. (dysshē Gl.?). 20. pace] pees alle f. (Sk., Gl.). 26. I wol bishrewe He.

[D 851—877]

[D 878—904]

And seyde, 'Lat the womman telle hir tale!

Ye fare as folk that dronken were of ale.

Do, dame, telle forth youre tale, and that is best!

¶ 'Al redy, sire,' quod she, 'right as yow lest,

If I haue licence of this worthy frere.'

¶ 'Yis, dame,' quod he, 'telle forth, and I wol heere.'

¶ Heere endeth the Wyf of Bathe hir Prologe/

b) And bigynneth hir tale.

In tholde dayes of the kyng Arthour, Of which that Britons speken greet honour,

Al[l] was this land fulfilled of ffaierye. The Elf-queene with hir ioly compaignye

Daunced ful ofte in many a grene mede;

This was the olde opinion, as I rede—I speke of manye hundred yeres ago. But now kan no man se none elues mo

ffor [now] the grete charitee and the prayeres

Of lymytours and othere hooly freres, That serchen euery lond and euery stream

As thikke as motes in the sonne-beem, Bléssynge halles, chambres, kichenes, boures,

Citées, burghes, castels, hye toures, Thrópes, bernies, shipnes, dayeryes: This maketh that ther been no fayeryes. ffor ther as wont to walken was an elf, Ther walketh now the lymytour hymself,

In vndermeles and in morwenynges, And seyth his matyns and his hooly thynges

As he gooth in his lymytacioun.

Wómmen may go sauflý vp and down; 60 In euery bussh, or vnder euery tree, Ther is noon oother incubus but he, And he ne wol doon hem no dishonour.

¶ And so bifel it that this kyng Arthour Hadde in his hous a lusty bachelor, 65 That on a day cam ridynge fro ryuer, And happed that, allone as she was born,

He saugh a mayde walkynge hym biforn,

Of whiche mayde anon, maugree hir heed,

By verray force birafte hir mayden- 70 hed,

ffor which oppressioun was swich clamour

And swich pursute vn-to the kyng Arthour,

That dampned was this knyght for to be deed

By cours of lawe, and sholde han lost his heed

Paraurenture—swich was the statut tho,— 75 But that the queene and othere ladyes mo

So longe prayeden the kyng of grace, Til he his lyf hym graunted in the place,

And yaf hym to the queene al at hir wille,

To chese wheither she wolde hym saue 80 or spille.

¶ The queene thanketh the kyng with al hir myght,

And after this thus spak she to the knyght,

Whan þat she saugh hir tyme vp-on a day:

'Thou standest yet,' quod she, 'in swich array,

That of thy lyf yet hastow no surtee; 85 I graunte thee lyf, if thou kanst tellen me

6434. were E.G., ben He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). - 39. the f. E.G.D. 41. fayerie C. (fairye Gl.); bgl. 9618. 47. [now] f. C.L.; grete f. G.; þe prayeres G.C.L. 54. fayeries D.C.H.⁴ 60. go now safly D.C.P.L. (Gl.). 63. non G. (Gl.), but E., etc. (Sk.). 64. it f. E.He.G.D. 65. his f. E. 67. that E.He.D., f. G., etc.; she] he E.He.D. 70. he rafte He.C.P.L. (Sk.), by-rafte he G. 77. preyden E.He.P.L. 81. thanked He.G.L.H.⁴

[D 905—931]

[D 932—961]

What thyng is it that wommen moost
desiren?
Be war, and keep(e) thy nekke-boon
from iren!
And if thou kanst nat tellen it anon,
90 Yet shal I yeue thee leue for to gon
A twelf-month and a day, to seche and
leere
An answerē suffisant in this mateere;
And surētee wol I han, er þat thou
pace,
Thy body for to yelden in this place.
95 Wo was this knyght, and sorwefully
he siketh—
Bút he may nat do al as hym liketh,
And at the laste he chees hym for to
wende,
And come agayn, right at the yeres
ende,
With swich answerē as God wolde
hym purueye,
00 And taketh his leue, and wendeth forth
his weye.
¶ He seketh euery hous and euery
place
Where-as he hopeth for to fynde grace
To lerne what thyng wommen louen
moost.
But he ne koude arryuen in no coost
05 Wher-as he myghte fynde in this ma-
teere
Two creatures accordynge in feere.
¶ Somme seyde wommen louen best
richesse,
Somme seyde honour, somme seyde
iolynesse,
Somme riche array, somme seyden
lust abedde,
10 And ofte tyme to be wydwe and wedde.
¶ Somme seyde þat oure hertes been
moost esed
Whan that we been yflatered and
ypled.¶ He gooth ful ny the sothe, I wol
nat lye,

A man shal wynne vs best with flaterye,
And with attendance and with bisynesse
1 Been we ylymed bothe moore and lesse.
¶ And somme seyen that we louen best
ffor to be free, and do right as vs lest,
And that no man repreue vs of oure
vice,
But seye þat we be wise and no-thing 2
nyce.
ffor trewely, ther is noon of vs alle,
If any wight wol clawe vs on the galle,
That we *nyl* kike, for he seith vs sooth:
Assaye, and he shal fynde it þat so
dooth.
ffor be we neuēr so vicious with-inne, 2
We wol been holden wise and clene
of synne.
¶ And somme seyn that greet delit han
we
ffor to been holden stable and eke
secre, e,
And in o purpos stedfastly to dwelle,
And nat biwreye thyng that men vs 3
telle;
But that tale is nat worth a rake-stele!
Pardee, we wommen konne no-thing
hele:
Witnesse on Myda—wol ye heere the
tale?
¶ Ouyde, amonges othere thynges smale,
Seyde Myda hadde, vnder hise longe 3
heres,
Growynge vp-on his heed two asses
eres,
The whiche vice he hydde, as he best
myghte,
fful subtilly from euery mannes sighte,
That, saue his wyf, ther wiste of it
namo.
He loued hir(e) moost, and tristē hir(e) 4
also;
He preyde hir(e) that to no creature
She sholde tellen of his disfigure.
¶ She swoor him nay, for al this world
to wynne,

6489. it E.H.⁴, me He.G., it me D., etc. 90. shal E., wol He., etc. (Sk.). 96. But E.,
But ȝit G., But what He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 6511. herte is He.G.D.H.⁴, we be C.P.L.
17. sayen H.⁴ (Gl.), seyn E., etc.; how þat C.P.L. (Sk.). 23. wel E., nolde G.; kike
E.G.D., like He.H.⁴, loke C.P.L. 24. Assaie P.L. 37. which E.He.D. 40. triste E.L.,
trusted He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 41. preyed(e) He.G.D.H.⁴

[D 962—987]

[D 988—1014]

She nolde do that vileynye or synne,
 45 To make hir housbonde han so foul
 a name;
 She nolde nat telle it for hir owene
 shame.
 But natheles hire thoughte þat she
 dyde,
 That she so longe sholde a conseil
 hyde.
 Hire thoughte it swal so soore aboute
 hir herte,
 50 That nedely som word hir(e) moste
 asterte,
 And sith she dorste telle it to no man,
 Doun to a mareys faste by she ran;
 Til she cam[e] there, her herte was
 a-fyre,
 And, as a bitore bombleth in the myre,
 55 She leyde hir mouth vn-to the water
 doun:
 'Biwreye me nat, thou water, with thy
 soun,'
 Quod she, 'to thee I telle it and namo:
 Myn housbonde hath longe asses erys
 two!
 Now is myn herte al[l] hool, now is
 it oute!
 60 I myghte no longer kepe it, out of
 doute.'
 Heere may ye se, thogh we a tyme
 abyde,
 Yet out it moot—we kan no conseil
 hyde.
 The remenant of the tale if ye wol
 heere,
 Redeth Ouyde, and ther ye may it
 leere.
 65 This knyght, of which my tale is spe-
 cially,
 Whan that he saugh he myghte nat
 come therby—
 This is to seye: what wommen louen
 moost—,
 With-inne his brest ful sorweful was
 the goost.
 But hoom he gooth—he myghte nat
 soiourne.

The day was come þat homward moste 70
 he tourne,
 And in his way it happed hym to
 ryde,
 In al this care, vnder a fforest syde,
 Wher-as he saugh vp-on a daunce go
 Of ladyes foure-and-twenty, and yet
 mo;
 Toward the whiche daunce he drow 75
 ful yerne,
 In hope that som wysdom sholde he
 lerne.
 But certainly, er he cam[e] fully there,
 Vanysshed was this daunce—he nyste
 where.
 No creature saugh he that bar lyf,
 Saue on the grene he saugh sittynge 80
 a wyf—
 A fouler wight ther may no man
 deuyse.
 Agayn the knyght this olde wyf gan
 ryse,
 And seyde, 'Sire knyght, heer-forth
 ne lith no wey!
 Telle me what that ye seken, by youre
 fey!
 Peraenture it may the bettre be: 85
 Thise olde folk kan muchel thyng,'
 quod she.
 ¶ 'My leewe mooder,' quod this knyght,
 'certeyn
 I nam but deed, but if that I kan
 seyn
 What thyng it is that wommen moost
 desire;
 Koude ye me wisse, I wolde wel quite 90
 youre hire.'
 ¶ 'Plighte me thy trouthe heere in myn
 hand,' quod she:
 'The nexte thyng that I requere thee,
 Thou shalt it do, if it lye in thy
 myght,
 And I wol telle it yow er it be nyght.'
 ¶ 'Haue heer my trouthe,' quod the 95
 knyght, 'I grantel'
 ¶ 'Thanne,' quod she, 'I dar me wel
 auante

6551. nat telle He.D.H.⁴ 59. it is He.C.L. 64. Met. XI, 174 [hier ungenau]. 72. this E.He., his(e) G., etc. 75. the whiche He., þis G., þe C.P.L., þis ilke H.⁴ 84. telle G.D.C.P. [vgl. 7002]. 86. This He.C.L.

[D 1015—1041]

[D 1042—1069]

- Thy lyf is sauf, for I wol stonde
therby;
Vp-on my lyf, the queenē wol seye
as I!
Lat se which is the proudeste of hem
alle
00 That wereth on a couerchief or a
calle,
That dar seye nay of that I shal
thee techel
Lat vs go forth, with-outen lenger
speche.
Tho rownded she a pistel in his ere,
And bad hym to be glad, and hauē no
fere.
05 ¶ Whan they be comen to the court,
this knyght
Seyde he had holde his day as he
hadde hight,
And redy was his answerē, as he sayde.
fful many a noble wyf, and many a
mayde,
And many a wydwe, for þat they been
wise,
10 The queenē hir-self, sittynge as iustise,
Assembled been his answerē for to
heere,
And afterward this knyght was bode
appeere.
¶ To euery wight comanded was si-
lence,
And that the knyght sholdē telle in
audience
15 What thyng that worldly wommen
louen best.
This knyght ne stood nat stille as doth
a best,
But to his questioun anon answerde
With manly voys, that al the court
it herde:
¶ 'My lige lady, generally,' quod he,
20 'Wommen desiren hauē souereynetee
As wel ouer hir housbonde as hir loue,
And for to been in maistrie hym aboue.
This is youre mooste desir, thogh ye
me kille.

Dooth as yow list—I am at yourē wille!
¶ In al the court ne was ther wyf, ne 25
mayde,
Ne wydwe that contraried that he
sayde,
But seyden he was worthy han his lyf.
¶ And with that word vp stirte the
olde wyf,
Which that the knyght saugh sittynge
on the grene.
'Mercy!' quod she, 'my souereyn lady 30
queene,
Er that youre court departe, do me
right!
I taughte this answeere vn-to the knyght,
ffor which he plighte me his trouthe
there.
The firste thyng I woldē hym requere,
He wolde it do, if it lay in his myght. 35
Bifore the court thanne preye I thee,
sire knyght,'
Quod she, 'that thou me take vn-to thy
wyf,
ffor wel thou woost that I hauē kept
thy lyf.
If I seye fals, seye nay, vp-on thy fey!
¶ This knyght answerde, 'Allas and 40
weilawey!
I woot right wel that swich was my
biheste.
ffor Goddes loue, as chees a newe
requeste!
Taak al my good, and lat my body
go!
¶ 'Nay, thanne,' quod she, 'I shrewe
vs bothe two!
ffor though that I be foul, and oold, 45
and poore,
I nolde, for al the metal, ne for oore
That vnder erthe is graue, or lith aboue,
But if thy wyf I were and eek thy
loue!
¶ 'My loue?' quod he, 'nay, my damp-
nacioun!
'Allas! that any of my nacioun 50
Sholde euere so foule disparaged be!'

6600. kercheff D.C.P.L. [vgl. 6172]. 10. seluen C.L., self E., etc.; a iustise G.P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 20. haue E., to haue He., etc. (Sk.). 24. am at E., am al at G., am here at He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [youre vgl. 4457]. 28. the olde E.G., this o. D.L., that o. He., etc. 29. on] in E. [vgl. 6580]. 45. and oold C.P. (Sk., Gl.), and f. E., etc.

[D 1070—1095]

[D 1096—1124]

But al for noght—the ende is this, that
he

Constreyned was he nedes moste hir(e)
wedde,

And taketh his olde wyf, and gooth to
bedde.

55 ¶ Now wolden some men seye, parauen-
ture,

That for my negligence I do no cure
To tellen yow the ioye and al tharray
That at the feeste was that ilke day,
To whiche thyng shortly answer I
shal:

60 I seye ther nas no ioye ne feeste at al,
Ther nas but heuynesse and muche
sorwe.

ffor priuely he wedde[d] hir(e) on a
morwe,

And al day after hidde hym as an
owle,

So wo was hym—his wyf looked so
foule!

65 ¶ Greet was the wo the knyght hadde
in his thoght,

Whan he was with his wyf abedde
ybroght;

He walweth, and he turneth to and
fro.

His olde wyf lay smyllynge eueremo,
And seyde, 'O deerè housbonde, bene-
dicite!

70 ffareth euery knyght thus with his
wyf as ye?

Is this the lawe of kyng Arthures hous?
Is euery knyght of his so dangerous?
I am youre owene loue and youre
wyf,

I am she which þat saued hath youre
lyf,

75 And certes, yet ne dide I yow neuere
vnright.

Why fare ye thus with me this firste
nyght?

Ye faren lyk a man had lost his wit.

What is my gilt? ffor Goddes loue,
telle it,

And it shal been amended, if I may.'

¶ 'Amended?' quod this knyght, 'allas, 80
nay nay!

It wol nat been amended neuere mo!
Thou art so loothly, and so oold also,
And ther-to comen of so lough a
kynde,

That litel wonder is thogh I walwe
and wynde.

So wolde God myn herte wolde breste! 85

¶ 'Is this,' quod she, 'the cause of
youre vnreste?'

¶ 'Ye, certainly,' quod he, 'no wonder
is.'

¶ 'Now, sire,' quod she, 'I koude
amende al this,

If that me liste, er it werē dayes thre;
So wel ye myghte berē yow vn-to me. 90

But for ye speken of swich gentillesse
[¶ *De generositate*

As is descended out of old richesse,
That therfore sholden ye be gentil-men:
Swich arrogance nys nat worth an
hen.

Lookē, who that is moost vertuous 95
always,

Priue and apert, and moost entendeth
ay

To do the gentil dedes that he kan:
Tāak hym for the grettestē gentil-man.
Crist wol[e] we clayme of hym oure
gentillesse,

Nat of oure eldres for hir oldē ri- 00
chesse;

ffor though they yeue vs al hir heritage,
ffor which we clayme to been of heigh
parage,

Yet may they nat biquethe, for no-
thyng,

To noon of vs hir vertuous luyng,
That made hem gentil-men ycalled be, 05
And bad vs folwen hem in swich degree.

6652. thende E.He., þanne G. 59. whiche G.L. 62. wedde G., wede L. [f. t.Br., § 1708], wedded E., etc. (Sk., Gl.); on] in G.H.⁴; a f. He.L.; the G.D. 73. & eke D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 75. yet f. G.H.⁴; ne f. G.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 78. tel(le) me it G.H.⁴ (Sk.). 83. lowe He.G., etc. (Sk.). 91ff.: vgl. Chaucers *Ballade* 'Gentillesse' u. Boeth. III, pr. 6. 94. nys C.P., is E., etc. 96. Pryuee E.He., Preuy C., Priuey P.; vgl. 2460 u. 6718; pert H.⁴ 98. And take C.P.L. (Sk.); gentil man E. [päter; grettest gentil] gentileste He.; gretteste G.

[D 1125—1151]

[D 1152—1181]

- ¶ Wel kan the wise poete of fflorence,
That highte Dant, speken in this sent-
ence—
¶ Lo, in swich maner rym is Dantes
tale:
10 “fful selde vp riseth by his branches
smale
Prowesse of man; for God, of his
goodnesse,
Wol[e] that of hym we clayme oure
gentillesse.”
ffor of oure eldres may we no-thing
clayme
But temporel thyng, þat man may
hurte and mayme.
15 ¶ Eek euery wight woot this as wel
as I,
If gentillesse were planted naturelly.
Vn-to a certeyn lynage down the
lyne,
Pryue and apert, thanne wolde they
neuere fyne
To doon of gentillesse the faire office;
20 They myghte do no vileynye or vice.
¶ Taak fyr, and ber it in the derkeste
hous
Bitwix this and the mount of Kauka-
sous,
And lat men shette the dores, and go
thenne,
Yet wol[e] the fyr as faire lye and
brenne
25 As twenty thousand men myghte it
biholde;
His office naturel ay wol it holde,
Vp peril of my lyf, til that it dye.
¶ Heere may ye se wel how þat gente-
rye [¶ *exemplum*
Is nat annexed to possessioun,
30 Sith folk ne doon hir operacioun
Alwey, as dooth the fyr, lo, in his
kynde;
ffor, God it woot, men may wel often
fynde
A lordes sonȝ do shame and vileynye;

And he þat wol[e] han pris of his gen-
trye,
ffor he was boren of a gentil hous, 35
And hadde hise eldres noble and ver-
tuous,
And nyl hym-seluen do no gentil dedis,
Ne folwe[n] his gentil auncestre þat
deed is:
He nys nat gentil, be he duc or erl;
ffor vileyns synful dedes make a cherl. 40
ffor gentillesse nys but renomee
Of thyne auncestres for hir heigh
bountee,
Which is a strange thyng to thy per-
sone.
Thy gentillesse cometh fro God allone;
Thanne comth oure verray gentillesse 45
of grace,
It was no-thing biquethe vs with oure
plane.
¶ Thinketh hou noble, as seith Valerius,
Was thilke Tullius Hostilius,
That out of pouerte roos to heigh
noblesse!
Redeth Senek, and redeth eek Boece, 50
Ther shul ye seen expres þat *it* no
drede is,
That he is gentil that dooth gentil
dedis.
And therfore, leue housbonde, I thus
conclude:
Al were it that myne auncestres were[n]
rude,
Yet may the hye God, and so hope I, 55
Grante me grace to lyuen vertuously.
Thanne am I gentil whan that I bi-
gynne
To lyuen vertuously, and weyue synne.
AND ther-as ye of pouerte me re-
preeue, [¶ *De paupertate*
The hye God, on whom þat we bileue, 60
In wilful pouerte chees to lyue his lyf,
And certes, euery man, mayden, or wyf
May vnderstonde that Ihesus, heuene
kyng,

6708; Dante, *Purgatorio* VII, 121—23.11. goodnesse E.D., prowesse He., etc. 16. naturelly E. 18. and] nor E.G.(Gl.), ne H.⁴ (Sk.). 35. boren C.H.⁴, bore G., born E., etc. 37. nel E. 38. folwen E.He. (Gl.). 47: Val. Maximus, l. c. III, 4 (l. Anth.). 50. Reed E. 51. it C.P.L. (Sk.), f. E., etc. [l. ther?]. 53. thus f. H.⁴ 54. weren E.He.D. (Gl.).

[D 1182—1209]

[D 1210—1237]

Ne wolde nat chesen vicious lyuyng.
 65 Glad pouerte is an honeste thyng, cer-
 teyn;†)
 This wol[e] Senec and othere clerkes
 seyn.
 Who-so þat halt hym payd of his
 pouerte,
 I holde hym riche, al hadde he nat a
 sherte.†)
 He þat coueiteth is a pouere wight,
 70 ffor he wolde han that is nat in his
 myght.
 But he þat noght hath, ne coueiteth
 haue,
 Is riche, al-though ye holde hym but
 a knaue.
 ¶ Verray pouerte, it syngeth proprely;
 Iuuenal seith of pouerte myrily:
 75 "The pouere man, whan he goth by
 the weye,†)
 Bifore the theues he may synge and
 pleye."
 Pouerte is hateful good and, as I
 gesse,†)
 A ful greet brynger(e) out of bisynesse,
 A greet amender(e) eek of sapience
 80 To hym that taketh it in pacience.
 Pouerte is this, al-though it seme
 alenge,
 Possessioun. that no wight wol cha-
 lange.
 Pouerte ful ofte, whan a man is
 lowe,
 Maketh his God and eek hym-self to
 knowe.†)
 85 Pouerte a spectacle is, as thynketh
 me,
 Thurgh which he may hise verray
 freendes see;
 And therfore, sire, syn þat I noght
 yow greue,
 Of my pouerte namoore ye me repreue.
 NOW, sire, of elde ye repreue me,
 [¶ *De senectute*
 90 And certes, sire, thogh noon auctoritee
 Were in no book, ye gentils of honour

Seyn þat men sholde an oold wight
 doon fauour,
 And clepe hym fader, for youre gen-
 tillesse,
 And auctours shal I fynden, as I
 gesse.
 NOW ther ye seye þat I am foul and 95
 old, [¶ *De turpitudine*
 Than drede you noght to been a coke-
 wold;
 ffor filthe and eeldē—al-so moote I
 thee!
 Been grete wardeyns vp-on chastitee.
 But nathelees, syn I knowe youre
 delit,
 I shal fulfillē youre worldly appetit. 100
 ¶ 'Chees now,' quod she, 'oon of thise
 thynges tweye:
 To han me foul and old til that I
 deye,
 And be to yow a trewe humble wyf,
 And neuere yow displese in al my
 lyf;
 Or elles ye wol han me yong and fair, 105
 And take youre auenture of the repair
 That shal be to youre hous by cause
 of me,
 Or in som oother place, may wel be:
 Now chees your-seluen wheither þat
 yow liketh.'
 ¶ This knyght auyseth hym, and sore 110
 siketh;
 But atte laste he seyde in this manere:
 'My lady and my loue, and wyf so
 deere,
 I putte me in youre wise gouernance.
 Cheseth youre-self which may be moost
 plesance
 And moost honour to yow and me 115
 also.
 I do no fors the wheither of the two;
 ffor as yow liketh, it suffiseth me.'
 ¶ 'Thanne haue I gete of yow maistriē,'
 quod she,
 'Syn I may chese and gouerne as me
 lest?'

6764. chese a vicious He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); Seneca: Epist. II, 4. 72. ye E.D.H.⁴, we He., men G., etc. 73. it syngeth E.G. [vgl. Glasse: 'Cantabit', etc.], is synne (signe) He., etc. 75: Iuuenal, Sat. X, 22. 81. elenge He.H.⁴ (Sk.). 87. zow not G.C.P.L.H.⁴ 6801. Chees He.C. (Sk.), Chese E., etc.; id. 6809. 13. put E. (Sk., Gl.).

[D 1238—1262]

[D 1263—1287]

20 ¶ 'Ye, certes, wyf,' quod he, 'I holde
it best.'

¶ 'Kysse me,' quod she, 'we be no lenger
wrothe,
ffor, by my trouthe, I wol be to yow
bothe;

This is to seyn: ye, bothe fair and
good.

I preyę to God þat I mootę steruen
wood,

25 But I to yow be al-so good and trewe
As euęę was wyf, syn þat the world
was newe,

And but I be tomorn as fair to seene
As any lady, emperice, or queene
That is bitwixę the Est and ekę the
West,

30 Dooth with my lyf and deth right as
yow lest.

Caste vp the curteyn!—looķę how that
it is!

¶ And whan the knyght saugh verrailly
al this,

That she so fair was, and so yong
ther-to,

ffor ioye he hente hir(e) in his armes
two,

35 His herte bathed in a bath of blisse.
A thousand tyme arewe he gan hir(e)
kisse,

And she obeyed hym in euery-thing
That myghte doon hym plesance or
likyng.

¶ And thus they lyue vn-to hir lyues
ende

40 In parfit ioye; and Ihesu Crist vs
sende

Housbondes meeke, yonge, fresshe a-
bedde,

And grace touerbyde hem þat we
wedde.

And eek I prayę Ihesu shorte hir
lyues

That nat wol be gouerned by hir wyues;

And olde and angry nygardęs of dis-
pence,

God sende hem soone verray pestilence!

¶ Heere endeth the Wyues tale of
Bathe.

8. The Freres Tale.

a) ¶ The prologe of the freres tale.

¶ His worthy lymytour, this noble frere,
He made alway a maner louryng chiere
Vpon the Somonour, but for honestee
No vileyns word as yet to hym spak
he.

But atte laste he seyde vn-to the wyf:
'Dame,' quod he, God yeuę yow right
good lyf!

Ye han heer touched—al-so mootę I
thee!

In scole-materę greet difficultee.

Ye han seyde muche thyng right wel,
I seye;

But, dame, heere as we ryde by the
weye,

Vs nedeth nat to speken but of game,
And lete auctoritees on Goddes name
To prechyng and to scoles of clergie!
And if it lyke to this compaignye,
I wol yow of a somonour telle a
game.

Pardee! ye may wel knowe by the
name,

That of a somonour may no good be
sayd—

I prayę þat noon of you be yuęle
apayd.

A somonour is a renner(e) vp and
doun

With mandementz for fornicacioun,
And is y-bet at euery townes ende.

¶ Oure hoost tho spak, 'A sire, ye
sholde be hende

And curteys, as a man of youre estaat!

6821. Kisse D.C.P.L. 27. tomorn E.He., to morwe G., etc. 30. Do He.D.C.L.
41. and fressh He., etc. (Sk.); frosche (freissche) G.C.L.H.⁴ 42. to ouerbyde G.D.H.⁴, to
ouerlede C.P.L. 43. prayę He.G.D., pray to C.P.L.(praie)H.⁴; to shorte Gl. (?).
6847—6904. H.² für G. 49. Somnour (Sompnour) He., etc. (Sk.); beßgl. 6863, 6865,
6872, etc. 58. on E.He., in H.⁴, a D., etc. 59. scoles H.⁴, scole E.He.D.(Gl.), scole
eek C. etc. (Sk.).

[D 1288—1316]

[D 1317—1343]

0 In compaignye we wol hauē no debaat;
Telleth youre tale, and lat the So-
monour be!

'Nay,' quod the Somonour, 'lat hym
seye to me

What-so hym list; whan it comth to
my lot,

By God! I shal hym quiten euery grot,
5 I shal hym tellen which a greet honour
It is to be a flaterynge lymytour,

[And of many another manere cryme,
Which nedeth nat rehercen for this
tyme,]

And his office I shal hym telle ywis.'

0 ¶ Oure hoost answerde, 'Pees, namoore
of this!'

And after this he seyde vn-to the frere:
'Telle forth youre tale, leeuē maister
deere!'

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the ffreres tale.

Whilom ther was dwellynge in my
contree

An erchedekene, a man of heigh
degree,

5 That boldely dide execucioun
In punysshynge of fornicacioun,

Of wicchecraft and eek of bawderye,
Of diffamacacioun and auowtrye,

0 Of chirche-reues and of testamenz,
Of contractes and [eek] of lak[ke] of

sacramentz,

Of vsure and of Symonye also.

But certes, lecchours dide he grettest
wo;

They sholde syngen if þat they were
hent,

And smale tytheres weren foule yshent;

5 If any person(e) wolde vp-on hem
pleyne,

Ther myghte asterte hym no pecunyal
payne.

ffor smale tithes and for smal offrynge
He made the peple pitously to synge;

ffor er the bisshop caughte hem with
his hook,

They weren in the erchedeknes book; 00
And thanne hadde he, thurgh his
iuridiccioun,

Power to doon on hem correccioun.
He hadde a somonour redy to his hond,

A slyer boye nas noon in Engeland.
ffor subtilly he hadde his espaille, 05
That taughte hym wher þat hym
myghte auaille.

He koude spare of lecchours oon or
two,

To techen hym to foure-and-twenty
mo.

ffor thogh this somonour wood were as
an hare,

To telle his harlotrye I wol nat spare; 10
ffor we been out of his correcioun.

They han of vs no iuridiccioun,
Ne neuere shullen, terme of alle hir
lyues.'

¶ 'Peter! so been the wommen of the
styues,'

Quod the Somonour, 'yput out of my 15
cure.'

¶ 'Pees, with myschance and with
mysaunture!'

Thus seyde oure hoost, 'and lat hym
telle his tale!

Now telleth forth, thogh þat the So-
monour gale,

Ne spareth nat, myn owene maister
deere!'

¶ 'This false theef, this somonour,' quod 20
the frere,

'Hadde alwey bawdes redy to his
hond,

As any hauk to lure in Engeland,
That tolde hym al the secree þat they

knewe;

ffor hir acqueyntance was nat come
of newe,

They weren hise approwours priuely. 25

6870. haue E.D.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 77/78. fügt H.⁴ [bezgl. Sk., Gl.] hinter 6890 ein, wo
biese Verse jedoch nicht besser passen [f. 6891 'Of vsure, etc.'] wie hier; vielleicht sind sie
überhaupt zu streichen. 82. leeuē E.He., my l. C.L.H.² (Gl.), myn owen D.P., my H.⁴
90. eek E.He., f. D., etc. 97. for (eek for C., eke P.L.) f. E.H.² 99. hym E.H.⁴
6904. nas E.He., was D., etc. 06. þat C.P. (Sk.), it D., f. E., etc. 09. was E. (Gl.). 13. alle
f. E.He. [ob. termē?]. 14. the f. E.G. 15. the E.G.D., this He., etc.; my E.He., oure G., etc.

[D 1344—1369]

He took hym-self a greet profit therby;
His maister knew nat alwey what he
wan.

With-uten mandement, a lewed man
He koude somne, on peyne of Cristes
curs,

30 And they were glade for to fille his
purs,

And make hym grete feestes atte nale.
And right as Iudas hadde purses smale,
And was a thief, right swich a thief
was he.

His maister hadde but half his duetee.

35 He was, if I shal yeuen hym his
laude,

A thief, and eek a somnour, and a
baude.

He hadde eek wenches at his retenue,
That, wheither þat sire Robert or sire
Hu[w]e,

Or Iakke, or Rauf, or who-so þat it
were

40 That lay by hem, they tolde it in his
ere.

¶ Thus was the wenche and he of oon
assent;

And he wolde fecche a feyned mande-
ment,

And somne hem to [the] chapitre bothe
two,

And pile the man, and letē the wenche
go.

45 ¶ Thanne wolde he seye, 'ffreend, I
shal for thy sake

Do striken thee out of oure lettres
blake;

Thee thar namoore as in this cas tra-
uaille—

I am thy freend, ther I thee my
auaille.'

Certeyn, he knew of briberyes mo

50 Than possible is to telle in yeres two;
ffor in this world nys dogge for the
bowe

[D 1370—1396]

That kan an hurt deer from an hool
yknowe

Bet than this somnour knew a sly
lecchour,

Or an auowtier, or a paramour;

And for that was the fruyt of al his 55
rente,

Therfore on it he sette al his entente.

¶ And so bifel that ones on a day

This somnour, euer waytyng on his
pray,

Rood for to somne an old wydwe, a
ribibe,

ffeynyng a cause, for he wolde brybe; 60

And happed that he saugh bfore hym
ryde

A gay yeman vnder a fforest-syde.

A bowe he bar, and arwes brighte and
kene;

He hadde vp-on a courtepy of grene,

An hat vp-on his heed with frenges 65
blake.

¶ 'Sir(e), quod this somnour, 'hayl and
wel atake!'

'Wel-come,' quod he, 'and eueri good
felawe!

Wher rydestow vnder this grene-wode
shawe?'

Seyde this yeman, 'wiltow fer to-day?'

¶ This somnour hym answerde, and 70
seyde, 'Nay,

Heere faste by,' quod he, 'is myn
entente

To ryden, for to reysen vp a rente

That longeth to my lordes duetee.'

¶ 'A'rtow thanne a bailly?' 'Ye,' quod
he.

He dorste nat for verray filthe and 75
shame

Seyþ þat he was a somonour, for the
name.

¶ 'Depardieux,' quod this yeman, 'deere
broother,

Thou art a bailly, and I am another.

6930. glade for to fille E.He., ful glad to f. G., Inly glad (for) to f. D.C.P., glad to f. L., glad to f. wel H.⁴ (Gl.). 43. the E.C.P. (Sk., Gl.), f. He., etc. 46. thee] hire E.He. (Sk.). 49. bryberies He.G.C., bribryes E., bryboures, etc. D., etc. 52. y-knowe H.⁴, knowe E.He.G.D., kowe C.P.L. 54. an E.He., on D., f. G., etc. 59. Rood (Wente G.) f. E.He.; old wijf a ribibe C.P.L., old wyf orrible D., wedewe an(d) old rybibe G.H.⁴ (Sk.). 61. And f. E.He. 68. Wher E.He., Wheþer G., Whider D., etc.; wode f. He.C.H.⁴ (Sk.).

[D 1397—1421]

[D 1422—1449]

I am vnknown as in this contree;
 80 Of thyn aqueyntance I wolde praye
 thee,
 And eek of bretherhede, if þat yow
 leste.
 I haue gold and siluer in my cheste;
 If that the happe to comen in oure
 shire,
 Al shal be thyn, right as thou wolt
 desire.
 85 ¶ 'Grantmercy,' quod this somonour,
 'by my feith!'
 Euerych in ootheres hand his trouthe
 leith,
 for to be sworne bretheren til they
 deye.
 In daliance they riden forth hir weye.
 ¶ This somonour, that was as ful of
 iangles
 90 As ful of venym been thise waryangles,
 And euere enqueryng vp-on euery-
 thyng,
 'Brother,' quod he, 'where is now youre
 dwellyng,
 Another day, if þat I sholde yow
 seche?'
 This yeman hym answerde in softe
 speche:
 95 ¶ 'Brother,' quod he, 'fer in the North
 contree,
 Wher-as I hope som-tyme I shal thee
 see;
 Er we departe, I shal thee so wel
 wisse,
 That of myn hous ne shaltow neuere
 mysse.'
 ¶ 'Now brother,' quod this somonour,
 'I yow preye,
 00 Teche me, whil þat we ryden by the
 weye,
 Syn þat ye been a baillif, as am I,
 Som subtiltee, and telle me feithfully
 In myn offiç how I may moost
 wynne?

And spareth nat for conscience ne
 synne,
 But, as my brother, telle me how do o
 ye?'
 ¶ 'Now, by my trouthe, brother deere,'
 seyde he,
 'As I shal tellen thee a feithful tale,
 My wages been ful streitè and ful
 smale.
 My lord is hard to me and daungerous,
 A'nd myn office is ful laborous,
 And therfore by extorcions I lyue.
 ffor sothe! I take al[l] that men wol
 me yue;
 Algate by sleightè, or by violence,
 ffor yeer to yeer I wynne al my dis-
 pence—
 I kan no better telle, feithfully.' 1
 ¶ 'Now certes,' quod this somonour,
 'so fare I.
 I spare nat to taken, God it woot,
 But if it be to heuy or to hoot,
 What I may gete in conseil priuely—
 No maner conscience of that haue I. 2
 Nere myn extorcoun, I myghte nat
 lyuen,
 Nor of swiche iapes wol I nat be
 shryuen;
 Stomak ne conscience ne knowe I noon,
 I shrewe thise shrifte-fadres euerych-
 oon!
 Wel be we met, by God and by seint 2
 Iame!
 But, leue brother, telle me thanne thy
 name,'
 Quod this somonour. In this meene
 while
 This yeman gan a litel for to smyle:
 ¶ 'Brother,' quod he, 'wiltow þat I
 thee telle?
 I am a feend—my dwellyng is in 3
 helle,
 And heere I ryde aboute my purchas-
 yng,

6983. thee happe E.H.⁴, thee happed He.D.C.P., ze happyn G., ze happed L.; to f. C.P.H.⁴ 87. sworne H.⁴, sworn E.He.D., swore G., etc. 88. hir weye] and pleye He.G.D.H.⁴ 89. that E.G., which þat He.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), wiþ þat C.P.L. 7002. telle G.D.C.P.; id. 05, 26; ähnl. 86 (telleþ C.P.), 7345, 7756 u. ð. 03. how E.He.G., how that D., etc. 08. and eke D.H.⁴ 10. I. laborious = D.C. (?) 22. Nor E., Ne He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), f. C.P.L. 23. ne knowe E.He.P., ne f. G., etc. 27. & in G. (Sk.), right in D.

[D 1450—1477]

[D 1478—1504]

- To witeȝ wher men wolde *yeue* me any-
thyng;
My purchas is theeffect of al my rente.
Lookę how thou rydest for the same
entente!
- 35 To wynne good, thou rekkest neuerę
how.
Right so fare I; for ryde I woldeȝ right
now
Vn-to the worldes ende for a preye.
¶ 'A!' quod this somonour, 'benędicitę!
what sey ye?
I wendeȝ ye were a yeman trewely.
- 40 Ye han a mannes shap as wel as I;
Han ye figure thanne determinat
In helle, ther ye been in youre estat?'
¶ 'Nay, certainly,' quod he, 'ther hauę
we noon;
But whan vs liketh, we kan take vs
oon,
- 45 Or elles makę yow seme we been shape
Som-tyme lyk a man, or lyk an ape,
Or lyk an angel kan I ryde or go.
It is no wonder thyng thogh it be so;
A lowsy iogelour kan deceyue thee,
- 50 And pardeel yet kan I mooreȝ craft
than he.'
¶ 'Why,' quod the somonour, 'rydeȝ ye
thanne or goon
In sondry shap, and nat alwey in oon?'
¶ 'ffor we,' quod he, 'wol vs swicheȝ
formes make
As moost able is oure preyes for to
take.'
- 55 ¶ 'What maketh yow to han al this
labour?'
¶ 'fful many a cause, leeue sirę so-
monour,'
Seyde this feend, 'but alle thyng hath
tyme.
The day is short, and it is passed
pryme,
And yet ne wan I no-thyng in this
day.

I wol entendeȝ to wynnen, if I may, 60
And nat entende *oure* wittes to declare.
ffor, brother myn, thy wit is al to bare
To vnderstonde, al-though I tolde hem
thee.

But for thou axest why labouren we:
ffor som-tyme we been Goddes instru- 65
mentz
And meenes to doon hise comande-
mentz,
Whan that hym list, vp-on his crea-
tures
In diuers art and in diuersę figures.
With-uten hym we hauę no myght,
certayn,
If that hym list to stonden ther-agayn; 70
And som-tyme, at oure prayere, han we
leue
Oonly the body, and nat the soule
greue—
Witnesse on Iob, whom that we diden
wo—
And som-tyme han we myght of bothe
two,
This is to seyn: of soule and body 75
eke;
And som-tyme be we suffred for to
seke
Vp-on a man, and doon his soule
vnreste,
And nat his *body*, and al is for the
beste.
Whan he withstandeth oure temp-
tacioun,
It is cause of his sauacioun, 80
Al be it that it was nat oure entente
He sholdeȝ be sauf, but þat we wolde
hym hente;
And som-tyme be we seruant vn-to
man,
As to the *erchebisshop* Seint Dunstan,
And to the Apostles seruant eek was I.' 85
¶ 'Yet telleȝ me,' quod the somonour,
'feithfully,

7032. wolde E.G.D., wol He., etc. (Gl.); me yeuen E.D. 36. I wolde E.H.⁴, wold I He., etc. (Sk.); right E., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 38. benediste G. 41. a figure He., etc. (Gl.). 51. the E.G., this He., etc. 53. forme C.P.L.H.⁴ 57. alle E.He.G. [thyng *Blur.*!], al D., etc.; a tyme H.⁴ 60. wynnen E., wynnyng He., etc. (Gl.). 61. oure] hir E.; wittes] þinges H.⁴ 68. art E.He.G., act(es) D., etc. 73: *Job* I, 12, etc. 73/74. f. G. 78. body] soule E. 80. a cause He.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), þe c. G.D. 84. erche f. E.

[D 1505—1533]

[D 1534—1558]

Make ye yow newe bodies thus alway
Of elementz? The feend answerde,
‘Nay,
Som-tyme we feyne, and som-tyme we
aryse
90 With dede bodies in ful sondry wyse,
And speke as renably, and faire, and
wel
As to the Phitonissa didē Samuēl;
And yet wol some men seye it was
nat he—
I do no fors of youre dyuynyte!

95 But o thyng warne I thee—I wol nat
iape:
Thou wolt algates wite how we been
shape.
Thou shalt herafterwardes, my brother
deere,
Come there thee nedeth nat of me to
leere,
ffor thou shalt by thyn owene ex-
perience
00 Konne in a chayer rede of this sen-
ence
Bet than Virgile, while he was on
lyue,
Or Dant also—Now lat vs ryde blyue;
ffor I wol[e] holde compaignye with
thee
Til it be so that thou forsake me.’

05 ¶ ‘Nay,’ quod this somonour, ‘that shal
nat bityde;
I am a yeman knowen is ful wyde.
My trouthe wol I holde as in this cas;
ffor though thou were the deuel Sa-
thanas,
My trouthe wol I holde to my brother,
10 As I am sworn, and ech of vs til
oother,
ffor to be trewe brother in this cas;
And bothe we goon abouten oure
purchas.
Taak thou thy part, what þat men
wol thee yiue,
And I shal myn, thus may we bothe
lyue;
15 And if þat any of vs hauē moore
than oother,

Lat hym be trewe, and parte with his
brother.’
¶ ‘I graunte,’ quod the deuel, ‘by my
fey!’
And with that word they ryden forth
hir wey.
And right at the entryng of the townes
ende,
To which this somonour shoop hym for 20
to wende,
They saugh a cart that charged was
with hey,
Which þat a carter(e) droof forth in
his wey.
Deep was the wey, for which the carte
stood.
The carter(e) smoot, and cryde, as he
were wood:
‘Hayt, Brok! hayt, Scot—what, spare 25
ye for the stones?
The feend,’ quod he, ‘yow fecche,
body and bones,
As ferforthly as euere were ye foled!
So muche wo as I hauē with yow
tholed!
The deuel haue al—bothe hors and
cart and hey!’
¶ This somonour seyde, ‘Heere shul 30
we haue a pley!’
And neer the feend he drough, as noght
ne were,
fful priuely, and rowned in his ere:
‘Herkne, my brother, herkne, by thy
feith!
Herestow nat how þat the carter(e)
seith?
Hente it anon, for he hath yeue it 35
thee,
Bothe hey and cart, and eek hise caples
thre.’
¶ ‘Nay,’ quod the deuel, ‘God woot,
neuer-a-deel!
It is nat his entente, truste thou me
weel!
Axe hym thy-self, if thou nat trowest
me,
Or elles stynte a while, and thou shalt 40
see!’

7093. som E.He.L. 97. here afterward G., etc. (Sk.). 7109. to] to thee He.D.H.⁴
(Sl. für G.). 24. The E.G., This He., etc. 30. shal E.L.H.⁴ 38. thou E.He., f. G., etc.

[D 1559—1582]

[D 1583—1608]

¶ This carter(e) taketh his hors vp-on
the croupe,
And they bigonne drawn and to-
stoupe.
'Heyt, now!' quod he 'ther Ihesu Crist
yow blesse,
And al his handwerk, bothe moore
and lesse!
45 That was wel twight, myn owene lyard
boy!
I praye to God sauē thee, and seinte
Loy!
Now is my cart out of the slow,
pardee!'
¶ 'Lo, brother,' quod the feend, 'what
tolde I thee?
Heere may ye se, myn owene deere
brother,
50 The carl spak o thyng, but he thoghte
another.
Lat vs go forth abouten oure viage!
Heere wynne I no-tyng vp-on cariage.'
¶ Whan that they coomen som-what
out of towne,
This somonour to his brother gan to
rowne:
55 'Brother,' quod he 'heere woneth an old
rebekke,
That hadde almoost as lief to lese hir
nekke
As for to yeue a peny of hir good.
I wol[e] han .XIJ. pens though þat she
be wood,
Or I wol sompne hir(e) vn-to oure
office,
60 And yet, God woot, of hir(e) knowe I
no vice.
But for thou kanst nat, as in this
cintree,
Wynne thy cost, taak heer ensample
of me.'
¶ This somonour clappeth at the wyd-
wes gate:
'Com out,' quod he, 'thou olde viry-
trate!

I trowe thou hast som frere or preest 65
with thee.'
¶ 'Who clappeth,' seyde this wyf, 'bene-
dicitee!
God sauē you, sire—what is youre
sweete wille?'
¶ 'I haue,' quod he, 'of somonce a
bille.
Vp [on] peyne of cursyng, looke þat
thou be
Tomorn bifore the erchedeknes knee, 70
Tanswere to the court of certeyn
thynges.'
¶ 'Now, lord,' quod she, 'Crist Ihesu,
kyng of kynges,
So wisly help(e) me as I ne may!
I haue been syk, and that ful many a
day;
I may nat go so fer,' quod she, 'ne 75
ryde
But I be deed, so priketh it in my
syde.
May I nat axe a libel, sir(e) somonour,
And answerē there by my procutour
To swich thyng as men wole opposen
me?'
¶ 'Yis,' quod this somonour, 'paye 80
anon—lat se—
Twelf pens to me, and I wol the
acquite.
I shal no profit han ther-by but lite;
My maister hath the profit, and nat I.
Com of, and lat me ryden hastily—
Yif me .XIJ. pens—I may no lenger 85
tarye!
¶ 'Twelf pens?' quod she, 'now, lady
Seinte Marie
So wisly helpe me [God] out of care
and synne!
This wyde world thogh þat I sholde
wynne,
Nē haue I nat .XIJ. pens with-inne myn
hoold!
Ye knowen wel that I am poure and 90
oold:

7141. taketh E.He., takketh D., thakkyth G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), þakketh C.P., þakkes L. [vgl. 6374];
vp-on He.G.H.⁴, on E., etc. 46. to E.D., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); seinte C.L. [vgl. 120].
50. o thyng] oon E. 58. twelue G.D.C.L. (twelf Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 7181, etc.]. 68. of somonce
(somounnys) E.He.G., of somouns here D. (Sk.), a somonur (somons) of þe here C.L.;
to somne þe here P., a somonaunce (Gl.) of H.⁴ 69. Vp-on E. 70. To morwe G., etc.
78. procuratour D.P.H.⁴ (Gl.). 80. paye D.L.; 95 D. 87. [god] E.He.

[D 1609—1632]

[D 1633—1658]

Kithe youre almesse on me, poure
wrecchel'
¶ 'Nay, thanne,' quod he, 'the foule
feend me fecche
If I thexcuse, though thou shul be
spilt!
¶ 'Allas!' quod she, God woot, I haue
no gilt!
95 ¶ 'Paye me,' quod he, 'or by the sweete
seinte Anne!
As I wol bere away thy newe panne
ffor dette which that thou owest me
of old,
Whan þat thou madest thyn hous-
bonde cokewold,
I payde at hoom for thy correccioun.'
00 ¶ 'Thou lixt,' quod she, 'by my sa-
uacioun!
Ne was I neuere er now, wydwe ne
wyf,
Somoned vn-to youre court in al my
lyf,
Ne neuere I nas but of my body
trewe!
Vn-to the deuel blak and rough of
hewe
05 Yeue I thy body and my panne also!'
¶ And whan the deuel herde hir(e)
cursen so
Vp-on hir knees, he seyde in this
manere:
'Now, Mabely, myn owene moder
deere,
Is this youre wyl in earnest þat ye
seye?'
10 ¶ 'The deuel,' quod she, 'so fecche
hym er he deye,
And panne and al, but he wol hym
repente!
¶ 'Nay, olde stot, that is nat myn
entente,
Quod this somonour, 'for to repente
me
ffor any-thing that I haue had of
thee;

I wolde I hadde thy smok and euery 15
clooth!
¶ 'Now, brother,' quod the deuel, 'be
nat wrooth!
Thy body and this panne been myne
by right.
Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-
nyght,
Where thou shalt knowen of oure
priuete
Moore than a maister of dyuynyte!' 20
And with that word this foule feend
hym hente—
Bódy—and soule he with the deuel
wente
Wher-as that somonours han hir herit-
age.
And God, þat *maked* after his ymage
Mankynde, saue and gyde vs alle and 25
some,
And leue thise somonours goode men
bicome!
Lordynges, I koude han toold yow,'
quod this frere,
Hadde I had leyser for this Somnour
heere,
After the text of Crist, *and* Poul, and
Iohn,
And of oure othere doctours many oon, 30
Swiche peynes, that youre herte
myghte agryse,
Al be it so no tonge may [it] deuyse—
Though þat I myghte a thousand
wynter telle—
The peynes of thilke cursed hous of
helle.
But, for to kepe vs fro that cursed 35
place,
Waketh and preyeth Ihesu for his
grace
So kepe vs fro the temptour Sathanas!
Herketh this word, beth war as in this
cas:
The leoun sit in his awayt alway
To sle the innocent, if that he may. 40

7193. schuldist G.D.L., scholde C.P., schalt H.⁴ 97. that E., f. He., etc. 7210. so
f. C.P.L.H.⁴ 13—46. Sl. für G. 24. *maked* H.⁴, *made* E., etc. [vgl. 526; ob. *madè*?].
26. this somponour good man D.C.P.L.Sl.H.⁴ (Sk.); *bicome* E.Sl., to b. He., etc. (Sk.).
29. and Poul Sk.; and f. E., etc.; Powel H.⁴ (Criste Gl.). 31. herte E.H.⁴L., hertes
He., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 7241]. 32. [it] E.He.D. 38. herkeneth D., etc. (herken Sl.).

[D 1659—1681]

[D 1682—1709]

Disposeth ay youre hertes to with-
stonde

The feend, þat yow wolde make thral
and bonde.

He may nat tempte yow ouer youre
myght,

ffor Crist wol be youre champion and
knyght.

45 And prayeth þat thise somonours hem
repente

Of hir mysdedes er þat the feend
hem hente!

¶ Heere endeth the ffreeres tale.

9. The Somonours Tale.

a) ¶ The prologe of the Somonours tale.

This Somonour in his styropes hye
stood;

Vp-on this frere his herte was so
wood,

That lyk an aspen leef he quook for
ire.

50 ¶ 'Lordynges,' quod he, 'but o thyng
I desire:

I yow biseke that of youre curteisye,
Syn ye han herd this false frere lye,
As suffreth me I may my tale telle!

This frere bosteth that he knoweth
helle,

55 And God it woot that it is litel wonder:
ffreres and feendes been but lyte a-
sonder;

ffor, pardee! ye han ofte tyme herd
telle

How that a frere *rauysshed* was to
helle

In spirit ones by a visioun;

60 And as an angel ladde hym vp and
down,

To shewen hym the peynes þat ther
were,

In al the place saugh he nat a frere;
Of oother folk he saugh ynowe in wo.

Vn-to this angel spak the frere tho:

¶ 'Now, sire,' quod he, 'han freres 65
swich a grace,

That noon of hem shal come to this
place?'

¶ 'Yis,' quod this angel, 'many^a mil-
lioun!'

And vn-to Sathanas he ladde hym
doun—

'And now hath Sathanas,' seith he,
'a tayl

Brodder than of a carryk is the sayl. 70

Hold vp, thy tayl, thou Sathanas!' quod he,

Shewe forth thyn ers, and lat the frere
se

Wher(e) is the nest of freres in this
place.'

And er þat half a furlong wey of
space,

Right so as bees out swarmen from an 75
hyue,

Out of the deuēles ers ther gonne dryue

Twēty thousand freres in a route,

And thurgh-out helle swarmeden aboute,

And come[n] agayn as faste as they
may gon,

And in his ers they crepten euerychon. 80

He clapte his tayl agayn, and lay ful
stille.

This frere, whan he hadde looked al
his fille

Vpon the tormentz of this sory place,

His spirit God restored of his grace

Vn-to his body^again, and he awook; 85

But natheles, for fere yet he quook.

So was the deuēles ers ay in his mynde,

That is his heritage of verray kynde.

God sauē yow alle, sauē this cursed
frere!

My prologe wol I ende in this manere.' 90

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Somonour his tale.

LOrdynge, ther is in Yorkshire, as
I gesse,

7245. þis (oure H.⁴) somnour him C.P.L.Sl.H.⁴ 46. his . . . him (hem L.) deſgl.
7247—7328. H.⁴ für G. 58. vanysshed E. 59. by a visioun He.C. 75. from E.He., of
D., etc. 76. ther E.G., they D., etc. 77. in E., on He., etc. 78. swarme(d) al D., etc.
82. looke E.; looked hadde his f. He., etc. (Sk.).

[D 1710—1738]

- A mersshy contree, called Holdernesse,
In which ther wente a lymytour aboute,
To preche and eek to begge, it is no
doute.
- 95 And so bifel that on a day this frere
Hadde preched at a chirche in his
manere,
And specially, abouen euery-thing,
Excited he the peple in his prechyng
To trentals, and to yeue for Goddes
sake
- 00 Wher-with men myghte hooly houses
make,
Ther-as diuine seruyce is honoured,
Nat ther-as it is wasted and deuoured,
Ne ther it nedeth nat for to be yiuē,
As to possessioners that mowen lyue,
- 05 Thanked be God! in wele and habun-
daunce.
'Trentals,' seyde he, 'deliueren fro pe-
naunce
Hir freendes soules, as wel olde as
yonge,
Ye, whan þat they been hastily ysonge,
Nat for to holde a preest ioly and
gay—
- 10 He syngeth nat but o masse in a day.
Deliuereth out,' quod he, 'anon the
soules!
ffful hard it is with fleshhook or with
oules
To been yclawed, or to brenne or
bake.
Now spedē yow hastily, for Cristes
sake!'
- 15 And whan this frere had seyde al his
entente,
With "qui cum patre" forth his wey
he wente.
¶ Whan folk in chirche had yeue him
what hem leste,
He wente his wey—no lenger wolde he
reste.
With scrippe and tipped staf, ytukked
hye,
- 20 In euery hous he gan to poure and
prye,

[D 1739—1766]

And beggeth mele, and chese, or elles
corn.
His felawe hadde a staf tipped with
horn,
A peyre of tables al of yuory,
And a poyntel polysshed fetisly,
And wroot[e] the names alwey as he
stood,
Of alle folk that yaf hym any good,
Ascaunces that he wolde for hem preye.
'Yif vs a bussel whete, malt, or reye,
A goddes kechyl, or a tryp(e) of chese,
Or elles what yow lyst—we may nat
cheese;
A goddes halfpeny, or a masse peny,
Or yif vs of youre brawn, if ye haue
eny;
A dagon of youre blanket, leuee dame!
Oure suster deere, lo, heere I write
youre name!
Bacon or beef, or swich thyng as ye
fynde.'

¶ A sturdy harlot wente ay hem bi-
hynde,
That was hir hostes man, and bar a
sak,
And what men yaf hem, leyde it on
his bak.
And whan þat he was out at dore,
anon
He planed away the names euerichon
That he biforn had writen in his
tables—
He serued hem with nyfles and with
fables.'

¶ 'Nay, ther thou lixt, thou Somonour!'
quod the frere.
¶ 'Pees!' quod oure Hoost, 'for Cristes
mooder deere!
Telle forth thy tale, and spare it nat
at all'
¶ 'So thryue I,' quod this Somonour,
'so I shall—
¶ So longe he wente hous by hous,
til he
Cam til an hous ther he was wont
to be

7292. merssh E.He. 7306. deliueren E.D., deliuereth He., etc. 17. leste He.C., lest E., etc. (Gl.). 18. wente He.C.H., went E., etc. (Gl.). 25. wroote E.P.L. 27. prey E. (Gl.). 28. vs] hym E. 36. hem ay G.D.C.L., alway P., hem ... ay H.⁴

[D 1767—1793]

[D 1794—1821]

Refresshed moore than in an hundred
placis.

50 Syk lay the goode man whos þat the
place is;

Bedrede vp-on a couche lowe he lay.
'Deus hic!' quod he, 'o Thomas,
freend, good day!'

Seyde this frere curteisly and softe.
'Thomas,' quod he 'God yelde yow!
ful ofte

55 Haue I vp-on this bench faren ful
weel;

Heere haue I eten many^a myrie
meel.'

And fro the bench he droof away
the cat,

And leyde adoun his potente and his
hat,

And eek his scrippe, and sette hym
softe adoun.

60 His felawe was go walked in-to toun
fforth with his knaue, in-to that
hostelrye

Wher(e)-as he shoop hym thilke nyght
to lye.

¶ 'O deere maister,' quod this sike
man,

'How han ye fare sith þat March
bigan?

65 I saugh yow noght this fourtenyght or
moore.'

'Good woot,' quod he, 'laboured I
haue ful soore,

And specially for thy sauacioun
Haue I seyde many^a precious ori-

soun,

And for oure othere freendes—God
hem blesse!—

70 I haue to-day been at your(e) chirche
at messe,

And seyde a sermoun after my symple
wit,

Nat al after the text of hooly writ.
ffor it is hard to yow, as I suppose;

And therfore wol I techē yow al the
glose.

75 Glōsynge is a glorious thyng, certeyn,

ffor lettre sleeth, so as thise clerkes
seyn.

There haue I taught hem to be charit-
able,

And spende hir good ther it is reson-
able;

And there I saugh oure dame—a, where
is she?'

¶ 'Yond in the yerd I trowe þat she 80
be,'

Seyde this man, 'and she wol come
anon.'

¶ 'Ey, maister, wel-come be ye, by
seint Iohn!'

Seyde this wyf, 'how fare ye, hertely?'

¶ The frere ariseth vp ful curteisly,
And hir(e) embraceth in his armes 85
narwe,

And kiste hir(e) sweete, and chirteth
as a sparwe

With his lyppes. 'Dame,' quod he,
'right weel,

As he that is youre seruant euery-deel.
Thanked be God, þat yow yaf soule
and lyf!

Yet saugh I nat this day so fair a wyf 90
In al the chirche—God so saue me!'

¶ 'Ye, God amende defautes, sir(e),'
quod she,

'Algates wel-come be ye, by my fey!'

'Graunt mercy, dame, this haue I
founde alwey;

But of youre grete goodnesse, by youre 95
leue,

I wolde preyē yow þat ye nat yow
greue—

I wol[e] with Thomas speke a litel
throwe.

Thise curatz been ful negligēt and
slowe

To grope tendrely a conscience.

In shrift, in prechyng is my diligence, 00
And studieⁱⁿ Petres wordes and in
Poules:

I walke, and fisshe cristen mennes
soules,

To yelden Ihesu Crist his propre rente;

7350. whos þat H.⁴, þat of P., whos E., etc. 65. fourtenyght E.He. 66. haue I G., etc. (Sk.). 76. thise E., we He.D.P.H.⁴ (Sk. Gl.), f. C.L.; [Randg.] Litera occidit &cetera E. [Il. For. III, 6]. 86. chirteth E.He., chirkeith G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 7402: 2uf. V, 10.

[D 1822—1849]

[D 1850—1878]

To sprede his word is set al myn
entente.

05 ¶ 'Now, by youre leue, o deere sir(e),'
quod she,

'Chideth him wel, for seinte Trinitee!
He is as angry as a pissemeyre,
Though þat he haue al that he kan
desire;

Though I him wrye a-nyght, and make
hym warm,

10 And on hym leyē my leg outhur myn
arm,

He groneth lyk oure boor lith in oure
sty.

Oother desport ryght noon of hym
haue I—

I may nat plese hym in no maner
cas.'

¶ O Thomas! Ie vous dy, Thomas,
Thomas!

15 This maketh the feend—this moste ben
amended.

Ire is a thyng that hye God defended,
And ther-of wol I speke a word or
two.'

¶ 'Now, maister,' quod the wyf, 'er
þat I go,
What wol ye dyne? I wol go ther-
aboute.'

20 ¶ 'Now, dame,' quod he, 'Ie vous dy
sanz doute,

Haue I nat of a capoun but the
lyuere,

And of youre softe breed nat but a
shyuere,

And after that a rosted pigges heed—
But that I nolde no beest for me were
deed—

25 Thanne hadde I with yow hoonly
suffisaunce;

I am a man of litel sustenaunce.

My spirit hath his fostryng in the Bible,
The body is ay so redy and penyble
To wake, that my stomak is destroyed.

30 I preyē yow, dame, ye be nat anoyed,
Though I so freendly yow my conseil
shewe—

By God! I wolde nat telle it but a
fewe.'

¶ 'Now, sir(e),' quod she, 'but o word
er I go!

My child is deed with-inne thise wykes
two,

Soone after þat ye wente out of this
toun.'

¶ 'His deeth saugh I by reuelacioun,'
Séyth this frere, 'at hoom in oure
dortour.

I dar wel seyn that, er þat half an hour
After his deeth, I saugh hym born to
blisse

In myn avisioun, so God me wissel
So dide oure sexteyn and oure fer-
merer,

That han been trewe freres fifty yeer—
They may now—God be thanked of
his loone!—

Maken hir iubilée, and walke allone.
And vp I roos, and al oure couent
eke,

With many a teare triklyng on my
cheke;

Withouten noyse or claterynge of
belles,

"Te deum" was oure song, and no
thyng elles.

Sauē that Crist I seyde an orisoun,
Thankyng hym of his reuelacioun.
ffor, sir(e) and dame, trusteth me
right weel,

Oure orisons been wel moore effectueel,
And moore we seen of Cristes secree
thynges

Than burel folk, al-though they weren
kynges.

We lyue in pouerte and in abstinence,
And burell folk in richesse and des-
pence

Of mete and drynke, and in hir foul
delit.

We han this worldes lust al in despit.
Lazar and diues lyuēden diuersly,
And diuersē gerdoun hadden they ther-
by.

[D 1879—1902]

[D 1903—1932]

Who-so wol preye, he moot faste and
 be clene,
 And fatte his soule, and make his
 body lene.†)
 We fare as seith thapostle: clooth and
 foode
 Suffisen vs, though they be nat ful
 goode.
 65 The clennesses and the fastynge of vs
 freres
 Maketh þat Crist accepteth oure
 preyeres.
 ¶ Lo, Moyses fourty dayes and fourty
 nyght [¶ *de orationibus &*
Ieiunijs
 ffasted, er þat the heighe God of
 myght
 Spak with-hym in the mountayne of
 Synay;
 70 With empty wombe, fastynge many a
 day,
 Receyued he the lawe that was writen
 With Goddes fynger, and Elye—wel
 ye witen—
 In mount Oreb, er he hadde any speche
 With hye God, that is oure lyues leche,
 75 He fasted longe, and was in contem-
 plaunce.
 ¶ Aaron, that hadde the temple in
 gouernaunce,
 And eek the othere preestes euerich-
 on,
 In-to the temple whan they sholde
 gon
 To preye for the peple, and do seruyse,
 80 They nolden drynken, in no maner
 wyse,
 No drynke which þat myghte hem
 dronke make,
 But there in abstinence preye and
 wake,
 Lest that they deyden—taak heede
 what I seye!—
 But they be sobre that for the peple
 preye:

Ware that!—I seye namoore, for it suf- 85
 fiseth.
 Oure Lord Ihesu, as hooly writ deuyseth,
 Yaf vs ensample of fastynge and
 preyeres;
 Therfore we mendynantz, we sely
 freres,
 Been wedded to pouerte and contin-
 ence,
 To charite, humblesse, and abstinence, 90
 To persecucioun for rightwisnesse,
 To wepyng[e], misericordē, and clen-
 nesse.
 And therfore may ye se þat oure
 preyeres—
 I speke of vs, we mendynantz, we
 freres—
 Been to the hye God moore acceptable 95
 Than youres, with youre feestes at the
 table.
 ffro Paradys first—if I shal nat lye—
 Was man out-chaced for his glotonye,
 And chaast was man in Paradys, cer-
 teyn.
 ¶ But herkne, Thomas, what *that* I 00
 shal seyn!
 I ne hauē no text of it, as I suppose,
 But I shal fynde it in a maner glose,
 That specially oure sweete Lord Ihesus
 Spak this by freres, whan he seyde
 thus:
 ¶ “Blessed be they that pouere in spirit 05
 been,”
 And so forth al the gospel may ye
 seen,
 Wher it be likker oure professioun
 Or hirs that swymmen in possessioun.
 ffy on hir pompe and on hir glotonye,
 And for hir lewednesse I hem diffye! 10
 ¶ Me thynketh they been lyk Iouiny-
 an,
 ffat as a whale, and walkynge as a
 swan,
 Al vinolent as botel in the spence.
 Hir preyer(e) is of ful greet reuerence:

7463: I. Tim. VI, 8. 64. Suffiseth He., etc. 67: II. Mof. XXIV, 18. 69. mountayne He., mount E., etc. (Gl.). 72: I. Rön. XIX, 8. 76: III. Mof. X, 9. 77. the] that E.He.C.L. 85. Ware C.L. 89—94. H.² fñr G. 7500. herke(ne) now G.D.P. (Sk.), now h. H.⁴; what] that D. [vgl. 7783, etc.]; you sayn C., þe s. H.⁴ (Gl.). 05: Matth. V, 3. 06. al] in He.H.⁴ 08. heres D.H.⁴, hire He.G., her P.L., hem C. 09. and hir E.He. [I. pompē?].

[D 1933—1959]

[D 1960—1987]

- 15 Whan they for soules seye the psalm
of Daut,
Lo! "buf" they seye, "cor meum
eructauit!"
Who folweth Cristes gospel and his
foore,
But we þat humble been and chaast,
and poore,
Werkeris of Goddes word, not au-
ditours?
- 20 Therefore, right as an hauk vp at a
sours
Vp-springeth in-to their, right so
prayeres
Of charitable and chaste bisy freres
Maken hir sours to Goddes eres two.
Thomas, Thomas! so moote I ryde
or go,
- 25 And by that lord þat clepid is seint
Yue!
Nere thou oure brother, sholdestou
nat thryue!
In oure chapitre praye we day and
nyght
To Crist þat he thee sende heele and
myght
Thy body for to weelden hastily.'
- 30 ¶ 'God woot,' quod he, 'no-thing ther-of
feele I!
As helpe me Crist, as in a fewe yeres
I han spent vp-on diuerse manere freres
fful many a pound, yet fare I neuer
the bet.
Certeyn, my good I haue almoost
biset—
- 35 ffarwel, my gold!—for it is al ago.'
¶ The frere answerde, 'O Thomas,
dostow so?
- What nedeth yow diuerse freres seche?
What nedeth hym þat hath a parfit
leche
To sechen othere leches in the toun?
- 40 Youre inconstance is youre confusioun.
Holde ye thanne me, or elles oure
couent,

To praye for yow been insufficient?
Thomas, that iape nys nat worth a
mytel!
Youre maladye is for we han to lyte.
Al yif that couent half a quarter
otes!
Al yif that couent XXIIIJ. grotes!
Al yif that frere a peny, and lat hym
go!
Nay, nay Thomas, it may no-thing be
so.
What is a ferthyng worth parted in
twelue?
Lo! ech thyng that is oned in it-selue†) 5
Is moore strong than whan it is to-
scattered.
Thomas, of me thou shalt nat been
yflatered!
Thou woldest han oure labour al for
nought.
The hye God, that al this world hath
wroght,
Seith that the werkman worthy is his
hyre.†) 5
Thomas, nought of youre tresor I de-
sire
As for my-self, but that al oure couent
To preye for yow is ay so diligent,
And for to buylden Cristes owene
chirche.
Thomas, if ye wol lernen for to wirche 6
Of buyldynge vp of churches, may
ye fynde,
If it be good, in Thomas lyf of Inde.
Ye lye heere ful of anger and of ire,
With which the deuel set youre herte
afyre,
And chiden heere the sely innocent, 6
Youre wyf, that is so meke and pacient.
And therefore, Thomas, trowe me if thee
leste,
Ne stryue nat with thy wyf, as for
thy beste,
And ber this word away now, by
thy feith,

7516. buf] but E., boþ P., boef H.⁴ (Ps. XLV [Vulg.]). 18: 3af. I, 22. 21. þaer H.⁴, þe eyr(e) G., etc. 31. help E.He.H.⁴ 31/32. as I in fewe yeres Hauē spended He.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), as I haue in f. y. Spended P., as in f. y. haue I sp. C.L. 46. foure & twenty G.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), one or tuo C.L. 50. it E., hym He.; etc. (Sk.) [vgl. Boeth. III, pr. 11]. 55: 3uf. X, 7. 63. and f. E. 65. the E.He.D.H.⁴, this G., etc. (Sk.).

[D 1988—2014]

[D 2015—2039]

70 Touchynge this thyng, lo, what the wise
seith :

¶ “With-inne thyn hous ne be thou no
leoun;†)

To thy subgitz do noon oppressioun,
Ne make thyne aqueyntances nat [for]
to flee.”

And, Thomas, yet eft-soonēs I charge
thee :

75 Be war from hir(e) þat in thy bosom
slepeth,

[Be] war fro the serpent that so slily
crepeth

Vnder the gras, and styngeth subtilly!
Be war, my sone, and herkne patiently
That twenty thousand men han lost
hir lyues

80 ffor struyng with hir lemmans and
hir wyues!

Now sith ye han so hooly meke a
wyf,

What nedeth yow, Thomas, to maken
stryf?

Ther nys ywys no serpent so cruel,
Whan man tret on his tayl, ne half so
fel

85 As womman is, whan she hath caught
an ire,

Véngence is thanne al that they de-
sire.

Ire is a synne, oon of the grete of
seuene,

Abhomynable vn-to the God of heuene,
And to hym-self it is destruccion.

90 This euery lewed viker or person
Kan seye, how ire engendreth homy-
cide;

Ire is, in sooth, executour of pryde.
I koude of ire seye so muche sorwe,
May tale sholde laste til tomorwe.

95 And therfore preye I God, bothe day
and nyght,

An irous man, God sende hym litel
myght!

It is greet harm, and eke greet pitee,
To sette an irous man in heigh degree.

[¶ *De quodam potestate Ira-
cundo*

WHilom ther was an irous potestat,
As seith Senek, that duryngē his oon
estaat

Vp-on a day out ryden knyghtes two;
And as ffortune wolde that it were so,
That oon of hem cam hoom, that
oother noght.

Anon the knyght bifore the iuge is
brought,

That seyde thus: “Thou hast thy fe- 05
lawe slayn,

ffor which I deme thee to the deeth,
certayn!”

And to another knyght comanded he:
“Go lede hym to the deeth, I charge
theel!”

And happed, as they wente by the
weye

Toward the place ther he sholde deye, 10
The knyght cam which men wenden
had be deed.

Thanne thoughte they it was the beste
reed,

To lede hem bothe to the iuge agayn.
They seiden, “Lord the knyght ne hath
nat slayn

His felawe! heere he standeth hool 15
alyue!”

“Ye shul be deed,” quod he, “so moote
I thryue!

That is to seyn, bothe oon, and two,
and thre.”

And to the firste knyght right thus
spak he:

“I dampned thee, thou most algate be
deed.

And thou also most nedes lese thy 20
heed,

ffor thou art cause why thy felawe
deyth.”

7570. this E., swich He., etc.; wise E.G., w. man He., etc. 71: 3. Sir. IV, 30.
73. acqueyntaunce D.C.P.L., acqueyntis H.⁴ (Gl.); [for] f. G.D. (Sk.); nat to] fro be H.⁴
(Gl.). 75. for hire C.L.H.⁴, of yre P. (Gl.). 76. Be f. H.D.P.H.⁴ [Virg., Ecl. III, 93].
81. and so mecke C.L., and m. H.⁴ (Sk.). 84. What E. [vgl. 18693 ff.]. 86. H.⁴ [schiebt
hiernach zwei unechte Verse ein; besgl. nach 7594, 7611, 7630. 90. person E.D., parson
He., etc. 97. eek E.G., eke P., also H.⁴, certes He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 7600: De ira I, 16.
12. was E.G.P., were He., etc. 15. standeth E.G.L., stant He., etc.

[D 2040—2066]

[D 2067—2091]

And to the thridde knyght right thus
he seith:

“Thou hast nat doon that I comanded
thee.”

And thus he didę doon sleen hem
alle thre.

25 Irous Cambises was eek dronkelewe,
And ay delited hym to been a shrewe.
And so bifel a lord of his meynnee,
That loued vertuuous moralitee,
Seyde on a day bitwene hem two
right thus:

30 ¶ “A lord is lost if he be vicius,
And dronkenesse is eek a foul record
Of any man, and namely in a lord.
Ther is ful many^{an} [e]yē and many^{an}
ere

Awaytynge on a lord, and he noot
where.

35 ffor Goddes louę, drynk moore attem-
prely!

Wyn maketh man to lesen wrecchedly
His mynde and eek hise lymes euerich-
on.”

¶ “The reuers shaltou se,” quod he
anon,

“And preeue it by thyn owene ex-
perience,

40 That wyn ne dooth to folk no swich
offence.

Ther is no wyn bireueth me my myght
Of hand ne foot, ne of myne [e]yē
sight.”

And for despit he drank ful muchel
moore

An hondred part than he hadde bi-
foore.

45 And right anon this irous cursed
wrecche

Léet this knyghtes sonę bfore hym
fecche,

Comandyngę hym he sholdę bfore
hym stonde.

And sodeynly he took his bowe in
honde,

And vp the streng he pulled to his
ere,

And with an arwe he slow the child
right there.

“Now, wheiþer haue I a siker hand
or noon?”

Quod he, “is al my myght and mynde
agon?”

Hath wyn bireued me myne [e]yē
sight?”

¶ What sholde I telle thanswere of the
knyght?

His sonę was slayn—ther is namoorę
to seye.

Beth war therfore with lordes how ye
pleye!

Syngeth ‘Placebø,’ and I shal, if I
kan,

But if it be vn-to a poure man.

Tō a poure man men sholde hise vices
telle,

But nat tō a lord, thogh he sholdę go
to helle!

LO irous Cirus, thilke Percien,
How he destroyed the ryuer of Gysen,
ffor that an hors of his was dreynt
ther-inne,

Whan þat he wente Babiloignę to
wynne.

He made that the ryuer was so smal, 6
That women myghte wade it ouer-
al.

Lo, what seyde he that so wel teche
kan?

“Ne be no felawę to an irous man,
Ne with no wood man walke by the
weye,

Lest thee repente”—ther is namoorę
to seye.

NOW, Thomas, leeuē brother, lef thyn
ire!

Thou shalt me fynde as iust as is a
squire.

Hoold nat the deuęles knyf ay at
thyn herte!—

7625 ff. f. Seneca, De ira III, 14. 28. louede He.G. (Sk.). 29. bitwix He.G.D.P.H.*
(Sk.), vnto C.L. 37. eek f. E.G.P. [ob. hisę?]. 44. had(de) doon He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
46. bfore hym Leet this kn. sone He., This kn. s. let, etc. D. 51. wheiþer (wheþer):
þpt. wher [f. 1101, etc.]. 53. bireft E. 57. þpt. Placebø; vgl. 9396. 61 ff. f. Seneca l. c. III, 21.

[D 2092—2115]

[D 2116—2141]

Thyn angrē dooth thee al to soore
smerte,—

75 But shewe to me al thy confessioun.

¶ 'Nay,' quod the sike man, 'by Seint
Symoun!

I hauē be shryuē[n] this day at my
curat,

I haue hym toold hoolly al myn
estaat;

Nedeth namoore to speke[n] of it, seith
he,

80 But if me list of myn humylitee.

¶ 'Yif me thanne of thy gold to make
oure cloystre,'

Quod he, 'for many[^]a muscle and
many[^]an oystre,

Whan othere men han ben ful wel
at eyse,

Hath been oure foode, oure cloystre
for to reyse;

85 And yet, God woot, vnnethe the funde-
ment

Parfourned is, nè of oure pauement
Nys nat a tyle yet with[^]inne oure
wones—

By God, we owen fourty pound for
stones!

¶ Now help, Thomas, for hym that
harwed helle!

90 ffor elles moste we oure bookes selle;
And if ye lakke oure predicacioun,
Thanne goth the world al to destruc-
cioun.

ffor who-so wolde vs fro this world
bireue,

So God me saue,—Thomas, by youre
leue—

95 He wolde bireue out of this world
the sonne.

ffor who kan teche and werchen as we
konne?

And that is nat of litel tyme,' quod
he,

'But syn *Elie* was or *Elise*,

Han freres been—that fynde I of re-
cord—

In charitee, ythanked be oure Lord! 00
Now, Thomas, help for seinte charitee!

And doun anon he sette hym on his
knee.

THis sike man wax wel ny wood for
ire;

He wolde þat the frere had been on
fire

With his false dissymulacioun. 05

'Swich thyng as is in my possessioun,'
Quod he, 'that may I yeuen, and noon

oother.

Ye seye me thus, that I am youre
brother?

¶ 'Ye, certes,' quod the frere, trusteth
weel,

I took oure dame oure lettre and pure 10
seel.'

¶ 'Now wel,' quod he, 'and som-what
shal I yiue

Vn-to youre hoolly couent whil I lyue,
And in thyn hand thou shalt it haue

anon,
On this condicioun, and oother noon:

That thou departe it so, my leue 15
brother,

That euery frere haue also muche as
oother;

This shaltou swere on thy professioun,
With-outen fraude or cauillacioun.'

¶ 'I swere it,' quod this frere, 'by
my feith!'

And ther-with-al his hand in his he 20
leith—

'Lo, heer my feith! in me shal be
no lak.'

¶ 'Now thanne, putte in thyn hand
doun by my bak,'

Seyde this man, 'and grope wel bi-
hynde;

7677. shryue G.D.P.L. [vgl. 19313]. 79. spoken E.H.⁴ (Gl.). 87. tyl E.G. 90. ffor E.P., Or He., etc.; moste E.G.L., moote He., etc. 91. ye E., yow He.G.P.H.⁴, þou D., we C.L. 93. fro this world wolde vs He.G.D., wolde fro this w. vs C.P.L. 95. this] the He.C.P.L. 98. syn E., sith He.D.P., sithe þat G. (Sk., Gl.), sethyns C.L., sibben H.⁴; Elie] Ennok E. 7703. wax E., we(e)x He., etc. (Sk.). [vgl. 6218]. 04. afire He.G.C.P.D. 08. that E.C.L., how that He., etc. (Sk.). 10. and E., of D.P., vnder H.⁴, with He., etc. (Sk.). 15. leue E., deere He., etc. (Sk.). 16. also E.L., as He., etc. 19. by E.P., vp-on He., etc. (Sk.). 22. putte C., put E., etc.; in E., f. He., etc. (Sk.).

[D 2142—2166]

[D 2167—2189]

- Bynethe my buttok ther shaltow fynde
 25 A thyng that 'I haue hyd in pryuetee.'
 ¶ 'A!' thoghte this frere, 'this shal go
 with mel'
 And doun his hand he launcheth to
 the clifte,
 In hope for to fynde there a yifte.
 And whan this sike man felte this
 frere
 30 Aboute his tuwel grope there and
 heere,
 Amydde his hand he leet the frere a
 fart—
 Ther nys no capul drawynge in a cart
 That myghte haue lete a fart of swich
 a soun!
 ¶ The frere vp stirte as dooth a wood
 leoun:
 35 'A! false cherl!' quod he, 'for Goddes
 bones
 This hastow for despit doon for the
 nones!
 Thou shalt abyge this fart, if that I
 may!
 ¶ His meynne, whiche that herden this
 affray,
 Cam lepyng in, and chaced out the
 frere.
 40 And forth he gooth with a ful angry
 cheere,
 And fette his felawe ther-as lay his
 stoor.
 He looked as it were a wilde boor;
 He grynte with his teeth, so was he
 wrooth.
 A sturdy paas doun to the [lordes]
 court he gooth,
 45 Wher-as *ther* woned a man of greet
 honour,
 To whom that he was alwey confessor;
 This worthy man was lord of that
 village.
 This frere cam as he were in a rage,

Wher-as this lord sat etyng at his
 bord.
 Vnnethes myghte the frere speke a
 word,
 Til atte laste he seyde, 'God yow
 seel'
 ¶ This lord [bi]gan [to] looke, and seide,
 'Benedicitee!
 What? frere Iohn! what maner world
 is this!
 I trowe som maner thyng ther is
 amys;
 Ye looken as the wode were ful of
 theuys!
 Sit doun anon, and telle me what youre
 grief is,
 And it shal been amended, if [that]
 I may.'
 ¶ 'I haue,' quod he, 'had a despit
 this day,
 God yelde yow! adoun in youre village,
 That in this world is noon so poure
 a page,
 That he nolde haue abhomynacioun
 Of that I haue receyued in youre
 toun.
 A'nd yet greueth me no-tyng so
 soore,
 As that this olde cherl with lokkes
 hoore
 Blasphemed hath oure hooly couent
 eke!
 ¶ 'Now, maister,' quod this lord, 'I
 yow biseke...'
 ¶ 'No maister, *sire*,' quod he, 'but
 seruitour,
 Thogh I haue had in scole swich hon-
 our;
 God liketh nat that "Raby" men vs
 calle,
 Neither in market, ne in youre largé
 halle.'
 ¶ 'No fors,' quod he, 'but telle me
 al youre grief.

7726. this shal E., that sh. He., etc. 34. fals E.D.P.L. 38. which He.D.C.H.⁴, f. G.P.
 40. P. endet hier mit vier unechten Versen; dafür bis 7875 Ad. 42. it] he He.D.Ad.
 44. [lordes] E. [vgl. 7747]. 45. ther f. E. 50. Vnnethes E.C., Vnnethe He., etc. 52. bigan
 E.; [to] E.G. 54. I se wel that som thyng He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 57. [that] E.C.L.H.⁴
 58. this E.Ad., to He., etc. 60. is noon] ther nys He.D.Ad. 63. ne greueth He.D.Ad.H.⁴
 (Sk., Gl.). 67. sire f. E.C.L.Ad. 68. swich E.H.⁴, that He., etc. 69: Matth. XXIII, 8.

[D 2190—2211]

[D 2212—2236]

- ¶ 'Sire,' quod *this frere*, 'an odious
meschief
This day bityd is to myn ordre and
me,
And so per consequens to ech degree
75 Of hooly chirche—God amende it
soone!'
¶ 'Sir(e),' quod the lord, 'ye woot what
is to doone!
Distempre yow noght—ye be my con-
fessour,
Ye been the salt of the erthe and the
savour.
ffor Goddes loue, youre pacience ye
holde!
80 Telle me youre grief!' And he anon
hym tolde
As ye han herd biforn—ye woot wel
what.
¶ The lady of the hous al stille sat,
Til she had herd what *that* the frere
sayde.
'Ey, Goddes mooder!' quod she, 'blisful
mayde!
85 Is ther oght elles? telle me feith-
fully!'
¶ 'Madame,' quod he, 'how thynketh
yow her-by?'
¶ 'How that me thynketh?' quod she,
'So God me speede!
I seye a cherl[e] hath doon a cherles
dede.
What sholde I seye? God lat hym
neuere thee!
90 His siké heed is ful of vanytee—
I holde hym in a manere frenesye.'
¶ 'Madame,' quod he, 'by God, I shal
nat lye!
But I on hym *on* oother weyes be
wreke,

I shal disclaundre hym ouer-al ther
I speke.
This false blasphemour, that charged 95
me
To parte that wol nat departed be
To euery man yliche, with meschaunce!
¶ The lord sat stille as he were in a
traunce,
And in his herte he rolled vp and
doun:
'How hadde the cherl this ymagin- 00
acioun
To shewe swich a problemē to the
frere?
Neuere erst er now herd I of swich
mateere!
I trowe the deuēl putte it in his mynde.
I'n ars-metrik shal ther no man fynde,
Biforn this day, of swich a questioun: 05
Certes, it was a shrewed conclusioun
That euery man sholde haue yliche
his part
As of the soun or savour of a fart.
O vile proude cherl, I shrewe his
face!
Lo, sires,' quod the lord with harde 10
grace,
'Who euere herde of swich a thyng
er now?
To euery man ylike? Telle me how?
It is an impossible—it may nat be!
Ey, nyce cherl! God lete thee neuere
theel
The rumblynge of a fart and euery 15
soun
Nis but of eir reuerberacioun,
And euere it wasteth lite[l] and lite[l]
away.
Ther is no man kan demen, by my
fey,

7772. this frere] he E. 74. to] in E.D.Ad. (Gl.) [vgl. 9375]. 82. al E., ay He., etc. (Sk.). 83. that: nicht i. b. 85. all what Ad. (Sk.). 86. thynketh yow He.D. (Sk.), lykyth yow G., thynke ye E.Ad., þenke (pinke) yow C.L.H.⁴; her-by E.G.Ad., therby He., etc. 93. on hym oother weyes E., be any weyes Ad., on (in H.⁴) oother wise He., etc. (Gl.), on other weyes Sk.; be wreke E., may be w. (awreke C.L.Gl.) He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 94. sclaundre C.L., diffame He., etc. (Sk.); ther E.G., wher He., etc. 95. This E.G., The He., etc. 7800. the cherl E., this ch. He., etc. (Sk.); this E.G., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 94. metrike L. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 1898]. 96. Who sholde make a demonstracioun He., etc. (Sk.). 98. the E.G., a He., etc. (f. Ad.). 99. vile E., nyce He., etc. (Sk.). 11. herd euere E.G.C. (Gl.). 14. lete thee E., l. hym He., etc. (Sk.). 17. euere E.G.H.⁴, there He.D.Ad., þer-wip C.L.; lite and lite He.G.H.⁴ (Sk., and lyte L.). 18. nys He.D.H.⁴

[D 2237—2259]

[D 2260—2286]

If that it were departed equally.
 What! lo, my cherl! lo, yet how
 shrewedly
 Vn-to my confessour to-day he spak!
 I holde hym certeyn a demonyak.
 Now et[e] youre mete; and lat the
 cherl go pleye—
 Lat hym go honge hymself a deuel
 weyel'

¶ *The wordes of the lordes Squier and
 his keruere for departynge of the
 fart on twelue.*)*

- 25 NOW stood the lordes squier at the
 bord,
 That karf his mete, and herde, word
 by word,
 Of alle thynges whiche that I haue
 sayd.
 'My lord,' quod he, 'beth ye nat yuele
 apayd!
 ¶ I koude telle for a gowne-clooth
 30 To yow, sir(e) frere, so ye be nat
 wrooth,
 How that this fart sholde euene deled
 be
 Among youre couent, if it lyked me.
 ¶ 'Telle,' quod the lord, 'and thou
 shalt haue anon
 A gowne-clooth, by God and by Seint
 Iohn!'
 35 ¶ 'My lord,' quod he, 'whan þat the
 wed̃er is fair,
 With-outen wynd or perturbynge of
 air,
 Lat brynge a cartewheel in-to this halle,
 But looke that it haue his spokes
 alle—
 Twelue spokes hath a cartwheel co-
 munly—,
 40 And brynge me thanne XII. freres,
 woot ye why?
 For *thrittene* is a couent, as I gesse.

The confessour heere, for his worthy-
 nesse,
 Shal parfourne vp the nombre of his
 couent.
 Thanne shal they knele down by oon
 assent,
 And to euery spokes ende, in this
 manere,
 fful sadly leye his nose shal a frere.
 Your noble confessour ther—God him
 saue!—
 Shal holde his nose vpright vnder the
 naue.
 Thanne shal this cherl, with bely stif
 and toght
 As any labour, *hyder been* ybrought; 5
 And sette hym on the wheel right of
 this cart
 Vpon the naue, and make hym lete
 a fart,
 And ye shul seen, vp peril of my lyf,
 By preeue which that is demonstratif,
 That equally the soun of it wol wende, 5
 And eke the stynk, vn-to the spokes
 ende,
 Sauē þat this worthy man, youre con-
 fessour,
 By cause he is a man of greet honour,
 Shal haue the firste fruyt, as resoun is.
The noble vsage of freres yet is this, 6
 The worthy men of hem shul first be
 serued,
 And certainly, he hath it weel de-
 serued;
 He hath to-day taught vs so muche
 good
 With prechyng in the pulpit ther he
 stood,
 That I may vouches-sauf, I seye for me, 6
 He hadde the firste smel of fartes
 three,
 And so wolde al the couent hardily:
 He bereth hym so faire and hoolily.'

7822. certeyn a] certeynly He.G.H.⁴ — *) nur E. — 27. thyng He., etc.; whiche that E.H.⁴, of wh. He.D.C.L. (Sk.), whiche G.Ad.; yow sayd He.G.D.C.L. (Sk.). 28. ye f. E.C.L. 31. euene delt shal E.; ydeled He. (Gl.), ydelt L., departed H.⁴ 37. large whel H.⁴, carte whel G.D.L. (Gl.) [vgl. 2022], Cartwheel E., etc. (Sk.); c. w. heere He.G.D.Ad.C.L. (Sk.). 40. twelf He. (Sk., Gl.), twelve G.D. 41. twelue E. 42. The E.G., Your He., etc. 50. been hyder E.G. 60. As yet the noble vsage of freres is E., And as be n. v. zit of fr. is G. (yet f. H.⁴, it Ad.). 62. disserued E.He.C. (Gl.). 65. seye He.D.L. [f. 9199]. 67—76. H.² für G. 67. the E., thys Ad., his He., etc. (Sk.).

[D 2287—2294; E 1—12]

[E 13—42]

¶ The lord, the lady, and alle men,
sauē the frere,

70 Seyde þat Iankyn spak in this matere

As wel as Euclydē or P[ro]tholomee?
Touchynge this cherl, they seyde,
‘Subtiltee

And heigh wit made hym speken as
he spak;

He nys no fool, ne no demonyak!

75 And Iankyn hath ywonne a newe
gowne.

My tale is doon—we been almoost at
towne.

¶ Heere endeth the Somonours tale.

IV. Fragment (E.).

10. The Clerkes Tale.

a) ¶ Heere folweth the Prologe of
the clerkes tale of Oxenford.

‘Sire clerk of Oxenford,’ oure Hooste
sayde,

‘Ye ryde as coy and stille as dooth
a mayde

Werē newe spoused, sittyngē at the
bord.

80 This day ne herde I of youre tonge
a word;

I trowē ye studie aboute som so-
phyme,

But Salomon seith, “Euery-thing hath
tyme.”

¶ ffor Goddes sake! as beth of bettre
cheere—

It is no tyme for to studien heere;

85 Telle vs som myrie tale, by youre
fey!

ffor what man that is entred in a pley,
He nedes moot vnto the pley assente.
But precheth nat, as freres doon in

Lente,

To make vs for oure olde synnes
wepe,

Ne that thy tale make vs nat to slepe. 90
Telle vs som murie thyng of auen-
tures!

Youre termes, youre colours, and youre
figures,

Keep(e) hem in stoor til so be [that]
ye endite

Heigh style, as whan þat men to kynges
write.

Speketh so pleyn at this tyme, we yow 95
preye,

That we may vnderstonde what ye
seye.

¶ This worthy clerk benignely answerde:
‘Hooste,’ quod he, ‘I am vnder youre
yerdel!

Ye han of vs as now the gouernance,
And therfore wol I do yow obeisance, 00
As fer as resoun axeth, hardily.

I wol yow telle a tale which that I
Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,
As preued by his wordes and his werk.
He is now deed, and nayled in his 05
cheste;

I preyē to God so yeue his soule restel

¶ ffraunceys Petrark, the lauriat poete,
Highte this clerk, whos rethorike sweete

Enlumnyed al Ytaille of poetrie,
As Lynyan dide of philosophie, 10
Or lawe, or oother art particuler.

But deeth, þat wol nat *suffre vs* dwellen
heer,

But as it were a twynklyng of an [e]yē,
Hem bothe hath slayn, and alle shul
we dye.

¶ But forth to tellen of this worthy 15
man,

That taughte me this tale, as I bigan,
I seye that first with heigh stile he
enditeth,

Er he the body of his tale writeth,

7869. alle men E., euery man H.³, ech man He., etc. (Sk.). 71. Euclide E., Ouyde H.²; or elles H.⁴, or as Sk., or E., etc.; ptholome L.H.³ [vgl. 5764]. 73. speken H.⁴ 74. townē: f. 6429. — 7877—7988. Sl. für G. 78. stille and coy D., etc. 82: Preb. Cat. III, 1; [am Rande] ¶ pausacio E.C.; id. 90, 96, 06. 93. [that] E.D. [übergehr.] H.⁴, f. He., etc. 95. we I C.P.L.Sl. (Sk., Gl.). 98. Oste L.Sl.¹, Sir host H.⁴, Oft C. 7903. Padwe E.He. (Gl.). 07. petrark H.⁴, Perak E., Petrak He., etc. (Gl.); vgl. 9023. 08. retorique C.H.⁴, -ke P. 09—83. Se. für C. 12. suffre vs (s. no ping P.Sl., s. L.) f. E. 16. ‘Latin note’; id. He.

[E 43—69]

[E 70—95]

A prohemye, in the which discryueth
 he
 20 Pemonde and of Saluces the contree,
 And speketh of Apennyn, the hilles
 hye,
 That been the boundes of West-
 lombardye,
 ¶ And of Mount Vesulus in special,
 Where-as the Poo out of a welle smal
 25 Taketh his firste spryngyng and his
 sours,
 That estward ay encresseth in his cours
 To Emeleward, to fferare, and Venyse,
 The which a long thyng were to
 deuyse;
 And trewely, as to my iuggement,
 30 Me thynketh it a thyng impertinent,
 Sauē that he wol[ē] conuoyen his ma-
 teere,
 But this his tale, which that ye may
 heere.

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the tale of the
 Clerk of Oxenford.)*

THér is at the West syde of Ytaille,†)
 Doun at the roote of Vesulus the colde,
 35 A lusty playne, habundant of vitaille,
 [¶ *grata planicies*
 Where many a tour and toun thou
 mayst biholde,
 That founded were in tyme of fadres
 olde,
 And many another delitable sighte,
 And Saluces this noble contree highte.
 40 A markys whilom lord was of that
 lond,
 As were hise worthy eldres hym bifore,
 And obeisant and redy to his hond
 Were alle hise liges, bothe lasse and
 moore.
 Thus in delit he lyueth, and hath
 doon yoore,
 45 Bilouēd and drad, thurgh fauour of
 ffortune,

Bothe of hise lordes and of his com-
 mune.

Therwith he was, to speke as of
 lynage,
 The gentilleste yborn of Lombardye;
 A fair persone, and strong and yong
 of age,
 And ful of honour and of curteisye;
 Discreet ynogh his contree for to gye,
 Sauē that in somme thynges [þat] he
 was to blame;
 And Walter was this yonge lordes
 name.

I blame hym thus, that he con-
 sidereth noght
 In tyme comyng what hym myghte
 bityde,
 But in his lust present was al his
 thoght,
 As for to hauke and hunte on euery
 syde,
 Wel ny alle othere cures leet he slyde;
 And eek he nolde—and that was worst
 of alle—
 Wedde no wyf for noght þat may bi-
 falle.

Only that point his peple bar so
 soore,
 That flokmeele on a day they to hym
 wente,
 And oon of hem, that wisest was of
 loore,
 Or elles that the lord best wolde assente
 That he sholdē telle hym what his peple
 mente,
 Or elles koude he shewē wel swich
 mateere—
 He to the markys seyde as ye shul heere
 ¶ 'O noble markys! youre humani-
 tee†)
 Assureth vs, and yeueth vs hardinesse,
 As ofte as tyme is of necessitee,
 That we to yow mowē telle oure
 heuynesse.

7919. proheme Se.H.⁴ (Sk.), probleme D., prochein (-em) P.Sl. 32. this E.He., this is D., etc. (Gl.) [vgl. 5757, 11205, etc.]; may E.L., moun D., shal He., etc. — *) Here b. the t. He., Sl.; lat. D.L.H.⁴ — 35. [Randgl.] E.He.D. 42. and E.P.Sl., ay He., etc. 50. of f. E. 52. that E., f. He., etc.; [þat] E.He., f. D., etc. 54. considereth E.Sl., considered He., etc. (Gl.). 55. myghte hym He.D.C.L. (Sk.), myzt P.Sl.H.⁴ 56. in E., on He., etc. (Sk.). 60. myght D.P.Se.Sl.H.⁴ 62. [Randgl.] cateruatiū E.He.D. 69. and yeueth to yeue E.

[E 96—122]

[E 123—151]

Accepteth, lord, now of youre gentil-
 lesse,
 That we with pitous herte vn-to yow
 pleyne,
 And lat youre eres nat my voys des-
 deyne!

75 Al haue I noght to doone in this
 mateere
 Moore than another man hath in this
 place,
 Yet for as muche as ye, my lord so
 deere,
 Han alwey shewed me fauour and grace,
 I dar the better aske of yow a space

80 Of audience, to shewen oure requeste,
 And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow
 leste.
 ffor certes, lord, so wel vs liketh yow
 And al youre werk, and euere han doon
 þat we
 Ne koude nat vs-self deuysen how

85 We myghte lyue[n] in moore felicitie,
 Saue o thyng, lord, if *it* youre wille
 be
 That for to been a wedded man yow
 leste:
 Thanne were youre peple in souereyn
 hertes reste.
 Boweth youre nekke vnder that
 blisful yok

90 Of soueraynetee, noght of seruyse,
 Which þat men clepeth spousaille or
 wedlok,
 And thenketh, lord, among youre
 thoghtes wyse,
 How þat oure dayes passe in sondry
 wyse;
 ffor thogh we slepe, or wake, or rome,
 or ryde,

95 Ay fleeth the tyme—it nyl no man
 abyde.
 And thogh youre grene youthe floure
 as yit,
 In crepeth age alwey as stille as stoon,
 And deeth manaceth euery age, and
 smyt

In ech estaat—for ther escapeth noon;
 And al-so certein as we knowe echoon 00
 That we shul deye, as vncerteyn we
 alle
 Been of that day whan deeth shal
 on vs falle.

Accepteth thanne of vs the trewe
 entente,
 That neuere yet refuseden thyn heeste,
 And we wol, lord, if that ye wole 05
 assente,
 Chese yow a wyf in short tyme atte
 leeste,
 Born of the gentilleste and of the
 meeste
 Of al this land, so that it oghte seme
 Honour to God and yow, as we kan
 deeme.

Deliuere vs out of al this bisy drede, 10
 And taak a wyf, for hye Goddes sake;
 ffor if it so bifelle, as God forbede!
 That thurgh your(e) deeth your(e) lyne
 sholde slake,
 And that a straunge successour sholde
 take
 Your heritage, o, wo were vs alyue! 15
 Wherefore we praye you hastily to wyue.'

¶ Hir meeke preyere and hir pitous
 cheere
 Made the markys herté han pitee:
 'Ye wol,' quod he, 'myne owene peple
 deere,
 To that I neuere erst thoughte streyne 20
 me;
 I me reioysed of my libertee,
 That seelde tyme is founde in mariage;
 Ther I was free, I moot been in
 seruage.

But natheles, I se youre trewe en-
 tente,
 And truste vpon your(e) wit, and haue 25
 doon ay;
 Wherefore of my free wyl I wol[e]
 assente
 To wedde me as soone as euere I
 may.

7972. of] for E. 78. [über That] id: E. 79. better E.He.D. (Gl.). 85. lyuen E.He.D.
 86. it f. E.L. [I. youré?]. 91. clepeth E., clepe He., etc. 94. rome] renne He.C., ronne P:
 8004. thyn E.He.G. (Gl.), youre D., etc. 13. lyne E., ligne He., lyf G., lynage D., etc.
 (Sk.).

[E 152—177]

[E 178—203]

But ther-as ye han profred me this
 day
 To chese me a wyf, I yow relese
 30 That choys, and preyē yow of that
 profre cesse.
 ffor God it woot that children ofte
 been
 Vnlyk hir worthy eldres hem bifore;
 Bountee comth al of God, nat of the
 streen
 Of which they been engendred and
 ybore.
 35 I truste in Goddes bountee, and ther-
 fore
 My mariage, and myn estaat and reste
 I hym bitake—he may doon as hym
 leste.
 Lat me allone in chesyng of my
 wyf:
 That charge vp-on my bak I wol[e]
 endure.
 40 But I yow preyē, and charge vp-on
 youre lyf,
 What wyf that I takē, ye me assure
 To worshiþe hir(e), whil that hir lyf
 may dure,
 In word and werk, bothe heere and
 euerywhere,
 As she an emperoures doghter were.
 45 And forthermoore, this shal ye swere
 that ye
 Agayn my choys shul neither grucche
 ne stryue;
 ffor sith I shal forgoon my libertee
 At youre requeste, as euere moote I
 thryue!
 Ther-as myn herte is set, ther wol I
 wyue,
 50 And but ye wole assente in this manere,
 I preyē yow spekēth namoore of this
 matere.
 ¶ With hertely wyl they sworn and
 assenten
 To al this thyng, ther seyde no wight
 nay,

Bisekyng hym of grace, er that they
 wenten,
 That he wolde graunten hem a certein 55
 day
 Of his spousaille, as soone as euere
 he may;
 ffor yet alwey the peple som-what
 dredde
 Lest þat this markys no wyf wolde
 wedde.
 ¶ He graunten hem a day swich as
 hym leste,
 On which he wolde be wedded sikerly, 60
 And seyde he dide al this at hir
 requeste;
 And they, with humble entente, buxom-
 ly,
 Knelyng vp-on hir knees ful reuerently,
 Hym thonken alle, and thus they han
 an ende
 Of hir entente, and hoom agayn they 65
 wende.
 ¶ And heer-vp-on he to hise offi-
 ceres
 Comaundeth for the feste to purveye,
 And to hise priuee knyghtes and squieres
 Swich charge yaf as hym liste on hem
 leye;
 And they to his comandement obeye, 70
 And ech of hem dooth al his dili-
 gence
 To doon vn-to the feeste reuerence.
 ¶ *Explicit prima pars.*
 ¶ *Incipit secunda pars.*
 NOght fer fro thilke paleys hon-
 urable†)
 Ther-as this markys shoop his mariage,
 There stood a throop of site delitable, 75
 In which that poure folk of that
 village
 Hadden hir beestes and hir herberg-
 age,
 And of hir labour tooke hir sustenance,
 After that the erthe yaf hem habund-
 ance.

8028. this E., to He., etc. (Sk.). 30. yow f. E. 40. pray yow He. 41. What wyf
 that E.G., That what w. þat He.D. (Sk., Gl.), þat what w. C.L., þat w. þat P.H.*
 50. this E., swich He., etc. (Sk.). 58. this] the He.G.D.H.* 74. Ther E., Wher He., etc.
 75. site E.He., þe Cite C.L., sighte G., etc. 79. that f. C.P.L.H.* (Gl.).

[E 204—232]

[E 233—259]

80 Amonges thise poure folk ther dwelte
a man

Which þat was holden pourest of hem
alle;

But hye God som-tyme senden kan
His grace in-to a litel oxes stalle.

Ianicula men of that throop hym calle;

85 A doghter hadde he, fair ynogh to
sighte,

And Grisildis this yonge mayden
highte.

But for to speke of vertuous *beautee*,
Thanne was she oon the faireste vnder
sonne;

ffor pourelliche yfostred vp was she.

90 No likerous lust was thurgh hir herte
yronne,

Wel offer of the welþe than of the
tonne

She drank, and for she wolde vertu
plese,

She knew wel labour, but noon ydel
ese.

But thogh this mayde tendre were
of age,

95 Yet in the brest of hir virginitee,
Ther was enclosed rype and sad corage;

And in greet reuerence and charitee
Hir olde poure fader fostred shee.

A fewe sheep, spynnyng, on feeld she
kepte;

00 She wolde noght been ydel til she
slepte.

And whan she homward cam, she
wolde brynge

Wortes or otheré herbes tymes ofte,
The whiche she shredde and seeth

for hir lyuynge,

And made hir bed ful harde and no-
thyng softe;

05 And ay she kepte hir fadres lyf on lofte
With euerich obeisaunce and diligence

That child may doon to fadres reuer-
ence.

¶ Vp-on Grisilde, this poure creature,

fful ofte sithe this *markys* caste his
[e]yē,

As he on huntyng rood parauenture. 10

And whan [þat] it fil þat he myghte
hir(e) espye,

He noght with wantown[e] lookyng of
folye

Hise [e]yēn caste on hir(e), but in
sad wyse

Vp-on hir chiere he gan hym ofte
auyse;

Commendynge in his herte hir wom- 15
manhede,

And eek hir vertu, passynge any wight
Of so yong age as wel in chiere as
dede.

ffor thogh the peplē hadde no greet
insight

In vertu, he considered ful right

Hir bountee, and disposed that he 20
wolde

Wedde hir(e) oonly, if euere he wedde
sholde.

¶ The day of weddyng cam, but no
wight kan

Telle what womman that it sholde be,
ffor which merueille wondred many a
man,

And seyden, whan [that] they were in 25
priuete:

‘Wol nat oure lord yet leue his vany-
tee?

Wol he nat wedde? Allas, allas the
while!

Why wol[e] he thus hym-self and vs
bigile?’

¶ But natheles this *markys* hath
doon make

Of gemmes, set in gold and in asure, 30
Brooches and rynges for Grisildis sake;

And of hir clothyng took he the mesure
By a mayde lyk to hir stature,

And eek of othere aornementes alle
That vn-to swich a weddyng sholde 35
falle.

8080. Among He.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.); this He.C.H.⁴ 87. bountee E. 8106. euerich E.,
euery He., etc. 08. caste E., sette He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 11. [þat] E. 14. gan E., wolde
He., etc. (Sk.). 18. hadde E., hath He.G., haue D., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 25. [that] E.G. [ob.
seyde?]. 33. By E.G.H.⁴, Of He., etc.; of stature H.⁴ (Gl.). 34. aornementes E.He.G.,
ornamentes D., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[E 260—287]

[E 288—317]

The time of vndren of the same
day
Approcheth, that this weddyng sholde
be,
And al the paleys put was in array,
Bothe halle and chambres, ech in his
degree,
40 Houses of office stuffed with plentee;
Ther maystow seen of deyntheuous vit-
aille
That may be founde as fer as last
Ytaille.
This roial markys, richely arrayed,
Lordes and ladyes in his compaignye,
45 The whiche that to the feeste were[n]
yprayed,
And of his retenue the bachelrye,
With many^a soun of sondry melodye,
Vn-to the village of the which I tolde
In this array the righte wey han holde.
50 ¶ Grisilde, of this, God woot, ful
innocent
That for hir(e) shapen was al this
array,
To fecchen water at a welle is went,
And cometh hoom as soone as euer
she may;
ffor wel she hadde herd seyde that
thilke day
55 The markys sholde wedde, and if she
myghte,
She wolde fayn han seyn som of that
sighte.
She thoghte, 'I wol[e] with othere
maydens stonde,†)
That been my felawes, in oure dore
and se
The markysesse, and therfore wol I
fonde
60 To doon at hoom, as soone as it may
be,
The labour which that longeth vn-to
me,
And thanne I may at leyser hir(e)
biholde,
If she this wey vn-to the castel holde.'

And as she wolde ouer hir thressh-
fold gon,
The markys cam, and gan hir(e) for 65
to calle;
And she set down hir water pot anon
Biside the thresshfold in an oxes stalle,
And down vp-on hir knes she gan
to falle,
And with sad contenance kneleth stille,
Til she had herd what was the lordes 70
wille.
¶ This thoughtful markys spak vn-to
this mayde†)
fful sobrelly, and seyde in this manere:
'Where is youre fader, o Grisildis?'
he sayde.
And she, with reuerence, in humble
cheere,
Answerde, 'Lord, he is al redy heere.' 75
And in she gooth with-uten lenger
lette,
And to the markys she hir fader fette.
He by the hand thanne took this
olde man,
And seyde thus, whan he hym hadde
asyde:
'Ianicula, I neither may ne kan 80
Lenger the plesance of myn hertē hyde;
If that thou vouche-sauf, what-so bityde,
Thy doghter wol I take, er þat I wende,
As for my wyf vn-to hir lyues ende.
Thou louest me—I woot it wel cer- 85
teyn—
And art my feithful lige man ybore,
And al[l] that liketh me, I dar wel
seyn,
It liketh thee, and specially therfore
Telle me that poynt that I hauē seyde
bifore,
If that thou wolt vn-to that purpos 90
drawe,
To take me as for thy sone-in-lawe?
¶ This sodeyn cas this man astonyed
so,
That reed he wax; abayst and al quak-
yngē

8143. richeliche He., ryally G.P.H.⁴ 45. that E.He., f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); weren E. (Gl.). 53. comth E. 64. hir E.G.C., the He., etc. 73. o E.He.G., f. D., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. hir] my He.G.P. 92. This E.D., The He., etc. 93. wax E.C.H.⁴, weex He., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 7703].

[E 318-345]

[E 346-370]

He stood; vnnethes seyde he wordes
mo,
95 But ononly thus: 'Lord,' quod he, 'my
willynge
Is as ye wolē, ne ayeyns youre likyngē
I wol no-thyng; ye be my lord so
deere:
Right as yow lust gouerneth this ma-
teere.'

¶ 'Yet wol I,' quod this markys
softely,
00 'That in thy chambrē I and thou and
she
Haue a colliacioun, and wostow why?
ffor I wol axe if it hir wille be
To be my wyf, and reule hir(e) after
me.

And al this shal be doon in thy pre-
sence,
05 I wol noght speke out of thyn audience.'

¶ And in the chambre whil they
were aboute
Hir tretys, which as ye shal after
heere,
The peple cam vn-to the hous with-
oute,
And wondred hem in how honestē
manere

10 And tentifly she kepte hir fader deere.
But outrely Grisildis wondre myghte,
ffor neuērē erst ne saugh she swich
a sighte.

No wonder is thogh þat she were
astoned†)

To seen so greet a gest come in that
place;

15 She neuere was to swiche gestes woned,
ffor which she looked with ful pale
face.

But shortly forth this tale for to chace,
Thise arn the wordes þat the markys
sayde

To this benigne, verray feithful mayde:

20 ¶ 'Grisilde,' he seyde, 'ye shal wel
vnderstonde
It liketh to youre fader and to me,†)

That I yow wedde, and eek it may so
stonde,

As I suppose, ye wol that it so be.
But thise demandes axe I first,' quod
he,

'That, sith it shal be doon in hastif 25
wyse,

Wol ye assente, or elles yow auyse?
I seyē this, be ye redy with good
herte

To al my lust, and that I frely may,
As me best thynketh, do yow laughe
or smerte,

And neuere ye to grucche it nyght ne 30
day?

And eek whan I seyē ye, ne seyē
nat nay,

Neither by word, ne frownyng con-
tenance:†)

Swere this, and heere I swere *oure*
alliance!

¶ Wondrynge vp-on this word, quak-
yngē for drede,

She seyde, 'Lord, vndigne and vn- 35
worthy†)

Am I to thilke honour þat ye me
beede;

But as ye wolē your(e)-self, right so
wol I,

And heere I swere that neuere willing-
ly,

In werk ne thoght, I nyl yow disobeye
ffor to be deed, though me were looth 40
to deye.'

¶ 'This is ynogh, Grisilde myn,'
quod he.

And forth he gooth, with a ful sobre
cheere,

Out at the dore, and after that cam
she.

And to the peple he seyde in this
manere:

'This is my wyf,' quod he, 'þat stand- 45
eth heere!

Honoureth hir(e), and loueth hir(e), I
preye,

8194. vnnethes E.P., vnnethe He., etc. 95. thus] this He.G.H.⁴ 96. a-zeines L. (Sk., Gl.) [l. n'ayeynes?]. 98. list He.G.D.H.⁴, lest P. 8200. [l. chamber = L.G.? 3gl. 2525]. 13. þat f. E.P. 14. in that E.C.P.L., in to He.G., in-to that D.H.⁴ 17. tale E., matere He., etc. 32. oure] yow E. 35. and] or He.C.L. 36. I am He.G.H.⁴

[E 371—396]

[E 397—425]

Who-so me loueþ—ther is namoore
to seye.'

And for that no-thing of hir olde
geere†)

She sholde brynge in-to his hous, he
bad

50 That wommen sholde dispoillen hir(e)
right theree,

Of which thise ladyes were nat right
glad

To handle hir clothes wher-inne she
was clad;

But nathelees, this mayde bright of
hewe

ffro foot to heed they clothed han al
newe.

55 Hir heris han they kembd, that lay
vntressed

fful rudely, and with hir fyngres smale
A corone on hir heed they han ydressed,
And sette hir(e) ful of nowches grete
and smale.

Of hir array what sholde I make a
tale?

60 Vnnethe the peple hire knew for hir
fairnesse,

Whan she translated was in swich
richesse.

¶ This markys hath hir(e) spoused
with a ryng

Brought for the same cause, and thanne
hir(e) sette

Vp-on a hors, snow-whit and wel
amblyng,

65 And to his paleys, er he lenger lette,
With ioyful peple þat hir(e) ladde
and mette,

Conuoyed hir(e), and thus the day
they spende

In reuel, til the sonne gan descende.
And shortly forth this tale for to
chace,

70 I seye that to this newe markysesse
God hath swich fauour sent hir(e) of
his grace,

That it ne semed nat by liklynesse

That she was born and fed in rude-
nesse,

As in a cote or in an oxen-stalle,
But norisshed in an emperoures halle. 75

¶ To euery wight she woxen is so
deere†)

And worshipful, þat folk ther she was
bore,

And from hir birthe knewe hir(e) yeer
by yeere,

Vnnethe trowed they, but dorste han
swore

That [she] to Ianicle, of which I spak 80
bifore,

She doghter nere; for, as by coniecture,
Hem thoughte she was another crea-
ture.

ffor though that euere vertuous was
she,

She was encressed in swich excellence
Of thewes goode, yset in heigh bountee, 85

And so discreet and fair of eloquence,
So benigne and so digne of reuerence,

And koude so the peples herte em-
brace,

That ech hir(e) louede that looked
on hir face.

¶ Noght oonly of Saluces in the toun 90

Publiced was the bountee of hir name,
But eek biside in many a regioun,

If oon seide wel, another seyde the
same.

So spraddē of hir heighē bountee the
fame,

That men and wommen, as wel yonge 95
as olde,

Goon to Saluce vp-on hir(e) to bi-
holde.

Thus Walter lowely(?)—nay, but
roially,†)

Wedded with fortunat honestetee,
In Goddes pees lyueth ful esily

At hoom, and outward grace ynogh 00
had he,

And for he saugh that vnder lowe
degreet†)

8274. Oxes He.G.D.P. 75. norisshed D.C.L., norchede G., norshed P., norischt H.⁴
80. [she] E. 81. nere GL., ne were P., nas C.L. (Sk.), were E., etc. 90. Saluce He.P.H.⁴
91. Publisshed D.G.P., etc. [vgl. 8625]; beautee E. 94. fame] name E. 8300. hath He.G.H.⁴
or. lowe] heigh E.

[E 426—453]

[E 454—480]

Was ofte vertu hid, the peple hym
heelde

A prudent man, and that is seyn ful
seelde.

¶ Nat oonly this Grisildis thurgh
hir wit†)

05 Koude al the feet of wyfly *hoomlynesse*,
But eek, whan that the cas required it,
The communē profit koude she re-
dresse.

Ther nas discord, rancour, ne heuynesse
In al that land that she ne koude
apese,

10 And wisely brynge hem alle in reste
and ese.

Though that hir housbonde absent
were anon,†)

If gentil-men or othere of hir contree
Were wrothe, she wolde bryngen hem
aton:

So wise and rype wordes hadde she,
15 And iuggementz of so greet equitee,
That she from heuene sent was, as men
wende,

Peple to saue, and euery wrong ta-
mende.

¶ Nat longe tyme after that this
Grisild

Was wedded, she a doghter hath ybore,
20 Al had hir(e) leuere hauē born a *knaue*-
child.

Glad was this markys and the folk
therfore;

ffor though a mayde-child coome al
bifore,

She may vn-to a *knaue*-child atteyne
By liklihede, syn she nys nat bareyne.

¶ *Explicit secunda pars.*

¶ *Incipit tercia pars.*

25 Ther fil, as it bifalleth tymes mo,*)
Whan þat this child had souked but
a throwe,

This markys in his herte longeth so
To tempte his wyf, hir sadnesse for to
knowe,

That he ne myghte out of his herte
throwe

This merueillous desir his wyf tassaye; 30
Nedelees, God woot, he thoghte hir(e)
for taffraye.

He hadde assayed hir(e) ynogh bi-
fore,

And foond hir(e) euere good; what
neded it

Hir(e) for to tempte, and alwey moore
and moore?

Though some men preise it for a 35
subtil wit,

But as for me, I seye that yuele it sit
To assaye a wyf whan þat it is no
nede,

And putten hir(e) in angwyssh and in
drede.

ffor which this markys wroghte in
this manere:

He cam allone a-nyght, ther-as she 40
lay,

With stierne face and with ful trouble
cheere,

And seyde thus: 'Grisilde,' quod he,
'that day

That I yow took out of youre pouere
array,

And putte yow in estaat of heigh
noblesse,

Ye hauē nat that forgeten, as I gesse? 45
I seye: Grisilde, this present dignitee

In which that I hauē put yow, as I
trowe,

Maketh yow nat foryetful for to be
That I yow took in poure estaat ful

lowe
ffor any wele, ye moot your(e)-seluen 50
knowe.

Taak heede of euery word that I
yow seye!—

Ther is no wight that hereth it but we
tweye.

Ye woot your(e)-self wel how þat
ye came heere

In-to this hous—it is nat longe ago.
And though to me þat ye be lief and 55
deere,

Vn-to my gentils ye be no-thing so.

8302. ofte f. E. 05. homlynesse C.L., humblenesse E., etc. [f. bie Glosse]. 20. born] had He.H.*; knaue] man E.; besgl. 8323, 8488; bgl. 5136. 26. had E.C.L., hath He., etc. 35. summe (some) D.C.P.L. 51. y E. 53. come C., etc.

[E 481—508]

[E 509—533]

They seyn to hem it is greet shame
 and wo
 ffor to be subgetz, and [to] been in
 seruage
 To thee, that born art of a smal village.
 60 And namely sith thy doghter was
 ybore,
 Thise wordes han they spoken, doute-
 lees;
 But I desire, as I hauē doon bifore,
 To lyuē my lyf with hem in reste
 and pees.
 I may nat in this caas be recchelees;
 65 I moot doon with thy doghter for the
 beste,
 Nat as I wolde, but as my peple leste.
 And yet, God woot, this is ful looth
 to me;
 But nathelees with-oute youre wityng
 I wol nat doon; but this wol I,' quod
 he,
 70 'That ye to me assente, as in this
 thyng.
 Shewē now youre pacience in youre
 werkynge,
 That ye me highte and swore in youre
 village
 That day that makēd was oure mariage.'
 ¶ Whan she had herd al this, she
 noght ameued
 75 Neither in word, or chiere, or counten-
 aunce;
 ffor as it semed, she was nat agreued.
 She seyde, 'Lord, al lyth in youre
 plesaunce;
 My child and I with hertely obeisaunce
 Been youre al, and ye mowē saue or
 spille
 80 Your(e) owene thyng—werketh after
 youre wille.
 Ther may no-thing—God so my
 soule saue!—
 Liken to yow that may displese me,
 Ne I ne desire no-thing for to haue,
 Ne drede for to leese, saue oonly
 thee:

This wyl is in myn herte, and ay 85
 shal be.
 No lengthe of tyme or deeth may this
 deface,
 Ne chaunge my corage to another
 place.'
 ¶ Glad was this markys of hir
 answeyng,
 But yet he feyned as he werē nat so.
 Al drery was his cheere and his look- 90
 yng,
 Whan þat he sholde out of the chambre
 go.
 Soone after this, a furlong wey or
 two,
 He priuely hath toold al his entente
 Vn-to a man, and to his wyf hym
 sente.
 A maner sergeant was this priuee 95
 man,
 The which þat feithful ofte he founden
 hadde
 In thynges grete, and eek swich folk
 wel kan
 Doon execucioun on thynges badde;
 The lord knew wel that he hym louēd
 and dradde.
 And whan this sergeant wistē the lordes 00
 wille,
 In-to the chambre he stalked hym ful
 stille.
 'Madame,' he seyde, 'ye mootē
 foryeue it me,
 Though I do thyng to which I am
 constreyned.
 Ye been so wys, that ful wel knowe
 ye
 That lordes heestes mowē nat been 05
 yfeyned;
 They mowē wel been biwailled and
 compleyned,
 But men mootē nede vn-to hir lust
 obeye,
 And so wol I—ther is namore to seye.
 This child I am comanded for to
 take'—

8558. [to] E., f. He., etc. 72. youre] yon(e) He.H.⁴ 75. [Randgl.] Nec verbo nec
 vultu &cetera. 79. or] and E.C.P.L. 83. I ne E.He., ne f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. thee] ye
 D.P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); vel yee E.He. [am Randgl.]. 87. oother He.P.H.⁴ 98. on E.D., in He.G.H.⁴,
 of C., etc. (Gl.). 8400. the] this G., his He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 06. and E.G., or He., etc. (Sk.).

[E 534-562]

[E 563-588]

10 And spak namoore, but out the child
he hente

Despitously, and gan a cheere make
As though he wolde han slayn it er
he wente.

Grisildis moot al suffren and consente,
And as a lamb she sitteth meke and
stille,

15 And leet this crueel sergeant doon
his wille.

Suspecious was the diffame of this
man,†)

Suspect his face, suspect his word also,
Suspect the tyme in which he this
bigan.

Allas! hir doghter, that she loued so,
20 She wende he wolde han slawen it
right tho.

But nathelees she neither weep ne
syked,

Consentyng(e) hir(e) to that the markys
lyked.

But atte laste to speken she bigan,
And mekely she to the sergeant preyde,

25 So as he was a worthy gentil-man,
That she moste kisse hir[e] child er
þat it deyde.

And in hir barm this litel child she
leyde

With ful sad face, and gan the child
to kisse,

And lulled it, and after gan it blisse.

30 And thus she seyde in hir benigne
voys:

'ffar[e]-weel my child! I shal thee
neuere see!

But sith I thee hauē marked with the
croys

Of thilke fader—blessed moote he be!—
That for vs deyde vp-on a croys of tree,

35 Thy soule, litel child, I hym bitake;
ffor this nyght shaltow dyen for my
sake!

¶ I trowe that to a norice in this cas
It had been hard this reuthe for to se;

Wel myghte a mooder thanne han
cryd 'allas!'

But nathelees so sadde [and] stidefast 40
was she,

That she endured al aduersitee,
And to the sergeant mekely she sayde,
'Hauē heer agayn your(e) litel yonge
mayde.

Gooth now,' quod she, 'and dooth
my lordes heeste!

But o thyng wol I preyē yow of youre 45
grace:

That, but my lord forbad yow, atte
leeste

Burieth this litel body in som place,
That beestes ne no briddes it to-race.'

But he no word wol to that purpos
seye,

But took the child, and wente vpon 50
his weye.

¶ This sergeant cam vn-to his lord
ageyn,

And of Grisildis wordes and hir cheere
He tolde hym point for point in short
and pleyn,

And hym presenteth with his doghter
deere.

Somwhat this lord hath routhe in his 55
manere,

But nathelees his purpos heeld he
stille,

As lordes doon whan they wol han
hir wille;

And bad his sergeant that he priue-
ly

Sholde this child softe wynde and
wrappe

With alle circumstances tendrely, 60
And carie it in a cofre or in a lappe;

But, vp-on payne his heed of for to
swappe,

That no man sholde knowe of his
entente,

Ne whenne *he cam*, ne whider that he
wente.

8413. and al consente He.G.D.P.H.* 20. slawen E., slayen C.H.* slayn He., etc.
22. Consentyng(e) E., Conformyng(e) He., etc. 23. to E.D., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 27. in] on
He.G.H.* 28/29. blesse (blisse)...kisse (kisse) He., etc. (Gl.); bgl. 8555. 33. he E.He.G.,
thow D., etc. (Sk.). 40. sad and E.G.D.P., sad He.H.* (Sk., Gl.), sadde C.P.L. 55. hadde
He.G.C.P.L. 59. ful softe (ofte C.L.) D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 63. his] this He.D.H.* 64. [über
whenne] vnde E.; whenne E.C.L., whennes (whens) He., etc.; he cam f. E.P.

[E 589-616]

[E 617-645]

65 But at Boloigne to his suster deere,
That thilke tyme of Panik was count-
esse,
He sholde it take, and shewe hir(e)
this mateere,
Bisekyng hir(e) to doon hir bisynesse
This child to fostre in alle gentillesse,
70 And whos child that it was he bad
hire hyde
ffrom euery wight, for oght þat may
bityde.

¶ The sergeant gooth, and hath ful-
fild this thyng;

But to this markys now retourne we.
ffor now gooth he ful faste ymagin-
yng

75 If by his wyues cheere he myghte se,
Or by hir word aperceyue that she
Were chaunged, but he neuere hir(e)
koude fynde

But euere in oon ylike sad and kynde.
As glad, as humble, as bisy in
seruyse†)

80 And eek in loue as she was wont
to be,

Was she to hym in euery maner wyse.
Nè of hir doghter noght a word spak
she;

Noon accident for noon aduersitee
Was seyn in hir(e), ne neuere hir
doghter name

85 Ne nempned she, in ernest nor in
game.

¶ *Explicit tercia pars.*

¶ *Sequitur pars quarta.*

In this estaat ther passed been foure
yeer†)

Er she with childe was, but, as God
wolde,

A *knaue*-child she bar by this Walter,
fful gracious and fair for to biholde.

90 And whan that folk it to his fader
tolde,

Nat oonly he, but al his contree merye
Was for this child, and God they
thanke and herye.

Whan it was two yeer old, and fro
the brest

Departed of his norice, on a day
This markys caughte yet another lest 95
To tempte his wyf yet ofter, if he may.
O nedeles was she tempted in assay!
But wedded men ne knowe no mesure,
Whan þat they fynde a pacient crea-
ture.

¶ 'Wyf,' quod this markys, 'ye han 00
herd er this,†)

My peple sikly berthi oure mariage,
And namely sith my sone yboren is.
Now is it worse than euere in al oure
age.

The murmur[e] sleeth myn herte and
my corage;
ffor to myne eres comth the voys so 05
smerte

That it wel ny destroyed hath myn
herte.

¶ Now seye they thus: "Whan
Walter is agon,
Thanne shal the blood of Ianicle
succede,

And been oure lord, for oother haue
we noon."

Swiche wordes seith my peple, out 10
of drede.

Wel oughte I of swich murmur taken
heede;

ffor certainly, I drede swich sentence,
Though they nat pleyn speke in myn
audience.

I wolde lyue in pees, if that I
myghte;

Wherefore I am disposed outrely, 15
As I his suster seruede by nyghte,
Right so thenke I to serue hym pryue-
ly.

This warne I yow, þat ye nat sodeynly
Out of youre-self for no wo sholde
outreie:

Beth patient, and ther-of I yow preye! 20

¶ 'I haue,' quod she, 'seyd thus,
and euere shal:

8465. he to He.G., it to C.L. 66. panik(e) H.⁴C., Pavie P., Pavik E., etc. [vgl. 1at.: Panico]; f. 8640, 8815. 70. hire] hym E. 85. nor E.G., ne He., etc. 88. *knaue*] man E.; vgl. 8320. 8502. yboren H.⁴, bor(e)n C.P.L., yborn E., etc. 13. pleynly G.P.H.⁴ 16. seru-
ede G.C.H.⁴

[E 646—671]

[E 672—700]

I wol no-thing, ne nyl no-thing, cer-
 tain,
 But as yow list, naught greueth me
 at al
 Though þat my doughter and my
 sonē be slayn
 25 At youre comandement; this is to
 sayn:
 I hauē noght had no part of children
 tweyne
 But first siknesse, and after wo and
 payne.
 Ye been oure lord, dooth with youre
 owene thyng
 Right as yow list—axeth no reed at
 me.
 30 ffor as I lefte at hoom al my clothyng,
 Whan I first cam to yow, right so,
 quod she,
 'Lefte I my wyl and al my libertee,
 And took your(e) clothyng, wherfore
 I yow preye
 Dooth youre plesaunce—I wol youre
 lust obeye.
 35 And certes, if I hadde prescience
 Your wyl to knowe er ye youre lust
 me tolde,
 I wolde it doon with-outen negligence.
 But now I woot your(e) lust, and what
 ye wolde,
 Al your(e) plesance ferme and stable
 I holde.
 40 ffor wiste I that my deeth woldē do
 yow ese,†)
 Right gladly wolde I dyen, yow to
 plese.
 Deth may noght make no com-
 parisoun
 Vn-to your(e) loue.' And whan this
 markys say
 The constance of his wyf, he caste
 adoun
 45 Hise [e]yēn two, and wondreth þat
 she may
 In pacience suffre al this array;
 And forth he goth with dreȳ conten-
 ance,

But to his herte it was ful greet ples-
 ance.
 ¶ This vgly sergeant, in the same
 wyse
 That he hir doghter caughte, right 50
 so he,
 Or worsē, if men worse kan deuyse,
 Hath hent hir sonē, þat ful was of
 beautee;
 And euere in oon so pacient was she,
 That she no chiere maade of heuynesse,
 But kiste hir sone, and after gan it 55
 blesse.
 Sauē this, she preydē hym that, if
 he myghte,
 Hir litel sone he wolde in erthe graue,
 His tendre lymes, delicaat to sighte,
 ffro foweles and fro beestes for to
 saue;
 But she no answer of hym myghtē 60
 haue.
 He wente his wey, as hym no-thing
 ne roghte,
 But to Boloigne he tendrely it broghte.
 This markys wondred, euere leng[er]
 the moore,
 Vp-on hir pacience, and if that he
 Ne hadde soothly knowen ther-bifoore 65
 That parfitly hir children loued she,
 He wolde hauē wend þat of som sub-
 tiltee
 And of malice, or for crueel corage,
 That she hadde suffred this with sad
 visage.
 But wel he knew that, next hym-self, 70
 certayn
 She loued hir children best in euery
 wyse.
 But now of wommen wolde I axen
 fayn
 If thise assayes myghte nat suffise?
 What koude a sturdy housbondē moore
 deuyse
 To preeue hir[e] wyfhod and hir 75
 stedefastnesse,
 And he continūnge euere in sturdi-
 nesse?

8529. at] of He.D.P.H.⁴ 51. [Giat? Db. i. gif = G.?] 59. for] hem He., hym G.H.⁴
 61. ne f. He.G.P.L. 63. wondred E., wondreth He., etc. (Sk.); leng f. 3870. 68. for] of
 He.G.H.⁴, f. P. 75. and] or E.

[E 701—729]

[E 730—761]

But ther been folk of swich condicion,
 That, when they haue a certein purpos
 take,
 They kan nat stynte of hir entencion,
 0 But right as they werē bounden to a
 stake,
 They wol nat of that firste purpos
 slake:
 Right so this markys fulliche hath
 purposed
 To tempte his wyf as he was first
 disposed.
 He waiteth if by word or conten-
 ance
 5 That she to hym was changed of
 corage,
 But neuere koude he fynde variance.
 She was ay oon in herte and in visage,
 And ay the forther þat she was in age,
 The moore trewe, if þat it werē pos-
 sible,
 0 She was to hym in loue, and moore
 penyble.
 ffor which it semed thus, þat of hem
 two
 Ther nas but o wyl; for as Walter
 leste,
 The same lust was hir plesance also,
 And—God be thanked!—al fil for the
 beste.
 5 She shewed wel, for no worldly vnreste
 A wyf, as of hir-self, no-thing ne sholde
 Wille in effect but as hir housbonde
 wolde.
 ¶ The sclandre of Walter ofte and
 wyde spradde,†)
 That of a cruell herte he wikkedly,
 0 ffor he a poure womman wedded
 hadde,
 Hath mordred bothe his children
 priuely;
 Swich murmur[e] was among hem co-
 munly.
 No wonder is, for to the peples ere
 Ther cam no word but þat they
 mordred were.
 5 ffor which, wher(e)-as his peple ther-
 bifore

Hadde loued hym wel, the sclandre
 of his diffame
 Made hem that they hym hatede ther-
 fore.
 To been a mordrere is a hateful name;
 But natheles, for earnest ne for game,
 He of his cruell purpos nolde stente; 10
 To tempte his wyf was set al his
 entente.
 ¶ Whan that his doghter .XIJ. yeer
 was of age,
 He to the court of Rome, in subtil
 wyse
 Enformed of his wyl, sente his mes-
 sage,
 Comaundynge hem swiche bulles to 15
 deuyse
 As to his cruell purpos may suffyse,
 How þat the pope, as for his peples
 reste,
 Bad hym to wedde another, if hym
 leste.
 I seye: he bad they sholde countre-
 fete
 The popes bulles, makynge mencion 20
 That he hath leue his firste wyf to
 lete,
 As by the popes dispensacion,
 To stynte rancour and dissencion
 Bitwixe his peple and hym: thus seyde
 the bulle,
 The which they han publiced atte fulle. 25
 ¶ The rude peple, as it no wonder is,
 Wenden ful wel that it hadde be right
 so;
 But whan thise tidyngeſ came to Gri-
 sildis,
 I deeme that hir herte was ful wo.
 But she, ylike sad for eueremo, 30
 Disposed was, this humble creature,
 The aduersitee of ffortune al tendure;
 Abidyng eue her lust and his
 plesance
 To whom þat she was yeuen, herte
 and al,
 As to hir verray worldly suffisance. 35
 But shortly if this storie I tellen shal,
 This markys writen hath in special

8580. a] that E.He.G. (Gl.). 8607. hatede C.H.⁴ 12. twelf G.D.C.H.⁴ 28. cam E.He.G. (Sk., Gl.), came L., come(n) D., etc.

[E 762—791]

[E 792—819]

A lettre in which he sheweth his entente,

And secreely he to Boloigne it sente.

40 To the Erl of Panyk, which þat hadde tho

Wedded his suster, preyde he specially
To bryngen hoom agayn hise children two

In honourable estaat al openly.

But o thyng he hym preyde outrely:

45 That he to no wight, though men wolde enquire,

Sholde nat telle whos children þat they were;

But seye, the mayden sholde yweded be

Vn-to the markys of Saluce anon.

And as this erl was preyed, so dide he.

50 ffor at day set he on his wey is goon
Toward Saluce, and lordes many oon
In riche array, this mayden for to gyde,
Hir yonge brother ridynge hir(e) bi-syde.

¶ Arrayed was toward hir mariage

55 This fresshe mayde ful of gemmes cleere,

Hir brother, which þat .VIJ. yeer was of age,

Arrayed eek ful fressh in his manere;

And thus in greet noblesse and with glad cheere,

Toward Saluces shapyngre hir journey,

60 ffro day to day they riden in hir wey.

¶ *Explicit quarta pars.*

¶ *Sequitur pars quinta.*

Among al this, after his wikke vsage,

This markys, yet his wyf to tempte moore

To the outreste preeue of hir corage, ffully to han experience and loore

65 If that she were as stidefast as bi-foore,

He on a day, in open audience,

fful boistously hap seyde hir(e) this sentence:

¶ 'Certes, Grisilde, I hadde ynogh plesance

To han yow to my wyf for your(e) goodnesse,

As for youre trouthe and for your(e) 70 obeisance,

Noght for your(e) lynage, ne for youre richesse;

But now knowe I in verray soothfastnesse

That in greet lordshipe, if I wel auyse, Ther is greet seruitute in sondry wyse.

I may nat doon as euery plowman 75 may;

My peple me constreyneth for to take Another wyf, and crien day by day;

And eek the pope, rancour for to slake,

Consenteth it, that dar I vndertake, And troweliche thus muche I wol yow 80 seye:

My newe wyf is comynge by the weye.

Be strong of herte, and voyde anon hir place,

And thilke dower(e) that ye broghten me,

Taak it agayn—I graunte it of my grace—

Retourneth to youre fadres hous,' 85 quod he.

'No man may alwey han prosperitee; With euene herte I rede yow tendure This strook of ffortune or of auenture.'

¶ And she answerde agayn in patience:

'My lord,' quod she, 'I woot and wiste 90 alway

How þat bitwixen youre magnificence

And my pouerte no wight kan ne may

Maken comparison—it is no nay.

I ne heeld me neuere digne in no manere

To be your(e) wyf—no, ne your(e) 95 chamberere.

8640. Panyk f. 8466. 44. preyde G.L., preyde E., etc. 46. þat f. G.P.H.* (Gl.). 49. preyed G.D.C., preyed E., etc. 56. seuene(e) He.G.D.L.H.* [pr. sevn]. 61. wikke E.He., wikked(e) G., etc. 63. vttreste (yttrest) G.P.L.H.* (Sk., Gl.). 70. As] And He.P.H.* 80. troweliche E.C., trowely He., etc. 88. This E., The He., etc. (Sk.). 89. answerde agayn E., a. a-noon G., agayn answerde He., etc. 95. Chamberere E.He.D.P.

[E 820—848]

[E 849—875]

And in this hous ther ye me lady
maade—
The heighe God take I for my wit-
nesse!
And also wisly he my soule glaade—
I neuerè heeld me lady ne maistresse,
00 But humble seruant to your(e) worthy-
nesse,
And euere shal, whil þat my lyf may
dure,
Abouen euery worldly creature.
That ye so longe of youre benigni-
tee
Han holden me in honour and nobleye,
05 Where-as I was noght worthy *for to*
bee,
That thonke I God and yow, to whom
I preye
fforyelde it yow!—ther is namoore to
seye.
Vn-to my fader gladly wol I wende,
And with hym dwelle vn-to my lyues
ende.
10 Ther I was fostred of a child ful
smal,
Til I be deed, my lyf ther wol I lede
A wydwe clene in body, herte, and al.
ffor sith I yaf to yow my maydenhede,
And am youre trewe wyf, it is no
drede,
15 God shilde swich a lordes wyf to take
Another man to housbonde or to make!
And of youre newe wyf God of his
grace
So graunte yow wele and prosperitee!
ffor I wol gladly yelden hir(e) my
place,
20 In which that I was blisful wont to
bee.
ffor sith it liketh yow, my lord,' quod
shee,
'That whilom weren al myn hertes
reste,
That I shal goon, I wol goon whan
yow leste.
But ther-as ye me profre swich dow-
aire

As I first broghte, it is wel in my 25
mynde
It were my wrecched clothes, no-thing
faire,
The whiche to me were hard now for
to fynde.
O, goode God! how gentil and how
kynde
Ye semed by youre speche and youre
visage
The day that maked was oure mariage! 30
But sooth is seyð, algate I fynde it
trewe,
ffor in effect it preeued is on me:
Loue is noght oold as whan þat it
is newe.
But certes, lord, for noon aduersitee,
To dyen in the cas, it shal nat bee 35
That euere in word or werk I shal
repente
That I yow yaf myn herte in hool en-
tente.
My lord, ye woot that in my fadres
place
Ye didē me streepe out of my poure
weede,
And richely me cladden of youre grace. 40
To yow broghte I noght elles, out
of drede,
But feith, and nakednesse, and mayden-
hede.
And heere agayn my clothyng I
restoore,
And eek my weddyng-ryng for euere-
moore.
The remenant of your(e) iueles redy 45
be
In-with your(e) chambre, dar I saufly
sayn;
Naked out of my fadres hous,' quod
she,
'I cam, and naked moot I turne agayn.
Al your(e) plesance wol I folwen fayn,
But yet I hope it be nat your(e) 50
entente
That I smokles out of your(e) paleys
wente.

8705. for to f. E., for f. L. 33: „Die alte Liebe gleicht der neuen nicht.“ 35. the]
this He.D.P. 42. nakednesse] meknesse G.H.⁴

[E 876—901]

[E 902—933]

Ye koude nat doon so dishoneste a
 thyng,
 That thilke wombe in which your(e)
 children leye
 Sholde biforn the peple, in my walk-
 yng,
 55 Be seyn al bare, wherfore I yow preye:
 Lat me nat lyk a worm go by the
 weye!
 Remembre yow, myn owene lord so
 deere,
 I was your(e) wyf, though I vnworthy
 weere.
 Wherfore, in gerdon of my mayden-
 hede,
 60 Which þat I broghte, and noght agayn
 I bere,
 As voucheth-sauf to yeue me to my
 meede
 But swich a smok as I was wont
 to were,
 That I ther-with may wrye the wombe
 of here
 That was your(e) wyf—and heer take
 I my leue
 65 Of yow, myn owene lord, lest I yow
 greue!
 ¶ 'The smok,' quod he, 'that thou
 hast on thy bak,
 Lat it be stille, and ber[e] it forth
 with thee!
 But wel vnnethes thilke word he spak,
 But wente his wey for routhe and for
 pitee.
 70 Biforn the folk hir-seluen strepeth she,
 And in hir smok, with heed and foot
 al bare,
 Toward hir fader hous forth is she
 fare.
 ¶ The folk hir(e) folwe, wepyng in
 hir weye,
 And ffortune ay they cursen as they
 goon;
 75 But she for wepyng kepte hir(e) [e]yën
 dreye,
 Nè in this tyme word ne spak she noon.
 Hir fader, that this tidyng[e] herde
 anoon,

Curseth the day and tyme that nature
 Shoop hym to been a lyues creature.
 ffor, out of doute, this olde poure 80
 man
 Was euere in suspect of hir mariage;
 ffor euere he demed, sith that it bigan,
 That whan the lord fulfild hadde his
 corage,
 Hym wolde thynke it were a disparage
 To his estaat, so lowe for talighte, 85
 And voyden hir(e) as soone as euër he
 myghte.
 Agayns his doghter hastiliche goth
 he—
 ffor he by noyse of folk knew hir
 comyng—,
 And with hir olde coote, as it myghte
 be,
 He couered hir(e), ful sorwefully wep- 90
 ynge.
 But on hir body myghte he it nat
 brynge;
 ffor rude was the clooth, and she moore
 of age
 By dayes fele than at hir mariage.
 ¶ Thus with hir fader for a certeyn
 space
 Dwelleth this flour of wyfly pacience, 95
 That neither by hir(e) wordes ne hir
 face,
 Biforn the folk, nè eek in hir absence,
 Ne shewed she that hir(e) was doon
 offence;
 Nè of hir heighe estaat no remem-
 braunce
 Ne hadde she, as by hir contenauce. 00
 No wonder is, for in hir grete estaat
 Hir goost was euere in pleyn humylitee:
 No tendre mouth, non herte delicaat,
 No pompe, no semblant of roialtee,
 But ful of pacient benyngnytee, 05
 Discreet and pridelees, ay honorable,
 And to hir housbonde euere meke and
 stable.
 ¶ Men speke of Iob, and moost
 for his humblesse,
 As clerkes, whan hem list, konne wel
 endite

[E 934—961]

[E 962—988]

0 Namely of men, but as in soothfast-
nesse—

Though clerkes preise wommen but
a lite—

Ther kan no man in humblesse hym
acquite

As womman kan, ne *kan* been half so
trewe

As wommen been, but it be falle of
newe.

5 ¶ffro Boloigne is this Erl of Panyk
come,

Of which the fame vp-sprang to moore
and lesse,

And in the peples eres, alle and some,
Was kouth eek that a newe markysesse

He with hym broghte in swich pompe
and richesse,

0 That neuere was ther seyn with mannes
[e]yē

So noble array in al Westlumbardye.
¶The markys, which that shoop and

knew al this,
Er that this erl was come, sente his

message
ffor thilke sely poure Grisildis;

5 And she with humblē herte and glad
visage,

Nat with no swollen thought in hir
corage,

Cam at his heste, and on hir(e) knees
hir(e) sette,

And reuerently and wisely she hym
grette.

¶‘Grisilde,’ ‘quod he, ‘my wyl is
outrely,

0 This mayden that shal wedded been
to me

Receiued be to-morwe as roially
As it possible is in myn hous to be,

And eek that euery wight in his degree
Haue his estaat in sittyng and seruyse

5 And heigh plesaunce, as I kan best
deuyse.

I haue no wommen suffisaunt, cer-
tayn,

The chambres for tarraye in ordinaunce

After my lust, and ther-fore wolde I
fayn

That thyn were al swich manere govern-
aunce.

Thou knowest eek of old al my ples- 40
aunce;

Thogh thyn array be badde and yuel
biseye,

Do thou thy deuoir at the leeste weye.’
¶‘Nat oonly, lord, that I am glad,’

quod she,
‘To doon your(e) lust, but I desire also

Yow for to serue and plesse in my 45
degree

With-uten feynting, and shal eueremo;
Ne neuere, for no wele ne no wo,

Ne shal the goost withinne myn herte
stente

To loue yow best with al my trewe
entente.’

And with that word she gan the 50
hous to dighte,

And tables for to sette, and beddes
make,

And peyned hir(e) to doon al that
she myghte,

Preyngē the chambereres for Goddes
sake

To hasten hem, and faste swepe and
shake;

And she, the mooste seruysable of alle, 55
Hath euery chambre arrayed, and his

halle.

¶Abouten vndren gan this erl alighte,
That with hym broghte thise noble

children tweye,
ffor which the peple ran to see the

sighte 60
Of hir array, so richely biseye.

And thanne at erst amonges hem they
seye

That Walter was no fool, thogh þat
hym leste

To chaunge his wyf, for it was for the
beste.

ffor she is fairer, as they demen
alle,

8813. kan f. E.G.P. (konne D.). 15. [Hier beginnt im Six-Text: Part VI (Sk., Gl.); in keiner Sk.]. Panyk f. 8466. 17. in E.D., to He., etc. (Gl.). 53. chambereris (-es, -s) G.C.H.⁴ (Sk.). 63. the] his He.D.

[E 989—1015]

[E 1016—1046]

65 Than is Grisilde, and moore tendre
 of age,
 And fairer fruyt bitwene hem sholde
 falle,
 And moore plesant for hir heigh lynage.
 Hir brother eek so fair[e] was of visage,
 That hem to seen the peple hath caught
 plesaunce,

70 Commendynge now the markys govern-
 aunce.

'O stormy peple, vnsad and euere
 vntrewe, [¶ *Auctor*
 Ay vndiscreet and chaungynge as a
 vane,
 Delitynge euere in rumbul that is
 newe!
 ffor lyk the moone ay wexe ye and
 wane,

75 Ay ful of clappyng, deere ynogh a
 iane!

Youre doom is fals, youre constance
 yuele preeueth;
 A ful greet fool is he þat on yow
 leeueth!

Thus seyden sadde folk in that
 citee,

Whan that the peple gazed vp and
 down,

80 ffor they werē glad, right for the
 nouelteē,

To han a newe lady of hir toun.
 Namore of this make I now menciuon,
 But to Grisilde agayn wol I me dresse,
 And telle hir constance and hir bi-
 synesse.

85 fful bisy was Grisilde in euery-thing
 That to the feeste was apertinent.
 Right noght was she abayst of hir
 clothyng,

Thogh it were rude and somdeel eek
 to-rent;

But with glad cheere to the yate is [she]
 went

90 With oother folk, to greetē the mar-
 kysesse,

And after that dooth forth hir bi-
 synesse.

With so glad chiere hise gestes she
 receyueth,

And [so] konningly, euerich in his
 degree,

That no defaute no man aperceyueth,
 But ay they wondren what she myghte 95
 bee

That in so poure array was for to see,
 And koude swich honour and reuer-
 ence;

And worthily they preisen hir prudence.

In al this meene while she ne stente
 This mayde and eek hir brother to 00
 commende

With al hir herte, in ful benyngne en-
 tente,

So wel, þat no man koude hir pris
 amende.

But atte laste, whan þat thise lordes
 wende

To sitten down to mete, he gan to
 calle

Grisilde, as she was bisy in his halle. 05

¶ 'Grisilde,' quod he, as it were in
 his pley,

'How liketh thee my wyf and hir
 beautee?'

'Right wel,' quod she, 'my lord, for,
 in good fey,

A fairer saugh I neuere noon than she.

I preyē to God yeue hir(e) prosperitee, 10

And so hope I that he, wol to yow
 sende

Plesance ynogh vn-to youre lyues ende!

O thyng biseke I yow, and warne
 also,†)

That ye ne prikke with no tormentynge

This tendre mayden, as ye han doon 15
 mo.

ffor she is fostred in hir norissynge

Moore tendrely, and, to my supposynge,

She koude nat aduersitee endure,

As koude a poure fostred creature.'

¶ And whan this Walter saugh hir 20
 pacience,

Hir glade chiere, and no malice at al,

And he so ofte had doon to hir offence,

8871. *Auctor* E.G.D. 72. vane E.He., fane G., etc. 89. she E.He.D.H.⁴, f. G., etc.
 93. so f. C.P.L. 8916. norychyngē (-sshyngē, etc.) G., etc.; vgl. 8275. 21. glade H.⁴
 22. offence f. E.

[E 1047—1073]

[E 1074—1099]

And she ay sad and constant as a wal,
Continuynge euere hir innocence oueral,
25 This sturdy markys gan his herte
dresse

To rewe[n] vp-on hir wyfly stedfast-
nesse.

¶ 'This is ynogh, Grisilde myn!'
quod he,

'Be now namoore agast, ne yuele
apayed!

I haue thy feith and thy benyngnytee,
30 As wel as euere womman was, assayed,
In greet estaat and pourelliche arrayed.
Now knowe I, goode wyf, thy sted-
fastnesse!

And hir(e) in armes took, and gan hir(e)
kesse.

¶ And she for wonder took of it no
keep[e];

35 She herde nat what thyng he to hir(e)
seyde—

She ferde as she had stert out of a
sleep,

Til she out of hir mazednesse abreyde.
'Grisilde,' quod he, 'by God, that for
vs deyde!

Thou art my wyf, ne noon oother I
haue,

40 Ne neuere hadde, as God my soule
saue!

¶ This is thy doghter, which thou
hast supposed

To be my wyf; that oother feithfully
Shal be myn heir, as I haue ay pur-
posed;

Thou bare hym in thy body trewely.
45 At Boloigne haue I kept hem priuely—
Taak hem agayn! for now maistow nat
seye

That thou hast lorn noon of thy
children tweye.

And folk that ootherweys han seyde
of me,

I warne hem wel þat I haue doon this
deede

ffor no malice, ne for no crueltee, 50
But for tassaye in thee thy womman-
heede,

And nat to sleen my children—God
forbeede!

But for to kepe hem priuely and stille
Til I thy purpos knewe and al thy
wille.'

¶ Whan she this herde, aswowne 55
doun she falleth

ffor pitous ioye, and after hir swown-
ynge

She bothe hir(e) yonge children [vn]
to hir(e) calleth,

And in hir armes, pitously wepynge,
Embraceth hem, and tendrely kissynge
fful lyk a mooder, with hir(e) salte 60
teeres

She bathed bothe hir visage and hir(e)
heeres.

¶ O which a pitous thyng it was to se
Hir swownyng, and hir humble voys
to heere!

'Grauntmercy, lord! that thanke I yow,'
quod she,

'That ye han saued me my children 65
deere!

Now rekke I neuere to been deed right
heere,

Sith I stonde in your(e) loue and in
your(e) grace;

No fors of deeth, ne whan my spirit
pace!

¶ O tendre, o deere, o yonge
children myne!

Your(e) woful mooder wende stedfastly 70
That crueel houndes or som foul ver-
myne

Hadde eten yow; but God, of his
mercy,

And youre benyngne fader tendrely
Hath doon yow kept!—and in that
same stounde

Al sodeynly she swapte adoun to 75
grounde.

8924. [über oueral] i. ubique E.He. 26. rewe G.D.P. 32. goode E., deere He., etc. (Sk.). 39. ne (and P.) f. E.He.D. 43. purposed C.L.H.⁴, disposed D.P., supposed E.He.G. 57. vn-to E.He.G.D. (Sk.). 61. bathed E.D.P., batheth He.G.C. (Sk.), babes L.H.⁴ 64. god thanke it (f. G.) yow He.G.D.H.⁴, god I þanke it zou C., g. ythenk z. P., g. I þonked z. L.

[E 1100—1123]

[E 1124—1155]

And in hir swough so sadly holdeth
 she
 Hir(e) children two, whan she gan
 hem tembrace,
 That with greet sleighte and greet
 difficultee
 The children from hir arm they gonne
 arace.
 80 O many^a teere on many^a pitous
 face
 Doun ran of hem þat stooden hir(e)
 bisydel
 Vnnethe abouten hir(e) myghte they
 abyde.
 ¶ Walter hir(e) gladeth, and hir
 sorwe slaketh.
 She riseth vp, abaysed, from hir
 traunce,
 85 And euery wight hir(e) ioye and feeste
 maketh,
 Til she hath caught agayn hir con-
 tenaunce.
 Walter hir(e) dooth so feithfully ples-
 aunce,
 That it was deyntee for to seen the
 cheere
 Bitwixe hem two, now they been met
 yfeere.
 90 ¶ Thise ladyes, whan that they hir
 tyme say,
 Han taken hir(e), and in-to chambre
 gon,
 And strepen hir(e) out of hir rude
 array,
 And in a clooth of gold, þat brighte
 shoon,
 With a coroune of many^a riche stoon
 95 Vp-on hir heed, they in-to halle hir(e)
 broghte,
 And ther she was honored as hir(e)
 oghte.
 Thus hath this pitous day a blisful
 ende,
 ffor euery man and womman dooth
 his myght
 This day in murthe and reuel to dis-
 pendre,

Til on the welkne shoon the sterres 00
 lyght.
 ffor moore solempne in euery mannes
 syght
 This feste was, and gretter of costage
 Than was the reuel of hir mariage.
 ¶ fful many^a yeer in heigh pro-
 speritee
 Lyuen thise two in concord and in 05
 reste,
 And richely his doghter maryed he
 Vn-to a lord, oon of the worthieste
 Of al Ytaille; and thanne in pees and
 reste
 His wyues fader in his court he kepeth,
 Til that the soule out of his body 10
 crepeth.
 His sonē succedeth in his heritage
 In reste and pees after his fader day,
 And fortunat was eek in mariage,
 Al putte he nat his wyf in greet assay.
 This world is nat so strong—it is no 15
 nay—
 As it hath been of olde tymes yooore;
 And herkneth what this auctour seith
 therfoore.
 ¶ This storie^is seyð, nat for that
 wyues sholde†)
 ffolwen Grisilde as in humylitee—
 ffor it were inportable though they 20
 wolde—,
 But for that euery wight, in his degree,
 Sholde be constant in aduersitee
 As was Grisilde; therfore Petrark writ-
 eth
 This storie, which with heigh stile he
 enditeth.
 ffor sith a womman was so pacient 25
 Vn-to a mortal man, wel moore vs oghte
 Receyuen al in gree that God vs sent;
 ffor greet skile is he preeue that he
 wroghte.
 But he ne tempteth no man that he
 boghte,
 As seith seint Iame, if ye his pistel 30
 rede;
 He preeueth folk al day, it is no drede;

8980. on] o He.P.H.⁴, f. D. 84. abaschid, etc. G., etc. 89. yfeere E.He., in f. G. etc.
 9013. in] his He. 23. Petrark H.⁴, petrak, etc. E., etc. [vgl. 7907]. 24. he with heigh
 (his C.) st. He.G.C.P.L. 27. sent: 3. Berf. C. Brf. 31. Jaf. I, 13.

[E 1156—1185]

[E 1186—1212]

And suffreth vs, as for oure exercise,
 With sharpe scourges of aduersitee
 fful ofte to be bete in sondry wise,
 35 Nat for to knowe oure wyl; for certes
 he,
 Er we werē born, knew ourē freletee,
 And for oure beste is al his gouern-
 aunce;
 Lat vs thanne lyue in vertuous suf-
 fraunce.

¶ But o word, lordynges, herkneth
 er I go:
 40 It werē ful hard to fynde now a-dayes
 In al a toun Grisildis thre or two;
 ffor, if þat they werē put to swiche
 assayes,
 The gold of hem hath now so badde
 alays
 With bras, þat, thogh the coynē be fair
 at [e]yē,

45 It wolde rather breste atwo than plye.*)
 ffor which heere for the wyues loue
 of Bathe—
 Whos lyf and al hir secte God mayn-
 tene
 In heigh maistrie!—and elles were it
 scathe—,
 I wol with lusty herte, fressh and
 grene,

50 Seyn yow a song to glade yow, I
 wene,
 And lat vs stynte of earnestful matere!
 Herkneth my song, that seith in this
 manere:

¶ *Lenvoy de Chaucer.*

Grisilde is deed, and eek hir pa-
 ciance,
 And bothe atones buried in Ytaille,
 55 ffor which I crie in open audience:
 No wedded man so hardy be tassaille
 His wyues pacience in hope to fynde
 Grisildis, for in certein he shal faille.
 O noble wyues, ful of heigh pru-
 dence!
 60 Lat noon humylitee youre tonge naille,
 Ne lat no clerk hauē cause or diligence

To write of yow a storie of swich
 meruaille
 As of Grisildis, pacient and kynde,
 Lest Chichiuaçhe yow swelwe in hir
 entraille.

ffolweth Ekko, that holdeth no si- 6
 lence,
 But euere answereth at the countre-
 taille;
 Beth nat bidaffed for youre innocence,
 But sharply taak on yow the gouern-
 aille.

Emprenteth wel this lessoun in youre
 mynde,
 ffor commune profit sith it may auaille. 7

Ye archiwuyes, stondeth at defense!
 Syn ye be strong as is a greet ca-
 maille,
 Ne suffreth nat þat men yow doon
 offense!

And sklendre wyues, fieble as in bat-
 aille,
 Beth egre as is a tygre yond in Ynde! 7
 Ay clappeth as a mille, I yow con-
 saile.

Ne dreede hem nat, doth hem no
 reuerence!
 ffor though thyn housbonde armed
 be in maille,

The arwes of thy crabbed eloquence
 Shal perce his brest, and eek his 8
 auentaile;

In ialousie I rede eek thou hym
 bynde,
 And thou shalt make hym couche as
 doth a quaille.

If thou be fair, ther folk been in
 presence
 Shewe thou thy visage and thyn appar-
 aile;

If thou be foul, be fre of thy dispence, 8
 To gete thee freendes ay do thy
 trauaille;

Be ay of chiere as light as leef on
 lynde,

And lat hym care, and wepe, and
 wrynge, and waille!

9036. al oure He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). — *) G. b. Strophe nach V. 9088. — 46—52. f. P.
 57. hope E.C.L.H.⁴, trust He., etc. 65—88. f. C. 71—76. hinter 9087 P. 76: vgl. 18536.

[E 1213—1229]

[¶ Bihoold the murye wordes of
the Hoost.*)]

This worthy clerk whan ended was
this tale,

Oure hooste seyde, and swoor by
Goddess bones:

'Me were leuere than a barel ale
My wyf at hoom had herd this legende
ones!

This is a gentil tale for the nones,
As to my purpos, wiste ye my wille,
But thyng þat wol nat be, lat it be
stille!']

¶ Heere endeth the tale of the Clerk
of Oxenford.

11. The Marchantes Tale.

a) ¶ The prologe of the Marchantes
tale.

'Wepying and waylyng, care and oother
sorwe

90 I knowe ynogh, on euen and a-morwe,
Quod the Marchant, 'and so doon
othere mo

That wedded been, I trowe that it be
so;

ffor wel I woot it fareth so with me.
I haue a wyf, the worste that may be;

95 ffor thogh the feend to hir(e) ycoupled
were,

She wolde hym ouermacche, I dar
wel swere.

What sholde I yow reherce in special
Hir hye malice? She is a shrewe at al.

Ther is a long and large difference

00 Bitwix Grisildis grete pacience
And of my wyf the passyng crueltee.

Were I vnbounden, al-so moote I thee!
I wolde neuere eft comen in the snare.

We wedded men lyuen in sorwe and

05 Assaye who-so wole, and he shal fynde

[E 1230—1254]

I seye sooth—by seint Thomas of
Ynde!—

As for the moore part, I seye nat
alle—

God shilde that it sholde so bifalle!

¶ A! good sir(e) hoost! I haue ywedded
bee

Thise monthes two, and moore nat, 10
pardee!

And yet, I trowe, he that al his lyue
Wyfles hath been, though þat men
wolde him ryue

Vn-to the herte, ne koude in no ma-
nere

Tellen so muchel sorwe as I now
heere

Koude tellen of my wyues cursednesse! 15

¶ 'Now,' quod oure hoost, 'Marchant,
so God yow blesse!

Syn ye so muchel knowen of that
art,

fful hertely I praye yow telle vs part.'

¶ 'Gladly,' quod he, 'but of myn
owene soore,

ffor soory herte, I telle may namoore.' 20

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Marchauntes
tale.**)

Whilom ther was dwellynge in Lum-
bardye

A worthy knyght, þat born was of
Pavye,

In which he lyued in greet prosperi-
tee;

And sixty yeer a wyfles man was
hee,

And folwed ay his bodily delyt. 25

On wommen, ther-as was his appetyt,
As doon thise fooles that been seculeer.

And whan that he was passed sixty
yeer—

Where it for hoolynesse or for dotage,
I kan nat seye—but swich a greet 30

corage

*) Ursprüngliche Schlusstrophe, später verworfen, und in Hff. des A-Textus (E., etc.) an letzter Stelle. — 9089—9119. f. He. (dafür H.) C. (Se.), P. (Ad.), L. (Ro.); 9089—9139. f. G. (Statt ausgeschnitten). 90. on morwe D., etc. 93. with E.H., by D., etc. 99. and a large D., etc. 9104. liven Se. 07. seye D.Ro.1 [f. 9199]. — **) Folgt der Squieres T. in He., P. u. andern Hff. der P.-Gruppe. — 21—68. Se. für C. 21—40. Sl. für G.

[E 1255—1282]

[E 1283—1310]

Hadde this knyght to been a wedded
man,

That day and nyght he dooth al that
he kan

Tesprien where he myghte wedded be;
Preyinge oure Lord to granten hym
þat he

35 Mighte ones knowe of thilke blisful
lyf

That is bitwixe an housbonde and
his wyf,

And for to lyue vnder that hooly boond
With which þat first God man and
womman bond.

'Noon oother lyf,' seyde he, 'is worth
a bene;

40 ffor wedlok is so esy and so clene,
That in this world it is a Paradys.'
Thus seyde this olde knyght, þat was
so wys.

¶ 'And certainly, as sooth as God is
kyng,

To take a wyf, it is a glorious thyng,

45 And namely whan a man is oold and
hoor,

Thanne is a wyf the fruyt of his tresor;
Thanne sholde he take a yong wyf
and a feir,

On which he myghte engendren hym
an heir,

And lede his lyf in ioye and in solas,

50 Wher(e)-as thise bacheloris synge allas,
Whan that they fynden any[^]aduersitee
In loue, which nys but chilydyssh vany-
tee.

And, trewely, it sit wel to be so,
That bacheloris haue often payne and
wo;

55 On brotel ground they buylde, and
brotelnesse

They fynde whan they wene siker-
nesse.

They lyue but as a bryd or as a beest,
In libertee and vnder noon arreest;

Ther-as a wedded man, in his estaat,
Lyueþ a lyf blisful and ordinaat, 60
Vnder this yok of mariage ybounde.
Wel may his herte in ioye and blisse
habounde;

ffor who kan be so buxom as a wyf?
Who is so trewe and eek so ententyf
To kepe hym, syk and hool, as is 65
his make?

ffor wele or wo, she wol[e] hym nat
forsake;

She nys nat very hym to loue and
serue,

Thogh þat he lye bedrede til he sterue.
And yet somme clerkes seyn it nys
nat so,

Of whiche he, Theofraste, is oon of 70
tho.

What force though Theofraste liste lye?
"Ne tak[e] no wyf," quod he, "for
housbondrye,

As for to spare in houshold thy dis-
pence;

A trewe seruant dooth moore diligence
Thy good to kepe than thyn owene 75
wyf,

ffor she wol clayme half part al hir lyf.
A'nd if thou be syk—so God me
sauel—

Thy verray freendes or a trewe knaue
Wol kepe thee bet than she, þat
waiteth ay

After thy good, and hath doon many[^]a 80
day.

And if thou take a wyf [vn-to thyn
hoold,

fful lightly maystow been a cokewold]." [^]
This sentence and an hundred thynges
worse

Writeth this man, ther God his bones
corse!

But tak[e] no keep[e] of al swich vany- 85
tee,

Deffie Theofraste, and herke me!

9161. this E.He.D., the G., etc. (Sk.). 69. nys E.C., is He., etc. 70. he E.He., þe G., f. D., etc. 77. if þat C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 81/82. f. C.L. 81. vnto thyn hoold E.G., in thyn age oolde Se., þat to þe is vntrewe P.H.² (für L.), of heye lynage D., be war H.⁴, she wole destroye He. [päter, andere Hand]. 82. G.Se. = E.; ful ofte tyme it shal þe Rwe P.H.², She shal be hauteyn and of gret costage D., Of oon peril. which declare I ne dar H.⁴, Thy good substance and thy body anye He. (wie o.). [Seibe 28. unecht? Tw.; Hertz.]

[E 1311—1339]

[E 1340—1365]

¶A wyf is Goddes yifte verrailly;†)
 Alle othere[re] manere yiftes hardily,
 As londes, rentes, pasture, or commune,
 90 Or moebles, alle been yiftes of ffor-
 tune,
 That passen as a shadwe vpon a wal.
 But dredelees, if pleylnly speke I shal,
 A wyf wol laste, and in thyn hous
 endure
 Wel lenger than thee list, paraurenture.
 95 ¶Máriage is a ful greet sacrament;
 He which þat hath no wyf, I holde
 hym shent.
 He lyueth helplees and al desolat—
 I speke of folk in seculer estaat—,
 And herke why I seye nat this for
 noght,
 100 That womman is for mannes help
 ywroght:
 The hye God, whan he hadde Adam
 maked,
 And saugh hym al allone, bely-naked,
 God of his grete goodness seide
 than,†)
 “Lat vs now make an help vn-to this
 man
 105 Lyk to hym-self,” and thanne he made
 hym Eue.
 Heer(e) may ye se, and heer-by may ye
 preue
 That wyf is mannes help and his con-
 fort,
 His Paradys terrestre, and his disport.
 So buxom and so vertuous is she,
 110 They moste nedes lyue in vnitee;
 O flessch they been, and o flessch, as
 I gesse,
 Hath but oon herte in wele and in
 distresse.
 ¶A wyf—al Seinte Marie, benedicite!
 How myghte a man han any^aaduersitee
 115 That hath a wyf? Certes, I kan nat
 seye;

The blisse which þat is bitwixe hem
 tweye,
 Ther may no tonge telle, or herte
 thynke!
 If he be poure, she helpeth hym to
 swynke,
 She kepeth his good, and wasteth
 neuȝ-a-deel.
 Al that hir housbonde lust, hir(e) 20
 liketh weel;
 She seith nat ones “nay” whan he seith
 “ye.”
 “Do this,” seith he. “Al redy, sire,”
 seith she.
 O blisful ordre of wedlok precious!
 Thou art so murye^a and eek so ver-
 tuous,
 And so commended and appreued eek, 25
 That euery man þat halt hym worth
 a leek
 Vp-on his bare knees oughte al his
 lyf
 Thanken his God, þat hym hath sent
 a wyf,
 Or elles preyē to God hym for to
 sende
 A wyf, to laste vn-to his lyues ende; 30
 ffor thanne his lyf is set in sikernesse.
 He may nat be deceyued, as I gesse,
 So þat he werke after his wyues reed[e];
Thanne may he boldly kepen vp his heed,
They been to trewe and ther-with-al so 35
 wyse;
ffor which, if thou wolt werken as the
 wyse,
Do alwey so as wommen wol thee rede.
 ¶Lo, how þat Iacob, as thise clerkes
 rede,†)
 By good conseil of his mooder Re-
 bekke,
 Bóond the kydes skyn aboute his nekke, 40
 Thurgh which his fadres benyson he
 wan.

9190: vgl. 18591; [Manðgl.] dona fortune. 91: vgl. 12915 u. 19385. 92. dredelees E.G., dreed nat (it nouȝt P.) He., etc. 99. seye G.D.P.L.; id. 9307 (—G); ähnl. 5708, 9447 u. öfter. 9200: I. Mof. II, 18, 24 f. 02. al E.G., f. He., etc. 06. by f. He.G.H.⁴ 16. which þat E.He., that G., etc. (ther D.). 23. of wedlok E.G.D.P., o w. He., etc. 26. euery] any He.D. 34—37. f. E. [vgl. reede 33 u. rede 37!]. 34. kepen He., beryn (—en) G., etc. (Sk.). 37 ff.: vgl. 14008 ff. 41. Thurgh E., ffor He., etc.

[E 1366—1391]

[E 1392—1422]

¶ Lo, Iudith, as the storie^{ee} telle
kan,†)
By wys conseil she Goddes peple
kepte,
And slow hym, Olofernus, whil he
slepte.
¶ Lo Abigayl, by good conseil how
she†)
Saud hir housbonde Nabal, whan pat
he
Sholde han be slayn; and looke, Ester
also†)
By good conseil delyuered out of wo
The peple of God, and made hym,
Mardochee,
Of Assuere enhaunced for to be.
¶ Ther nys no-thing in gree super-
latyf,†)
As seith Senek, aboue an humble wyf.
¶ Suffre thy wyues tonge, as Catoun
bit;
She shal comande, and thou shalt
suffren it,
And yet she wol[e] obeye of curteisye.
A wyf is keper(e) of thyn hous-
bondrye;†)
Wel may the sike man biwaille and
wepe,
Ther-as ther nys no wyf the hous to
kepe.
I warne thee, if wisely thou wolt
wirche,†)
¶ Loue wel thy wyf, as Crist loued his
chirche.
If thou louest thy-self, thou louest thy
wyf;†)
No man hateth his fleesh, but in his lyf.
He fostreth it, and therfore bidde I
thee
Cherisse thy wyf, or thou shalt neuere
thee!
¶ Housbonde and wyf, what so men iape
or pleye,
Of worldly folk holden the siker weye.
They been so knyht, ther may noon harm
bityde,

And namely vp-on the wyues syde—
ffor which this Ianuarie, of whom I
tolde,
Considered hath, inwith hise dayes 70
olde,
The lusty lyf, the vertuous quyete
That is in mariage hony-sweete.
And for his freendes on a day he
sente,
To tellen hem theeffect of his entente.
With face sad his tale he hath hem 75
toold;
He seyde, 'ffreendes, I am hoor and
oold,
And almoost, God woot, on my pittes
brynke;
Vp-on the soule somewhat moste I
thynke.
I hauē my body folily despended;
Blessed be God that it shal been 80
amended!
ffor I wol be certeyn a wedded man,
And that anon, in al the haste I kan.
Vn-to som mayde fair and tendre of
age,
I preyē yow, shapeth for my mariage
Al sodeynly; for I wol nat abyde, 85
And I wol fonde tespien on my syde
To whom I may be wedded hastily.
But for as muche as ye been mo than I,
Ye shullen rather swich a thyng espyen
Than I, and wherē me best werē to 90
allyen.
¶ But o thyng warne I yow, my
freendes deere,
I wol noon oold wyf han in no manere;
She shal nat passe twenty yeer, cer-
tayn.
Oold fissh and yong flessch wolde I
haue fayn;
Bet is,' quod he, 'a pyk than a pykerel, 95
And bet than old[e] boef is the tendre
veel.
I wol no womman thritty yeer of
age—
It is but benestraw and greet forage.

9243. wys] good He.G. 53. Dist. III, 25. 57. 3. Sir. XXXVI, 27 (Vulg. 'egens' f. 'sike'). 58. is He.G.H.⁴ 60. loueth C.P.L. (Sk.), doth H.⁴ [f. Gph. V, 25, 28; vgl. 19214]. 64. Cherisse E.He., Chere D., Chery(s)che G., etc. 66: vgl. 18162. 75. his E.G.P., this He., etc. 78. the E.G., my He., etc. (Sk.). 94. wol (wil) He.P.

[E 1423—1446]

[E 1447—1475]

And eek thise olde wydwes—God it
woot!—
00 They konne so muchel craft on Wades
boot,
So muchel broken harm, whan þat
hem leste,
That with hem sholde I neuere lyue
in reste.
ffor sondry scoles maken sotile clerkis,
Womman of manye scoles half a clerk
is;
05 But, certeynly, a yong thyng may men
gye,
Right as men may warm wex with
handes plye.
Wherfore I seye yow pleynly in a clause,
I wol noon oold wyf han *right* for this
cause.
ffor if so were þat I hadde swich
myschaunce,
10 That I in hir(e) ne koude han no
plesaunce,
Thanne sholde I lede my lyf in auou-
trye,
And go streight [vn]to the deuel whan
I dye;
Ne children sholde I none vp-on hir(e)
geten.
Yet were me leuere [þat] houndes had
me eten
15 Than þat myn heritage sholde falle
In straungé hand, and this I telle
yow alle.
I dote nat, I woot the cause why
Men sholde wedde, and forthermoore
woot I,
Ther speketh many a man of mariage
20 That woot namoore of it than woot
my page,
ffor whiche causes man sholde take
a wyf.
Siththe he may nat lyuen chaast his
lyf,

Tak[e] hym a wyf with greet deuocioun,
By cause of leueful procreacioun
Of children, to thonour of God aboue, 25
And nat oonly for paramour or loue;
And for they sholde leccherye eschue,
And yelde hir dettes whan þat they
ben due;
Or for that ech of hem sholde helpen
oother
In meschief, as a suster shal the 30
brother,
And lyue in chastitee ful holily—
But, sires, by youre leue, that am
nat I.
ffor—God be thanked!—I dar make
auaunt,
I feelþ my lymes stark and suffisaunt
To do al that a man bilongeth to— 35
I woot my-seluen best what I may do.
Though I be hoor, I fare as dooth
a tree
That blometh er þat fruyt ywoven
bee,
And blosmy tree nys neither drye ne
deed.
I feelþ me nowhere hoor but on my 40
heed;
Myn herte and alle my lymes been
as grene
As laurer thurgh the yeer is for to
sene;
And syn þat ye han herd al myn
entente,
I preyþ yow to my wyl ye wole assente.
Diuerse men diuersely hym tolde 45
Of mariage manye ensamples olde.
Somme blamed it, somme preyed it
certeyn;
But atte laste, shortly for to seyn,—
As al day falleth altercacioun
Bitwixen freendes in disputisoun— 50
Ther fil a stryf bitwixe hise bretheren
two,

9300. muche He., etc. 01. þat f. He.G.D. 03. maketh He.C.P.L.; subtil(e) He., etc.
08. right He.D.P.H.⁴, f. E., etc. 09. þat E., if C.L., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 12. go He.D.
(streight go) H.⁴, so C.P.L., f. E.G.; vn-to E. 14. [þat] E.P. 22. Siththe (Sith) E.G.
[I. Siththen?], if He., etc. (Sk.); ne may He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.). 23. Tak G.C.L. 28. dettes ...
they E., dettes ... it D.P.L.H.⁴, dette ... it He.G.C. 31. holily heuenly C.P.L.H.⁴
32: vgl. 5694. 36. self He.G.D.P. 38. þat E.D.C., the He.P., þat þe L.H.⁴, than G.
39. And E.He., þat P., A G., etc. (Sk.). 45: vgl. 4631. 50. despitesoun H.⁴, disputacioun
G., etc.

[E 1476—1502]

[E 1503—1530]

Of whiche that oon was cleped Placebo,
Iustinus soothly called was that oother.
¶ Placebo seyde, 'O Ianuarie, brother!
[¶ Placebo
55 fful litel nede hadde ye, my lord so
deere,
Conseil to axe of any that is heere,
But þat ye been so ful of sapience,
That yow ne liketh, for your(e) heighe
prudence,
To weyuen from the word of Salomon.
60 This word seyde he vn-to vs euerychon:
"Wirke alle thyng by conseil," thus
seyde he,
"And thanne shaltow nat repente thee."
But though þat Salomon spak swich
a word,
Myn owene deere brother and my
lord—
65 So wysly God my soule brynge at
restel—
I holde your(e) owene conseil is the
beste.
ffor brother myn, of me taak this
motyf:
I hauē now been a court-man al my
lyf,
And, God it woot, though I vnworthy
be,
70 I haue stonden in ful greet degree
Abouten lordes of ful heigh estaat,
Yet hadde I neuere with noon of hem
debaat,
I neuere hem contraried, trewely.
I woot wel that my lord kan moore
than I;
75 What that he seith, I holde it ferme
and stable,
I seye the same, or elles thyng sem-
blable.
A ful greet fool is any conseillour
That serueth any lord of heigh hon-
our,

That dar presume, or elles thenken it,
That his conseil sholde passe his lordes
wit!—
80 Nay, lordes been no fooles, by my
fay!
Ye han your(e)-seluen shewed heer to-
day
So heigh sentence, so holily and weel,
That I consente and conferme euery-
deel
Your(e) wordes alle and youre opinioun. 85
By God, ther nys no man in al this
toun,
Nyn Ytaille that koude bet han sayd!
Crist halt hym of this conseil [ful] wel
apayd.
And trewely, it is an heigh corage
Of any man that stapen is in age 90
To take a yong wyf; by my fader
kyn,
Your(e) hertē hangeth on a ioly pyn!
Dooth now in this matiere right as yow
leste,
ffor, finally, I holde it for the beste.
Iustinus, þat ay stille sat and herde, 95
[¶ Iustinus
Right in this wise he to Placebo an-
swerde:
'Now, brother myn, be pacient, I preye,
Syn ye han seyde, and herkneth what
I seye.
¶ Senek, among hise othere wordes
wyse,
Seith þat a man oghte hym right 00
wel auyse
To whom he yeueth his lond or his
catel.
And syn I oghte auyse me right wel
To whom I yeue my good away fro
me,
Wel muchel moore I oghte auysed be
To whom I yeue my body for alwey. 05
I warne yow wel, it is no childes play

9352: bgl. 7657. 60. f. G. 61: J. Sir. XXXII, 19 [bgl. 13911]. 71. of] in He.C.L.H.*; heigh E.G.D., greet He., etc. 79. elles] ones C.P.L.H.* 82. self G., etc.; shewed He.G., seyde E.D., spoken C.P.L., y-spoken H.* 83. weel E.He., so wel G., etc. 87. Nyn E. (Sk.), Ne in He., etc. (Gl.); al ytayil G. (Sk.); that E.G., f. He., etc. (Gl.). 88. haldeþ, conseil f. C.P.L.H.*; ful f. Sk., Gl.; paid D. 90. stopen D.C.L.H.*; stoupeþ P., schapyn G. 96. he f. G.C. (Sk., Gl.) [bgl. 7657]. 99. hise f. He.C.P.L.H.* (Epist. Valer., cap. 9). 9404. meche D., f. G., etc.

[E 1531—1558]

[E 1559—1587]

- To take a wyf with-out[e] auysement;
Men moste enquire—this is myn
assent—
Wher she be wys, or sobre, or dronke-
lewe,
10 Or proud, or elles ootherweys a shrewe,
A chidester(e), or wastour of thy good,
Or riche, or poore, or elles mannyssh
wood.
Al be it so that no man fynden shal
Noon in this world that trotteth hool
in al,
15 Ne man, ne beest, which as men koude
deuysen,
But natheles it oghte ynough suffise
With any wyf, if so were that she
hadde
Mo goode thewes than hir(e) vices
badde.
And al this axeth leyser for tenquere;
20 ffor, God it woot, I haue wept many^a
teere
fful pryuely, syn I haue had a wyf.
Preyse who-so wole a wedded mannes
lyf!
Certein I fynde in it but cost and
care,
And obseruances, of alle blisses bare;
25 And yet, God woot, my neighebores
aboute,
And namely of wommen many^a route,
Seyn þat I haue the mooste stedfast
wyf,
And eek the mekeste oon that bereth
lyf;
But I woot best wher(e) wryngeth me
my sho.
30 Ye mowe, for me, right as yow liketh
do;
Auyseth yow—ye been a man of age—
How that ye entren in-to mariage,
And namely with a yong wyf and a
fair.
By hym þat made water, erthe, and
air!

The yongeste man þat is in al this 35
route
Is bisyⁿough to bryngen it aboute
To han his wyf allone, trusteth me.
Ye shul nat ples[e]n hir(e) fully yeres
thre,
This is to seyn: to doon hir(e) ful ples-
aunce;
A wyf axeth ful many^a obseruaunce. 40
I prey^e yow þat ye be nat yuele apayd.
¶ 'Wel,' quod this Ianuarie, 'and hastow
[y]sayd?
Straw for thy Senek and for thy
prouerbes!
I counte nat a panyer ful of herbes
Of scole termes; wyser men than thou, 45
As thou hast herd, assenteden right
now
To my purpos; Placebo, what seye ye?
¶ 'I seye it is a cursed man,' quod
he,
'That letteth matrimoine, sikerly.'
And with that word they rysen sodeyn- 50
ly,
And been assented fully þat he sholde
Be wedded whanne hym list, and wher
he wolde.
Heigh fantasye and curious bisynesse
ffro day to day gan in the soule im-
presse
Of Ianuarie^a aboute his mariage. 55
Many fair shap, and many^a fair vis-
age
Ther passeth thurgh his herte nyght
by nyght,
As who-so tooke a mirour polisshed
bryght,
And sette it in a commune market-
place,
Thanne sholde he se ful many^a fi- 60
gure pace
By his mirour; and in the same wyse
Gan Ianuarie^a inwith his thoght deuysen
Of maydens whiche þat dwellen hym
bisyde.

9407. with-out[e] G.C.P.H.⁴ 09. or sobre E.C.H.⁴, and (f. P.) s. He., etc. 11. a wast our D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 15. which E.G., swich He., etc. (Sk.). 21. syn(s) I haue hadde E.H.⁴, syn (siþ) þat (siþens P.) I hadde He., etc. 24. obseruaunce H.⁴ (Gl.). 28. oon f. He. 38. ples[e] G.D.H.⁴ 42. and f. G.; ysayd E.He., al sayd C.P.L. 63. dwellen E.G.P., dwelten He., etc. (Sk.).

[E 1588—1615]

[E 1616—1643]

He wiste nat wher þat he myghte
abyde;

65 ffor if þat oon hauē beautee in hir
face,

Another stant so in the peples grace
ffor hir sadnesse and hir benyngnytee,
That of the peple grettest voys hath
she;

And somme were riche, and hadden
badde name.

70 But nathelees, bitwixe earnest and game,
He atte last apoynted hym on oon,
And leet alle othere from his herte
goon,

And chees hir(e) of his owene auctori-
tee;

ffor loue is blynd al day, and may nat
see.

75 And whan þat he was in his bed
ybrought,

He purtreȳd in his herte and in his
thoght

Hir fresshe beautee and hir age tendre,
Hir middel smal, hir(e) armes longe and
sklendre,

Hir wise gouernaunce, hir gentillesse,

80 Hir wommanly berynge, and hir sad-
nesse.

And whan that he on hir(e) was con-
descended,

Hym thoughte his choys myghte nat
ben amended.

ffor whan þat he hym-self concluded
hadde,

Hym thoughte ech oother mannes wit
so badde,

85 That impossible it were to rep[p]lye
Agayn his choys: this was his fantasye.
Hise freendes sente he to at his in-
staunce,

And preyed hem to doon hym that
plesaunce,

That hastily they wolden to hym come,

90 He wolde abregge hir labour, alle and
some;

Nedeth namoore for hym to go ne
ryde,

He was apoynted ther he wolde abyde.

¶ Placebo cam, and eek hise freendes
soone,

And alderfirst he bad hem alle a
boone:

That noon of hem none argumentes 98
make

Agayn the purpos which þat he hath
take,

Which purpos was plesant to God,
seyde he,

And verray ground of his prosperitee.

¶ He seyde ther was a mayden in
the toun

Which þat of beautee hadde greet 00
renoun;

Al were it so she were of smal degree,
Suffiseth hym hir yowthe and hir
beautee;

Which mayde, he seyde, he wolde
han to his wyf,

To lede in ese and hoolynesse his lyf,
And thanked God þat he myghte han 03
hir(e) al,

Thát no wight his blisse parten shal;
And preyed hem to laboure in this
nede,

And shapen þat he faille nat to spede;
ffor thanne, he seyde, his spirit was
at ese:

‘Thanne is,’ quod he, ‘no-thing may 10
me displese,

Saue o thyng priketh in my conscience,
The which I wol reherce in youre pre-
sence.

¶ ‘I hauē,’ quod he, ‘herd seyde ful
yoore ago,

Ther may no man han parfitē blisses
two,

This is to seye: in erthe and eek in 15
heuene.

ffor though he kepe hym fro the synnes
seuene,

And eek from euery branche of thilke
tree,

Yet is ther so parfit felicitee,
And so greet ese and lust in mariage,

9506. of his G. (Sk.), wip his C.L. 07. preyde E.He.L. (Sk., Gl.), preieþ Pe., -ede G., -ed D.C.H.⁴ [vgl. 9488]; labouren He. (Sk.). 16: vgl. 18526 ff.

[E 1644—1671]

[E 1672—1700]

That euere I am agast, now in myn
age,

That I shal lede now so myrie a lyf,
So delicat, with-outen wo and stryf,
That I shal hauē myn heuene in erthe
heere.

ffor sith þat verray heuene is boght so
deere

With tribulacion and greet penance,
How sholde I thanne, þat lyue in swich
plesaunce,

As alle wedded men doon with hir(e)
wyuys,

Come to the blisse ther Crist eterne
on lyue is?

Ther is my drede, and ye, my bre-
theren tweye,

Assoilleth me this question, I preyel'

¶ Iustinus, which þat hated his folye,
[¶ *Iustinus*

Answerde anon right in his iaperye,
And for he wolde his longe tale abregge,
He wolde noon auctoritee allegge,
But seyde, 'Sire, so ther be noon ob-
stacle

Oother than this, God of his hygh
myracle

And of his [hygh] mercy may so for
yow wirche,

That, er ye hauē youre right of hooly
chirche,

Ye may repente of wedded mannes lyf,
In which ye seyn ther is no wo ne
stryf;

And elles, God forbede but he sente
A wedded man hym grace to repente
Wel ofte rather than a sengle man.
And therefore, sire—the beste reed I
kan—

Dispeire yow noght, but haue in youre
memorie:

Paraunter she may be youre purgatorie,
She may be Goddes meene and Goddes
whippe;

Thanne shal youre soulē vp to heuene
skippe

Swifter than dooth an arwe out of the
bowe.

I hope to God her-after shul ye knowe 50
That ther nys no so greet felicitee
In mariage, ne neuere-mo shal bee,
That yow shal lette of youre sauacion,
So that ye vse, as skile is and reson.
The lustes of your(e) wyf attemprely, 55
And þat ye plesē hir(e) nat to amorous-
ly,

And þat ye kepe yow eek from oother
synne.

My tale is doon, *sire*, for my wit is
thynne.

[Beth nat agast her-of, my brother
deere]

But lat vs waden out of this mateere. 60
The wyf of Bathe, if ye han vnder-
stonde,

Of mariage, which ye haue on honde,
Declared hath ful wel in litel space.
ffareth now wel, God hauē yow in his
grace!']

And with this word this Iustyn and his 65
brother

Han take hir leue, and ech of hem of
oother.

ffor whan they saugh(e) that it moste
be,

They wroghten so by sly and wys
treete,

That she, this mayden, which þat
Mayus highte,

As hastily as euere that she myghte, 70
Shal wedded be vn-to this Ianuarie.
I trowe it were to longe yow to tarie,
If I yow tolde of euery scrit and
bond

By which þat she was feffed in his
lond,

Or for to herkennen of hir riche array. 75
But finally ycomen is the day

9525. tribulacions He.G.D. 37. [hygh] E. 48. [Nā] soule Giat? Eb. 1. the heuene? Bgl. 2561, 9846, 10465.] 50. shul ye E.D., schalt þou C.L., ye shul He., etc. 52. mo E.He., mor(e) G., etc. 58. but thinne Tw.; *sire*: nicht in b. Bfl. u. Edd. 59—64: väterer Zulaß? 60—63. Sk., 61—63. Gl. in *Mannern*. 62. ye] we He.D. (Sk.). 65. that word He.G.D.H.⁴ 67. that f. C.P.L. (Sk.); moste nedes be He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 76. the E.G.P., that He.D.H.⁴, þis C.L.

[E 1701-1732]

[E 1733-1761]

That to the chirche bothe be they went,
ffor to receyue the hooly sacrament.
fforth comth the preest with stole
aboute his nekke,

80 And bad hir(e) be lyk [to] Sarra and
Rebekke

In wysdom and in trouthe of mariage,
And seyde hise orisons as is vsage,
And croucheth hem, and bad God
sholde hem blesse,
And made al siker ynogh with hooly-
nesse.

85 ¶ Thus been they wedded with so-
lempnitee,

And at the feeste sitteth he and she
With othere worthy folk vp-on the
days.

Al ful of ioye and blisse is the paleys,
And ful of instrumentz and of vitaille,
90 The moste deynteuous of al[] Ytaille.
Biforn hem stooode[n] instrumentz of
swich soun,

That Orpheus, nè of Thebes Amphioun,
Ne maden neuere swich a melodye.
¶ At every cours thanne cam loud
mynstralcy,

95 That neuere tromped Ioab for to heere,
Nor he, Theodomas, yet half so cleere
At Thebes, whan the citee was in doute.
Bacus the wyn hem skynketh al aboute,
And Venus laugheth vp-on every wight,
00 ffor Ianuarie was bicomme hir knyght,
And wolde bothe assayen his corage
In libertee and eek in mariage,
And, with hir fyrbrond in hir hand,
aboute

Daunceth biforn the bryde and al the
route;

05 And certainly, I dar right wel seyn
this:

Ymenëus, that god of weddyng is,
Saugh neuere his lyf so myrie a wed-
ded man.

Hoold thou thy pees! thou poetë Mar-
cian,

That writest vs that ilke weddyng murie
Of hir(e), Philologie, and hym, Mercurie, 10
And of the songes that the Muses
songe—

To smal is bothë thy penne and eek thy
tonge

ffor to descryuen of this mariage.
Whan tendre youthe hath wedded
stoupyng age,

Ther is swich myrthe, þat it may nat 15
be written;

Assayeth it your(e)-self, thanne may
ye witen

If that I lye or noon in this matiere.
¶ Mayus, that sit with so benyngne a
chiere,

Hir(e) to biholde it semed faierye.

Queene Ester looked neuere with swich 20
an [e]yë

On Assuer, so meke a look hath she.
I may yow nat deuyse al hir beautee,
But thus muche of hir beautee telle
I may,

That she was lyk the brighte morwe
of May,

ffulfild of alle beautee and plesaunce. 25
¶ This Ianuarie is rauyssed in a
traunce

At every tyme he looked on hir face:
But in his herte he gan hir(e) to
manace

That he that nyght in armes wolde
hir(e) streyne

Harder than euere Parys dide Eleyne. 30

But nathelees yet hadde he greet pitee
That thilke nyght offenden hir(e) moste
he,

And thoughte, 'Allas! o tendre crea-
ture!

Now wolde God ye myghte wel en-
dure

Al my corage, it is so sharp and keene, 35
I am agast ye shul it nat susteene,
But God forbede þat I dide al my
myght!

9580. [to] E. 82. hir E. 83. crouched D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 91. stooode He.G.H.⁴, were there D., f. C.P.L.; swiche Instrumentz of swich soun He., swich instrument(s) of s. G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), of i. which (a) soun C.P.L. 92. nof He., nor G.D. 96. Nor E., Ne He.G.D.H.⁴, Neiper C.P.L. 98. skynketh E., shenketh He., etc. 9810. hym E.G.D., he He.H.⁴, of C.P.L. 19. fayerie C.P.H.⁴; bgl. 6441, 9915, etc.

[E 1762—1786]

[E 1787—1815]

Now wolde God þat it were woxen
 nyght,
 And that the nyght wolde lasten euere-
 mo!
 40 I wolde that al this peple were ago!
 And finally he dooth al his labour
 As he best myghte, sauynge his hon-
 our,
 To haste hem fro the mete in subtil
 wyse.
 ¶ The tyme cam that resoun was to
 ryse,
 45 And after that men daunce and drynken
 faste,
 And spices al aboute the hous they
 caste,
 And ful of ioie and blisse is euery
 man—
 Al[] but a squyer highte Damyan,
 Which carf biforn the knyght ful
 many[^]a day.
 50 He was so rauysshēd on his lady
 May,
 That for the verray payne he was
 ny wood;
 Almost he swelte and swowned ther
 he stood:
 So soore hath Venus hurt hym with
 hir brond,
 As þat she bar it daunsynge in hir
 hond;
 55 And to his bed he wente hym hastily.
 Namore of hym at this tyme speke I,
 But ther(e) I lete hym wepe ynogh and
 pleyne,
 Til fresshe May wol rewen on his
 payne.
 O perilous fyr, that in the bedstraw
 bredeth! [¶ *Auctor*
 60 O famulier foo, that his seruyce bedeth!
 O seruant traytour! falsē hoornly hewe,
 Lyk to the naddre, in bosom sly vn-
 trewel!

God shilde vs alle from youre aqueynt-
 aunce!
 O Ianuarie, dronken in plesance
 In mariage! se how thy Damyan, 65
 Thyn owene squier and thy borne man,
 Entendeth for to do thee vileynye!
 God graunte thee thyn hoornly fo
 tespye!
 ffor in this world nys worse pestilence
 Than hoornly foo al day in thy pre- 70
 sence.
 ¶ Parfourned hath the sonne his ark
 diurne,
 No lenger may the body[^]of hym
 soiurne
 On thorisonte, as in that latitude.
 Night with his mantel, þat is derk
 and rude,
 Gan ouersprede the Hemysperie[^]aboute, 75
 ffor which departed is this lusty route
 ffor Ianuariē, with thank on euery syde.
 Hoorn to hir houses lustily they ryde,
 Wher(e)-as they doon hir thynges as
 hem leste,
 And whan they sye hir tyme, goon to 80
 reste.
 Soone after that, this hastif Ianuarie
 Wolde go to bedde, he wolde no
 lenger tarye.
 He drynketh ypocras, claree, and ver-
 nage
 Of spices hoote, tencreessen his corage,
 And many[^]a letuarie[^]hath he ful fyn, 85
 Swiche as the *cursed* monk daun Con-
 stantyn
 Hath writen in his book 'de coitu';
 To ete[n] hem alle he nas no-thing
 eschu.
 And to hise priuee freendes thus seyde
 he:
 'ffor Goddes loue, as soone as it may be, 90
 Lat voyden al this hous in curteys
 wyse!'

9652. ther] as He.G.D.H.⁴ 56. as at H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); I f. E. 62: Phaedrus IV, 18.
 65. In] Of P.H.⁴ (Sk.), O C.L. 66. bore G., borne C.L.H.⁴, born E., etc. 68. espye
 He.H.⁴, to (for to P.) asprie C.P.L., to spye D. (Boeth. III, pr. 5). 75. Themisperie(s)
 He.G.H.⁴, the Emysperye D., þe mysperye (þe misprey) C.P.L. 77. ffor(m) E.G.H.⁴, ffor
 He., etc. [I. Ianuarie = C.P.L.(-er)? beagl. 9735, 9832, etc.]. 78. hous E.D.H.⁴ 80. sye E.,
 say (saw, etc.) He., etc. 81. hasty He.D.H.⁴, lusty G. 82. Wol . . . wol He.G.C.P.L.
 85. hath E., hadde He., etc. (Sk.). 86. cursed f. E. 88. ete G.D.H.⁴

[E 1816—1844]

[E 1845—1871]

And they han doon right as he wol
deuyse.
Men drynken, and the trauers drawe
anon.
The bryde was broght a-bedde as stille
as stoon;
95 And whan the bed was with the preest
yblessed,
Out of the chambre hath euery wight
hym dressed,
And Ianuarie hath faste in armes take
His fresshe May, his Paradys, his make.
He lulleth hir(e), he kisseth hir(e) ful
ofte
00 With thilke brustles of his berd vnsofte,
Lyk to the skyn of houndfyssh, sharp
as brere,
ffor he was shaue al newe in his
manere.
He rubbeth hir(e) aboute hir tendre
face,
And seyde thus: 'Allas! I moot trespase
05 To yow, my spouse, and yow greetly
offende,
Er tyme comē þat I wil down descende.
But nathelees, considereth this,' quod
he,
'Ther nys no werkman, what-so-euere
he be,
That may bothe werke wel and hastily,
10 This wol be doon at leyser parfitly.
It is no fors how longe þat we pleye,
In trewe wedlok wedded be we tweye,
And blessed be the yok þat we been
inne,
ffor in actes we mowe do no synne.
15 A man may do no synne with his wyf,
Ne hurte hym-seluen with his owene
knyf;
ffor we han leue to pleye vs by the
lawe.'
Thus labourēth he til þat the day gan
dawe,
And thanne he taketh a sop(e) in fyn[e]
clarree,
20 And vpright in his bed thanne sitteth
he;

And after that he sang ful loude and
cleere,
And kiste his wyf, and made wan-
town[e] cheere.
He was al coltish, ful of ragerye,
And ful of iargon as a flekked pye.
The slakke skyn aboute his nekke 25
shaketh
Whil þat he sang—so chaunteth he and
craketh.
But God woot what þat May thoughte
in hir herte,
Whan she hym saugh vp sittynge in
his sherte,
In his nyght-cappe, and with his nekke
lene!
She preyseth nat his pleyng worth 30
a bene.
Thanne seide he thus, 'My reste wol I
take;
Now day is come, I may no lenger
wake.'
And doun he leyde his heed, and
sleep til pryme.
And afterward, whan þat he saugh his
tyme,
Vp ryseth Ianuarie, but fresshe May 35
Héeld hir chambre vn-to the fourthe
day,
As vsage is of wyues for the beste;
ffor euery labour som-tyme moot han
reste,
Or elles longe may he nat endure;
This is to seyn: no lyues creature, 40
Be it of fyssh, or bryd, or beest,
or man.
Now wol I speke of woful Damyan,
That langwissheth for loue, as ye shul
heere;
Therefore I speke to hym in this
manere:
¶ I seye, 'O sely Damyan, alas! 45
[¶ Auctor
An[d]swerē to my demaunde, as in this
cas.
How shaltow to thy lady, fresshe
May,

9712. wedded E., complete L., coupled He., etc. (Gl.). 14. oure actis C.P.L. (Sk.).
15. vgl. 19114 u. 19174. 36. holt C., Holdep P.L.H.* (Sk.) [hirē Gl.]. 41. of f. He.H.*

[E 1872—1903]

[E 1904—1932]

Telle thy wo? She wol[e] alwey seye
'nay.'

Eek if thou speke, she wol thy wo
biwrewe.

50 God be thyn help! I kan no bettre
seye.'

¶ This sike Damyan in Venus fyr
So brenneth, that he dyeth for desyr,
ffor which he putte his lyf in auenture.
No lenger myghte he in this wo endure;

55 But priuely a penner gan he borwe,
And in a lettre wroot he al his sorwe,
In manere of a compleynt or a lay,
Vn-to his faire fresshe lady May.
And in a purs of sylk, heng on his
sherte,

60 He hath it put, and leyde it at his
herte.

The moone, that at noon was thilke
day

That Ianuarie^h hath wedded fresshe
May

In two of Tawr, was in-to Cancre
glyden.

So longe hath Mayus in hir chambre
byden,

65 As custume is vn-to thise nobles alle:
A bryde shal nat eten in the halle
Til dayes foure, or .iiij. dayes atte leeste,
Ypassed been; thanne lat hir(e) go
to feeste.

The fourthe day compleet fro noon to
noon,

70 Whan þat the heighe masse was ydoon,
In halle sit this Ianuarie^h and May,
As fressh as is the brighte someres day.
And so bifel how that this goode man
Remembred hym vpon this Damyan,

75 And seyde, 'Seynte Marie!^h how may
this be

That Damyan entendeth nat to me?
Is he ay syk? Or how may this bi-
tyde?'

Hise squieres, whiche that stoden ther
bisyde,

Excused hym by cause of his siknesse,

Which letted hym to doon his bisy- 80
nesse;

Noon oother cause myghte make hym
tarye.

¶ 'That me forthynketh,' quod this
Ianuarie,

'He is a gentil squier, by my trouthe!
If that he deyde, it werè harm and
routhe.

He is as wys, discreet, and as secree 85
As any man I woot of his degree,

And ther-to manly and eek seruysable,
And for to been a thrifty man right
able.

But after mete, as soone as euere I
may,

I wol my-self visite hym, and eek 90
May,

To doon hym al the confort that I
kan.'

And for that word hym blessed euery
man,

That, of his bountee and his gentillesse,
He wolde so conforten in siknesse

His squier, for it was a gentil dede. 95
'Dame,' quod this Ianuarie, 'taak good
hede,

At after-noon ye with youre wommen
alle,

Whan ye han been in chambre out
of this halle,

That alle ye go se this Damyan.

Dooth hym disport—he is a gentil man, 00
And telleth hym that I wol hym visite,

Haue I no-thing but rested me a
lite;

And spedē yow faste, for I wol[e]
abyde

Til þat ye slepe faste by my syde.'

And with that word he gan to hym 05
to calle

A squier, that was marchal of his
halle,

And tolde hym certeyn thynges, what
he wolde.

¶ This fresshe May hath streight hir
wey yholde

9764. byden E.P.L., abyden He., etc. 67. thre He., etc. 85. as secree] eek s. He.H.⁴
secre C.P.L. 99. se E., to He., to se G., etc.

[E 1933—1958]

[E 1959—1987]

With alle hir wommen vn-to Damyan.
 10 Doun by his beddes syde sit she than,
 Confortynge hym as goodly as she
 may.
 This Damyan, whan that his tyme
 he say,
 In secree wise his purs and eek his
 bille,
 In which þat he ywriten hadde his
 wille,
 15 Hath put in-to hir hand with-outen
 moore,
 Sauē þat he siketh wonder depe and
 soore,
 And softly to hir(e) right thus seyde
 he:
 'Mercy, and that ye nat discouere
 me!
 ffor I am deed if that this thyng
 be kyd.'
 20 This purs hath she inwith hir bosom
 hyd,
 And wente hir wey—ye gete namoore
 of me.
 But vn-to Ianuariē ycome[n] is she,
 That on his beddes syde sit ful softe.
 He taketh hir(e), and kisseth hir(e)
 ful ofte,
 25 And leyde hym doun to slepe, and that
 anon.
 She feyned hir(e) as that she moste
 gon
 Ther-as ye woot þat euery wight moot
 neede.
 And whan she of this bille hath taken
 heede,
 She rente it al to cloutes atte laste,
 30 And in the pryuee softly it caste.
 Who studieth now but faire fresshe
 May?
 Adoun by olde Ianuariē she lay,
 That sleep til þat the coughe hath hym
 awaked.
 Anon he preyde hir(e) strepen hir(e)
 al naked,

He wolde of hir(e), he seyde, han 35
 som plesaunce,
 And seyde hir clothes dide hym en-
 combraunce.
 And she obeyeth—be hir(e) lief or
 looth.
 But lest ye precious folk be with me
 wrooth,
 How that he wroghte, I dar nat to
 yow telle,
 Or wheiþer [þat] hir(e) thoughte it 40
 Paradys or helle.
 But heere I lete hem werken in hir
 wyse,
 Til euensong rong, and þat they moste
 aryse.
 Were it by destynce or by auenture,
 Were it by influence or by nature,
 Or constellacion, that in swich estaat 45
 The heuene stood, that tyme fortunaat
 Was for to putte a bille of Venus
 werkes—
 ffor alle thyng hath tyme, as seyn
 thise clerkes—
 To any woman for to gete hir loue,
 I kan nat seye, but grete God aboue, 50
 That knoweth that noon act is cause-
 lees,
 He deme of al, for I wol[e] holde my
 pees.
 But sooth is this, how that this fresshe
 May
 Hath take swich impression that day
 ffor pitee of this sike Damyan, 55
 That from hir herte she ne dryue kan
 The remembrance for to doon hym ese.
 'Certeyn,' thoughte she, 'whom þat this
 thyng displese,
 I rekke noght, for heere I hym assure
 To loue hym best of any creature, 60
 Though he namoore hadde than his
 sherte.'
 Lo, pitee renneth soone in gentil herte!
 ¶ Heere may ye se how excellent
 franchise

9822. comen D.L.H.⁴, ycomen E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 29. atte E.H.⁴, at the He., etc. 34. preyde He.H.⁴, p. hire E., etc. 36. And E.G.D., He He., etc. 38. ye E., the G., that He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 40. þat E.C.P.L., f. He., etc. 42. pat] than(ne) G.H.⁴ (Gl.). 43. or L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), or by E., etc.; vgl. 9544. 47. Was] As He.H.⁴, f. G. 55. ffor... of E., Of... on He., Of... of G.D.H.⁴, On... of C.P., On... on L. 62: vgl. 1761, 10795.

[E 1988—2017]

[E 2018—2050]

In wommen is, whan they hem narwe
 auyse.
 65 Som tyrant is, as ther be many oon,
 That hath an herte as hard as any
 stoon,
 Which wolde han lat hym steruen in
 the place
 Wel rather than han graunted hym
 hir grace,
 And hem reioysen in hir crueel pryde,
 70 And rekke nat to been an homycide.
 ¶ This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee,
 Right of hir hand a lettre made she,
 In which she graunteth hym hir verray
 grace.
 Ther lakketh noght, oonly but day
 and place
 75 Wher þat she myghte vn-to his lust
 suffise;
 ffor it shal be right as he wol[e]
 deuyse.
 And whan she saugh hir tyme vp-on
 a day,
 To visite this Damyan gooth May,
 And sotilly this lettre doun she threste
 80 Vnder his pilwe, rede it if hym leste.
 She taketh hym by the hand, and
 harde hym twiste
 So secrely, that no wight of it wiste,
 And bad hym been al hool, and forth
 she wente
 To Ianuarië, whan þat he for hire
 sente.
 85 Vp riseth Damyan the nexte morwe;
 Al passed was his siknesse and his
 sorwe.
 He kembeth hym, he preyneth hym and
 pyketh,
 He dooth al that his lady lust and
 lyketh;
 And eek to Ianuarië he gooth as lowe
 90 As euere dide a dogge for the bowe.
 He is so plesant vn-to euery man—
 ffor craft is al who-so that do it kan—
 That euery wight is fayn to speke
 hym good;

And fully in his lady grace he stood.
 Thus lete I Damyan aboute his nede, 95
 And in my tale forth I wol procede.
 ¶ Somme clerkes holden that felicitee
 Stant in delit, and therfore certeyn
 he,
 This noble Ianuarië, with al his myght
 In honeste wyse, as longeth to a knyght, 100
 Shoop hym to lyue ful deliciously.
 His housynge, his array as honestly
 To his degree was maked as a kynges.
 Amonges othere of hise honeste thynges
 He made a gardyn, walled al with 105
 stoon.
 So fair a gardyn woot I nowher noon;
 ffor, out of doute, I verrailly suppose
 That he þat wroot the romance of the
 Rose
 Ne koude of it the beautee wel deuyse;
 Ne Priapus ne myghte nat suffise, 110
 Though he be god of gardyns, for
 to telle
 The beautee of the gardyn and the
 welle,
 That stood vnder a laurer alwey grene.
 fful ofte tyme he, Pluto, and his queene
 Proserpina, and al hir fairye 115
 Disporten hem, and maken melodye
 Aboute that welle, and daunced, as
 men tolde.
 ¶ This noble knyght, this Ianuarië the
 olde,
 Swich deyntee hath in it to walke
 and pleye,
 That he wol no wight suffren bere 120
 the keye
 Saue he hym-self; for of the smale
 wykét
 He baar alwey of siluer a clykét,
 With which, whan þat hym leste, he
 it vnshette.
 And whan he wolde paye his wyf
 hir dette
 In somer seson, thider wolde he go, 125
 And May, his wyf, and no wight but
 they two;

9866. any] is a He.G.H.⁴ 67. storuen E. (Gl.). 72. maked He.G.H.⁴, maketh D.
 74. but only G.H.⁴ (Sk.). 83. she] he E. 84. hire] hym E. 87. prayneth He.G.², pruneth
 H.⁴, proyneth D., etc. (Sk.). 9910: f. Ov., Fast., I, 415. 15. fayerie C.H.⁴; vgl. 9619.
 22. a smal cl. H.⁴ (Sk.).

[E 2051—2079]

[E 2080—2110]

And thynges whiche þat were nat doon
a-bedde,

He in the gardyn parfourned hem
and spedde.

And in this wyse manye a murye day
30 Lyued this Ianuarie and fresshe May.
But worldly ioye may nat alwey dure
To Ianuarie, ne to no creature.

O sodeyn hap! o thou fortune instable!
[¶ Auctor

Lyk to the scorpion so deceyuable,
35 That flaterest with thyn heed whan
thou wolt styng,
Thy tayl is deeth thurgh thyn enuenym-
yng!

O brotil ioye! o sweete venym queynte!
O monstre, that so subtilly kanst
peynte

Thy yiftes vnder hewe of stidefast-
nesse,
40 That thou deceyuest bothe moore and
lesse!

Why hastow Ianuarie thus deceyued,
That haddest hym for thy ful freend
receyued?

And now thou hast biraft hym bothe
hise [e]yē,
ffor sorwe of which desireth he to
dyen.

45 ¶ Allas! this noble Ianuarie free,
Amydde his lust and his prosperitee,
Is woxen blynd, and that al sodeynly!
He wepeth and he wayleth pitously,
And ther-with-al the fyr of ialousye,

50 Lest þat his wyf sholdē falle in som
folye,

So brente his herte, that he wolde
fayn

That som man bothē hym and hir(e)
had slayn.

ffor neither after his deeth, nor in his
lyf,

Ne wolde he þat she were louē ne
wyf,

55 But euere lyue as wydwe in clothes
blake,

Soul as the turtle þat lost hath hir
make.

But atte laste, after a monthe or tweye,
His sorwe gan aswage, sooth to seye;
ffor whan he wiste it may noon oother
be,

He paciently took his aduersitee,
Saue, out of doutē, he may nat forgoon
That he nas ialous euere moore in oon;
Which ialousye it was so outrageous,
That neither in halle, nyn noon oother
hous,

Nyn noon oother place neuerthemo, 6
He nolde suffre hir(e) for to ryde or
go,

But if þat he had hond on hir(e) al-
way;

ffor which ful ofte wepeth fresshe May,
That loueth Damyan so benyngnely,
That she moot outhir dyen sodeynly, 7
Or elles she moot han hym as hire
leste;

She wayteth whan hir herte wolde
breste.

¶ Vp-on that oother syde Damyan
Bicomen is the sorwefulleste man
That euere was; for neither nyght ne 8
day

Ne myghte he speke a word to fresshe
May,

As to his purpos, of no swich mateere,
But if that Ianuarie moste it heere,
That hadde an hand vp-on hir(e) euere-
mo.

But nathelees, by writyng to and fro, 8
And priuee signes, wiste he what she
mente,

And she knew eek the fyn of his
entente.

O Ianuarie! what myghte it thee auaille
[¶ Auctor

Thogh thou myghte[st] se as fer as
shippes saille?

ffor as good is blynd deceyued be 8
As [to] be deceyued whan a man may
se.

9933. vnstable He., etc. [vgl. Ch.'s 'Fortune' & Boeth. II, pr. 1]. 35. synge E. 50. som] swich E. 52. hym and hire E.G., hire and hym He., etc. 65. Ne in He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. Thogh E.D.L., If H.⁴, f. He., etc. (Sk.); myght D.L.H.⁴, myghtest E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 85. as] also G.L. (Sk., Gl.). 86. [to] f. D. (Sk.).

[E 2111—2137]

[E 2138—2165]

¶ Lo Argus, which þat hadde an
hondred [e]yēn,
ffor al þat euere he koude poure or
pryen,
Yet was he blent, and, God woot, so
been mo
90 That wenen wisly that it be nat so.
Passe ouer is an ese—I seye namoore.
¶ This fresshe May, þat I spak of so
yoore,
In warm wex hath emprented the clykēt
That Ianuariē bar of the smale wykēt,
95 By which in-to his gardyn ofte he
wente.
And Damyan, that knew al hir entente,
The cliket countrefeted pryuely.
Ther nys namoore to seye; but hastily
Som wonder by this clyket shal bityde,
00 Which ye shul heeren if ye wole abyde.
¶ O noble Ouyde! ful sooth seystou,
God woot: [¶ Auctor
“What sleighte is it, thogh it be long
and hoot,
That loue nyl fynde it out in som
manere?”
By Piramus and Tisbee may men leere;
05 Thogh they were kept ful longe streite
oueral,
They been accorded, rownynge thurgh
a wal,
Ther no wight koude han founde out
swich a sleighte.
¶ But now to purpos!—Er þat dayes
eichte
Were passed, er the monthe of Iul,
bifil[le],
10 That Ianuariē hath caught so greet
a wil[le],
Thurgh eggyng of his wyf, hym for
to pleye
In his gardyn, and no wight but they
tweye,
That in a morwe vn-to this May seith
he:

‘Rys vp, my wyf, my loue, my lady
free!
The turtle voys is herd, my dowue 15
sweete!
The wynter is goon with his reynes
weete.
Com forth now with thyne [e]yēn co-
lumbyn!
How fairer been thy brestes than is
wyn!—
The gardyn is enclosed al aboute—
Com forth, my white spouse! Out of 20
doute
Thou hast me wounded in myn herte,
o wyf!
No spot of thee ne knew I al my lyf.
Com[e] forth, and lat vs taken som
disport!
I chees thee for my wyf and my con-
fort.’
¶ Swiche olde lewed wordes vsed he. 25
On Damyan a signe made she,
That he shold go biforn with his cliket.
This Damyan thanne hath opened the
wykēt,
And in he stirte, and that in swich
manere,
That no wight myghte it se, neither 30
yheere;
And stille he sit vnder a bussh anon.
¶ This Ianuariē, as blynd as is a stoon,
With Mayus in his hand, and no
wight mo,
In-to this fresshe gardyn is ago,
And clapte to the wyket sodeynly. 35
¶ ‘Now wyf,’ quod he, ‘heere nys but
thou and I,
That art the creature that I best loue.
ffor by that Lord þat sit in heuene
about!
Léuere ich hadde to dyen on a knyf
Than thee offende, trewe deere wyf! 40
ffor Goddes sake, thenke how I thee
chees!

9991. 1] and He.C.P.L. 93. warme D.P.L.(Sk.) [?]. 94. the E.D.H.⁴, þis C., that He., etc. 96. his He.G.H.⁴ 10001. ful E.G.D., wel He.H.⁴, f. C.P.L. 03. loue D., he E., etc. [j. Ovid, Met. IV, 68]. 04. Tisbee G.D.P., Tesbee E. (Sk., Gl.), Thesbe He.L.H.⁴, Thysbe C. [Met. IV, 55]. 09. Juyn Gl. [?]; be-fel G. (bifil Sk.). 10. wyl G. (Sk.). 13. this] his He.C.P.L. 15. turtle(-ell) E.G., Turtles He., etc. (Sk.) [Johe Zieb Cat. II, 10 ff.]. 16. his E. päter, f. He.; alle his C.P. (Sk., Gl.), al L.; hise G.D. [vgl. 5480]. 23. som E., oure He., etc. (Sk.). 27. biforen Sk. [?]. 39. to f. C.P.L. (Sk.).

[E 2166—2191]

[E 2192—2221]

Noght for no coueitise, doutelees,
 But oonly for the loue I had to thee.
 And though þat I be oold, and may
 nat see,
 45 Beth to me trewe, and I shal telle
 yow why;
 Thre thynges, certes, shal ye wynne
 ther-by:
 ffirst loue of Crist, and to your(e)-self
 honour,
 And al myn heritage, toun and tour;
 I yeue it yow, maketh chartres as
 yow leste.
 50 This shal be doon tomorwe er sonne
 reste,
 So wisly God my soule brynge in
 blisse!
 I preyē yow first in couenant ye me
 kisse,
 And though þat I be ialous, wyte me
 noght!
 Ye been so depe enprented in my
 thoght,
 55 That, whan I considere youre beautee,
 And ther-with-al the vnlikly elde of me,
 I may nat certes, though I sholde dye,
 fforberē to been out of youre com-
 paignye—
 ffor verray louē this is, with-outen
 doute;
 60 Now kisse me, wyf, and lat vs rome
 aboute!
 ¶ This fresshe May, whan she thise
 wordes herde,
 Benyngnely to Ianuarie answerde;
 But first and forward she bigan to
 wepe:
 'I hauē,' quod she, 'a soule for to
 kepe
 65 As wel as ye, and also myn honour,
 And of my wyfthod thilke tendre flour
 Which þat I haue assured in your(e)
 hond,
 Whan þat the preest to yow my body
 bond.

Wherefore I wol[e] answeere in this
 manere
 By the leue of yow, my lord so deere: 7
 I preyē to God þat neuere dawē the
 day
 That I ne sterue as foule as womman
 may,
 If euere I do vn-to my kyn that
 shame,
 Or elles I empeyre so my name,
 That I be fals; and if I do that lak[ke], 7
 Do strepe me, and put me in a sak[ke],
 And in the nexte ryuer do me drenche.
 I am gentil-womman, and no wenche.
 Why speke ye thus? But men been
 euere vntrewe,
 And wommen hauē repreue of yow 8
 ay newe;
 Ye han noon oother contenance, I
 leeue,
 But speke to vs of vntrust and repreeue.
 ¶ And with that word she saugh wher
 Damyan
 Sat in the bussh, and coughen she
 bigan,
 And with hir fynger signes made she, 8
 That Damyan sholde clymbe vp-on a
 tree,
 That charged was with fruyt, and vp
 he wente;
 ffor verraily he knew al hir entente
 And euery signe þat she koude make
 Wel bet than Ianuarie, hir owene make. 9
 ffor in a lettre she hadde toold hym
 al
 Of this materē, how he werchen shal.
 And thus I lete hym sitte vp-on the
 pyrie,
 And Ianuarie and May romynge myrie.
 Bright was the day, and blew the firma- 9
 ment.
 Phebus hath down of gold hise stremes
 [y]sent
 To gladen euery flour with his warm-
 nesse.

10045. shal E., wol He., etc., f. G. 52. couenat E. (Gl.), couenaut G. 55. whan þat He.G.C.L.H.* (Sk., Gl.). 60. kys E.He.G. (Sk., Gl.), kisse D., etc. 75/76. lak: sak G.D.C.H.* (-ke: -ke Sk., Gl.); vgl. 10222. 94. ful merve D.P.L. 96. hath of gold hise stremes down E.He.G.D.H.*, of g. down hap his st. C.P.L. (Gl.), of g. his st. down hath Sk.; ysent E.He.H.*

[E 2222—2246]

[E 2247—2271]

He was that tyme in Geminis, [as] I
gesse,
But litel fro his declynacion
00 Of Cancer, Iouis exaltacion.
And so bifel that brighte morwe-tyde,
That in that gardyn, in the ferther
syde,
Plúto, that is kyng of ffaierey,
And many^a lady in his compaignye,
05 ffolwyng his wyf, the queen^e Pro-
serpyna,
Which that he rauysshed out of Sicilia,
Whil þat she gadereð floures in the
mede—
In Claudyan ye may the stories rede,
How in his grisely carté he hir(e)
fette—
10 This kyng of ffairey thanne adoun hym
sette
Vp-on a bench of turues fressh and
grene,
And right anon thus seyde he to his
queene:
¶ ‘My wyf,’ quod he, ‘ther may no
wight seye nay,
Thexperienc^e so preueth euery day
15 The tresons which^e þat wommen doon
to man.
Ten hondred thousand *stories* telle[n]
I kan,
Notable of youre vntrouthe and bro-
tilnesse.
O Salomon! wys and richest of rich-
esse!
ffulfild of sapience and of worldly
glorie,
20 fful worthy been thy wordes to me-
morie
To euery wight þat wit and reson
kan!
Thus preiset he yet the bountee of
man:

¶ ‘Amonges a thousand men yet foond
I oon,
Bút of wommen alle foond I noon.”
¶ Thus seith the kyng þat knoweth 25
youre wikkednesse,
And Ihesus, filius Syrak, as I gesse,
Ne spekeþ of yow but seelde reuer-
ence.
A wylde fyr and corrupt pestilence
So falle vp-on youre bodyes yet to-
nyght!
Ne se ye nat this honorable knyght? 30
By cause, alas! that he is blynd and
old,
His owene man shal make hym coke-
wold.
Lo, heere he sit, the lechour, in the
treel
Now wol I graunten, of my magestee,
Vn-to this olde blynde worthy knyght 35
That he shal haue ageyn hise [e]yēn
syght,
Whan þat his wyf wolde doon hym
vileynye;
Thanne shal he knowen al hir har-
lotrye
Bothe in repreue of hir(e) and othere
mo.’
¶ ‘Ye shal?’ quod Proserpyne, ‘wol ye 40
so?
Now by my moodres sires soule I
swere
That I shal yeue[n] hir(e) suffisant
answere,
And alle women after for hir sake,
That, though they be in any gilt ytake,
With face boold they shulle hem-self 45
excuse,
And bere hem down that wolden hem
accuse;
ffor lak[ke] of answer^e noon of hem
shal dyen.

10098. as: alle *ſſij. u. Edd.* 10103. the king C.P.L., *ſpäter* He. (Sk., Gl.); *fayerye* C.H.⁴ [vgl. 6442; id. 10192 u. *ſfter*]. 05. Proserpyna C.P.L.; Proserpyne E., etc. 06. Ech after oother as (f. E.G.) right as a (ony G.) lyne E.G.D. (Sk., Gl.), Whos answer hath doon many a man pyne He. (*ſpäter*), Which þat he rauyshed out of Proserpyna C.P.L., ... out of Ethna Tw. (nach H.⁵), Wr., ... out of Cecilia (Sicilia?) M. 09. How] And E.; sette E.He.G. 10. thanne f. D.C.P.L. 15. treson He., etc. (Sk.); womman dooth He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 16. stories Tw., Wr., [] M., Sk., [tales] Gl., f. E., etc. 23/24: *Þred. Cal. VII, 29* [vgl. 13968]. 25: XXV, 13ff., etc. 33. heere E.G., where He., etc. 40. and wol C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 41. sires] Ceres Tw., Wr., Mor. 42. zeue G.L.H.⁴ 47. lak G.H.⁴

[E 2272—2296]

[E 2297—2325]

Al hadde man seyn a thyng with bothe
 hise [e]yēn,
 Yit shul [we] wommen visage it hardily,
 50 And wepe, and swere, and *chide* sub-
 tilly,
 So þat ye men shul been as lewed
 as gees.
 What rekketh me of youre auctoritees?
 ¶ I woot wel that this Iew, this Salo-
 mon,
 ffoond of vs wommen fooles many
 oon.
 55 But though þat he ne foond no good
 womman,
 Yet hath ther founde many another
 man
 Wommen ful trewe, ful goode, and
 vertuous;
 Witnesse on hem þat dwelle in Cristes
 hous:
 With martirdom they preued hir con-
 stance.
 60 The Romayn geestes eek make[n] re-
 membraunce
 Of many a verray trewe wyf also.
 But, sire, ne be nat wrooth, al be
 it so,
 Though þat he seyde he foond no good
 womman,
 I preyē yow, tak[e] the sentence of
 the man!
 65 He mente thus: that in souereyn bontee
 Nis noon but God, þat sit in Trinitee.
 ¶ Eȳ, for verray God, that nys but
 oon,
 What make ye so muche of Salomon?
 What though he made a temple Goddes
 hous?
 70 What though he were riche and
 glorious?
 So made he eek a temple of false
 goddis.
 How myghte he do a thyng þat
 moore forbode is?

Pardee! as faire as ye his name em-
 plastre,
 He was a lecchour and an ydolastre,
 And in his elde he verray God forsook. 75
 A'nd if God nē hadde, as seith the
 book,
 Ysparēd hym for his fadres sake, he
 sholde
 Hauē lost his regne rather than he
 wolde.
 I sette right noght of al the vileynye
 That ye of wommen write a boterflye! 80
 I am a womman, nedes moot I speke,
 Or elles swelle til myn herte breke.
 ffor sithe[n] he seyde that we been
 iangleresses—
 As euere hool I moote brouke my
 tresses!—
 I shal nat spare, for no curteisye, 85
 To speke hym harm þat wolde vs vile-
 leynye.
 'Dame,' quod this Pluto, 'be no lenger
 wrooth!
 I yeue it vp; but sith I swoor myn
 ooth
 That I wolde graunten hym his sighte
 ageyn,
 My word shal stonde, I warne yow, 90
 certeyn.
 I am a kyng, it sit me noght to lye!
 ¶ 'And I,' quod she, 'a queene of
 ffaierye.
 Hir answere shal she haue, I vnder-
 take!
 Lat vs namoore wordes heer-of make;
 ffor sothe, I wol no lenger yow con- 95
 trarie.'
 ¶ Now lat vs turne agayn to Ianuarie,
 That in the gardyn with his faire May
 Syngeth ful murier than the papeiay:
 'Yow loue I best, and shal, and oother
 noon.'
 So longe aboute the aleyes is he goon, 00
 Til he was come agaynes thilke pyrie

10148. man E.He., men G., a man D.H.⁴, 7e C.P.L. 49. [we]: alle Gif. (Sk., Gl.); zit schullen we so visage(n) C.P.L. 50. chide] visage it E. 55ff.: bgf. 13985, etc. 60. make D.H.⁴; eek f. C.P.L. 66. þat sit in Trinitee E.G.H.⁴, (but) neither he ne she He., etc. 76. if that D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.); book.: I. Rñt. XI, 12. 77. hym f. E.G. (Gl.). 79. right f. D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 83. sithe D., syn H.⁴ 94. Sehter Bers in C.L. (bafür Se., H.⁴). 10201. ageynes H.⁴ (Sk.), a-geyn to D., agayns E., etc.

[E 2326—2352]

[E 2353—2380]

Wher(e)-as this Damyan sitteth ful
myrie

Anheigh, among the fresshe leues
grene.

¶ This fresshe May, that is so bright
and sheene,

05 Gan for to syke, and seyde, 'Allas, my
syde!

'Now, sirē,' quod she, 'for aught þat
may bityde,

I moste han of the peres that I see,
Or I moot dyē, so soore longeth me
To eten of the smale peres grene.

10 Help for hir loue þat is of heuene
queene!

I telle yow wel, a womman in my plit
May han to fruyt so greet an appetit,
That she may dyen but she of it
haue.'

¶ 'Allas!' quod he, 'þat I ne had heer
a knaue

15 That koude clymbe; alas, alas!,' quod
he,

'That I am blynd!' 'Ye, sirē, no fors,'
quod she;

¶ 'But wolde ye vouche-sauf, for Goddes
sake,

The pyrie~inwith youre armes for to
take—

ffor wel I woot that ye mystruste
me—,

20 Thanne sholde I clymbe wel ynogh,'
quod she,

So I my foot myghte sette vpon youre
bak.'

¶ 'Certes,' quod he, 'ther-on shal be
no lak,

Mighte I yow helpen with myn herte
blood!'

He stoupeth down, and on his bak
she stood,

25 And caughte hir(e) by a twiste, and
vp she gooth—

Ladyes, I preyē yow þat ye be nat
wrooth!

I kan nat glose, I am a rude man—,
And sodeynly anon this Damyan

Gan pullen vp the smok, and in he
throng.

¶ And whan þat Pluto saugh this grete 30
wrong,

To Ianuarie~he gaf agayn his sighte,
And made hym se as wel as euere he
myghte.

And whan þat he hadde caught his
sighte agayn,

Ne was ther neuere man of thyng so
fayn,

But on his wyf his thoght was eueremo. 35
Vp to the tree he caste hise [e]yē two,

And saugh þat Damyan his wyf had
dressed

In swich manere, it may nat been ex-
pressed

But if I wolde speke vncurteisly.

And vp he yaf a roryng and a cry 40
As dooth the mooder whan the child
shal dye:

'Out! help! alas! harrow!' he gan to
crye,

'O stronge lady stoorē, what dostow?'

¶ And she answerde, 'Sir(e), what eyl-
eth yow?

Hauē pacience and resoun in your(e) 45
mynde!

I hauē yow holpe on bothe youre [e]yēn
blynde.

Vp peril of my soule! I shal nat lyen,
As me was taught to heele with youre
[e]yēn,

Was no-thing bet to make yow to
see

Than struggle with a man vp-on a tree; 50
God woot, I dide it in ful good en-
tentel'

¶ 'Struggle?' quod he, 'ye, algate in
it wente!

God yeuē yow bothe on shames deth
to dyen!

He swyued thee! I saugh it with
myne [e]yēn,

And elles be I hanged by the hals! 55
¶ 'Thanne is,' quod she, 'my medi-
cyne fals;

10214. nad Se.P.H.⁴ 32/33. f. P.H.³H.⁴ 36. Vp to] Vn to He., vp-on D. 52. Stru-
gled He. (stride Se.). 56. al fals He.G.Se. (Sk.).

[E 2381—2406]

[E 2407—2426]

- ffor certainly, if that ye myghte se,
Ye wolde nat seyn thise wordes vn-to
me.
Ye han som glymsyng, and no parfit
sighte.'
- 60 ¶ 'I se,' quod he, 'as wel as euere I
myghte,
Thonked be God! with bothe myne
[e]yēn two,
And, by my trouthe, me thoughte he
didee thee so.'
- ¶ 'Ye maze, mazel! goode sire', quod
she.
'This thank haue I for I haue maad
yow see!
- 65 Allas!' quod she, 'that euere I was
so kynde!'
- ¶ 'Now, dame,' quod he, 'lat al passe
out of mynde!
Com down, my lief, and if I haue
missayd,
God help(e) me so! as I am yuele
apayd.
But by my fader soule! I wende
han seyn
- 70 How that this Damyan hadde by thee
leyn,
And þat thy smok hadde leyn vp-on
thy brest.'
- ¶ 'Ye, sire,' quod she, 'ye may wene
as yow lest,'
But, sire, a man þat waketh out of
his sleep,
He may nat sodeynly wel taken keep
- 75 Vp-on a thyng, ne seen it parfitly,
Til þat he be adawed verrailly.
¶ Right so a man þat longe hath
blynd ybe
Ne may nat sodeynly so wel yse,
ffirst whan his sighte is newe come
ageyn,
- 80 As he þat hath a day or two yseyn.
Til that youre sighte ysatled be a
while,
Ther may ful many a sighte yow bigile.

Beth war, I preyē yow! for, by heuene
kyng,
fful many a man weneth to seen a
thyng,
And it is al another than it semeth; 85
Hé þat mysconceiueth, he mysdemeth.'

And with that word she leep down fro
the tree.

¶ This Ianuarie, who is glad but he?
He kisseth hir(e), and clippeth hir(e)
ful ofte,
And on hir wombe he stroketh hir(e) 90
ful softe,
And to his palays hoom he hath hir(e)
lad.—

Now, goode men, I praye yow, be
glad!

Thus endeth heere my tale of Ianuarie;
God blesse vs, and his mooder Seinte
Marie!

¶ Heere is ended the Marchantes tale
of Ianuarie.

V. Fragment (F).

12. The Squieres Tale.

- a) ¶ The Prologe of the Squieres
tale.)*
- 'Ey, Goddes mercy!' seyde oure Hooste 95
tho,
'Now, swich a wyf I praye God kepe
me fro!
Lo, whiche sleighes and subtilitees
In wommen been! for ay as bisy as
bees
Been they, vs sely men for to de-
ceyue;
And from a soothē euere wol they 100
weyue,
By this Marchauntes tale it preueth
weel.
But, doutelees, as trewe as any steel

10271. thy] his E.He.G. (Sk., Gl.). 81—94. Sl. für G. 92. alle beth D., to be He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). — *) Here folwen the Wordes of the Worthy Hoost to the ffrankeleyn He., The prologe of the fraunkeleyn P. — 10295—10324. f. G. (ausgeriffen, dafür H.*); ausgelassen C. (dafür Se.), L.(Ad.). 97. subtiltees E.He., sotiltees Ad., Se. 10300. sothe H.^s (Sk.); [f. wol they euere?].

[E 2427—2440; F 1—10]

[F 11—38]

I haue a wyf, though þat she poure
be;

But of hir tonge a labbyng shrewe
is she,

05 And yet she hath an heep of vices mo.
Ther-of no fors!—lat alle swiche
thynges go!

But wyte ye what? In conseil be it
seyd:

Me reweth soore I am vn-to hir(e)
teyd;

ffor, and I sholde rekenen euery vice

10 Which þat she hath, ywis I were to
nyce.

And cause why? It sholde reported
be,

And toold to hir(e) of somme of this
meynee—

Of whom? it nedeth nat for to declare,
Syn wommen konnen outhen swich
chaffare—

15 And eek my wit suffiseth nat ther-to
To tellen al, wherfore my tale is do.

¶ 'Squier, com[e] neer, if it your(e)
wille be,

And seye somewhat of loue, for certes
ye

Konnen ther-on as muche as any man.'

20 ¶ 'Nay, sir(e), [quod he,] but I wol
seyen as I kan;

With hertly wyl—for I wol nat re-
belle

Agayn your(e) lust—a tale wol I telle.

Haue me excused if I speke amys;

My wyl is good—and lo, my tale is
this.'

¶ Heere bigynneth the Squieres
tale.*)

25 AT Sarray, in the land of Tartarye,
Ther dwelte a kyng that werreyed
Russye,

Thurgh which ther dyde many a
doughty man.

This noble kyng was cleped Cam-
byuskan,

Which in his tyme was of so greet
renoun,

That ther was no-where in no region, 30
So excellent a lord in alle thyng.

Hym lakked noght that longeth to a
kyng,

And of the secte of which þat he was
born

He kepte his lay to which þat he was
sworn;

And ther-to he was hardy, wys, and 35
riche,

A'nd pitous and iust, alwey yliche;
Sooth of his word, benigne, and hon-
urable,

Of his corage as any centre stable;

Yong, fressh, strong, and in armes
desirous

As any bachelor of al his hous. 40

A fair persone he was, and fortunat,
And kepte alwey so wel roial estat,

That ther was nowher swich another
man.

¶ This noble kyng, this Tartre Cam-
byuskan,

Hadde two sones on Elpheta his wyf, 45
Of which the eldeste highte Algar-
syf;

That oother son was cleped Cambalo.

A doghter hadde this worthy kyng
also,

That yongest was, and highte Canacee.

But for to telle yow al hir beautee, 50

It lyth nat in my tonge, nyn my
konnyng—

I dar nat vndertake so heigh a thyng.
Myn englissh eek is insufficient;

It moste been a rethor excellent

10317. Rein Mßß in den Hñ. — Squier] Sir Sq. H.⁴, Sire frankeleyn He.P. 18. som-
what of loue] vs a tale He.P.H.⁴ 20. but f. P.; I wol seye] swich thyng D.Ad.H.⁴ [þr. I'll?
ob. streich] quod he? Bgl. 5770]. 22. lust] wyl (wille) He.P.H.⁴ 23. if þat He.Se.H.⁴ —
*) Folgt in He.C.P.L. unmittelbar auf M.L.; vgl. S. 111**). 25—39. f. G., teilweise bis 48;
erstet aus Sl.; ebenso 63ff. 28. Cambyuskan, gedr. Cambynskan (Sk.); doch 'more like
Cambyuskan all through' E.; beagl. D. 30. was E.D.Sl., nas He., etc. (Sk.). 32. longed
beagl. (-eth Sk.). 36. Pietous and iust and euere moore yliche He. (Gl.); pietous Sk.
38. [Randgl.] Centrum circuli. 39. strong and in E., stronge in Sl., and st. in He., etc
(Sk., Gl.). 43. was E.H.⁴, nas He., etc. 54. I E., he H.⁴, it He., etc.

[F 39—68]

[F 69—95]

55 That koude hise colours longynge for
 that art,
 If he sholde hir(e) discryuen euery part;
 I am noon swich—I moot speke as
 I kan.
 ¶ And so bifel that, whan this Cam-
 byuskan
 Hath twenty winter born his diademe,
 60 As he was wont fro yeer to yeer,
 I deme,
 He leet the feeste of his *natiuitee*
 Doon cryen thurgh-out Sarray, his citee,
 The laste Idus of March after the
 yeer.
 Phebus, the sonne, ful ioly was and
 cleer,
 65 ffor he was neigh his exaltacioun
 In Martes face, and in his mansioun
 In Aries, the colerik hoote signe.
 fful lusty was the weder and benigne,
 ffor which the fowles agayn the sonne
 sheene,
 70 What for the sesoun and the yonge
 grene,
 fful loude songen hir(e) affeccions;
 Hem semed han geten hem protecciouns
 Agayn the swerd of wynter keene and
 coold.
 ¶ This Cambyuskan, of which I hauē
 yow toold,
 75 In roial vestiment sit on his days
 With diademe, ful heighe in his paleys,
 And halt his feeste so solempne and
 so ryche,
 That in this world *ne* was ther noon
 it lyche;
 Of which if I shal tellen al tharray,
 80 Thanne wolde it occupie a someres
 day;
 And eek it nedeth nat for to deuyse
 At euery cours the ordre of hir seruyse.
 I wol nat tellen of hir strange sewes,
 Ne of hir swannes, nor of hir(e) heron-
 sewes.

Eek in that lond, as tellen knyghtes 8
 olde,
 Ther is som mete þat is ful deyntē
 holde,
 That in this lond men recche of it
 but smal;
 Ther nys no man that may reporten
 al.
 ¶ I wol nat taryen yow, for it is pryme;
 And for it is no fruyt, but los of tyme. 9
 Vn-to my firste I wol[e] hauē my
 recours.
 ¶ And so bifel that, after the thridde
 cours,
 Whil þat this kyng sit thus in his
 nobleye,
 Herknynghe hise mynstralles hir thynges
 pleye
 Biforn hym at the bord deliciously, 9
 In at the halle dore al sodeynly
 Ther cam a knyght vp-on a steede
 of bras,
 And in his hand a brood mirour of
 glas;
 Vpon his thombe he hadde of gold
 a ryng,
 And by his syde a naked swerd hang- 0
 yng;
 And vp he rideth to the heighe bord.
 In al the halle *nas* ther spoke[n] a
 word
 ffor merueille of this knyght; hym
 to biholde
 fful bisily ther wayten yonge and olde.
 ¶ This strange knyght, that cam thus 0
 sodeynly,
 Al armed, saue his heed, ful richely,
 Saleweth kyng, and queene, and lordes
 alle
 By ordre as they seten in the halle,
 With so heigh reuerence and obeis-
 aunce,
 As wel in speche as in contenaunce, 1
 That Gawayn with his olde curteisye,

10362. out He.D., f. E., etc. 63. laste He.C. 64. ioly E.L.H.⁴, iolyf He., etc. 66. in his E.D.P.H.⁴, his He., etc. 77. so solempne E.D.P., so f. He., etc. 78. ne f. E.H.⁴ 81. for E.D.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 84. nor E., ne He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 85—88. f. D. 92. that f. D.H.⁴ [au streichen?]. 94. mynstrals E.He., mynstrall G. 10402. ne was alle ȝ[i.] (Sk., Gl.); spoken E.G. (Gl.). 04. ther E., they He., etc. 09/10. obeisaunces: contenaunces He.G.C. 10. ȝiat? ob. l.: his contenaunce(s) = He.G.D.P.?

[F 96—123]

[F 124—149]

Though he were come[n] aye[n] out of
ffairye,
Ne koude hym nat amende with a word.
And after this, biforn the heighe bord,
15 He with a manly voys seith his mes-
sage
After the forme used in his langage,
With-outen vice of silable or of lettre;
And for his tale sholde seme the
better,
Accordant to hise wordes was his cheere,
20 As techeth art of speche hem þat it
leere.
Al be it that I kan nat sowne his
stile,
Ne kan nat clymbe[n] ouer so heigh
a stile,
Yet seye I this, as to commune entente,
Thus muche amounteth al þat euere
he mente,
25 If it so be þat I haue it in mynde:
¶ He seyde, 'The kyng of Arabe and
of Inde,
My lige lord, on this solempne day
Saleweth yow as he best kan and may,
And sendeth yow, in honour of your(e)
feeste,
30 By me, that am al redy at your(e)
heeste,
This steede of bras, that esily and weel
[¶ *Of the vertu of the steede
of bras*
Kan in the space of o day natureel—
This is to seyn: in foure and twenty
houres—
Wher-so yow lyst, in droghte or elles
shoures,
35 Beren youre body in-to euery place
To which youre herte wilneth for to
pace,
With-outen wem of yow, thorgh foul
or fair;
Or if yow lyst to flee[n] as hye in
the air
As dooth an egle whan [þat] hym list to
soore,

This same steede shal bere yow euere- 40
moore,
With-outen harm, til ye be ther yow
leste,
Though that ye slepen on his bak or
reste,
And turne aye[n] with writhyng of
a pyn.
He þat it wroghte koude ful many^a
gyn;
He wayted many^a constellacion 45
Er he had doon this operacion,
And knew ful many^a seel and many^a
bond.
¶ This mirroure eek, þat I haue in myn
hond,
[¶ *Of the vertu of the Mirour*
Hath swich a myght, þat men may in
it see
Whan ther shal fallen any^aaduersitee 50
Vn-to your(e) regne or to your(e)-self
also,
And openly who is your(e) freend or
foo.
¶ And ouer-al this, if any lady bright
Hath set hir herte in any maner wight,
If he be fals, she shal his tresoun see, 55
His newe loue, and al his subtiltee
So openly, þat ther shal no-thing
hyde;
Wherfore, ageyn this lusty someres
tyde,
This mirour and this ryng, þat ye
may see,
He hath sent [vn]to my lady Canacee, 60
Your(e) excellent doghter, that is
heere.
¶ The vertu of the ryng, if ye wol
heere,
[¶ *Of the vertu of the ryng*
Is this, that, if hir(e) lust it for to
were
Vp-on hir thombe, or in hir purs it
bere,
Ther is no fowel þat fleeth vnder 65
the heuene,

10412. comen E.G. (Gl.). 15. seith E.G., seyde He., etc. 21. it f. E.He.G. 23. this þat as He.D.C.P. 25. in my mynde He.C.P.L. 31. Of the vertu, etc.: nur E.; id. 48. etc. 39. [þat] E. 54. in E.P., on He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 60. [vn]to E.G. 61. [über heere] hic E.He. 62. [über heere] audire id. 65. nys He.D.P.

[F 150—172]

[F 173—202]

That she ne shal wel vnderstonde his
steuene,
And knowe his menyng openly and
pleyn,
And answere hym in his langage ageyn.
And euery gras that groweth vp-on
roote
0 She shal eek knowe, and whom it wol
do boote,
Al be hisē woundes neuēr so depe
and wyde.
¶ This naked swerd, þat hangeth by
my syde,
[¶ *Of the vertu of the swerd(e)*
Swich vertu hath, þat what man so
ye smyte,
Thurgh-out his armure it wol[e] [hym]
kerue and byte,
5 Were it as thikke as is a branched
ook.
And what man that is wounded with
a strook
Shal neuēr be hool til þat yow list of
grace
To stroke hym with the plat in *thilke*
place
Ther he is hurt; this is as muchē
to seyn:
0 Ye moote with the platte swerd ageyn
Strike hym in the wounde, and it
wol close;
This is a verray sooth, with-outen glose:
It failleth nat whils it is in youre
hoold.
¶ And whan this knyght hath thus
his tale toold,
5 He rideth out of halle, and doun he
lighte.
His steede, which þat shoon as sonne
bryghte,
Stant in the court *as stille* as any
stoon.
This knyght is to his chambre lad
anoon,

And is vnarmed, and vn-to mete yset.
¶ The presentēs been ful roially yfet, 90
This is to seyn: the swerd and the
mirour,
And born anon in-to the heighe tour
With certeine officers ordeyned ther-
fore;
And vn-to Canacee this ryng was bore
Solempnely, ther she sit at the table. 95
But sikerly, with-outen any fable,
The hors of bras, þat may nat be re-
mewed,
It stant as it werē to the ground
yglewed;
Ther may no man out of the place it
dryue
ffor noon engyn of wyndas ne polyue. 00
And cause why? for they kan nat the
craft;
And therefore in the placē they han
it laft,
Til þat the knyght hath taught hem
the manere
To voyden hym, as ye shal after heere.
Greet was the prees þat swarmeth to 05
and fro
To gauren on this hors that stondesth
so;
ffor it so heigh was, and so brood and
long,
So wel proporcioned for to been strong,
Right as it were a steede of Lum-
bardye;
Ther-with so horsly and so quyk of 10
[e]yē,
As it a gentil Poilleys courser were.
ffor certes, fro his tayl vn-to his ere,
Nature né art ne koude hym nat
amende
In no degree, as al the peple wende.
But eueremoore hir mooste wonder was 15
How þat it koude go, and was of bras;
It was a ffairye, as [al] the peple semed.
Diuerse folk, diuersely they demed;

10474. [hym] E. 76. a E., that G., the He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 78. *thilke*] that E.G. So. plat E.G.D.P. 81. Strike E.G., Stroke He., etc. (Sk.). 83. whil G.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), whiles He., etc. 84. ytold He.D. 87. as stille D.H.⁴, as f. E., etc. 89. vn to E., to He., etc. (Sk.). 90. realliche He., ryally G., richeliche (-ly) D., etc. 94. this ... was E.G., the ... is He., etc. 10500. ne E., or He., etc. (Sk.). 17: a E.He.D., as (fayr as) G., of C., etc. (Sk., Gl.); [al] E.G. 18. they E.G.H.⁴, han He., etc. [vgl. 4631].

[F 203—231]

[F 232—257]

As manye heddes, as manye wittes
ther been.
20 They murmureden as dooth a swarm
of been,
And maden skiles after hir fantasies,
Rehersynge of thise olde poetries,
And seyde that it was lyk the Pegasee,
The hors þat hadde wynges for to flee;
25 Or elles it was the Grekes hors, Synon,
That broghte Troie to destruccion,
As men may in thise olde geestes rede.
¶ 'Myn herte,' quod oon, 'is euere-
moore in drede:
I trowe some men of armes been ther-
inne,
30 That shapen hem this citee for to
wynne;
It were right good þat al swich thyng
were knowe.'
¶ Another rowned to his felawe lowe,
And seyde, 'He lyeth, it is rather lyk
An apparence ymaad by som magyk,
35 As iogelours pleyen at thise feestes
grete.'
Of sondry doutes thus they iangle
and trete,
As lewed peple demeth comunly
Of thynges þat been maad moore
subtilly
Than they kan in hir lewednesse com-
prehende;
40 They demen gladly to the badder ende.
¶ And somme of hem wondred on the
mirour,
That born was vp in-to the hye tour,
Hou men myghte in it swiche thynges
se.
¶ Another answerde, and seyde it
myghte wel be
45 Naturally, by composiciouns
Of anglis and of slye reflexiouns;
And seyde[n] þat in Rome was swich
oon.

They speke[n] of Alocen and Vitulon,
And Aristotle, that writen in hir lyues
Of queynte mirours and of perspectiues, 50
As knowen they that han hir bookes
herd.
¶ And oother folk han wondred on
the sword
That wolde percen thurgh-out euery-
thyng,
And fille in speche of Thelophus the
kyng,
And of Achilles with his queynte spere; 55
ffor he koude with it bothe heele and
dere,
Right in swich wise as men may with
the sword
Of which right now ye han your(e)-
seluen herd.
They speke[n] of sondry hardyng of
metal,
And speke of medicynes ther-with-al, 60
And how and whanne it sholde yharded
be,
Which is vnknowe, algates vnto me.
¶ Tho speeke they of Canaceës ryng,
And seyden alle þat swich a wonder
thyng
Of craft of rynges herde they neuere 65
noon,
Sauē þat he, Moyses, and kyng Salo-
mon
Hádde a name of konnyng in swich
art.
Thus seyn the peple, and drawen hem
apart.
¶ But nathelees somme seiden þat it
was
Wonder to maken of fern-asshen glas, 70
And yet nys glas nat lyk asshen of
fern;
Bút for they han knowen it so fern,
Therfore cesseth hir ianglyng and hir
wonder.

10520. murmured(e) He.D.P.C.L.H.⁴ 23. that f. He., etc. (Sk.); [Randgl.] i. equus Pega-
seus E. u. a. 27. may H.⁴D., f. E., etc.; oolde geestes: Benoit de S. Maur, Guido delle
Colonne u. a. 29. some G.D.P. 33. it E.G., for it He., etc. 38. moore maad He.C.L.,
made P. 41. wondren He.C.P.L. 42. hye E.G. [vgl. 10492], maister He., etc. (Sk.).
47. seyde C.P.L.H.⁴ (f. Another, 544) [f. Seun Sages, V. 2007 ff.]. 48. speken E. (Sk., Gl.),
spoken G.D., speke He., etc. 55. with E.G., for He., etc. 59. speeke He. 67. hadden
D. (Gl.). 71. nys (ne is) E.G., is He., etc. 72. I-knowen D.H.⁴, knowen E., etc.

[F 258—283]

[F 284—310]

¶ As soore wondren somme on cause
of thonder,

75 On ebbe, on flood, on gossomer, and
on myst,

And on alle thyng til þat the cause
is wyst.

Thus iangle they, and demen, and
deuyse,

Til þat the kyng gan fro the bord aryse.
Phebus hath laft the angle meridional.

80 And yet ascendyngē was the beest
roial,

The gentil leon, with his Aldrian
Whan þat this Tartre kyng Cambyus-
kan

Roos fro his bord, ther that he sat ful
hye.

Toforn hym gooth the loude mynstral-
cye,

85 Til he cam to his chambre of pare-
mentz,

Ther-as they sownen diuerse instru-
mentz,

That it is lyk an heuene for to heere.
Now dauncen lusty Venus children
deere;

ffor in the ffyssh hir lady sat ful hye,
90 And looketh on hem with a frendly
[e]yē.

¶ This noble kyng is set vp in his trone;
This strange knyght is fet to hym
ful soone,

And on the daunce he gooth with
Canacee.

Heere is the reuel and the iolitee

95 That is nat able a dul man to deuyse;
He moste han knowen loue and his
seruyse,

And been a feestlych man, as fressh
as May,

That sholde yow deuysen swich array.
Who koude telle yow the forme of
daunces

So vnkouthe, and so fresshe conten-
aunces,

Swich subtil looking and dissymulynge
ffor drede of ialouse menne's aper-
ceyuynges?

No man but Launcelet, and he is
deed;

Therfore I passe of al this lustiheed.
I seye namoore, but in this iolynesse

10 I lete hem til men to the soper dresse.
¶ The styward bit the spices for to
hye

And eek the wyn, in al this melodye;
The vsshers and the squiers been
ygoon,

The spices and the wyn is come anon. 10
They ete and drynke, and whan this
hadde an ende,

Vn-to the temple, as reson was, they
wende.

¶ The seruice doon, they soupen al by
day—

What nedeth me rehercen hir array?
E'ch man woot wel þat a kynges feeste 15
Hath plente to the mooste and to
the leeste,

And deyntees mo than been in my
knowyng.

At after soper gooth this noble kyng
To seen this hors of bras, with al the
route

Of lordes and of ladyes hym aboute. 20

¶ Swich wondryng was ther on this
hors of bras,

That, syn the grete sege of Troie
was,

Ther-as men wondred[en] on an hors
also,

Ne was ther swich a wondryng as was
tho.

But fynally the kyng axeth this knyght 25
The vertu of this courser and the
myght,

10575. and flood He.C.H.* 76. on E.D.H.* f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 81. Aldiran He.D. (Sk.), adryan H.* 82. þis Cambynskan H.* (Sk.). 83. that E.G., as He., etc. (Gl.). 84. Toforn E.G., Biforn He., etc. 86. they] ther He.D.H.* 91. in E.G., on He., etc. 10600. so E.G., swiche He., etc. 03. launcelot He.G.D. (Sk.). 04. of] ouyr G.C.H.* 07. biddep L.; the spices H.*, the f. E., etc. [vgl. 10]. 14. me E.G., yow He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 15. þat at a He.C.P.L. (Sk.). 16. mooste E., meeste He., etc. (maste L.). 19. the E.G., his H.*, a He., etc. 23. wondred D.H.*, wondren C.P.

[F 311—334]

[F 335—359]

And preyde hym to telle his gouern-
aunce.

¶ This hors anon bigan to trippe and
daunce,

Whan that this knyght leyde hand vp-
on his reyne,

30 And seyde, 'Sire, ther is namoore to
seyne,

But whan yow list to ryden any-where,
Ye mooten trille a pyn stant in his
ere,

Which I shal yow telle bitwixe vs
two.

Ye moote nempne hym to what place
also

35 Or to what contree þat yow list to
ryde.

And whan ye come ther-as yow list
abyde,

Bid[de] hym descende, and trille an-
other pyn—

ffor there lith theeffect of al the gyn—,
And he wol doun descende and doon
yours wille,

40 And in that placé he wol stonde stille.
Though al the world the con-
trarie hadde yswore,

He shal nat thennes been [y]drawe nor
ybores.

Or if yow liste bidde hym thennes
goon,

Trille this pyn, and he wol varysshe
anon

45 Out of the sighte of euery maner
wight,

And come agayn, be it by day or
nyght,

Whan þat yow list to clepen hym ageyn
In swich a gyse as I shal to yow seyn
Bitwixe yow and me, and that ful
soone:

50 Rid[e] whan yow list—ther is namoore
to doone.'

¶ Enformed whan the kyng was of
that knyght,

And hath conceyued in his wit aright
The manere and the forme of al this
thyng,

Thus glad and blithe this noble *doghty*
kyng

Repeireth to his reuel as biforn. 55

¶ The brydel is vn-to the tour yborn,
And kept among his iueles leuee and
deere.

The hors varysshed—I noot in what
manere—

Out of hir sighte—ye gete namoore
of me.

But thus I lete in lust and iolitee 60
This Cambyuskan hise lordes festei-
nyng,

Til wel ny the day bigan to sprynge.

¶ *Explicit prima pars.*

¶ *Sequitur pars secunda.*

The norice of digestioun, the sleep,
Gan on hem wynke, and bad hem
taken keep

That muchel drynke and labour wolde 65
han reste.

And with a galpyng mouth hem alle he
keste,

And seyde it was tyme to lye adoun,
ffor blood was in his domynacioun.
'Cherisseth blood, natures freend,' quod
he.

They thanken hym, galpyng by two, 70
by thre,

And euery wight gan drawe hym to
his reste;

As sleep hem bad, they tooke it for
the beste.

¶ Hir(e) dremes shul nat been ytoold
for me.

fful were hir(e) heddes of fumositee,
That causeth dreem of which ther nys 75
no charge.

10627. preyed He.D.L., preyede G. (Sk.). 28. gan for to He.D.P.H.⁴ 30. nys He.G.D.
33. tellen þow D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 37. Bidde E.G.P. (Sk., Gl.). 38. ther(e) E.G., ther
Inne He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 40. stonde E.G., abyde He., etc. (Sk.). 41. swore G., etc.
42. drawe G.D., þrowe C.P.L., I-þrowe H.⁴; nor E.He., ne G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 43. liste C.,
luste L., list (lust) E., etc. 44. bgl. 12670. 46. by H.⁴, f. E., etc. 50. Ryd He.C.H.⁴
54. Thus E.G., ful He., etc. (Gl.); doghty (lusty D.) f. E.G. 59. of me] for me He.D.
65. wolde E.G.L., wol He., etc. 67. it E.G., that it He., etc. 73. been ytoold E., now
be told He.D.H.⁴, been t. G.L., mowe be t. C.P. 75. nys E.He., is G., etc.

[F 360—386]

[F 387—415]

They slepen, til that it was pryme
 large,
 The mooste part, but it were Canacee.
 She was ful mesurable, as wommen be;
 ffor of hir fader hadde she take leue
 80 To goon to restē soone after it was
 eue.
 Hire liste nat appalled for to be,
 Nè on the morwe vnfeestlich for to
 se,
 And slepte hir firste sleep, and thanne
 awook.
 ffor swich a ioȝe she in hir herte took
 85 Bothe of hir queynte ryng and hir
 mirour,
 That twenty tyme she changed hir
 colour,
 And in hir sleep, right for impressioun
 Of hir mirour, she hadde a visioun;
 Wherefore, er þat the sonne gan vp
 glyde,
 90 She cleped on hir maistresse hir(e)
 bisyde,
 And seyde that hir(e) liste for to ryse.
 ¶ Thise olde wommen þat been gladly
 wyse,
 As is hir maistresse, answerde hir(e)
 anon,
 And seyde, 'Madame, whider wil ye
 goon
 95 Thus erly? ffor the folk been alle on
 reste.'
 ¶ 'I wol,' quod she, 'arise, for me
 leste
 No lenger for to slepe, and walke
 aboute.'
 ¶ Hir maistresse clepeth wommen a
 greet route,
 And vp they rysen, wel an ten or
 twelue;
 00 Vp riseth fresshe Canacee hir-selue,
 As rody and bright as dooth the yonge
 sonne,
 That in the Ram is fourē degrees
 vp ronne.

Noon hyer was he whan she redy was,
 And forth she walketh esily a-pas,
 Arrayed after the lusty seson soote 05
 Lightly, for to pleye and walke on
 foote,
 Nat but with fyue or sixe of hir meynee,
 And in a trench forth in the park
 gooth she.
 ¶ The vapour which þat fro the erthe
 glood
 Made the sonne to seme rody and 10
 brood,
 But natheles it was so fair a sighte,
 That it made alle hir(e) hertes for
 to lighte,
 What for the seson and the morwen-
 ynge,
 And for the fowēles that she herde
 synge;
 ffor right anon she wiste what they 15
 mente
 Right by hir song, and knew al hir
 entente.
 ¶ The knotte why þat euery tale is
 toold,
 If it be taried til that lust be coold
 Of hem þat han it after herkned yooore,
 The sauour passeth euēr lenger the 20
 moore
 ffor fulsomnesse of his prolixitee.
 And by the same resoun thynketh me
 I sholde to the knotte condescende,
 And maken of hir walkyng soone an
 ende.
 A mydde a tree, fordryed as whit 25
 as chalk,
 As Canacee was pleyyng in hir walk,
 Ther sat a ffaucou ouer hir heed
 ful hye,
 That with a pitous voys so gan to crye,
 That al the wode resounded of hir
 cry.
 Ybete[n] hath she hir-self so pitously 30
 With bothe hir wynges, til the rede
 blood

10682. Nor He.G. (Sk.), ffor C.P.L. 83. thanne f. He.C.P.L. 88. Avisioun E. 90. on E.G., vp on He., etc. 93. is f. E. [Unflare Konstruktion, beſagl. 10717ff.] 94. wil E.G.L., wolde He., etc. 95. on] at G., in D., etc. 10720. [l. leng? (f. 3870)]. 22. the E.G., this He., etc. 25. fordryed E.G., ful drye D., for drye He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 30. f. L.; hath E.G., hadde He., etc.

[F 416—442]

[F 443—471]

Ran endelong the tree ther-as she stood,
 And euere in oon she cryde alwey and
 shrighthe,
 And with hir beek hir-seluen so she
 prighte,
 35 That ther nys tygre, ne noon so cruell
 beest,
 That dwelleth outhȝr in wode or in
 fforest,
 That nolde han wept, if þat [s]he wepe
 koude,
 ffor sorwe of hir(e), she shrighthe alwey
 so loude.
 40 ffor ther nas neuere *no* man yet on
 lyue—
 If þat I koude a ffaucion wel discryue—
 That herde of swich another of fair-
 nesse,
 As wel of plumage as of gentillesse
 Of shap, and al that myghte yrekened
 45 be.
 A ffaucion peregryn thanne semed she
 Of fremde land, and euere-moore, as
 she stood,
 She swowneth now and now for lak[ke]
 of blood,
 Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.
 ¶ This faire kynges doghter Canacee,
 That on hir fynger baar the queynte
 ryng,
 50 Thurgh which she vnderstood wel
 euery-thing
 That any fowel may in his leden seyn,
 And koude answer[n] hym in his
 ledene ageyn,
 Hath vnderstonde what this ffaucion
 seyde,
 And wel neigh for the routhe almoost
 she deyde.
 55 And to the tree she gooth ful hastily,
 And on this ffaucion looketh pitously,
 And heeld hir lappe abrood, for wel
 she wiste
 The ffaucion moste fallen fro the twiste,

Whan þat it swowned next for lak[ke]
 of blood.
 A longe while to wayten hir(e) she 60
 stood,
 Til atte laste she spak in this manere
 Vn-to the hawk, as ye shal after heere:
 ¶ 'What is the cause, if it be for to
 telle,
 That ye be in this furial pyne of
 helle?'
 Quod Canacee vn-to the hawk aboue, 65
 'Is this for sorwe of deeth or los of
 loue?
 ffor, as I trowe, thise been causes two
 That causeth moost a gentil herte wo.
 Of oother harm it nedeth nat to speke,
 ffor ye your(e)-self vpon youre-self yow 70
 wreke,
 Which proueth wel that outhȝr loue
 or drede
 Moot been enchesoun of youre cruel
 dede,
 Syn þat I see noon oother wight
 yow chace.
 ffor loue of God! as dooth youre-seluen
 grace,
 Or what may been youre help; for 75
 West nor Est
 Ne saugh I neuere er now no bryd ne
 beest
 That ferde with hym-self so pitously.
 Ye sle me with youre sorwe verraily—
 I haue of yow so greet *compassioun!*
 ffor Goddes loue, com fro the tree 80
 adoun!
 And as I am a kynges doghter trewe,
 If þat I verraily the cause knewe
 Of youre disese, if it lay in my myght,
 I wolde amende[n] it er þat it were
 nyght,
 As wisly helpe me the grete God of 85
 kynde!
 And herbes shal I right ynowe yfynde
 To heele with youre hurtes hastily.'

10732. as f. E.G. 35. noon E.G.H.⁴ (non ne), f. He., etc. 36. outhȝr E.He., eythir G., etc. (Sk.); id. 71. 37. she E.P. 39. zet no man D.C.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), no f. E., etc. 43. and E., & of G., of He., etc. 46. swowned He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴ 51. leden E.L., ledne He., etc. (Sk.). 52. answeren E. 65. the E., this He., etc. (Sk.). 68. causeth E., causen He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 71. loue E.G., Ire He., etc. 72. [f. enchesoun been?] 79. passioun E. 84. amende He.D.C.P.L. (Sk.). 85. the E., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 86. yfynde E., fynde He., etc.

[F 472—497]

[F 498—525]

¶ Tho shrighȝe this ffaucion moore yet
pitously
Than euȝr she dide, and fil to grounde
anon,
00 And lith aswowne deed and lyk a
stoon,
Til Canacee hath in hir lappe hir(e)
take
Vn-to the tyme she gan of swough
awake.
¶ And after that she of hir swough gan
breyde,
Right in hir haukes ledene thus she
seyde:
95 'That pitee renneth soone in gentil
herte,
ffeelynge his similitude in peynes
smerte,
Is preued al-day, as men may it see,
As wel by werk as by auctoritee;
ffor gentil herte kitheth gentillesse.
00 I' se wel ye han of my distresse
Compassion, my faire Canacee,
Of verray wommanly benignytee,
That nature in your(e) principles hath
[y]set.
But for noon hope for to fare the bet,
05 But for tobeye vn-to your(e) herte
free,
And for to make[n] othere be war
by me,
As by the whelp chasted is the leon,
Right for that cause and for that con-
clusion,
Whil þat I haue a leyser and a space,
10 Myn harm I wol confessen er I pace.'
¶ And euere whil þat oon hir sorwe
tolde,
That oother weep as she to water
wolde,
Til that the ffaucion bad hir(e) to be
stille;

And, with a syk, right thus she seyde
hir wille:
¶ 'Ther I was bred—allas that harde 15
day!—
And fostred in a roche of marbul gray
So tendrely, that no-thing eyled me,
I nyste nat what was aduersitee,
Til I koude flee ful hie vnder the sky.
Tho dwelte a tercelet me faste by, 20
That semed welle of alle gentillesse;
Al were he ful of treson and falsnesse,
It was so wrapped vnder humble cheere,
And vnder hewe of trouthe in swich
manere,
Vnder plesance, and vnder bisy peyne, 25
That I ne koude han wend he koude
feyne:
So depe in greyn he dyed his coloures.
Right as a serpent hit hym vnder
floures
Til he may seen his tyme for to byte,
Right so this god of loue, this ypo- 30
cryte,
Dooth [so] hise cerymonyes and obeis-
aunces,
And kepeth in semblant alle hise obseru-
aunces
That sowneth in-to gentillesse of loue,
As in a tounbe is al the faire aboue,
And vnder is the corps swich as ye 35
woot:
Swich was this ypocrite, bothe coold
and hoot;
And in this wise he serued his entente,
That, sauē the feend, noon wiste what
he mente.
Til he so longe haddē wopen and
compleyned,
And many a yeer his seruicē to me 40
feyned,
Til that myn herte, to pitous and to
nyce,

10788. moore yet E.G., yet m. He.D.C.P. (Gl.), yet f. L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 92. the E.G., that He., etc.; swough E.D., swow G., swowne He., etc. 93. hir E.G., f. He., etc.; breyde E., abreyde He., etc. 95: vgl. 5080. 97. it f. E.H.⁴; I-se G. 10800. þat ye He.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 03. yset E.G. 05. obeye E., to o. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 06. make H.⁴; be war] ywar He.D., war H.⁴ 07. chasted E.He., chastysed G., etc. [b. h. der Hund wird anstatt des Löwen ge- züchtigt, um dieselben zu warnen]. 15. Ther] That E.G.; harde E.G., ilke He., etc. 26. I ne (not) koude E.G., no wight wolde He.D., no w. coupe C.P.L. (Sk.), no w. H.⁴ 27. coloures E.He.D.C.H.⁴ 30. loue this E.G.H.⁴, loues He.D.C., loue P.L. 31. [so] f. D.; sermonys G.D.H.⁴ 33. sownen He.G. 35. cors He.G.D., cours P.L. 36. this] the E. (Gl.)

[F 526—556]

[F 557—583]

Al innocent of his crowned malice,
 ffor-fered of his deeth, as thoughte me,
 Vpon hise othes and his seuretee
 45 Graunted hym loue vp-on this con-
 dicioun:
 That eueremoore myn honour and re-
 noun
 Were saued, bothe priuee and apert;
 This is to seyn: that after his desert
 I yaf hym al myn herte and al my
 thought—
 50 God woot and he, þat ootherwise
 noght—,
 And took his herte in chaunge for
 myn for ay.
 But sooth is seyð—goon sithen many^a
 day—
 “A trewe wight and a theef thenken
 nat oon.”
 And whan he saugh the thyng so fer
 ygoon,
 55 That I hadde graunted hym fully my
 loue
 In swich a gyse as I haue seyð aboue,
 And yeuen hym my trewe herte as fre
 A's he swoor he yaf his herte to me:
 Anon this tigre ful of doublenesse
 60 ffil on hise knees with so deuout
 humblesse,
 With so heigh reuerence and, as by
 his cheere,
 So lyk a gentil louere of manere,
 So rauysshed as it semed, for the ioye,
 That neuere Iason, ne Parys of Troye—
 65 I'ason? Certes, ne noon oother man
 Syn Lameth was, þat alderfirst bigan
 To louen two, as writen folk biforn—
 Ne neuere, syn the firste man was
 born,
 Ne koude man, by twenty thousand
 part,
 70 Countrefete the sophymes of his art,
 Ne were worthy^vnbokelen his galoche,
 Ther doublenesse or feynyng sholde
 aproche,

Ne so koude thanke a wight as he
 dide me!
 His manere was an heuene for to se
 Til any womman, were she neuer so 75
 wys.
 So peynted he, and kembde at point
 deys
 As wel hise wordes as his contenaunce;
 And I so loued hym for his obeisaunce
 And for the trouthe I demed in his
 herte,
 That, if so were that any-thing hym 80
 smerte,
 Al were it neuer so lite, and I it wiste,
 Me thoughte I felte deeth myn herte
 twiste.
 And shortly, so ferforth this thyng is
 went,
 That my wyl was his willes instru-
 ment;
 This is to seyn: my wyl obeyed his 85
 wyl
 In alle thyng as fer as reson fil,
 Kepyng the boundes of my worship(e)
 euere;
 Ne neuere hadde I thyng so lief,
 ne leuere,
 As hym, God woot, ne neuere shal
 namo!
 This laste[th] lenger than a yeer or 90
 two,
 That I supposed of hym noght but
 good.
 But finally, thus atte laste it stood,
 That ffortune wolde þat he moste
 twynne
 Out of that place which þat I was
 inne.
 Wher me was wo, that is no questioun— 95
 I kan nat make of it discripsioun.
 ffor o thyng dar[e] I tellen boldely:
 I knowe what is the peyne of deeth
 ther-by;
 Swich harm[e] I felte for he ne myghte
 bileue!

10842. crowned He., etc. (Sk.). 43. ffor-ferd(e) E.P. 46. euere mo He.D.C.P.L.H.⁴
 49. al myn thought G.D.L.H.⁴ (Sk.), al f. E., etc. [ober herte?]. 51. for myn E., of myn
 He., etc. 53. thynkyn G., thynke D., thynketh He., þenkeþ C., etc. 58. swore that D.
 (he hise herte yaf Sk.). 64. Iason] Troilus(-ys) E.G. 66: vgl. 5636. 78. so f. E.G.
 90. lasteth E. (Sk., Gl.), lastede G., laste He., etc. 99. he] I E.

[F 584—609]

[F 610—634]

- 00 So on a day of me he took his leue
So sorwefully [eek], that I wendē ver-
raily
That he had felt as muchē harm as I,
Whan þat I herde hym speke, and
saugh his hewe.
But natheles I thoughte he was so
trewe,
- 05 And eek þat he repaire sholde ageyn
With-inne a litel while, sooth to seyn,
And resoun wolde eek that he moste go
ffor his honour, as ofte it happeth so,
That I madē vertu of necessitee,
- 10 And took it wel, syn þat it moste be.
As I best myghte, I hidde fro hym
my sorwe,
And took hym by the hond, seint Iohn
to borwe,
And seyde hym thus: "Lo, I am youre
all!
Beth swich as I to yow hauē been
and shal."
- 15 What he answerde, it nedeth noght
reherce—
Who kan seyn bet than he? Who kan
do werse?
Whan he hath al seyde, thannē hath
he doon.
Therefore "bihoueth hir(e) a ful long
spoon
That shal ete with a feend"—thus
herde I seye.
- 20 So atte laste he moste forth his weye,
And forth he fleeth til he cam ther
hym leste,
Whan it cam hym to purpos for to
reste.
I trowe he hadde thilke text in mynde,
Thát "al[le] thyng, repayryngē to his
kynde,
- 25 Gladeth hym-self"—thus seyn men, as
I gesse,†)
- Men loue[n] of propre kynde newe-
fangelnesse,
As briddes doon that men in cages
fede.
ffor though thou nyght and day take
of hem hede,
And strawe hir cage faire and softe
as silk,
And yeue hem sugre, hony, breed, 30
and milk,
Yet right anon, as that his dore is
vppe,
He with his feet wol spurne adoun
his cuppe,
And to the wode he wol[e], and wormes
ete.
So newefangel been they of hir mete,
And louen nouelrie of propre kynde— 35
No gentillesse of blood ne may hem
bynde.
¶ So ferde this *tercelet*—allas the day!
Though he werē gentil bore, fressh,
and gay,
And goodlich for to seenē, humble, and
free.
He saugh vp-on a tyme a kyte flee, 40
And sodeynly he loued this kyte so,
That al his loue is clenē fro me ago,
And hath his trouthe falsed in this
wyse.
Thus hath the kyte my loue in hir
seruyse,
And I am lorn with-outen remedie! 45
And with that word this ffaucion gan
to crie,
And swowned eft in Canaceēs barm.
¶ Greet was the sorwe for the haukes
harm
That Canacee and alle hir wommen
made;
They nystē hou they myghtē the 50
ffaucon glade.

10901. sorweful D.H.⁴ (Gl.); eek: alle Giff. (Sk.). 02. feelyd He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 08. it E.G., f. He., etc., verb. H.⁴ 13. hym E.G.D., f. He., etc. 16. sey E.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), seye G. 17. I-seyd G. (Gl.), wel seyde He., etc. (Sk.). 18. bihoued He.D.; hire] hym C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 24. al D.P.L. 26. loue G.L. [vgl. 17872 ff.]. 29. Cages He.D.C. 31—88. Sl. für G. 32. adoun E., doun He., etc. 33—88. f. H.⁴ 35. nonelries He., nouelries D., etc. (none leueres L.). 36. ne D., f. E., etc. 38. borne L., born E., etc. [vgl. 1542, etc.]; and fressh He.D. (Sk.). 39. sene P.Sl. [vgl. 1035], seen E., etc.; and humble He.D.C.L.Sl. (Sk.). 50. how þat He.P.L.

[F 635—658]

[F 659—678]

But Canacee hom bereth hir(e) in hir
 lappe,
 And softely in plastres gan hir(e)
 wrappe
 Ther-as she with hir beek hadde hurt
 hir-selue.
 Now kan nat Canacee but herbes delue
 55 Out of the ground, and make saues
 newe
 Of herbes preciose and fyne of hewe,
 To heelen with this *hawk*; fro day
 to nyght
 She dooth hir bisynesse and hir fullē
 myght,
 And by hir beddes heed she made a
mewe,
 60 And couered it with veluētes blewe,
 In signe of throuthe that is in wommen
 sene.
 And al with-outē the *mewe* is peynted
 grene,
 In which [ther] werē [y]peynted allē
 thise false fowles,
 As beth thise tidyuēs, tercelettes, and
 owles;
 65 Right for despit werē peynted hem
 bisyde
 [And] pyēs, on hem for to crie and
 chyde.
 ¶ Thus lete I Canacee hir *hawk* kep-
 yng;
 I wol namoore as now speke of hir
 ryng,
 Til it come eft to purpos for to seyn
 70 How that this ffaucon gat hir loue
 ageyn
 Repentant, as the storie telleth vs,
 By mediacion of Cambalus,
 The kynges sone, of which I to yow
 tolde.
 But hennes-forth I wol my proces
 holde

To speke[n] of auentures and of bat- 75
 ailles,
 That neuere yet was herd so grete
 meruailles.
 ¶ ffirst wol I telle yow of Cambyus-
 kan,
 That in his tyme many^a citee wan;
 And after wol I speke of Algarsif,
 How that he wan Theodera to his 80
 wif,
 ffor whom ful ofte in greet peril he
 was,
 Ne hadde he be holpen by the steede
 of bras;
 And after wol I speke of Cambalo,
 That faught in lystes with the bretheren
 two
 For Canacee, er that he myghte hir(e) 85
 wyne;
 And ther I lefte I wol ayeyn bigynne.
 ¶ *Explicit secunda pars.*
 ¶ *Incipit pars tercia.*
 Appollo whirleth vp his chaar so hye,
 Til that the god Mercurius hous, the
 slye . . .

13. The Frankeleyns Tale.

a) ¶ Heere folwen the wordes of the
 ffrankelyn to the Squier and the
 wordes of the hoost to the ffrankelyn.
 ¶ In feith, Squier, thow hast thee wel
 yquit
 And gentilly! I preise wel thy wit, 90
 Quod the ffrankeleyn, 'considerynge
 thy yowthe,
 So feelyngly thou spekest sire, I allowē-
 the;
 As to my doom, ther is noon that is
 heere
 Of eloquence that shal be thy peere,

10955. salues D., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 57. hawk f. E. 58. hir fulle E., al hir He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 63. ther, ypeynted E. 66. And f. C.P.L.Sl.; bleibt And, ist 66 nach Tw. (Gl.) vor 65 zu stellen. 73. which that D., welche L.Sl. (Sk., Gl.); to yow He. 75. speke He.D.C. (Sk.) 80. Theodera E.D., Theodora He., etc. (Sk.). 87/88. f. D.; L. hat statt beren 8 unechte Berje; darauf Explicit fabula Armigeri. Nach 86: Here endith the Sq. t., as meche as Chaucer made D.; nach 88: Here endeþ þe squiers tale P., ... þe t. of þe sq. Sl. — 10989—11044. f. G. [2 Bl. ausßer.; f. 10931] (basir Sl.); 10989—11069. Eg. für D. [1 Bl. ausßer.; 10989—11024. ausgelassen C. (basir Lau.), L. (Ad.); 10989—11540. f. H.* [8 Bl. ausßer.; f. 10933]. — 91. frankleyn E.Eg.Lau.Ad., Marchant He.P.Sl.; id. 11012 u. 15.

[F 679—707]

[F 708—731]

95 If that thou lyue; God yeue thee
good chaunce,
And in vertu sende thee continuaunce!
ffor of thy speche I haue greet deyn-
tee.

I haue a sone, and by the Trinitee!
I hadde leuere than twenty pound worth
lond,

00 Though it right now were fallen in
myn hond,

He were a man of swich discrecioun
As that ye been; fy on possessioun
But if a man be vertuous with-all
I haue my sone snybbed and yet
shal,

05 ffor he to vertu list[n]eth nat entende,
But for to pleye at dees, and to des-
pende,

And lese al that he hath, is his vsage.
And he hath leuere talken with a page
Than to comune with any gentil wight,

10 There he myghte lerne gentillesse
aright.'

¶ 'Straw for your(e) gentillesse!' quod
oure hoost,

'What, ffrankeleyn! pardee, sire, wel
thou woost

That ech of yow moot tellen atte leste
A tale or two, or breken his biheste.'

15 ¶ 'That knowe I wel, sire,' quod the
ffrankeleyn,

'I preyē yow, haueth me nat in desdeyn
Though to this man I speke a word
or two.'

¶ 'Telle on thy tale with-outen wordes
mo!'

¶ 'Gladly, sire hoost,' quod he, 'I
wol[e] obeye

20 Vn-to youre wyl; now herkneþ what
I seye!

I wol yow nat contrarien in no wyse,
As fer as that my wittes wol suffice;
I preyē to God that it may plesen
yow,

Thanne woot I wel that it is good
ynow.')

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ *The Prologe of the ffrankeleyns
tale.**)*

Thise olde gentil Britouns in hir dayes 2
Of diuerse auentures maden layes,
Rymeyed in hir firste Briton tonge,
Whiche layes with hir instrumentz they
songe,

Or elles reddden hem for hir plesaunce,
And oon of hem haue I in remem- 3
braunce,

Which I shal seyn with good wyl as
I kan.

¶ But, sires, by cause I am a burel
man,

At my bigynnyng first I yow biseche
Hauē me excused of my rude speche;
I lerned neuere rethorik certeyn. 3

Thyng þat I speke, it moot be bare
and pleyn.

I sleep neuere on the mount of Par-
naso,†)

Ne lerned Marcus Tullius Scithero.

Colours ne knowe I none, withouten
drede,

But swiche colours as growen in the 4
mede,

Or elles swichē as men dye or peynte—
Colours of rethoryk been to me
queynte;

My spirit feeleth noght of swich ma-
teere.

But, if yow list, my tale shul ye heere.

c) ¶ *Heere bigynneth the ffrankeleyns
tale.***)*

IN Armorik, that called is Britayne, 4
Ther was a knyght þat loued and dide
his payne

To serue a lady in his beste wise;

10995/96. f. P.Sl.Lau. 11005. lusteth (listeth) He., etc. 10. There E., Where He., etc. 15. ffrankeleyn] Marchant certeyn He.P.Sl., ffr. certeyn Lau. — *) 3n He.P. folgt March. T. (912ff.), in C.L. Fragm. D (583ff.); Frank. T. in He.C.L. hinter March. T., in P. hinter Cl.T. — **) Here bigynneth the ff. t. He.P.Sl., Incipit fabula, etc. Eg. 37. Pernaso E.C.Sl. 42. rethorike P.L.Sl.; me f. E.He.; they ben He.; to me Eg.P., me to C.L.Sl. (Sk., Gl.). — ***) Heere, etc.: nur E.; Narrat am Rande He.; Incipit fabula L.

[F 732—759]

[F 760—787]

And many^a labour, many^a greet
emprise
He for his lady wroghte, er she werē
wonne.
50 ffor she was oon the faireste vnder
sonne,
And eek therto come[n] of so heigh
kynrede,
That wel vnnethes dorste this knyght
for drede
Telle hir(e) his wo, his peyne, and his
distresse.
But atte laste she for his worthynesse,
55 And namely for his meke obeysaunce,
Hath swich a pitee caught of his pen-
aunce,
That pryuely she fil of his accord
To take hym for hir housbonde and
hir lord,
Of swich lordshipe as men han ouer
hir wyues.
60 And for to lede the moore in blisse
hir lyues,
Of his free wyl he swoor hir(e) as a
knyght
That neuere in al his lyf he, day ne
nyght,
Ne sholde vp-on hym take no maistrie
Agayn hir wyl, ne kithe hir(e) ialousie,
65 But hir(e) obeye, and folwe hir wyl
in al,
As any louere to his lady shal;
Sauē that the name of soueraynetee,
That wolde he hauē for shame of his
degree.
¶ She thanked hym, and with ful greet
humblesse
70 She seyde, 'Sire, sith of youre gentilesse
Ye profre me to hauē so large a reyne,
Ne wolde neuere God bitwixe vs
tweyne,
As in my gilt, were outhur werre or
stryf.
Sir(e), I wol be your(e) humble trewe
wyf—
75 Hauē heer my trouthe!—til þat myn
herte breste!

Thus been they bothe in quiete and
in reste.
¶ ffor o thyng, sires, sauflly dar I
seye,
That freendes euerych oother moote
obeye,
If they wol longē holden compaignye;
Louē wol nat been constreyned by 80
maistrie.
Whan maistrie comth, the god of loue
anon
Beteth hise wynges, and far[e]wel!—
he is gon.
Loue is a thyng as any spirit free;
Wommen of kynde desiren libertee,
And nat to been constreyned as a thral; 85
And so doon men, if I sooth seyen
shal.
Looke, who þat is moost pacient in loue,
He is at his auantage al aboue.
Paciēce is an heigh vertu, certeyn;
ffor it venquysseth, as thise clerkes 90
seyen,
Thynges þat rigour sholde neuere
atteyne;
ffor euery word men may nat chide or
pleyne.
Lerneth to suffre, or elles—so moote
I goon—
Ye shul it lerne, wher-so ye wole or
noon;
ffor in this world, certein, ther no 95
wight is
That he ne dooth or seith som-tyme
amys.
I're, siknesse, or constellacioun,
Wyn, wo, or chaungynge of com-
plexioun
Causeth ful ofte to doon amys or
speken.
On euery wrong a man may nat be 00
wreken;
After the tyme moste be temperaunce
To euery wight þat kan on gouern-
aunce.
And therfore hath this wise worthy
knyght,

[F 788—815]

[F 816—844]

To lyue in ese, suffrance hir(e) bihight,
 05 And she to hym ful wisly gan to swere
 That neuere sholdē ther be defaute
 in here.

¶ Heere may men seen an humble
 wys accord;

Thus hath she take hir seruant and hir
 lord—

Seruant in loue, and lord in mariage;
 10 Thanne was he bothe in lordshipe and
 seruage?

Seruage? Nay, but in lordshipe aboue,
 Sith he hath bothe his lady and his
 loue;

His lady, certes, and his wyf also,
 The which þat lawe of loue acordeth
 to.

15 And whan he was in this prosperitee,
 Hoom with his wyf he gooth to his
 contree,

Nat fer fro Pedmark, ther his dwellyng
 was,

Where-as he lyueth in blisse and in
 solas.

¶ Who koude telle, but he hadde
 wedded be,

20 The ioye, the ese, and the prosperitee
 That is bitwixe an housbonde and his
 wyf?—

A yeer and moore lasted this blisful
 lyf,

Til þat the knyght of which I speke
 of thus,

That of Kayrrud was cleped Arueragus,
 25 Shoop hym to goon and dwelle a yeer
 or tweyne

In Engelond, that cleped was eek
 Briteyne,

To seke in armes worship(e) and hon-
 our—

ffor al his lust he sette in swich lab-
 our—,

And dwelled there two yeer: the book
 seith thus.

30 ¶ Now wol I stynte[n] of this Arueragus,
 And speke[n] I wol[e] of Dorigene,
 his wyf,

That loueth hir housbonde as hir hertes
 lyf.

ffor his absence wepeth she and siketh,
 As doon this noble wyues whan hem
 liketh;

She moorneth, waketh, wayleth, fast- 35
 eth, pleyneth;

Desir of his presence hir(e) so distreyn-
 eth,

That al this wyde world she sette at
 noght.

Hir(e) freendes, whiche þat knewe hir
 heuy thoght,

Conforten hir(e) in al þat euer they may;
 They prechen hir(e), they telle hir(e), 40
 nyght and day,

That causelees she sleeth hir-self, alas!
 And euery confort possible in this cas

They doon to hir(e) with al[l] hir
 bisynesse,

Al for to make hir(e) leue hir heuy-
 nesse.

¶ By proces, as ye knowen euerichoon, 45

Men may so longe grauen in a stoon,
 Til som figure ther-inne emprented be.

So longe han they comforted hir(e), til
 she

Receyued hath, by hope and by re-
 soun,

The emprenting of hir consolacioun, 50
 Thurgh which hir grete sorwe gan

aswage;

She may nat alwey duren in swich
 rage.

¶ And eek Arueragus, in al this care,
 Hath sent hir(e) lettres hoom of his

welfare,

And þat he wol come hastily agayn, 55
 Or elles hadde this sorwe hir herte

slayn.

¶ Hir(e) freendes sawe hir sorwe gan
 to slake,

And preyde hir(e) on knees, for Goddes
 sake,

To come and romen hir(e) in com-
 paignye,

Away to dryue hir derke fantasye; 60

[F 845—870]

[F 871—896]

And finally she graunted that requeste,
ffor wel she saugh that it was for the
beste.

¶ Now stood hir castel faste by the
see,

And often with hir(e) freendes walketh
shee,

65 Hir(e) to disporte, vp-on the bank an-
heigh,

Where as she many^a ship and barge
seigh,

Seillynge hir cours, wher-as hem liste
go.

But thanne was that a parcel of hir
wo;

ffor to hir-self ful ofte 'Allas!' seith
she,

70 'Is ther no ship, of so manye^a as I se,
Wol bryngen hom my lord? Thanne
were myn herte

Al warissheð of hise bittre peynes
smerte!'

¶ Another tyme ther wolde she sitte
and thynke,

And caste hir [e]yē downward fro the
brynke.

75 But whan she saugh the grisly rokkes
blake,

ffor verray feere so wolde hir herte
quake,

That on hir(e) feet she myghte hir(e)
nought sustene.

Thanne wolde she sitte adoun vpon
the grene,

And pitously in-to the see biholde,

80 And seyn right thus, with sorweful
sikes colde:

¶ 'Eterne God! that thurgh thy puruei-
aunce

Ledest the world by certein gouern-
aunce,

In ydel, as men seyn, ye no-thing
make.

But, Lord, thise grisly, feendly rokkes
blake,

85 That semen rather a foul confusion
Of werk than any fair creacion

Of swich a parfit wys God and a
stable—

Why han ye wrought this werk vn-
resonable?

ffor by this werk South, North, ne
West, nè Eest,

Ther nys yfostred man, ne bryd, ne 90
beest;

It dooth no good, to my wit, but
anoyeth.

Se ye nat, Lord, how mankynde it
destroyeth?

An hundred thousand bodyes of man-
kynde

Han rokkes slayn, al be they nat in
mynde;

Which mankynde is so fair part of 95
thy werk,

That thou it madest lyk to thyn owene
merk.

¶ Thanne semed it ye hadde a greet
chiertee

Toward mankynde; but how thanne
may it bee

That ye swiche meenes make it to
destroyen?

Whiche meenes do no good, but euere 00
anoyen.

I woot wel clerkes wol seyn, as hem
leste,

By argumentz that al is for the beste,
Though I ne kan the causes nat

yknowe;

But thilke God that made wynd to
blowe,

As kepe my lord! this my conclusion— 05
To clerkes lete I al [this] disputison.

But wolde God that alle thise rokkes
blake

Were sonken in-to helle for his sake!
Thise rokkes sleen myn herte for the

feere.'

Thus wolde she seyn with many^a 10
pitous teere.

¶ Hir(e) freendes sawe that it was no
disport

To romen by the see, but discomfort,

[F 897—925]

[F 926—953]

And shopen for to pleyen somwher
elles.
They leden hir(e) by ryueres and by
welles,
5 And eek by othere places delitables;
They dauncen and they pleye[n] at ches
and tables.
¶ So on a day, right in the morwe-
tyde,
Vn-to a gardyn that was ther bisyde,
In which that they hadde maad hir
ordinaunce
0 Of vitaille and of oother purueiaunce,
They goon and pleye hem al the longe
day;
And this was on the sixte morwe of
May,
Which May hadde peynted with his
softe shoures
This gardyn ful of leues and of floures,
5 And craft of mannes hand so curious-
ly
Arrayed hadde this gardyn trewely,
That neuere was ther gardyn of swich
prys,
But if it werē the verray Paradys.
The odour of floures and the fresshe
sight
0 Woldē han makēd any herte lighte
That euere was born, but if to greet
siknesse
Or to greet sorwē helde it in distresse:
So ful it was of beautee with plesaunce.
At after dyner gonne they to daunce,
5 And synge also, sauē Dorigene allone,
Which made alwey hir compleint and
hir moone;
ffor she ne saugh hym on the daunce
go
That was hir housbonde and hir loue
also.
But natheles she moste a tyme abyde,
0 And with good hope lete hir sorwe
slyde.
¶ Vp-on this daunce, amonges othere
men,

Daunced a squier biforn Dorigen
That fressher was and iolyer of array,
As to my doom, than is the monthe
of May.
He syngeth, daunceth, passynge any 45
man
That is, or was, sith þat the world
bigan;
Ther-with he was, if men sholde hym
discryue,
Oon of the beste farynge man on lyue:
Yong, strong, right vertuous, and riche,
and wys,
And wel biloued and holden in greet 50
prys.
And shortly, if the sothe I tellen shal,
Vnwityng of this Dorigen at al,
This lusty squier, seruant to Venus,
Which that ycleped was Aurelius,
Hadde loued hir(e) best of any crea- 55
ture
Two yeer and moore, as was his auen-
ture,
But neuere dorste he telle[n] hir(e)
his greuaunce;
With-uten coppe he drank al his pen-
aunce.
He was despeyred—no-thing dorste
he seye,
Saue in his songes somewhat wolde he 60
wreye
His wo, as in a general compleynyng;
He seyde he louede, and was biloued
no-thing.
Of swich matere made he manye layes,
Songes, compleintes, roundels, vire-
layes,
How that he dorste nat his sorwe telle, 65
But langwisseth as [a] furye dooth
in helle;
And dye he moste, he seyde, as dide
Ekko
ffor Narcisus, that dorste nat telle hir
wo.
In oother manere than ye heere me
seye

12216. pley(e) C.P.L.; bgl. 21. 22. on] in E.; bgl. 11555, etc. 42. bifore He.G.D., biforen C. (Sk.), afore P., to-forn L. 57. telle G.C.P. (Sk.). 61. general] gentyl G.D. 66. langusht G.; a f. C.L.; furye E.G., fuyre (fire) He., etc. 67. [Randgl.] Methamorphosios E. [f. III, 359 ff.].

[F 954—981]

[F 982—1008]

70 Ne dorste he nat to hir(e) his wo
biwreye,
Sauē that paraurenturē som-tyme at
daunces,
Ther yonge folk kepen hir obseruaunces,
It may wel be he looked on hir face
In swich a wise as man þat asketh
grace;
75 But no-thing wiste she of his entente.
Nathēlees it happed, er they thennes
wente,
By cause that he was hir neighebour,
And was a man of worship(e) and
honour,
And hadde yknowen hym of tyme
yoore,
80 They fille in spechē, and forth moore
and moore
Vn-to his purpos drough Aurelius,
And whan he saugh his tyme, he seyde
thus:
¶ 'Madame,' quod he, 'by God that
this world made,
So that I wiste it myghte your(e)
herte glade,
85 I wolde that day that youre Arueragus
Wente ouer the see, that I, Aurelius,
Hadde went ther, neuere I sholde haue
come agayn!
ffor wel I woot my seruice is in vayn,
My gerdon is but brestyng of myn
herte—
90 Madame, reweth vpon my peynes
smerte!
ffor with a word ye may me sleen
or saue.
Heere at your(e) feet God wolde þat
I were graue!
I ne haue as now no leyser moore to
seye—
Haue mercy, sweete, or ye wol do
me deye!
95 ¶ She gan to looke vp-on Aurelius:
'Is this youre wyl,' quod she, 'and
seye ye thus?
Neuere erst,' quod she, 'ne wiste I
what ye mente,

But now, Aurelie, I knowe youre en-
tente.
By thilke God that yaf me soule and
lyf!
Ne shal I neuere been vntrewe wyf 00
In word ne werk, as fer as I haue
wit;
I wol been his to whom þat I am
knyt.
Taak this for fynal answer(e) as of me.'
But after that in pley thus seyde she:
¶ 'Aurelie,' quod she, 'by heighe God 05
aboue!
Yet wolde I graunte yow to been
your(e) loue,
Syn I yow se so pitously complayne:
Looke, what day that endelong Bri-
tayne
Ye remoeue allē the rokkes, stoon
by stoon,
That they ne lette ship ne boot to 10
goon—
I seye, whan ye han maad the coost
so clene
Of rokkes, that ther nys no stoon ysene,
Thanne wol I loue yow best of any
man—
Haue heer my trouthe!—in al þat euere
I kan.'
¶ 'Is ther noon oother grace in yow?' 15
quod he.
¶ 'No, by that Lord,' quod she, 'that
maked me!
ffor wel I woot þat it shal neuere
bityde.
Lat swiche folies out of your(e) herte
slyde!
What deyntee sholde a man han in
his lyf
ffor to go loue another mannes wyf, 20
That hath hir body whan so þat hym
liketh?'
¶ Aurelius ful ofte soore siketh.
Wo was Aurelie whan þat he this
herde,
And with a sorweful herte he thus
answerde:

11272. yong E.He.C. [vgl. 12402]. 80. forth] forthe Gl. [I], they G., oft(e) C.L., f. P.
81. his] this E.He. (Gl.), that D. 11300. vntrewe a wyf He., an v. wyf D.P. 05. Aurele G.

[F 1009—1034]

[F 1035—1063]

- 25 ¶ 'Madame,' quod he, 'this were an impossible!
 Thanne moot I dye of sodeyn deth horrible—'
 And with that word he turned hym anon.
 Tho coome hir othere freendes many oon,
 And in the aleyes romeden vp and down,
 30 And no-thing wiste of this conclusioun,
 But sodeynly bigonne reuel newe,
 Til that the brighte sonne loste his hewe,
 ffor thorisonte hath reft the sonne his lyght—
 This is as muche to seye as: it was nyght.
 35 And hoom they goon in ioye and in solas,
 Sauē oonly wrecche Aurelius—allas!
 He to his hous is goon with sorweful herte.
 He seeth he may nat fro his deeth asterte;
 Hym semed that he felte his herte colde.
 40 Vp to the heuene hise handes he gan holde,
 And on hise knowes bare he sette hym down,
 And in his rauyng seyde his orisoun.
 ffor verray wo out of his wit he breyde;
 He nyste what he spak, but thus he seyde—
 45 With pitous herte his pleynt hath he bigonne
 Vn-to the goddes, and first vn-to the sonne:
 ¶ He seyde, 'Appollo, god and gouernour
 Of euery plaunte, herbe, tree, and flour,
 That yeuest, after thy declinacioun,
 50 To ech of hem his tyme and his season,

As thyn herberwe chaungeth lowe or heighe,
 Lord Phebus! castē thy merciablē eighē
 On wrecche Aurelie, which þat am but lorn!
 Lo lord! my lady hath my deeth ysworn
 With-oute gilt, but thy benignytee 55
 Vpon my dedly herte hauē som pitee.
 ffor wel I woot, lord Phebus, if yow lest,
 Ye may me helpen, sauē my lady, best.
 Now voucheth-sauf þat I may yow deuēse
 How þat I may been holpe[n] and in 60
 what wyse.
 ¶ Your(e) blisful suster, Lucina the sheene,
 That of the see is chief goddessē and queene,
 Though Neptunus hauē deitee in the see,
 Yet emperisse abouen hym is she.
 Ye knowe[n] wel, lord, that right as 65
 hir desir
 Is to be quyked and lightned of youre fir—
 ffor which she folweth yow ful bisily—,
 Right so the see desireth naturelly
 To folwen hir(e) as she that is goddessē
 Bothe in the see and ruyere[s] moore 70
 and lesse.
 Wherfore, lord Phebus, this is my requeste—
 Do this miracle, or do myn herte breste—:
 That now, next at this opposicion,
 Which in the signē shal be of the Leon,
 As preieth hir(e) so greet a flood 75
 to brynge,
 That fyue fadme at the leeste it ouer-sprynge
 The hyste rokke in Armorik Briteyne,
 And lat this flood endure yeres tweyne.
 Thanne certes to my lady may I seye:

11336. wrecche E.G., wrecched He., etc. 41. kneis(-es) G., etc. 47. [Randgl.] The complaint of Aurelius, etc. E. 51/52. I. hie: yē? 50 P. (Sk.). 52. cast alle þif. (Sk., Gl.); [þr. merciablē?]. 53. wrechede G., etc.; þat f. E. 60. holpen E.D. (Gl.). 61. [über Lucina]: i. luna E.He.D. 65. knowe Gl. 66. lighted He.D. (leteþ C., lihteþ L.).

[F 1064—1090]

[F 1091—1120]

80 "Holdeth youre heste—the rokkes been
aweye!"

¶ Lord Phebus, dooth this miracle for
me!

Preye hir(e) she go no faster cours
than ye.

I seye: preyeth your suster that she go
No faster cours than ye thise yeres
two.

85 Thanne shal she been euene atte ful
alway,

And spryng-flood laste bothe nyght
and day.

And, but she vouche-sauf in swich
manere

To graunte me my souereyn lady deere,
Preye hir(e) to synken euery rok
adoun

90 In-to hir owene dirke regioun

Vnder the ground, ther Pluto dwelleth
inne,

Or neuere mo shal I my lady wyne.
Thy temple in Delphos wol I bare-
foot seke,

Lord Phebus! Se the teeris on my
cheke,

95 And of my payne hauē som com-
passioun!

And with that word in swowne he fil
adoun,

And longe tyme he lay forth in a
traunce.

¶ His brother, which þat knew of his
penaunce,

Vp caughte hym, and to bedde he
hath hym broght.

00 Dispeyred in this torment and this
thought,

Lete I this woful creature lye;

Chese he for me wheither he wol
lyue or dye.

Arueragus with heele and greet hon-
our,

As he þat was of chivalrie the flour,
05 Is comen hoom, and othere worthy
men.

O blisful artow now, thou Dorigen,

That hast thy lusty housbonde in thyne
armes,

The fresshe knyght, the worthy man of
armes,

That loueth thee as his owene hertes
lyf!

No-thing list hym to been ymaginatyf 10
If any wight had spoķe, whil he was
oute,

To hire of loue; he hadde of it no
doute.

He noght entendeth to no swich ma-
teere,

But daunceth, iusteth, maketh hir(e)
good cheere;

And thus in ioie and blisse I lete 15
hem dwelle,

And of the sike Aurelius I wol [yow]
telle.

IN langour and in torment furyus
Two yeer and moore lay wrecche
Aurelyus

Er any foot he myghte on erthe gon;
Ne confort in this tymē hadde he 20
noon,

Saue of his brother, which þat was
a clerk.

He knew of al this wo and al this
werk;

ffor to noon oother creature, certeyn,
Of this matere he dorste no word seyn.

Vnder his brest he baar it moore secrete 25
Than euēre didē Pamphilus for Gala-
thee.†)

His brest was hool with-oute for to
sene;

But in his herte ay was the arwe kene,
And wel ye knowe that of a sursanure

In surgerye is perilous the cure, 30
But men myghte touche the arwe,
or comē therby.

His brother weep and wayled pryuely,
Til atte laste hym fil in remembraunce
That, whilēs he was at Orliens in
ffraunce—

As yonge clerkes, that been lykerous 35
To reden artes that been curious,

11402. wheither] wher He.G. (Gl.). 12. ne hadde He.D., made C.P.L. 16. I wol
yow E.G., wol I He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 26: bgl. 14425f.

[F 1121—1151]

[F 1152—1178]

Seken in euery halke and euery herne
 Particuler sciences for to lerne—,
 He hym remembred that, vpon a day,
 40 At Orliens in studie a book he say
 Of *magyk* natureel, which his felawe,
 That was that tyme a *bachelor* of
 lawe,
 Al were he ther to lerne another craft,
 Hadde priuely vpon his desk ylaft;
 45 Which book spak muchel of the ope-
 racious
 Touchynge the eighte-and-twenty man-
 siouns
 That longen to the moone, and swich
 folye
 As in oure dayes is nat worth a
 flye—
 ffor hooly chirches feith in oure bileue
 50 Ne suffreth noon illusioun vs to greue.
 And whan this book was in his re-
 membraunce,
 Anon for ioye his herte gan to daunce,
 And to hym-self he seyde pryuely:
 'My brother shal be warissshed hastily;
 55 ffor I am siker pat ther be sciences
 By which men make diuerse ap-
 parences,
 Swiche as thise subtil tregetours
 pleye.
 ffor ofte at feestes haue I wel herd
 seye
 That tregetours, with-inne an halle
 large,
 60 Hauē maad come in a water and a
 barge,
 And in the halle rowen vp and doun.
 Somtyme hath semed come a grym
 leoun,
 And somtyme floures sprynge as in a
 mede,
 Somtyme a vyne and grapes white
 and rede,
 65 Somtyme a castel al of lym and stoon,
 And whan hym lyked, voyded it
 anon:
 Thus semed it to euery mannes sighte.

¶ Now thanne conclude I thus: pat
 if I myghte
 At Orliens som oold felawe yfynde
 That hadde this moones mansions in 70
 mynde,
 Or oother *magyk* natureel aboue,
 He sholdē wel makē my brother han
 his loue.
 ffor with an apparence a clerk may
 make
 To mannes sighte pat alle the rokkes
 blake
 Of Britaigne were[n] yvoyled euerichon, 75
 And shippes by the brynke come[n]
 and gon,
 And in swich forme endure[n] a wowke
 or two:
 Thanne werē my brother warissshed
 of his wo,
 Thanne moste she nedes holden hir
 biheste,
 Or elles he shal shame hir(e) atte 80
 leeste.
 ¶ What sholde I make a lenger tale
 of this?
 Vn-to his brotheres bed he comen is,
 And swich confort he yaf hym for to
 gon
 To Orliens, that he vp stirte anon,
 And on his wey forthward thanne is 85
 he fare,
 In hope for to been lissed of his care.
 ¶ Whan they werē come almoost to
 that citee,
 But if it were a two furlong or three,
 A yong clerk romynge by hym-self
 they mette,
 Which pat in latyn thriftily hem 90
 grette,
 And after that he seyde a wonder
 thyng:
 'I knowe,' quod he, 'the cause of
 youre comyng.'
 And er they ferther any foote wente,
 He tolde hem al that was in hir en-
 tente.

11456. whce E. 57. tregetours E.He.P.L. 66. hem He.C. (Sk., Gl.), hen P. [gram.
 forrefter; f. 59; both vgl. 10930ff., etc.]. 70. these G. (Gl.), þe C.P.L. 75. weren E. (Sk.,
 Gl.). 76. come D. 77. endure G.D.C.L. (Sk.); wowke E. (Gl.) [f. wyke 11611], day He.G.D.
 (Sk.), ȝeer C.P.L.

[F 1179—1203]

[F 1204—1229]

95 ¶ This Briton clerk hym asked of
 felawes
 The whiche þat he had knowe in olde
 dawes;
 And he answerde hym that they dede
 were,
 ffor which he weep ful ofte many a
 teere.
 ¶ Doun of his hors Aurelius lighte
 anon,
 00 And with this magicien forth is he
 gon
 Hoom to his hous, and made[n] hem
 wel at ese.
 Hem lakked no vitaille þat myghte hem
 plese;
 So wel arrayed hous as ther was oon
 Aurelius in his lyf saugh neuere noon.
 05 ¶ He shewed hym, er he wente to
 sopeer,
 fforestes, parkes ful of wilde deer;
 Ther saugh he hertes with hir hornes
 hye,
 The gretteste that euere were seyn
 with [e]yð.
 He saugh of hem an hondred slayn
 with houndes,
 10 And somme with arwes blede of bitre
 woundes.
 ¶ He saugh, when voyded were these
 wilde deer,
 These ffauconers vpon a fair ryuer,
 That with hir haukes han the heron
 slayn.
 ¶ Tho saugh he knyghtes iustynge in
 a playn;
 15 And after this he hide hym swich
 plesaunce,
 That he hym shewed his lady on a
 daunce,
 On which hym-self he daunced, as hym
 thoughte.
 And whan this maister þat this magyk
 wroughte
 Saugh it was tyme, he clapte hise
 handes two—

And far[e]wel!—al oure reuel was ago! 20
 And yet remoued they neuere out of
 the hous,
 Whil they saugh al this sighte merueil-
 lous,
 But in his studie, ther-as hise bookes
 be,
 They seten stille, and no wight but
 they thre.
 ¶ To hym this mayster called his 25
 squier,
 And seyde hym thus: 'Is redy oure
 soper?
 Almoost an houre it is, I vndertake,
 Sith I yow bad oure soper for to
 make,
 Whan that these worthy men wenten
 with me
 In-to my studie, ther-as my bookes 30
 be.'
 ¶ 'Sire,' quod this squier, 'whan it liketh
 yow,
 It is al redy, though ye wol right now.'
 'Go we thanne soupe,' quod he, 'as
 for the beste;
 This amorous folk som-tyme moote
 han hir reste.'
 ¶ At after soper fille they in trettee, 35
 What somme sholden this maistres
 gerdon be
 To remoue[n] alle the rokkes of Bri-
 tayne,
 And eek from Gerounde to the mouth
 of Sayne.
 ¶ He made it straunge, and swoor, so
 God hym saue,
 Lasse than a thousand pound he wolde 40
 nat haue,
 Ne gladly for that somme he wolde nat
 goon.
 ¶ Aurelius, with blisful herte anon,
 Answerde thus: 'ffy on o thousand
 pound!
 This wyde world, which that men seye
 is round,
 ¶ I wolde it yeue, if I were lord of it! 45

11501. maden E.He.D. (Gl.). 07—12. f. C.P.L. 20. farwel He.G. 23. [Streid] as?
 23q. 30]. 24. sitten He.P., saten C.L. 34. This E.He., These G.. etc. 37. remewe C.P.L.
 40. H. 'beginnt wieder.

[F 1230—1255]

[F 1256—1284]

This bargayn is ful dryue, for we
 been knyȝt;
 Ye shal be payed treweȝly, by my
 trouthe!
 But looketh now, for no negligence
 or slouthe,
 Ye tarie^{vs} heere no lenger than to-
 morwe.
 50 ¶ 'Nay,' quod this clerk, 'haue heer
 my feith to borwel'
 ¶ To bedde is goon Aurelius whan
 hym leste,
 And wel ny al that nyght he hadde
 his reste;
 What for his labour and his hope
 of blisse,
 His woful herte of penaunce hadde
 a lisse.
 55 ¶ Vpon the morwe, whan þat it was
 day,
 To Britaigne tooke they the righte
 way,
 Aurelius and this *magicien* bisyde,
 And been descended ther they wolde
 abyde;
 And this was, as thise bookes me
 remembre,
 60 The colde frosty seson of Decembre.
 ¶ Phebus wax old and hewed lyk laton,
 That in his hoote declynacion
 Shoon as the burned gold with stremes
 brighte;
 But now on Capricorn adoun he lighte,
 65 Wher(e)-as he shoon ful pale, I dar
 wel seyn.
 The bittre frostes, with the sleet and
 reyn,
 Destroyed hath the grene in euery
 yerd.
 Ianus sit by the fyr with double berd,
 And drynketh of his bugle-horn the
 wyn;
 70 Biforn hym stant brawen of the tusked
 swyn,
 And 'Nowel' crieth euery lusty man.

¶ Aurelius, in al that euere he kan,
 Dooth to his *maister* chiere and reuer-
 ence,
 And preyeth hym to doon his diligence
 To bryngen hym out of his peynes 75
 smerte,
 Or with a swerd þat he wolde slitte
 his herte.
 ¶ This subtil clerk swich routhe had
 of this man,
 That nyght and day he spedde hym
 þat he kan
 To wayte[n] a tyme of his conclusioun,
 This is to seye: to maken illusioun, 80
 By swich an apparence or *iogelrye*—
 I^{ne} kan no termes of *astrologye*—
 That she and euery wight sholden were
 and seye
 That of Britaigne the rokkes were
 aweye,
 Or ellis they were sonken vnder 85
 grounde.
 So atte laste he hath his tyme yfounde
 To make[n] hise iapes and his wrecched-
 nesse
 Of swich a superstitious cursednesse.
 Hise tables tolletanen forth *hath* he
 brought
 fful wel corrected, ne ther lacked 90
 nought,
 Neither his collect, ne hise expans
 yeeris,
 Né hise rootes, ne hise othere geeris,
 As been hise centris, and hise argu-
 mentz,
 And hise *porporcionelēs* conuenientz
 ffor hise equacions in euery-thing; 95
 And by his .8. speere in his wirkyng
 He knew ful wel how fer Alnath was
 shoue
 ffro the heed of thilke fixe Aries
 aboue,
 That in the .9. speere considered is;
 fful subtilly he hadde kalkulēd al 100
 this.

11561. wax E.He.C.H.⁴, wex G.D.P. (Sk.), waxede L. (wox Gl.) [vgl. 8193].
 68. [Randgl.] Ianus biceps E.He.D. 73. his] this He.D. 79. waite C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 81. a E.
 87. maken E.He. 89. hath: in *feiner Hs.*, *doch* brought *Partizip.* 96. eighte D. (pre H.⁴).
 97. [Randgl.] Alnath dicitur prima mansio lune E. 99. ninte G., *fourpe* H.⁴; [Randgl.] In
 nona spera E. 11600. hadde f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); *calkeþ*, etc. C., etc.

[F 1285—1313]

[F 1314—1341]

¶ Whan he hadde founde his firste
 mansioun,
 He knew the remenaunt by propor-
 cioun,
 And knew the arisyng of his moone
 weel,
 And in whos face and terme, and euery-
 deel;
 05 And knew ful weel the moones
 mansioun
 Acordaunt to his operacioun;
 And knew also hise othere obseruances
 ffor swiche illusiouns and swiche mes-
 chaunces
 As hethen folk vseden in thilke dayes;
 10 ffor which no lenger maked he delayes,
 But thurgh his magik, for a wyke
 or tweye,
 It semed that alle the rokkes were
 aweye.
 ¶ Aurelius, which þat yet despeired is
 Wher he shal han his loue or fare
 amys,
 15 Awaiteth nyght and day on this
 myracle.
 And whan he knew þat ther was noon
 obstacle
 That voyded werē thise rokkes euerich-
 on,
 Doun to his maistres feet he fil anon,
 And seyde, 'I woful wrecche, Aurelius,
 20 Thanke yow, lord, and lady myn Venus,
 That me han holpen fro my cares
 colde!'
 And to the temple his wey forth hath
 he holde,
 Wher(e)-as he knew he sholde his lady
 see.
 And whan he saugh his tyme, anon
 right hee,
 25 With dredful herte and with ful humble
 cheere,
 Salewed hath his souereyn lady deere.
 'My righte lady,' quod this woful man,
 'Whom I moost drede and loue as I
 best kan,
 And lothest were of al this world
 displese,

Nere it þat I for yow hauē swich 30
 disese,
 That I moste dye[n] heere at youre
 foot anon,
 Noght wolde I telle how me is wo-
 bigon,
 But certes, outhur moste I dye or
 pleyne.
 Ye sle me giltelees for verray peyne,
 But of my deeth thogh þat ye hauē 35
 no routhe,
 Auyseth yow, er þat ye breke youre
 trouthe.
 Repenteth yow, for thilke God aboue,
 Er ye me sleen by cause þat I yow
 loue.
 ffor, madame, wel ye woot what ye han
 hight!
 Nat þat I chalange any-thing of right 40
 Of yow, my souereyn lady, but youre
 grace;
 But in a gardyn yond, at swich a
 place,
 Ye woot right wel what ye bihighten
 me,
 And in myn hand youre trouthe
 pligheten ye
 To loue me best—God woot ye seyde 45
 so—,
 Al be þat I vnworthy be therto.
 Madame, I speke it for the honour
 of yow
 Moore than to sauē myn hertes lyf
 right now:
 I hauē do so as ye comanded me,
 And, if ye vouche-sauf, ye may go see. 50
 Dooth as yow list—hauē youre biheste
 in mynde!
 ffor, quyk or deed, right there ye shal
 me fynde.
 In yow lith al to do me lyue or deye,
 But wel I woot—the rokkes been
 aweye!
 ¶ He taketh his leue, and she astonied 55
 stood,
 In al hir face nas a drope of blood—
 She wende neuere han come in swich
 a trappe.

11631. dye C.P., deye L.H.⁴ 46. (2tes) be E., am He., etc. 47. thonour H.⁴ 55. astoned He.D.C.H.⁴, -yd G.

[F 1342—1369]

[F 1370—1396]

'Allas!' quod she, 'þat euere this sholde
happe!

ffor wende I neuere by possibilittee
60 That swich a monstre or merueille
myghte be—

It is agayns the proces of nature.
And hoom she goth a sorweful crea-
ture.

ffor verray feere vnnethe may she go;
She wepeth, wailleth al a day or two,

65 And swowneth, that it routhe was to
see,

But why it was, to no wight tolde
shee;

ffor out of townę was goon Arueragus.
But to hir-self she spak, and seyde
thus,

With face pale and with ful sorweful
cheere,

70 In hir compleynt, as ye shal after heere:

[¶ *The compleynt of Dorigene
ayeyns ffortune*

¶ 'Allas!' quod she, 'on thee, ffortune,
I pleyne,

That vnwar wrapped hast me in thy
cheyne,

ffro which tescape woot I no socour
Saue oonly deeth or elles dishonour.

75 Oon of these two bihoueth me to chese;

But natheles yet haue I leuere to lese
My lif than of my body haue a shame,
Or knowe my-seluen fals, or lese my
name,

And with my deth I may be quyt,
ywis.

80 Hath ther nat many a noble wyf er
this, †)

And many a mayde yslayn hir-self,
allas!

Rather than with hir body doon tres-
pas?

¶ Yis, certes, lo, thise stories bere[n]
witnessse.

Whan .XXX. tirauntz, ful of cursednesse,

85 Hadde slayn Phidon in Atthenes at
feste,

They comanded hise doghtres for
tareste,

And bryngen hem biforn hem in despit
Al naked to fulfille hir foul delit;
And in hir fadres blood they made hem
daunce

Vpon the pauement—God yeue hem 90
myschaunce!—

ffor which thise woful maydens, ful
of drede,

Rather than they wolde lese hir mayden-
hede,

They priuely been stirt in-to a welle,
And dreynte hem-seluen, as the bokes
telle.

They of Mecene leete enquire and 95
seke †)

Of Lacedomye fifty maydens eke,
On whichę they wolden doon hir
lecherye.

But was ther noon of al that com-
paignye

That she nas slayn, and with a good
entente

Chees rather for to dye than assente 00

To been oppressed of hir maydenhede.
Why sholde I thanne to dye been
in drede?

Lo, eek the tiraunt Aristoclide, †)

That loueþ a mayden heet Stym-
phalides!

Whan that hir fader slayn was on a 05
nyght,

Vn-to Dianes temple goth she right,
And hente the ymage in hir handes
two,

ffro which ymage wolde she neuere
go;

No wight ne myghte hir handes of
it arace

Til she was slayn right in the selue 10
place.

¶ Now sith þat maydens hadden swich
despit

To been defouled with mannes foul
delit,

16670. The compleynt, etc.: nur E. 73. ffro D.H.⁴, ffor E., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 5280], etc. 74. elles f. E.He.P.L. 76. to f. P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [better?]. 77. to haue He.G.C.P.L.H.⁴ 83. bere G. 84. thretty G.D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 85. at E., atte (at þe) He., etc. (Sk.). 95. Messene G. (Sk.). 11704. heet E.H.⁴, highte He., etc. 09. race C.P.L.H.⁴

[F 1397—1425]

[F 1426—1456]

Wel oghte a wyf rather hir-seluen slee
 Than be defouled, as it thynketh me.
 15 What shal I seyn of Hasdrubales wyf, †)
 That at Cartage birafte hir-self hir
 lyf?
 ffor whan she saugh that Romayns
 wan the toun,
 She took hir children alle, and skipte
 adoun
 In-to the fyr, and chees rather to dye
 20 Than any Romayn diide hir(e) vileynye.
 Hath nat Lucesse yslayn hir-self,
 allas! †)
 At Rome whan *that* she oppressed was
 Of Tarquyn? ffor hir(e) thoughte it
 was a shame
 To lyuen whan she hadde lost hir name.
 25 The seuene maydens of Milesie (also †)
 Han slayn hem-self for *verray* drede
 and wo,
 Rather than folk of Gawle hem sholde
 oppresse.
 Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,
 Koude I now telle as touchynge this
 mateere.
 30 Whan Habradate was slayn, his wyf
 so deere †)
 Hirseluē slow, and leet hir blood
 to-glyde
 In Habradates woundes depe and wyde,
 And seyde, "My body, at the leeste
 way,
 Ther shal no wight defoulen, if I may."
 35 ¶ What sholde I mo ensamples heer-of
 sayn?
 Sith that so manye han hem-seluen
 slayn
 Wel rather than they wolde defouled
 be,
 I wol concludē that it is bet for me
 To sleen my-self than been defouled
 thus.
 40 I wol be trewe vn-to Arueragus,
 Or rather sleen my-self in som manere,

As diide Demociones doghter deere †)
 By cause þat she wolde nat defouled
 be.
 O Cedasus! it is ful greet pitee †)
 To reden how thy doghtren deyde, 45
 allas!
 That slowen hem-self for swich manere
 cas.
 As greet a pitee was it, or wel moore, †)
 The Theban mayden that for Nichanore
 Hir-seluē slow right for swich manere
 wo.
 Another Theban mayden didē right 50
 so; †)
 ffor oon of Macidonye hadde hir(e)
 oppressed,
 She with hir deeth hir maydenhede
 redressed.
 What shal I seye of Nicerates wyf, †)
 That for swich cas birafte hir-self hir
 lyf?
 How trewe eek was to Alcebiades †) 55
 His loue, *that* rather for to dyen chees
 Than for to suffre his body vnburied
 be!
 Lo, which a wyf was Alceste! quod
 she. †)
 'What seith Omer of goode Penelopee?
 Al Grece knoweth of hir chastitee. 60
 Pardee, of Laodomya is writen thus: †)
 That, whan at Troie was slayn Prothese-
 laus,
 No lenger wolde she lyue after his
 day.
 The same of noble Porcia telle I may; †)
 With-oute Brutus koude she nat lyue, 65
 To whom she hadde al hool hir herte
 yue.
 The parfit wyfhod of Arthemesie †)
 Honoured is thurgh al the Barbarie.
 O Teuta queene! thy wyfly chastitee †)
 To alle wyues may a mirour be! 70
 The same thyng I seye of Bilyea, †)
 Of Rodogone, and eek Valeria."

11722. whan that Gl., whanne H.⁴ (Sk.), þere C.P.L., whan E., etc. 24. hadde He.G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), had E., etc. 25. Melesie E.G.D., Melesie P.H.⁴ 26. verray f. E.C.P.L. 35. sayn, Sk. 37. be? Sk. 42. democienis He.G.D., -icious C.P.L. 46. slowen D. 49/50. f. C.P.L.; Stelle verb. 56. that] al G., f. E. 59. seith f. He.C.P.L.; Penelopee D., Penelopee E., Penelopee He., etc. 61. Lacedomya E.G., leodomia C.P.L. [vgl. 449]. 71/72: nur in E.

[F 1457—1481]

[F 1482—1312]

¶ Thus pleynd Dorigene a day or
tweye,
Purposynge euere that she wolde deye.
75 ¶ But natheles, vpon the thridde
nyght,
Hoom cam Arueragus, this worthy
knyght,
And asked hir(e) why that she weep
so soore?
And she gan wepen euēr lenger the
moore.
¶ 'Allas,' quod she, 'that euere I was
born!
80 Thus haue I seyde,' quod she, 'thus
haue I sworn'—
And toold hym al as ye han herd bi-
fore;†)
It nedeth nat rehcerce it yow namoore.
¶ This housbonde with glad chiere, in
freendly wyse,
Answerde and seyde as I shal yow
deuyse:
85 'Is ther oght elles, Dorigen, but this?'
¶ 'Nay, nay,' quod she, 'God help(e)
me so as wys!
This is to muche, and it werē Goddes
wille.'
¶ 'Ye, wyf,' quod he, 'lat slepen that
is stille!
It may be wel, parauenturē, yet to-
day;
90 Ye shul youre trouthe holden, by my
fay!
ffor God so wisly hauē mercy [vp]on
me,
I hadde wel leuere ystiked for to be
ffor verray louē which that I to yow
haue,
But if ye sholdē youre trouthe kepe
and saue;
95 Trouthe is the hyestē thyng þat man
may kepe.'
But with that word he brast anon to
wepe,
And seyde, 'I yow forbede, vp peyne
of deeth,

That neuere, whil thee lasteth lyf ne
breeth,
To no wight telle thou of this auen-
ture!
As I may best, I wol my wo endure, 00
Ne makē no contenance of heuynesse,
That folk of yow may demen harm
or gesse.'
¶ And forth he cleped a squier and
a mayde:
'Gooth forth anon with Dorigen,' he
sayde,
'And bryngeth hir(e) to swich a place 05
anon.'
They take hir leue, and on hir wey
they gon,
But they ne wiste why she thider
wente;
He nolde no wight tellen his entente.
¶ Paraenture an heep of yow ywis
Wol holden hym a lewed man in this, 10
That he wol putte his wyf in iupartie;
Herkeneth the tale er ye vp-on hir(e)
criel!
She may hauē bettre ffortune than
yow semeth,
And whan þat ye han herd the tale,
demeth.
This squier, which þat highte Aurelius, 15
On Dorigen that was so amorus,
Of auenturē happed hir(e) to meete
Amydde the toun, right in the quykkest
strete,
As she was bown to goon the wey
forth-right
Toward the gardyn ther-as she had 20
hight.
And he was to the gardynward also;
ffor wel he spyed whan she wolde go
Out of hir hous to any maner place.
But thus they mette of auenture or
grace;
And he saleweth hir(e) with glad en- 25
tente,
And asked of hir(e) whiderward she
wente?

11773. pleyne E. 78. [l. leng? f. 3870]. 79. I was E., was I He., etc. (Sk.).
788—880. Eg. fūr D. 89. peraunter H.⁴ 91. on H.⁴ (Sk.); wisly helpe me C.P.L. 97. of
1. E. 98. thee] zow G.D.P., ze L.; ne] or G.D.H.⁴, and C.P. 12806. toke He.C.P.L.
09—14: nur in E. [auch] Caxton¹; Tw. bezweifelt die Echtheit].

[F 1511—1538]

[F 1539—1570]

- ¶ And she answerde, half as she were
mad:
‘Vn-to the gardyn, as myn housbonde
bad
My trouthe for to holde—allas, alas!’
30 ¶ Aurelius gan wondren on this cas,
And in his herte hadde greet com-
passioun
Of hir(e) and of hir lamentacioun,
(¶) And of Arueragus, the worthy
knyght,
That bad hir(e) holden al þat she
had hight:
35 So looth hym was his wyf sholdē
breke hir trouthe.
And in his herte he caughte of this
greet route,
Considerynge the beste on euery syde,
That fro his lust yet were hym leuere
abyde
Than doon so heigh a cherlyssh wrecch-
ednesse
40 Agayns franchise and alle gentillesse,
ffor which in fewe wordes seyde he
thus:
¶ ‘Madame, seyeth to your(e) lord
Arueragus
That, sith I se his grete gentillesse
To yow, and eek I se wel your(e)
distresse,
45 That him werē leuere han shame—and
þat werē route—
Than ye to me sholdē breke thus
youre trouthe,
I hauē wel leuere euere to suffre wo
Than I departē the louē bitwix yow
two.
I yow relese, madame, in-to your(e)
hond
50 Quyt euery surement and euery bond
That ye han maad to me as heer-
bifon,
Sith thilke tyme which þat ye werē
born.
My trouthe I plighte, I shal yow
neuēr repreue
Of no biheste, and heere I take my
leue

- As of the treweste and the beste wyf 55
That euere yet I knew in al my lyf.
But euery wyf be war of hir biheeste!
On Dorigenē remembreth, atte leeste.
Thus kan a squier doon a gentil dede
As wel as kan a knyght, with-outen 60
drede.
¶ She thonketh hym vp-on hir knees
al bare;
And hoom vn-to hir housbonde is she
fare,
And tolde hym al, as ye han herd me
sayd;
And ye be sikē he was so weel
apayd,
That it were impossible me to wryte. 65
What sholde I lenger of this cas
endyte?
¶ Arueragus and Dorigene his wyf
In souereyn blisse leden forth hir lyf.
Neuere eft ne was ther anger hem
bitwene;
He cheriseth hir(e) as though she 70
were a queene,
And she was to hym trewe for euere-
moore.
Of thisē folk ye gete of me namoore.—
Aurelius, that his cost hath al forlorn,
Curseth the tyme þat euere he was
born.
‘Allas,’ quod he, ‘allas! that I bihighte 75
Of pured gold a thousand pound of
wighte
Vn-to this philosophrē! How shal I
do?
I se namoore but that I am fordo;
Myn heritage moot I nedes selle,
And been a begger(e); heere I may 80
nat dwelle,
And shamen al my kynrede in this
place,
But I of hym may gete bettre grace.
But natheles I wol[e] of hym assaye
At certeyn dayes, yeer by yeer, to
paye,
And thanke hym of his grete cur- 85
teise.
My trouthe wol I kepe, I wol nat lye.’

11869. angre E.He.Eg. [vgl. 6070]. 70. Shershed P. 72. thise two folk He.G.Eg.P.H.⁴
(Sk.), C.P. verb.

[F 1571—1599]

[F 1600—1624]

- ¶ With herte soor he gooth vn-to his
cofre,
And broghte gold vn-to this philo-
sophre,
The value of fyue hundred pound, I
gesse,
90 And hym bisecheth, of his gentillesse,
To graunte hym dayes of the remenaunt,
And seyde, 'Maister, I dar wel make
auaunt
I failled neuere of my trouthe as yit;
ffor, sikerly, my dette shal be quyt
95 Towardes yow, how-euere that I fare
To goon a-begged in my kirtle bare.
But wolde ye vouche-sauf, vp-on seure-
tee,
Two yeer or thre for to respiten me,
Thanne were I wel; for elles moot
I selle
00 Myn heritage—ther is namore to telle.'
This philosophre sobrelly answerde,
And seyde thus, whan he his wordes
herde:
'Hauē I nat holden couenant vn-to
thee?'
¶ 'Yes, certes, wel and trewely,' quod
he.
05 ¶ 'Hastow nat had thy lady as thee
liketh?'
¶ 'No, no,' quod he, and sorwefully
he siketh.
¶ 'What was the cause? Telle me if
thou kan.'
¶ Aurelius his tale anon bigan,
And tolde hym al, as ye han herd
bifoore—
10 It nedeth nat to yow reherce it moore.
¶ He seide 'Arueragus, of gentillesse,
Haddē leuere dye in sorwe and in
distresse
Than þat his wyf were of hir trouthe
fals.'
The sorwe of Dorigen he tolde hym
als:
15 How looth hir(e) was to been a wikked
wyf,

And þat she leuere had lost that day
hir lyf,
And þat hir trouthe she swoor thurgh
innocence:
She neuere erst hadde herd speke of
apparence—
'That made me han of hir(e) so greet
pitee,
And right as frely as he sente hir(e) 20
me,
As frely sente I hir(e) to hym ageyn.
This al and som—ther is namore to
seyn.'
¶ This philosophre answerde, 'Leeue
brother,
Euerich of yow didē gentilly til oother;
Thou art a squier, and he is a knyght. 25
But God forbede, for his blisful myght,
But if a clerk koudē doon a gentil
dede
As wel as any of yow, it is no drede.
¶ Sire, I releesse thee thy thousand
pound,
As thou right now werē crope[n] out 30
of the ground,
Ne neuere er now ne haddest knowen
me.
ffor, sire, I wol nat take[n] a peny of
thee
ffor al my craft, ne noght for my
trauaille.
Thou hast ypayed wel for my vitaille;
It is ynogh, and far[e] wel—hauē good 35
day!
And took his hors, and forth he gooth
his way.—
Lordynges, this question thanne wolde
I aske now:
Which was the mooste fre, as thynketh
yow?
Now telleth me, er that ye farther
wende.
I kan namore—my tale is at an ende. 40
¶ Heere is ended the ffrankeleyns
tale.

11891—11940. Sl. für G.; 00—40. Se. für C. 11911—18. H.² für L. 16. had f. P.Sl., had that day lost Se.L., lost had leuere th. d. D., had han lost H.⁴ 22. This E.He., This is P., etc. [vgl. 5757]; Ms. gerrißen D. 30. crope Se.H.⁴, crepe L. 32. taken E.Sl.Se. (Gl.). 37. thanne f. P.Sl.H.⁴ (Sk.); wol (wil) He.D.P.Sl.

[C 1—25]

[C 26—55]

VI. Fragment (C.).

14. The Phisiciens Tale.

¶ Heere folweth the Phisiciens*) tale.

Ther was, as telleth Titus Liuius,
A knyght that *called was* Virginius,
ffulfilde of honour and of worthynesse,
And strong of freendes, and of greet
richesse.

45 ¶ This knyght a doghter hadde by
his wyf,
No children hadde he mo in al his
lyf.

ffair was this mayde, in excellent
beautee

Abouen euery wight that man may see;
ffor Nature hath with souereyn dili-
gence

50 Yformed hir(e) in so greet excellence,
As though she wolde seyn, 'Lo! I,
Nature,

Thus kan I forme and peynte a crea-
ture

Whan that me list; who kan me
countrefete?

Pigmalion noght, though he ay forge
and bete,

55 Or graue, or peynte; for I dar wel
seyn

Apelles, Zanzis sholde werche in veyn†)
Outher to graue, or peynte, or forge,
or bete,

If they presumed me to countrefete.
ffor he that is the former(e) principal

60 Hath makid me his vicairę general,
To forme and peynten erthely crea-
turis

Right as me list, and ech thyng in
my cure is

Vnder the moone þat may wane and
waxe,

And for my werk right no-thing wol
I axe;

65 My lord and I been ful of oon accord.

I made hir(e) to the worship(e) of my
lord;

So do I alle myne othere creatures,
What colour that they han, or what
figures.'

Thus semeth me that Nature wolde
seye.

¶ This mayde of age .XIJ. yeer was 70
and tweye,

In which þat Nature hadde swich delit;
ffor right as she kan peynte a lilie
whit,

And reed a rose, right with swich
peynture

She peynted hath this noble creature,
Er she werę born, vp-on hir lymes fre, 75

Where-as by right swiche colours
sholde be.

And Phebus dyed hath hir(e) tresses
grete

Lyk to the stremes of his burned
heete.

And if þat excellent was hir beautee,
A thousand-foold moore vertuous was 80
she.

In hire ne lakked no condicioun
That is to preyse, as by discrecioun.

As wel in goost as body chast was she,
ffor which she floured in virginitee

With alle humylitee and abstinence, 85
With alle temperaunce and pacience,

With mesure eek of beryng and array.
Discreet she was in answeyng alway,

Though she werę wise Pallas, dar I
seyn;

Hir facound eek, ful womanly and 90
pleyn.

No countrefeted termes hadde she
To seme wys, but after hir degree

She spak, and alle hir(e) wordes, moore
and lesse,

Sownynge in vertu and in gentillesse.
Shamefast she was in maydens shame- 95

fastnesse,

) doctour of phisik C.H. — In He. hinter Cl., in C.P.L.Sl.H.* hinter Chan. Y. — 11941—12106 u. 12183—12237 f. G., dafür Sl. [Die zahlreichen Abweichungen des B-Typs können nur gelegentlich vermerkt werden.] 11942. was called E. 54. [Randgl.] Quere in Metamorphosios E.He.D. [f. Met. X, 247]. 55: vgl. Rom. R. 16379ff. u. oben V. 6081. 60: vgl. P. F. 379. 70. twelue D.L.Sl. (Gl.), twelf H.* (Sk.). 77. tress E. 89. wys as C.P.L.Sl. (Sk., Gl.). 90. a E. 95. in f. E.

[C 56—82]

[C 83—111]

Constant in herte, and euer in bi-
synesse
To dryue hir(e) out of ydel slogardye.
Bacus hadde of hir(e) mouth right
no maistrie;
ffor wyn and youthe dooth Venus
encresse,
00 As man in fyr wol casten oille or
gresse;
And of hir owene vertu vnconstreyned,
She hath ful ofte tyme syk hir(e)
feyned,
ffor that she wolde fleen the com-
paignye
Where likly was to treten of folye,
05 As is at feestes, reuels, and at daunces,
That been occasions of daliaunces.
Swiche thynges maken children for to
be
To soone rype and boold, as men
may se,
Which is ful perilous, and hath been
yoore;
10 ffor al to soone may they lerne loore
Of booldnesse, whan she woxen is a
wyf.
¶ And ye, maistresses, in youre olde
lyf
That lordes doghtres han in gouern-
aunce,
Ne taketh of my wordes no disple-
aunce!
15 Thenketh that ye been set in gouern-
ynges
Of lordes doghtres oonly for two
thynges:
Outher for ye han kept youre honestee,
Or elles ye han falle in freletee,
And knowen wel ynough the olde
daunce,
20 And han forsaken fully swich mes-
chaunce
ffor eueremo; therefore, for Cristes sake,
To teche hem vertu looke þat ye ne
slake!

¶ A thief of venysoun that hath forlaft
His likerousnesse and al his olde craft
Kan kepe a forest best of any man. 25
Now kepeth wel, for if ye wolē ye
kan!
Lookē wel þat ye vn-to no vice assente,
Lest ye be dampned for your(e) wikke
entente!
ffor who-so dooth, a traitour is cer-
teyn;
And taketh keep[e] of that þat I shal
seyn:
Of alle tresons souereyn pestilence
[¶ *Nota*
Is whan a wight bitrayseth innocence.
¶ Ye fadres and ye moodres eek also,
Though ye han children, be it oon or
two,
Youre is the charge of al hir suruei- 35
aunce,
Whil þat they been vnder youre gouern-
aunce.
Beth war, if by ensample of youre
lyuyngē,
Or by youre negligence in chastisyngē,
That they *ne* perisse, for I dar wel
seye,
If þat they doon, ye shul it deere 40
abeie!
Vnder a shepherde softe and negligent
The wolf hath many a sheep and
lamb to-rent.
*Suffiseth oon ensample now as heere;
ffor I moot turne agayn to my matere.*
This mayde of which I wol this tale 45
expresse
So kepte hir-self, hire neded no mais-
tresse;
ffor in hir lyuyng maydens myghten
rede,
As in a book, every good word or dede
That longeth to a mayden vertuous.
She was so prudent and so bounteuous, 50
ffor which the fame out sprong on
euery syde,

12000. man E., men He., etc. (Sk.); wasten E. 07. Swich E.He.D. (Sk., Gl.), Such H., Suche C.L.Sl., Whiche P.; pinges C.P.L.Sl.H. (Sk., Gl.). 10. they E.He.D., she C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 14. word C.L.Sl.H. 26. kepeth hem C.P.L.Sl. (Sk.), kepe hir H. 30. keep H., kepe E.He.D. (Sk., Gl.), heed C., f. P.L.Sl. 31. tresoun He., etc. 34. two E.P.Sl., mo He., etc. (Gl.). 37. if E.He.D., þat C., etc. (Sk.). 39. ne f. E.He.D. 43/44. f. E.

[C 112—139]

[C 140—170]

Bothe of hir beautee and hir bountee,
wyde,
That thurgh that land they preised
hir(e) echone
That loued vertu, saue enuye allone,
55 That sory is of oother mennes wele,
And glad is of his sorwe and his
vnheele;
The doctour maketh this descripcioun.
This mayde vp-on a day wente in
the toun
Toward a temple, with hir mooder
deere,
60 As is of yonge maydens the manere.
¶ Now was ther thanne a iustice in
that toun,
That gouernour was of that regioun.
And so bifel this iuge hise [e]yën caste
Vp-on this mayde, auysynge hym ful
faste,
65 As she cam forby ther [as] this iuge
stood.
Anon his herte chaunged and his mood:
So was he caught with beautee of this
mayde.
And to hym-self ful pryuely he sayde,
'This mayde shal be myn, for any
man!'
70 ¶ Anon the feend in-to his herte ran,
And taughte hym sodeynly þat he by
slyghte
The mayden to his purpos wynne
myghte;
ffor certes, by no force, ne by no
meede,
Hym thoughte he was nat able for to
speede.
75 ffor she was strong of freendes, and
eek she
Confermed was in swich souereyn boun-
tee,
That wel he wiste he myghte hir(e)
neuere wynne
As for to make[n] hir(e) with hir body
synne.
ffor which, by greet deliberacioun,

He sente after a cherl was in the 80
toun,
Which þat he knew for subtil and for
boold.
This iuge vn-to this cherl his tale hath
toold
In secree wise, and made hym to
ensure
He sholde telle it to no creature,
And if he dide, he sholde lese his 85
heed.
Whan þat assented was this cursed
reed,
Glad was this iuge, and maked him
greet cheere,
And yaf hym yiftes precieuse and
deere.
¶ Whan shapen was al hir conspiracie
ffro point to point, how þat his lecherie 90
Parfourned sholde been ful subtilly,
As ye shul heere it after openly,
Hoom gooth the cherl, þat highte
Claudius.
This false iuge, that highte Apius—
So was his name, for this is no fable, 95
But knowen for historial thyng notable;
The sentence of it sooth is, out of
doute—,
This false iuge gooth now faste aboute
To hasten his delit al that he may.
And so bifel soone after, on a day, 100
This false iuge, as telleth vs the storie,
As he was wont, sat in his consistorie,
And yaf hise doomes vp-on sondry cas.
This false cherl cam forth a ful greet
pas,
And seyde, 'Lord, if þat it be youre 05
wille,
As dooth me right vp-on this pitous
bille,
In which I pleyne vp-on Virginius;
And if þat he wol seyn it is nat thus,
I wol it preuee, and fynde good wit-
nesse
That sooth is that my bille wol ex- 10
presse.'

12054. [Randgl.] Augustinus E.He.D. [vgl. 18631]; = doctour 57. 65. as f. C.P.L.Sl.H.⁴ (Sk.). 72. The] This He.H.⁴ 78. maken E. 80. cherl] clerk C., etc., u. jo im [olg. [fr]. serjant].

[C 171—199]

[C 200—230]

¶ The iuge answerde, 'Of this in his
absence

I may nat yeue diffynytyf sentence.
Lat do hym calle, and I wol gladly
heere;

Thou shalt haue al right, and no wrong
heere.'

15 ¶ Virginius cam to witē the iuges wille,
And right anon was rad this cursed
bille;

The sentence of it was as ye shul
heere:

¶ 'To yow, my lord, sire Apius so
deere,

Sheweth youre poure seruant Claudius

20 How that a knyght, called Virginius,
Agayns the lawe, agayn al equitee
Holdeth, expres agayn the wyl of me,
My seruant, which þat is my thral
by right,

Which fro myn hous was stole vp-on
a nyght,

25 Whil þat she was ful yong; this wol
I preuee

By witnessē, lord, so þat it nat yow
greeue.

She nys his doghter nat, what so he
seye;

Wherfore to yow, my lord the iuge,
I preye:

Yeld me my thral, if þat it be youre
wille!

30 Lo, this was al the sentence of his
bille.

¶ Virginius gan vp-on the cherl biholde,
But hastily—er he his tale tolde,
And wolde haue preued it, as sholde
a knyght,

And eek by witnessyng of many^a
wight,

35 That it was fals that seyde his aduer-
sarie—

This cursed iuge wolde no-thing tarie,
Ne heere a word moore of Virginius,
But yaf his iuggement, and seyde thus:

¶ 'I deeme anon this cherl his seruant
haue!

Thou-shalt no lenger in thyn hous 40
hire saue.

Go brynge hir(e) forth, and put hir(e)
in oure warde;

The cherl shal haue his thral, this
I awarde.'

¶ And whan this worthy knyght Vir-
ginius,

Thurgh sentence of this iustice Apius,
Moste by force his deere doghter yuen 45

Vn-to the iuge, in lecherie to lyuen,
He gooth hym boom, and sette him

in his halle,

And leet anon his deere doghter calle,
And, with a face deed as asshen colde,

Vpon hir humble face he gan biholde, 50
With fadres pitee stikyngē thurgh his
herte,

Al wolde he from his purpos nat con-
uerte.

'Doghter,' quod he, 'Virginia by thy
name!

Ther been two weyes, outhur deeth
or shame,

That thou most suffre—allas, that I 55
was bore!

ffor neuere thou deseruedest wherfore
To dyen with a swerd or with a knyf.

O, deere doghter! ender(e) of my lyf!
Which I haue fostred vp with swich

plesaunce,

That thou werē neuere out of my 60
remembraunce.

O doghter! which þat art my laste wo,
And in my lyf my laste ioie also!

O gemme of chastitee! in pacience
Tak[e] thou thy deeth, for this is my
sentence.

ffor loue, and nat for hate thou most 65
be deed;

My pitous hand moot smyten of thyn
heed.

Allas! that euere Apius the say!

Thus hath he falsly iugged the to-day—
And tolde hir(e) al the cas, as ye bifore

Han herd—nat nedeth for to telle it 70
moore.

[C 231—256]

[C 257—286]

¶ 'O mercy, deere fader!' quod this
mayde,
And with that word she bothe hir
armes layde
Aboute his nekke, as she was wont
to do.
The teeris bruste out of hir [e]yën two,
75 And seyde, 'Goode fader, shal I dye?
Is ther no grace, is ther no remedye?'
¶ 'No, certes, deere doghter myn,' quod
he.
¶ 'Thanne yif me leyser, fader myn,'
quod she,
'My deeth for to compleyne a litel
space.
80 ffor, pardee, Iepte yaf his doghter
grace†)
ffor to compleyne, er he hire slow,
allas!
And, God it woot, no-thing was hir
trespas,
But for she ran hir fader *first* to see,
To welcome hym with greet solempni-
tee.'
85 And with that word she fil aswowne
anon.
And after, whan hir swownyng is agon,
She riseth vp, and to hir fader sayde,
'Blissed be God that I shal dye a
mayde!
Yif me my deeth, er that I haue a
shame.
90 Dooth with your(e) child youre wyl,
a Goddes name!'
¶ And with that word she preyed hym
ful ofte
That with his swerd he wolde smyte
softe;
And with that word aswowne doun
she fil.
Hir fader, with ful sorweful herte and
wil,
95 Hir heed of smoot, and by the top it
hente,
And to the iuge he gan it to presente,

As he sat yet in doom in consistorie.
And whan the iuge it saugh, as seith
the storie,
He bad to take hym, and anhange
hym faste.
But right anon a thousand peple in 00
thraste
To sauē the knyght, for routhe and for
pitee;
ffor knowen was the false iniquitee.
The peple anon hath suspect of this
thyng,
By manere of the cherles chalangyng,
That it was by the assent of Apius; 05
They wisten wel that he was lecherus.
ffor which vn-to this Apius they gon,
And caste hym in a prisoun right
anon,
Ther-as he slow hym-self; and Claudius,
That seruant was vn-to this Apius, 10
Was demed for to hange vpon a tree,
But that Virginius, of his pitee,
So preyde for hym, that he was exiled,
And elles, certes, he had been bigyled.
The remenant were unhanged, moore 15
and lesse,
That were consentant of this cursed-
nesse.—
Heere men may seen how synne hath
his merite!
Beth war! for no man woot whom
God wol smyte
In no degree, nè in which maner(e) wyse
The worm of conscience may agryse 20
Of wikked lyf, though it so pryuee
be,
That no men woot ther-of but God and
he.
ffor be he lewed man, or ellis lered,
He noot how soone þat he shal been
afered.
Therefore I rede yow this conseil take: 25
fforsaketh synne, er synne yow forsake!
¶ Heere endeth the Phisiciens tale.

12172. both E.P. (Sk., Gl.). 73. About E. (Sk., Gl.). 74. borste He.D., broste(n) G.P. (Sk.), barst(en) C., etc. 80: B. b. Richt. XI, 30 ff. 83. first] for E.He. 92. wolde E.He., shulde D., etc. 12293. hath E., hadde He., etc. 11. Was] And E. 17. men may E., may (moun D.) men He., etc. 23. be he E.He., he be D., etc. 26: bgl. 18161.

[C 287—312]

[C 313—331]

15. The Pardoners Tale.

a) ¶ The wordes*) of the Hoost to the Phisicien and the Pardoner.

●ure Hooste gan to swere as he were wood:

'Harrow,' quod he, 'by nayles and by blood!

This was a fals cherl and a fals iustise.

30 As shameful deeth as herte may deuyse
Come to this [false] iuges and hir(e) aduocat!

Algate this sely mayde is slayn, allas!
Allas, to deere boughte she beautee!
Wherfore I seye al-day, as men may see,

35 That yiftes of ffortune and of Nature
Been cause of deeth to many[^]a creature. [C 297/98]

Of bothe yiftes that I speke of now
Men han ful ofte moore for harm than prow.

¶ But trewely, myn owene mayster deere,

40 This is a pitous tale for to heere;
But natheles, passe ouer—is no fors!
I praye to God so sauē thy gentil cors,
And eek thyne vrinals and thy iur-dones,

Thyn ypcoras, and eek thy galiones,
45 And euery boyste ful of thy letuarie;
God blesse hem, and oure lady Seinte Marie!

So mote I theen, thou art a propre man
And lyk a prelat, by Seint Ronyan!
Seyde I nat wel? I kan nat speke in terme,

50 But wel I woot thou doost myn herte to erme,

That I almost hauē caught a cardynacle.

By corpus bones! but I hauē triacle,
Or elles a draughte of moyste and corny ale,

Or but I heere anon a myrie tale,
Myn herte is lost for pitee of this mayde.

Thou beel amy, thou Pardoner,' he sayde,

'Telle vs som myrthe or iapes right anon.'

¶ 'It shal be doon,' quod he, 'by Seint Ronyon!

'But first,' quod he, 'heere at this ale-stake

I wol bothē drynke and eten of a cake.'

¶ And right anon the gentils gonne to crye,

'Nay, lat hym telle vs of no ribaudye!
Telle vs som moral thyng, þat we may leere

Som wit, and thanne wol we gladly heere.'

¶ 'I graunte ywis,' quod he, 'but I moot thynke

Vp-on som honeste thyng, while þat I drynke.'

b) ¶ Heere folweth the Prologe of the Pardoners tale.**)

¶ *Radix malorum est Cupiditas. Ad Thimotheum.* 6^o.

'Lordynges,' quod he, 'in chirches whan I preche,

I payne me to han an hauteyn speche,
And ryngte it out as rounde as gooth a belle,

*) The myry talkyng, etc. He., ... bigynneth the prologe of the P.D.Sl., Prologus, etc. C., etc. — 12227—324. f. G., dafür Sl. 27. bygan D.; for to C., to f. P., etc. 30. may E.He., kan D., etc. 31. [false] E.; aduocas P.Sl. 31/32. So falle vpon his body and his bones þe deuyll I bekenne him al at ones C.L.H.⁴ 34. as E., þat He., etc. [vgl. 18611]. 35. and] or C., etc. (Sk.). — Nach 36 schieben C.L.H.⁴ zwei unechte Verse ein (Sk., Gl.). 38/39 u. 43/44 f. H.⁴ 38. for f. C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 46. Seinte He.C.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), Seint E., etc. 47. mote (Konj.) He.D.C.P., mo(o)t E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 51. Cardyacle C., etc. (Sk.). 52. but if He.C.L.Sl. 54. murye He.D., merye C., etc. [vgl. 12781]. 61. And E.He., But D., etc. (Sk.); the E.H.⁴, thise He., etc. (Sk.). — **) Zeilen umgestellt He.; bigynneth, omnium m. id.; þe Pardoneres tale etc., C., etc. — 69. rounde (Abb.) P.L.Sl., lowd H.⁴, round E., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[C 332—360]

[C 361—388]

70 ffor I kan al by rote that I telle.
My theme is alwey oon, and euer
was:

Radix malorum est cupiditas.

First I prounce whennes þat I come,
And thanne my bulles shewe I, alle
and some;

75 Oure lige lordes seel on my patente,
That shewe I first, my body to
warente,

That no man be so boold, ne preest,
ne clerk,

Me to destourbe of Cristes hooly werk.
And after that thanne telle I forth
my tales;

80 Bulles of popes and of cardynales,
Of patriarkes and bishoppes I shewe,
And in latyn I speke a wordes fewe,
To saffron with my predicacioun,
And for to stire hem to devocioun.

85 Thanne shewe I forth my longe cristal
stones,

Ycrammed ful of cloutes and of bones;
Relikes been they, as wenen they
echoon.

Thanne haue I in latoun a sholder-
boon;

Which that was of an hooly Iewes
sheep.

90 "Goode men," I seye, "taak of my
wordes keep[e]!

If that this boon be wasshe in any
welle,

If cow, or calf, or sheep, or oxwelle,
That any worm hath ete, or worm
ystonge,

Taak water of that welle, and wassh
his tonge,

95 And it is hool anon; and forthermoore
Of pokkes, and of scabbe, and euery
soore

Shal euery sheep be hool þat of this
welle

Drynketh a draughte—taak keep[e] eek
what I telle!

¶ If that the goode man that the
beestes oweth

Wol euery wyke, er that the cok hym 00
croweth,

ffastyng drinken of this welle a
draughte,

As thilke hooly Iew oure eldres taughte,
Hise beestes and his stoor shal multi-
plie.

¶ And, sire, also it heeleth ialousie;
ffor though a man be falle in ialous 05
rage,

Lat maken with this water his potage,
And neuere shal he moore his wyf
mystriste,

Though he the soothe of hir defaute
wiste,

Al had she taken preestes two or
thre.

¶ Heere is a miteyn eek, that ye may 10
se!

He þat his hand wol putte in this
mitayn,

He shal haue multipliynge of his grayn,
Whan he hath sowen, be it whete or
otes,

So þat he offre pens, or elles grotes.

¶ Goode men and wommen! o thyng 15
warne I yow!

If any wight be in this chirche now
That hath doon synne horrible, þat he
Dar nat for shame of it yshryuen be,
Or any womman, be she yong or old,
That hath ymaad hir housbonde coke- 20
wold:

Swich folk shal haue no power ne no
grace

To offren to my relikes in this place;
And who-so fyndeth hym out of swich
blame,

They wol come vp and offre on Goddes
name,

And I assoille hem by the auctoritee 25
Which that by bulle ygraunted was
to me."

12271 ff.: umgestellt u. teilweise verändert D. 72: bgl. 14035 u. 18956. 88. I f. E. [vgl. 18783]. 89. Iew: Jacob [I. Mof. XXX, 32 ff.]. 95/96. forthermoor: soor E.He. (Gl.) [vgl. 2233f., 2741f., 2847f., 9119f., 15937f.]. 12301. drynken He.D. 04. sires C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 20. y-maad C.L.H.⁴, made P.Sl., ymaked E.He.D. 23. fame E. 24. They] He He. (Sk.); on E., a He.D., in C., etc. (Sk.). 25. hem E.H.⁴, hym He., etc. (Sk.).

[C 389—417]

[C 418—449]

¶ By this gaude haue I wonne yeer
by yeer
And hundred mark sith I was pardon-
doner.
I stonde lyk a clerk in my pulpet,
30 And whan the lewed peple is doun
yset,
I preche so as ye han herd bifoore,
And telle an hundred false iapes
moore.
Thanne peyne I me to strecche forth
the nekke,
And est and west vp-on the peple I
bekke,
35 As dooth a dowue sittynge on a berne.
Myne handes and my tonge goon so
yerne,
That it is ioȝe to se my bisynesse.
Of avarice and of swich cursednesse
Is al my prechyng, for to make hem
free
40 To yeue[n] hir pens, and namely vn-to
me.
ffor myn entente is nat but for to
wynne,
And no-thing for correccioun of synne.
I rekke neuere, whan þat they been
beryed,
Though þat hir soules goon a-blake-
beryed.
45 ffor certes, many a predicacioun
Comth ofte tyme of yuel entencioun;
Som for plesance of folk and flaterye,
To been auaunced by ypocrisyse,
And som for veyne-glorie, and som
for hate.
50 ffor whan I dar noon other weyes
debate,
Thanne wol I styngye hym with my
tonge smerte
In prechyng, so þat he shal nat asterte
To been defamed falsly, if that he
Hath trespassed to my bretheren or to
me.
55 ffor though I telle noght his propre
name,

Men shal wel knowe that it is the
same
By signes and by othere circumstances.
Thus quyte I folk that doon vs dis-
plesances;
Thus spitte I out my venym vnder
hewe
Of holynesse, to semen hoolly and
trewe.
¶ But shortly myn entente I wol deuyse:
I preche of no-thing but of coueityse;
Therfore my theme is yet and euere
was:
Radix malorum est cupiditas.
Thus kan I preche agayn that same
vice
Which þat I vse, and that is avarice.
But though my-self be gilty in that
synne,
Yet kan I maken oother folk to
twynne
ffrom avarice, and soore to repente.
But that is nat my principal entente; 7
I preche no-thing but for coueitise—
Of this mateere it oghte ynogh suffice.
¶ Thanne telle I hem ensamples many
oon
Of olde stories longe tyme agoon;
ffor lewed peple louen tales olde, 7
Swiche thynges kan they wel reporte
and holde.
What, trowe ye, the whiles I may
preche,
And wyne gold and siluer for I teche,
That I wol lyue in pouerte wilfully?
Nay, nay, I thoghte it neuere trewely! 8
ffor I wol preche and begge in sondry
landes;
I wol nat do no labour with myne
handes,
Ne make baskettes, and lyue therby,
By cause I wol nat beggen ydelly.
I wol noon of the Apostles countrefete, 8
I wol haue moneie, wolle, chese, and
whete,
Al were it yeuen of the pouereste page,

12330. the E.D.H.⁴, that He., that the G., verb. C.P.L. 40. yeuen E.He.G. 43. þat f. E.H.⁴; I-beryed H.⁴ 47—65. Ad.² für Lan. 60. seme He.C.Ad.²H.⁴ (Sk.). 62. for coueityse E.He.D. (Sk., Gl.). 68. maken E.D., make He., etc. 77. whiles E.P., þat wh. He.D., that wh. that G., wh. þat C.L., wh. H.⁴ 85. thaпostles H.⁴ [f. Apostelgesch. XVIII, 3].

[C 450—475]

[C 476—507]

Or of the pouereste wydwe in a village,
Al sholde hir children sterue for famyne.

90 Nay, I wol drynke licour of the vyne,
And haue a ioly wenche in euery toun.

But herkneth, lordynges, in conclusioun:

¶ Youre likyng is that I shal telle a tale;
Now haue I dronke a draughte of corny ale,

95 By God, I hope I shal yow telle a thyng

That shal by reson been at youre likyng.

ffor though my-self be a ful vicious man,

A moral tale yet I yow telle kan,
Which I am wont to preche for to wyne.

00 Now, hoold your(e) pees! my tale I wol bigynne.

c) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Pardoners tale.

In fflaundes whilom was a compaignye
Of yonge folk, that haunteden folye,
As riot, hasard, stywes, and tauernes,
Where-as with harpes, lutes, and gyternes

05 They daunce and pleye[n] at dees,
bothe day and nyght,
And ete[n] also and drynken ouer hir myght,

Thurgh which they doon the deuel sacrificise

With-inne that deuyles temple, in cursed wise,

By superfluytee abhomynable.

10 Hir othes been so grete and so dampnable,

That it is grisly for to heere hem swere.

Oure blissed Lordes body they to-tere;
Hem taughte þat Iewes rente hym noght ynough,

And ech of hem at otheres synne lough.

And right anon thanne comen to- 15
besteres

ffetys and smale, and yonge ffrutesteres,
Syngeres with harpes, baudes, wafereres,
Whiche been the verray deuyles officeres,

To kyndle and blowe the fyr of lecherye,

That is annexed vn-to glotonye. 20

The hooly writ take I to my wnesse
That luxurie is in wyn and dronkenesse.

Lo, how þat dronken Looth, vnkyndely,†)

Lay by hise doghtres two vnwytyngly;
So dronke he was, he nyste what he 25
wroghte.

¶ Herodes—who-so wel the stories soghte—

Whan he of wyn was repleet at his feeste,

Right at his owene table he yaf his heeste

To sleen the Baptist Iohn ful giltelees.

¶ Sénec seith a good word, doutelees: 30
[¶ Seneca

He seith he kan no difference fynde
Bitwix a man that is out of his mynde,
A'nd a man which that is dronkelewe,
But that woodnesse, fallen in a shrewe,
Perseuereþ lenger than dooth dronke- 35
nesse.

O glotonye, ful of cursednesse!

O cause first of oure confusioun!

O original of oure dampnacioun,

Til Crist hadde boght vs with his blood agayn!

Ló, how deere, shortly for to sayn, 40

Aboght was thilke cursed vileynye!
Corrupt was al this world for glotonye.

¶ Adam, oure fader, and his wyf also
ffro Paradys to labour and to wo

Werē dryuen for that vice, it is no 45
drede.

12403. stywes E.H.⁴, Stewes He., etc. 05. pleye G.C.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 06. ete He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.); drynke He.G.L.H.⁴, f. P. 13: bgl. 18765. 23: I. Mof. XIX, 33. 26: 3wei unedhte Werge eingelegt C.L. [Matth. XIV, 6 ff.]. 30. Seneca H.⁴ (Gl.); Senek saip eek C.L. (Sk.) [Epist. 83]. 34. fallen E.H.⁴, yfallen He.G.D. (Sk.), is f. C.P.L. 42: bgl. 19060.

[C 508—537]

[C 538—569]

ffor whil þat Adam fasted, as I rede, †)
He was in Paradys, and whan þat he
Eet of the fruyt deffended on the
tree,

Anon he was out-cast to wo and peyne.

50 O glotonye, on thee wol oghte vs
pleyne!

O, wiste a man how manye maladyes
ffolwen of excesse and of glotonyes,
He wolde been the moore mesurable
Of his diete, sittynge at his table!

55 Allas! the shorte throte, the tendre
mouth

Maketh þat Est, and West, and North,
and South,

In erthe, in air, in water, man to
swynke,

To gete a glotoun deyntee mete and
drynke.

Of this matiere, o Paul, wel kanstow
trete!

60 'Mete vn-to wombe, and wombe eek
vn-to mete, †)

Shal God destroyen bothe, as Paulus
seith.

Allas, a foul thyng is it, by my feith!
To seye this word, and fouler is the
dede,

Whan man so drynketh of the white
and rede,

65 That of his throte he maketh his pryuee
Thurgh thilke cursed superfluitee.

¶ The Apostel wepyng seith ful pitously,
'Ther walken manye of whiche yow
toold haue I—

I seye it now wepyng, with pitous
voys—

70 That been enemys of Cristes croys,
Of whiche the ende is deeth, wombe
is hir god.

O wombe! o bely! o stynkyng cod,
ffulfilled of donge and of corrupcioun!
At either ende of thee foul is the soun.

75 How greet labour and cost is thee to
fynde!

Thise cookes, how they stampe, and
streyn, and grynde,

And turnen substaunce in-to accident,
To fulfille[n] al thy likerous talent!
Out of the harde bones knocke they
The mary, for they caste noght a-wey 80
That may go thurgh the golet softe and
swoote;

Of spicerie, of leef, and bark, and roote
Shal been his sauce ymaked by delit,
To make hym yet a newer appetit.
But, certes, he that haunteth swiche 85
delices †)

Is deed, whil þat he lyueth in tho vices.

¶ A lecherous thyng is wyn, and
dronkenesse †)

Is ful of stryuing and of wrecchednesse.
O dronke man! disfigured is thy face,
Sour is thy breeth, foul artow to em- 90
brace;

And thurgh thy dronke nose semeth
the soun

As though thou seydest ay, 'Samp-
soun, Sampsoun!'

And yet, God woot, Sampsoun drank
neuere no wyn.

Thou fallest as it were a styked swyn;
Thy tonge is lost, and al thyn honeste 95
cure,

ffor dronkenesse is verray sepulture
Of mannes wit and his discrecioun.

In whom þat drynke hath dominacioun,
He kan no conseil kepe, it is no drede.
Now kepe yow fro the white and fro 100
the rede,

And namely fro the white wyn of Lepe,
That is to selle in ffyssshstrete or in
Chepe.

This wyn of Spaigne crepeth subtilly
In other wyne growynge faste by,
Of which ther ryseth swich fumositee, 105
That, whan a man hath dronken
draughtes thre,

And weneth that he be at hoom in
Chepe,

12448. of the tre G., of a t. H.⁴, on a t. He.D.C.L. 57. men He.G.C.P.L. (Sk.).
61. Paulus: I. Cor. VI, 13. 67. [Randgl.] Ad Philipenses capitulo 3^o. E.He.D. [III,
18—19; vgl. 19061f.]. 70. That] Thay H.⁴, Ther E., etc. (That they Sk., Gl.). 78. ful-
fillen E.He.Gl.; thy] the He.G.P. 85: j. I. Tim. V, 6. 87: Spr. XX, 1. 89ff.: vgl. 5191ff.
91. sounep P.H.⁴. 93: Richt. XIII, 14. 96: vgl. 19064. 99: vgl. 14100.

[C 570—599]

[C 600—631]

He is in Spaigne, right at the tounē
 of Lepe,
 Nat at the Rochele, nè at Burdeaux
 toun;
 10 And thanne wol he seye, 'Sampsoun,
 Sampsoun!'
 ¶ But herkneth, lordynges, o word I
 yow preye!
 That alle the souereyn actes, dar I seye,
 Of victoriēs in the olde testament
 Thurgh verray God, þat is omnipotent,
 15 Werē doon in abstinence and in
 preyere:
 Looketh the Bible, and ther ye may it
 leere!
 ¶ Looke Attila, the grete conquerour,
 Deyde in his sleep, with shame and
 dishonour,
 Bledynge ay at his nose in dronke-
 nesse;
 20 A capitayn sholdē lyue in sobrenesse.
 And ouer al this auyseth yow right wel
 What was comaunded vn-to Lamuel—†)
 Nat Samuel, but Lamuel seye I—:
 Redeth the Bible, and fynd[e] it ex-
 presly
 25 Of wyn yeuyng to hem þat han iustise.
 Namooore of this, for it may wel suffice.
 AND now *that* I haue spoke[n] of
 glotonye,
 Now wol I yow deffenden hasardrye.
 [¶ *Of Hasardrye*
 Hasard is verray mooder of lesynges,†)
 30 And of deceite, and cursed forswer-
 ynges,
 Blaspheme of Crist, manslaughter, and
 wast also
 Of catel and of tyme, and forthermo
 It is repreuee and contrarie of honour
 ffor to been holde a commune hasard-
 our,
 35 And euēr the hyer he is of estaat,
 The moore is he yholden desolaat.
 If that a pryncē vseth hasardrye,

In alle gouernaunce and polycye
 He is, as by commune opinioun,
 Yholdē the lasse in reputacioun. 40
 ¶ Stilboun, that was a wys embassadour,
 Was sent to Corynthe in ful greet
 honour
 ffro Lacedomye to make[n] hir alliaunce.
 And whan he cam, hym happede par
 chaunce
 That alle the grettestē that were of 45
 that lond,
 Pléyngge atte hasard he hem fond;
 ffor which, as soonē as it myghte be,
 He stal hym hoom agayn to his contree,
 And seyde, 'Ther wol I nat lesē my
 name,
 Nē I wol nat take on me so greet 50
 defame,
 Yow for to allie vn-to none hasardours;
 Sendeth othere wise embassadours!
 ffor, by my trouthe, me werē leuere
 dye
 Than I yow sholdē to hasardours allye;
 ffor ye, that been so glorious in hon- 55
 ours,
 Shul nat allyen yow with hasardours
 As by my wyl, nè as by my tretē.
 This wise philosopre, thus seyde he.
 ¶ Looke eek that to the kyng Demetrius
 The kyng of Parthes, as the book seith 60
 vs,
 Sente him a paire of dees of gold in
 scorn,
 ffor he hadde vsed hasard ther-biforn;
 ffor which he heeld his glorie or his
 renoun
 At no value or reputacioun.
 Lordes may fynden oother maner pley 65
 Honeste ynough to dryue the day away.
 [¶ *Of swering & forsweryng.*
 Now wol I speke of othes false and
 grete
 A word or two, as olde bookes tretē.
 Gret sweryng is a thyng abhominable,

12511. lordes E. 19. ay f. He.G.P. 22/23. Lamwel E.He.D. [Spr. XXXI, 4].
 24. fynd He., fyndeþ C., etc. 27. now E.H.⁴, now that He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); spoke C.L.
 (Sk.), I-spoke H.⁴ 28ff.: bgl. 19027. 31. Blasphemynge E.D. 36. y-halden C.L.; bgl. 40
 [ober l. moore is?]. 37. hasardrye G. 41/42. f. C.L. 43. Lacidomye(ome) E.H.⁴, lati-
 domye G., Calydonye C.P.L.; make He.P.H.⁴ (Sk.). 44. happede G.C.H.⁴ 50. Ny He.,
 Nay G., Ne D., I (ne) C., etc. 52. oþerwise C.H.⁴ [better?]. 59. to f. E.L.H.⁴

[C 632—658]

[C 659—685]

- 70 And fals sweryng is yet moore re-
preu-
able.
The heighe God forbad sweryng at
al—†)
Witnesse on Mathew—, but in special
Of sweryng seith the hooly Ieremye,†)
'Thou shalt *swere* sooth thyne othes,
and nat lye,
75 And swere in doom, and eek in right-
wisnesse;
But ydel sweryng is a cursednesse.
Bihoold and se that in the firste
table
Of heighe Goddes heestes honorable,
Hou that the seconde heeste of hym
is this:
80 'Tak[e] nat my name in ydel or amys.'
Lo, rather he forbedeth swich sweryng
Than homycide or any cursed thyng!
I seye that, as by ordre, thus it stonde-
eth;
This knownen that hise heestes vnder-
stondeth,
85 How þat the seconde heeste of God
is that.
And, forther-ouȝer, I wol thee telle al
plat
That vengeance shal nat parten from
his hous
That of hise othes is to outrageous.
'By Goddes precious herte, and by
his nayles,
90 And by the blood of Crist that is
in Hayles!
Seuene is my chaunce, and thyn is
cynk and treye!
By Goddes armes! if thou falsly pleye,
This dagger(e) shal thurgh-out thyn
herte go!"
This fruyt cometh of the bicched bones
two:
95 fforsweryng, ire, falsnesse, homycide.
Now for the loue of Crist, þat for vs
dyde,

Leteth youre othes, bothe grete and
smale!
But, sires, now wol I telle forth my
tale.
THise riotoures thre of whiche I telle,
Longe erst er prime rong of any belle,
Were set hem in a tauerne to drynke
And as they sat, they herde a belle
clynke
Biforn a cors, was caried to his graue.
That oon of hem gan callen to his
knaue:
'Go bet,' quod he, 'and axe redily
What cors is this þat passeth heer
forby?
And looke þat thou reporte his name
weel!
'¶ 'Sire,' quod this boy, 'it nedeth
neueradeel,
It was me toold er ye cam heer two
houres;
He was, pardee, an old felawe of
yours,
And sodeynly he was yslayn to-nyght,
ffordronke, as he sat on his bench
vpriht.
Ther cam a priuee theef men clepeth
deeth,
That in this contree al the peple sleeth,
And with his spere he smoot his herte
atwo,
And wente his way with-outen wordes
mo;
He hath a thousand slayn this pestil-
ence.
And, maister, er ye come in his pre-
sence,
Me thinketh that it were necessarie
ffor to be war of swich an aduersarie:
Beth redy for to meete hym euere-
moore!
Thus taughte me my dame—I seye
namoore.'
'By seinte Marie!' seyde this tauerner,

12572. Mathew: V, 34 [vgl. 18762]. 73. Ieremye: IV, 2 [vgl. 18767]. 74. swere] seye E.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), etc. [vgl. 18767f.]. 80. Tak H.⁴ 82. any E., eny oþer C.P.L., many a He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. knownen E.P., knownen they D., knoweth he H.⁴, kn. ye Ad.², knoweth He., etc. 87: vgl. 18768. 94. bicche He.G., þilk P. 97. Lete E.He.D., Leveth G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 99. Riotours E.He.P.H.⁴; vgl. 12684 (-rs E.He.D.P.), 12706 (-res G.C.H.⁴). 12601. for to drynke C.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 13. clepeth E.He., cleped C., clepyn(-en) G., etc.

[C 686—711]

[C 712—736]

The child seith sooth, for he hath
 slayn this yeer
 25 Henne ouer a mile, with-inne a greet
 village,
 Bothe man and womman, child, and
 hyne, and page;
 I trowe his habitacioun be there.
 To been auysed, greet wisdom it were,
 Er that he dide a man a dishonour.
 30 ¶ 'Ye, Goddes armes!' quod this riotour,
 'Is it swich peril with hym for to
 meete?
 I shal hym seke by wey and eek by
 strete,
 I make auow to Goddes digne bones!
 Herkneþ, felawes! we thre been al
 ones.
 35 Lat ech of vs holde vp his hand til
 oother,
 And ech of vs bicomen otheres brother,
 And we wol sleen this false traytour
 deeth;
 He shal be slayn which þat so manye
 sleeth,
 By Goddes dignitee, er it be nyght!
 40 ¶ Togidres han thise thre hir trouthes
 plight
 To lyue and dyen ech of hem for
 oother,
 As though he were his owene ybore
 brother.
 And vp they stirte, and dronken in
 this rage,
 And forth they goon towardses that
 village,
 45 Of which the tauerner haddę spoke
 biforn.
 And many^a grisly ooth thanne han
 they sworn,
 And Cristes blessed body they to-rente:
 Deeth shal be deed, if that they may
 hym hente!
 ¶ Whan they han goon nat fully half
 a mile,

Right as they wolde han troden ouer 50
 a stile,
 An oold man and a poure with hem
 mette.
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette,
 And seyde thus: 'Now, lordes, God
 yow see!'
 The proudeste of thise riotoures three
 Answerde agayn, 'What, carl with sory 55
 grace,
 Why artow al forwrapped sauę thy
 face?
 Why lyuestow so longe in so greet
 age?'
 ¶ 'This olde man gan looke in his
 visage,
 And seyde thus: 'ffor I ne kan nat
 fynde
 A man, though þat I walked in-to 60
 Ynde,
 Neither in citee, nor in no village,
 That wolde chaunge his youthe for
 myn age;
 And therfore moot I han myn age
 stille,
 As longe tyme as it is Goddes wille.
 ¶ 'Ne deeth, allas! ne wol nat han 65
 my lyf;
 Thus walke I lyk a resteleees kaityf,
 And on the ground, which is my
 moodres gate,
 I knokke with my staf, bothe erly[^] and
 late,
 And seye, "Leeue mooder, leet me
 in!
 Lo, how I vanysshe flessch, and blood, 70
 and skyn!
 Allas! whan shul my bones been at
 reste?
 Móoder, with yow wolde I chaunge
 my cheste
 That in my chambre longe tyme hath
 be,
 Ye, for an heyre-clowt to wrappe me!"

12626. and hyne E.He., hyne D., & hewe G., f. C., etc. 33. a wow (vow) G.D.P.
 35. til E., to He., etc. 38. which E., he He., etc. (Gl.), f. H.⁴ 41. for E.D., to C., with
 He., etc. 42. yborn E., bore G., born P., sworne C.L.H.⁴ [bgl. 10938]. 43. and E.G.P.,
 al He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 48. that f. He.G.P. 49. half f. He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 50. treden He.D.C.,
 torned H.⁴ 61. nor E., ne He., etc. (Gl.). 68. bothe f. C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 70. wanse C.,
 wane L.H.⁴ [Maximianus, Eleg. I, 223 ff.].

[C 737—762]

[C 763—785]

75 But yet to me she wol nat do that
grace,
ffor which ful pale and welked is my
face.

¶ But, sires, to yow it is no curteisye
To speken to an old man vileynye,
But he trespasse in word, or elles
in dede.

80 In hooly writ ye may your-self wel
rede:

“Agayns an oold man, hoor vpon his
heed,†)

Ye sholde arise;” wherfore I yeue
yow reed:

Ne dooth vn-to an oold man noon
harm now,

Namoorę than þat ye wolde men didę
to yow

85 In agę, if that ye so longe abyde.
And God be with yow, wher(e) ye go
or ryde!

I moot[e] go thider as I hauę to go.

¶ ‘Nay, olde cherl, by God, thou shalt
nat so!’

Seyde this oother hasardour anon,

90 ‘Thou partest nat so lightly, by Seint
Iohn!

Thou spak right now of thilke traytour
deeth,

That in this contree alle oure freendes
sleeth.

Haue heer my trouthe, as thou art his
espye,

Tellę wher(e) he is, or thou shalt it
abye,

95 By God and by the hooly sacrement!
ffor soothly, thou art oon of his assent
To sleen vs yonge folk, thou false
theef!’

¶ ‘Now, sires,’ quod he, if þat ye be so
leef

To fynde deeth, turne vp this croked
wey,

00 ffor in that groue I lafte hym, by my fey,

Vnder a tree, and there he wol[e]
abyde;

Noght for your(e) boost he wol[e] him
no-thing hyde.

Se ye that ook? Right ther ye shal
hym fynde.

God saue yow, þat boghte agayn man-
kynde,

And yow amende!—Thus seyde this
olde man,

And euerich of these riotoures ran
Til he cam to that tree, and ther they

founde
Of floryns fyne of gold, ycoyned

rounde,
Wel ny an .viii. bussshels, as hem

thoughte.
No lenger thannę after deeth they

soughte,
But ech of hem so glad was of that

sighte,
ffor þat the floryns been so faire and

brighte,
That doun they sette hem by this

precious hoord.
The worste of hem, he spak the firste

word:
¶ ‘Bretheren,’ quod he, ‘taak keep[e]

what þat I seye!

My wit is greet, though þat I bourde
and pleye.

This tresor hath fortune vn-to vs yiuen,
In myrthe and ioliftee oure lyf to

lyuen;
And lightly as it comth,* so wol we

spende.
Ey, Goddes precious dignitee! who

wende
To-day that we sholde han so fair a

grace?
But myghtę this gold be caried fro

this place
Hoom to myn hous, or elles vn-to

youres—

12680. hooly writ: III. *Mof.* 19, 32. 81/82. f. G. 82. shal He., schullen C. 87. mo(o)te E.P.L. 91. speeke He.G., spakkest L. 98. ye E.G., yow He.D.H.* (Sk.), to zou C.P.L. [vgl. 3508]. 12703. shal E.He.(Gl.), schul(n) G., etc. 09. eighte D., seuen C., etc. (Gl.). 11. that E.P.H.*, the He., etc.; sighte E.He., sygt G., etc. 12. brighte He., bright E., etc. 15. keep H.*, hede P., thyng? G., kepe E., etc.; what þat He.D., what E., etc.; I schal say H.* [vgl. 9375, etc.].

[C 786—811]

[C 812—835]

ffor wel ye woot þat al this gold is
oures—

25 Thanne were we in heigh felicitée!
But trewely, by daye it may nat bee.
Men wolde seyn þat we werē theues
stronge,

And for oure owene tresor doon vs
honge.

This tresor moste ycaried be by nyghte

30 As wisely and as slyly as it myghte;
Wherfore I rede þat cut among vs alle
Be drawe, and lat se wher the cut wol
falle.

And he þat hath the cut, with herte
blithe

Shal renne to the town[e], and that
ful swithe,

35 And brynge vs breed and wyn ful
priuely;

And two of vs shul kepen subtilly

This tresor wel, and if he wol nat
tarie,

Whan it is nyght, we wol this tresor
carie,

By oon assent, wher(e)-as vs thynketh
best.

40 That oon of hem the cut broghte in
his fest,

And bad hem drawe, and lookē wher(e)
it wol falle;

And it fil on the yongeste of hem alle,
And forth toward the toun he wente
anon.

And also soonē as that he was gon,

45 That oon of hem spak thus vn-to that
oother:

‘Thow knowest wel thou art my sworne
brother;

Thy profit wol I telle thee anon:

Thou woost wel that oure felawe is
agon,

And heere is gold, and that ful greet
plentee,

That shal departed been among vs thre. 50
But nathelees, if I kan shape it so,
That it departed were among vs two,
Hadde I nat doon a freendes torn
to thee?’

¶ That oother answerde, ‘I noot hou
that may be;

He woot how that the gold is with 55
vs tweye.

What shal we doon? What shal we
to hym seye?’

¶ ‘Shal it be conseil?’ seyde the firste
shrewe,

‘And I shal tellen, in a wordes fewe,
What we shal doon, and brynge[n] it
wel aboute.’

¶ ‘I graunte,’ quod that oother, ‘out 60
of doute,

That, by my trouthe, I shal thee nat
biwreye.’

¶ ‘Now,’ quod the firste, ‘thou woost
wel we be tweye,

And two of vs shul strenger be than
oon.

Lookē, whan þat he is set, thou right
anoon

Aryse, as though thou woldest with 65
hym pleye,

And I shal ryue hym thurgh the sydes
tweye,

Whil that thou strogelest with hym as
in game,

And with thy dagger(e) lookē thou do
the same.

And thanne shal al this gold departed
be,

My deere freend, bitwixen me and thee. 70
Thanne may we bothe oure lustes al[1]
fulfille,

And pleye at dees right at oure owene
wille.’

And thus acorded been thise shrewes
tweye

12726. daye E.He.L. [*Dat.i*], day G., etc. 31. Therefore He.G. [vgl. V. 835f.]. 34. þe L.H.⁴ [vgl. 43, 90]. 41. hym E. 44. agon He.D.H.⁴, y-gon C. [ʒiat?]. 45. of hem f. E. 46. sworn E.He.D.P., swore G. 55. how E., wel C.P.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 56. What(?) E.; schulde C., etc. 58. telle it D., t. þe H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); a f. D.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 59. bryngen E. (Gl.). 61. shal E., nyl P., wol He., etc. (Sk.). 64. that right E.He.G.D., and þanne C., and þat P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 68, etc.]. 65. Arys E.He.G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), Arise D., etc. 70. thee and me He.C.P.H.⁴ 71. all E., al He.G.D. (Sk.), f. C., etc.

[C 836—861]

[C 862—890]

To sleen the thridde, as ye han herd
me seye.

75 ¶ This yongeste, which þat wente vn-to
the toun,
fful ofte in herte he rolleth vp and
doun

The beautee of thise floryns newe and
bryghte.

'O Lord,' quod he, 'if so werē þat I
myghte

Haue al this tresor to my-self allone,

80 Ther is no man þat lyueth vnder the
trone

Of God, that sholde lyue so murye^{as I.}
And atte laste the feend, oure enemy,
Putte in his thought þat he sholde poy-
son beye,

With which he myghte sleen hise
felawes tweye.

85 ffor-why the feend foond hym in swich
lyuynge,

That he hadde leue hym to sorwe
brynge;

ffor this was outrely his fulle entente
To sleen hem bothe, and neuere to
repente.

And forth he gooth—no lenger wolde
he tarie—

90 Into the toun, vn-to a pothecarie,
And preyed hym þat he hym wolde
selle

Som poyson, þat he myghte his rattes
quelle;

And eek ther was a polcat in his hawe,
That, as he seyde, hise capouns hadde
yslawe,

95 And fayn he wolde wreke hym, if
he myghte,

On vermyn, þat destroyed hym by
nyghte.

¶ The pothecarie^{answerde,} 'And thou
shalt haue

A thyng that, al-so God my soule
saue,

In al this world ther is no creature

That ete[n] or dronke[n] hath of this
confiture

Noght but the montance of a corn
of whete,

That he ne shal his lif anon forlete;
Ye, sterue he shal, and that in lasse
while

Than thou wolt goon a-paas nat but
a mile;

This poyson is so strong and violent.'

¶ This cursed man hath in his hond
yhent

This poyson in a box, and sith he ran
In-to the nexte strete vn-to a man,
And borwed hym large botelles thre,
And in the two his poyson poured he,
The thridde he kepte clenē for his
owene drynke;

ffor al the nyght he shoop hym for to
swynke

In cariynge of the gold out of that
place.

And whan this riotour with sory grace
Hadde filled with wyn hise grete botels
thre,

To hise felawes agayn repaireth he.

¶ What nedeth it to sermone of it
moore?

ffor right [so] as they hadde cast his
deeth bifoore,

Right so they han hym slayn, and
that anon.

And whan þat this was doon, thus spak
that oon:

'Now lat vs sitte and drynke, and
make vs merie,

And afterward we wol his body berie.'

And with that word it happed hym,
par cas,

To take the botel ther the poyson was,
And drank, and yaf his felawe drynke
also,

ffor which anon they storuen bothe two.

¶ But certes, I suppose that Auycen
Wroot neuere in no canon, ne in no fen,

12775. vn-to E., to He., etc. 81. murye E., myrie He., mery(e) G., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 12 254 u. 12821]. 86. hem E.G. [vgl. 7065 ff.]. 87. ful He.D., f. G., etc. 90. Apothecarie E.He .P. 91. preyde E. C.P.L.H.⁴ 12800. ete, dronke He.D.P.(drink)H.⁴ (Sk.). 05. The He.G.D.H.⁴ 09. [of] hym Sk.; botels E.He.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 11. owene E., f. He., etc. (Sk.) [zu streichen?]. 18. [so] E., f. He., etc. 20. whan þat þat f. He.G.H.⁴

[C 891—921]

[C 922—947]

Mo wonder signes of empoisonyng
 30 Than hadde thise wrecches two er hir
 endyng.

Thus ended been thise homycides two,
 And eek the false empoysoner(e) also.
 ¶ O cursed synne of alle cursednesse!

[¶ *Auctor*

O traitours homycide! .o. wikkednesse!
 35 O glotonye, luxurie, and hasardrye,
 Thou blasphemour of Crist with vileyn-
 ye

And othes grete of vsage and of pride!
 Allas, mankyndé! how may it bitide
 That to thy creatour, which þat the
 wroghte,

40 And with his precious herte-blood thee
 boghte,

Thou art so fals and so vnkynde, allas?

¶ Now, goode men, God foryeue yow
 your(e) trespas,

And ware yow fro the synne of auarice!
 Myn hooly pardoun may yow alle
 warice,

45 So þat ye offre nobles or sterlynges,
 Or elles siluer, broches, spoones, rynges.
 Boweth your(e) heed vnder this hooly
 bulle!

Com vp, ye wyues, offreth of youre
 wolle!—

Your names I entre heer in my rolle
 anon;

50 In-to the blisse of heuene shul ye gon.
 I yow assoille by myn heigh power,
 Yow þat wol offre, as clene and eek
 as cleer

As ye were born; and lo, sirȝ, thus
 I preche,

And Ihesu Crist, that is oure soules
 leche,

55 So graunte yow his pardoun to receyue;
 ffor that is best—I wol yow nat de-
 ceuye.

But, sirȝ, o word forgat I in my tale:
 I hauȝ reliķes and pardoun in my male
 As fair(e) as any man in Engeland,

Whiche were me yeuen by the popes 60
 hond.

If any of yow wole of deuocioun
 Offren, and han myn *absolucioun*,
 Com forth anon, and kneleth heere
 adoun,

And mekely receyueþ my pardoun;
 Or elles taketh pardoun as ye wende, 65
 Al newe and fressh, at euery miles
 ende,

So þat ye offren alwey newe and
 newe

Nobles or pens whiche þat be goode
 and trewe.

It is an honour to euerich that is
 heer

That ye mowe haue a suffisant par- 70
 doneer

Tassoille yow, in contree as ye ryde,
 ffor auentures whiche þat may bityde.
 Parauenture ther may fallen oon or
 two

Doun of his hors, and breke his nekke
 atwo;

Lookȝ which a seuretee is it to yow 75
 alle

That I am in your(e) felawship(e)
 yfalle,

That may assoille yow, bothȝ moore
 and lasse,

Whan þat the soule shal fro the body
 passe.

I rede þat oure hoost heere shal bi-
 gynne,

ffor he is moost enveloped in synne. 80
 Com forth, sir(e) hoost, and offre first
 anon,

And thou shalt kisȝ my reliķes euerych-
 on,

Ye, for a grote! Vnbokȝ anon thy
 purs!

'Nay, nay,' quod he, 'thanne haue I
 Cristes curs!

Lat be,' quod he, 'it shal nat be, so 85
 theech!

12833. of alle] ful of C.L.H.* (Sk.), ful of al P. 48. Com(e) E.D., Cometh He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 63]. 49. name He.G.C.P.L. (Sk.). 52. Yow E.G., Ye He., etc. (If ȝe H.*). 61. wole E.C., wele G., wol He., etc. (Sk.). 66. Miles] tounes C.P.L.H.* (Sk.). 73. par-
 aunter H.*; falle He., etc. (Sk.). 75. swich He.P.H.* 79. heere E.G., f. He., etc. [l. (h)oste
 = L.H.*?]. 82. my(ne) E.G., the He., etc. (Sk.).

[C 948—968; B 1191]

[B 1192—1219]

Thou woldest make me kisse thyn olde
breech,

And swere it were a relyk of a seint,
Though it were with thy fundement
depeint.

But by the croys which þat seint Eleyne
fond!

90 I wolde I hadde thy coillons in myn
hond

In stide of reliķes or of seintuarie!
Lat kutte hem of! I wol with thee
hem carie;

They shul be shryned in an hogges
toord.'

¶ This Pardonere answerde nat a word;

95 So wrooth he was, no word ne wolde
he seye.

¶ 'Now,' quod oure hoost, 'I wol no
lenger pleye

With thee, ne with noon oother angry
man!'

But right anon the worthy knyght bigan,
Whan þat he saugh þat al the peple
lough:

00 'Namoore of this! for it is right ynough.
Sir(e) Pardonere, be glad and myrie of
cheere!

And ye, sire, hoost, þat been to me
so deere,

I preyē yow þat ye kisse the Pardonere;
And Pardonere, I preyē thee, draw[e]
thee neer,

05 And, as we didn, lat vs laughe and
pley!'

Anon they kiste, and ryden forth hir
weye.

¶ Heere is ended the Pardoners tale.

VII. Fragment (B 2—7).

16. The Shipmannes Tale.

¶ Heere bigynneth the Shipmannes
tale.

A Marchant whilom dwelled at Seint
Denys

That riche was, for which men helde
hym wys.

A wyf he hadde of excellent beautee,
And compaignable and reuelous was
she,

Which is a thyng that causeth more
dispence

Than worth is al the chiere and reuer-
ence

That men hem doon at festes and at
daunces.

Swiche salutaciouns and contenaunces
Passen as dooth a shadwe vp-on the
wal;

But wo is hym that payen moot for al!
The sely housbonde, algate he moot
paye;

He moot vs clothe, and he moot vs
arraye

Al for his owene worship(e) richely,
In which array we daunce iolily.

And if þat he noght may, par aventure,
Or ellis list no swich dispence endure,
But thynketh it is wasted and ylost,
Thanne moot another payen for oure
cost,

Or lene vs gold, and that is perilous.

¶ This noble marchaunt heeld a worthy
hous,

ffor which he hadde alday so greet
repair

ffor his largesse, and for his wyf was
fair,

That wonder is; but herkneth to my
tale!

Amonges alle hise gestes, grete and
smale,

Ther was a monk, a fair man and
a boold—

I trowe of thritty wynter he was
oold—,

That euere in oon was comynge to
that place.

This yonge monk, þat was so fair of
face,

Aqueynted was so with the goode man,

12892. with E., from G., f. He.; wil the (f. P.H.⁴) helpe hem D., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
12902. ye f. He.G.; deer E. 07—67. Sl. für G. 17. he f. H.⁴; moste E.C.L.H.⁴ (Gl.).
18. [vs: Hinweis, daß diese Erzählung ursprüngl. für die Frau von Bath(?) bestimmt war.]
32. of E., a He.D.C.L., f. P.Sl.H.⁴ 33. comynge E., drawyng He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 1220—1249]

[B 1250—1280]

Sith that hir firste knowelicheȝ bigan,
That in his hous as famulier was he
As it is possible any freend to be.

¶ And for as muchel as this goode
man

40 And eek this *monk*, of which þat I
bigan,

Werē bothe two yborn in o village,
The *monk* hym claymeth as for cosyn-
age;

And he agayn, he seith nat ones nay,
But was as glad ther-of as fowel of
day,

45 ffor to his herte it was a greet ples-
aunce.

Thus been they knyht with eterne alli-
aunce,

And ech of hem gan oother for tassure
Of bretherhede whil þat hir lyf may
dure.

¶ ffree was Daun Iohn, and namely
of dispence

50 As in that hous, and ful of diligence
To doon plesaunce, and also greet
costage.

He noght forgat to yeue the leeste page
In al the hous; but after hir degree
He yaf the lord, and sitthe al his
meynee,

55 Whan that he cam, som manere honest
thyng;

ffor which they were as glad of his
comyng

As fowel is fayn whan þat the sonne
vp riseth.

Na-moore of this as now, for it suffis-
eth.

But so bifel this *marchant* on a day

60 Shoop hym to make redy his array
Toward the toun of Brugges for to
fare,

To byen there a porcioun of ware;
ffor which he hath to Parys sent anon
A messenger, and preyed hath daun
Iohn

65 That he sholde come to Seint Denys
to pleye

With hym and with his wyf a day
or tweye,

Er he to Brugges wente, in alle wise.

¶ This noble *monk*, of which I yow
deuyse,

Hath of his *abbot*, as hym list, licence,
By cause he was a man of heigh prud-
ence

And eek an officer out for to ryde,
To seen hir graunges and hir(e) bernes
wyde;

And vn-to Seint Denys he comth anon.
Who was so welcome as my lord Daun
Iohn,

Oure deere cosyn, ful of curteisye? 75

With hym broghte he a iubbe of Mal-
uesye

And eek another, ful of fyn vernage,
And volatyl, as ay was his vsage,
And thus I lete hem *ete*, and drynke,
and pleye,

This *marchant* and this *monk*, a day 80
or tweye.

¶ The thridde day this *marchant* vp
ariseth,

And on hise nedes sadly hym auyseth,
And vp in-to his countour-hous gooth he
To rekene with hym-selue, wel may be,
Of thilke yeer how þat it with hym 85
stood,

And how þat he despended hadde his
good,

And if þat he encressed were or noon.
Hise bookes and hise bagges many oon
He leith biforn hym on his countyng-
bord.

fful riche was his tresor and his hord, 90
ffor which ful faste his countour-dore he
shette;

And eek he nolde þat no man sholde
hym lette

Of hise accountes, for the meene tyme;
And thus he sit til it was passed
pryme.

¶ Daun Iohn was rysen in the morwe 95
also,

And in the gardyn walketh to and fro,

12936—39. f. P.Sl. 38. it p. is H.⁴ (Sk.). 65. to pleye E.P.Sl., and p. He., etc.
79. drynke & ete G., ete and f. E. 84. himselue C., hym self E., etc.; as wel P.H.⁴
(Sk., Gl.).

[B 1281—1309]

[B 1310—1337]

And hath hise thynges seyde ful curteisly.

¶ This goode wyf cam walkynge pryuely
In-to the gardyn, ther(e) he walketh
softe,

00 And hym sawleth, as she hath doon ofte.

A mayde-child cam in hir compaignye,
Which, as hire list, she may gouerne
and gye,

ffor yet vnder the yerde was the mayde.
'O deere cosyn myn, daun Iohn,' she
sayde,

05 'What eytleth yow so rathe for to ryse?'

¶ 'Nece,' quod he, 'it oghte ynough
suffise

ffyue houres for to slepe vp-on a nyght,
But it were for an old appalled wight,
As been thise wedded men, þat lye
and dare

10 As in a fourme sit a very hare,
Were al forstraught with houndes
grete and smale.

But deere nece, why be ye so pale?
I trowe, certes, that oure goode man
Hath yow laboured sith the nyght
bigan,

15 That yow were nedē to resten hastily.
And with that word he lough ful
muriyly,

And of his owene thought he wax
al reed.

¶ This faire wyf gan for to shake hir
heed,

And seyde thus: 'Ye, God woot al,'
quod she,

20 'Nay, [nay] cosyn myn, it stant nat
so with me;

ffor, by that God that yaf me soule
and lyf!

In al the reawme of ffrance is ther no
wyf

That lasse lust hath to that sory pley;
ffor I may synge "allas and weilawey

25 That I was born," but to no wight,'
quod she,

'Dar I nat telle how that it stant with
me;

Wherefore I thynte out of this land to
wende,

Or elles of my-self to make an ende:
So ful am I of drede and eek of care.'

¶ This monk bigan vp-on this wyf to
stare,

And seyde, 'Allas, my nece, God for-
bede

That ye for any sorwe or any drede
ffordo your(e)-self! but telle me of
your(e) grief;

Parauenture I yow may in your(e)
meschief

Conseille or helpe, and therfore telleth
me

Al(l) your(e) anoy, for it shal been
secree.

ffor on my porthors I make an ooth
That neuere in my lyf, for lief ne looth,
Ne shal I of no conseil yow biwreye.'

¶ 'The same agayn to yow,' quod she, 40
'I seye:

By God and by this porthors I yow
swere,

Though men me wolde al in-to pieces
tere,

Ne shal I neuere, for to goon to helle,
Biwreye a word of thyng þat ye me
telle,

Nat for no cosynage né alliance, 45
But verrailly for loue and affiance!'

Thus been they sworn, and heer-vpon
they kiste,

And ech of hem tolde oother what
hem liste.

¶ 'Cosyn,' quod she, 'if þat I hadde
a space,

As I haue noon, and namely in this 50
place,

Thanne wolde I telle a legende of my
lyf,

What I haue suffred, sith I was a wyf,
With myn housbonde, al be he youre

cosyn.'

13017. wax E.C., was H.⁴, we(e)x He., etc. (Sk.). [vgl. 14959, etc.]. 20. Nay nay E. (— 25. Sl. für G.). 33. tel me of E., telle me D., telleþ forþ C.L., telleth me He., etc. (Sk.). 34. yow E., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 37. portoes here I G. (Sk., Gl.). 41. yow E.G., f. He., etc. 53. of youre kyn E. [vgl. 55] (Gl.).

[B 1338—1366]

[B 1367—1393]

- ¶ 'Nay,' quod this monk, 'by God and
[by] seint Martyn!
- 55 He is na-moore cosyn vn-to me
Than is this lief þat hangeth on the
tree;
I clepe hym so—by Seint Denys of
ffraunce!—
To hauē the moore cause of aqueynt-
aunce
Of yow, which I hauē loued specially
- 60 Abouen alle wommen sikerly—
This swēre I yow on my professioun!
Telleth youre grief, lest þat he come
adoun,
And hasteth yow, and gooth youre
wey anon.'
- ¶ 'My deere louē,' quod she, 'o my
daun Iohn!
- 65 fful lief werē me this conseil for to
hyde,
But out it moot—I may namoore
abyde!
Myn housbonde is to me the worste
man
That euere was sith þat the world
bigan.
But sith I am a wyf, it sit nat me
- 70 To tellen no wight of oure priueteē,
Neither a-bedde, nē in noon oother
place—
God shilde I sholde it tellen for his
grace!
A wyf ne shal nat seyn of hir hous-
bonde
But al honour, as I kan vnderstonde;
- 75 Saue vn-to yow thus muche I tellen
shal:
As help(e) me God! he is noght worth
at al,
In no degree, the value of a flye,
But yet me greueth moost his nygardye.
And wel ye woot þat wommen naturelly
- 80 Desiren thynges sixe, as wel as I;
They wolde that hir housbondes sholde
be
Hardy and wise, and riche, and ther-to
free,

And buxom [vn] to his wyf, and fressh
abedde.
But by that ilke Lord that for vs
bledde!
ffor his honour my-self for to arraye, 85
A Sonday next, I moste nedes paye
An hundred frankes, or ellis I am lorn.
Yet werē me leuere that I were vnborn
Than me werē doon a sclandre or
vileynyel
And if myn housbonde eek it myghte 90
espye,
I nerē but lost, and therfore I yow
preye,
Lenē me this somme, or ellis moot I
deye.
Daun Iohn, I seye, lenē me thise hun-
dred frankes!
Pardee, I wol nat faille yow my
thankes,
If that yow list to doon that I yow 95
praye;
ffor at a certeyn day I wol yow paye,
And doon to yow what plesance and
seruice
That I may doon, right as yow list
deuise.
And but I do, God take on me venge-
ance
As foul as euere hadde Genylon of 100
ffraunce!

¶ This gentil monk answerde in this
manere:
'Now trewely, myn owene lady deere,
I hauē,' quod he, 'on yow so greet a
routhe,
That I yow swere, and plighte yow
my trouthe,
That, whan your(e) housbonde is to 105
fflaundes fare,
I wol delyuere yow out of this care,
ffor I wol brynge yow an hundred
frankes.'

And with that word he caughte hir(e)
by the flanks,
And hir(e) embraceth harde, and kiste
hir(e) ofte.

13054. by seint E.C.P.L. 56. leef He., etc. (Sk.). 63. youre wey] away He.G.D.
71. f. H.⁴ 83. to C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 86. moot He.G.D.P. 87. I am E.P.H.⁴, am I He., etc.
(Sk.). 90. it myghte E., m. it He.G.D.H.⁴, it f. C.P.L. 92—95. f. H.⁴

[B 1393—1420]

[B 1421—1452]

10 'Gooth now youre wey,' quod he, 'al
 stille and softe,
 And lat vs dyne as soone as þat ye
 may;
 ffor by my chilyndre it is pryme of
 day.

Gooth now, and beeth as trewe as I
 shal be!

¶ 'Now elles God forbede, sire,' quod
 she;

15 And forth she gooth, as iolif as a pye,
 And bad the cookes þat they sholde
 hem hye,

So þat men myghte dyne, and that
 anon.

Vp to hir housbonde is this wyf ygon,
 And knokketh at his countour boldely.

20 ¶ 'Whó ther?' quod he. 'Peter! it am
 I!' [¶ *qi la?*

Quod she, 'what sire, how longe wol
 ye faste?

How longe tyme wol ye rekene and
 caste

Your(e) sommes, and your(e) bookes,
 and your(e) thynges?

The deuþ hauþ part on allþ swichþ
 rekenynges!

25 Ye haue ynough, pardee, of Goddes
 sonde.

Com down to-day, and lat your(e)
 bagges stonde!

Ne be ye nat ashamed that Daun Iohn
 Shal fasting al this day alenge goon?

Lát vs heere a messe, and go we
 dyne!

30 ¶ 'Wyf,' quod this man, 'litel kanstow
 deuyne

The curious bisynesse that we haue.
 ffor of vs chapmen—al-so God me

saue,

And by that lord þat clepid is Seint
 Yuel—

Scarsly amonges .XII. ten shul thryue,

35 Continuëly lastynge vn-to oure age.

We may wel make chiere and good
 visage,

And dryue forth the world, as it may
 be,

And kepen oure estaat in pryueteie
 Til we be deed, or elles that we pleye
 A pilgrymage, or goon out of the 40
 weye.

And therfore haue I greet necessitee
 Vp-on this queynte world tauyse me;
 ffor eueremoore we moote stonde in
 drede

Of hap and ffortune in oure chapman-
 hede.

¶ To fflaunders wol I go to-morwe at 45
 day,

And come agayn as soone as euere
 I may;

ffor which, my deere wyf, I thee
 biseke

As be to euery wight buxom and meke,
 And for to kepe oure good be curious,
 And honestly gouerne wel oure hous. 50
 Thou hast ynough, in euery maner
 wise,

That to a thrifty household may suffice;
 Thee lakketh noon array ne no vitaille,
 Of siluer in thy purs shaltow nat faille.'

And with that word his countour-dore 55
 he shette,

And doun he gooth—no lenger wolde
 he lette.

But hastily a messe was ther seyde,
 And spedily the tables were yleyd,
 And to the dyner faste they hem spedde,
 And richely this monk the chapman 60
 fedde.

¶ At after dyner daun Iohn sobrelly
 This chapman took a-part, and priuely
 He seyde hym thus: 'Cosyn, it standeth
 so,

That wel I se to Brugges wol ye go.
 God and seint Austyn spede yow and 65
 gyde!

I preyþ yow, cosyn, wisely that ye
 ryde,

Gouerneth yow also of youre diete
 Atempely, and namely in this hete;

13120. Who ther E.G., Who is (ys He. *später*) ther He.D., Quy la C., etc. (Sk., Gl.)
 [E.He.D. *am Rande*]. 29. What lat He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); masse He., etc. 35. twelve G.,
 etc. [i. twenty? Tw.]; ten] tweye C.P.L., two H.⁴ (Gl.). 43. euere mo He.G., euere D.
 57. messe E.L., masse He., etc. 59. spedd E.

[B 1453—1480]

[B 1481—1504]

Bitwixe vs two nedeth no strange fare.
 70 ffar[e]-wel, cosyn, God shilde yow fro
 care!
 And if þat any thyng, by day or
 nyght,
 If it lye in my power and my myght,
 That ye me wol comande in any wyse,
 It shal be doon, right as ye wol deuyse.
 75 ¶ O thyng, er þat ye goon, if it may
 be,
 I wolde preyȝ yow: for to lene me
 An hundred frankes, for a wyke or
 tweye,
 ffor certein beestes þat I moste beye
 To stoore with a place þat is oures—
 80 God helpe me so, I wolde it were
 yours!—
 I shal nat faille, surely, at my day,
 Nat for a thousand frankes a mile
 way:
 But lat this thyng be secree, I yow
 preye,
 ffor yet to-nyght this beestes moot
 I beye.
 85 And far[e] now wel, myn owene cosyn
 deere—
 Graunt mercy of youre cost and of
 youre cheere!
 ¶ This noble marchant gentilly anon
 Answerde, and seyde, 'O cosyn myn,
 Daun Iohn!
 Now sikerly this is a smal requeste;
 90 My gold is youre whan þat it yow
 leste,
 And nat oonly my gold, but my
 chaffare;
 Tak[e] what yow list—God shilde þat
 ye spare!
 ¶ But o thyng is—ye knowe it wel
 ynogh—
 Of chapmen, that hir moneie is hir
 plogh.
 95 We may creauce whil we haue a
 name,
 But goldlees for to be, it is no game.

Paye it agayn whan it lith in youre
 ese;
 After my myght ful fayn wolde I yow
 plese.
 ¶ Thise hundred frankes he fette hym
 forth anon,
 And priuely he took hem to daun 00
 Iohn.
 No wight in al this world wiste of
 this loone,
 Sauynge this marchant and daun Iohn
 alloone.
 They drynke, and speke, and rome
 a while, and pleye,
 Til þat daun Iohn rideth to his ab-
 beye.
 The morwe cam, and forth this march- 05
 ant rideth
 To fflaundes-ward; his prentys wel
 hym gydeth,
 Til he cam in-to Brugges murily.
 Now gooth this marchaunt faste and
 bisily
 Aboute his nede, and byeth, and cre-
 aunceth.
 He neither pleyeth at the dees, ne 10
 daunceth,
 But as a marchaunt, shortly for to
 telle,
 He let his lyf, and there I lete hym
 dwelle.
 The Sonday next this marchant was
 agon,
 To seint Denys ycomen is Daun Iohn,
 With crowne and berd al[l] fressh and 15
 newe y-shaue.
 In al the hous ther nas so litel a
 knaue,
 Ne no wight elles, þat he nas ful fayn
 Thát my lord Daun Iohn was come
 agayn;
 And shortly, to the poynt right for
 to gon,
 This faire wyf accorded with daun 20
 Iohn

13181. at E., of He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 83. f. L. 92. Tak He.C.H.⁴, Takeþ L. 99. hym E., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 13210. the f. E.G. (atte D.H.⁴). 12. let E.He., lat G., ledeth D., leet C., letþ L., lad P.H.⁴ (Gl.). 13. this E.L., the He., etc. 15. shaue He.G.C.L. 16. lyte G.C.P. 18. ffor þat C.P.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), ffor L. 19. right to the point E.; right f. C.P.L.H.⁴

[B 1505—1531]

[B 1532—1560]

That for thise hundred frankes he
 sholde al nyght
 Háue hir(e) in hise armes bolt upright;
 And this acord parfourned was in dede.
 In myrthe al nyght a bisy lyf they
 lede
 25 Til it was day, þat Daun Iohn wente
 his way,
 And bad the meynee 'far[e]-wel, haue
 good day!' ffor noon of hem, ne no wight in the
 toun,
 Hath of Daun Iohn right no suspei-
 cioun;
 And forth he rydeth hoom to his
 abbeye,
 30 Or where hym list—namoore of hym I
 seye.
 This marchant, whan þat ended was
 the faire,
 To Seint Denys he gan for to repaire,
 And with his wyf he maketh feeste
 and cheere,
 And telleth hir(e) that chaffare is so
 deere,
 35 That nedes moste he make a cheuys-
 saunce;
 ffor he was bounde[n] in a recon-
 nyssaunce
 To paye twenty thousand sheeld anon.
 ffor which this marchant is to Parys
 gon,
 To borwe of certeinē freendes þat he
 hadde
 40 A certeyn frankes, and somme with
 hym he ladde.
 And whan þat he was come in-to the
 toun,
 ffor greet chiertee and greet affectioun,
 Vn-to daun Iohn he gooth hym first to
 pleye,
 Nat for to axe or borwe of hym mo-
 neye,
 45 But for to wite and seen of his wel-
 fare,
 And for to tellen hym of his chaffare,
 As freendes doon whan they been met
 yfeere.

Daun Iohn hym maketh feeste and
 murye cheere,
 And he hym tolde agayn ful specially
 How he hadde wel yboght and gra- 50
 ciously—
 Thanked be God!—al hool his mar-
 chandise,
 Sauē þat he moste, in alle maner wise,
 Maken a cheuissaunce as for his beste,
 And thanne he sholde been in ioye
 and reste.
 ¶ Daun Iohn answerde, 'Certes, I am 55
 fayn
 That ye in heele ar comen hom agayn,
 And if þat I werē riche—as haue I
 blisse!—
 Of twenty thousand sheeld sholdē ye
 nat mysse;
 ffor ye so kyndely this oother day
 Lente me gold, and, as I kan and 60
 may,
 I thanke yow, by God and by seint
 Iame!
 But nathelees I took vn-to oure dame,
 Youre wyf, at hom the same gold ageyn
 Vpon your(e) bench; she woot it wel,
 certeyn,
 By certeyn tokenes that I kan yow telle. 65
 Now, by youre leue, I may no lenger
 dwelle;
 Oure abbot wol[e] out of this toun
 anon,
 And in his compaignye moot I goon.
 Grete wel oure dame, myn owene
 nece sweete,
 And far[e]-wel, deere cosyn, til we 70
 meete.'
 This marchant, which þat was ful war
 and wys,
 Creanced hath and payd eek in Parys
 To certeyn Lumbardes, redy in hir
 hond,
 The somme of gold, and hadde of hem
 his bond,
 And hoom he gooth murie—as a pa- 75
 peiay;
 ffor wel he knew he stood in swich
 array,

13236. bounde D.H.^a (Sk.). 43. first goth He., etc. (f. him g., etc. C.P.L.). 67. wole
 E.G. 74. hadde E., took H.^a, gat He., etc. (Sk.); [über bond] i. obligationem E.He.D.

[B 1561—1587]

[B 1588—1616]

That nedes moste he wynne in that
viage
A thousand frankes aboue[n] al his
costage.
¶ His wyf ful redy mette hym atte
gate,
80 As she was wont of oold vsage algate,
And al that nyght in myrthe they
bisette,
ffor he was riche and cleerly out of
dette.
Whan it was day, this marchant gan
embrace
His wyf al newe, and kiste hir(e) on
hir face,
85 And vp he gooth, and maketh it ful
tough.
¶ 'Namooore,' quod she, 'by God, ye
haue ynough!
And wantownely agayn with hym she
pleyde;
(¶) Til atte laste *thus* this marchant
seyde:
'By God,' quod he, 'I am a litel wrooth
90 With yow, my wyf, al-though it werē
me looth,
And woot ye why? By God, as þat
I gesse
That ye han maad a manere straunge-
nesse
Bitwixen me and my cosyn daun Iohn.
Ye sholde han warned me, er I had
gon,
95 That he yow hadde an hundred frankes
payed
By redy tokene, and heeld hym yuele
apayed
ffor þat I to hym spak of cheuys-
saunce—
Me semed so, as by his contenaunce.
But nathelees, by God, oure heuene
kyng!
00 I thoughte nat to axen hym no-thing.
I preyē thee, wyf, as do namooore so;
Telle me alwey, er that I fro thee go,
If any dettour hath in myn absence

Ypayed thee, lest thurgh thy nec-
gligence
I myghte hym axe a thing that he 05
hath payed.'
¶ This wyf was nat afered nor affrayed,
But boldely she seyde, and that anon,
'Marie!—I deffiē the false monk daun
Iohn!
I kepe nat of hise tokenes neuēr-a-deel.
He took me certeyn gold, that woot 10
I weel—
What! yuel thedam on his monkes
snowte!—
ffor God it woot, I wende withouten
doute
That he hadde yeue it me bycause of
yow,
To doon ther-with myn honour and
my prow,
ffor cosynage, and eek for beele cheere 15
That he hath had ful ofte tymes heere.
But sith I se I stonde in this disioynt,
I wol answerē yow shortly to the poynt.
¶ Ye han mo slakkere dettours than
am I;
ffor I wol payē yow wel and redily
ffro day to day, and if so be I faille, 20
I am youre wyf—score it vp-on my
taille,
And I shal paye as soone as euēr I
may.
ffor by my trouthe! I haue on myn
array,
And nat on wast, bistowed euery-deel, 25
And for I haue bistowed it so weel
ffor your(e) honour, for Goddes sake,
I seye,
As be nat wrooth, but lat vs laughe
and pleye!
Ye shal my ioly body haue to wedde—
By God, I wol nat payē yow but 30
a-bedde!
fforgyue it me, myn owene spouse
deere;
Turne hiderward, and maketh bettre
cheere!

13278. aboue D.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 13279—13340. Sl. für G. 88. þus H.⁴ (Gl.), þat C.P. (Sk.), f. E., etc. 13300. axen hym E.H.⁴, axe of hym He., etc. (Sk.); —40 Eg. für Dd. or. as E., ne He., etc. (Sk.), f. H.⁴ 06. nor E.Sl., ne He., etc. 10. that E.H.⁴, this He., etc. (hit Sl.).

[B 1617—1636]

[B 1637—1660]

¶ This marchant saugh ther was no
remedie,
And for to chide, it nere but greet
folie,
35 Sith that the thyng may nat amended
be.
'Now wyf,' he seyde, 'and I foryeue
it thee.
But by thy lyf, ne be namoore so large!
Keepe bet oure good—that yeue I
thee in charge.'
Thus endeth my tale, and God vs
sende
40 Taillynge ynough vn-to oure lyues
ende! Amen.
¶ Heere endeth the Shipmannes tale.

17. The Prioresses Tale.

a) ¶ Bihoold the murie wordes of the
Hoost to the Shipman and to the
lady Prioresse.)*
'Wel seyde, by corpus dominus!' quod
oure Hoost.
'Now longe moote thou saille by the
cost,
Sir(e) gentil maister, gentil maryneer!
God yeue this monk a thousand last
quade yeer!
45 A ha! felawes, beth ware of swich[e]
a iape!
The monk putte in the mannes hood
an ape,
And in his wyues eek, by Seint Austyn!
Draweth no monkes moore vn-to youre
in.
¶ But now passe ouer, and lat vs seke
aboute
50 Who shal now telle first of al this
route
Another tale'—and with that word he
sayde,
As curteisly as it had ben a mayde,

'My lady Prioresse, by youre leue,
So that I wiste I sholde yow nat
greue,
I wolde demen that ye tellen sholde 55
A tale next, if so werē that ye wolde.
Now wol ye vouchesauf, my lady
deere?'
¶ 'Gladly,' quod she, and seyde as ye
shal heere:

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ The prologe*) of the Prioresses tale.

Domine dominus noster

'O Lord oure Lord! thy name how
merueillous
Is in this large world ysprad,' quod 60
she;
'ffor noght oonly thy laude precious
Parfourned is by men of dignitee,
But by the mouth of children thy
bountee
Parfourned is, for on the brest souk-
ynge
Somtyme shewen they thyn heriynge. 65
Wherefore in laude, as I best kan
or may,
Of thee and of the *white* lylle flour,
Which that thee bar, and is a mayde
alway,
To telle a storie—I wol do my labour—
Nat that I may encreessen hir honour, 70
ffor she hir-self is honour and the
roote
Of bountee, next hir sone, and soules
boote.
O mooder mayde, o mayde mooder
fre!
O bussh vnbrēt, brennyng in Moyses
sight!
That rauysedest down fro the deitee, 75
Thurgh thyn humblesse, the goost þat
in thalighte,

13338. oure E. [vgl. 13149], thy He.Eg., my C., etc.; that E., this He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
39. endeþ now C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 40. Toylyng C.L., Talyng H.* Sl. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 13321
u. 13330?]. — *) Harke the myrie W. of the Worthy H. He., And here bygynneþ þe pro-
loge of þe pr. P.Sl., etc. — 41—79. Eg. für D. — 463. Sl. für G. — 54. agreue He.Eg.
57. vouches it s. He.Eg. — *) proheme He. — 59ff.: Bf. VIII, 1—2. 67. white f. E.
76. thalighte E.He., þe alight C.L.H.*, the light Eg., etc.

[B 1661—1687]

[B 1688—1715]

Of whos vertu, whan he thyn herte
 lighte,
 Conceuyed was the fadres sapience—
 Help me to telle it in thy reuerence!
 80 Lady, thy bountee, thy magnificence,
 Thy vertu, and thy grete humylitee,
 Ther may no tonge expresse in no
 sciencel
 ffor somtyme, lady, er men praye to
 thee,
 Thou goost biforn of thy benyngnytee,
 85 And getest vs the lyght, *thurgh* thy
 preyere,
 To gyden vs vn-to thy sonę so deere.
 My konnyng is so wayk, o blisful
 queene!
 ffor to declare thy grete worthynesse,
 That I ne may the weighte nat
 susteene;
 90 But as a child of twelf mopthe oold
 or lesse,
 That kan vnnethes any word expresse,
 Right so fare I, and therfore I yow
 preye:
 Gydeþ my song þat I shal of yow
 seye!

¶ *Explicit.*e) ¶ *Heere bigynneth the Prioresses
 tale.*

Ther was in Asye, in a greet citee,
 95 Amonges cristene folk a Iewerye,
 Sustened by a lord of that contree
 ffor foule vsure and lucre of vileynye,
 Hatēful to Crist and to his compaignye;
 And thurgh this strete men myghte
 ride or wende,
 00 ffor it was free and open at eyther
 ende.
 A litel scole of cristen folk ther
 stood
 Doun at the ferther ende, in which
 ther were
 Children an heep(e), ycome[n] of cristen
 blood,

That lerned in that scole yeer by
 yere
 Swich manere doctrine as men vsed 05
 there,
 This is to seyn: to syngen and to
 rede,
 As smale children doon in hir child-
 hede.
 Among these children was a wydwe
 sone,
 A litel clergeon, seuen yeer of age,
 That day by day to scole was his 10
 wone;
 And eek also, wher(e)-as he saugh
 thymage
 Of Cristes mooder, he hadde in vsage,
 As hym was taught, to knele adoun
 and seye
 His Aue Marie, as he goth by the
 weye.
 Thus hath this wydwe hir litel sone 15
 ytaught
 Oure blisful lady, Cristes mooder deere,
 To worshipe ay, and he forgat[e] it
 naught,
 ffor sely child wol alday soone leere.
 But ay, whan I remembre on this
 mateere,
 Seint Nicholas stant euere in my pre- 20
 sence,
 ffor he so yong to Crist didę reuerence.
 This litel child, his litel book lern-
 ynge,
 As he sat in the scole at his prymer,
 He 'Alma redemptoris' herde synge,
 As children lerned hir ant[h]iphoner; 25
 And, as he dorste, he drough hym
 ner and ner,
 And herkned ay the wordes and the
 noote,
 Til he the firste vers koude al by rote.
 Noght wiste he what this latyn was
 to seye,
 ffor he so yong and tendre was of 30
 age;
 But on a day his felawe gan he preye

13380 ff.: bgl. 16280 ff. 85. thurgh lyght of E., the l. of He.D., to l. þurgh C.P.
 91. vnneþes C.P.H.* 97. [Ranbgl.] turpe lucrum E.He.D. 99. this E.D., the He., etc.
 (Sk., Gl.). 13403. y-come C.P., commen L.Sl. 12. hadde he He., etc. (Sk.). 17. forgate
 E.P.Sl. (Gl.). 18. alway He.D.H.* 19. on] of He.H.*Sl. 26. drow He.D.P.Sl.

[F 1716—1743]

[F 1744—1770]

Texpounden hym this song in his language,
Or telle hym why this song was in vsage.

This preyde he hym to construe and declare

35 fful often tyme vpon hise knowes bare.

His felawe, which that elder was than he,

Answerde hym thus: 'This song, I haue herd seye,

Was makid of oure blisful lady free,
Hir(e) to salue, and eek hir(e) for to preye

40 To been oure help and socour whan we deye.

I kan na-moore expounde in this mateere,

I lerne song, I kan but smal grammeere.'

¶ 'And is this song makid in reuerence

Of Cristes mooder,' seyde this innocent,

45 'Now certes, I wol do my diligence
To konne it al er Cristemasse is went.

Though þat I for my prymer shal be shent,

And shal be beten thries in an houre,
I wol it konne oure lady for to honoure.'

50 His felawe taughte hym homward priuely,

ffro day to day, til he koude it by rote,

And thanne he song it wel and boldely
ffro word to word [to word], acordyngē with the note,

Twies a day it passed thurgh his throte,

55 To scoleward and homward whan he wente;

On Cristes mooder set was his entente.

¶ As I haue seyde, thurgh-out the luerie

This litel child, as he cam to and fro,
fful murily he wolde synge and crie:

'O Alma redemptoris' eueremo. 60

The swetnessē his herte perced so
Of Cristes mooder, that to hir(e) to preye

He kan nat stynte of syngyng by the weye.

Ovre firste foo, the serpent Sathanas,

[¶ Auctor

That hath in Iues herte his waspes nest, 65

Vp swal, and seyde, 'O. hebrayk peple, allas!

Is this to yow a thyng þat is honest,
That swich a boy shal walken as hym lest

In youre despit, and synge of swich sentence

Which is agayn youre lawes reuerence? 70

ffro thennes forth the Iues han conspired

This innocent out of this world to chace.

An homycide ther-to han they hyred,
That in an aleye hadde a priuee place;

And as the child gan forby for to pace, 75

This cursed Iew hym hente, and heeld hym faste,

And kitte his throte, and in a pit hym caste.

I seyde that in a wardrobe they hym threwe

Where-as thise Iewes purgen hir entaille.

O cursed folk of Herodes al newel! 80

What may youre yuel entente yow auaille?

Mordre wol out, certeyn, it wol nat faille;

And namely ther thonour of God shal sprede,

The blood out crieth on youre cursed dede.

¶ O martir, sowded to virginiteel! 85

Now maystow synge, folwynge euer in oon

13435. aſtertijſen He.; knowes E., knees D., etc. 46. is E.He., be D., etc. 59. wolde he E.He.D., þen w. he C.P.L.H.^aSl. (Sk., Gl.). 61. hap his h. perced C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 64. Auctor: nur E.; id. 13513. 70. ȝoure P.L.H.^a, oure E., etc. 80. of] o L.H.^a (Gl.). 83. ther as He.G.D. 85. sondeſ He.C.P.L.

[B 1771—1797]

[B 1798—1826]

The white lamb celestial', quod she,
'Of which the grete Euaungelist Seint
Iohn

In Pathmos wroot, which seith þat
"they þat goon

90 Biforn this lamb, and synge a song
al newe,
That neuere fleshly wommen they ne
knewe."

¶ This poure wydwe awaiteth al that
nyght

After hir litel child, but he cam noght;
ffor which, as soone as it was dayes
lyght,

95 With face pale of drede and bisy
thoght,

She hath at scole and elles-where hym
soght,

Til finally she gan so fer espie,
That he last seyn was in the Iuerie.

With moodres pitee in hir brest
enclosed,

00 She gooth, as she were half out of
hir mynde,

To euery place where she hath sup-
posed

By liklihede hir litel child to fynde,
And euere on Cristes mooder meeke
and kynde

She cride, and atte laste thus she
wroghte,

05 Among the cursed Iues she hym soghte.
She frayneth, and she preyeth pit-
ously

To euery Iew þat dwelte in thilke
place,

To telle hir(e) if hir child wente oght
forby.

They seyde 'nay', but Ihesu of his
grace

10 Yaf in hir thought, inwith a litel space,
That in that place after hir sonȝ she
cryde

Wher(e) he was casten in a pit bisyde.

O grete God, that parfournest thy
laude

[¶ Auctor]

By mouth of innocentz, lo, heere thy
myght!

This gemme of chastite, this emeraude, 15
And eek of martirdom the ruby bright,
Ther he, with throte ykoruen, lay vp-
right,

He 'Alma redemptoris' gan to
synge

So loude, þat al the place gan to ryngel

¶ The cristenȝ folk that thurgh the 20
strete wente

In coomen for to wondre vp-on this
thyng,

And hastily they for the prouost sente.

He cam anon with-outen taryng,

And herieth Crist, that is of heuene
kyng,

And eek his mooder, honour of man- 25
kynde;

And after that the Iewes leet he bynde.

¶ This child with pitous lamentacioun
Vp taken was syngyng his song alway,

And with honour of greet processioun
They carien hym vn-to the nexte abbay. 30

His mooder swownyngȝ by his beere
lay;

Vnnethe myghtȝ the peple þat was
there

This newe Rachel brynge fro his beere.

¶ With torment and with shameful
deeth echon

This prouost dooth the Iewes for to-35
sterue

That of his mordre wiste, and that
anon.

He nolde no swich cursednesse obserue:

Yuele shal [he] hauȝ þat yuele wol
deserue.

Therfore with wildȝ hors he dide hem
drawe,

And after that he heng hem by the 40
lawe.

¶ Vp-on this beere ay lith this inno-
cent

Biforn the chief auter whil [the] masse
laste,

13491. [über fleshly] i. carnaliter E.He.D. [am Rande]; womman He.G. 13501. wheras
He.G. 33: Rachel: Matth. II, 18. 35. the E.D., thise He., etc. (Sk.). 38. shal he E.G.,
he shal P. [beste &c.], shal He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 41. his beere He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) 42. whil
the E.He.G.D., whiles þe H.⁴, whiles C.P.L. (whil Sk., Gl.).

[B 1827—1852]

[B 1853—1880]

And after that the abbot with his
couent

Han sped hem for to burien hym ful
faste.

45 And whan they hooly water on hym
caste,

Yet spak this child, whan spreynd was
hooly water,

And song, "O Alma redemptoris
mater!"

¶ This abbot, which þat was an
hooly man,

As monkes been, or elles oghte be,

50 This yonge child to coniure he bigan,

And seyde, 'O deere child, I halse[n]
thee

In vertu of the hooly Trinitee:

Tellē me what is thy cause for to
synge,

Sith þat thy throte is kut to my sem-
ynge?"

55 ¶ "My throte is kut vn-to my nekke-
boon,"

Seyde this child, 'and, as by wey of
kynde,

I sholde hauē dyed, ye, longe tyme
agon,

But Ihesu Crist, as ye in bookes
fynde,

Whil þat his glorie laste, and be in
mynde,

60 And for the worship(e) of his mooder
deere,

Yet may I synge "O Alma" loude
and cleere.

¶ This welle of mercy, Cristes mooder
sweete,

I loued alwey, as after my konnyngē;

And whan þat I my lyf sholde forlete,

65 To me she cam, and bad me for to
synge

This anthemē verrailly in my deyyngē,
As ye han herd; and, whan þat I

hadde songe,

Me thoughtē she leyde a greyn vp-on
my tonge;

Wherefore I synge, and synge I
moot certeyn

In honour of that blisful mayden free, 70

Til fro my tonge of taken is the
greyn.

And afterward thus seyde she to me:

"My litel child, now wol I fecche thee,

Whan þat the greyn is fro thy tonge
ytake.

Be nat agast! I wol thee nat forsake". 75

¶ This hooly monk, this abbot, hym
meene I,

His tonge out caughte, and took away
the greyn,

And he yaf vp the goost ful softly.

And whan this abbot hadde this wonder
seyn,

Hise salte teeris trikked down as reyn, 80

And gruf he fil al plat, vp-on the
grounde,

And stille he lay as he had leyn
ybounde.

The couent eek lay on the paue-
ment

Wepyngē, and heryen Cristes mooder
deere,

And after that they ryse, and forth 85
been went,

And tooke[n] away this martir from
his beere,

And in a *toumbe* of marbul-stones cleere

Enclosen they his litel body sweete;

Ther he is now, God leue us [alle]
for to meete!

¶ O yonge Hugh of Lincoln! slayn 90
also

With cursed Iewes, as it is notable—
ffor it is but a litel while ago—,

Preye eek for vs, we synful folk vn-
stable,

That of his mercy God so merciable

On vs his grete mercy multiplie 95

ffor reuerence of his mooder Marie.

Amen.

¶ Heere is ended the Prioresses tale.

13551. halsen E.He. 13553—13649. Eg. für D. 66. Antephen E., anteme (-ime) G., etc. (Sk.). 69. I moot E.Eg., moot He., etc. (Gl.). 72. after that He., etc. (Gl.). 82. leyn E.He.G.Eg., ben C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. her(i)yngē G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 86. tooken E. (Gl.). 87. *toumbe* temple E. 89. [alle] E. 92. ygo He.G.

[B 1881—1907]

[B 1908—1949]

18. Chaucers Tale of Thopas.

a) ¶ Bihoold the murye wordes*) of the Hoost to Chaucer.

WHan seyð was al this miracle, euery
man

As sobre was that wonder was to se,
Til that oure hooste iapen to bigan,
And thanne at erst he loked vp-on
me,

00 And seyde thus: 'What man artow?'
quod he,

'Thou lookest as thou woldest fynde
an hare,

ffor euere vp-on the ground I se thee
stare.

Approche neer, and looke vp murily!
Now warę yow, sires, and lat this man
hauę place!

05 He in the waast is shape as wel as I.
This were a popet in an arm tenbrace
ffor any womman, smal and fair of face!
He semeth eluyssh by his contenaunce,
ffor vn-to no wight dooth he daliaunce.

10 Seyę now somewhat, syn oother folk
han sayd;

Telle vs a tale of myrthe, and that
anon!

'Hooste,' quod I, 'ne beth nat yuele
apayd!

ffor oother tale certes kan I noon,
But of a rym I lerned longe agoon.'

15 'Ye, that is good,' quod he, 'now shul
we heere

Som deyntee thyng, me thynketh by
his cheere.'

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth Chaucers tale of Thopas.

Listeth, lordes, in good entent,
And I wol telle verrayment
Of myrthe and of solas;

20 Al of a knyght was fair and gent
In bataille and in tourneyment,
His name was sir(e) Thopas.

¶ Yborn he was in fer contree,
In fflaunders, al biyonde the see,
At Poperyng in the place; 25
His fader was a man ful free,
And lord he was of that contree,
As it was Goddes grace.

¶ Sir(e) Thopas wax a doghty swayn;
Whit was his face as payndemayn, 30
Hise lippes rede as rose;
His rode is lyk scarlet in grayn,
And I yow telle in good certayn
He hadde a semely nose.

¶ His heer, his berd was lyk saffroun, 35
That to his girdel raughte adoun;
Hise shoos of cordewane.
Of Bruges were his hosen broun,
His robe was of syklatoun,
That coste many a iane. 40

¶ He koudę hunte at wilde deer,
And ride an-haukyng for riuier
With grey goshawk on honde;
Ther-to he was a good archeer,
Of wrastlyng was ther noon his peer, 45
Ther any ram shal stonde.

¶ fful many a mayde bright in bour,
They moorne for hym par amour,
Whan hem were bet to slepe.
But he was chaast, and no lechour, 50
And sweete as is the brembul-flour,
That bereth the rede hepe.

¶ And so bifel vp-on a day,
ffor sothe as I yow telle may,
Sir(e) Thopas wolde out ride. 55
He worth vpon his steede gray,
And in his hand a launcegay,
A long swerd by his side.

¶ He priketh thurgh a fair forest,
Ther-inne is many a wilde best, 60
Ye, bothe bukke and hare.
And as he priketh north and est,
I telle it yow, hym hadde alмест
Bitid[de] a sory care.

*) talking He.G. — 13598. iapen to E.Eg., to i. H.⁴, i. tho G. [þäter], C. (Sk., Gl.), i. he He., lape P.L. 99. [über me] s. Chaucer E., etc. (f. Eg.H.⁴). 13604. war E.He.P. (Sk., Gl.). 05. [Ranbgl.] i. henry Bailly E. 15. [über he] i. hoost E.; we] ye E. 37. shoos E., shoon He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 51. brambel (bremble, etc.) He., etc. 53. it fel He.G.D.H.⁴ 64. Bytid G.H.⁴ (Sk.).

[B 1950—1988]

[B 1989—2028]

- 65 ¶ Ther spryngen herbes grete and smale,
The lycorys and ceteuale,
And many a clowe-gylofre,
And notemuge to putte in ale,
Wheither it be moyste or stale,
70 Or for to leye in cofre.

- ¶ The briddes synge—it is no nay—,
The sparhawk and the papeiay,
That ioye it was to heere;
The trustlecok made eek his lay,
75 The wodedowue vp-on a spray,
She sang ful loude and cleere.

- ¶ Sir(e) Thopas fil in loue-longynge,
Al whan he herde the thrustel synge,
And pryked as he were wood.
80 His faire steede in his prikyng
So swatte, þat men myghte hym wrynge,
Hise sydes were al blood.

- ¶ Sir(e) Thopas eek so wery was
ffor prikyng on the softe gras—
85 So fiers was his corage—,
That doun he leyde him in that plas
To make his steede som solas,
And yaf hym good forage.

- ¶ 'O seinte Marie, benedicite!
90 What eyleth this loue at me
To bynde me so soore?
Me dremed al this nyght, pardee,
An elf-queene shal my lemman be,
And slepe vnder my goore.

- ¶ An elf-queene wol I loue ywis,
ffor in this world no womman is
Worthy to be my make
In towne;
Alle othere women I forsake,
00 And to an elf-queene I me take
By dale and eek by downe.'

- ¶ In-to his sadel he clamb anon,
And priketh ouer stile and stoon

An elf-queene for tespye;
Til he so longe hadde ride[n] and goon, 05
That he foond in a pryue noon
The contree of ffairye,
So wilde.
ffor in that contree was ther noon, (?)
Neither wyf ne childe; 10

¶ Til þat ther cam a greet geaunt,
His name was sir(e) Olifaunt,
A perilous man of dede.
He seyde, 'Child, by Termagaunt!
But if thou prike out of myn haunt, 15
Anon I sle thy steede

With mace!
¶ Heere is the queene of ffayerye,
With harpe, and pipe, and symphonie,
Dwellynge in this place.' 20

¶ The child seyde, 'Al-so moote I thee!
Tomorwe wol I meete with thee,
Whan I hauē myn armoure.
¶ And yet I hope, par ma fay,
That thou shalt with this launcegay 25
Abyen it ful sowre.

Thy mawe
[Thyn hauberk] shal I percen, if I may,
Er it be fully pryme of day,
ffor heere thou shalt be slawe!' 30

¶ Sir(e) Thopas drow abak ful faste;
This geant at hym stones caste
Out of a fel staf-slynge;
¶ But faire escapeth sir(e) Thopas,
And al it was thurgh Goddes gras, 35
And thurgh his fair berynge.

Yet listeth, lordes, to my tale,
Murier than a nightyngale!
ffor now I wol yow rowne
How sir(e) Thopas with sydes smale, 40
Prikyng ouer hill and dale,
Is come[n] agayn to towne.

16666. and the c. G., etc. 74. hir E.D. (Gl.) [Abicht?]. 75. a spray E.D., the sp. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 86. the plas He.G.H.⁴ 95. loue] haue He.G.H.⁴ 13705. hadde E., hath He., etc.; ryde D. — Zwischen 709 u. 710 schaltet D. (auch Ro.) ein: That to him durst ride or gon (Sk., Gl.) [wohl unecht, obwohl 1 B. zu fehlen scheint]. 21. als He., so C.P.L. 22. with E.H.⁴, f. He., etc. (Sk.). 28. [Thyn hauberk] E.G.; shal, etc., auf Raſur E. 30. shaltow He.G.H.⁴ 34. sir(e) E.G., child He., etc. 39. ffor now C.P.L., f. E., etc. 42. comen E.G. (Gl.).

[B 2029—2068]

[B 2069—2108]

- ¶ His murie men comanded he
To make hym bothe game and glee,
45 ffor nedes moste he fighte
With a gēaunt with heuēdes three,
ffor paramour and iolitee
Of oon that shoon ful brighte.
- ¶ 'Do come,' he seyde, 'my mynstrales
50 And geestours for to tellen tales,
Anon in myn armynge,
Of romances that been roiales,
Of popes and of cardinales,
And eek of louē-lykynge!'
- ¶ They fettē hym first sweete wyn,
And mede eek in a mazelyn,
And roial spicerie,
And gyngebreed, þat was ful fyn,
And lycorys, and eek comyn,
60 With sugre þat is [so] trye.
- ¶ He dide next his white leere
Of clooth of lake, fyn and cleere,
A breech and eek a sherte;
And next his sherte an aketoun,
65 And ouer that an haubergeown
ffor Percyng of his herte;
- ¶ And ouer that a fyn hawberk,
Was al ywroght of Iewes werk,
fful strong it was of plate;
70 And ouer that his cote-armour
As whit as is a lilye flour,
In which he wol debate.
- ¶ His sheeld was al of gold so reed,
And ther-inne was a bores heed
75 A charbocle bisyde;
And there he swoor on ale and breed,
How þat the gēaunt shal be deed,
Bityde what bityde!
- ¶ Hise iambeux were of quyrboilly,
80 His swerdes shethe of guory,
His helm of laton bright;
His sadel was of rewel-boon,

- His brydel as the sonne shoon,
Or as the moone light.
- ¶ His spere it was of fyn eiprees, 85
That bodeth werre, and no-thing pees,
The heed ful sharp(e) ygrounde.
- ¶ His steede was al dappull gray,
It gooth an ambil in the way
90 fful softly and rounde
In londe.
- ¶ Loo, lordes myne, heere is a fit!
If ye wol any moore of it,
To telle it wol I fonde.
- Now hold[e] youre mouth, par charitee, 95
Bothe knyght and lady free,
And herkneth to my spelle!
- ¶ Of bataillēs, and of chivalry,
And of ladyes louē-drury
100 Anon I wol yow telle.
- ¶ Men speke[n] of romances of prys,
Of Hornchild and of Ypotys,
Of Beves and [of] sir Gy,
Of sirē Lybeux and Pleyn-damour;
But sirē Thopas, he berēth the flour 05
Of roial chivalry.
- ¶ His goode steede al he bistrood,
And forth vpon his wey he rood
As sparcle out of the bronde.
- ¶ Vp-on his creest he bar a tour, 10
And ther-inne stikēd a lilie-flour—
God shilde his cors fro shonde!
- ¶ And for he was a knyght auntrous,
He nolde slepen in noon hous,
But ligger in his hoode; 15
- ¶ His brighte helm was his wonger,
And by hym baiteth his dextrer
Of herbes fyne and goode.
- ¶ Hym-self drank water of the well,
As didē the knyght sir(e) Percyuell 20
So worthy vnder wede,
- ¶ Til on a day :

13746. hedis(-es) G., etc. 55. þe (auspunctiert C) swete C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 56—59. f. C.P.L. 58. And E., Of He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.). 60. [so] E. (Sk., Gl.), f. He., etc. 75. bysyde E.L., him besyde C., by his s. He., etc. (W. C.). 85. it was E., was He., etc. (Sk.). 95. hoold He.H.⁴ (Sk.), holdyth G.L. 13801. speke C.L. (Sk.); Romance C., Romans L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 03. [of] E.P. (Gl.). 08. rood E., [über wold] D., glood He., etc. (Sk.). 10—22. H.² für G. 18—22. f. L., später nachgetragen C. 21. worly E.He., worthy D.H.⁴, worpili C.P.H.² 22. Till it was on a daye H.², f. P.H.⁴

[B 2109—2138]

[B 2139—2161]

19. Chaucers Tale of Melibeus.

a) ¶ Heere the Hoost stynteth Chaucer
of his tale of Thopas.*)

‘Na-moore of this, for Goddes dignitee!’
Quod ouré hooste, ‘for thou makest me
25 So wery of thy verray lewednesse,
That, also wisly God my soule blesse,
Mine eres aken of thy drasty speche.
Now swich a rym the deuél I bitechel
This may wel be rym dogerel,’ quod he.
30 ¶ ‘Why so?’ quod I, ‘why wiltow lette
me

Moore of my tale than another man,
Syn that it is the beste tale I kan?’

¶ ‘By God,’ quod he, ‘for, pleynly at
a word,

Thy drasty rymyng is nat worth a
toord!

35 Thou doost noght elles but despendest
tyme.

Sir(e), at o word, thou shalt no lenger
rymel

Lat se wher thou kanst tellen aught
in geeste,

Or telle in prose somewhat at the leeste
In which ther be som murthe or som
doctryne.’

40 ¶ ‘Gladly,’ quod I, ‘by Goddes sweete
pynel

I wol yow telle a litel thyng in prose
That oghte liken yow, as I suppose,
Or elles, certēs, ye been to daungerous.
It is a moral tale vertuuous,

45 Al be it *toold* somtyme in sondry wyse
Of sondry folk, as I shal yow deuyse;

¶ As thus: ye woot þat euery[^]Euange-
list,

That telleth vs the peyne of Ihesu
Crist,

Ne seith nat allé thyng as his felawe
dooth.

50 But nathelees hir sentence is al sooth,
And alle acorden as in hir sentence,
Al be ther in hir tellyng difference;

ffor somme of hem seyn moore, and
somme seyn lesse,
Whan they his pitous passioun ex-
presse—

I meene of Mark and Mathew, Luc and 55
Iohn—

But doutelees hir sentence is al[l] oon.

¶ Therfore, lordynges alle, I yow bi-
seche,

If þat yow thynke I varie[^]as in my
speche,

As thus, though þat I telle som-what
moore

Of prouerbes than ye han herd bifoore, 60
Comprehended in this litel tretys heere,

To enforce with theeffect of my mateere;
And though I nat the same wordes seye

As ye han herd, yet to yow alle I
preye:

Blameth me nat, for, as in my sent- 65
ence,

Shúl ye nowher fynden difference
ffró the sentence of this tretys lyte,

After the which this murye tale I
write.

And therfore herkneth what þat I shal
seye,

And lat me tellen al my tale, I preye. 70

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth Chaucers tale of
Melibeus.

A yong man, called Melibeus,
myghty and riche, bigat vp-on his wyf,
that called was Prudence, a doghter,
which that called was Sophie.

(2) Vpon a day bifel þat he, for his
desport, is went in-to the feeldes hym
to pleye. (3) His wyf and eek his
doghter hath he left inwith his hous,
of which the dores weren faste yshette.

(4) ¶ Thre of hise olde foes han it
espyed, and setten laddres to the walles
of his hous, and by wyndowes been
entred; (5) and betten his wyf, and 75

*) and biddeth hym telle another tale He. — 13823—70. Ro.³ für G. 32. tale E.,
rym He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 33. o word He.H.⁴ 45. toold] take E. 55. and Mathew Wr. Sk.;
and f. E., etc.; Marke (?) Gl. 58. yow E.D.H.⁴, ye He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 66. ze schal nought
fynde mochil d. C.L.Ro.³ (Sk., Gl.)? 67. [l. sentencē?]. — 71—90. Ro.³ für G.; whilom
called He.C.L.Ro.

[B 2161—2175]

[B 2175—2187]

wounded his doghter with fyue mortal woundes in fyue sondry places; (6) ¶ this is to seyn: in hir feet, in hir(e) handes, in hir erys, in hir nose, and in hir mouth, and leften hir(e) for deed, and wenten away.

(7) ¶ Whan Melibeus retourned was in-to his hous, and saugh al this meschief, he, lyk a mad man, rentynge his clothes, gan to wepe and crie. (8) ¶ Prudence, his wyf, as ferforth as she dorste, bisoghte hym of his wepyng for to stynte. (9) But nat for-thy he gan to crie and wepen euere lenger the moore.

- 80 ¶ This noble wyf Prudence remembred hir(e) vpon the sentence of Ouide in his book that cleped is 'the Remedie of Loue'*), wher-as he seith, (1) 'He is a fool that destourbeth the mooder to wepen in the deeth of hir child, til she haue wept hir fille, as for a certain tyme. (2) ¶ And thanne shal man doon his diligence with amiable wordes hir(e) to reconforte, and preyen hir(e) of hir wepyng for to stynte.' (3) ¶ ffor which resoun this noble wyf Prudence suffred hir housbonde for to wepe and crie, as for a certain space. (4) And whan she saugh hir tyme, she seyde him in this wise:
- 85 (5) ¶ 'Allas, my lord,' quod she, 'why make ye your(e)-self for to be lyk a fool? (6) for sothe, it aperteneth nat to a wys man to maken swich[e] a sorwe. (7) Your(e) doghter, with the grace of God, shal warisshe and escape. (8) And al were it so, that she right now were deed, ye ne oughte nat as for hir deeth your(e)-self to destroye. (9) ¶ Senek seith, "The wise man shal nat take to greet discomfort for the deeth
- 90 of his children. (o) But certes he sholde suffren it in pacience, as wel

as he abideth the deeth of his owene propre persone."

(1) ¶ This Melibeus answerde anon, and seyde, ¶ 'What man,' quod he, 'sholde of his wepyng stente that hath so greet a cause for to wepe? (2) I hesu Crist, oure Lord, hym-self wepte for the deeth of Lazarus, hys freend.' (3) Prudence answerde, 'Certes wel I woot, attempree wepyng is no-thing deffended to hym þat sorweful is amonges folk in sorwe, but it is rather graunted hym to wepe. (4) ¶ The Apostle Paul vn-to the Romayns writeth, "Man shal reioyse with hem that maken ioye, and wepen with swich folk as wepen." (5) But though attempree wepyng be ygraunted, outrageous wepyng certes is deffended. (6) Mesure of wepyng sholde be considered after the loore þat techeth vs Senek. (7) ¶ "Whan that thy freend is deed," quod he, "lat nat thyne [e]yën to moyste been of teeris, ne to mucche drye. (8) Al though the teeris come to thyne [e]yën, lat hem nat falle. (9) And whan thou hast for-goon thy freend, do diligence to gete another freend. (o) And this is moore wysdom

00 than for to wepe for thy freend which that thou hast lorn; for ther-inne is no boote." (1) And therfore, if ye gouerne yow by sapience, put away sorwe out of your(e) herte. (2) ¶ Remembre yow þat Ihesus Sirak seith, ¶ "A man that is ioyous and glad in herte, it hym conserueth florissynge in his age; but soothly sorweful herte maketh hise bones drye." (3) ¶ He seith eek thus: that "sorwe in herte sleeth ful many a man." (4) ¶ Salomon seith, that "right as motthes in the shepes flees anoyeth to the clothes, and the smale wormes to the tree,

) Am Rande: Ouidius de remedio amoris [I, 127—30] E.He.D.H.; im folg. werden die Randnoten in E., zum Teil auch in anderen Hs., durch Sperren der entsprechenden Worte im Text bezeichnet [vgl. Einl. § 18]. 13888. to destroye E.D.C.L., to f. He., etc. 89. Senek: Ep. LXXIV, 29. 94: Romayns: XII, 15. 95. ygraunted E.D.C., graunted He., etc. 96. considered] conserued H.* (Gl.). 97. Senek: l. c. LXIII, 1 & 9. 13902. A man, etc.: Spr. Sal. XVII, 22 (nicht Zei. Sir.). 93: J. Sir. XXX, 25. 94: Spr. XXV, 20.

[B 2187—2198]

[B 2199—2211]

right so anoyeth sorwe to the herte." 05 (5) *Wherfore vs oghte, as wel in the deeth of oure children as in the losse of opere goodes temporels, haue patience.* (6) ¶ *Remembre yow vp-on the pacient Iob, whan he hadde lost hise children and his temporeel substance, and in his body endured and receyued ful many a greuous tribulacion;* (7) *yet seyde he thus:* ¶ *"Oure Lord hath yeue it me, oure Lord hath biraft it me; right as oure Lord hath wold, right so it is doon; blessed be the name of oure Lord!"*

(8) ¶ *To thise foreseide thynges answerde Melibeus vn-to his wyf Prudence:* (9) ¶ *'Alle thy wordes,' quod he, 'been sothe, and therwith profitable; but trewely, myn herte is troubled with this sorwe so greuously, that I* 10 *noot what to doone.'* (o) *'Lat calle,' quod Prudence, 'thy trewe freendes alle and thy lynage whiche that been wise; telleth your(e) cas, and herkneth what they seye in conseillyng, and yow gouerne after hir sentence.* (1) ¶ *Salomon seith, "Werke alle thy thynges by conseil, and thou shalt neuer repente."*

(2) ¶ *Thanne by the conseil of his wyf Prudence, this Melibeus leet callen a greet congregacion of folk;* (3) *as surgiens, phisiciens, olde folk and yonge, and somme of hise olde enemys, reconciled as by hir semblaunt to his loue and in-to his grace.* (4) *And ther-with-al ther coomen somme of hise neighebores that diden hym reuerence, moore for drede than for loue, as it* 15 *happeth ofte.* (5) ¶ *Ther coomen also ful many subtille flatereres and wise aduocat, lerned in the lawe.*

(6) *And whan this folk togidre assembled weren, this Melibeus in sorweful wise shewed hem his cas.* (7) *And*

by the manere of his speche it semed wel that in herte he baar a crueel ire, redy to doon vengeance vp-on hise foes, and sodeynly desired that the werre sholde bigynne. (8) *But nathelees yet axed he hir conseil vpon this matiere.*

(9) ¶ *A surgien, by licence and assent of swiche as weren wise, vp roos, and to Melibeus seyde, as ye may heere:* (o) *'Sire,' quod he, 'as to vs surgiens* 20 *aperteneth that we do to euery wight the beste that we kan, where-as we been withholde, and to oure pacientz that we do no damage.* (1) *Wherfore it happeth many tyme and ofte that, whan twey men han euerich wounded oother, oon same surgien heeleth hem bothe.* (2) *Wherfore vn-to oure art it is nat pertinent to norice werre, ne parties to supporte.* (3) *But certes, as to the warisschyng of your(e) doghter, al be it so that she perilously be wounded, we shullen do so ententif bisynesse fro day to nyght, that, with the grace of God, she shal be hool and sound as soone as is possible.'*

(4) ¶ *Almoost right in the same wise the phisiciens answerden, saue that they seyden a fewe wordes moore;* (5) *that* 25 *right as maladies been cured by hir contraries, right so shul men warisshe werre by vengeance.*

(6) ¶ *Hise neighebores ful of enuye, hise feyned freendes that semeden reconciled, and hise flatereres maden semblant of wepyng, and empeireden and agreggeden muchel of this matiere,* (7) *in preisyng gretly Melibee of myght, of power, of riches, and of freendes, despisyng the power of hise aduersaries,* (8) *and seiden outrelly that he anon sholde wreken hym on hise foes, and bigynne werre.*

(9) ¶ *Vp roos thanne an aduocat that*

13905. opere E., oure He., etc. (Sk.). 07. hath zeue it me oure lord D., quod he hap zoue, etc. C., quod he zaue, etc. L., it sent vnto me, etc. H.^a, f. E., etc. [Job I, 21]. 11. werke G.D.L. (worche) H.^a (3. Sir. XXXII, 19). [Wgl. 9361.] 13. Sirurgiens He.P. [ähnl. 13919, 920, 14173, etc.]. 17. semed wel E., semed He.G.D.P.H.^a, f. C.L. 19. to E.H.^a, vn to He., etc. 25. man He.D.P. 26. and hise flatereres E.G., and f. He., etc.

[B 2211—2223]

[B 2223—2233]

was wys, by leue and by conseil of
othere that were wise, and seide,
30 (o) 'Lordynges, the nede for which we
been assembled in this place is a ful
heuy thyng and an heigh matiere, by
cause of the wrong and of the wike-
kednesse that hath be doon, (1) and
eek by resoun of the grete damages that
in tyme comyng be possible to fallen
for this same cause; (2) and eek by
resoun of the grete richesse and power
of the parties bothé, for the whiche
resouns it were a ful greet peril to
erren in this matiere. (3) ¶ Wherefore,
Melibeus, this is oure sentence: we
conseille yow abouen alle thyng that
right anon thou do thy diligence in
keypyng of thy propre persone in
swich a wise, þat thou wante noon
espie ne wacche, thy persone for to
saue. (4) ¶ And after that we conseille
þat in thyn hous thou sette sufficeant
garnisoun, so that they may as wel thy
35 body as thyn hous defende. (5) ¶ But
certes, for to moeue werre, or sodeyn-
ly for to doon vengeance, we may
nat demen in so litel tyme that it
were profitable. (6) Wherefore we axen
leyser and espace to haue deliberacion
in this cas to deme. (7) ffor the com-
mune prouerbe seith thus: ¶ "He that
soone demeth, soone shal repente."
(8) And eek men seyn that thilke Iuge
is wys that soone vnderstondeth a ma-
tiere, and iuggeth by leyser. (9) ¶ ffor
al be it so that alle tariyng be any-
ful, algates it is nat to repreue in
yeuyng of iuggement, ne in vengeance
takyn, when it is sufficeant and reson-
40 able. (o) ¶ And that shewed oure Lord
Ihesu Crist by ensample, (1) for whan
that the womman that was taken in
auowtrie was broght in his presence

to knowen what sholde be doon with
hir persone, al be it so that he wiste
wel hym-self what that he wolde an-
swere; (2) yet ne wolde he nat answer
sodeynly, but he wolde haue delibera-
cion, and in the ground he wroot
twies. (3) And by thise causes, we
axen deliberacioun, and we shal thanne,
by the grace of God, conseille thee
thyng that shal be profitable.'

(4) ¶ Vp stirten thanne the yonge
folk atones, and the mooste partie of
that compaignye scorned the olde wise
men, and bigonnen to make noyse,
and seyden, (5) that right so as, whil 45
that iren is hoot, men sholden smyte,
right so men sholde wreken hir wronges
while þat they been fresshe and newe,
and with loud vois they criden, 'Werre,
werre!'

(6) ¶ Vp roos tho oon of thise olde
wise, and with his hand made conten-
aunce that men sholde holden hem
stille, and yeuen hym audience.
(7) ¶ 'Lordynges,' quod he, 'ther is ful
many a man that crieth "werre, werre!"
that woot ful litel what werre amount-
eth. (8) ¶ Werre at his bigynnyng hath
so greet an entryng and so large, that
euery wight may entre whan hym
liketh, and lightly fynde werre; but
certes, what ende that shal ther-of bi-
falle, it is nat light to knowe. (9) ffor
soothly, whan þat werre is ones bi-
gonne, ther is ful many a child vn-
born of his mooder that shal sterue
yong by cause of that ilke werre, or
elles lyue in sorwe, and dye in wrecch-
ednesse. (o) And therfore, er þat 50
any werre bigynne, men moste haue
greet conseil, and greet deliberacion.'
(1) ¶ And whan this olde man wende
to enforcen his tale by resons, wel

13930. the which He.D.C.P.; a ful E.C.L., ful He., etc. 31. the same He.G.D.P.H.⁴
33. thy diligence] thy f. He.P.H.⁴; wante E., ne w. He., etc. (Sk.); thy persone E., thy
(zoure P.) body He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 35. or sodeynly E.P., ne s. He., etc. 37. thus
E.C.P.L., this He., etc. [Sent. 6 & 749]. 42: 306. VIII, 8. 43. we shal E.L., we shul
He., etc. 44. scorned E., han sc. He., etc. (Sk.); man He.G.C.P.L. 45. sholde men wreken
He.G.P.H.⁴ 48. entryng E.D.C.L., entree He., etc. (Sk.); þat ther-of shal falle He., ther
of sch. f. G., shal f. P., sch. f. þerof H.⁴ 50. bigynne E.G.L., be bigonne He., etc.

[B 2233—2243]

[B 2243—2251]

ny alle atones bigonne they to rise for to breken his tale, and beden hym ful ofte hise wordes for to abregge. (2) ffor soothly, he that precheth to hem that listen nat heeren hise wordes, his sermon hem anoieth. (3) ¶ ffor Ihesus Syrak seith that 'musik in wepyng is anoyous thyng;' (4) this is to seyn: As muche auailleth to speken bifore folk to whiche his speche anoyeth, as it is to synge bifrom hym that wepeth. (5) And this wise man saugh that hym wanted audience, and al shamefast he sette hym doun agayn. (6) ¶ ffor Salomon seith, 'Ther-as thou ne mayst haue noon audience, enforce thee nat to speke.' (7) ¶ 'I see wel,' quod this wise man, 'þat the commune prouerbe is sooth, "That good conseil wanteth whan it is moost nede."' (8) ¶ Yet hadde this Melibeus in his conseil many folk that priuely in his eere conseilled hym certeyn thyng, and conseilled hym the contrarie in general audience. (9) Whan Melibeus hadde herd that the gretteste partie of his conseil weren accorded þat he sholde maken werre, anon he consented to hir conseillyng, and fully affermed hir sentence.

- 60 Thanne dame Prudence, whan þat she saugh how that hir housbonde shoop hym for to wreken hym on hise foes, and to bigynne werre, she in ful humble wise, whan she saugh hir tyme, seide to hym thise wordes: (1) ¶ 'My lord,' quod she, 'I yow biseche as hertely as I dar and kan, ne haste yow nat to faste, and for alle gerdons, as yeueth me audience. (2) ¶ ffor Piers Alfonse seith,

¶ "Who so that dooth to thee outhur good or harm, haste thee nat to quiten it; (3) for in this wise thy freend wol[e] abyde, and thyn enemy shal the lenger lyue in drede." (4) ¶ The prouerbe seith, "He hasteth wel that wisely kan abyde," and, "In wikked haste is no profit."

¶ This Melibee answerde vn-to his wyf Prudence: ¶ 'I purpose nat,' quod he, 'to werke by thy conseil for many causes and resouns. (6) ¶ ffor certes, euery wight wolde holde me thanne a fool; ¶ this is to seyn: if I for thy conseillyng wolde chaungen thynges that been ordeyned and affermed by so manye wyse. (7) ¶ Secoundly I seye that alle wommen been wikke, and noon good of hem alle. (8) ¶ "ffor of a thousand men," seith Salomon, "I foond o good man, but certes, of alle wommen, good wommen foond I neuere." (9) ¶ And also certes, if I gouerned me by thy conseil, it sholde seme that I hadde yeue to thee ouer me the maistrie, and God forbode that it so weere. (10) ¶ For Ihesus Syrak seith that "if the wyf haue maistrie, she is contrarious to hir housbonde." (11) ¶ And Salomon seith, ¶ "Neuere in thy lyf, to thy wyf, ne to thy child, ne to thy freend, ne yeue no power ouer thyself. (2) ffor bettre it were that thy children aske of thy persone thynges that hem nedeth than thou be thyself in the handes of thy children." (3) ¶ And also if I wolde werke by thy conseillyng, certes my conseillyng moste som-tyme be secree, til it were tyme þat it moste be knowe, and this ne may nought be*)

13953. a-noyous He.G., a noyous D.H.⁴ (Gl.), noyous P. [f. 3. Cit. XXV, 6]. 55. And . . . and al E., And whan . . . al He., etc. (Sk.). 56: f. Spr. XXIII, 6 (?). 57. nede f. E. 61. yeueth E.G., yif He.D.C., zeue P., etc. 62. that outhur E. (Sk., Gl.), thee outhur He.G.D.H.⁴, þe C.P.L. (f. Disc. Cler. XXV, 15). 13966—14009. Eg. für D. 68. o (on) He., etc., a E.C. (Sk., Gl.) (f. Brb. Cal. VII, 29.) [Bgl. 10123 f.] 69. goddes forbode He.G.Eg. 71: vgl. 14584 [3. Cit. XXXIII, 19—21]. 72. be E., see He.G.Eg.H.⁴, sese P., f. C.L. 73. also f. E. (Gl.); my conseil He., etc., f. H.⁴ *) 2 Sätze in allen Gl. ausgelassen; im frz. Original: Car il est escript, la genglerie des femmes ne puet riens celler fors ce qu'elle ne scet. Apres, le philosophe dit, en mauvais conseil les femmes vainquent les hommes; et par (pour) ces raisons je ne dois point user de ton conseil (f. Six-Text, B 2252—53 u. vgl. u. 13996, 14001).

[B 2254—2262]

[B 2262—2273]

(4) Whanne dame Prudence ful debonairly and with greet pacience hadde herd al that hir housbonde liked for to seye, thanne axed she of hym licence for to speke, and seyde in
 75 this wise: (5) ¶ ‘My lord,’ quod she, ‘as to your(e) firste resoun, certes it may lightly be answered. (6) ¶ ffor I seye that it is no folie to chaunge conseil whan the thyng is chaunged ¶, or elles whan the thyng semeth ootherweyes than it was biforn. (7) ¶ And mooreouer I seye that, though ye han sworn and bihight to perfourne youre emprise, (8) and nathelees ye weyue to perfourne thilke same emprise by iuste cause, men sholde nat seyn therefore that ye were a lier ne forsworn. (9) ¶ ffor the book seith þat “the wise man maketh no lesyng whan he turneth
 80 his corage to better.” (o) ¶ And al be it so that your(e) emprise be establissed and ordeyned by greet multitude of folk, yet thar ye nat accomplice thilke ordinaunce but yow like. (1) ¶ ffor the trouthe of thynges and the profit been rather founden in fewe folk that been wise and ful of resoun than by greet multitude of folk, ther euery man crieth and clatereth what that hym liketh; ¶ soothly, swich multitude is nat honeste.

(2) ¶ As to the seconde resoun, where-as ye seyn þat alle wommen been wikke, saue youre grace, certes ye despisen alle wommen in this wyse; and “*he þat alle despiseth, alle despiseth*,” as seith the book. (3) & Senec seith that “who-so wole haue sapience, shal no man despise, but he shal gladly techen the science that he kan, withouten presumpcion or pride. (4) And swiche thynges as he nought ne kan, he shal nat been ashamed to lerne

hem, and enquire of lasse folk than hym-self.” (5) And, sire, that ther hath
 85 been many a good womman, may lightly be preued. (6) ¶ ffor certes, sire, oure Lord Ihesu Crist wolde neuere haue descended to be born of a womman, if alle wommen hadden ben wikke. (7) And after that, for the grete bountee that is in wommen, oure Lord Ihesu Crist, whan he was risen fro deeth to lyue, appeered rather to a womman than to hise Apostles. (8) And though that Salomon seith that he ne foond neuere womman good, it folweth nat therfore that alle wommen ben wikke. (9) ffor though that he ne foond no good womman, certes, ful many another man hath founden many a womman ful good and trewe. (o) ¶ Or elles, per auenture,
 90 the entente of Salomon was this: that, as in souereyn bounte, he foond no womman. (1) This is to seyn: that ther is. no wight þat hath souereyn bountee saue God allone, as he hymself recordeth in hys Euaungelie. (2) ffor ther nys no creature so good, that hym ne wanteth somewhat of the perfeccioun of God, that is his maker.

(3) ¶ Your(e) thridde reson is this: ¶ ye seyn, if ye gouerne yow by my conseil, it sholde seme that ye hadde yeue me the maistrie and the lordshipe ouer your(e) persone. (4) Sire, saue your(e) grace, it is nat so; ffor if it were so that no man sholde be conseilled but oonly of hem that hadden lordshipe and maistrie of his persone, men wolden nat be conseilled so ofte. (5) ffor soothly, thilke man that asketh
 95 conseil of a purpos, yet hath he free choys whether he wole werke by that conseil or noon.

13976. othir wyse G.D.P.L.H.⁴ 77. that though E.Eg., þat thogh þat He.G., þay þat C.L.H.⁴, 3l. f. P. 80. thilke same He.G.P.H.⁴ (Sk.). 82. As E., and as C.L., And He., etc.; and — book f. E.; vgl. b. fr. 3. Text: car il est escript, qui tout [tous?] desprist, a tous desplaist; al . . . al He.; alle despyseth all dyspiseþ . . . C., . . . all þinge him despiseþ L., and þat al (alle) dispiseth P.H.⁴ 83. despise E.L., dispreise He., etc. (Sk.). [De quat. virt., cap. III]. 85: vgl. 10155 ff. 94. if so were He.Eg.C.L.H.⁴, ȝit it so w. P.

[B 2274—2286]

[B 2286—2298]

(6) ¶ And as to your(e) fourthe resoun, ¶ ther ye seyn þat the ianglerie of wommen kan hyde thynges that they woot noght, as who seith that a womman kan nat hyde that she woot.

(7) ¶ Sire, thise wordes been vnderstonde of wommen þat been iangleresses and wikked, (8) of whiche wommen men seyn that thre thynges dryuen a man out of his hous ¶, that is to seyn: smoke, droppynge of reyn, and wikked wyues. (9) And of swiche wommen seith Salomon þat "it were better dwelle in desert than with a womman that is riotous." ¶ And, sir(e),

00 by your(e) leue, that am nat I. (o) ffor ye haan ful ofte assayed my grete silence, and my grete pacience, and eek how wel that I kan hyde and hele thynges that men oghte secreely to hyde.

(1) ¶ And soothly, as to your(e) fifthe resoun, where-as ye seyn that in wikked conseil wommen venquisshe men, ¶ God woot, thilke resoun stant heere in no stede. (2) ¶ ffor vnderstonde now, ye asken conseil to do wikkednesse; (3) and if ye wole werken wikkednesse, and your(e) wif restreyneth thilke wikked purpos, and ouercometh yow by reson and by good conseil, certes youre wyf oghte rather to be preised than yblamed. (4) ¶ Thus sholde ye vnderstonde the philosopre that seith, "In wikked conseil wommen venquisshe hir housbondes."

05 ¶ And ther-as ye blamen alle wommen and hir resouns, I shal shewe yow by manye ensamples that many a womman hath ben ful good, and yet been, and hir conseils ful hoolsome and profitable. (6) ¶ Eek som men

han seyde that the conseillynge of wommen is outhere to deere, or elles to litel of pris. (7) ¶ But al be it so þat ful many a womman is badde, and hir conseil vile and noght worth, yet han men founde ful many a good womman, and ful discrete and wise in conseillynge. (8) ¶ Loo Iacob, by good conseil of his mooder Rebekka, wan the benysoun of Ysaak, his fader, and the lordshipe ouer alle hise bretheren. (9) ¶ Iudith, by hir good conseil, deliuered the citee of Bethulie, in which she dwelled, out of the handes of Oloferus, that hadde it biseged, and wolde al haue destroyed it. (10) ¶ Abygail deliuered Nabal, hir housbonde, fro Dauid the kyng, that wolde haue slayn hym, and apayed the ire of the kyng by hir wit and by hir good conseillyng. (11) ¶ Hester enhaunced greetly by hir good conseil the peple of God in the regne of Assuerus the kyng. (2) ¶ And the same bountee in good conseillyng of many a good womman may men telle. (3) ¶ And moore-ouer, whan oure Lord hadde creat Adam, oure forme fader, he seyde in this wise: (4) "It is nat good to been a man alloone; make we to hym an help semblable to hymself." (5) ¶ Heere may ye se that, if that wommen were nat goode, and hir conseils goode & profitable, oure Lord God of heuene wolde neuere han wrought hem, ne called hem help of man, but rather confusioun of man. (6) ¶ And ther seyde oones a clerk in two vers: "What is better than gold? Iaspere. ¶ What is better than Iaspere? Wisdom. ¶ And what is better than wisdom? Womman. And

13996. hath hyd th. that they wiste E. (Sk. [woot], Gl.) [Bgl. b. frz. Text 13973*]; I. kan nat hyde th. saue that, etc.?; that þat she woot He., þat at, etc. H.⁴, what, etc. C., f. P. 98: bgl. Spr. XXVII, 15 u. B. 5860. 99. of f. E.C.P. [f. Spr. XXI, 19 u. XXV, 24]. 14005. yow f. He.G.Eg.H.⁴; ful hoolsome E.H.⁴, ful f. He., etc. 08. good f. He.G.P.H.⁴ [vgl. 9238ff.]. 09. it al destroye He.G.P. (al f.) D.H.⁴. 11. enhaunced greetly by hir good conseil E., by hir (f. H.⁴) g. (f. D.C.L.) c. e. gr. He., etc. (Sk.). 15. conseil good He., etc.; beßgl. 17 (f. P.H.⁴); neuere E.C., neither He., etc. [vgl. 15947]. 16. Auro quid melius./iaspis; quid iaspis. sensus / Sensus quid./ Mulier; quid Muliere./ nichil. He. [als Fußnote]; a good E.C.L. [teilweise verb.], good He., etc.

[B 2298—2310]

[B 2311—2327]

what is better than a good womman? No-thing." (7) ¶ And, sir(e), by manye of othre resons may ye seen that manye wommen been goode, and hir conseils goode and profitable: (8) And ther-fore, sir(e), if ye wol triste to my conseil, I shal restoore yow youre doghter hool and sound; (9) and eek I wol do to yow so muche, that ye shul haue honour in this cause.'

20 Whan Melibee hadde herd the wordes of his wyf Prudence, he seyde thus: (1) ¶ 'I se wel that the word of Salomon is sooth; he seith that "wordes þat been spoken discreetly by ordinaunce been honycombes, for they yeuen swetnesse to the soule and hool-somnesse to the body." (2) ¶ And, wyf, by cause of thy sweete wordes, and eek for I haue assayed and preued thy grete sapience and thy grete trouthe, I wol gouerne me by thy conseil in alle thyng.'

(3) 'Now, sire,' quod dame Prudence, 'and syn ye vouches-sauf to been gouerned by my conseil, I wol enforme yow how ye shul gouerne your(e)-self in chesynge of your(e) conseilours. (4) ¶ Ye shul first in alle youre werkes mekely biseken to the heighe God þat he wol be your(e) 25 conseilour. (5) And shapeth yow to swich entente that he yeue yow conseil and confort, as taughte Thobie his sone: (6) ¶ "At alle tymes thou shalt blesse God, and praye hym to dresse thy weyes, and looke þat alle thy con-seils been in hym for eueremoore." (7) Seint Iame eek seith, "If any of yow haue nede of sapience, axe it of God." (8) ¶ And afterward thanne shul ye taken conseil of your(e)-self, and examyne wel youre thoghtes of swich thyng as yow thynketh þat is

best for your(e) profit. (9) And thanne shul ye dryue fro your(e) herte thre thynges that been contrariouse to good conseil; that is to seyn: Ire, coueitise, and hastifnesse.

¶ ffirst, he þat axeth conseil of hym- 30 self, certes, he moste been with-outen ire for manye causes. (1) The firste is this: ¶ he þat hath greet ire and wratthe in hym-self, he weneþ alwey that he may do thyng that he may nat do. (2) ¶ And secoundely, he that is irous and wrooth, he ne may nat wel deme, and he þat may nat wel deme, may nat wel conseil. (3) ¶ The thridde is this: "that he þat is irous and wrooth," as seith Senec, "ne may nat speke but he blame thynges," and with hise vicious wordes he stireth oother folk to angre and to ire. (4) ¶ And eek, sire, ye moste dryue coueitise ouf of youre herte. (5) ffor the Apostle 35 seith ¶ that "coueitise is roote of alle harmes." (6) And truste wel that a coueitous man ne kan noght deme ne thenke, but oonly to fulfille the ende of his coueitise; (7) and certes, that ne may neuere been accomplished; for euere the moore habundaunce þat he hath of riches, the moore he desir-eth. (8) ¶ And, sir(e), ye moste also dryue out of youre herte hastifnesse; (9) for certes, ye ne may nat deeme for the beste a sodeyn thought that falleth in youre herte, but ye moste auyse yow on it ful ofte. (o) ffor, as 40 ye herde biforn, the commune prouerbe is this: ¶ that "he þat soone demeth, soone repenteth." (1) ¶ Sir(e), ye ne be nat alwey in lyke disposicioun; for certes, som thyng þat somtyme semeth to yow that it is good for to do, another tyme it semeth to yow the contrarie.

14018. triste E., truste (troste) He., etc. 21: f. Spr. XVI, 24. 26: Tob. IV, 19. 27: I, 5. 28. conseil of E., c. in He., etc. (Sk.); self f. E.; swich thyng E., swiche thynges He., etc. 33. he blame E., blameful He., etc. (Gl.) [Sent. 281]. 35. coueitise, etc.: I. Tim. VI, 10. [vgl. 12272, etc.]; the roote He.D.C.L. 36. thenke He.D.C., thynke E., etc. (f. P.) (Sk., Gl.). 39. ne may E., ne moun D., may He., etc. 40. biforn E., her biforn He., etc. (he to-for-n P.) [vgl. 13937].

[B 2328—2341]

[B 2342—2355]

(2) Whan ye han taken conseil of youre-self, and han deemed by good deliberacion swich thyng as you list best, ¶ thanne rede I yow that ye kepe it secree. (3) Biwreye nat youre conseil to no persone, but if so be that ye wenen sikerly that thurgh youre biwreying youre condicioun shal be to yow the moore profitable. (4) ¶ ffor Ihesus Syrak seith, "Neither to thy foo, ne to thy frend, discouere nat
45 thy secree, ne thy folie; (5) for they wol yeue yow audience and lookynge to supportacioun in thy presence, and scorne thee in thyn absence." (6) ¶ Another clerk seith that "scarsly shaltou fynden any persone that may kepe conseil sikerly." (7) ¶ The book seith, "Whil þat thou kepest thy conseil in thyn herte, thou kepest it in thy prison, and whan thou biwrest thy conseil to any wight, he holdeth thee in his snare." (8) ¶ And therefore yow is bettre to hyde youre conseil in your(e) herte than praye hym to whom ye han biwreyed youre conseil that he wol[e] kepen it cloos and stille. (9) ¶ ffor Seneca seith, ¶ "If so be þat thou ne mayst nat thyn owene conseil hyde, how darstou prayen any
50 oother wight thy conseil sikerly to kepe?" (o) ¶ But natheless, if you wene sikerly þat the biwreying of thy conseil to a persone wol make thy condicion to stonden in the bettre plyt, thanne shaltou tellen hym thy conseil in this wise: (1) ¶ ffirst thou shalt make no semblant wheither thee were leuere pees or werre, or this, or that; (2) ne shewe hym nat thy wille and thyn entente. (3) ffor truste wel þat comunli thise conseilours been flaterers, namely the conseilours of grete

lordes. (4) ffor they enforcen hem alwey rather to speken plesante wordes, enclynynge to the lordes lust, than wordes þat been trewe or profitable. (5) And therefore men seyn þat "the riche man hath seeld good conseil, but if he haue it of hym-self." (6) ¶ And after that thou shalt considere thy freendes and thyne enemys. (7) And as touchynge thy freendes, thou shalt considere whiche of hem þat been moost feithful and moost wise, and eldest, and moost approued in conseillynge; (8) and of hem shalt thou aske thy conseil as the caas requireth.

(9) ¶ I seye þat first ye shul clepe to youre conseil your(e) freendes that been trewe. (o) ¶ ffor Salomon seith 6 ¶ that "right as the herte of a man deliteth in sauour þat is soote, right so the conseil of trewe freendes yeueth swetenesse to the soule." (1) He seith also, ¶ "Ther may no-thing be likned to the trewe freend; (2) for certes, gold ne siluer beth nat so muche worth as the goode wyl of a trewe freend." (3) ¶ And eek he seith that "a trewe freend is a strong defense; who-so þat hym fyndeth, certes he fyndeth a greet tresour." (4) ¶ Thanne shul ye eek considere if that your(e) trewe freendes been discrete and wise. (5) ¶ ffor the book seith, "Axe alwey 6 thy conseil of hem þat been wise." (6) And by this same resoun shul ye clepen to youre conseil of youre freendes that been of age, swiche as han seyn, and been expert in, manye thynges, and been approued in conseillynge. (7) ¶ ffor the book seith that "in the olde men is the sapience, and in longe tyme the prudence." (8) ¶ And Tullius seith that "grete

14042—76. Lau.¹ für C., Ro.¹ für L. 42. of E., vn-to D.Ro.¹, in He., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 28]. 43. the f. He.D.Ro.¹ 44: f. XIX, 8f. 45. to E., and He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 46. sikerly E., secrely He., etc. (Sk.); v̄esgl. 49. 47. the book: Petr. Alf., l. c. IV, 3. 48. hym] hem E. 49. De moribus, Sent. 16. 57. þat E.He., f. G., etc. 60: C̄pr. XXVII, 24 u. 3. C̄tr. VI, 15. 62. beth E.H.¹, ben He., etc. 63. hym E., it He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [3. C̄tr. VI, 14]. 65: Tob. IV, 19. 67. the olde E., olde He., etc. (Sk.). 68. Tullius: Cicero, De senect. VI, 17.

[B 2355—2365]

[B 2365—2377]

thynges ne been nat ay accompliced by strengthe, ne by deliuerneſſe of body, but by good conſeil, by auctori-tee of perſones, and by ſcience; (9) the whiche thre thynges ne been nat fieble by age, but certes they enfor-
 70 (o) And thanne ſhul ye kepe this for a general reule: ¶ ffirst ſhul ye clepen to your(e) conſeil a fewe of your(e) freendes that been eſpeciale. (1) ffor Salomon ſeith, ¶ “Manye freendes haue thou, but among a thousand cheſe thee oon to be thy conſeillour.” (2) ffor al be it ſo that thou firſt ne telle thy conſeil but to a fewe, thou mayſt afterward telle it to mo folk if it be nede. (3) But looke alwey that thy conſeillours haue thilke thre condicioons þat I haue ſeyd bifore; that is to ſeyn: that they be trewe, wiſe, and of oold experience. (4) ¶ And werke nat alwey in euery nede by
 75 oon conſeillour allone. (5) ¶ ffor ſomtyme bihoueeth it to been conſeilled by manye. (6) ffor Salomon ſeith, ¶ “Saluacion of thynges is where-as ther been manye conſeillours.”

(7) Now ſith I haue toold yow of which folk ye ſholde been conſeilled, now wol I teche yow which conſeil ye oghte to eſchewe. (8) ¶ ffirst ye ſhul eſchue the conſeilling of fooler; for Salomon ſeith, “Taak no conſeil of a fool, for he ne kan noght conſeille but after his owene luſt and his affeccioun.” (9) ¶ The book ſeith that “the propretee of a fool is this: ¶ he troweth lightly harm of euery wight, and lightly troweth alle bountee in hym-ſelf.”
 80 (o) ¶ Thou ſhalt eek eſchue the conſeilling of flaterer, ſwiche

as enforcen hem rather to preiſe your(e) perſone by flaterie than for to telle yow the ſoothfaſneſſe of thynges. (1) ¶ Wherefore Tullius ſeith, ¶ “Amonges alle the peſtilences that been in freendſhipe the gretteſte is flaterie.” (2) And therfore is it moore nede þat thou eſchue and drede flaterer than any oother peple. (3) ¶ The book ſeith, “Thou ſhalt rather drede and flee fro the ſweete wordes of flateringe preiſer than fro the egre wordes of thy freend that ſeith thee thy ſothe.” (4) Salomon ſeith that “the wordes of a flaterer is a ſnare to c[h]acche with innocent.” (5) ¶ He 85 ſeith alſo that “he þat ſpeketh to his freend wordes of ſwetneſſe and of pleaſance, ſetteth a net biforn hiſe feet to cacche hym.” (6) ¶ And therfore ſeith Tullius, “Encline nat thyne eres to flaterer, ne taaketh no conſeil of the wordes of flaterie.” (7) And Caton ſeith, ¶ “Auye thee wel, and eſchue the wordes of ſwetneſſe and of pleaſance.”

(8) ¶ And eek thou ſhalt eſchue the conſeilling of thyne olde enemys that been reconciled. (9) ¶ The book ſeith that “no wight retourneth ſaully in-to the grace of hiſ olde enemy.” (o) ¶ And Iſope ſeith, “Ne truſte nat 90 to hem to whiche thou haſt had ſomtyme werre or enemytee, ne telle hem nat thy conſeil.” (1) ¶ And Seneca telleth the cauſe why: ¶ “It may nat be,” ſeith he, “that where greet fyr hath longe tyme endured, that ther ne dwelleth ſom vapour of warmneſſe.” (2) And therfore ſeith Salomon, ¶ “In thyn olde foo truſte neuere.” (3) ¶ ffor ſikerly, though thyn enemy be reconciled, and maketh thee chiere of humy-

14071: *ſ. Sir. VI. 6.* 76: *ſpr. XI. 14.* 77: *sith þat He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), ſeeþ P., f. C.L.; to eſchewe E.G.C.L., to f. He., etc.* 79: *f. Cic., Tusc. diſp. III. 30, 37.* 80: *of alle flaterer He., etc. (Sk.).* 81: *De amic. XXV. 91.* 83: *Sen. (?), Quat. virt., III.* 84: *chache with Innocenz E., cacchen i. wiþe P., c. in I. H.⁴, cacchen I. He., etc. [ſpr. XXIX, 5].* 86: *tak He., etc.; the wordes E.H.⁴, wordes He., etc. (Sk.) [Offic. I. 26, 91].* 87: *the wordes E.C.L., wordes He., etc. [Disticha, III, 5].* 89: *Sent. 91 (Publ. Syrus).* 90: *truſte G.C.H.⁴; id. 92, 93 (trist H.⁴)* 91: *where as He.G.D.H.⁴, wh. þat P. [Sent. 389].* 92: *ſ. Sir. XII, 10.*

[B 2377—2388]

[B 2389—2401]

litee, and lowteth to thee with his heed, ne truste hym neuere. (4) ¶ ffor certes, he maketh thilke feyned humilitee moore for his profit than, for any
 95 loue of thy persone; (5) by cause that he deemeth to haue victorie ouer thy persone by swich feyned contenance, the which victorie he myghte nat wynne by strif or werre. (6) And Peter Alfonso seith, "Make no felawshipe with thyne olde enemys; [f]for if thou do hem bountee, they wol peruerten it in-to wikkednesse." (7) And eek thou most eschue the conseiylng of hem that been thy seruantz, and beren thee greet reuerence; for, perauenture, they doon it moore for drede than for loue. (8) ¶ And therefore seith a Philosphre in this wise: "Ther is no wight parfitly trewe to hym þat he to soore dredeth." (9) ¶ And Tullius seith, "Ther nys no myght so greet of any emperour that longe may endure, but if he haue moore loue of the
 00 peple than [for] drede." (10) ¶ Thou shalt also eschue the conseiylng of folk that been dronkelewe, for they kan no conseil hyde. (1) ¶ ffor Salomon seith, "Ther is no priuete ther-as regneth dronkenesse."

(2) ¶ Ye shul also han in suspect the conseiylng of swich folk as conseilte yow a thyng priuely, and conseilte yow the contrarie openly. (3) ¶ ffor Cassidorie seith that "it is a manere sleight to hyndre, when he sheweth to doon a thyng openly, and werketh priuely the contrarie."

(4) ¶ Thou shalt also haue in suspect the conseiylng of wikked folk. (5) ffor
 05 the book seith, "The conseiylng of wikked folk is alwey ful of fraude." (6) And Dauid seith, ¶ "Blisful is that man þat hath nat folwed the

conseiylng of sh[e]rewes." (7) ¶ Thou shalt also eschue the conseiylng of yong folk, for hir conseil is nat rype.

(8) NOW, sire, sith I haue shewed yow of which folk ye shul take youre conseil, and of which folk ye shul folwe the conseil, now wol I teche yow how ye shul examyne your(e) conseil after the doctrine of Tullius.

(9) ¶ In the examynynge thanne of of your(e) conseilour, ye shul considere manye thynges. (1) ¶ Alderfirst thou shalt considere þat in thilke thyng that thou purposest, and vpon what thyng thou wolt haue conseil, þat verray trouthe be seyde and conserued; this is to seyn: telle trewely thy tale. (1) ¶ ffor he that seith fals may nat wel be conseyllid in that cas of which he lieth. (2) ¶ And after this thou shalt considere the thynges þat acorden to that thou purposest for to do by thy conseilours, if resoun accorde ther-to; (3) and eek if thy myght may atteine ther-to, and if the moore part and the better part of thy conseilours acorde ther-to, or noon.

(4) ¶ Thanne shaltou considere what thyng shal folwe after hir conseiylng, as hate, pees, werre, grace, profit, or damage, and manye othere thynges.

(5) ¶ Thanne of alle thise thynges thou shalt chese the beste, and weyue alle othere thynges. (6) ¶ Thanne shaltow considere of what roote is engendred the matiere of thy conseil, and what fruyt it may conceyue and engendre. (7) ¶ Thou shalt eek considere alle thise causes, fro whennes they been sprongen.

(8) ¶ And whan ye han examyned youre conseil, as I haue seyde, and which partie is the better and moore profitable, and hast approued it by

14095. wyne E., haue He., etc. (Sk.). 96. l. c. IV, 4. 97. doon E., seyn He., etc. (Sk.). 99. [for] E. [Off. II, 7, 25]. 14100. ne kan He., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 12499]. or. Epr. XXI, 4 (Vulgata). 103. Variar. Ep. I, 18; hyndre his enemy C. L. [vgl. Mägnier I, 388, 19.] 05. Epr. XII, 5. 06. B. I, 1. 08. shal E. 13. noon E.H.⁴, no He., etc. (Sk.); vgl. 28! 14. after hir E., of that He.G.D.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), of here C.L. 15. Thanne of E., and in He.D.C.L.H.⁴, f. G.P. 16. conserue E.H.⁴, conteyne G., be conseued P., conceyue He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 18. hast E.C.L., han He., etc.

[B 2402—2414]

[B 2414—2427]

- manye wise folk and olde; (9) ¶ thanne shaltou considere if thou mayst parfournen it, and maken of it a good ende. (10) ¶ ffor certes, resoun wol nat that any man sholde bigynne a thyng, but if he myghte parfournen it as hym oghte. (1) Ne no wight sholde take vp-on hym so heuy a charge, that he myghte nat bere it. (2) ¶ ffor the prouerbe seith, "He that to muche embraceth distreyneth litel." (3) And Catoyn seith, ¶ "Assaye to do swich thyng as thou hast power to doon, lest that the charge oppresse thee so soore, that thee bihoueth to weyue thyng that thou hast bigonne." (4) And if so be þat thou be in doute wheither thou mayst parfournen a thing or noon, chese rather to suffre than bigynne. (5) ¶ And Piers Alphonce seith, ¶ "If thou hast myght to doon a thyng of which thou most repente thee, it is bettre 'nay' than 'ye'." (6) ¶ This is to seyn: that thee is bettre holde thy tonge stille than for to speke. (7) ¶ Thanne may ye vnderstonde by strengere reson that, if thou hast power to parfournen a werk of which thou shalt repente, thanne is it bettre that thou suffre than bigynne. (8) ¶ Wel seyn they þat defenden euery wight to assaye anythyng of which he is in doute wheither he may parfournen it or noon. (9) And after, whan ye han examyned your(e) conseil, as I haue seyd bifore, and knowen wel that ye may parfournen youre emprise, conferme it thanne sadly til it be at an ende.
- (10) ¶ Now is it resoun and tyme þat I shewe yow whanne and wherefore that ye may chaunge your(e) conseilours with-outen youre repleue. (1) ¶ Soothly, a man may

chaungen his purpos and his conseil if the cause cesseth, or whan a newe caas bitydeth. (2) ¶ ffor the lawe seith that "vpon thynges þat newly bityden bihoueth newe conseil." (3) ¶ And Senec seith, "If thy conseil is comen to the eeris of thyn enemy, chaunge thy conseil." (4) ¶ Thou mayst also chaunge thy conseil if so be that thou mayst fynde that by errour, or by oother cause, harm or damage may bityde. (5) ¶ Also, if thy conseil be dishonest, or ellis cometh of dishoneste cause, chaunge thy conseil. (6) ffor the lawes seyn: ¶ that "alle bihestes that been dishoneste been of no value." (7) ¶ And eek, if so be þat it be impossible, or may nat goodly be parfourned or kept. (8) ¶ And tak[e] this for a general reule that euery conseil þat is affirmed so strongly, that it may nat be chaunged for no condicioun that may bityde, ¶ I seye þat thilke conseil is wikked."

(9) This Melibeus, whanne he hadde herd the doctrine of his wyf, dame Prudence, answerde in this wyse: (10) ¶ 'Dame,' quod he, 'as yet in-to this tyme ye han wel and couenably taught me, as in general, how I shal gouerne me in the chesynge and in the withholdynge of my conseilours. (1) But now wolde I fayn that ye wolde condescende in especial, and telle me how liketh yow, or what semeth yow, by oure conseilours that we han chosen in oure present nede?'

(2) 'My lord,' quod she [Prudence], 'I biseke yow in al humblesse that ye wol nat wilfully replie agayn my resouns; (3) ne distempre youre herte, thogh I speke thyng that yow displese. (4) ffor God woot that, as in myn entente, I speke it for youre

14119. it für if E. 20. certes f. He.G.P.H.⁴ 22: vgl. Chaucer's (?) Proverbs II. 23. Assaie P.L. [Dist. III, 15]. 25. Piers E.C., Petrus P., Peter He., etc. [I. c. VI, 12]; thee E., f. He., etc. 26. holde E.C.H.⁴, to h. He., etc. 28. any E., a He., etc., f. H.⁴; no He.G.D. (Sk.). 30. conseil H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 14169.] 31. man He.C., a man E., etc. 32. bitideth He.H.⁴ 33. Seneca He.G.D.H.⁴ [I. c. nicht nachzuweisen]. 37. so be E.D.C., it so be He., etc. (Sk.). 40. conably G.P., couenably He.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), f. C.L.; in chesynge He.G.P.H.⁴

[B 2428—2442]

[B 2442—2456]

beste, for youre honour, and for your(e)
 55 profite eke. [5] And soothly I hope
 that youre benyngyte wol taken it in
 pacience. (6) ¶ Trusteth me wel,' quod
 she, 'that your(e) conseil as in this
 caas ne sholde nat, as to speke pro-
 perly, be called a conseillyng; (7) but
 a mocion or a moeuyng of folye,
 in which conseil ye han erred in many
 a sondry wise.

(8) ¶ ffirst and forward ye han erred
 in thassemblynge of youre conseil-
 lours. (9) ffor ye sholde first haue
 cleped a fewe folk to your(e) conseil,
 and after ye myghte han shewed it to
 60 mo folk, if it hadde been nede. (o) ¶ But
 certes, ye han sodeynly cleped to your(e)
 conseil a greet multitude of peple, ful
 chargeant and ful anyous for to heere.
 (1) ¶ Also ye han erred, for there-as
 ye sholden oonly haue cleped to youre
 conseil youre trewe frendes, olde and
 wise, (2) ye han ycleped straunge
 folk and yng folk, false flatereres
 and enemys reconsiled, and folk þat
 doon yow reuerence withouten loue.
 (3) ¶ And eek also ye haue erred,
 for ye han broght with yow to youre
 conseil ire, coueitise, and hastifnesse;
 (4) the whiche thre thinges been con-
 trariouse to euery conseil honeste and
 profitable, (5) the whiche thre ye han
 65 nat anientissed, or destroyed hem,
 neither in your(e)-self, ne in your(e)
 conseilours, as yow oghte. (6) ¶ Ye
 han erred also, for ye han shewed
 to your(e) conseilours youre talent and
 youre affeccoun to make werr(e) anon,
 and for to do vengeance; (7) they
 han espied by your(e) wordes to what
 thyng ye been enclyned. (8) And ther-
 fore han they rather conseilled yow
 to your(e) talent than to your(e) profit.
 (9) ¶ Ye han erred also, for it semeth

þat yow suffiseth to han been con-
 seilled by thise conseilours oonly, and
 wip litel auys; (o) wher(e)-as in so 60
 greet and so heigh a nede it hadde
 been necessarie mo conseilours and
 moore deliberacion to parfournen your(e)
 emprise. (1) ¶ Ye han erred also, for
 ye ne han nat examyned your(e) con-
 seil in the forseide manere, ne in
 due manere, as the caas requireth.
 (2) ¶ Ye han erred also, for ye han
 nat maked no diuision bitwixe your(e)
 conseilours, ¶ this is to seyn: bitwixen
 your(e) trewe frendes and your(e) feyn-
 ed conseilours; (3) ne ye han nat
 knowe the wil of youre trewe frendes,
 olde and wise. (4) But ye han cast
 alle hir(e) wordes in an hochepot, and
 enclyned youre herte to the moore
 partie and to the gretter nombre, and
 ther(e) been ye condescended. (5) ¶ And 65
 sith ye woot wel þat men shal alwey
 fynde a gretter nombre of fooles than
 of wise men, (6) and therefore the con-
 seils that been at congregaciouns and
 multitudes of folk, ther(e)-as men take
 moore reward to the nombre than to
 the sapience of persones: (7) ye se
 wel that in swiche conseillynges fooles
 han the maistrie.'

(8) Melibeus answerde agayn, and
 seyde, 'I graunte wel that I haue
 erred; (9) but there-as thou hast toold
 me heer-biforn þat he nys nat to blame
 þat chaungeth hise conseilours in
 certain caas and for certene iuste
 causes, (o) ¶ I am al redy to chaunge 70
 my conseilours right as thow wolt
 deuyse. (1) ¶ The prouerbe seith
 that "for to do synne is mannyssh,
 but certes, for to perseuere longe in
 synne is werk of the deuel."

(2) ¶ To this sentence answerde anon
 dame Prudence, and seyde, ¶ 'Exa-

14152. and yong E., yong He., etc. 55. the wiche thre E., the whiche thre thynges He., etc. (Sk., Gl.), f. P.; yow E.D.L., ye He., etc. 58. conseilled yow rather He.G.D.P.H.⁴ 59. yow He., etc. (Sk.), it E.C.L. (Gl.). 61. ne han E.He., han G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); 3l. f. H.⁴ 62. nat maked E., nat f. He., etc. (Sk.). 63. ye ne haue He.G.H.⁴ 64. partie E., part He., etc. (Sk.). 69. conseil G. [vgl. 14130]. 72. answerth E. (Gl.); resonably He.D.C.H.⁴ (Sk.), -ble P. [vgl. 14140; f. youre conseilours?].

[B 2456—2471]

[B 2472—2488]

mineth,' quod she, 'your(e) conseil, and lat vs see the whiche of hem han spoken most resonably, and taught yow best conseil. (2) And for as muche as þat the examynacion is necessarie, lat vs bigynne at the surgien and at the phisiciens, that first speeken in this matiere. (4) ¶ I seye yow that the surgien and phisiciens han seyde yow in youre conseil discretely as hem
 75 oughte; (5) and in hir speche seyde ful wisely that to the office of hem aperteneth to doon to euery wight honour and profit, and no wight for to anoye; (6) and in hir craft to doon greet diligence vn-to the cure of hem whiche þat they han in hir gouernance. (7) And, sir(e), right as they han answered wisely and discretely, right so rede I that they been heighly and souereynly gerdoned for hir noble speche; (8) and eek for they sholde do the moore ententif bisynesse in the curacion of youre doghter deere. (9) ffor al be it so þat they been your(e) freendes, therefore shal ye nat suffren that they serue yow for noght;
 80 (o) but ye oghte the rather gerdone hem, and shewe hem your(e) largesse. (1) ¶ And as touchynge the propocioun which that the phisiciens encreesceden in this caas, this is to seyn: that in maladies that oon contrarie is warissed by another contrarie, (2) I wolde fayn knowe hou ye vnderstonde this text, and what is youre sentence? (3) ¶ 'Certes,' quod Melibeus, 'I vnderstonde it in this wise: ¶ that, right as they han doon me a contrarie, right so sholde I doon hem another. (4) ffor right as they han venged hem on me, and doon me wrong: right so shal I venge me vpon
 85 hem, and doon hem wrong; (5) and

thanne haue I cured oon contrarie by another.'

(6) 'Lo, lo,' quod dame Prudence, 'how lightly is euery man enclined to his owene desir and to his owene plesunce! (7) ¶ 'Certes,' quod she, 'the wordes of the phisiciens ne sholde nat han been vnderstonden in this wise. (8) ffor certes, wikkednesse is nat contrarie to wikkednesse, ne vengeance to vengeance, ne wrong to wrong, but they been semblable. (9) ¶ And therefore o vengeance is nat warissed by another vengeance, ne o wroong by another wroong; (o) but euerich of hem 90 encreesceth and aggreggeth oother. (1) ¶ But certes, the wordes of the phisiciens sholde been vnderstonden in this wise: (2) ¶ ffor good and wikkednesse been two contraries, and pees and werre, vengeance and suffraunce, discord and accord, and manye othere thynges. (3) But certes, wikkednesse shal be warissed by goodnesse, discord by accord, werre by pees, and so forth of othere thynges. (4) And heer-to accordeth Seint Paul the Apostle in manye places. (5) ¶ He 95 seith, "Ne yeldeth nat harm for harm, ne wikked speche for wikked speche. (6) But do wel to hym þat dooth thee harm, and blesse hym þat seith to thee harm." (7) ¶ And in manye othere places he amonesteth pees and accord. (8) ¶ But now wol I speke to yow of the conseil which þat was yeuen to yow by the men of lawe and the wise folk, that seyden alle by oon accord, as ye han herd bifore: (9) ¶ that ouer alle thynges ye sholde doon youre diligence to kepen your(e) persone, and to warnestoore your(e) hous; (o) and
 100 seyden also that in this caas yow oghte[n] for to werken ful auysely and

14175. seyde E., sethens C., f. L., seyden He., etc. (Sk.). 76. in hir craft E., after hir c. He., etc. (Sk.). 78. sholde E.G.P., shullen He., etc.; youre E.P.H.⁴, thy He., etc. 81. encreesceden [= 'enlarged on' Gl.] han schewed ȝou H.⁴ (entreteden Sk.?) a contrarie He.D.C.L.; besgl. 85. 82. this E., thilke He., etc. (Sk.). 87. thys E.G.P., that He., etc. 89. f. G.C.L. 95. Röm. XII, 17; I. Thes. V, 15; I. Cor. IV, 12. 99. shal (shuln) He., etc. 14200. yow oughten E.L. (Gl.), yow oughte D.H.⁴, ye oghten He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 2489—2503]

[B 2503—2518]

with greet deliberacioun. (1) ¶ And, sir(e), as to the firste point, that toucheth to the keepyng of youre persone, (2) ye shul vnderstonde that he þat hath werre shal eueremoore mekely and deuoutly preyen, biforn alle thynges, that Ihesus Crist of his grete mercy wol han hym in proteccion, and been his souereyn helpyng at his nede. (3) ffor certes, in this world ther is no wight that may be conseilled, ne kept sufficeantly with-outen the keepyng of oure Lord Ihesu Crist. (4) ¶ To this sentence accordeth the prophete Dauid, that seith: (5) "If God ne kepe the citee, in ydel waketh he that it kepeth."

(6) Now, sir(e), thanne shul ye comitte the keepyng of youre persone to youre trewe freendes that been aproued and knowe. (7) And of hem shul ye axen help youre persone for to kepe. (8) ¶ ffor Catoun seith, ¶ "If thou hast nede of help, axe it of thy freendes; (9) ffor ther nys noon so good a phisicien as thy trewe freend."

10 (o) ¶ And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow fro alle straunge folk and fro lyeres, and haue alwey in suspect hir compaignye. (1) ¶ ffor Piers Alforce seith, "Ne taak no compaignye by the weye of a straunge man, but if so be þat thou haue knowe hym of a lenger tyme. (2) ¶ And if so be that he be falle in-to thy compaignye, paraenture, withouten thyn assent, enquire thanne, as subtilly as thou mayst, of his conuersacion and of his lyf bifore; (3) and feyne thy wey—seye that thou goost thider as thou wolt nat go. (4) And if he bere[th] a spere, hoold thee on the right syde, and if he bere a swerd, hoold thee 15 on his lift syde." (5) ¶ And after this,

thanne shul ye kepe yow wisely from alle swich manere peple as I haue seyð bifore, and hem and hir conseil eschewe.

(6) ¶ And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow in swich manere, that, for any presumpcion of youre strengthe, [that] ye ne dispise nat, ne acounte nat the myght of youre aduersarie so litel, that ye lete the keepyng of youre persone for your(e) presumpcioun. (7) ffor euery wys man dredeth his enemy. (8) ¶ And Salomon seith, ¶ "Weleful is he that of alle hath drede. (9) ffor certes, he that thurgh the hardynesse of his herte, and thurgh the hardynesse of hym-self hath to greet presumpcion, hym shal yuel bi-tyde." (o) ¶ Thanne shul ye eueremoore countrewayte embusschementz and alle espaille. (1) ¶ ffor Senec seith, ¶ that "the wise man þat dredeth harmes, *escheweth harmes*, ne he ne falleth in-to perils that perils eschueth." (2) And al be it so þat it seme that thou art in siker place, yet shaltow alwey do thy diligence in keepyng of thy persone; (3) ¶ this is to seyn: Ne be nat negligent to kepe thy persone nat oonly fro thy grettteste enemys, but fro thy leeste enemy. (4) ¶ *Senek seith, "A man þat is wel awysed, he dredeth his leste enemy."* (5) ¶ Ouyde seith 25 that, "the litel wesele wol slee the grete bole and the wilde hert." (6) ¶ And the book seith, "A litel thorn may prikke a greet kyng ful soore, and an hound wol holde the wilde boor." (7) ¶ But nathelees, I seye nat thou shalt be so coward, that thou doute ther wher-as is no drede. (8) ¶ The book seith that "somme folk han greet lust to deceyue, but yet they dreden

14202. deuoutly & mekely He., etc.; grete f. He., etc. 05: ʒi. 127, 1. 06. yknowe He., etc. (Sk.). 08: Dist. IV, 13. 11. straunge men E. (Gl.) [1. c. XVIII, 10]. 13. goost E., wolt (woldest C.L.) go He., etc. 14. bere a sp. P.L.H.*; his lift E.D., the l. He., etc. 16. [that]: alle ʒif; besser zu freichen; acounte E.C.L. (-mpteþ), attempte He.G.D., f. P.H.* 18: ʒpr. XXVIII, 14. 21. he dredeth harmes E., f. C.L.; escheweth harmes He.G.D.P.H.*, f. E.C.L. [Sent. 542, 607, etc.] 23. oonly for E.G.H.*; but for E. 24. f. ganȝ E. [Sent. 255]. 25: Remed. amor. II, 25, 26. 26. greet: nur E. 27. so f. E. (Gl.).

[B 2519—2530]

[B 2531—2547]

hem to be deceyued." (9) ¶ Yet shal-
 tou drede to been empoisoned, and
 kepe yow from the compaignye of
 30 scorneres. (10) ¶ ffor the book seith,
 "With scorneres make no compaignye,
 but flee hir(e) wordes as venym."

(1) ¶ Now as to the seconde point,
 ¶ wher(e)-as youre wise conseilours con-
 seilled yow to warnestoore youre hous
 with gret diligence, (2) ¶ I wolde fayn
 knowe how that ye vnderstonde thilke
 wordes, and what is youre sentence?"

(3) Melibeus answerde and seyde,
 ¶ 'Certes, I vnderstande it in this wise:
 (4) ¶ That I shal warnestoore myn hous
 with toures, swiche as han castelles
 and othere manere edifices, and ar-
 35 mure, and artelries; (5) by whiche
 thynges I may my persone and myn
 hous so kepen and deffenden, that
 myne enemys shul been in drede myn
 hous for to approche.'

(6) TO this sentence answerde anon
 Prudence: 'Warnestooryng,' quod she,
 'of heighe toures and of grete edifices
appertyneþ somtyme to pryde. (7) *And*
eek men make heihe toures with grete
 costages and with greet trauaille;
 (8) and whan that they been accom-
 plished, yet be they nat worth a stree,
 but if they be defended by trewe
 freendes that been olde and wise.
 (9) ¶ And vnderstood wel that the
 gretteste and strongeste garnyson
 that a riche man may haue, as wel
 to kepen his persone as hise goodes,
 is that he be biloued amonges hyse
 subgetz and with hise neighebores.
 40 (10) ¶ ffor thus seith Tullius: ¶ that
 "ther is a manere garnysoun that no
 man may venquysse ne disconfite, and
 that is a lord to be biloued of hise
 citezeins and of his peple."

(1) NOW, sire, as to the thridde
 point, where-as youre olde and wise
 conseilours seyden ¶ that yow ne oghte
 nat sodeynly ne hastily proceden in
 this nede; (2) but that yow oghte
 purueyen and apparailen yow in this
 caas with greet diligence and greet
 deliberacioun: (3) ¶ trewely, I trowe
 that they seyden right wisely and right
 sooth. (4) ¶ ffor Tullius seith, "In
 euery nede, er thou bigynne it, appar-
 aille thee with greet diligence."
 (5) ¶ Thanne seye I that in vengeance 45
 takyng, in werre, in bataille, and in
 warnestooryng, er thou bigynne, I rede
 þat thou apparaille thee ther-to, and
 do it with greet deliberacion. (6) ffor
 Tullius seith, ¶ "The longe apparail-
 lyng biforn the bataille maketh short
 victorie." (7) And Cassidorus seith,
 ¶ "The garnysoun is stronger whan it
 is longe tyme auysed."

(8) But now lat vs speken of the
 conseil that was accorded by your(e)
 neighebores, swiche as doon yow reuer-
 ence withouten loue; (9) youre olde
 enemys reconsiled, youre flatereres, that
 conseilled yow certeyne thynges priuely,
 and openly conseilleden yow the con-
 trarie; (10) ¶ the yonge folk also, that
 conseilleden yow to venge yow, and
 make werre anon. (1) ¶ And certes,
 sire, as I haue seyd biforn, ye han
 greetly erred to han cleped swich
 manere folk to youre conseil, whiche
 conseilours been ynogh repreued by
 the resouns aforeseyd.

(2) But nathelees, lat vs now de-
 scende to the special. (3) ¶ Ye shuln first
 procede after the doctrine of Tullius.
 (4) ¶ Certes, the trouthe of this ma-
 tiere or of this conseil nedeth nat
 diligently enquire; (5) for it is wel 55

14229. yow E., thee He., etc. [Beffer?]. 30. book: f. B. I. 1; vgl. Alb. Bresc., De arte eloq., 1083. 36/37. *appertyneþ* — *toures* nur in C.L.; *boch* vgl. b. fr. Text: 'appartient aucunes fois a orgueil. L'en [apres on] fait les tours et les grans edifices'; with *grete costages* — wise f. C.L. 39. the strengeste He.G.C.P. (grettest strength H.); a (þe P.H.) f. He.C.; amonges E., with He., etc. 40. Tullius?: f. Seneca, De clement. I, 19, 5. 44: Cic., De off. I, 2, 73. 46. The longe E.L., that long(e) He., etc. (Sk.); [Sent. 125.] 47: Variar. I, 17. 51. whiche He., etc.

[B 2547—2563]

[B 2564—2589]

wist whiche they been that han doon to yow this trespas and vileynye; (6) and how manye trespassours, and in what manere they han to yow doon al this wrong and al[1] this vileynye. (7) And after this, thanne shul ye examyne the seconde condicion which that the same Tullius addeth in this matiere. (8) ¶ ffor Tullius put a thyng which that he clepeth "consentyng;" (9) this is to seyn: who been they, *and whiche been they*, and how manye that consenten to thy conseil in thy wilfulnesse to doon hastif vengeance? (o) ¶ And lat vs considere also who been they, and how manye been they, and whiche been they that consenteden to your(e) aduersaries. (1) ¶ And certes, as to the firste poynt, it is wel known whiche folk been they that consenteden to youre hastif wilfulnesse. (2) ffor trewely, alle tho that conseilleden yow to maken sodeyn werre, ne been nat youre freendes.

(3) ¶ Lat vs now considere whiche been they that ye holde so greetly youre freendes as to youre persone. (4) ffor al be it so that ye be myghty and riche, certes, ye been nat but allone. (5) ffor certes, ye ne han no child but a doghter; ne ye ne han bretheren, ne cosyns germayns, ne noon ooper neigh kynrede; (6) wherfore that youre enemys for drede sholde stinte to plede with yow, or to destroye youre persone. (7) ¶ Ye knowen also that youre riches mooten been dispended in diuerse parties; (8) and whan þat euery wight hath his part, they ne wollen taken but litel reward to venge thy deeth. (9) But thyne enemys been thre, and they han manie children, bretheren, cosyns, and oother ny kynrede. (10) And though so were that thou haddest slayn of hem IJ.^o or IJ.^e, yet dwellen

ther ynowe to wreken hir deeth, and to sle thy persone. (1) And though so be that youre kynrede be moore siker and stedefast than the kyn of youre aduersarie; (2) yet nathelees, youre kynrede nys but a fer kynrede, they been but litel syb to yow, and the kyn of youre enemys been ny syb to hem. (3) And certes, as in that, hir condicioun is bet than youre.

(4) ¶ Thanne lat vs considere also if the conseillyng of hem þat conseilleden yow to taken sodeyn vengeance, wheither it acorde to resoun? And certes, ye knowe wel: nay; (5) for, as by right and resoun, ther may no man taken vengeance on no wight but the iuge that hath the iurisdiccoun of it, whan it is graunted hym to take thilke vengeance hastily or attemprely, as the lawe requireth. (6) ¶ And yet moore-ouer of thilke word that Tullius clepeth "consentyng": (7) thou shalt considere if thy myght and thy power may consenten and suffyse to thy wilfulnesse and to thy conseilours. (8) And certes, thou mayst wel seyn that "nay." (9) ¶ ffor sikerly, as for to speke proprely, we may do no-thing. but oonly swich thyng as we may doon rightfully. (o) And certes, rightfully ne mowe ye take no vengeance as of youre propre auctoritee. (1) ¶ Thanne mowe ye seen that youre power ne consenteth nat, ne accordeth nat, with your(e) wilfulnesse.

(2) ¶ Lat vs now examyne the thridde point, that Tullius clepeth "consequent." (3) ¶ Thou shalt vnderstonde that the vengeance that thou purposest for to take is the "consequent." (4) And therof folweth another vengeance, peril, and werre, and othere damages withoute nombre, of whiche we be nat war, as at this tyme.

14258: De off. II, 5, 18. 59. and whiche been they f. E. (Sk., Gl.: hinter manye) [vgl. b. f. 13. Text: Et quelx ilz sont]; consenteden Sk.; 3l. f. G. 64. nat f. He., etc. 66. to destroye E.C.L., to f. He., etc. (stryue H.). 70. were that E.C.L., were He., etc.; two or thre G., etc. 75. graunted E.C.L., ygraunted He., etc. 82ff.: f. Cic., Topica 12 sqq.; ad Heren. II, 2.

[B 2580—2596]

[B 2597—2615]

85 ¶ And as touchynge the fourthe point, that Tullius clepeth "engendrynge": (6) thou shalt considere that this wrong which that is doon to thee is engendred of the hate of thyne enemy; (7) and of the vengeance takynge vpon that wolde engendre another vengeance, and muchel sorwe, and wastynge of richesses, as I seyde.

(8) ¶ Now, sire, as to the point that Tullius clepeth "causes," which that is the laste point, (9) thou shalt vnderstonde þat the wrong that thou hast receyued hath certeine causes, (o) whiche þat clerkes clepen "Oriens" and "Efficiens," and "Causa longinqua," and "Causa propinqua;" this is to seyn: the fer cause and the ny cause.

(1) ¶ The fer cause is almyghty God, that is the cause of alle thynges.

(2) ¶ The neer cause is thy thre enemy. (3) ¶ The cause accidental was hate. (4) ¶ The cause material been the fyue woundes of thy doghter.

95 (5) ¶ The cause formal is the manere of hir werkynge that broghten laddres, and cloumben in at thy wyndowes.

(6) ¶ The cause final was for to sle thy doghter; it letted nat in as muche as in hem was. (7) ¶ But for to speken of the fer cause, as to what ende they shul come, or what shal finally bityde of hem in this caas, ne kan I nat deme but by coniectynge and by supposynge. (8) ¶ ffor we shul suppose that they shul come to a wikked ende, by cause that the *Book of Decrees* seith, (9) "Seelden or with greet payne been causes ybrought to good ende whanne they been baddely bigonne."

00 ¶ Now, sir(e), if men wolde axe me why that God suffred men to do yow this vileynye, certes, I kan nat wel answer as for no sooth-fastnesse.

(1) ¶ ffor thapostle seith that "the sciences and the iuggementz of oure

Lord God almyghty been ful depe; (2) ther may no man comprehende ne serchen hem suffisantly." (3) ¶ Natheles, by certeyne presumpciouns and coniectynges, I holde and bileue that God, which that is ful of iustice and of rightwisnesse, hath suffred this bityde by iuste cause resonable.

(4) Thy name is Melibee, this is to seyn: a man that drynketh hony.

(5) ¶ Thou hast ydronke so muchel 05 hony of sweete temporeel richesses, and delices, and honours of this world, that thou art drunken, and hast forgotten Ihesu Crist, thy creatour. (6) Thou ne hast nat doon to hym swich honour and reuerence as thee oughte. (7) Ne thou ne hast nat wel ytaken keep to the wordes of Ouide, ¶ that seith,

"Vnder the hony of the goodes of the body is hyd the venym that sleeth the soule."

(8) And Salomon seith: ¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

and be nedey and poure. (o) And, perauenture, Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eeris of misericorde. (1) ¶ And also he hath suffred that thou hast been punysshed in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. (2) ¶ Thou hast doon synne agayn oure Lord Crist.

(3) ffor certes, the .IIJ. enemy of mankynde, that is to seyn: the flessch, the feend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thyn herte wilfully by the wyndowes of thy body, (4) and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir(e) assautes and hir(e) temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in .V. places; (5) this is to seyn: the deedly synnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy .V. wittes. (6) And in the same manere oure Lord Crist hath woold and suffred

10 ¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

and be nedey and poure. (o) And, perauenture, Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eeris of misericorde. (1) ¶ And also he hath suffred that thou hast been punysshed in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. (2) ¶ Thou hast doon synne agayn oure Lord Crist.

(3) ffor certes, the .IIJ. enemy of mankynde, that is to seyn: the flessch, the feend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thyn herte wilfully by the wyndowes of thy body, (4) and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir(e) assautes and hir(e) temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in .V. places; (5) this is to seyn: the deedly synnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy .V. wittes. (6) And in the same manere oure Lord Crist hath woold and suffred

15 ¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

and be nedey and poure. (o) And, perauenture, Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eeris of misericorde. (1) ¶ And also he hath suffred that thou hast been punysshed in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. (2) ¶ Thou hast doon synne agayn oure Lord Crist.

(3) ffor certes, the .IIJ. enemy of mankynde, that is to seyn: the flessch, the feend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thyn herte wilfully by the wyndowes of thy body, (4) and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir(e) assautes and hir(e) temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in .V. places; (5) this is to seyn: the deedly synnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy .V. wittes. (6) And in the same manere oure Lord Crist hath woold and suffred

¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

and be nedey and poure. (o) And, perauenture, Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eeris of misericorde. (1) ¶ And also he hath suffred that thou hast been punysshed in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. (2) ¶ Thou hast doon synne agayn oure Lord Crist.

(3) ffor certes, the .IIJ. enemy of mankynde, that is to seyn: the flessch, the feend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thyn herte wilfully by the wyndowes of thy body, (4) and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir(e) assautes and hir(e) temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in .V. places; (5) this is to seyn: the deedly synnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy .V. wittes. (6) And in the same manere oure Lord Crist hath woold and suffred

¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

and be nedey and poure. (o) And, perauenture, Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eeris of misericorde. (1) ¶ And also he hath suffred that thou hast been punysshed in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. (2) ¶ Thou hast doon synne agayn oure Lord Crist.

(3) ffor certes, the .IIJ. enemy of mankynde, that is to seyn: the flessch, the feend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thyn herte wilfully by the wyndowes of thy body, (4) and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir(e) assautes and hir(e) temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in .V. places; (5) this is to seyn: the deedly synnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy .V. wittes. (6) And in the same manere oure Lord Crist hath woold and suffred

¶ "If thou hast founden hony, et[e] of it that suffiseth; (9) for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,"

14288. to E.G.D.H.⁴, touchynge to He., etc. (to f. L.). 98. [am Manbe] In libro decretalium [sc. Gratiani]. 14301: Röm. XI, 33. 07. ytaken E.D., taken He., etc.; the body E.G.D., thy b. He., etc. [Amor. I, VIII, 104]. 08: Spr. XXV, 16. 13. thre G.D., etc. 14. fyue G.D., etc.; id. 15. 16. thre D., etc.

[B 2615—2632]

[B 2632—2646]

that thy .iiij. enemys been entred in-to thyn hous by the wyndowes, (7) and han ywounded thy doghter in the fore-seyde manere."

(8) ¶ 'Certes,' quod Melibee, 'I se wel ye enforce yow muchel by wordes to ouercome me in swich manere, (9) that I shal nat venge me of myne enemys, shewynge me the perils and the yueles that myghten falle of this vengeance. (o) But who-so wolde considere in alle vengeancees the perils and yueles þat myghte sewe of vengeance takynge, a man wolde neuere take vengeance, and that were harm; (1) for by the vengeance takynge been the wikked men disseuered fro the goode men. (2) ¶ And they that han wyl to do wikkednesse restreyne hir wikked purpos, when they seen the punysynge and chastisynge of the trespassours.'*)

(3) ¶ 'And yet seye I moore: that, right as a singuler persone synneth in takynge vengeance of another man, right so synneth the iuge, if he do no vengeance of hem that it han deserued. (4) ffor Senec seith thus: ¶ "That maister," he seith, "is good that proueth shrewes." (5) ¶ And, as Cassidore seith: ¶ "A man dredeth to do outrages when he woot and knoweth that it displeseth to the iuges and souereyns." (6) ¶ Another seith, ¶ "The iuge þat dredeth to do right maketh men shrewes." (7) And Seint Paule the Apostle seith in his epistle, when he writeth vn-to the Romayns, that "the iuges beren nat the spere withouten cause; (8) but they beren it to punysse the shrewes and mysdoeres,

and to defende the goode men." (9) ¶ If ye wol thanne take vengeance of youre enemys, ye shul retourne, or haue your(e) recours to the iuge that hath the iurisdiccio of hem; (o) and he shal punysse hem as the lawe axeth and requireth."

(1) 'Al,' quod Melibee, 'this vengeance liketh me no-thing. (2) ¶ I be-thenke me now, and take heede, how ffortune hath norissed me fro my childhede, and hath holpen me to passe many a stroong paas. (3) ¶ Now wol I assayen hir(e), trowynge with Goddes help(e) that she shal helpe me my shame for to venge.'

(4) 'Certes,' quod Prudence, '¶ if ye wol werke by my conseil, ye shul nat assaye ffortune by no wey; (5) ne ye shul nat lene or bowe vnto hir(e) after the word of Senec. (6) ¶ ffor thynges that been folily doon, and that been in hope of ffortune, shullen neuere come to good ende. (7) And, as the same Senec seith: ¶ "The moore cleer and the moore shynnyng that ffortune is, the moore brotil, and the sonner broken she is. (8) Trusteth nat in hir(e), for she nys nat stidefast ne stable. (9) ffor whan thou trowest to be moost seur and siker of hir help(e), she wol faille thee, and deceyue thee." (o) ¶ And where-as ye seyn that ffortune hath norissed yow fro your(e) childhede, I seye that in so muchel shul ye the lasse truste in hir(e) and in hir wit. (1) ffor Senec seith, "What man that is norissed by ffortune, she maketh hym a greet fool." (2) ¶ Now thanne, syn ye desire and axe vengeance, and the vengeance that is doon after the

*) *Auslassung in allen Hss.* [vgl. 13973*]; vgl. d. frz. Text: (Et) a ce respont dame prudence / certes dist elle le t'ottroye que de vengeance vient molt (de maulx et) de biens. Mais (faire) vengeance n'appartient pas a vn chascun, fors seulement aux iuges et a ceulx qui ont la iuridiccion sur les malfaiteurs. 14323. disserued E.He.D., deseruyd(ed) G., etc. (Sk.); ähnl. 374, 622, etc. 24: verb. ob. mißverst.; vgl. frz.: celui nuist aux bons, qui espargne les mauvais [Sent. 114]. 25: Variar. I, 4. 26. And another He., etc. (Sk.) [Sent. 528]. 27: Röm. XIII, 4. 28. punysse He., etc. [vgl. 32: norissshed]; to defende E.L., for to d. He., etc. (Sk.). 32. childhede E.G., childhode He., etc.; besgl. 40. 35: Sent. 320. 37: Sent. 189. 39. or syker He.P., sekyr or sewir (seure) G.D. (&) C.L., seur H.⁴ 41. to greet a He.C.P.H.⁴ [Sent. 173].

[B 2647—2664]

[B 2664—2681]

lawe and bifore the iuge ne liketh yow nat; (3) and the vengeance that is doon in hope of ffortune is perilous and vncertein: (4) thanne haue ye noon oother remedie but for to haue youre recours vnto the souereyn iuge, that vengeth alle vileynyes and wronges. And he shal venge yow after that hym-self witenesseth, where-as he seith, "Zeueth the vengeance to me, and I shal do it."

(6) Melibee answerde, 'If I ne venge me nat of the vileynye that men han doon to me, I sompne or warne hem that han doon to me that vileynye, and alle othere, to do me another vileynye. (7) ¶ ffor it is writen: ¶ "If thou take no vengeance of an oold vileynye, thou sompnest thyne aduersaries to do thee a newe vileynye." (8) ¶ And also for my suffrance men wolden do to me so muchel vileynye, that I myghte neither bere it ne susteine, and so sholde I been put and holden ouer-lowe. (9) ¶ ffor men seyn, "In muchel suffrynge shul manye thynges falle vn-to thee whiche thou shalt nat mowe suffre."

50 'Certes,' quod Prudence, 'I graunte yow that ouer-muchel suffraunce nys nat good; (1) but yet ne folweth it nat ther-of that euery persone to whom men doon vileynye take of it vengeance. (2) ffor that aperteneth and longeth al oonly to the iuges, for they shul venge the vileynyes and iniuries. (3) And therfore tho two auctoritees that ye han seyde aboue been oonly vnderstonden in the iuges; (4) for whan they suffren ouer-muchel the wronges and the vileynyes to be doon withouten punysshynge, they sompne nat a man al oonly for to do newe wronges, but they 55 comanden it. (5) ¶ Also a wys man seith that "the iuge that correcteth nat the synnere comandeth and biddeth hym do synne." (6) ¶ And the iuges and souereyns myghten in hir land

so muchel suffre of the shrewes and mysdoeres, that they sholden by swich suffrance, by proces of tyme, wexen of swich power and myght; (7) that they sholden putte out the iuges and the souereyns from hir places, and atte laste maken hem lesen hir(e) lordshipes.

(8) ¶ But lat vs now putte that ye haue leue to venge yow. (9) I seye ye been nat of myght and power as now to venge yow. (o) ffor if ye 60 wole maken comparisoun vn-to the myght of youre aduersaries, ye shul fynde in manye thynges that I haue shewed yow er this that hir condicion is bettre than youre. (1) ¶ And therfore seye I that it is good as now that ye suffre and be pacient.

(2) ¶ fforthermoore, ye knowen wel that, after the comune sawe, it is a woodnesse a man to stryue with a strengre or a moore myghty man than he is hymself. (3) And for to stryue with a man of euene strengthe, that is to seyn: with as strong a man as he, it is peril. (4) And for to stryue with a weyker man, it is folie. (5) ¶ And 65 therfore sholde a man flee stryuyng as muchel as he myghte. (6) ¶ ffor Salomon seith, "It is a greet worship(e) to a man to kepen hym fro noyse and stryf." (7) ¶ And if it so bifalle or happe that a man of gretter myght and strengthe than thou art do thee greuaunce, studie and bisye thee rather to stille the same greuaunce than for to venge thee. (8) ffor Senec seith that "he putteth hym in greet peril that stryue with a gretter man than he is hymself." (9) ¶ And Catoun seith, "If a man of hyer estaat or degree, or moore myghty than thou, do thee any or greuaunce, suffre hym; (o) for he that oones hath greued 70 thee, another tyme may releue thee, and helpe."

(1) ¶ Yet sette I caas: ye haue bothe

13345: Röm. XII, 19. 49. Inj I He. 50. is He., etc. 55. wys man: Cæc. Balbus, De nugis phil. 62: j. Seneca, De ira, II, 34, 1. 63. he E., he is hymself G., he is He., etc. 66: Spr. XX, 3. 68: Sent. 483. 69: Disticha IV, 39. 70. may another tyme He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 2682—2699]

[B 2699—2716]

myght and licence, for to venge yow. (2) I seye that ther be ful manye thynges that shul restreyn yow of vengeance takynge, and make yow for to encline to suffre, and for to han pacience in the thynges that han been doon to yow. (3) ¶ffirst and foreward, if ye wole considere the defautes that been in youre owene persone, for which defautes God hath suffred yow haue this tribulacioun, as I haue seyde yow heer-biforn. (4) ¶ffor the poete seith that "we oghte paciently taken the tribulacions that comen to vs, whan we thynken and consideren that we han deserued to haue hem." (5) ¶And Seint Gregorie seith that "whan a man considereth wel the nombre of hise defautes and of hise synnes, the peynes and the tribulaciouns that he suffreth semen the lesse vn-to hym. (6) And in as muche as hym thynketh hise synnes moore heuy and greuouse, in so muche semeth his peyne the lighter and the esier vn-to hym." (7) ¶Also ye owen to encline and bowe youre herte to take the pacience of oure Lord Ihesu Crist, as seith seint Peter in hise Epistles: (8) ¶"Ihesu Crist," he seith, "hath suffred for vs, and yeuen ensample to euery man to folwe and sewe hym; (9) for he dide neuere synne, ne neuere cam ther a vileynous word out of his moup. (10) Whan men cursed hym, he cursed hem noght, and whan men betten hym, he manaced hem noght." (11) ¶Also the grete pacience which the seintes that been in Paradyss han had in tribulaciouns that they han ysuffred with-outen hir desert or gilt oghte muchel stiren yow to pacience. (2) ¶fforthermoore, ye sholde enforce yow to haue pacience, considerynge that the tribulaciouns of this world but litel while endure, and soone passed been and goone, (3) ¶and the ioye that a man seketh to haue by pacience

in tribulaciouns is perdurable; (4) after that the Apostle seith in his epistle: ¶"The ioye of God," he seith, "is perdurable," that is to seyn: euere-lastinge. (5) ¶Also troweþ and bileueth stedefastly that he nys nat wel ynorised, ne wel ytaught that kan nat haue pacience, or wol nat receyue pacience. (6) ffor Salomon seith ¶that "the doctrine and the wit of a man is knowen by pacience." (7) ¶And in another place he seith ¶that "he that is pacient gouerneth hym by greet prudence." (8) ¶And the same Salomon seith, "The angry and wrathful man maketh noyses, and the pacient man atempreth hem and stilleth." (9) ¶He seith also, "It is moore worth to be pacient than for to be right strong. (10) And he that may haue the lordshipe of his owene herte is moore to preyse than he that by his force or strengthe taketh grete citees." (11) ¶And therfore seith Seint Iame in his Epistle ¶that "pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun."

(2) ¶"Certes," quod Melibee, 'I graunte yow, Dame Prudence, that pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun; (3) but euery man may nat haue the perfeccioun þat ye seken, ne I nam nat of the nombre of right parfite men. (4) ffor myn herte may neuere been in pees vn-to the tyme it be venged. (5) And al be it so that it was greet peril to myne enemys to do me a vileynye in takynge vengeance vp-on me, (6) yet taken they noon heede of the peril, but fulfilleden hir wikked wyl and hir corage. (7) ¶And therfore, me thynketh, men oghten nat repreue me, though I putte me in a litel peril for to venge me, and though I do a greet excesse, that is to seyn: that I venge oon outrage by another.'

(8) 'A!' quod dame Prudence, 'ye seyn your(e) wyl, and as yow liketh;

14372. thynges E., wronges He., etc. 74. whan E.C.L., whan þat He., etc.; þenken C.P.H.⁴ 77: I. Petr. II, 21—23. 79. vileyns G., etc. 81. the seintes E.L., Seintes He., etc. 84: II. Ror. IV, 17. 86: Spr. XIX, 11. 87: Spr. XIV, 29. 92. f. P.H.⁴

[B 2717—2731]

[B 2731—2746]

- (9) but in no caas of the world, a man sholde nat doon outrage ne excessive for to vengen hym. (o) ¶ ffor Cassidore seith that "as yuele dooth he that vengeth hym by outrage as he that dooth the outrage." (1) And therefore ye shul venge yow after the ordre of right, that is to seyn: by the lawe, and noght by excesse ne by outrage. (2) ¶ And also, if ye wol venge yow of the outrage of youre aduersaries in oother manere than right comandeth, ye synnen. (3) And therefore seith Senec that "a man shal neuere vengen shrewednesse by shrewednesse." (4) ¶ And if ye seye that right axeth a man to defenden violence by violence, and fightyng by fightyng, (5) certes, ye seye sooth, whan the defense is doon anon with-outen interualle or with-outen tariyng or delay, for to deffenden hym, and nat for to vengen hym. (6) ¶ And it bihoueth that a man putte swich attemperance in his deffense, that men haue no cause ne matiere to repreuen hym that deffendeth hym of excesse and outrage, for ellis were it agayn resoun. (7) ¶ Pardee, ye knowen wel that ye maken no defense as now for to deffende yow; but for to venge yow; (8) and so s[h]eweth it that ye han no wyl to do your(e) dede attemprely. (9) And therefore me thynketh that pacience is good; for Salomon seith ¶ that "he that is nat pacient shal haue greet harm."
- 10 'Certes,' quod Melibee, 'I graunte yow that, whan a man is incipient and wrooth of that þat toucheth hym noght, and that aperteneth nat vn-to hym, though it harme hym, it is no wonder. (1) ffor the lawe seith that "he is coupable that entremetteth hym or

medleth with swych thyng as aperteneth nat vn-to hym." (2) ¶ And Salomon seith that "he that entremetteth hym of the noyse or strif of another man is lyk to hym that taketh an hound by the eris." (3) ffor right as he that taketh a straunge hound by the eris, is outhewhile biten with the hound; (4) right in the same wise is it reson that he haue harm that by his incipience medleth hym of the noyse of another man, where-as it aperteneth nat vn-to hym. (5) ¶ But ye knowen wel that this dede, that is to seyn: my grief and my disese, toucheth me right ny. (6) And therefore, though I be wrooth and incipient, it is no merueille. (7) And, sauynge youre grace, I kan nat seen that it myghte greetly harme me though I tooke vengeance. (8) ffor I am richer and moore myghty than myne enemys been. (9) And wel knowen ye that by moneye and by hauynge grete possessions been alle the thynges of this world gouerned. (o) ¶ And Salomon seith ¶ "that alle thynges obeyen to moneye."

(1) Whan Prudence hadde herd hir housbonde auanten hym of his richesse and of his moneye, dispreisynge the power of hise aduersaries, she spak, and seyde in this wise: (2) ¶ 'Certes, deere sire, I graunte yow that ye been riche and myghty, and that the richesces been goode to hem þat han hem wel ygeten hem, and wel konne vsen hem. (3) ffor, right as the body of a man may nat lyuen with-oute the soule, namoore may it lyue with-outen temporeel goodes. (4) And for richesces may a man gete hym grete freendes. (5) ¶ And therefore seith Pamphilus, 25 ¶ "If a netherdes doghter," seith he, "be riche, she may chesen of a thou-

14400: Variar. I, 30. 03: De morib. 139; De ira II, 32, 1. 06: for ellis — resoun f. He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 08: sheweth E., semep H.⁴, seweth He., etc. (Sk.). 09: Spr. XIV, 17 u. 29? 11: entremetteth hym He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 12: Spr. XXVI, 17. 20: Pred. Gal. X, 19. 21: — moneye f. P.H.⁴ 22: han wel He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 24: for E., by He., etc. (Sk.). 25: Pamphilus, De amore [f. 11426]; Anetherdes He., Auerthes G., eny gaddes C.L.; which — housbonde f. E.G.C.P.L.

[B 2746—2763]

[B 2763—2779]

sand men *which she wol take to hir housbonde;*" (6) for of a thousand men oon wol nat forsaken hir(e), ne refusen hir(e). (7) ¶ And this Pamphilles seith also, ¶ "If thow be right happy"—that is to seyn: if thou be right riche—"thou shalt fynde a greet nombre of felawes and freendes. (8) And if thy ffortune change, that thou wexe poure, far[e]-wel freendshipe and felaweshipe! (9) ffor thou shalt be al alloone withouten any compaignye, but if it be the compaignye of poure folk." (10) ¶ And yet seith this Pamphilles moreouer ¶ that "they that been thralle and bonde of lynage shullen been maad worthy and noble by the riches." (1) And right so as by riches ther comen manye goodes, right so by pouerte come ther manye harmes and yueles. (2) ffor greet pouerte constreyneth a man to do manye yueles. (o) And therfore clepeth Cassidore pouerte "the mooder of ruyne;" that is to seyn: the mooder of ouerthrowynge or fallynge down. (4) ¶ And therfore seith Piers Alfonse, "Oon of the gretteste aduersitees of this world is, when a free man, by kynde or by burthe, is constreyned by pouerte to eten the almesse of his enemy." (5) ¶ And the same seith Innocent in oon of hise bookes; he seith that "sorweful and myshappy is the condicioun of a poure begger(e); for if he axe nat his mete, he dyeth for hunger. (6) And if he axe, he dyeth for shame; and algates necessitee constreyneth hym to axe." (7) ¶ And therfore seith Salomon that "bet it is to dye than for to haue swich pouerte!" (8) ¶ And, as the same Salomon seith: ¶ "Bette it is to dye of bitter deeth than for to lyuen in swich wise." (9) ¶ By thise resons that I haue seid vn-to yow,

and by manye othere resons that I koude seye, I graunte yow that riches ben goode to hem that geten hem wel, and to hem that wel vsen tho riches. (o) ¶ And therfore wol I shewe 40 yow hou ye shul haue yow, and how ye shal bere yow in gaderynge of riches, and in what manere ye shul vsen hem.

(1) ¶ ffirst ye shul geten hem withouten greet desir, by good leyser sokyngly, and nat ouer-hastily. (2) ffor a man that is to desiryng to gete riches abaundoneth hym first to thefte and to alle othere yueles. (3) ¶ And therfore seith Salomon, ¶ "He that hasteth hym to bisily to wexe riche shal be noon innocent." (4) ¶ He seith also that "the riches that hastily cometh to a man, soone and lightly gooth and passeth from a man; (5) ¶ but that riches that cometh 45 litel and litel wexeth alwey and multiplieth." (6) ¶ And, sire, ye shul geten riches by youre wit and youre traaille vn-to youre profit, and that withouten wrong or harm-doyng to any oother persone. (7) ¶ ffor the lawe seith that "ther maketh no man himselfe riche if he do harm to another wight." (8) This is to seyn: that nature deffendeth and forbedeth by right that no man make hym-self riche vn-to the harm of another persone. (9) ¶ And Tullius seith þat "no sorwe, ne no drede of deeth, ne no-thing that may falle vn-to a man, is so muchel agayns nature as a man to encressen his owene profit to the harm of another man. (o) And though the 50 grete men and the myghty men geten riches moore lightly than thou, yet shaltou nat been ydel ne slow to do thy profit; for thou shalt in alle wise flee ydelnesse." (1) ¶ ffor Salomon

14 427: f. Ov., Trist. I, 9, 5. 33: Variar. IV, 13 (ruyne ft. crimes!). 34: of burthe He.G.D.C.L., f. P., of f. H.⁴ [Disc. cler. IV, 5]. 35ff.: vgl. 4533ff. [Innocent, De contemptu mundi I, 14]. 37: bet E., better He., etc.; it f. He.C.P.L. [3. Cit. XL, 28]. 38: ib. XXX, 17. 41: sekyngly E.He.D. 43: Spr. XXVIII, 20 u. 22. 44: Spr. XIII, 11. 49: Cic., De off. III, 5. 51: Spr. XIX, 15 (XX, 5?) [vgl. 3. Cit. XXXIII, 27].

[B 2779-2794]

[B 2794-2812]

seith that "ydelnesse techeth a man to do manye yueles." (2) ¶ And the same Salomon seith that "he that trauaileth and bisieth hym to tilien his land shal eten breed; (3) but he that is ydel, and casteth hym to no bisynesse ne occupacioun shal falle into pouerte, and dye for hunger." (4) ¶ And he that is ydel and slow kan neuere fynde couenable tyme for to doon his profit. (5) ffor ther is a versifiour seith that "the ydel man excuseth hym in wynter by cause of the grete coold, and in somer by enchesoun of the heete." (6) ffor thise causes seiþ Caton, "Waketh and enclyneth nat yow ouer-muchel for to slepe; for ouer-muchel reste norisseth and causeth manye vices." (7) And therfore seith Seint Ierome, "Dooth somme goode dedes, that the deuel, which is oure enemy, ne fynde yow nat vnoccupied." (8) ffor the deuel ne taketh nat lightly vn-to his werkynge swiche as he fyndeth occupied in goode werkes.

60 (9) ¶ Thanne thus, in getynge richesses, ye mosten flee ydelnesse. (10) And afterward ye shul vse the richesses whiche ye haue gotten by youre wit and by youre trauaille in swich a manere, (1) that men holde nat yow to scars, ne to sparynge, ne to fool-large, that is to seyn: ouer large a spender(e). (2) ffor right as men blamen an auaricious man by cause of his scarsetee and chyncherie, in the same wise is he to blame that spendeth ouer-largely. (3) And therfore seith Caton, ¶ "Vse," he seith, "thy richesses that thou hast gotten in swich a manere, that men haue no matiere ne cause to calle thee neiþer wrecche ne chynche; (4) for it is a greet shame to a man

to haue a pouere herte and a riche purs." (5) ¶ He seith also, "The goodes that thou hast ygeten, vse hem by mesure;" that is to seyn: spende hem mesurably; (6) for they that folily wasten and despenden the goodes that they han, whan they han namoore propre of hir owene, they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man.

(7) ¶ I seye thanne that ye shul fleen auarice, vsynge youre richesses in swich manere, that men seye nat þat youre richesses been yburyed; (8) but þat ye haue hem in youre myght and in youre weeldynge. (9) ¶ ffor a wys man repreueth the auaricious man, and seith thus in two vers: (10) ¶ "Wherto and why burieth a man his goodes by his grete auarice, and knoweth wel that nedes moste he dye? (1) ffor deeth is the ende of euery man as in this present lyf." (2) ¶ And for what cause or enchesoun ioyneþ he hym, or knytteth he hym so faste vn-to his goodes, that alle hisse wittes mowen nat disseueren hym, or departen hym from hisse goodes; (3) and knoweth wel, or oghte knowe, that, whan he is deed, he shal no-thing bere with hym out of this world? (4) ¶ And therfore seith seint Augustyn that "the auaricious man is likned vn-to helle, that the moore it swelweth, the moore desir it hath to swelwe and deuoure." (5) And as wel as ye wolde eschewe to be called an auaricious man or chynche, (6) as wel sholde ye kepe yow and gouerne yow in swich a wise, that men calle yow nat fool-large. (7) ¶ Therfore seith Tullius, "The goodes," he seith, "of thyn hous ne sholde nat been hyd, ne kept so cloos, but that they myghte been opened by pitee and debonairetee"—¶ that is

14452: Spr. XII, 11. 56. yow nat He., etc.; beagl. 61 [Dist. I, 2]. 57. gode dedes goodes E. 62: Auarous He.C.P.L.H.*; chyngerie E. (Gl.), þinking C.L. 63. ygeten He.D.C.P.H.* [Dist. IV, 6]. 64. a greet E.D., greet He., etc. 65. spende hem E.H.*, spende He., etc. 65: Dist. III, 22. 70. [Ranbn.] Vnde versificator E. 74. Augustyn E.G., Austyn He., etc. [i. Spr. Cal. XXVII, 20]. 77. to hem E., hem He., etc. [De off. II, 15].

[B 2812—2830]

[B 2830—2845]

to seyn: to yeuen part to hem that han greet nede—(8) “ne thy goodes shullen nat been so opene to been every mannes goodes.”

(9) ¶ Afterward, in getyng of youre riches and in vsyng hem, ye shul alwey haue thre thynges in youre herte; that is to seyn: oure Lord God, conscience, and good name. (o) ¶ ffirst, ye shul haue God in your(e) herte, and for no riches ye shullen do no-thing which may in any manere displese God, that is youre creatour and maker(e). (1) ¶ ffor after the word of Salomon: ¶ “It is better to haue a litel good with the loue of God, than to haue muchel good and tresour, and lese the loue of his Lord God.” (2) ¶ And the prophete seith that “better it is to been a good man, and haue litel good and tresour, than to been holden a shrew, and haue grete riches.” (3) ¶ And yet seye I ferthermoore that ye sholde alwey doon your(e) bisynesse to gete yow riches, so that ye gete hem with good conscience. (4) ¶ And thapostle seith that “ther nys thyng in this world of which we sholden haue so greet ioye as whan oure conscience bereth vs good wisesse.” (5) ¶ And the wise man seith, “The substance of a man is ful good, whan synne is nat in mannes conscience.” (6) ¶ Afterward, in getyng of youre riches, and in vsyng of hem, yow moste haue greet bisynesse and greet diligence that your(e) goode name be alwey kept and conserved. (7) ffor Salomon seith that “better it is, and moore auailleth a man to haue a good name than for to haue grete riches.” (8) And therefore he seith in another place, ¶ “Do greet diligence,” seith Salomon, “in kepyng of thy frend and of thy goode name; (9) for it shal lenger

abide with thee than any tresour, be it neuer so precious.” (o) ¶ And certes, 90 he sholde nat be called a gentil-man that after God and good conscience, alle thynges left, ne dooth his diligence and bisynesse to kepen his goode name. (1) ¶ And Cassidore seith ¶ that “it is signe of gentil herte, whan a man loueth and desireth to han a good name.” (2) ¶ And therefore seith Seint Augustyn ¶ that “ther been two thynges that arn necessarie and nedefulle, and that is good conscience and good loos; (3) þat is to seyn: good conscience to thyn owene persone inward, and good loos for thy neighe-bore outward.” (4) And he that trusteth hym so muchel in his goode conscience that he displeseth, and setteth at noght his goode name or loos, and rekketh noght though he kepe nat his goode name, nys but a cruel chert.

Sire, now haue I shewed yow how 95 ye shul do in getyng riches, and how ye shullen vsen hem; (6) and I se wel that for the trust that ye han in youre riches, ye wole moue werre and bataille. (7) ¶ I conseile yow that ye bigynne no werre in trust of your(e) riches; for they ne suffisen noght werres to mayntene. (8) ¶ And therefore seith a Philosophre, ¶ “That man that desireth, and wol[e] algates han werre shal neuere haue suffisaunce; (9) for the richer that he is, the gretter despenses moste he make if he wole haue worship(e) and victorie.” ¶ And Salomon seith that “the gretter riches that a man hath, the mo despensours he hath.” (1) ¶ And, deere sire, al be it so that for your(e) riches ye mowe haue muchel folk, yet bihoueth it nat, ne is nat good to bigynne werre; (2) where-as ye mowe in oother manere haue pees vn-to youre

14478. sholden He.G.D.P. 81: Spr. XV, 16. 82. a litel He.P. [¶f. XXXVII, 16]. 84: II. For. I, 12. 85: J. Cir. XIII, 24. 87. a good E.G.D.H., good He., etc. [Spr. XXII, 1]. 88: Spr. XXV, 9—10? 91. a gentil (good C.L.) He., etc. (Sk.) [Var. I, 4]. 14500: Prb. Cal. V, 10.

[B 2846—2863]

[B 2863—2878]

worship(e) and profit. (3) ¶ ffor the victorie[s] of batailles that been in this world *lyth* nat in greet nombre or multitude of the peple, ne in the vertu of man; (4) but it lith in the wyl and in the hand of oure Lord, God almyghty. (5) ¶ And therfore Iudas Machabeus, which was Goddes knyght, whan he sholde fighte agayn his aduersarie, that hadde a greet nombre, and a gretter multitude of folk and strenger than was this peple of Machabee, yet he reconforted his litel compaignye, and seyde right in this wise: (6) "Als lightly," quod he, "may oure Lord, God almyghty, yeue victorie to a fewe folk as to many folk; (7) for the victorie of a bataille comth nat by the grete nombre of peple, but it cometh from oure Lord, God of heuene." (8) ¶ And, deere sire, for as muchel as ther is no man certein if he be worthy that God yeue hym victorie*) or naught, after that Salomon seith; (9) therfore euery man sholde greetly drede werres to bigynne. (10) ¶ And by cause that in batailles fallen manye perils, and happeth outhur-while that as soone is the grete man slayn as the litel man; (1) and as it is written in the seconde book of Kynges: "The dedes of batailles been auenturose and no-thing certeyne; for as lightly is oon hurt with a spere as another;" (2) and for ther is gret peril in werre: therfore sholde a man flee and eschue werre, in as muchel as a man may goodly. (3) ffor Salomon seith, "He that loueth peril shal falle in peril."

(4) After that Dame Prudence hadde spoken in this manere, Melibee answered, and seyde: (5) ¶ "I see wel,

dame Prudence, that by youre faire wordes and by youre resouns that ye han shewed me, that the werre liketh yow no-thing; (6) but I haue nat yet herd youre conseil, how I shal do in this nede?"

(7) 'Certes,' quod she, [Prudence] 'I conseille yow that ye accorde with youre aduersaries, and that ye haue pees with hem. (8) ¶ ffor Seint Iame seith in hise Epistles ¶ that "by concord and pees the smale riches wexen grete, and by debaat and discord the grete riches fallen down." (9) ¶ And ye knowen wel that oon of the gretteste and moost souereyn thyng that is in this world is vnitee and pees. (10) ¶ And therfore seyde oure Lord Ihesu Crist to hise Apostles in this wise: (1) ¶ "Wel happy and blessed been they that louen and purchacen pees, for they ben called children of God!"'

(2) 'A,' quod Melibee, 'now se I wel that ye louen nat myn honour ne my worshipe! (3) ¶ Ye knowen wel that myne aduersaries han bigonnen this debaat and bryge by hir(e) outrage; (4) and ye se wel that they ne requeren, ne preyen me nat of pees, ne they asken nat to be reconsiled. (5) ¶ Wol ye thanne that I go and meke me, and obeie me to hem, and crie hem mercy? (6) ffor sothe, that were nat my worship(e). (7) ffor right as men seyn that ouer-greet hoomlynesse engendreth dispreysynge, so fareth it by to greet humylitee or mekenesse.'

(8) Thanne bigan dame Prudence to maken semblant of wratthe, and seyde, (9) ¶ 'Certes, sire, sauf youre grace, I loue your(e) honour and youre profit as I do myn owene, and euer

14503. victories E.C.L. (Sk., Gl.); lyen E. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 04: it lith: alle 5ff.]. 05. gretter nombre He., etc.; this peple of M. E.P., the p. of this M. He.D.H.⁴, his p. of M. G., be p. of M. C.L. 06. Also G.P., As D., etc. [I. Macc. III, 18, 19]. 07. it come E.He. (Gl.). 08. he E., it He., etc. — *) Hier ist vielleicht ein Satz im 13. Text ausgefallen: ne plus que il est certain [quil scet] se il est digne de lamour de dieu (vgl. Sk., Gl.). 11. ywriten He.G.D.P. [i. II. Sam. XI, 5]. 13: 3. 3. 3. 26. 18. Mißverst. 3itat; f. Sallust, Jug. 10. 20: Matth. V, 9. 25. go meke He.C.P.L. 27. dispreysynge E.G.D., despisinge He., etc.

[B 2879—2897]

[B 2897—2915]

30 haue doon; (o) ne ye, ne noon oother, syen neuere the contrarie. (1) ¶ And yit, if I hadde seyde that ye sholde han purchaced the pees and the reconsiliacioun, I ne hadde nat muchel mistaken me, ne seyde amys. (2) ffor the wise man seiþ, ¶ "The dissencioun bigynneth by another man, and the reconsilyng bygynneth by thy-self." (3) ¶ And the prophete seiþ, "fflee shrewednesse, and do goodnesse; seke pees, and folwe it as muchel as in thee is." (4) ¶ Yet seye I nat that ye shul rather pursue to youre aduersaries for pees than they shuln to
35 yow; (5) for I knowe wel that ye been so hard-herted, that ye wol do no-thing for me. (6) ¶ And Salomon seiþ, "He that hath ouer-hard an herte, atte laste he shal myshappe and mystyde."

(7) Whanne Melibee hadde herd dame Prudence maken semblant of wratthe, he seyde in this wise: (8) ¶ 'Dame, I preye yow that ye be nat displesed of thynges that I seye; for ye knowe wel that I am angry and wrooth, and that is no wonder. (9) And they that been wrothe witen nat wel what they don, ne what they
40 seyn. (o) ¶ Therefore the prophete seiþ ¶ that "troubled [e]yē han no cleer sighte." (1) ¶ But seyeth and conseileth me as yow liketh; for I am redy to do right as ye wol desire; (2) and if ye repreue me of my folye, I am the moore holden to loue yow and preye yow. (3) ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ that "he þat repreueth hym that dooth folye, he shal fynde gretter grace than he that deceyueth hym by swete wordes."

(4) Thanne seiðe dame Prudence, ¶ 'I make no semblant of wratthe ne anger but for youre grete profit.
45 (5) ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ, "He is moore worth that repreueth or chideth a fool

for his folye, shewynge hym semblant of wratthe, (6) than he that supporteth hym, and preyeth hym in his mysdoynge, and laugheth at his folye." (7) ¶ And this same Salomon seiþ afterward that "by the sorweful visage of a man—that is to seyn: by the sory and heuy contenaunce of a man—the fool correcteth and amendeth hymself."

(8) Thanne seyde Melibee, ¶ 'I shal nat konne answere to so manye faire resouns as ye putten to me and shewen. (9) Seyeth shortly youre wyl and youre conseil, and I am al redy to fulfille and parfourne it.'

Thanne dame Prudence discouered al hir wyl to hym, and seyde, (1) ¶ 'I conseile yow,' quod she, 'abouen alle thynges that ye make pees bitwene God and yow, and beth reconsiled vn-to hym and to his grace. (2) ffor, as I haue seyde yow heer-biforn, God hath suffred yow to haue this tribulacioun and disese for youre synnes. (3) And if ye do, as I seye yow, God wol sende youre aduersaries vn-to yow, and maken hem fallen at your(e) feet, redy to do your(e) wyl and youre comandementz. (4) ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ, "Whan the condicioun of man is plesaunt and likynge to God, he chaungeth the hertes of the mannes aduersaries, and constreyneth hem to biseken hym of pees and of grace." (5) And I preye yow, lat me speke
5 with youre aduersaries in priuee place; (6) for they shul nat knowe that it be of youre wyl or of youre assent. (7) And thanne, whan I knowe hir wil and hir entente, I may conseile yow the moore seurely.'

(8) 'Dame,' quod Melibee, 'dooth youre wil and your(e) likynge; (9) for I putte me hoolly in youre disposicioun and ordinaunce.'

14530. sey(e)n G.D.P.H.^a, saugh (sawe) C.L. 33: B. XXXIV, 15. 36: Epr. XXVIII, 14. 43: Epr. XXVIII, 23. 45: Preb. Gal. VII, 4. 48. answer vn-to He.D.C.L.; faire f. He.C.L.H.^a 50. to E.H.^a, vn-to He., etc. 54: Epr. XVI, 7. 56. of youre assent E., of f. He., etc.

[B 2916—2933]

[B 2933—2951]

60 Thanne Dame Prudence, whan she saugh the goode wyl of hir housbonde, delibered, and took auys in hir-self, (1) thinkinge how she myghte brynge this nede vn-to a good conclusioun and to a good ende. (2) And whan she saugh hir tyme, she sente for thise aduersaries to come vn-to hir(e) in-to a pryuee place, (3) and shewed wisely vn-to hem the grete goodes that comen of pees, and the grete harmes and perils that been in werre; (4) and seyde to hem in a goodly manere hou that hem oughte[n] haue greet repentance of the iniurie and wrong that they hadden doon to Melibee, hir lord, and to hir(e), and to hir doghter.

65 And whan they herden the goodliche wordes of Dame Prudence, they weren so supprised and rauysshed, and hadden so greet ioye of hir(e), that wonder was to telle. (6) ¶ ‘Al lady,’ quod they, ‘ye han shewed vn-to vs the blessinge of swetnesse after the sawe of Dauid the prophete. (7) ffor the reconsilyngē, which we been nat worthy to haue in no manere, (8) but we oghte requeren it with greet contricioun and humylytee, ye of youre grete goodnesse haue presented vnto vs. (9) ¶ Now se we wel that the science and the konnyngē of Salomon is ful trewe. (10) ¶ ffor he seith that “sweete wordes multiplien and encreessen freendes, and maken shrewes to be debonaire and meeke.”

70 (1) ¶ ‘Certes,’ quod they, ‘we putten oure dede and al oure matere and cause al hoolly in your(e) goode wyl, (2) and been redy to obeie to the speche and comandement of my lord Melibee. (3) ¶ And therefore, deere and benygne lady, we preien yow and biseke yow as mekely as we konne and mowen, (4) that it lyke vn-to youre

grete goodnesse to fulfillen in dede youre goodliche wordes. (5) ffor we consideren and knowelichen that we han offended and greued my lord Melibee out of mesure so ferforth, that we be nat of power to maken hise amendes; (6) and therefore we oblige and bynden vs and oure freendes to doon al his wyl and hise comandementz. (7) ¶ But perauenture he hath swich heuynesse and swich wratthe to vs-ward by cause of oure offense, (8) that he wol[e] enioyne vs swich a payne as we mowe nat bere ne sustene. (9) And therefore, noble lady, we biseke to youre wommanly pitee to taken swich auysement in this nede, (10) that we, ne oure freendes, be nat desherited, ne destroyed, thurgh oure folye.’

(1) ‘Certes,’ quod Prudence, ‘it is an hard thyng and right perilous that a man putte hym al outrely in the arbitracioun and iuggement, and in the myght and power of hise enemys. (2) ¶ ffor Salomon seith, “Leeueth me, and yeueth credence to that I shal seyn. (3) ¶ I seye,” quod he, ¶ “ye peple, folk, and gouernours of hooly chirche! (4) ¶ to thy sone, to thy wyf, to thy freend, ne to thy broother, ne yeue thou neuere myght ne maistrie of thy body whil thou lyuest.” (5) ¶ Now sithen he deffendeth that man shal nat yeuen to his broother, ne to his freend, the myght of his body, (6) by strengre reson he deffendeth and forbedeth a man to yeuen hym-self to his enemy. (7) ¶ And natheles I conseilte you that ye mystruste nat my lord; (8) for I woot wel, and knowe verraily, that he is debonaire and meeke, large, curteys, and no thyng desirous ne coueitous of good

14560. delibered E.G., deliuered D., she delyueride He., etc. 64. oughte (aughte) G.C.H.; to hire E., vn-to h. He., etc. 65. surprised H. (Sk., Gl.). 66: ¶i. XX, 5? 67. ne been He.G.C.P.L. 76. for to do He., etc. 78. swich a E.G.D., a i. He., etc. 80. & destroyed He.D.H. 82. that þat He.G.D.C.H. [3. Str. XXXIII, 18—19]. 83. folk E.G.D., & gouernours He., i. C., etc., verb. L. 84: vgl. 13971. 85. shal E., sholde He., etc., verb. C.L. 86. a strengre He., etc. (Sk.).

[B 2952—2968]

[B 2969—2989]

ne richesse. (9) ¶ ffor ther nys no-
thyng in this world that he desireth,
saue oonly worship(e) and honour.
(o) ¶ fforther-moore I knowe wel, and
am right seur, that he shal no-thing
doon in this nede with-outen my conseil.
(1) And I shal so werken in this cause,
that, by grace of oure Lord God, ye
shul been reconciled vn-to vs.'

(2) Thanne seyden they with o. voys,
'Worshipful lady! we putten vs and
oure goodes al fully in youre wil and
disposicioun, (3) and been redy to
comen, what day þat it like vn-to your(e)
noblesse to lymyte vs or assigne vs,
for to maken oure obligacioun and
boond as strong as it liketh vn-to
your(e) goodnesse, (4) that we mowe
fulfille the wille of yow and of my
lord Melibee.'

Whan Dame Prudence hadde herd
the answers of these men, she bad hem
goon agayn priuely; (6) and she re-
turned to hir lord Melibee, and tolde
hym how she foond hise aduersaries
ful repentant, knowelechyng ful lowely
hir synnes and trespas, (7) and how they
were redy to suffren al[1] payne, requi-
rynge and preyinge of merci and pitee.

(8) Thanne seyde Melibee, ¶ 'He
is wel worthy to haue pardoun and
foryifnesse of his synne þat excus-
eth nat his synne, but knowelecheth
it, and repenteth hym, axinge indul-
gence. (9) ¶ ffor Senec seith, "Ther
is the remissioun and foryifnesse, where-
as confessioun is." (o) ¶ ffor con-
fessioun is neighbore to innocence.
(1) *And he seith in another place*
"... (he) that hath shame of his synne,
& knowelicheth it." (2) And therfore
I assente and conforme me to haue
pees; (3) but it is good þat we do it
nat with-outen the assent and wyl of
oure freendes.'

(4) Thanne was Prudence right glad
and ioyeful, and seyde, ¶ 'Certes, sir(e),'
quod she, 'ye han wel and goodly
answered; (5) ffor right as by the
conseil, assent, and help of your(e)
freendes ye han been stired to venge
yow, and maken werre, (6) right so
with-outen hir conseil shul ye nat
accorden yow, ne haue pees with youre
aduersaries. (7) ¶ ffor the lawe seith,
"Ther nys no-thing so good by wey
of kynde as a thyng to been vnbounde
by hym þat it was ybounde."

(8) ¶ And thanne Dame Prudence,
with-outen delay or taryng, sente
anon hir(e) messages for hir kyn and
for hir(e) olde freendes whiche þat
were trewe and wyse, (9) and tolde
hem by ordre, in the presence of
Melibee, al this mateere as it is abouen
expressed and declared, (o) and preyde
hem þat they wolde yeuen hir ays
and deliberacioun of the forseide ma-
teere, and hadden examyned it by greet
bisynesse and greet diligence, (1) they
yaued ful conseil for to haue pees and
reste, and þat Melibee sholde receyue
with good herte hise aduersaries to
foryifnesse and mercy.

(2) And whan dame Prudence
hadde herd the assent of hir lord
Melibee and the conseil of hise freendes
accorde with hir wille and hir en-
tencioun, she was wonderly glad in
hir herte, and seyde, (3) ¶ 'Ther is
an old proverbe,' quod she, 'seith that
"the goodnesse þat thou mayst do this
day, do it, and abide nat, ne delaye
it nat til to-morwe." (4) ¶ And therfore
I conseilte þat ye sende youre messages,
swiche as been discrete and wise, vn-
to youre aduersaries; (5) tellynge hem
on your(e) bihalve, þat if they wole
trete of pees and of accord, that they
shape hem, with-outen delay or taryng,

14591. the grace He., etc. 99. the confessioun He. G.D.P.H.⁴ [Martinus Duniensis, De morib. 94]. 14601: ausgelassen E.G.D.; hinter place Süde He., entipr. b. frz. Text: cellui est presque innocent; (he) f. He.; hinter it: is worpi remysioun P. (Sk., Gl.), is w. haue mercy L. [Ausfülltel]. 02. conforme E., conferme He., etc. (Sk.). 08. anon hir(e) E.G.D., hir(e) f. He., etc.; messageres D., etc.; besgl. 14. 10. preyden E. (Gl.), p. hem C.L. (Sk.), preyde hem He., etc. 12. hir herte E.G.D., herte He., etc.

[B 2990-3009]

[B 3010-3028]

to comen vn-to vs'—which thyng par-fourned was in dede. (6) ¶ And whanne thise trespassours and repentynge folk of hir(e) folies—that is to seyn: the aduersaries of Melibee—hadden herd what thise messagers seyden vn-to hem, (7) they weren right glad and ioyeful, and answereden ful mekely and benignely, yeldynge graces and thankynge to hir lord Melibee and to al his compaignye, (8) and shopen hem with-outen delay to go with the messagers, and obeie to the comandement of hir lord Melibee.

(9) ¶ And right anon they taken hir wey to the court of Melibee, and taken with hem somme of hir(e) trewe freendes to maken feith for hem, and for to been hir(e) borwes. (10) And whan they were comen to the presence of Melibee, he seyde hem thise wordes: (1) 'It standeth thus,' quod Melibee, and sooth it is that ye, causelees and with-outen skile and resoun, han doon grete iniuries and wronges to me, and to my wyf Prudence, and to my doghter also. (2) ffor ye han entred in-to myn hous by violence, and haue doon swich outrage, þat alle men knowen wel þat ye haue deserued the deeth; (3) and therefore wol I knowe and wite of yow, wheither ye wol putte the punysshment, and the chastisyng, and the vengeance of this outrage in the wyl of me and of my wyf Prudence, or ye wol nat?'

(4) Thanne the wiseste of hem thre answerde for hem alle, and seyde, ¶ 'Sire,' quod he, 'we knowen wel þat we been vnworthy to comen vn-to the court of so greet a lord and so worthy as ye been. (5) ffor we han so greetly mystaken vs, and han offended and agilt in swich a wise agayn youre heigh lordshipe, that trewely we han

deserued the deeth. (6) But yet, for the grete goodnesse and debonairetee þat al the world witnesseth in your(e) persone, we submytten vs to the excellence and benignitee of your(e) gracious lordshipe, (7) and been redy to obeie to alle your(e) comandementz, bisekyng yow that of your(e) merciable pitee ye wol considere oure grete repentaunce and lough submyssioun, (8) and graunten vs foryuenesse of oure outrageous trespas and offense. (9) ffor wel we knowe þat your(e) liberal grace and mercy stretchen hem ferther in-to goodnesse than doon oure outrageous giltes and trespas in-to wikkednesse, (10) al be it þat cursedly and dampnably we han agilt agayn your(e) heigh lordshipe.'

(1) Thanne Melibee took hem vp from the ground ful benignely, and receyued hir(e) obligaciouns and hir boondes by hir(e) othes vp-on hir(e) plegges and borwes, (2) and assigned hem a certeyn day to retourne vn-to his court, for to accepte and receyue the sentence and iuggement þat Melibee wolde commande to be doon on hem by the causes aforeseyd. (3) Whiche thynges ordeyned, euery man retourned to his hous. (4) And whan þat dame Prudence saugh hir tyme, she freyned and axed hir lord Melibee what vengeance he thoughte to taken of hise aduersaries.

To which Melibee answerde, and 33 seyde, ¶ 'Certes,' quod he, 'I thinke and purpose me fully to desherite hem of al þat euere they han, and for to putte hem in exil for euere.'

(6) 'Certes,' quod dame Prudence, 'this were a cruell sentence and muchel agayn resoun. (7) ffor ye been riche ynough, and han no nede of oother mennes good; (8) and ye myghte lightly

14622. disserued E.C., deserued He., etc. (Sk.) [bgl. 14323]. 23. punysshynge He.G.D.; the chastisyng E.G.L., þe chastisement P.H., chastisyng He.D.; Prudence f. He.G.D., dame Pr. C., etc. 24. vn-to E.He.P., to G., etc. 25. dissuured mir E. 26. in E. (Gl.), of He., etc. (Sk.). 27. lough E. (Gl.), lowe He., etc. (Sk.). 29. hem E.D., f. He., etc. 30. dampnably G.C., etc. (Sk.). 34. freyned E.D., feyned He., etc. 35. þenke C.P.L.H.* 38. good E.G.D., f. He., etc.

[B 3029—3049]

[B 3049—3068]

in this wise gete yow a coueitous name, which is a vicious thyng, and oghte been eschued of euery good man. (9) ffor after the sawe of the word of the Apostle: "Coueitise is roote of alle harmes." (o) And therefore it were better for yow to lese so muchel of youre owene, than for to taken of hir good in this manere. (1) ffor better it is to lesen with worshipe, than it is wyne with vileynye and shame. (2) And eueri man oghte to doon his diligence and his bisynesse to geten hym a good name. (3) And yet shal he nat oonly bisie hym in keypyng of his good name; (4) for it is writen þat "the olde good loos and good name of a man is soone goon and passed, whan it is nat newed ne renouelled."

45 ¶ And as touchynge þat ye seyn ye wole exile your(e) aduersaries, that thynketh me muchel agayn resoun and out of mesure, (6) considered the power þat they han yeue yow vp-on hemself. (7) And it is writen þat he is worthy to lesen his priuilege þat mysuseth the myght and the power þat is yeuen hym. (8) ¶ And I sette cas ye myghte enioyne hem þat peyne by right and by lawe, which I trowe ye mowe nat do. (9) I seye ye mighte nat putten it to execucioun perauenture, and thanne were it likly to retourne to the werre as it was biforn.

50 (o) And therefore, if ye wole þat men do yow obeisance, ye moste deemen moore curteisly; (1) this is to seyn: ye moste yeuen moore esy sentences and iuggementz. (2) ¶ ffor it is writen þat he þat moost curteisly comandeth, to hym men moost obeyen. (3) And therefore I preye yow to ouercome your(e) herte. (4) ¶ ffor Senec seith,

that "he þat ouercometh his herte, ouercometh twies." (5) ¶ And Tullius seith, ¶ "Ther is no-thing so comendable in a greet lord as whan he is debonaire and meeke, and appeseth hym lightly." (6) And I preye yow þat ye wole forbere now to do vengeance in swich a manere, þat youre goode name may be kept and conserued, (7) and þat men mowe haue cause and mateere to preyse yow of pitee and of mercy, (8) and þat ye haue no cause to repente yow of thyng þat ye doon. (9) ¶ ffor Senec seith, ¶ "He ouercometh in an yuel manere þat repenteth hym of his victorie." (o) Wherefore I praye yow: lat mercy been in youre mynde and in your(e) herte to theeffect and entente þat God almyghty haue mercy on yow in his laste iuggement. (1) ¶ ffor seint Iame seith in his Epistle; ¶ "Iuggement with-outen mercy shal be doon to hym þat hath no mercy of another wight."

(2) Whanne Melibee hadde herd the grete skiles and resouns of Dame Prudence and hir(e) wise informaciouns and techynges, his herte gan encline to the wil of his wif, considerynge hir trewe entente, (3) and conformed hym anon and assented fully to werken after hir conseil; (4) and thonketh God, of whom procedeth al vertu and alle goodnesse, þat hym sente a wyf of so greet discrecioun. (5) And whan the day cam þat hise aduersaries sholde appieren in his presencé, he spak vn-to hem ful goodly, and seyde in this wyse: (6) ¶ "Al be it so þat of your(e) pride and presumpcioun and folie, and of youre negligence and vnkonnyng, ye haue mysborn yow and trespassed vn-to me; (7) yet, for as muche as I see and biholde your(e) grete humylitee,

14639: vgl. 12272 [I. Tim. VI, 10]. 41. lese good ... wyne good He., etc. (Sk.). 43. keypyng of E.C.L., of f. He., etc. (3l. f. H.). 44. loos and E., l. or He., etc. (or, etc. f. H.) [Sent. 293]. 47: Seneca, de clem. I, 24, 1. 52. moste (muste) obeyen He.G.D. 54—71. H.² für G. 54: Sent. 64. 55. hym f. E. (Gl.) [De offic. I, 25, 88]. 59: Sent. 66. 60. in youre mynde: nur E. 61: Sat. II, 13. 63. and conformed E., and f. He., etc. 65. appere D., etc. (Sk.). 66. by presumpcioun He.C.L., hey (hie, etc.) p. D., etc.

[B 3069—3089]

[B 3090—3116]

and þat ye been sory and repentant of
 youre giltes, it constreyneth me to doon
 yow grace and mercy. (8) ¶ Therefore
 I receyue yow to my grace, and
 foryeue yow outrely alle the offenses,
 iniuries, and wronges þat ye haue
 doon agayn me and myne; (9) to
 this effect and to this ende, that God
 of his endelees mercy wol[e] at the
 tyme of oure diynge foryeuen vs oure
 giltes that we han trespassed to hym
 70 in this wrecched world. (o) ffor doute-
 lees, if we be sory and repentant of
 the synnes and giltes whiche we han
 trespassed in the sighte of oure Lord
 God, (1) he is so free and so merci-
 able, that he wol[e] foryeuen vs oure
 giltes, and bryngen vs to his blisse
 that neuere hath ende. Amen.

¶ Heere is ended Chaucers tale of
 Melibee and of Dame Prudence.

20. The Monkes Tale.

a) ¶ The murye wordes of the Hoost
 to the Monk. *)

Whan ended was my tale of Melibee,
 And of Prudence and hir benigyntee,
 Oure hooste seyde, 'As I am feithful
 man,
 75 And by that precious corpus Madrian!
 I hadde leuere than a barel ale
 That good lief, my wyf, hadde herd
 this tale;
 Shé nys no-thing of swich pacience
 As was this Melibeus wyf Prudence.
 80 By Goddes bones! whan I betē my
 knaues,
 She bryngeth me forth the grete clob-
 bed staues,
 And crieth, "Slee the dogges euerich-
 oon,

And brek hem bothe bak and euery
 boon!"

¶ And if that any neighebor[e] of myne
 Wol nat in chirche to my wyf encline, 85
 Or be so hardy to hir(e) to trespace,
 Whan she comth hom, she rampeth
 in my face,

And crieth, "ffalse coward! wrek thy
 wyf!

By corpus bones! I wol haue thy
 knyf,

And thou shalt haue my distaf and go 90
 spynne!"

ffro day to nyght right thus she wol
 bigynne;

"Allas," she seith, "that euere þat I
 was shape

To wedde[n] a milksop(e) or a cow-
 ard ape,

That wol been ouerlad with euery
 wight!

Thou darst nat stonden by thy wyues 95
 right."

¶ This is my lif, but if that I wol
 fighte,

And out at dore anon I moot me
 dighte,

Or elles I am but lost, but if that I
 Be lik a wilde leoun fool-hardy.

I woot wel she wol do me slee som 00
 day

Som neighebor[e], and thanne go my
 way.

ffor I am perilous with knyf in honde,
 Al be it that I dar hir(e) nat with-
 stonde;

ffor she is byg in armes, by my feith! 05
 That shal he fynde þat hir(e) mysdooth

or seith—

But lat vs passe away fro this mateere!
 ¶ My lord the Monk, quod he, 'be
 myrie of cheere!

ffor ye shul telle a tale trewely.
 Lóo, Rouchestre stant heer faste by!

16668. Therefore E., Wherefore He., etc. 71. the blisse He.D.P.H.⁴, þilke b. C.L.H.²
 — *) Here bigynneth the Prologe of the Monkes tale He.D.H.⁴, . . . of þe Monke P.Sl.¹,
 Prologus Monachi C., Pr. de Monacho L. — 14672—701. Sl. ffor G. 77. good lief E.D.L.,
 goode lief He., etc. (Sk., Gl.), good loue P. 78. ffor she C.P.L.Sl.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 81. forth
 E.P.H.⁴, f. He., etc. 87. hom f. E.He. 92. euere þat E.He.D., euer C., etc. (Sk., Gl.);
 y-chape C.P.H.⁴ 93. wedden E.He. (Gl.). 14703. nat hire He.G.D.P.H.⁴ (Sk.). 09. heere
 G.D.C.P.L.

[B 3117—3145]

[B 3146—3176]

- 10 Ryd[e] forth, myn owene lord, brek
nat oure game!
But by my trouthe, I knowe nat youre
name,
Wher shal I calle yow "my lord daun
lohn"
Or "daun Thomas," or elles "daun
Alboun?"
Of what hous be ye, by youre fader
kyn?
- 15 I vowē to God, thou hast a ful fair
skyn!
It is a gentil pasture ther thow goost;
Thou art nat lyk a penant or a goost.
Vpon my feith! thou art som officer,
Som worthy sexteyn, or som celerer;
20 ffor by my fader soule! as to my doom,
Thou art a maister whan thou art
at hoom;
No poure cloysterer, ne no novys,
Bút a gouvernour, wily and wys;
And therwithal of brawnes and of
bones
- 25 A wel-faryngē persone for the nones.
I prayē to God yeue hym confusioun
That first thee broghte vn-to religioun!
Thou woldest han been a tredefowēl
aright;
Haddestow as greet a leeuē as thou
hast myght
- 30 To parfourne al thy lust in engendrure,
Thou haddest bigetē[n] ful many^a
creature.
Allas! why werestow so wyd a cope?
God yeue me sorwē! but and I were
a pope,
Nat oonly thou, but euery myghty
man,
- 35 Though he werē shorn ful hye vpon
his pan,
Sholde haue a wyf—for al the world is
lorn;
Religioun hath take vp al the corn
Of tredyng, and we borel men been
shrympes!

Of fieble trees ther comen wrecched
ympes.
This maketh þat oure heires been so 4
sklendre
And feble, þat they may nat wel en-
gendre;
This maketh that oure wyues wole
assaye
Religious folk, for ye mowē bettre paye
Of Venus paiementz than mowe we—
God woot, no lussheburghes payen ye! 4
But be nat wrooth, my lord, for þat
I pleye;
fful ofte in game a sooth I haue
herd seye.'

¶ This worthy Monk took al in pa-
cience,
And seyde, 'I wol doon al my diligence,
As fer as sowneth in-to honestee, 5
To telle yow a tale, or two, or three,
And if yow list to herkne hyderward,
I wol *yow* seyn the lyf of seint Ed-
ward;
Or ellis first tragedies wol I telle,
Of whiche I haue an hundred in my 5
œlle.

¶ Tragedie is to seyn a certeyn storie—
As olde bookes maken vs memorie—
Of hym that stood in greet prosperitee,
And is yfallen out of heigh degree
In-to myserie, and endeth wrecched- 6
ly;
And they ben versified comunely
Of .VI. feet, which men clepe[n]
"Exametron."
In prose eek been endited many oon,
And eek in meetre in many^a sondry
wyse;
Lo, this declaryng oghte ynogh suffice. 6
Now herkneth, if yow liketh for to
heere!
But first I yow biseeke in this mateere,
Though I by ordre telle nat thise
thynges,
Be it of popes, emperours, or kynges,

14710. Ryd C. (Sk.). 22. cloysterer G.C.H.⁴, cloystrer E., etc. [vgl. B. 259]. 26. to f. He.P.H.⁴ 31. ygete P.; ful f. G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); desgl. 35. 40—41. f. E. [vgl. This maketh 40 u. 42]. 40. beth He., been G., etc. 43. mowe(n) E.G.C., moun D., may He., etc. 45. lussheburgh E.He.D., -bruyes G., etc. 46. for E., thogh He., etc. 53. yow f. E. 62. sexe (six) G., etc.; clep(e) H.⁴L. (Sk.), callyn G.P.

[B 3177—3200]

[B 3201—3228]

After hir ages, as men writen fynde,
But telle[n] hem, som bifore and som
bihynde,
As it now comth vn-to my remem-
braunce:
Hauę me excused of min ignoraunce.'

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Monkes tale
de casibus virorum Illustrum. *)

- 75 I wol biwaille in manere of tragédie
The harm of hem that stooode in heigh
degree,
And fillen so, that ther nas no remédie
To brynge hem out of hir aduersitee;
ffor certain, whan þat ffortune list to
flee,
Ther may no man the cours of hire
withholde;
80 Lat no man truste on blynd prosperitee!
Be war of these ensamples trewe and
olde!

¶ *Lucifer*

- At Lucifer, though he an angel were,
And nat a man, at hym wol I bi-
gynne.
ffor though ffortune may noon angel
dere,
85 ffrom heigh degree yet fel he for his
synne
Doun in-to helle, where he yet is inne.
O Lucifer! brightest of angels alle!
Now artow Sathanas, þat mayst nat
twynne
Out of miserie in which þat thou art
falle! ¶ *Adam*

- 90 Loo Adam! in the feeld of Damys-
sene
With Goddes owene fynger wrought was
he,
And nat bigete[n] of mannes sperme
vnclene,
And welte l[i] Paradys, sauynge o
tree.

Hadde neuere worldly man so heigh
degree

As Adam, til he for mys gouernaunce 95
Was dryue[n] out of hys hye prosperitee
To labour, and to helle, and to mes-
chaunce. ¶ *Sampson*

Loo Sampson! which that was
annunciat

By angel longe er his natiuitee,
And was to God almyghty consecrat, 00
And stood in noblesse whil he myghte
see.

Was neuere swich another as was hee,
To speke of strengthe, and ther-with
hardynesse.

But to hise wyues toolde he his secree,
Thurgh which he slow hym-self for 05
wrecchednesse.

Sampson, this noble almyghty
champion,

With-uten wepene saue his handes
tweyne,

He slow and al torente the leoun,
Toward his wedding walkynge by the
weye.

His false wyf koude hym so plesse 10
and preye,

Til she his conseil knew, and she vn-
trewe

Vn-to hise foos his conseil gan biwrewe,
And hym forsook, and took another
newe.

Thre hundred foxes took Sampson
for ire,

And alle hir tayles he togydre bond, 15
And sette the foxes tayles alle on fire,

ffor he on euery tayl had knyt a
brond;

And they brende alle the cornes in
that lond,

And alle hir(e) olyueres and vynes eke.
A thousand men he slow eek with his 20
hond,

And hadde no wepene but an asses
cheke.

14771. tellen E. (Gl.). 73. Haueth He.C.H.⁴ — *) De casibus, etc. nicht in He.G.P.H.⁴ (Überf. f.). 81. Be (By) E.G.D., Beth He., etc.; of E.P., by He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 83. wol I E.H.⁴, I wol He., etc. (Sk.). 85: 3efa. XIV, 12 [Vulg.]. 86. where E.P.H.⁴, where as He., etc. 90—97. † He. [väter am Rande] C. 90. damassene G.H.⁴H.⁴ (Sk.). 92. bigeten: vgl. 31. 96. dryue He. [f. 90] G.P. (Sk.). 98ff. f. B. b. Rīcht. XIII—XVI. 99. angel E.G., the a. He., etc. (Sk.). 14801. whil that He.P.H.⁴ 06—13. f. H.⁴

[B 3229—3255]

[B 3256—3279]

- Whan they werē slayn, so thursted
 hym, that he
 Was wel ny lorn, for which he gan
 to preye
 That God wolde on his peyne han som
 pitee,
 25 And sende hym drynke, or elles moste
 he deye.
 And of this asses cheke, that was
 dreye,
 Out of a wang-tooth sprang anon a
 welle,
 Of which he drank *ynogh*, shortly to
 seye;
 Thus heelp hym God, as Iudicum can
 telle.
- 30 By verray force at Gazan on a nyght,
 Maugree Philistiens of that citee,
 The gates of the toun he hath vp-
 plyght,
 And on his bak ycaryed hem hath hee
 Hye on an hille, þat man myghte
 hem see.
- 35 O noble almyghty Sampson, lief and
 deere!
 Had thou nat toold to wommen thy
 secree,
 In al[l] this world ne hadde been thy
 peere!
 This Sampson neuere ciser drank ne
 wyn,
 Ne on his heed cam rasour noon ne
 sheere,
- 40 By precept of the messenger diuyn;
 ffor alle hise strengthes in hise heeres
 weere.
 And fully twenty wynter, yeer by yeere,
 He hadde of Israel the gouernaunce.
 But soone shal he wepe many^a teere,
 45 ffor wommen shal hym bryngen to
 meschance!
- Vn-to his lemman Dalida he tolde
 That in hise heeris al his strengthe lay,
 And falsly to hise foomen she hym
 solde.

¶ And, slepyng in hir barm vp-on a day,
 She made to clippe or shere hise heres
 away,
 And made hise foomen al this craft
 espyen;
 And whan þat they hym foonde in
 this array,
 They bounde hym faste, and putten out
 hise [e]yēn.
 But er his heer werē clipped or
 yshaue,
 Ther was no boond with which men
 myghte him bynde;
 But now is he in prison in a caue,
 Where-as they made hym at the
 queerne grynde.
 O noble Sampson, strongest of man-
 kynde!
 O whilom iuge in glorie and in rich-
 esse,
 Now maystow wepen with thyne [e]yēn
 blynde,
 Sith thou fro wele art falle in wrecch-
 ednesse!

The ende of this caytyf was as I
 shal seye:
 Hise foomen made a feeste vp-on a
 day,
 And made hym as a fool biforn hem
 pleye,
 And this was in a temple of greet
 array.
 But atte laste he made a foul affray;
 ffor he *two* pilers shook, and made
 hem falle,
 And down fil temple and al, and ther
 it lay,
 And slow hym-self, and eek hise foomen
 alle;
 This is to seyn: the prynces euerich
 oon,
 And eek thre thousand bodyes werē
 ther slayn
 With fallynge of the grete temple of
 stoon.

14825. dey E. 28. ynogh] anon E. [f. anon 27]. 29. helpede G., halp D.H., hilpe C.,
 30. f. P. 34. hille C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.); þat E.P., wher H., where as He., etc. 38. cider C.,
 sither G.D., etc. 50. heres E.H., heer He., etc. (Sk.). 51. this E.He.D., his G., etc.
 (Sk., Gl.). 52. fo(onde) P.L. 54. were E., was He., etc. 64. a E.G., hir He., etc. (Sk.).
 67. the pilers E. (Gl.); fall E.

[B 3280—3308]

[B 3309—3334]

Of Sampson now wol I na-moore sayn.
Beth war by this ensamplé oold and
playn

75 That no men telle hir conseil til hir
wyues

Of swich thyng as they wolde han
secree fayn,

If þat it touche hir lymes or hir lyues.

Of[f] Hercules, the souereyn con-
querour, [¶ Hercules

Syngen hise werkes laude and heigh
renoun;

80 ffor in his tyme of strengthe he was
the flour.

He slow, and rafte the skyn of, the
leoun;

He of Centauros leyde the boost adoun;

He Arpies slow, the crueel bryddes
felle;

He golden apples rafte of the dragoun;

85 He drow out Cerberus, the hound of
helle.

He slow the crueel tyrant Busirus,
And made his hors to frete hym, flesh
and boon;

He slow the firy serpent venymus;

Of Acheloÿs hornes two he brak oon,

90 And he slow Cacus in a caue of stoon;

He slow the gēant Anthēus, the stronge;

He slow the grisly boor, and that
anon,

And bar the heuēne on his nekke longe.

Was neuere wight, sith that this
world bigan,

95 That slow so manye monstres as dide
he;

Thurgh-out this wyde world his name
ran,

What for his strengthe and for his
heigh bountee;

And euery reawme wente he for to see.

He was so strong, þat no man myghte
hym lette.

00 At bothē the worldes endes, seith
Trophee,

In stide of boundes he a pileer sette.

A lemman hadde this noble cham-
pioun,

That highte Dianira, fressh as May;

And, as thise clerkes maken mentioun,
She hath hym sent a sherte fressh 05
and gay.

Allas! this sherte—allas and weil-
away!—

Enuenymed was so subtilly with-alle,

That, er þat he had wered it half a
day,

It made his flessch al from hise bones
falle.

But natheles sommē clerkes hir(e) 10
excusen

By oon þat highte Nessus, that it
maked.

Be as be may, I wol hir(e) noghtaccusen;

But on his bak this sherte he wered
al naked,

Til þat his flessch was for the venym
blaked.

And whan he saugh noon oother re- 15
medye,

In hoote colēs he hath hym-seluen
raked;

ffor with no venym deigned hym to
dye.

Thus starf this worthy, myghty Her-
cules.

Lo, who may truste on ffortune any
throwe?

ffor hym þat folweth al this world 20
of prees,

Er he be war, is ofte yleyd ful lowe.

fful wys is he that kan hym-seluen
knowe!

Beth war! for whan that ffortune list
to glose,

Thanne wayteth she her man to ouer-
throwe

By swich a wey as he woldē leest 25
suppose. [¶ Nabugodonosor

The myghty trone, the precious
tresor,

The glorious ceptre, and roial magestee

14878 ff. i. Boeth. IV, met. 7; Ov., Met. IX, 9ff., etc. 84. He] The He.H.⁴; rette E.D. [vgl. 81]. 89. hornes two E.G.D., two h. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 94. this E.He.G., the D., etc. (Sk.). 14900. seith] as Herzberg (?); [Randgl.] Ille vates Chaldecorum Tropheus E.He. 14. this E.G.L.H.⁴, the He., etc. 16. self G.C.P.L.H.⁴ 27 ff.: Daniel I—IV.

[B 3335—3362]

[B 3363—3389]

That hadde the kyng Nabugodonosor,
 30 With tonge vnnethe may discryued bee.
 He twyes wan Ierusalem the citee;
 The vessel of the temple he with hym
 ladde.

At Babiloigne was his souereyn see,
 In which his glorie and his delit he
 hadde.

35 The faireste children of the blood
 roial

Of Israel he leet do gelde anon,
 And maked ech of hem to been his
 thral.

Amonges othere Daniel was oon,
 That was the wiseste child of euerych-
 on;

40 ffor he the dremes of the kyng ex-
 powned,

Where-as in Chaldeye clerk ne was ther
 noon

That wiste to what fyn hise dremes
 sowned.

This proude kyng leet make[n] a
 statue of gold,

Sixty cubites long, and seuen in brede,

45 To which ymage he bothe yong[e] and
 oold

Comandede to loute, and haue in drede,
 Or in a fourneys, ful of flambes rede,
 He shal be brent that wolde noght
 obeye.

But neuere wolde assente to that dede

50 Daniel, ne hise yonge felawes tweye.

This kyng of kynges proud was and
 elaat;

He wende þat God, that sit in ma-
 gestee,

Ne myghte hym nat bireue of his
 estaat.

But sodeynly he loste his dignytee,

55 And lyk a beest hym semed for to
 bee,

And eet hey as an oxe, and lay ther-
 outh

In reyn; with wilde beestes walked
 hee,

Til certein tyme was ycome aboute.

And lik an egles fetheres wexe hise
 heres,

Hise nayles lyk a briddes clawes weere

Til God relessed hym a certeyn yeres

And yaf hym wit, and thanne, with
 many a teere,

He thanked God, and euere his lyf
 in feere

Was he to doon amys, or moore tres-
 pace,

And, til that tyme he leyd was on his
 beere,

He knew that God was ful of myght
 and grace. [¶ Balthasar

His sone, which that highte Baltha-
 sar,

That heeld the regne after his fader
 day,

He by his fader koude noght be war;
 ffor proud he was of herte and of

array,

And eek an ydolastre he was ay.

His hye estaat assured hym in pryde,
 But ffortune caste hym doun, and ther

he lay,

And sodeynly his regne gan diuide.

A feeste he made vn-to hise lordes
 alle

Vp-on a tyme, and bad hem blithe
 bee;

And than hise officeres gan he calle:
 'Gooth, bryngeth forth the vesseles,'

quod he,

'Whiche that my fader in his prosperi-
 tee

Out of the temple of Ierusalem birafte,
 And to oure hye goddes thanke we

Of honour that oure elders with vs
 lafte.'

Hys wyf, hise lordes, and hise con-
 cubynes

14941. Ther as He.H.⁴ 43. maken E. (Gl.); golde C.L. (Sk.). 45. To| The E.; he f. C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); yong He.D.; olde G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 46. Comanded E.He.G.D., c. he C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 48. scholde L.H.⁴ 52. þat god E., etc., þat f. C., etc. 59. wax E.He. [vgl. 8193, etc.], wexsyn G., wex D. (Gl.), were C.H.⁴, was P.L. (wexe Sk.). 71. was he He., etc. (Sk.). 76. bad E.G., made He., etc. 77. officeres C.G.H.⁴ 78. vesseles D.C.L., vessealx H.⁴ (vessels [tho] Sk.). 80. Ierusalem: f. B. 463.

[B 3390—3416]

[B 3417—3443]

Ay dronken, whil hir(e) appetites laste,
 85 Out of thise noble vessels sondry
 wynes;
 And on a wal this kyng hise [e]yēn
 caste,
 And saugh an hand, armlees, þat wroot
 ful faste,
 ffor feere of which he quook, and siked
 soore.
 Tnis hand, that Balthasar so soore
 agaste,
 90 Wroot 'Mane techel phares,' and
 na-moore.

In al that land *magicien* was noon
 That koude expounde what this lettre
 mente,
 But Daniel expowned it anon,
 And seyde, 'Kyng! God to thy fader
 sente
 95 Glórie and honour, regne, tresour,
 rente;
 And he was proud, and no-thing God
 ne dradde,
 And therfore God greet wreche vp-on
 hym sente,
 And hym birafte the regne þat he
 hadde.

He was out-cast of mannes com-
 paignye,
 00 With asses was his habitacioun,
 And eet hey as a beest in weet and
 drye,
 Til that he knew, by grace and by
 resoun,
 That God of heuene hath domynacioun
 Ouēr euery regne and euery creature.
 C5 And thanne hadde God of hym com-
 passioun,
 And hym restored his regne and his
 figure.
 Eek thou, that art his sone, art
 proud also,
 And knowest allē thise thynges verraily,
 And art rebel to God, and art his foo.
 10 Thou drank eek of hise vessels bolde-
 ly—

Thy wyf eek and thy wenches syn-
 fully
 Dronke of the same vessels sondry
 wynys—,
 And heriest false goddes cursedly:
 Therfore to thee yshapen ful greet
 pyne is.

This hand was sent from God, that 15
 on the wal
 Wroot "Mane techel phares," truste
 me:
 Thy regne is doon, thou weyest nocht
 at al,
 Dyuyded is thy regne, and it shal be
 To Medes and to Perses *yeue*, quod he.
 And thilke same nyght this kyng was 20
 slawe,
 And Darius occupieth his degree,
 Thogh he therto hadde neither right
 ne lawe.

Lordynges! ensamplē heer-by may
 ye take
 How that in lordshipe is no sikernesse.
 ffor whan ffortune wol[e] a man for- 25
 sake,
 She bereth away his regne and his
 richesse,
 And eek his freendes, bothe moore
 and lesse;
 ffor what men þat hath freendes thurgh
 ffortune,
 Mishap wol make[n] hem enemys, [as]
 I gesse;
 This prouerbe is ful sooth and ful 30
 commune.

[¶ Cenobia

[Cenobia, of Palymerie queene,
 As writen Persiens of hir noblesse,
 So worthy was in armes and so keene,
 That no wight passed hir(e) in hardy-
 nesse,
 Ne in lynage, nor in oother gentillesse. 35
 Of kynges blood of Perce is she de-
 scended;
 I seye nat that she hadde moost
 fairnesse,

14985. say He.D. (Sk.); fast E.P.L.H.⁴ (Gl.). 97. sente] lente He. (Sk.). [beste Lesart?].
 15010. his vessel He.H.⁴ 19. yeue (yeuen) He., etc., f. E. 25 ff.: vgl. Boeth. IV, pr. 5.
 29. maken E. (Gl.); [as] E. 31 ff.: f. Bocc., De clar. mulier., cap. 98. 35. nor in E., nor
 G., ne He., ne in D., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 3444—3468]

[B 3469—3496]

- But of hir[e] shap she myghte nat
been amended.
ffrom hir childhede I fynde that she
fledde
40 Office of wommen, and to wode she
wente,
And many a wilde hertes blood she
shedde
With arwes brode, that she to hem
sente;
She was so swift, þat she anon hem
hente.
And whan þat she was elder, she wolde
kille
45 Leouns, leopardes, and beres al to-
rente,
And in hir armes weelde hem at hir
wille.
She dorste wilde beestes dennes seke,
And renne[n] in the montaignes al
the nyght,
And slepe[n] vnder the bussh, and she
koude eke
50 Wrastlen by verray force and verray
myght
With any yong man, were he neuer
so wight;
Ther myghte no-thing in hir armes
stonde.
She kepte hir maydenhod from euery
wight,
To no man deigned hir(e) for to be
bonde.
55 But atte laste hir freendes han hir(e)
maried
To Odenake, a prynce of that contree,
Al were it so that she hem longe
taries;
And ye shul vnderstondè how that
he
Haddè swiche fantasies as haddè she.
60 But natheless, whan they werè knyht
infeere,
They lyuèd in ioye and in felicitèe;
ffor ech of hem hadde oother lief
and deere;

Saue o thyng: that she wolde neuere
assente
By no wey that he sholde by hir(e)
lye
But ones, for it was hir pleyn entente
To haue a child the world to multi-
plye;
And also soone as þat she myghte espye
That she was nat with childe with
that dede,
Thanne wolde she suffre hym doon his
fantasye
Eft-soone, and nat but oones, out of
drede.
And if she werè with childe at thilke
cast,
Na-moore sholde he pleyen thilke game
Til fully fourty dayes weren past;
Thanne wolde she ones suffre hym
do the same.
Al were this Odenake wilde or tame,
He gat na-moore of hir(e), for thus
she seyde:
'It was to wyues lecherie and shame
In oother caas, if þat men with hem
pleyde.'
Two sones by this Odenake haddè
she,
The whichè she kepte in vertu and
letturè;
But now vn-to oure tale turne we.
I seyè so worshipful a creature,
And wys ther-with, and large with me-
sure,
So penyble in the werre, and curteis
eke,
Ne moore labour myghte in werre
endure,
Was noon, though al this world men
wolde seke.
Hir riche array ne myghte nat be
told
As wel in vessel as in hir clothyng;
She was al clad in perree and in gold.
And eek she lafte noght, for noon hunt-
yng,

15040. went E.D.P.H.⁴ (Gl.). 45. lepardes (lebardis, etc.) D.G., etc. (Sk.). 48. renne P.L.H.⁴ 49. slepe D.C., etc.; the a C., etc. 54. for f. He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 56. Onedake E.He.G.D. (Gl.), Odenake C., etc. (Sk.); id. 75, 79, etc. 60. [über infeere] simul E.He.D. [am Ranbe]. 79. this f. E. 86. sholde He., etc. (Sk., Gl.), to H.⁴

[B 3497—3523]

[B 3524—3553]

To haue of sondry tonges ful knowyng;
Whan þat she leyser hadde [and] for
to entende,

To lerne bookes was al hir likyng,
How she in vertu myghte hir lyf dis-
pende.

95 And shortly of this proces for to
trete,

So doghty was hir housbonde and eek
she,

That they conquered manye regnes
grete

In the Orient, with many a fair[e]
citee,

Apertenaunt vn-to the magestee

00 Of Rome, and with strong hond held
hem ful faste;

Ne neuere myghte hir foo-men doon
hem flee,

Ay whil that Odenakes dayes laste.

Hir bataillēs, who-so list hem for
to rede,

Agayn Sapor the kyng and othere mo,

05 And how þat al this proces fil in
dede,

Why she conquerēd, and what title
therto,

And after of hir meschief and hir wo,
How þat she was biseged and ytake,

Lat hym vn-to my maister Petrark go,

10 That writ ynough of this, I vnder-
take.

Whan Odenakē was deed, she myghti-
ly

The regnes heeld, and with hir propre
hond

Agayn hir foos she faught so cruelly,
That ther nas kyng ne prynce in al

that lond

15 That he nas glad if he that grace
fond,

That she ne wolde vp-on his lond
werreye;

With hir(e) they maden alliance by
bond

To been in pees, and lete hir(e) ride
and pleye.

The Emperour of Rome, Claudius,
Nē hym bifore the Romainn Galien 20
Ne dorste neuere been so corageus;
Ne noon Ermyn, ne noon Egipcien,
Ne Surrien, ne noon Arabyen

With-inne the feeldes that dorste with
hir(e) fighte,

Lest that she wolde hem with hir 25
handes slen,

Or with hir meignee putten hem to
flighte.

In kynges habit wente hir sones
two

As heires of hir fadres regnes alle,
A'nd Hermanno and Thymalao

Hir names were, as Persiens hem calle. 30

But ay ffortune hath in hir hony galle:

This myghty queene may no while
endure;

ffortune out of hir regne made hir(e)
falle

To wrecchednesse and to mysauenture.

Aurelian, whan that the gouernaunce 35

Of Rome cam in-to hise handes tweye,
He shoop vp-on this queenē to doon

vengeaunce,

And with hise legions he took his
weye

Toward Cenobie, and, shortly for to
seye,

He made hir(e) flee, and atte laste 40
hir(e) hente,

And fettred hir(e), and eek hir(e)
children tweye,

And wan the land, and hoom to Rome
he wente.

Amonges othere thynges that he wan,

Hir chaar, þat was with gold wrought
and perree,

This grete Romainn, this Aurelian, 45
Hath with hym lad, for that men sholde

it see;

Biforen his triumphhe walketh shee

15092. and for j. L., and might perto H.⁴ 95. proces E. [vgl. 05], storie He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 98. thorient He.H.⁴; faire E.P.L. (Gl.). 15105. þat f. E. 06. title had p. C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 09. Petraik G., Petrarke C.P., perark H.⁴ [vgl. 7907]. 15. þat he C. (Sk.). 17. maden Gl., made E., etc. 24. feeld(e) C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 47. Be-forne L., Bifore H.⁴, Biforn E., etc.

[B 3554—64, 3653—68]

[B 3669—3700]

With gilte cheynes on hir nekke hang-
ynge;

Coroned was she after hir degree,
50 And ful of perree charged hir cloth-
ynge.

Allas, ffortune! she that whilom was
Dredeful to kynges and to emperoures,
Now gaureth al the peple on hir(e),
allas!

And she that helmed was in starke
stoures,

55 And wan by force townes stronge and
toures,

Shal on hir heed now were a vitremyte;
And she that bar the ceptre ful of
floures

Shal bere a distaf, hir(e) costes for to
quyte.

[¶ Nero

Although that Nero were vicus
60 As any feend that lith in helle adoun,
Yet he, as telleth vs Swetonius,
This wyde world hadde in subieccioun,
Bothe Est and West, Noth and Sep-
temtrioun.

Of Rubies, saphires, and of peerles
white

65 Were alle hise clothes brouded vp and
doun,

ffor he in gemmes greetly gan delite.

Moore delicat, moore pompous of
array,

Moore proud was neuere emperour
than he.

That ilke clooth that he hadde wered
o day,

70 After that tyme he nolde it neuere see.
Nettes of gold-threed hadde he greet
plantee

To fissue in Tybre, whan hym liste
pleye.

Hise lustes were al lawe in his decree;
ffor fortune as his freend hym wolde
obeye.

He Rome brende for his delicacie;
The senatours he slow vp-on a day,
To heere how men wolde wepe and crie;
And slow his brother, and by his
suster lay.

His mooder made he in pitous array
ffor he hir wombe slitte, to biholde
Where he conceyued was—so weilaway!
That he so litel of his mooder tolde!

No teere out of hise [e]yën for that
sight

Ne cam, but seyde, 'A fair womman
was she.'

Greet wonder is how þat he koude or
myght

Be domesman of hir dede beautee.
The wyn to bryngyn hym comanded he,
And drank anon—noon oother wo he
made.

Whan myght is ioyned vn-to crueltee,
Allas, to depe wol the venym wade!

In yowthe a maister hadde this
emperour,

To teche hym letterure and curteisye,
ffor of moralitee he was the flour

As in his tyme, but if bookes lye.
And whil this maister hadde of hym

maistrye,

He maked hym so konnyng and so
sowple,

That longe tyme it was er tyrannye
Or any vice dorste on hym vncowple.

This Seneca, of which that I deuyse,
By cause Nero hadde of hym swich
drede,

ffor he fro vices woldë hym chastise
Discreetly as by word, and nat by
dede—

'Sire,' wolde he seyn, 'an emperour
moot nede

Be vertuous, and hate tyrannye'—,
ffor which he in a bath made hym
to blede

On bothe his armes, til he moste dye.

15149. as after He., etc. (Sk.). 54. shoures E. 58. costes E.C. (Gl.), self H.⁴, cost He., etc. (Sk.). 15159—15462. hinter 15550 C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 59. as vicious C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 60. in helle E., ful lowe He., etc. (Sk.). 61. Swetonius? f. Bocc., De cas., etc. VII, 4; Boeth. II, met. 6, III, met. 4, etc. 63. Noth f. Boeth., l. c.: Nothus; North E.He.G.D., f. C., etc., South Sk. (Tw. M.). 92. letterure G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 17076]. 98. on E.G.H.⁴, in He., etc. 15201. hym ay ch. He.G.D. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 3701—3725]

[B 3726—3753]

This Nero hadde eek of acustum-
aunce
In youthe agayns his maister for to
ryse,
Which afterward hym thoughte greet
greuauunce;
10 Therefore he made hym dyen in this
wise.
But natheles this Seneca, the wise,
Chees in a bath to dye in this manere
Rather than han any oother torment-
ise;
And thus hath Nero slayn his maister
deere.
15 Now fil it so that ffortune listē
no lenger
The hye pryde of Nero to cherice;
ffor though þat he was strong, yet
was she strengier.
She thoughte thus: 'By God! I am to
nyce
To sette a man that is fulfild of vice
20 In heigh degree, and emperour hym
calle.
By God! out of his sete I wol hym
trice;
Whan he leest weneth, sonnest shal he
falle!'
'The peple roos vp-on hym on a
nyght
ffor his defaute, and whan he it espied,
25 Out of hise dores anon he hath hym
dight
Allone, and ther he wende han ben
allied,
He knocked faste, and ay the moore
he cried,
The faster shette they the dores alle.
*Tho wiste he wel he hadde hym-self
mys-gyed,*
30 And wente his wey—no lenger dorste
he calle.
The peple cride, and rombled vp and
doun,

That with hise erys herde he how
they seyde,
'Where is this false tiraunt, this
Neroun?'
ffor fere almost out of his wit he
breyde,
And to hise goddes pitously he preyde 35
ffor socour, but it myghte nat bityde.
ffor drede of this hym thoughte þat
he deyde,
And ran in-to a gardyn hym to hyde.
And in this gardyn foond he cherles
tweye,
That seten by a fyre greet and reed; 40
And to thise cherles two he gan to
preye
To sleen hym, and to girden of his
heed,
That to his body, whan þat he were
deed,
Were no despit ydoon for his defame.
Hym-self he slow—he koudē no bettere 45
reed;
Of which ffortune lough, and hadde
a game.

[¶ De Oloferno

Was neuere capitayn vnder a kyng
That regnes mo putte in subieccioun,
Ne strengier was in feeld of alle thyng
As in his tyme, ne gretter of renoun, 50
Ne moore pompous in heigh pre-
sumpcioun
Than Oloferne, which ffortune ay kiste
So likerously, and ladde hym vp and
doun,
Til þat his heed was of er þat he wiste.
Nat oonly that this world hadde 55
hym in awe
ffor lesyng of richesse or libertee,
Bút made euery man reneye[n] his
lawe;
'Nabugodonosor was god,' seyde hee,
'Noon oother god ne sholde adoured
bee.'

15 207. a custumance G., etc. 09. a greet He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 13. another He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); tormentrise He.G., tyrannye H.⁴, turmentrie D., etc. 17. he were G.C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 29. ffor drede of this/hym thoughte þat he dyed E.He. (= 15 247). 40. fuyre C.P., fire L., fir E., etc.; ful grete C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.) [vgl. 6296, etc.]. 47 ff.: f. *Subitū* II ff. 57. he made C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 15 184, etc.]; reneyen E.He. (Gl.) [l. *madē?*]. 59. ne Furn., Gl. [l. *sholdē* ?]; honoured C., etc.

[B 3754—3781]

[B 3782—3812]

60 Agayns his heeste no wight dorste
trespace,
Saue in Bethulia, a strong citee,
Where Eliachim a preest was of that
place.†)

But taak keep[e] of the deeth of
Oloferne!

Amydde his hoost he dronke lay a-
nyght

65 With-inne his tente, large as is a berne;
And yet, for al his pompe and al his
myght,

Iudith, a womman, as he lay vpright
Slepyng, his heed of smoot, and from
his tente

fful pryuely she stal from euery wight,

70 And with his heed vn-to hir toun she
wente.

[¶ De Rege Anthiocho illustri

What nedeth it of kyng Anthiochus
To telle his hye roial magestee,
His hye pride, hise werkes venymus?
ffor swich another was ther noon as
he.

75 Rede which þat he was in Machabee,
And redeþ the proude wordes that he
seyde,

And why he fil fro heigh prosperitee,
And in an hil[l] how wrecchedly he
deyde.

ffortune hym hadde enhaunced so
in pride,

80 That verraily he wende he myghte
attayne

Vn-to the sterres vp-on euery syde,
And in balance weyen ech montayne,
And alle the floodes of the see re-
strayne.

And Goddes peplé hadde he moost in
hate;

85 Hem wolde he sleen in torment and in
payne,

Wenyngþ þat God ne myghte his pride
abate.

And for that Nichanore and Thy-
mothee

Of Iewes weren venquysshed myghtily,
Vn-to the Iewes swich an hate hadde
he,

That he bad greithe[n] his chaar ful
hastily,

And swoor, and seyde ful despitously,
Vn-to Ierusalem he wolde eft-soone
To wreke[n] his ire on it ful cruelly;
But of his purpos he was let ful soone.

God for his manace hym so soore
smoot

With invisible wounde, ay incurable.
That in hise guttes carf it so and
boot,

That hise peynes weren importable.
And certainly the wrecheþ was reson-
able,

ffor many a mannes guttes dide he
payne.

But from his purpos cursed and damp-
nable,

ffor al his smert, he wolde hym nat
restreyne;

But bad anon apparaillen his hoost,
And sodeynly, er he was of it war,
God daunted al his pride and al[l] his
boost.

ffor he so soore fil out of his char,
That it hise lemes and his skyn to-tar,
So that he neyther myghte go ne
ryde,

But in a chayer men aboute hym bar,
Al forbrused, bothe bak and syde.

The wreche of God hym smoot so
cruelly,

That thurgh his body wikked wormes
creþe,

And ther-with-al he stank horribly,
That noon of al his meynee þat hym
kepte,

Whéither so he wook or ellis slepte,
Ne myghte noght for stynk of hym
endure.

In this meschief he wayled and eek
wepte,

And knew God Lord of euery creature.

15 260. dorste E.He., dar G., etc. (Sk.). 75. f. II. *Matf.*, Chap. 9. 79. enchanted He.G. 88. Of E.He., With G., etc. 90. greithe He.D.H.⁴, (hadde) greythed C.L., graped P., ordeyne G. 93. wreken E.He. 98. [hise f. 5480]. 15 307. [über to-tar] lacerauit E.He.D. [am Rande]. 99. men = man, mit Sing. 16. for E.He., the G., etc.

[B 3813—3839]

[B 3840—3868]

To al[^l] his hoost, and to hym-self
also,

20 fful wlatson was the stynk of his
careyne;

No man ne myghte hym bere to ne
fro.

And in this stynk and this horrible
peyne

He starf ful wrecchedly in a monteyne.
Thus hath this robbour and this homy-
cide,

25 That many^a man made to wepe and
pleyne,

Swich gerdoun as bilongeth vn-to pryde.

The storie^o of Alisaundre is so com-
mune, [¶ De Alexandro

That euery wight that hath discrecioun
Hath herd somewhat or al of his ffor-
tune.

30 This wyde world, as in conclusioun,
He wan by strengthe, or for his hye
renoun

They weren glad for pees vn-to hym
sende;

The pride of man and beest he leyde
adoun

Wher-so he cam, vn-to the worldes
ende.

35 Comparisoun myghte neuere yet
been maked

Bitwixe[n] hym and another con-
querour;

ffor al this world for drede of hym
hath quaked,

Hé of knyghthood and of fredom flour.
ffortune hym made the heir of hir
honour;

40 Sauē wyn and wommen, no-*thyng*
myghte aswage

His hye entente in armes and labour:
So was he ful of leonyn corage.

What pris were it to hym, though
I yow tolde

Of Darius and an hundred thousand
mo

45 Of kynges, princes, erles, dukes bolde,

Whiche he conquered, and broghte
hem in-to wo?

I seye: as fer as man may ryde or
go,

The world was his—what sholde I
moore deuyse?

ffor though I write or tolde yow euere-
mo

Of his knyghthode, it myghte nat 50
suffise.

Twelf yeer he regned, as seith
Machabee;

Philippes sone of Macidoynes he was,
That first was kyng in Grece the
contree.

O worthy, gentil Alisandre, allas!

That euere sholde fallen swich a cas! 55
Empoysoned of thyn owene folk thou
weere!

Thy sys ffortune hath turned in-to aas,
And for thee ne weep she neuer a
teerel

Who shal me yeuen teeris to com-
pleyne

The deeth of gentillesse and of ffran- 60
chise,

That al the world weilded in his
demeyne?

And yet hym thoughte it myghte nat
suffise,

So ful was his corage of heigh emprise!

Allas! who shal me helpe to endite

ffalse ffortune, and poyson to despise, 65
The whiche two of al this wo I wyte?

By wisedom, manhede, and by greet
labour [¶ De Iulio Cesare

ffrom humble bed to roial magestee

Vp roos he, Iulius the Conquerour,

That wan al thoccident, by land and 70
see,

By strengthe of hand, or elles by
tretee,

And vn-to Rome made hem tributarie;

And sithe of Rome the emperour was
he,

Til that ffortune weex his aduersarie.

15336. Bitwixen E.G., Bitwen H.⁴ 38. he was of C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 686, 1182, etc.]. 40. thyng] man E. 43. pris E.He.D., preys G. (Sk., Gl.) [better?], pite C., etc. 45. Dukes Erles He.D.C.H.⁴ (and e.), Erlis pryncis G., dukes f. P.L. 49. f. H.⁴ 58. And get C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.), right H.⁴ 61. this w. He.G.D. 67. greet f. E.

[B 3869—3902]

[B 3903—3929]

- 75 O myghty Cesar! that in Thessalie
 Agayn Pompēus, fader thyn in lawe,
 That of the Orient hadde al[l] the
 chialrie
 As fer as þat the day bigynneth dawe,
 Thou thurgh thy knyghthod hast hem
 take and slawe,
 80 Sauē fewe folk that with Pompēus fledde,
 Thurgh which thou putttest al thorient
 in awe:
 Thanke ffortune, that so wel thee
 spedde!

[¶ Nota de Pompeyo]

- ¶ But now a litel while I wol biwaille
 This Pompēus, this noble gouernour
 85 Of Rome, which that fleigh at this
 bataille.
 I seye: oon of hise men, a fals traitour,
 His heed of smoot to wynnen hym
 fauour
 Of Iulius, and hym the heed he broghte.
 Allas, Pompeye, of thorient conquerour,
 90 That ffortune vn-to swich a fyn thee
 broghte!

- ¶ To Rome agayn repaireth Iulius,
 With his triumphe lauriat ful hye;
 But on a tyme Brutus Cassius,
 That euere hadde of his hye estaat
 envye,
 95 fful priuely hath maad conspiracye
 Agayns this Iulius in subtil wise,
 And castē the place in which he sholde
 dye
 With boydekyns, as I shal yow deuyse.
 This Iulius to the Capitolie wente
 00 Vpon a day, as he was wont to goon;
 And in the Capitolie anon hym hente
 This false Brutus and hise othere noon,
 And stiked hym with boydekyns anon
 With many a wounde, and thus they
 lete hym lye;
 05 But neuere gronte he at no strook
 but oon,
 Or elles at two, but if his storie lye.
 So manly was this Iulius of herte,
 And so wel louēde estaatly honestee,

That, though hise deedly woundes
 soore smerte,
 His mantel ouer hise hypes castē he,
 ffor no man sholde seen his priueteē;
 And as he lay of diyng in a traunce,
 And wiste verrailly that deed was hee,
 Of honestee yet hadde he remem-
 braunce.

Lucan, to thee this storie I recom-
 mende,
 And to Swetoun, and [to] Valerius also,
 That of this storie writen [w]ord and
 ende,
 How þat to thise grete conquerours
 two
 ffortune was first freend, and sitthe foo.
 No man ne truste vp-on hir fauour
 longe,
 But haue hir(e) in awayt for eueremoo!
 Witnesse on alle thise conquerours
 stronge. [¶ Cresus]

This riche Cresus, whilom kyng of
 Lyde,
 Of whiche Cresus Cirus soore hym
 dradde,
 Yet was he caught amyddes al his
 pryde,
 And, to be brent, men to the fyr
 hym ladde.
 But swich a reyn down fro the welkne
 shadde,
 That slow the fyr, and made hym
 to escape;
 But to be war no grace yet he hadde,
 Til ffortune on the galwes made hym
 3 yape.

Whanne he escaped was, he kan
 nat stente
 ffor to bigynne a newe werre agayn.
 He wende wel, for þat ffortune hym
 sente
 Swich hap that he escaped thurgh the
 rayn,
 That of hise foos he myghte nat be
 3 slayn;

15 393. B. and Cassius Gl. 95. had C.P.L. (Gl.). 15 409. so sore He.D.C.P.L. 16. to Valerius (Valerien H.) alle Gij. (Gl.), to Valerie Sk. 17. ord Gl. 18. conquerours (-ys) G.C.H.; id. 22 (+ L.). 19. a foo He.G.D.C.P. 23 ff.: hauptjüdl. nach Bocc., l. c.; bodi auch Rom. Rose 3917 ff.; vgl. Boeth. II, pr. 2. 24. which E.He.P.H.

[B 3930—3954]

[B 3955—6, 3565—85]

And eek a sweuene vp-on a nyght
 he mette,
 Of which he was so proud and eek
 so fayn,
 That in vengeance he al his herte
 sette.

Vp-on a tree he was—as that hym
 thoughte—

40 Ther Iuppiter hym wessh, bothe bak
 and syde,

And Phebus eek a fair towaille hym
 broughte

To drye[n] hym with, and therfore
 wax his pryde.

And to his doghter, that stood hym
 bisyde,

Which þat he knew in heigh science
 habounde,

45 He bad hir(e) telle hym what it signy-
 fyde;

And she his dreem bigan right thus
 expounde:

‘The tree,’ quod she, ‘the galwes
 is to meene,

And Iuppiter bitokneth snow and reyn,
 And Phebus, with his towaille so clene,

50 Tho been the sonne-bemes for to seyn.
 Thou shalt anhangd be, fader, certeyn;

Reyn shal thee wasshe, and sonne shal
 thee drye.’

Thus warnd hym ful plat and eek
 ful pleyn

His doghter, which that called was
 Phanye.

55 An-hanged was Cresus, the proude
 kyng,

His roial trone myghte hym nat
 auaille.—

Tragedie is noon oother maner thyng,
 Ne kan in syngyng crie ne biwaille,

Bút that ffortune alwey wole assaille

60 With vnwar strook the regnes þat been
 proude.

ffor whan men trusteth hir(e), thanne
 wol she faille,

And couere hir brighte face with a
 clowde.

[¶ De Petro Rege Ispannie

O noble, o worthy Petro! glorie of
 Spayne,

Whom ffortune heeld so hye in ma-
 gestee,

Wel oghten men thy pitous deeth com- 65
 playne!

Out of thy land thy brother made
 thee flee,

And after, at a seege, by subtiltee
 Thou werē bitraysed, and ladde vn-

to his tente,
 Where-as he with his owene hand slow

thee,
 Succedyng in thy regne and in thy 70

rente.

The ‘feeld of snow,’ with thegle
 of blak ther-inne,

Caught with the lymērod, coloured as
 the gleede,

He brew this cursednesse and al this
 synne.

The ‘wikked nest’ was werker of this
 nede.

Noght Charles Olyuer, that took ay 75
 heede

Of trouthe and honour, but of Ar-
 morike

Genylon-Olyuer, corrupt for meede,
 Broghte this worthy kyng in swich

a brike.

[¶ De Petro Rege the Cipro

O worthy Petro, kyng of Cipro, also,
 That Alisandre wan by heigh maistrie! 80

fful many a hethen wroghtestow ful
 wo,

Of which thyne owene liges hadde
 envie,

And for no-thing, but for thy chivalrie

15442. dryen E. (Gl.). 44. science] sentence He.C.P. 50. sonnes He.G.D.; bemes E., stremes He., etc. (Sk.). 53. warnd she hym P.L.H.* (Sk., Gl.); ek H.* [vgl. 15437, etc.], f. E., etc. 57. Tragedies E.He., Tragedi es D., Tragedy (Tegedie, etc.) is G.C.P., T. in L. 59. But for that G.D.H.* (Sk., Gl.); wole E.He., wele G. [Rom. ?], wol, etc. D., etc. 66. Thy bastard broder made þe to fle C.P.L.H.* [hiß. richtiger]. 68. f. D. 71. Bertheun (Betelmewe) Claykyn. Olyuer Mawny C. am Rande, L. als Überschrift (= Bertrand du Guesclin, Oliver de Mauny); feeld of snow, etc.: Wappen des ersteren.

[B 3586—3612]

[B 3613—3639]

- They in thy bed han slayn thee by
the morwe.
- 85 Thus kan ffortune hir wheel gouerne
and gye,
And out of ioye brynge men to sorwel
[¶ De Barnabo de Lumbardia
Off] Melan grete Barnabo Viscounte,
God of delit and scourge of Lum-
bardye!
- Why sholde I nat thyn infortune
acounte,
- 90 Sith in estaat thow cloumbe werē so
hye?
- Thy brother sonē, that was thy double
allye—
ffor he thy newew was and sone-in-
lawe—
With-inne his prisoun made thee to dye,
But why, ne how? noot I þat thou
werē slawe.
- [¶ De Hugelino Comite de Pize
95 Off] the Erl Hugelyn of Pyze the
langour
- Ther may no tonge telle for pitee.
But litel out of Pize stant a tour,
In whiche tour in prisoun put wās he,
And with hym been hise litel children
thre;
- 00 The eldestē scarsly fyf yeer was of
age.
- Allas, ffortune! it was greet crueltee
Swiche byddes for to putte in swich[e]
a cage!
- Dampned was he to dye[n] in that
prisoun,
ffor Roger, which þat bisshop was of
Pize,
- 05 Hadde on hym maad a fals suggestioun,
Thurgh which the peple gan vpon hym
rise,
And putten hym to prisoun in swich
wise
- As ye han herd; and mete and drynke
he hadde
- So smal, that wel vnnethe it may suffice,
- 10 And therwith-al it was ful poure and
badde.

And on a day bifil þat in that
hour

Whan þat his mete wont was to be
brought,

The gayler shette the dores of the
tour—

He herde it wel, but he ne spak right
noght.

And in his herte anon ther fil a thoght
That they for hunger wolde doon hym
dye[n].

'Allas,' quod he, 'allas, that I was
wroght!'

Ther-with the teeris fillen from hise
[e]yēn.

His yonge sonē, that thre yeer was
of age,

Vn-to hym seyde, 'ffader [fader], why
do ye wepe?

Whanne wol the gayler bryngen oure
potage?

Is ther no morsel breed that ye do
kepe?

I am so hungry, that I may nat slepe.
Now wolde God that I myghtē slepen
euer!

Thanne sholde nat hunger in my
wombe crepe—

Ther is no-thing but breed that me
werē leuere.'

Thus day by day this child bigan
to crye,

Til in his fadres barm adoun it lay,
And seyde 'ffar[e]-wel, fader, I moot
dye!'

And kiste his fader, and dyde the same
day.

And whan the woful fader deed it say,
ffor wo hise armes two he gan to byte,
And seyde, 'Allas, ffortune, and weyla-
way!

Thy false wheel my wo al may I wytte!'

Hise children wende that it for
hunger was

That he hise armes gnaw, and nat for
wo,

And seyde, 'ffader, do nat so, alas!

15 495 ff.: f. Dante, Inferno XXXIII, 13—75. 98. whiche P.L.H.⁴ 15 503. dyen E.He.
09. wel He.G.D.H.⁴, f. E.P., 3l. f. C.L. 13—50. Sl. für G. 14. ne Gl., f. E., etc. (Sk.).
20. fader / fader E.He.D. 26. but E.He.D., sauf (saue) C., etc. (Sk.).

[B 3640—52, 3957—66]

[B 3967—3991]

But rather et[e] the flesh vp-on vs two.
Oure flesh thou yaf vs, tak[e] oure
flesh vs fro,

40 And et[e] ynogh!—right thus they to
hym seyde.

And after that, with-inne a day or two,
They leyde hem in his lappe adoun—
and deyde.

Hym-self, despeired, eek for hunger
starf:

Thus ended is this myghty Erl of Pize;
45 ffrom heigh estaat ffortune away hym
carf.

Of this tragedie it oghte ynough suf-
fise;

Who-so wol here it in a lenger wise,
Redeth the grete poete of Ytaille

That highte Dant, for he kan al deuyse

50 ffro point to point, nat o word wol
he faille.

¶ *Explicit Tragedia.*

¶ Heere stynteth the knyght the Monk
of his tale.

21. The Nonnes Preestes Tale.

a) ¶ The prologue of the Nonnes
preestes tale.

‘Hoo,’ quod the Knyght, ‘good sire,
namoore of this!

That ye han seyde is right ynough, ywis,
And muchel moore; for litel heuynesse
Is right ynough to muche folk, I gesse.

55 I seye for me it is a greet disese,
Where-as men han been in greet welthe
and ese,

To heeren of hir sodeyn fal, alas!

And the contrarie is ioye and greet
solas,

As whan a man hath ben in poure
estaat,

60 And clymbeth vp, and wexeth fortunat,

And there abideth in prosperitee:
Swich thyng is gladsom, as it thynketh
me,

And of swich thyng were goodly for to
telle.’

‘Ye,’ quod oure hooste, ‘by seint Poules
belle!

Ye seye right sooth: this monk, he 65
clappeth lowde;

He spak how “fortune couered with a
clowde”—

¶ I noot neuere what—and als[o] of
a “tragedie”

Right now ye herde, and, pardee, no
remedie

It is for to biwaille, ne compleyne

That þat is doon, and als it is a payne, 70

As ye han seyde, to heere of heuynesse.

¶ Sire Monk, namoore of this, so God
yow blesse!

Youre tale anoyeth al[l] this compaign-
nye—

Swich talkyng is nat worth a boter-
flye,

ffor ther-inne is ther no disport ne 75
game.

¶ Wherfore, sir(e) Monk, daun Piers
by youré name,

I praye yow hertely, telle vs som-
what elles!

ffor sikerly, nere clynkyng of youre
belles,

That on your(e) bridel hange on euery
syde,

By heuene kyng, that for vs alle dyde! 80

I sholde er this han fallen down for
sleep,

Al-thogh the slough had neuer been
so deep—

Thanne hadde youre talé al be toold
in veyn.

ffor certainly, as that thise clerkes seyn,

“Where-as a man may haue noon au- 85
dience,

15539. vs f. E.He. [vb.: tak ouré?]. — Here is ended (endeth) the Monkes tale He.D., ähnl. P., Explicit (fabula) C.L. — 15551—15642. Sl. für G. 51. of f. E. 55—74. ausgcl. He.C.P. (dafür Ro.¹, Ro.¹, Ad.¹). 64. seinte Gl. 66. couered was D.Ad.L., was c. Ro.¹, was clipped H.⁴ 67. als D.Ro.¹ 75. Youré tales doon vs no d. ne g. He.C.P. 76. or daun pers P. (Sk., Gl.), o. daun Piers He.D., Daun Pieres C.H.⁴, daun Piers E., etc. [vgl. 6624]. 83. al E.He.D., haue H.⁴, f. C., etc. 85: 3. 3ir. XXXII, 6 (Vulg.) [vgl. 13952].

[B 3992—4017]

[B 4018—4046]

Noght helpeth it to tellen his sentence."
As wel I woot the substance is in me,
If any-thing shal wel reported be.
Sire, seye somewhat of huntyng, I yow
preye.'

90 ¶ 'Nay,' quod this Monk, 'I hauē no
lust to pleye!

Now lat another telle, as I hauē toold.'
Thanne spak oure hoost with rude
speche and boold,

And seyde vn-to the Nonnes preest
anon:

'Com neer, thou preest, com hyder,
thou sire Iohn!

95 Telle vs swich thyng as may oure
hertes glade.

Be blithe, though thou ryde vp-on a
iade;

What thogh thyn hors be bothe foul[e]
and lene,

If he wol seruē thee, rekke nat a
bene—

Lookē that thyne hertē be murie eueremo!

00 ¶ 'Yis, sire,' quod he, 'yis, hoost, so
moote I go,

But I be myrie, ywis I wol be blamed.'
And right anon his tale he hath attam-
ed,

And thus he seyde vn-to vs euerichon,
This sweete preest, this goodly man,
sire Iohn:

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Nonnes
Preestes tale of the Cok and Hen
Chauntecleer and Pertelote.

05 A poure wydwe, somdel stape in age,
Was whilom dwellyng in a narwe cotege,
Beside a greue, stondynge in a dale.
This wydwe, of which I telle yow
my tale,

Syn thilke day that she was last a wyf,

10 In pacience ladde a ful symple lyf,
ffor litel was hir catel and hir rente;

By housbondrie of swich as God hir(e)
sente

She foond hir-self and eek hire
doughtren two.

Thre large sowes hadde she, and namo,
Three keen and eek a sheep, þat highte
Malle.

fful sooty was hir bour and eek hir[e]
halle,

In which she eet ful many a sklendre
meel.

Of poynant sauce hire neded neuer-
a-deel,

No deyntee morsel passed thurgh hir
throte;

Hir dietē was accordant to hir cote.

Repleccioun ne made hir(e) neuere sik;

Attempree dietē was al hir phisik,

And exercise, and hertes suffisaunce.

The goute lette hir(e) no-thing for
to daunce,

Napoplexie shente nat hir heed;

No wyn ne drank she, neither whit
ne reed.

Hir bord was serued moost with whit
and blak:

Milk and broun breed, in which she
foond no lak,

Seynd bacoun, and somtyme an ey or
tweye,

ffor she was, as it were, a maner deye.

¶ A yeerd she hadde, enclosed al aboute
With stikkes, and a drye dych with-
oute,

In which she hadde a cok, heet Chaun-
tecleer.

In al the land of crowyng nas his
peer;

His voys was murier than the murie or-
gon,

On messedayes that in the chirche gon.

Wel sikerer was his crowyng in his
logge

Than is a klokke or an abbey-orlogge.

By nature he knew ech[e] ascencioun
Of the equynoxial in thilke toun;

15 594—15 673. Eg. für D. 15 600. sire He.H.⁴, Ost(e) C.L.Sl.; mote He.C.P.Sl. 07. greue E., groue He., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. 1495]. 15. keen E.Eg., kyn He., etc. (Sk.). 25. Ne apoplexie Eg., Ne Poplexie C., etc. 33. heet E.He., hight Eg., etc. (Sk.). 38. or any He.Eg.C.L. 39. crew E.P. 40. the f. He.C.P.Sl.H.⁴ (Sk.).

[B 4047—4075]

[B 4076—4103]

ffor whan degrees fiftene were[n] ascended,
 Thanne crew he, that it myghte nat been amended.
 His coomb was redder than the fyn coral
 And batailled, as it were a castel-wal;
 45 His byle was blak, and as the zeet it shoon;
 Lyk asure were hise legges and hise toon,
 Hise nayles whiter than the lylle flour,
 And lyk the burned gold was his colour.
 This gentil cok hadde in his gouernance
 50 Seueñ hennes, for to doon al his plesaunce,
 Whiche were hise sustres and hise paramours,
 And wonder lyk to hym, as of colours,
 Of whiche the faireste hewed on hir throte
 Was cleped fair[e] damoysele Pertelote.
 55 Curteys she was, discreet, and debonaire,
 And compaignable, and bar hyr-self so faire
 Syn thilke day þat she was seuē-nyght oold,
 That trewely she hath the herte in hoold
 Of Chauntecleer, loken in euery lith;
 60 He loued hir(e) so, þat wel was hym therewith.
 But swich[e] a ioye was it to here hem synge,
 Whan þat the brighte sonne bigan to sprynge,
 In sweete accord: 'My lief is farē in londe!
 ffor thilke tyme, as I haue vnderstonde,
 65 Beestes and briddes koude speke and synge.
 ¶ And so bifel that in the dawninge,
 As Chauntecleer among hise wyues alle
 Sat on his perche, that was in the halle,
 And next hym sat this faire Pertelote,

This Chauntecleer gan gronen in his throte,
 As man þat in his dreem is drecched soore.
 ¶ And whan that Pertelote thus herde hym roore,
 She was agast, and seyde, 'O herte deere,
 What eyleth yow to grone in this manere?
 Ye been a verray sleper—fy for shame!' 75
 ¶ And he answerde, and seyde thus: 'Madame,
 I praye yow that ye take it nat agrief!
 By God, me thoughte I was in swich meschief
 Right now, þat yet myn herte is soore afright.
 Now God,' quod he, 'my sweueñ 80
 recche aright,
 And kepe my body out of foul prisoun!
 Me mette how that I romed vp and down
 With-inne oure yeerd, wheer-as I saugh a beest
 Was lyk an hound, and wolde han maad areest
 Vpon my body, and han had me deed. 85
 His colour was bitwixe yelow and reed,
 And tipped was his tayl and bothe hise eeris
 With blak, vnlyk the remenant of hise heeris;
 His snowte smal, with glowynge [e]yēn tweye—
 Yet of his look for feere almost I 90
 deye.
 This caused me my gronyng doutelees.'
 ¶ 'Avoy!' quod she, 'fy on yow, hertelees!
 Allas!' quod she, 'for, by that God aboue!
 Now han ye lost myn herte and al my loue.
 I kan nat loue a coward, by my feith! 95
 ffor certes, what-so any woman seith,
 We alle desiren, if it myghte bee,

15641. weren E. (Gl.). — Zwischen 54 u. 55 Eg. zwei unechte Verse [ähnl. 15961f.].
 62. gan He.Eg.C.P.H.* (Sk.). 66. the E.P., a He., etc. (Sk.). 73. o E., f. He., etc.
 78. thoughte E., mette He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[B 4104—4133]

[B 4134—4165]

- To han housbondes hardy, wise, and
free,
And secree, and no nygard, ne no fool,
00 Ne hym þat is agast of euery tool,
Ne noon auauntour, by that God aboue!
How dorste ye seyn—for shame!—vn-
to youre loue
That any-thing myghte make yow
aferd?
Hauē ye no mannes herte, and han
a berd?
05 ¶ Allas! and konne ye been agast of
sweuēys?
No-thing, God woot, but vanitee in
sweuēne is.
Sweuēnes engendren of replecciouns,
And ofte of fume, and of complecciouns,
Whan humours been to habundant in
a wight.
10 ¶ Certes, this dreem, which ye han
met to-nyght,
Cometh of *the grete* superfluytee
Of yourē rede colera, pardee!
Which causeth folk to dreden in hir
dremes
Of arwes, and of fyre with rede lemes;
15 Of *rede* beestes, that they wol hem byte,
Of contekes, and of whelpes grete and
lyte;
Right as the humour of *malencolie*
Causeth ful many^a man in sleep to
crie,
ffor feere of blake beres or boles blake,
20 Or elles blake deuēles wole hem take.
¶ Of othere humours koude I telle
also,
That werken many^a man in sleep
ful wo,
But I wol passe as lightly as I kan.
LO Catoun, which þat was so wys a
man,
25 Seyde he nat thus: “Ne do no fors
of dremes?”
¶ Now, sire,’ quod she, ‘whan we flee
fro the bemes,
ffor Goddes loue, as taak som laxatyf!

Vp peril of my soule and of my lyf,
I conseilē yow the beste, I wol nat
lye,
That bothe of colere and of malencolye
Ye purge yow, and for ye shal nat tarie,
Though in this toun is noon apothecarie,
I shal my-self to herbes techen yow
That shul been for your(e) hele and
for your(e) prow;
And in oure yeerd tho herbes shal I
fynde,
The whiche han of hir(e) propretee
by kynde
To purge yow bynethe and eek aboue.
fforyet nat this, for Goddes owene loue!
Ye been ful coleryk of compleccioun;
Ware the sonne in his ascensioun
Ne fynd[e] yow nat repleet of humours
hoote!
And if it do, I dar wel leye a grote,
That ye shul haue a ffeure terciane,
Or an agu, that may be yourē bane.
A day or two ye shul hauē digestyues
Of wormes, er ye takē youre laxatyues
Of lawriol, centaur(e), and ffumetere.
Or ellēs of ellebor, that groweth there,
Of katapucē, or of gaitrys beryis,
Of herbe yuē growyng in oure yeerd,
ther mery is;
Pekke hem [vp] right as they growe,
and et[e] hem yn.
Be myrie, housbondē, for youre fader
kyn!
Dredeth no dreem—I kan seyē yow
namoore.’
‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘graunt mercy of
yourē loore!
But nathelees, as touchyng Daun Ca-
toun,
That hath of wysdom swich a greet
renoun,
Though that he bad no dremes for
to drede,
By God! men may in olde bookes rede
Of many^a man moore of auctorite

15 698 ff.: vgl. 13081 ff. 15 706. f. C.L. 11. greet E., the grete He., etc. 15. rede] grete E. (Sk.). 16. contekes E.D., kontek He., etc. (Sk.), contelle C. 25. Sompnia ne cures: G. am Rande [Cato, Dist. II, 32]. 26. we] ye E.; the] thise He.D.H.⁴ 30/31. f. H.⁴ 50. ther] they He., þat L. (Sk.). 51. [vp] f. D.; et C.H.⁴

[B 4166—4199]

[B 4200—4231]

60 Than euere Caton was—so moote I
thee!—

That al the reuers seyn of this sentence,
And han wel founden by experience
That dremes been significaciouns
As wel of ðoye as of tribulaciouns

65 That folk enduren in this lif present.
Ther nedeth make of this noon argu-
ment,

The verray preeue sheweth it in dede.
¶ Oon of the gretteste auctour þat men
rede

Seith thus: þat whilom two felawes
wente

70 On pilgrimage in a ful good entente.
And happed so they coomen in a toun,
Wher-as ther was swich congregacioun
Of peple, and eek so streit of herberg-
age,

That they ne founde as muche as o
cotage

75 In which they bothe myghte logged
bee;

Wherfore they mosten of necessitee,
As for that nyght, departen compaignye;
And ech of hem gooth to his hostelrye,
And took his loggyng as it wolde falle.

80 That oon of hem was logged in a stalle,
ffer in a yeerd, with oxen of the plough;
That oother man was logged wel
ynough,

As was his auenture or his ffortune,
That vs gourneth alle as in commune.

85 ¶ And so bifel þat, longe er it were day,
This man mette in his bed, ther-as
he lay,

How þat his felawe gan vp-on hym calle,
And seyde, "Allas! for in an oxes stalle
This nyght I shal be mordred ther I
lye.

90 Now help me, deere brother, or I dye—
In allè haste com to me!" he sayde.
¶ This man out of his sleep for feere
abrayde.

But whan that he was wakened of his
sleep,

He turned hym, and took of it no keep;
Hym thoughte his dreem nas but a 95
vanitee.

Thus twies in his slepyng dremed hee,
And atte thridde tyme yet his felawe
Cam, as hym thoughte, and seide,

"I am now slawe!

Bihoold my bloody woundes depe and
wyde!

Arys vp erly in the morwe-tyde, 00
And at the West-gate of the toun,"
quod he,

"A carte ful of donge ther shaltow se,
In which my body^{is} hid ful priuely;
Do thilke carte arresten boldely.

My gold caused my mordre, sooth 05
to sayn"—

And tolde hym euery point how he
was slayn,

With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe,
And, truste wel, his dreem he foond
ful trewe.

ffor on the morwe, as soone as it was
day,

To his felawes in he took the way; 10
And whan þat he cam to this oxes
stalle,

After his felawe he bigan to calle.

¶ The hostiler answerde hym anon,
And seyde, "Sire, youre felawe is agon;
As soone as day he wente out of the 15
toun."

¶ This man gan fallen in suspecion,
Remembryng on hise dremes þat he
mette;

And forth he gooth—no lenger wolde
he lette—

Vn-to the westgate of the toun, and
fond

A dong-carte, as it were to donge lond, 20
That was arrayed in that same wise
As ye han herd the dede man deuyse;
And with an hardy herte he gan to
crye

Vengeance and iustice of this felonye:—
"My felawe mordred is this same nyght, 25

15761. this E.P., here L., his He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 64. as of | as He.D.P. 68. autours G., auctorite H.⁴ (auctours Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 14519]; [am Ranbe] Nota de Sompnio E., Tullius D., f. He., etc. [Cic., De divin. I, 27]. 75. ylogged He., etc. (Sk.). 86. [über mette] i. dremed E. 15820. went as it were He.G.H.⁴, went D., as he wente C.P.L.

[B 4232—4260]

[B 4261—4286]

And in this carte [heere] he lith gap-
 yng vpright!
 I crye out on the ministres," quod he,
 "That sholden kepe and reulen this
 citee:
 Harrow! allas! heere lith my felawe
 slayn!"

30 What sholde I moore vn-to this tale
 sayn?
 The peple out sterte, and caste the
 cart to grounde,
 And in the myddel of the donge they
 founde
 The dede man, that mordred was al
 newe.
 O blisful God, that art so iust and
 trewe! ¶ *Auctor*

35 Lo, how[e] þat thou biwreyst mordre
 alway!
 Mordre wol out, that se we day by day;
 Mordre is so wlatson and abhomyneable
 To God, that is so iust and resonable,
 That he ne wol nat suffre it heled be,

40 Though it abyde a yeer, or two, or
 thre—
 Mordre wol out, this my conclusioun!
 And right anon ministres of that toun
 Han hent the carter, and so soore hym
 pyned,
 Ank eek the hostiler so soore engyned,

45 That they biknewe hir wikkednesse
 anon,
 And were an-hanged by the nekke-bon.
 ¶ Heere may men seen þat dremes
 been to drede;
 And certes, in the same book I rede,
 Right in the nexte chapitrè after this—

50 I gabbe nat, so haue I ioye or blis—:
 Two men that wolde han passed ouer
 see,
 ffor certeyn cause, in-to a fer contree,
 If that the wynd ne hadde been con-
 trarie,
 That made hem in a citee for to tarie,

That stood ful myrie vpon an hauen- 55
 syde.
 But on a day, agayn the euen-tyde,
 The wynd gan chaunge, and blew right
 as hem leste.
 Iolif and glad they wente vn-to hir
 reste,
 And casten hem ful erly for to saille.
 ¶ But [herkneþ] to that o mon fil a 60
 greet meruaille:
 That oon of hem, in slepyng as he
 lay,
 Hym mette a wonder dreem agayn
 the day;
 Him thoughte a man stood by his
 beddes syde,
 And hym comanded þat he sholde
 abyde,
 And seyde hym thus: "If thou tomorwe 65
 wende
 Thow shalt be dreynt—my tale is at
 an ende."
 ¶ He wook, and tolde his felawe what
 he mette,
 And preyde hym his viage to lette;
 As for that day, he preyde hym to
 byde.

¶ His felawe, that lay by his beddes 70
 syde,
 Gan for to laughe, and scorned hym
 ful faste.
 "No dreem," quod he, "may so myn
 herte agaste,
 That I wol lette for to do my thynges.
 I sette nat a straw by thy dremynges;
 ffor sweuþes been but vanytees and 75
 iapes.
 Men dreme al day of owles or of apes,
 A'nd of many a maze ther-with-al;
 Men dreme of thyng þat neuere was
 ne shal.
 But sith I see that thou wolt heere
 abyde,
 And thus forslawthen wilfully thy tyde, 80

15 826. [heere] E.He.G., f. D., etc. 27—32. f. C.P.L. 31. out] vp He.H.⁴Ro.¹ (für L.
 34. [am Rande] Auctor: nur E.; beagl. 51: Adhuc de sompnio. 41: this is D., etc.
 58. wenten vn-to reste He.C.P.L.H.⁴ 60. herkneþ E.He.G.H.⁴, herkne C.P.L., f. D. (Sk.,
 Gl.). 68. for to G.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 69. byde E.He., a-bide G., etc. (Sk.). 76. or E.He.,
 and G., etc. 77. And eke D.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.).

[B 4287—4316]

[B 4317—4346]

God woot, it reweth me, and hauē
good day."

And thus he took his leue, and wente
his way.

But er þat he hadde half his cours
yseyled—

Noot I nat why, ne what myschaunce
it eyled—

85 But casuelly the shippes botme rente,
And ship and man vnder the water
wente,

In sighte of othere shippes it bisyde,
That with hem seyled at the same tyde.
And therfore, faire Pertelote so deere,

90 By swiche ensamples oldē yet maistow
leere

That no man sholde been to recchelees
Of dremes, for I seye thee, doutelees,
That many a dream ful soore is for to
drede.

LO! in the lyf of seint Kenelm I rede,

95 That was Kenulphus sonē, the noble
kyng

Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a
thyng;

A lite er he was mordred, on a day,
His mordre in his auysioun he say.
His norice hym expowned euery-deel

00 His sweuēne, and bad hym for to kepe
hym weel

ffro traisoun, but he nas but .VII. yeer
oold;

And therfore litel talē hath he toold
Of any dream, so hooly was his herte.
By God! I hadde leuere than my sherte

05 That ye hadde rad his legende, as
haue I.

Damē Pertelote, I seye yow trewely:
Macroβeus, that writ the auisioun

In Affrike of the worthy Cipiou, n
Affermeth dremes, and seith þat they
been

10 Warnynge of thynges þat men after
seen.

¶ And forther-moore, I praye yow, look-
eth wel

In the Olde Testament of Daniel,
If he heeld dremes any vanitee.

¶ Reede eek of Ioseph, and ther shul
ye see

Wher dremes be somtyme—I seye nat 15
alle—

Warnynge of thynges þat shul after
falle.

¶ Looke of Egipte the kyng daun
Pharao,

His baker and his butiller also,
Wher they ne felte noon effect in
dremes.

Who-so wol seke[n] actes of sondry 20
remes,

May rede of dremes many a wonder
thyng.

¶ Lo Cresus, which þat was of Lyde
kyng!

Mette he nat that he sat vp-on a tree,
Which signified he sholde anhangd
bee?

¶ Lo heere Andromacha, Ectores wyf! 25
That day that Ector sholde lese his
lyf,

She dremed on the same nyght biforn
How þat the lyf of Ector sholde be
lorn[e],

If thilke day he wente in-to bataille.
She warned hym, but it myghte nat 30
auaile;

He wente for to fighte natheles,
But he was slayn anon of Achilles—
But thilke tale is al to longe [for] to
telle,

And eek it is ny day—I may nat dwelle.
Shortly I seye, as for conclusioun, 35

That I shal han of this auisioun
Aduersitee, and I seye forthermoor
That I ne telle of laxatyues no stoor,
ffor they been venymes, I woot it weel—
I hem diffye, I loue hem neuēr-a-deel! 40

15 890. yet E., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 94. [Randn.] De sompnio sancti kenelmi E., De rege Kenulpho D. 96. Mercenrike L., Mertenrike E., etc. 15 901. ffo(m) G.D., ffor E., etc. (Sk., Gl.); seuen(e) G., etc. 03. was] is E. 11. [Randn.] Adhuc de sompnijs E. 14. Redyth G., Rede He., etc. 20. seken E. (Sk., Gl.). 22: vgl. 15423ff. 25. Adromacha E.C.P.L., Andromacha He. (Sk., Gl.), etc. [Traum nach] Dares Phrygius]. 33. [for] E. 37/38. moore: store G., etc. (Sk.). 39. venymes E.He.G., venemous D., etc. (Sk.).

[B 4347—4374]

[B 4375—4402]

¶ Now let vs speke of myrthe, and
stynte al this.

Madame Pertelote, so haue I blis!
Of o thyng God hath sent me large
grace;
ffor whan I se the beautee of youre
face,

45 Ye been so scarlet reed aboute youre
[e]yën,

It maketh al my drede for to dyen;
ffor al-so siker as "In principio
Mulier est hominis confusio—"

¶ Madame, the sentence of this latyn is:
50 "Womman is mannes ioye and al his
blis."

ffor whan I feele a-nyght your(e) softe
syde,

Al be it that I may nat on yow ryde,
ffor þat oure perche is maad so narwe,
allas!—

I am so ful of ioye and of solas,

55 That I diffye bothe sweuene and dreem.
And with that word he fleydoun fro the
beem,

ffor it was day, and eke hise hennes
alle;

And with a chuk he gan hem for to
calle,

ffor he hadde found a corn lay in
the yerd.

60 Real he was, he was namoore aferd,
And fethered Pertelote twenty tyme,
And tradde *hir(e)* eke as ofte er it was
pryme.

He looketh as it were a grym leoun,
And on hise toos he rometh vp and
doun;

65 Hym deigned nat to sette his foot to
grounde.

He chukketh whan he hath a corn
y-founde,

And to hym rennen thanne hise wyues
alle.

Thus roial, as a prince is in an halle,

Leue I this Chauntecleer in his pasture,
And after wol I telle his auenture. 7

Whan þat the *month*e in which the
world bigan,

That highte March, whan God first
maked man,

Was compleet, and passed were also,
Syn March bigan, thritty dayes and
two,

Bifel that Chauntecleer in al his pryde, 7
Hise seuene wyues walkynge by his
syde,

Caste vp hise [e]yën to the brighte
sonne,

That in the signe of Taurus hadde
yronne

Twenty degrees and oon, and som-what
moore,

And knew by kynde, and by noon 8
oother loore,

That it was *pryme*, and crew with
blisful steuene.

'The sonne,' he seyde, 'is clomben
vp on heuene

ffourty degrees and oon, and moore
ywis;

Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis,
Herkneth thise blisful briddes how they 8
syng,

And se the fresshe floures how they
sprynge!

fful is myn herte of reuel and solas.'
But sodeynly hym fil a sorweful cas,
ffor euere the latter ende of ioye is
wo.

God woot þat worldly ioye is soone 9
ago,

And if a rethor koude faire endite,
He in a *cronycle* saufully myghte it write,
As for a souereyn notabiltee.

Now euery wys man, lat hym herkne
mel

This storie is also trewe, I vndertake, 9
As is the book of *Launcelot de Lake*,

15947—50. f. D. [vgl. 14015]. 56. fly E. (Gl.), fleigh C.P.H.⁴, fließ L. 61. And E., He He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 62. tradde hire eke D., t. hire L., trad E., etc.; er þat H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); were C.P.L. 66. He E.G., And He.D.H.⁴, Ay C.P.L. 68. an E.G., his He., etc. (Sk.). 73. I-passed D. (Sk., Gl.). 74. thritty dayes and two] tway monþes and dayes tuo H.⁴ 76. him bisyde He.G.D.C.P. 83. twenty H.⁴, 90. G., ffourty E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 92. Cronique C.H.⁴ (Sk.). 93. [Manbn.] Petrus Comestor E.He.H.⁴, Nota Salomon D.

[B 4403—4436]

[B 4437—4466]

That wommen holde in ful greet reuer-
ence.—

Now wol I come agayn to my sentence.

A colfox, ful of sly iniquitee,

00 That in the groue hadde wonned yeres
three,

By heigh ymaginacioun forn-cast,
The same nyght thurgh-out the hegges
brast

In-to the yerd, ther Chauntecleer the
faire

Was wont, and eek his wyues, to re-
paire;

05 And in a bed of wortes stille he lay,
Til it was passed vndren of the day,
Waitynge his tyme on Chauntecleer to
falle,

As gladly doon thise homycides alle
That in await ligger to mordre men.

10 O false mordroure, lurkyng in thy den!
O newe Scariot, newe Genylon!
ffalse dissymilour, o Greek Synon,
That broghtest Troye al outrely to
sorwe!

O Chauntecleer! acursed be that morwe

15 That thou in-to that yerd flaugh fro
the bemes!

Thou werest ful wel ywarned by thy
dremes

That thilke day was perilous to thee.
But what þat God forwoot moot nedes
bee,

After the opinioun of certein clerkis.

20 Witnesse on hym that any parfit clerk
is,

Thát in scole is greet altercacioun
In this mateere, and greet disputisoun,
And hath been of an hundred thousand
men.

But I ne kan nat bulte it to the bren,

25 As kan the hooly doctour Augustyn,
Or Boece, or the Bisshop Bradwardyn,
Wheither that Goddes worthy forwityng
Streyneth me nedely to doon a thyng—
Nedely clepe I symple necessitee—,

30 Or elles, if free choys be graunted me

To do that same thyng, or do it noght,
Though God forwoot it er þat it was
wroght;

Or if his wityng streyneth neuer-a-deel
But by necessitee condicioneel—

I wil nat han to do of swich mateere: 35
My tale is of a cok, as ye may heere,
That took his conseil of his wyf with
sorwe,

To walken in the yerd vpon that morwe
That he hadde met that drem þat I
of tolde.

Wommennes conseils been ful oftecolde; 40
Wommannes conseil broghte vs first
to wo,

And made Adam fro Paradys to go,
Ther-as he was ful myrie—and wel at
ese.

But for—I noot to whom—it myghte
displese,

If I conseil of wommen wolde blame, 45
I asse ouer! for I seyde it in my game.
Rede auctours wher(e) they trete of
swich mateere,

And what they seyn of wommen ye may
heere:

Thise been the cokkes wordes, and nat
myne—

I kan no harm of no womman diuyn. 50
Faire in the soond, to bathe hir(e)
myrily,

Lith Pertelote, and alle hir(e) sustres
by,

Agayn the sonne, and Chauntecleer
so free

Soong murier than the mermayde in
the see;

ffor Physiologus seith sikerly 55
How þat they syngen wel and myrily.
¶ And so bifel that, as he caste his
[e]yē

Among the wortes on a boterflye,
He was war of this fox, þat lay ful
lowe.

No-thing ne liste hym thanne for to 60
crowse,

15998. come E., torne He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 16012. dissynlour (?) E. 15. that yerd E.G.D., the y. He.C.L.H.⁴, 3eerd P. 16. dreme E. 28. nedefully E.; for to He., etc. (Sk.). 32. it was] I was He.G. 42. out of E. 44. myghte He.G. (Sk.). 46. seye E. 47. vgl. Rom. R. 15397ff. 50. of] on He.G.D. 57. caste He.G. (Sk.).

[B 4467—4494]

[B 4495—4523]

But cride anon, 'cok cok', and vp he
 sterte,
 As man that was affrayed in his herte;
 ffor naturelly a beest desireth flee
 ffro his contrarie, if he may it see,
 65 Though he neuēr erst haddē seyn it
 with his [e]yē.
 ¶ This Chauntecleer, whan he hym gan
 espye,
 He wolde han fled, but that the fox
 anon
 Seyde, 'Gentil sire, allas! wher wol
 ye gon?
 Be ye affrayed of me that am youre
 freend?
 70 Now certes, I werē worse than a feend,
 If I to yow wolde harm or vileynye.
 I am nat comē youre conseil for tespye,
 But trewely, the cause of my comynge
 Was oonly for to herkne how that ye
 synge.
 75 ffor trewely, ye haue as myrie[^]a steuene
 As any aungel hath that is in heuene.
 Ther-with ye han in musyk moore feel-
 ynge
 Than haddē Boece, or any þat kan
 synge.
 My lord youre fader—God his soule
 blesse!—
 80 And eek youre mooder, of hir gen-
 tillesse,
 Han in myn hous ybeen to my greet
 ese,
 And certes, sirē, ful fayn wolde I yow
 plese.
 ¶ But for men speke of syngyng, I
 wol [yow] seye—
 So moote I brouke wel myne [e]yē
 tweye!—
 85 Sauē yow, I herde neuere man yet
 synge
 As didē youre fader in the morwen-
 ynge.
 Certes, it was of herte al that he song,
 And, for to make his vois the moore
 strong,

He wolde so peyne hym, that with
 bothe hise [e]yēn
 He moste wynke, so loude he wolde
 cryen,
 And stonden on his tiptoon ther-with-
 al,
 And strecche forth his nekke long and
 smal.
 And eek he was of swich discrecioun,
 That ther nas no man in no regioun
 That hym in song or wisdom myghte
 passe.
 I hauē wel rad in "daun Burnel the
 Asse,"
 Among hise vers, how that ther was
 a cok,
 ffor that a preestes sonē yaf hym a
 knok
 Vp-on his leg, whil he was yong and
 nyce,
 He made hym for to lese his benefice.
 But certeyn, ther nys no comparisoun
 Bitwixē the wisdom and discrecioun
 Of yourē fader, and of his subtiltee.
 Now syngeth, sirē, for seinte charitee!
 Lat se, konnē ye youre fader coudre-
 fete?
 ¶ This Chauntecleer hise wynges gan to
 bete,
 As man þat koude his traysoun nat
 espie:
 So was he rauysshed with his flaterye.
 Allas, ye lordes! many[^]a fals flatour
 Is in youre courtes, and many[^]a
 losengeour
 That plesen yow wel moore, by my
 feith!
 Than he that soothfastnesse vn-to yow
 seith.
 Rédeth Ecclesiaste of fflaterye;
 Beth war, ye lordes, of hir trecherye!
 ¶ This Chauntecleer stood hye vp-on
 his toos,
 Strecchyng his nekke, and heeld hise
 [e]yēn cloos,
 And gan to crowe loude for the nones.

16068. wher E.He., whidyr G.D., why H.⁴, what (wol ȝe doon) C.P.L. 73/74. f. H.⁴
 74. hath f. E. 83. [yow] E.; I wol s. f. L. 84/85. f. L. 85. yow E.G.C., ye He., etc.; herde
 I E., I herde He.G., I ne h. D., etc.; yet E., so He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 98. ffor that E., That
 for D., ffor He., etc. 16110. Courtes E., hous D., court He., etc. 14: f. 3. Cir. XII, 11 ff. (?)

[B 4524—4547]

[B 4548—4576]

And daun Russell, the fox, stirte vp
 atones,
 And by the gargat hente Chauntecleer,
 20 And on his bak toward the wode hym
 beer;
 ffor yet ne was ther no man þat hym
 sewed.
 ¶ O destinee, that mayst nat been
 eschewed!
 Allas! þat Chauntecleer fleigh fro the
 bemes!
 Allas! his wyf ne roghte nat of
 dremes!
 25 And on a ffriday fil al this mes-
 chaunce.
 ¶ O Venus, that art goddesse of ples-
 aunce!
 Syn that thy seruant was this Chaun-
 tecleer,
 And in thy seruyce dide al his poweer,
 Moore for delit than world to multi-
 plye,
 30 Why *woltow* suffre hym on thy day to
 dye?
 ¶ O Gaufred, deere maister souerayn!
 That, whan thy worthy kyng Richard
 was slayn
 With shot, compleynedest his deeth
 so soore,
 Why ne hadde I now thy sentence
 and thy loore
 35 The ffriday for to chide, as diden
 ye?—
 ffor on a ffriday soothly slayn was
 he—
 Thanne wolde I shewe yow þat I
 koude pleyne
 ffor Chauntecleres drede and for his
 peyne.
 ¶ Certes, swich cry ne lamentacion
 40 Was neuere of ladyes maad, whan
 Ylion
 Was wonne, and Pirrus with his streyte
 swerd,

Whan he hadde hent kyng Priam by
 the berd,
 And slayn hym, as seith vs Enēydos,
 As maden allē the hennes in the clos,
 Whan they hadde seyn of Chauntecleer 45
 the sighte.
 But *souereynly* dame Pertelote shrigh-
 tful louder than dide Hasdrubales wyf,
 Whan þat hir housbonde hadde lost
 his lyf,
 And þat the Romayns hadde brend
 Cartage.
 She was so ful of torment and of rage, 50
 That wilfully in-to the fyr she sterte,
 And brende hir-seluē with a stede-
 fast herte.
 ¶ O woful hennes! right so criden ye
 As, whan that Nero brende the citee
 Of Rome, cryden senatoures wyues, 55
 ffor þat hir housbondes losten alle
 hir lyues;
 With-uten gilt this Nero hath hem
 slayn.—
 Now *wol I turne* to my tale agayn.
 This sely wydwe and eek hir doghtres
 two
 Herden thise hennes crie and maken 60
 wo,
 And out at dores stirten they anon,
 And sye[n] the fox toward the groue
 gon,
 And bar vp-on his bak the cok away,
 And cryden, 'Out! harrow and weila-
 way!
 Ha, ha, the fox!'—and after hym they 65
 ran,
 And eek with staues many another
 man;
 Ran Colle, oure dogge, and Talbot, and
 Gerland,
 And Malkyn, with a dystaf in hir hand;
 Ran cow and calf, and eek the verray
 hogges,
 So fered for *the* berkyng of the dogges, 70

16123. fleigh E.H.⁴, fly He., fley G.D., fel C.P.L. 30. woltow D., woltestow E. (Gl.), woldestow He., etc. (Sk.). 40f.: vgl. 4708f. 46. sodeynly E. 147f.: vgl. 11715f. 48. ylost He.G.D. 51. vnto He. H.⁴ 55. Senatouris(-es) G.D.H.⁴; the s. He.C.P.L.H.⁴ [vgl. 15175f.]. 58. turne I wole E. 59. This] The He.G.D.H.⁴ 62. seyen He.G., seye D., sawe C.L., segh P., sayden H.⁴ 69. eek f. E.H.⁴ 70. ffor-fered G., Sore aferde C.P.L., So were þey fered H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); the berkyng D., the f. E., etc.

[B 4576—4604]

[B 4605—4632]

And shoutyng of the men and wommen
eek.
They ronne so, hem thoughte hir herte
breek,
They yolliden as feendes doon in helle;
The dokes cryden as men wolde hem
quelle;
75 The gees for feere flowen ouer the
trees;
Out of the hyve cam the swarm of
bees—
So hydous was the noyse, a! benę-
dicitee!
Certes he, Iakke Straw, and his meynne
Ne made neuere shoutes half so shille,
80 Whan that they wolden any fflemying
kille,
As thilke day was maad vp-on the
fox!
Of bras they broghten bemes, and of
box,
Of horn, of boon, in whichę they blewe
and powped,
And ther-with-al they skrieked, and they
howped—
85 It semed as that heuene sholde falle!
Now, goode men, I prayę yow, herk-
neth alle!
Lo, how ffortune turneth sodeynly
The hope and pryde eek of hir enemy!
This cok, that lay vpon the foxes bak,
90 In al his drede vn-to the fox he spak,
And seyde, 'Sire, if that I were as ye,
Yet wolde I seyn, as wys God helpe
me:
"Turneth agayn, ye proude cherles alle!
A verray pestilence vp-on yow falle!
95 Now am I come vn-to the wodes syde,
Maugree youre heed, the cok shal heere
abyde!
I wol hym ete in feith, and that anon."'
¶ The fox answerde, 'In feith, it shal
be don!'

And as he spak that word, al sodeynly
This cok brak from his mouth delyuerly,
And heighe vp-on a tree he fleigh
anon.
And whan the fox saugh þat he was
ygon,
¶ 'Allas!' quod he, 'o Chauntecleer,
allas!
I hauę to yow,' quod he, 'ydoon tres-
pas,
In as muche as I makid yow aferd,
Whan I yow hente, and broghte out
of this yerd.
But, sire, I dide it of no wikke en-
tente.
Com down, and I shal telle yow what
I mente;
I shal seyę sooth to yow—God helpe
me so!
¶ 'Nay, thannę,' quod he, 'I shrewe
vs bothe two,
And first I shrewę my-self, bothę blood
and bones,
If thou bigylę me any ofter than ones.
Thou shalt na-moore thurgh thy flaterye
Do me to synge and wynke with myn
[e]yę;
ffor he that wynketh, whan he sholde
see,
Al wilfully, God lat him neuere theel'
¶ 'Nay,' quod the fox, 'but God yeue
hym meschaunce
That is so vndiscreet of gouernaunce,
That iangleth whan he sholdę holde
his pees.'
¶ Lo, swich it is for to be recchelees
And negligēt, and truste on flaterye!
¶ But ye that holden this tale a folye,
As of a fox, or of a cok and hen,
Tāketh the moralite, goodę men!
ffor saint Paul seith þat 'al that writen
is,
To oure doctrine it is ywrite ywis.'

16171/72. eke: breke D., etc. (Sk.). 73. yelleden He., etc. (Sk.). 16175—16230. H.²
für G. 16176/75: umgestellt C.P.L.H.² 79. shille E.D.L., shrille He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
84. skrieked E.He., schried P., shryked(en) D., etc. (Sk.). 88. eek f. E. [oð. pridę?].
92. wolde E.D., sholde He., etc. (Sk.). 95. I am He.D.; the E.D., this He., etc. (Sk.).
96. Cox E., Cook D. 99. as E.D., whil H.², f. He., etc. 16201. fley He., flaw D., flyge L.,
flewe H.² 02. I-goon H.⁴, gon E., etc. 06. broghte He.; out of] in to E.He.D. 07. of E.,
in He., etc. (Sk.). 09. help E.He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 12. any E.He.H.⁴, f. D., etc. (Sk.).
25: II. Tim. III, 16 [vgl. 19403].

[B 4633—4652; G 1]

[G 2—28]

Takeþ the fruyt, and lat the chaf be stille!

Now, goode God, if that it be thy wille,
As seith my lord, so make vs alle
goode men,

30 And brynge vs to his heighe blisse!
Amen.

¶ Heere is ended the Nonnes preestes tale.

[Sire Nonnes Preest, oure hooste seide a-noon,*)

I-blissed be thy breche & euery ston!
This was a murie tale of Chauntecleer.

But by my trouthe, if þou were seculer,
(5) Thow woldest ben a tredefoul a-right;
ffor if þou haue corage as þou hast
myght,

The were nede of hennes, as I wene,
Ȓa moo than seuene tymes seuentene.
Se, whiche braunes hath this gentil
Preest,

(10) So gret a nekke & swich a large breest!
He loketh as a sparhauke with hise
eyen,

Him nedeth nat his colour for to dyghen
With brasile, ne with greyn of Portyn-
gale.

Now, sire, faire falle ȝow for ȝoure
tale!

(15) And after that he, with ful merie cheere,
Seide vn-to a-nother, as ȝe shuln heere.]

VIII. Fragment (G.).

22. The Seconde Nonnes Tale.**)

a) ¶ The prologe of the Seconde
Nonnes tale.

THE minstre and the norice vn-to
vices,

Which that men clepe in Englissh
ydelnesse,

That porter of the gate is of delices,
To eschue, and by hir contrarie hir(e)
oppresses,

That is to seyn: by leueful bisynesse, 35
Wel oghten we to doon al oure entente,
Lest that the feend thurgh ydelnesse
vs shente.

ffor he that with hise thousand
cordes slye

Continuēly vs waiteth to biclappe,
Whan he may man in ydelnesse espye, 40
He kan so lightly cacche hym in his
trappe;

Til þat a man be hent right by the
lappe,

He nys nat war the feend hath hym
in honde:

Wel oghte vs werche, and ydelnesse
withstonde.

And though men dradden neuere for 45
to dye,

Yet seen men wel by resoun, doutelees,
That ydelnesse is roten slogardye,
Of which ther neuere comth no good,
nencrees,

And seen þat slouth hire holdeth in
a lees

Oonly to slepe, and for to ete and 50
drynke,

And to deuouren al that othere swynke.

And for to putte vs fro swich ydel-
nesse,

That cause is of so greet confusioun,
I haue heer doon my feithful bisynesse
After the legende, in translacioun, 55
Right of thy glorious lif and passioun,
Thou with thy gerland wrought with rose
and lillie,

Thee meene I, mayde and martir,
Seintē Cecilie.

16 229. [Randn.] Scilicet dominus Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis E.He., Kantuar' D. —

*) Diese 16 Verse, nur in D., Ad. u. Ro.¹ vorhanden, scheinen echt, doch vom Dichter später verworfen; vgl. oben 14 724 ff., besonders B. 5/6 u. 14 728/29, und das unsichere 'a nother' (the Nunne Ad.) B. 16. — **) Folgt hinter Frank. T. [B. 11 940] in He.C.P.L.H.⁴ — 31—44. Sl. für G., — 66 Se. für C. 33. porter at He.D.H.⁴ (Gl.). 37. shente E.P.L., hente He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 47: vgl. 18 893. 48. no good nencrees E.He.D., encrees G., noon encrese. Se.P.L., neuer g. encrees H.⁴ (no g. e. Sk., Gl.). 49. it E., hir He., etc. 50. for to slepe and ete He.G.D.Se. 57. of rose He.D.Se.P. (rooses Sk.). 58. martir] mooder E.; Seint(e) f. E.H.⁴

[G 29—55]

[¶ *Inuocucio ad Mariam*

AND thou that flour of virgines art
alle,

60 Of whom that Bernard list so wel to
write,

To thee at my bigynnyng first I calle,
Thou confort of vs wrecches! do me
endite

Thy maydens deeth that wan, thurgh
hir merite,

The eternel lyf, and of the feend
victorie,

65 As man may after reden in hir storie.

Thow mayde and mooder, doghter
of thy sone!

Thow welle of mercy, synful soules cure,
In whom that God, for bountee, chees
to wone!

Thow humble and heigh ouer euery
creature!

70 Thow nobledest so ferforth oure nature,
That no desdeyn the makere hadde of
kynde

His sone in blood and flesh to clothe
and wynde.

With-inne the cloistre blisful of thy
sydis

Took mannes shap the erterneel loue
and pees,

75 That of the tryne compas lord and gyde
is,

Whom erthe, and see, and heuene out
of relees

Ay heryen; and thou, virginē wem-
melees,

Baar of thy body, and dweltest mayden
pure,

The creatour of euery creature.

80 Assembled is in thee magnificence
With mercy, goodnesse, and with swich
pitee,

That thou, that art the sorwe of excel-
lence,

Nat oonly helpest hem that preyen thee,

But often tyme, of thy benygnytee,

85 ffyl frely, er that men thyn help biseche,

[G 56—84]

Thou goost biforn, and art hir lyues
leche.

Now help, thow meeke and blisful
faire mayde,

Me flemed wrecche in this desert of
galle;

Thynke on the womman Cananee, that
sayde

That whelpes ete[n] somme of the
crommes alle

That from hir lordes table been yfalle,
And though that I, vnworthy sone of
Eue,

Be synful, yet accepte my bileue.

And for that feith is deed with-
outen werkis,

So for to werken yif me wit and space, 90
That I be quit fro thennes þat moost
derk is!

O thou, that art so fair and ful of
grace,

Be myn aduocat in that heighe place,
Theras with-outen ende is songe
'Osanne,'

Thow Cristes mooder, doghter deere 00
of Anne!

And of thy light my soule in prison
lighte,

That troubled is by the contagioun
Of my body, and also by the wighte
Of ertheþ lust and fals affeccio[n];

O hauene of refut! o saluacioun 05
Of hem þat been in sorwe and in
distresse,

Now help!—for to my werk I wol me
dresse.

Yet preye I yow þat reden that
I write,

fforyeuē me that I do no diligence
This ilke storie subtilly to endite— 10
ffor boþe haue I the wordes and sentence
Of hym that at the seintes reuerence

The storie wroot—, and folwen hir le-
gende,

And praye yow that ye wolē my werk
amende.

16259 ff.: vgl. Dante, Paradiso, XXXIII, 1 ff. 61. I first He.D., I leste to G. 74. eternal He.G.D.H.⁴ (Sk.), eterne C.P.L. 80ff.: vgl. 13380ff. 81. and swich He.G.D.P.. 89. Thynk(e) E.He.G.D. (Sk., Gl.), Thenk(e) C., etc.: id. 445 [Matth. XV, 27]. 90. ete H.⁴ 92. sone (?) douhter L. 16303/04. f. C.L. 05. o refut He.C.P.L. 14. I E., And He., etc. (Sk.).

[G 85—112]

[G 113—136]

15 First wolde I *yow* the name of seinte
 Cecilie ¶ [*Interpretacio no-*
*minis Cecilie**]
 Expowne, as men may in hir storie see.
 It is to seye in englissh 'heuenes lilie,'
 ffor pure chaastnesse of virginitee;
 Or for she whitenesse hadde of honestee,
 20 And grene of conscience, and of good
 fame
 The soote sauour, 'lilie' was hir name.
 Or 'Cecilie' is to seye 'the wey to
 blynde,'
 ffor she ensample was by good tech-
 ynge;
 Or elles 'Cecile,' as I writen fynde,
 25 Is ioyned, by a maner conioynynge
 Of 'heue' and 'lia,' and heere, in
 figurynge,
 The 'heue' is set for 'thoght of hooly-
 nesse,'
 And 'lia' for hir lastynge bisynesse.
 'Cecile' may eek be seyde in this
 manere:
 30 'Wantynge of blyndnesse,' for hir grete
 light
 Of sapience, and for hir(e) thewes
 cleere;
 Or elles, loo! this maydens name bright
 Of 'heue' and 'leos' comth, for which
 by right
 Men myghte hir(e) wel the 'heue'
 of peple' calle,
 35 Ensampler of goode and wise werkes
 alle.
 ffor 'leos,' 'peple' in englissh is to
 seye,
 And right as men may in the heue'
 see
 The sonne and moone, and sterres
 euery weye,
 Right so men goostly in this mayden
 free
 40 Syen of feith the magnanymyte,
 And eek the cleernesse hool of sapience,
 And sondry werkes, brighte of excel-
 lence.

And right so as thise philosophres
 write
 That heue' is swift and round, and
 eek brennyng,
 Right so was faire Cecilie the white 45
 fful swift and bisy euere in good werk-
 ynge,
 And round and hool in good perseuer-
 ynge,
 And brennyng euere in charite ful
 brighte;
 Now haue I yow declared what she
 highte.

¶ *Explicit.*

b) ¶ Here bigynneth the Seconde Non-
 nes tale of the lyf of Seinte Cecile.

This mayden bright Cecilie, as hir 50
 lif seith, ¶
 Was come[n] of Romayns and of noble
 kynde,
 And from hir cradell vp fostred in the
 feith
 Of Crist, and bar his gospel in hir
 mynde.
 She neuere cessed, as I writen fynde,
 Of hir preyere, and God to loue and 55
 drede,
 Bisekyng hym to kepe hir mayden-
 hede.
 And whan this mayden sholde vn-to
 a man
 Ywedded be, that was ful yong of age,
 Which that ycleped was Valerian,
 And day was comen of hir marriage, 60
 She, ful devout and humble in hir[e]
 corage,
 Vnder hir robe of gold, that sat ful
 faire,
 Hadde next hir flessch yclad hir(e) in
 an haire.
 And whil the orgues maden melodie,
 To God allone in herte thus sang she: 65
 'O Lord! my soule and eek my body
 gye

16315—70. Sl. für G. 15. yow f. E. *) [Randb., Forti.] quam ponit frater Iacobus Ianuensis in legenda aurea [f. E.] E.He.D. 17. in E.P., on He., etc. [heuenes: lat. coeli]. 22. ['wey to blynde': lat. caecis via]. 40. Seen P.H.⁴, Sayen He., etc. (Sk.). 51. come He.D. 64. whil that He.D.; Organs He.H. 'Sl. (Sk., Gl.), Orgenes D.L., Orgles C.P.

[G 137—165]

[G 166—191]

- Vnwemmed, lest that it confounded be!
 And for his louē that dyde vp-on a
 tree,
 Euery seconde and thridde day she
 faste,
 70 Ay biddynge in hir(e) orisons ful faste.
 The nyght cam, and to bedde mostē
 she gon
 With hir housbonde, as ofte is the
 manere;
 And pryuely to hym she seyde anon,
 'O sweete and wel biloued spouse deere!
 75 Ther is a conseil, and ye wolde it heere,
 Which that right fayn I wolde vn-to
 yow seye,
 So that ye swerē ye shul me nat
 biwreye.'
 ¶ Valerian gan faste vn-to hir(e)
 swere
 That for no cas, ne thyng that myghte
 be,
 80 He sholde neuere mo biwreien here,
 And that at erst to hym thus seyde she:
 'I haue an aungel which that loueth me,
 That with greet louē, wher-so I wake
 or sleepe,
 Is redy ay my body for to kepe.
 85 And if *that* he may feelen, out of
 drede,
 That ye me touche or loue in vileynye,
 He right anon wol sle yow with the
 dede,
 And in youre yowthe thus ye sholden
 dye;
 And if that ye in clene louē me gye,
 90 He wol yow loue[n] as me for youre
 clennesse,
 And shewen yow his ioye and his
 bryghnesse.'
 ¶ Valerian, corrected as God wolde,
 Answerde agayn, 'If I shal trusten thee,
 Lat me that aungel se, and hym bi-
 holde;
 95 And if that it a verray angel bee,

Thanne wol I doon as thou hast prayed
 me;
 And if thou loue another man, for sothe,
 Right with this swerd thanne wol I
 sle yow bothel'
 Cecile answerde anon right in this
 wise:
 'If that yow list, the angel shul ye see,
 So þat ye trowe in Crist, and yow
 baptize.
 Gooth forth to Via Apia,' quod shee,
 'That fro this toun ne stant but *miles*
 three,
 And to the poure folkes þat ther dwelle,
 Seye hem right thus as that I shal yow
 telle:
 Telle hem that I, Cecile, yow to hem
 sente
 To shewen yow the goode Vrban, the
 olde,
 ffor secree thynges and for good en-
 tente.
 And whan that ye Seint Vrban han bi-
 holde,
 Telle hym the wordes whichē þat I
 to yow tolde,
 And whan þat he hath purged yow fro
 synne,
 Thanne shul ye se that angel er ye
 twynne.'
 ¶ Valerian is to the place ygon,
 And, right as hym was taught by his
 lernynge,
 He foond this hooly olde Vrban anon,
 Among the seintes buryeles lotynge.
 And he anon, with-outen tariynge,
 Dide his message, and whan þat he it
 tolde,
 Vrban for ioye his handes gan vp-
 holde.
 The teeris from his [e]yēn leet he
 falle:
 'Almyghty Lord, o Ihesu Crist!' quod
 he,

16369. and E.He.D., or C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 77. me E., it He., etc. (Gl.). 81. thus f. He.G.D. 85. that f. E. (3l. f. H.⁴). 86—89. f. C.L., *unedite* B. P. 88. f. G. 90. louen E. (Sk., Gl.). 92. This Valerian He.G.D.; id. 413. 16401. in E., on He., etc. (Sk.). o8. thynges E., nedes He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 10. þat f. He.G.D.P. (Sk.), to f. C.L. (Gl.). 16. buryeles E., buryels He., etc. (Sk.) (veryely G.); [*über* lotynge] i. latitantem E.He.D., i. latitans C.L.

[G 192—218]

[G 219—248]

Sower(e) of chast conseil, hierde of
vs alle!
The fruyt of thilke seed of chastitee
That thou hast sowe in Cecile taak to
thee!
25 Lo! lyk a bisy bee, withouten gile,
Thee seruyth ay thyn owene thral
Cecile!
ffor thilke spouse that she took right
now,
fful lyk a fiers leoun, she sendeth
heere
As meke as euere was any lamb to
yow!
30 And with that word anon ther gan
appere
An oold man, clad in white clothes
cleere,
That hadde a book with lettre of gold
in honde,
And gan bifore Valerian to stonde.
Valerian as deed fil down for drede
35 Whan he hym saugh, and he vp hente
hym tho,
And on his book right thus he gan
to rede:
'O Lord, o feith, o God, with-uten
mo,
O Cristendom, and fader of alle also,
Abouen alle and ouer alle euerywhere!
40 These wordes al with gold ywriten were.
Whan this was rad, thanne seyde
this olde man:
'Leeuestow this thyng or no? Seye ye
or nay?
'I leue al this thyng' quod Valerian;
'ffor sother thyng than this, I dar wel
say,
45 Vnder the heuene no wight thynke
may.'
Tho vanysshed this olde man, he nyste
where,
And Pope Vrban hym cristened right
there.
¶ Valerian gooth hoom, and fynt
Cecile

With-inne his chambre with an angel
sonde.
This angel hadde of roses and of lillie 50
Corones two, the which he bar in honde,
And first to Cecile, as I vnderstonde,
He yaf that oon, and after gan he
take
That oother to Valerian, hir make.
'With body clene and with vnwem- 55
med thoght
Kepeth ay wel thise coronas,' quod he,
'ffro Paradys to yow haue I hem
broght,
Ne neuere mo ne shal they roten bee,
Ne lese hir soote sauour, trusteth me;
Ne neuere wight shal seen hem with 60
his [e]yē,
But he be chaast, and hate vileynye.
And thow, Valerian, for thow so
soone
Assentedest to good conseil also,
Seye what thee list, and thou shalt
han thy boone.'
'I haue a brother,' quod Valerian tho, 65
'That in this world I loue no man so;
I praye yow that my brother may han
grace
To knowe the trouthe, as I do in
this place.'
¶ The angel seyde, 'God liketh thy
requeste,
And bothe with the palm of martir- 70
dom
Ye shullen come vn-to his blisful feste.'
And with that word Tiburce, his
brother, coom.
And whan that he the sauour vnder-
noon
Which that the roses and the lilies
caste,
With-inne his herte he gan to wondre 75
faste;
And seyde, 'I wondre, this tyme
of the yeer,
Whennes that soote sauour cometh so
Of rose and lilies that I smellē heer;

16427. right E.H.⁴, but He., etc. (Sk.). 33. to-forn H.⁴, biforn He., etc. (Sk.).
39—46. f. H.⁴ 39. and f. E. 43. [aufstaltlos?] 44. sother] oother E., 1 3l. f. C.P.L. 46. this]
pe C.L. (th' Sk.). 47. pope außgefr. He.; id. 535 (bissop übergeidfr.); besgl. 580, 771; crist-
ned E.He.C. (Gl.). 49. In with He.G. 56. quod he] three E.H.⁴

[G 249—274]

[G 275—301]

- ffor though I hadde hem in myne
handes two,
80 The sauour myghte in me no depper go.
The sweete smel þat in myn herte I
fynde
Hath chaunged me al in another kynde.
¶ Valerian seyde, 'Two coronēs han
we,
Snow-white and rose-reed, that shynen
cleere,
85 Whiche þat thyne [e]yēn han no myght
to see;
And as thou smellst hem thurgh my
preyere,
So shaltow seen hem, leeuē brother
deere,
If it so be thou wolt, with-outen slouthe,
Bileue aright, and knowen verray
trouthe.'
90 ¶ Tiburce answerde, 'Seistow this to
me
In soothnesse, or in dreem I herkne
this?'
'In dremes,' quod Valerian, 'han we be
Vn-to this tyme, brother myn, ywis;
But now at erst in trouthe oure dwel-
lyng is.'
95 'How woostow this?' quod Tiburce, 'in
what wyse?
Quod Valerian, 'That shal I thee
deuyse:
¶ The aungel of God hath me the
trouthe ytaught,
Which thou shalt seen, if that thou
wolt reneye
The ydoles, and be clene—and elles
naught.'—
00 And of the myracle of thise coronēs
tweye
Seint Ambrose in his preface list to
seye;
Solempnely this noble doctour deere
Commendeth *it*, and seith in this
manere:
¶ "The palm of martirdom for to
receyue

Seinte Cecile, fulfild of Goddes yifte,
The world and eek hir chambre gan
she weyue;
Witnesse *Valerians* and Cecilies shrifte,
To whiche God of his bountee wolde
shifte
Corones two of floures wel smellynge,
And made his angel hem the coronēs
brynge.
The maydē hath broght men to
blisse aboue;
The world hath wist what it is worth,
certeyn,
Deuocioun of chastitee to loue."—
Tho shewed hym Cecile al open and
pleyn
That alle ydoles nys but a thyng in
veyn;
ffor they been dombe, and therto they
been deue,
And charged hym hise ydoles for to
leue.
'Who-so that troweth nat this, a beest
he is,'
Quod tho Tiburce, 'if þat I shal nat
lye.'
And she gan kisse his brest, that herde
this,
And was ful glad he koude trouthe
espye.
'This day I take thee for myn allye,'
Seyde this blisful, faire mayde deere,
And after that she seyde as ye may
heere:
¶ 'Lo, right so as the loue of Crist,'
quod she,
'Made me thy brotheres wyf, right in
that wise
Anon for myn allye[e] heer take I thee,
Syn that thou wolt thyne ydoles despise.
Go with thy brother now, and thee
baptise,
And make thee clene, so þat thou mowe
biholde
The angeles face, of which thy brother
tolde.'

16483. coronys H.; 510. id. croune. 97. the f. E.H.*L. 16503. it] hym E. 05. Seynt
G., etc. 07. Valerians] Tiburce(s) alle f. (Sk., Gl.); Cecilies] Valerians Sk., Gl. [vgl.
16450ff.]. 11. men E.He., hem G.D., þise men C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 15. a f. C.P.L.H.*
[better?].

[G 302—331]

[G 332—361]

- Tiburce answerde, and seyde, 'Brother
dere,
ffirst tellē me whider [bat] I shal, and
to what man?'
'To whom?' quod he, 'com forth with
right good cheere!
35 I wol thee lede vn-to the Pope Vrban.'
'Til Vrban? brother myn Valerian,'
Quod tho Tiburce, 'woltow me thider
lede?
Me thynketh that it were a wonder
dede.
Ne menestow nat Vrban,' quod he
tho,
40 'That is so ofte dampned to be deed,
And woneth in halkes alwey to and fro,
And dar nat ones putte forth his heed?
Men sholde hym brennen in a fyr so
reed,
If he were founde, or þat men myghte
hym spyē;
45 And we also, to bere hym compaignye!
And whil we seken thilkē diuinitee
That is yhid in heuene pryuely,
Algate ybrend in this world shul we be!
To whom Cecile answerde boldely,
50 'Men myghten dreden wel and skilfully
This lyf to lese, myn owene deere
brother,
If this were lyuyngē oonly, and noon
oother.
But ther is better lyf in oother place,
That neuere shal be lost, ne drede
thee noght,
55 Which Goddes sone vs tolde thurgh
his grace.
That fadres sone. hath alle thyng
ywroght,
And al that wrought is with a skilful
thoght,
The goost, that fro the fader gan
procede,
Hath sowled hem, with-outen any drede.
60 By word and by myracle Goddes
sone,
Whan he was in this world, declared
heere

That ther was oother lyf ther men may
wone.'
To whom answerde Tiburce, 'O suster
deere!
Ne seydestow right now in this manere:
Ther nys but o God, Lord in sooth- 65
fastnesse?
And now of three how maystow bere
witness?'
¶ 'That shal I telle,' quod she, 'er I
shal.
Right as a man hath sapiences three:
Memorie, Engyn, and intellect also,
So in o beyngē of diuinitee 70
Thre persones may ther right wel bee.'
Tho gan she hym ful bisily to preche
Of Cristes come, and of hise peynes
teche,
And manye pointes of his passioun;
How Goddes sone in this world was 75
withholde
To doon mankynde pleyn remissioun,
That was ybounde in synne and cares
colde:
Al this thyng she vn-to Tiburce tolde,
And after this Tiburce, in good en-
tente,
With Valerian to Pope Vrban he wente, 80
That thanked God, and with glad
herte and light
He cristned hym, and made hym in
that place
Parfit in his lernynge, Goddes knyght;
And after this Tiburce gat swich grace,
That euery day he saugh, in tyme
and space,
The angel of God, and euery maner 85
boone
That he God axed, it was sped ful
soone.
¶ It were ful hard by ordre for to
seyn
How manye wondres Ihesus for hem
wroghte;
But atte laste, to tellen short and pleyn, 90
The sergeantz of the toun of Rome
hem soghte,

16533. þat E.He.G.D., f. C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 56—67. f. C.P.L. 56. þing hath wrought H.⁴, thynges wr. He. G.D. (Sk.). 60. he goddes He.G.D., hihe g. H.⁴ 70. o f. E. 81. [über That] qui. scilicet Vrbanus E., ähnl. He.D.

[G 362—386]

[G 387—413]

And hem biforn Almache, the pre-
fect, broghte,
Which hem opposed, and knew al
hir entente,
And to the ymage of Iuppiter hem
sente;

95 And seyde, 'Who-so wol nat sacri-
fise,
Swap(e) of his heed!—this my sent-
encê heer.'

Anon thise martirs þat I yow deuyse,
Oon Maximus, that was an officer
Of the prefectes and his corniculer,
100 Hem hente, and whan he forth the
seintes ladde,
Hym-self he weep for pitee that he
hadde.

Whan Maximus had herd the seintes
loore,
He gat hym of the tormentoures leue,
And ladde hem to his hous with-out
moore,

05 And with hir prechyng, er that it were
eue,
They gonnen fro the tormentours to
reue,
And fro Maxime, and fro his folk
echone

The false feith, to trowe in God allone.
Cecile cam, whan it was woxen nyght,
10 With preestes, that hem cristned alle
yfeere,
And afterward, whan day was woxen
light,

Cecile hem seyde with a ful stedefast
cheere,
'Now Cristes owene knyghtes, leewe
and deere,
Caste alle away the werkes of derk-
nesse,
15 And armeth yow in armure of bright-
nessel

Ye han for sothe ydoon a greet bat-
aille,

Youre cours is doon, youre feith han
ye conserued;

Gooth to the corone of lif, that may
nat faille!

The rightful iuge, which þat ye han
serued,

Shal yeue it yow, as ye han it deserued.' 2
And whan this thyng was seyde as I
deuyse,

Men ledde hem forth to doon the
sacrefise.

But whan they weren to the place
brought—

To tellen shortly the conclusioun—,
They nolde encense ne sacrificise right 2
noght,

But on hir knees they setten hem
adoun

With humble herte and sad deuocioun,
And losten bothe hir heuēdes in the
place;

Hir soules wenten to the kyng of grace.

This Maximus, that saugh this thyng 3
bityde,

With pitous teeris tolde it anon right
That he hir soules saugh to heuene
glyde

With aungels ful of cleernesse and of
light;

And with [t]his word conuerted many^a
wight,

ffor which Almachius dide hym so bete. 3
With whippe of leed, til he the lif gan
lete.

¶ Cecile hym took, and buryed hym
anon

By Tiburce and Valerian softly
With-inne hir burying-place vnder the
stoon.

And after this Almachius hastily 4
Bad hise ministres fecchen openly

Cecile, so that she myghte in his pre-
sence

Doon sacrifice, and Iuppiter encense.

16593. opposed] apposed H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 96. this E.G.H.⁴, this is He., etc. (Sk.)
[vgl. 5757, etc.]; heer E.He., heere G., etc. (Sk.). 98/99. officere: Corniculere G., etc.
(Sk.). 16603. tormentouris(-es) G.C.H.⁴ 12. stedefast] sob(e)re G.C.P.L. (Sk.). 14. Caste^b
C.P., Cast E., etc. (Gl.). 16f.: f. II. 21m. IV, 7—8. 18. croune L. 20. verb. C.P.L.
34. this E. 35. so to-bete D.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 36. the E., his He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
42. Cecilie He.H.⁴

[G 414—439]

[G 440—467]

But they, conuerted at hir wise loore,
45 Wepten ful soore, and yauen ful cred-
ence

Vn-to hir word, and cryden moore
and moore:

'Crist, Goddes sone, with-uten differ-
ence

Is verray God!—this is *al* oure sent-
ence—

That hath so good a seruant hym to
serue;

50 This with o voys we trowen, thogh
we sterue.'

¶ Almachius, that herde of this
doyng,

Bad fecchen Cecile, that he myghte
hir(e) see,

And alderfirst, lo, this was his axynge:
'What maner womman artow?' *tho*
quod he.

55 'I am a gentil-womman born' quod she.
'I axe thee,' quod he, 'though it thee
greeue,

Of thy religioun and of thy bileue.'

¶ 'Ye han bigonne youre questioun
folily,'

Quod she, 'that wolden two answeres
conclude

60 In o demande; ye axed lewedly.'

Almache answerde vn-to that simi-
litude,

'Of whennes comth thyn answerynge
so rude?'

'Of whennes?' quod she, whan þat
she was freyned,

'Of conscience and of good feith vn-
feyned.'

65 ¶ Almachius seyde, 'Ne takestow
noon heede

Of my power?'—And she answerde
hym *this*:

'Youre myght,' quod she, 'ful litel is
to dreede;

ffor euery mortal mannes power nys
But lyk[e] a bladdre ful of wynd,
ywys;

ffor with a nedles poynt, whan it is 70
blowe,

May al the boost of it be leyd ful
lowe.'

¶ 'fful wrongfully bigonne thow,'
quod he,

'And yet in wrong is thy perseuer-
aunce;

Wostow nat how oure myghty prin-
ces free

Han thus comanded and maad ordin- 75
aunce,

That euery cristen wight shal han
penaunce,

But if that he his cristendom with-seye,
And goon al quit, if he wole it re-
neye?'

'Yowre princes erre[n], as youre
nobleye dooth,'

Quod tho Cecile, 'and with a wood 80
sentence

Ye make vs gilti, and *it* is nat sooth;
ffor ye, that knowen wel oure inno-
cence,

ffor as muche as we doon a reuerence
To Crist, and for we bere a cristen
name,

Ye putte on vs a cryme and eek a 85
blame.

But we, that knowen thilke name so
ffor vertuous, we may it nat withseye.'
Almache answerde, 'Chees oon of thise
two:

Do sacrifice, or cristendom reneye,
That thou mowe now escapen by that 90
weye' —

At which the hooly blisful faire mayde
Gan for to laughe, and to the iuge
sayde:

¶ 'O iuge, confus in thy nyceteel!
Woltow that I reneye innocence,
To make me a wikked wight?' quod 95
she;

'Lo, he dissymuleth heere in audience,
He starereth and [he] woodeth in his
aduertence!'

16644. [über they] scilicet Ministres E. 48. al f. E. [ob. ouré?]. 54. tho C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.) [?], f. E., etc. 61. to C.P.L.H. 66. this He.D.H., thus G., etc., f. E. 73. al thy p. He.G.D. 79. erre H. 81. it f. E.He.G.D. [ob. I. maken = G.?] 91. the] this He.G.D. 92. she sayde He.D.C.P.L. 97. [he] E.

[G 468—495]

[G 496—519]

To whom Almachius: 'Vnsely wrecche!
Ne woostow nat how far my myght
may strecche?

00 Han noght oure myghty princes to
me yuēn,

Ye, bothe power and auctoritee
To maken folk to dyen or to lyuen?
Why spekestow so proudly thanne to
me?

'I speke noght but stedfastly,' quod she,
05 'Nat proudly, for I speke as for my
syde;

We haten deedly thilke vice of pryde.
And if thou drede nat a sooth to
heere,

Thanne wol I shewe al openly by right
That thou hast maad a ful gret lesyng
heere.

10 Thou seyst thy princes han thee yeuen
myght

Bothe for to sleen and for to quyk-
e[n] a wight;

Thou, that ne mayst but oonly lyf
bireue,

Thou hast noon oother power ne no
leue!

But thou mayst seyn thy princes
han thee maked

15 Minstre of deeth; for if thou speke
of mo,

Thou lyst, for thy power is ful naked!
'Do wey thy booldness!' seyde Al-
machius tho,

'And sacrificē to oure goddes er thou go.
I recche nat what wrong þat thou me
profre,

20 ffor I can suffre it as a philosophre.

But thilke wronges may I nat endure

That thou spekest of oure goddes
heere,' quod he.

Cecile answerde, 'O nyce creature!
Thou seydest no word, syn thou spak
to me,

25 That I ne knew ther-with thy nycetee,

And that thou were in euery maner
wise

A lewed officer and a veyn iustise.

Ther lakketh no-thing to thyne
outter [e]yēn,

That thou nart blynd; for thyng þat
we seen alle

That it is stoon—þat men may wel
espyen—

That ilke stoon, a god thow wolt it
calle.

I rede thee, lat thyn hand vp-on it
falle,

And taste it wel, and stoon thou shalt
it fynde,

Syn that thou seest nat with thyne
[e]yēn blynde.

It is a shame that the peple shal
So scorne thee, and laughe at thy
folye;

ffor comunly men woot it wel ouer al
That myghty God is in hise heuenes
hye;

And thise ymages—wel thou mayst
espye—

To thee, ne to hem-self, [ne] mowe[n] 4
noght profite,

ffor in effect they been nat worth a
mytel'

Thise wordes and swiche othere
seyde she,

And he weex wrooth, and bad men
sholde hire lede

Hom til hir house, and 'In hir hous,'
quod he;

'Brenne hir(e) right in a bath of 4
flambes redel'

And as he bad, right so was doon
in dede;

ffor in a bath they gonne hir(e) faste
shetten,

And nyght and day greet fyr[e] they
vnder betten.

¶ The longe nyght, and eek a day
also,

16698. Almachius seide D.L.H.⁴ 99. far E., fer He., etc. 16705. speke E., seye He., etc. (Sk.). 07. f. 4338. 11. quike C.P.L.H.⁴ 18. sacrifice He., etc. (Sk.). 27. and f. He.D.H.⁴, a f. G. [better?]. 28. [über outter eyen] exterioribus oculis E.He.D. [am Rande]. 30. it is E.H.⁴, is a He., etc. 40. [ne] E.L.; mowe He. (Sk.), moun D., may G., etc. 42. Thise and He.D.C.P.L.; oþer wordes C.P.L. 46. in E.C., the He., etc.

[G 520—541]

[G 542—564]

50 ffor al the fyr, and eek the bathes
 heete,
 She sat al coidd, and feeledē no wo;
 It made hir(e) nat a drope for to
 sweete.
 But in that bath hir lyf she moste
 lete;
 ffor he, Almachius, with [a] ful wikke
 entente
 55 To sleen hir(e) in the bath his sonde
 sente.

Thre strokes in the nekke he smoot
 hir(e) tho,
 The tormentour, but for no maner
 chaunce
 He myghte noght smyte al hir nekke
 atwo.
 And for ther was that tyme an or-
 dinaunce
 60 That no man sholde doon men swich
 penaunce
 The ferthe strook to smyten, softe
 or soore,
 This tormentour ne dorste do na-
 moore.

But half deed, with hir nekke
 ycoruen, there
 He lefte hire lye, and on his wey is
 went.
 65 The cristen folk, which that aboute
 hir(e) were,
 With sheetes han the blood ful faire
 yhent.
 Thre dayes lyued she in this torment,
 And neuere cessed hem the feith to
 teche
 That she hadde fostred; hem she gan
 to preche;
 70 And hem she yaf hir moebles and
 hir thyng,
 And to the Pope Vrban bitook hem
 tho,

And seyde, 'I axed this at heuene
 kyng,
 To han respit thre dayes and namo,
 To recomendē to yow, er that I go,
 Thise soules, lo, and þat I myghtē do 75
 werche
 Heere of myn hous perpetuēly a
 cherche.'
 ¶ Seint Vrban, with hise deknes,
 priuely
 The body fette, and buryed it by
 nyghte
 Among hise othere seintes honestly.
 Hir hous the chirche of seintē Cecilie 80
 highte;
 Seint Vrban halwed it, as he wel
 myghte,
 In which in-to this day, in noble wyse,
 Men doon to Crist and to his seintē
 seruise.
 ¶ Heere is ended the Seconde Nonnes
 tale.

23. The Chanouns Yemannes Tale.*)

a) ¶ The prologe of the Chanouns yemannes tale.

Whan toold was al the lyf of seintē
 Cecile,
 Er we hadde riden fully fyue mile, 85
 At Boghtoun vnder Blee vs gan atake
 A man that clothed was in clothes
 blake,
 And vnder-nethe he wered a surpys.
 His hakeney, which þat was al po-
 mely grys,
 So swatte, that it wonder was to see; 90
 It semed as he had priked miles three.
 The hors eek þat his yeman rood vpon
 So swatte, that vnnethe myghte it gon.
 Aboutē the peytrel stod the foom ful hye;

16751. feledē G., feeled E.He.D., felte of it C.P.L. (Gl.), it f. H.^a 54. a ful wikke E.He.D., a wekkede G., ful wikked C.P.L. 60. doon men E., d. man He., etc. (Sk.). 64. is G.D., he E., etc. 72. at E., of He., etc. 78. This E. — *) f. gänzlich in He.; dafür Li. (B-Hands). — 16784—794: die ersten Worte der Gl. f. G., besgl. die letzten von 822—32. 84. toold was al E., told was G.D., ended was C., etc. (Sk.). 85. hadde riden fully E.D.L., fully h. r. G., etc. 88. vnder-nethe E.D. (Sk., Gl.), vndyr that G., etc.; he wered a E.D., he hadde a whit G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 89. which þat E.D., that G., etc. (Sk.). 91. as E.D., that G., f. C., etc. (Sk.); 91—95 umgestellt D. 92. hors hakeney E.D. (G.p), 94—95. f. E. [edht?].

[G 565—595]

[G 596—624]

- 95 *He was of foom al flekked as a pye.*
A malę tweyfoold vp-on his croper lay;
It semed that he caried lite array.
Al light for somer rood this worthy
man,
And in myn hertę to wondren I bigan
 00 *What þat he was, til that I vnderstood*
How that his cloķę was sowed to his
hood,
ffor which, whan I hadde longe auysed
me,
I demed hym som chanoun for to be.
His hat heeng at his bak down by a
laas,
 05 *ffor he hadde riden mooreę than trot*
or paas;
He hadde ay priked lik as he werę
wood.
A clote-leef he hadde vnder his hood
ffor swoot, and for to kepe his heed
from heete;
But it was ioie for to seen hym swetel
 10 *His forheed dropped as a stillatorie*
Werę ful of plantayne and of paritorie.
And whan that he was come, he gan
to crye:
'God saue,' quod he, 'this ioly com-
paignye!
ffaste haue I priked,' quod he, 'for
yourę sake,
 15 *By cause that I wolde yow atake*
To riden in som myrie compaignye.'
His yeman eek was ful of curteisye,
And seide, 'Siręs, now in the morwe-
tyde
Out of yourę hostelrie I saugh you ryde,
 20 *And warned heer my lord and my*
souęrayn,
Which to ryden with yow is ful fayn
ffor his desport—he loueth daliaunce.
'ffreend, for thy warnyng God yeuę
thee good chaunce!'
Thanne seyde oure hoost, 'ffor certein,
it wolde seme
 25 *Thy lord werę wys, and so I may wel*
deme;

He is ful iocunde also, dar I leye.
Can he oght telle a myrie tale or
tweye,
With which he glade may this com-
paignye?'
 ¶ *'Who, sirę? my lord? Ye, ye, with-*
outen lye,
He kan of murthe and eek of iolitee 30
Nat but ynough; also, sirę, trusteth me,
And ye hym knewę as wel as do I,
Ye wolde wondre how wel and craftily
He koude werke, and that in sondry
wise.
He hath take on hym many a greet 35
emprise,
Which werę ful hard for any that is
heere
To brynge aboutę, but they of hym
it leere.
As hoomęly as he rit amonges yow,
If ye hym knewe, it wolde be for yourę
prow;
Ye wolde nat forgoon his aqueyntaunce 40
ffor muchel good, I dar leye in bal-
auce
Al that I haue in my possessioun.
He is a man of heigh discrecioun—
I warne yow wel—he is a passyng
man.'
 ¶ *'Wel,' quod oure hoost, 'I prayę thee* 45
telle me than
Is he a clerk or noon? Telle what
he is.'
 ¶ *'Nay, he is gretter than a clerk,*
ywis,'
Seyde this yeman, 'and in wordes
fewe,
Hoost, of his craft som-what I wol
yow shewe.
 ¶ *I seye, my lord kan swich subtilitee—* 50
But al his craft ye may nat witę for me,
And som-what helpe I yet to his
wirkyng—,
That al this ground on which we
been ridyng,
Til that we comę to Caunterbury toun,

16796. vp-on E.D.Li., on G., etc. (Sk.). 16816. som E., the same D., this G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 21. Which E.G., which that D., etc. (Sk., Gl.); for to G. 23. good f. E. (G.?). 24. for certein E.D. (G.?), for certes H.* (Sk., Gl.), certes C., etc. 32. [I. knewen? ob. (as) that do I = G.?). 51. for E., of D.H.* at G., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[G 625—653]

[G 654—684]

55 He koude al clene turne it vp so down,
 And paue it al of siluer and of gold.'
 ¶ And whan this yeman hadde this
 tale ytold
 Vn-to oure hoost, he seyde, 'Benedic-
 tee!
 This thyng is wonder merueillous to
 me,
 60 Syn that thy lord is of so heigh prud-
 ence,
 By cause of which men sholde hym
 reuerence,
 That of his worship(ē) rekketh he so
 lite.
 His ouerslop(e) nys nat worth a myte
 As in effect to hym—so moote I go!—
 65 It is al baudy and to-tore also;
 Why is thy lord so sluttish, I the
 preye,
 And is of power bettre clooth to beye,
 If that his dede accorde with thy
 speche?
 Telle me that, and that I thee biseche.'
 70 ¶ 'Why?' quod this yeman, 'wherto axe
 ye me?
 God helpe me so, for he shal neuere
 theel—
 But I wol nat auowe that I seye,
 And therfore keep(e) it secree, I yow
 preye—
 He is to wys, in feith, as I bileeue;
 75 That that is ouerdoon, it wol nat
 preeue
 Aright, as clerkes seyn; it is a vice.
 Wherefore in that I holde hym lewēd
 and nyce;
 ffor whan a man hath ouer-greet a wit,
 fful ofte hym happeth to mysusen it.
 80 So dooth my lord, and that me greueth
 soore—
 God it amende!—I kan seye yow na-
 moore.'
 ¶ 'Ther-of no fors, good yeman,' quod
 oure hoost,
 'Syn of the konnyng of thy lord thow
 woost,

Telle how he dooth, I praye thee her-
 tely,
 Syn that he is so crafty and so sly; 85
 Where dwelle ye, if it to telle be?'
 ¶ 'In the suburbes of a toun,' quod he,
 'Lurkyng in hernes and in lanes
 blynde,
 Where-as thise robbours and thise
 theues by kynde
 Holden hir pryuee fereful residence, 90
 As they that dar nat shewen hir pre-
 sence;
 So faren we, if I shal seye the sothe.'
 ¶ 'Now,' quod oure hooste, 'lat me
 talke to the!
 Why artow so discoloured of thy
 face?'
 ¶ 'Peter!,' quod he, 'God yeue it harde 95
 grace!
 I am so vsed in the fyr to blowe,
 That it hath chaunged my colour, I
 trowe.
 I am nat wont in no mirour to prie,
 But swynke soore, and lerne multiplie.
 We blondren euere, and pouren in 00
 the fir,
 And for al that we faille of oure desir,
 ffor euere we lakke of oure con-
 clusioun.
 To muchel folk we doon illusioun,
 And borwe gold, be it a pound or two,
 Or ten, or twelue, or manye sommes 05
 mo,
 And make hem wenen, at the beeste
 weye,
 That of a pound we koude make tweye.
 Yet it is fauld, but ay we han good
 hope
 It for to doon, and after it we grope;
 But that science is so fer vs biforn, 10
 We mowen nat, al-though we hadden
 sworn,
 It ouer-take—it slit away so faste,
 It wol[e] vs maken beggers atte laste.'
 ¶ Whil this yeman was thus in his
 talkyng,

16855. it E.C., f. G., etc. 75. [Randgl.] Omne quod est nimium &cetera E.D. 87. subur-
 bes E., subarblis(-bes) G., etc. 91. dor(e) G.H.⁴, dur(n) D.C. 93. Now E.G.H.⁴, zet D.,
 etc.; zit lat G.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); talke] telle E., speke G. 94. of E.D., in G.L., on C., etc.
 16902. of E., f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 11. hadden E.D., h. it G., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[G 685—709]

[G 710—734]

- 15 This chanoun drough hym neer, and
herde al thyng
Which this yeman spak; for suspe-
cioun
Of mennes speche euere hadde this
chanoun; [¶ Cato
ffor Catoun seith that he that gilty is
Demeth alle thyng be spoke of hym,
ywis.
- 20 That was the cause he gan so ny
hym drawe
To his yeman, to herkennen al his sawe.
And thus he seyde vn-to this yeman
tho:
'Hoold thou thy pees, and spek no
wordes mo!
ffor if thou do, thou shalt it deere
abye;
- 25 Thou sclaudrest me heere in this
compaignye,
And eek discourest that thou sholdest
hyde!
¶ 'Ye,' quod oure hoost, 'telle on, what-
so bityde!
Of al his thretyng rekke nat a myte.'
¶ 'In feith,' quod he, 'namoore I do
but lyte.'
- 30 ¶ And whan this chanoun saugh it
woldę nat be,
But his yeman woldę telle his pryuetee,
He fledde away for verray sorwe and
shame.
'Al' quod the yeman, 'heere şhal arise
game!
Al that I kan anon now wol I telle,
35 Syn he is goon—the foule feend hym
quelle!
ffor neuere heer-after wol I with hym
meete
ffor peny ne for pound, I yow bi-
heete!
He that me broghte first vn-to that
game,
Er that he dye, sorwe haue he and
shame!

ffor it is ernest to me, by my feith! 40
That feele I wel—what that any man
seith,
And yet for al my smerte and al my
grief,
ffor al my sorwe, labour, and meschief,
I koude neuere leue it in no wise.
Now wolde God my wit myghte suf- 45
fise
To tellen al that longeth to that art!
And nabeles yow wol I tellen part.
Syn that my lord is goon, I wol nat
spare;
Swich thyng as that I knowe I wol
declare.'

¶ Heere endę þe prologe of the Cha-
nouns yemannes tale.

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Chanouns
yeman his tale.

With this Chanoun I dwelt haue 50
seuen yeer,
And of his science am I neuęr the
neer.
Al that I hadde I haue lost ther-by,
And, God woot, so hath many mo
than I.
Ther I was wont to be right fressh
and gay
Of clothyng and of oother good array, 55
Now may I were an hose vp-on myn
heed;
And wher my colour was bothę fressh
and reed,
Now is it wan and of a leden hewe—
Who-so it vseth, soore şhal he rewe—,
And of my swynk yet blered is myn 60
[e]yę:
Lo, which auantage is to multiplie!
That slidyngę science hath me maad
so bare,
That I haue no good wher þat euere
I fare.
And yet I am endetted so ther-by

16918. seith that E.D.H.⁴, seith G., etc. [vgl. Cato, Dist. I, 17]. 19. al thyng D.P.Li.H.⁴ (Sk.). 28. his E.D.Li., this G., etc. 33. rise a g. D.Li., arise a g. C.P. (Gl.). 36—87. Sl. für G. 36. after f. E. 41. 3l. f. D.; what that E., what so C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 47. And E.D., But C., etc. (Sk.). 49. as E.D., al H.⁴, f. C., etc. 52. y-lost C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 58. a f. E.Li.

[G 735—760]

[G 761—791]

5 Of gold that I haue borwed, trewely,
That whil I lyue, I shal it quite
neure—

Lat euery man be war by me for
euere!

What maner man that casteth hym
ther-to,

If he continue, I holde his thrift ydo.

0 [ffor] so help(e) me God! therby shal
he nat wyne,

But empte his purs, and make hise
wittes thynne.

And whan he, thurgh his madnesse
and folye,

Hath lost his owene good thurgh
iupartye,

Thanne he exciteth oother folk ther-to,

5 To lese[n] hir good, as he hym-self
hath do;

ffor vn-to shrewes ioye it is and ese
To haue hir felawes in payne and
dise:

Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk.

Of that no charge—I wol speke of
oure werk.

0 ¶ Whan we been there-as we shul
exercise

Oure eluysshē craft, we semen wonder
wise;

Oure termes been so clerghal and so
queynte.

I blowe the fir til that myn herte
feynte.

What sholde I tellen ech[e] propor-
cioun

5 Of thynges whiche þat we werche
upon,

As on fyue or sixe ounces, may wel
be,

Of siluer, or som oother quantitee?

And bisye me to telle yow the names

Of orpyment, haddē bones, iren squa-
mes,

0 That in-to poudre grounden been ful
smal?

And in an erthen pot *how* put is al,
And salt yput in, and also papeer
Biforn these poudres that I speke of
heer,

And wel ycouered with a lampe of
glas,

And muchel oother thyng which þat 95
ther was?

And of the pot and glasses enlutyng,
That of the eyr myghte passe out
no-tyng;

And of the esy fir, and smart also,
Which that was maad; and of the
care and wo

That we hadde[n] in oure matires 00
sublymyng,

And in *amalgamyng* and *calceniing*

Of quyk-siluer, yclept *mercurie* crude?
ffor alle oure sleightes we kan nat
conclude.

Oure orpyment and sublymed *mercurie*,
Oure grounden litarge eek on the por- 05
furie,

Of ech of these of ounces a certeyn:
Noght helpeth vs—oure labour is in
veyn!

Nē eek oure spiritis *ascencioun*,

Nē oure matires þat lyen al fix adoun,

Mowe in oure werkyng no-tyng vs 10
auaille;

ffor lost is al oure labour and trauaille,

And al the cost, a twenty deuel waye,

Is lost also, which we vp-on it laye.

¶ Ther is also ful many another thyng
That is vn-to oure craft apertenynge; 15

Though I by ordre hem nat reherce
kan,

By cause that I am a lewed man.

Yet wol I telle hem as they comē to
mynde,

Thogh I ne kan nat sette hem in hir
kynde;

As boole *armonyak*, *verdegrees*, *boras*, 20

And sondry vessels maad of erthe
and glas:

16970. ffor f. C. (Sk.). 74. folk E.D., men C., etc. 75. [Randgl.] Solacium miserio-
rum &cetera E. 82. and queynte D.H.⁴ 91. how f. E. 95. muchel (meche) E.D., of muche
G., etc.; which þat E.D., whiche G., what P., what þat C., etc. 98. smart E.L.Li.,
smert G., etc. 17000. hadden E. (Gl.). 02. And of E.D. 05. on] in E., & G. 06. Of]
And E.D. 09. lyn G.D.C.H.⁴ Li. 12/13. weye: leye G.D.P.L. (Sk.). 20. vertgrees E.

[G 792—822]

[G 823—853]

Oure vrynales, and oure descensories,
Violes, crosletz, and sublymatories,
Cucurbites, and alambikes eek,

25 And othere swiche, deere ynough a
leek—

Nat nedeth it for to reherce hem alle.
Watres rubifyng, and boles galle,
Arsenyk, sal armonyak, and brym-
stoon,

And herbes koude I telle eek many
oon;

30 As egremoyne, valerian, and lunarie,
And othere swiche, if that me liste
tarie;

Oure lampes brennyng bothe nyght
and day,

To brynge aboute oure purpos, if we
may;

Oure fourneys eek of calcinacioun,

35 A'nd of watres albificaccioun;
Vnslekke lym, chalk, and gleyre of
an ey,

Poudres diuerse, ashes, donge, pisse,
and cley;

Cered pokettes, sal peter, vitriole,
And diuerse fires maad of wode and
cole;

40 Sal tartre, alkaly, and sal preparat,
And combust matires and coagulat;
Cley maad with hors and mannes heer,
and oille

Of tartre, alum, glas, berme, wort,
and argoille,

Resalgar, and oure matires enbiblyng,

45 And eek of oure matires incorporyng,
And of oure siluer citrinacioun,
[And of] oure cementyng and fermen-
tacioun,

Oure yngottes, testes, and many mo.
I wol yow telle, as was me taught
also,

50 The foure spirites, and the bodies
seuene

By ordre, as ofte I herde my lord
hem neuene:

¶ The firste spirit quyk-siluer called is,

The seconde orpyment, the thridde,
ywis,

Sal armonyak, and the ferthe brym-
stoon.

The bodies seuene eek, lo hem heere
anoon:

¶ Sol gold is, and Luna siluer we
threpe,

Mars iren, Mercurie quyk-siluer we
clepe,

Saturnus leed, and Iuppiter is tyn,
And Venus copper, by my fader kyn!

¶ This cursed craft who-so wol[e] exer-
cise,

He shal no good han þat hym may
suffise;

ffor al the good he spendeth ther-
aboute

He lese shal, ther-of haue I no doute.

Who-so that listeth outen his folie,

Lat hym come forth and lerne mul-
tiplie;

And euery man that oght hath in his
cofre,

Lat hym appiere, and wexe a philo-
sophre.

Ascaunse that craft is so light to leere?

Nay, nay, God woot, al be he monk
or frere,

Preest or chanoun, or any oother
wyght,

Though he sitte at his book, bothe day
and nyght,

In lernyng of this eluysshē nyce loore,

Al is in veyn, and, parde, muchel moore

To lerne a lewed man this subtiltee—

ffy! spek nat ther-of, for it wol nat bee.

And konne he letterure, or konne he
noon,

As in effect, he shal fynde it al oon;
ffor bothe two—by my sauacioun!—

Concluden in multiplicacioun

Ylyke wel, whan they han al ydo;

This is to seyn: they failen bothe two.

Yet forgat I to maken rehersaille

Of watres corosif and of lymaille,

17022. vrynals E.H.⁴Li. 33. purpos if E.D., craft gif that G., etc. (Sk.). 38. pottes E.D. (?). 47. [And of] E.D. 50. foure] seuene E. 51. hem E.G.P., f.D., etc. 57. Mercure L. 64. so f. E. 66. oght hath E., hat(h) ought G., etc. 68. Ascauns E.G.D.H.⁴ 74. Is to l. C.P.L.Li.H.⁴

[G 854—879]

[G 880—905]

And of bodies mollificacioun,
 85 And also of hir induracioun;
 Oilles, ablucions, and metal fusible—
 To tellen al wolde passen any Bible
 That owher is; wherfore, as for the
 beste,
 Of alle these names now wol I me
 reste.
 90 ffor, as I trowe, I haue yow toold
 ynowe
 To reyse a feend, al looke he neuere so
 rowe.
 ¶ A nay! lat be! the philosophres stoon,
 Elixir clept, we sechen faste echoon;
 ffor hadde we hym, thanne were we
 siker ynow.
 95 But vn-to God of heuene I make
 avow:
 ffor al oure craft, whan we han al
 ydo
 With al oure sleighte, he wol nat
 come vs to.
 Hé hath maad vs spenden muchel
 good,
 ffor sorwe of which almoost we wexen
 wood,
 00 But that good hope crepeth in oure
 herte,
 Supposynge euere, though we sore
 smerte,
 To be releued by hym afterward.
 Swich supposyng and hope is sharp
 and hard;
 I warne yow wel: it is to seken euere!
 05 That 'future tēps' hath maad men to
 disseuere,
 In trust ther-of, from al þat euere
 they hadde.
 Yet of that art they kan nat wexen
 sadde;
 ffor vn-to hem it is a bitter sweete.
 So semeth it; for naddē they but a
 sheete

Which þat they myghte wrappe hem 10
 inne at nyght,
 A'nd a brat to walke[n] inne by day
 lyght,
 They wolde hem selle, and spenden
 on this craft;
 They kan nat stynte til no-thing be
 laft.
 And eueremoore, where þat euere they
 goon,
 Men may hem knowe by smel of 15
 brymston.
 ffor al the world they stynken as a
 goot;
 Hir sauour is so rammyssh and so hoot,
 That, though a man a mile from hem
 be,
 The sauour wol[e] infecte hym, truste
 me.
 And thus by smel and by thredbare 20
 array,
 If þat men liste, this folk they knowe
 may.
 And if a man wole aske hem pryue-
 ly,
 Why they been clothed so vnthriftily,
 They right anon wol rownen in his ere,
 And seyn þat, if þat they espied were, 25
 Men wolde hem slee by cause of hir
 science.
 Lo, thus this folk betrayen innocence!
 Passe ouer this!—I go my tale vn-to.
 Er þat the pot be on the fir ydo
 Of metals with a certeyn quantitee, 30
 My lord hem tempreth, and no man
 but he—
 Now he is goon, I dar[e] seyn bol-
 dely—,
 ffor as men seyn, he kan doon craf-
 tily,
 Algate I woot wel he hath swich a
 name;
 And yet ful ofte he renneth in a blame. 35

17086: von hier ab Eg. für D. 93. Elixer E.G.Eg. 94. were we] w. it E. 97. With E., And G., etc. (Sk.). 97. he: f. 92. 98. I-mad G.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 17101. euere f. E. 05. futur E.Eg.L. (Sk., Gl.); to G., f. E., etc. 10. at E.Eg., a G., etc. (Sk.). 11. brat E.Eg., bak G., etc. (Sk.); walke G.Eg.H.⁴. 12. this] the E.Li. 18. a Mile from hem E.Eg., from hem a. m. G. [Maſur], etc. (Sk.). 19. truste E., trustyth(-eth) G., etc. (Sk.). 20. And E., As Eg., Lo G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); smel E.Eg., smellynge G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); and by C.P.L.H.⁴, and E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 25. seyn þat E., seyn G., etc.

[G 906—929]

[G 930—957]

And wite ye how? fful ofte it happeth
so,
The pot tobreketh—and, far[e]wel, al
is go!
Thise metals been of so greet violence,
Oure walles mowe nat make hem resist-
ence,
40 But if they weren wrought of lym and
stoon;
They percen so, and thurgh the wal
they goon,
And somme of hem synken in-to the
ground—
Thus han we lost by tymes many[^]a
pound—,
And somme are scatered al the floor
about,
45 Somme lepte in-to the roof, with-outen
doute;
Though þat the feend noght in oure
sighte hym shewe,
I trowe he with vs be, that ilke shrewel
In helle, where þat he lord is and
sire,
Nis ther moore wo, ne moore rancour,
ne ire.
50 Whan that oure pot is broke, as I haue
sayd,
Euery man chit, and halt hym yuele
apayd.
¶ Somme seyde it was [a]long on the
fir making,
Somme seyde, 'Nay! it was on the
blowyng'—
Thanne was I fered, for that was myn
office.
55 ¶ 'Straw' quod the thridde, 'ye been
lewed and nyce;
It was nat tempred as it oghte be.'
¶ 'Nay' quod the fourthe, 'stynte, and
herkne me!
By cause oure fir ne was nat maad
of beech,
That is the cause, and oother noon,
so theechl'

I kan nat telle wher-on it was along, 60
But wel I woot greet strif vs is among.
¶ 'What!', quod my lord, 'ther is na-
moore to doone,
Of these perils I wol be war eft-soone;
I am right siker that the pot was
crased—
Be as be may—be ye no-thing amased! 65
As vsage is, lat swepe the floor as
swithe;
Plukke vp youre hertes, and beeth glad
and blithel'
¶ The mullok on an heep(e) ysweped
was,
And on the floor ycast a canevas,
And al this mullok in a syve ythrowe, 70
And sifted, and ypiked many[^]a throwe.
¶ 'Pardee' quod oon 'somwhat of oure
metal
Yet is ther heere, though þat we han
nat al.
Al-though this thyng myshapped haue
as now,
Another tyme it may be wel ynow. 75
Vs moste putte oure good in auenture;
A marchaunt, pardee, may nat ay en-
dure,
Trusteth me wel, in his prosperitee;
Somytyme his good is drenched in the
see,
And somtyme comth it sauf vn-to the 80
londe.'
¶ 'Pees' quod my lord, 'the nexte
tyme I shal fonde
To brynge[n] oure craft al in another
plite,
And but I do, sire, lat me han the
wite;
Ther was defeaute in som-what, wel I
woot.'
¶ Another seyde, 'The fir was ouer- 85
hoot'—
But be it hoot or could, I dar seye
this:
That we concluden eueremoore amys.

17142. synke E.G.Eg. 45. lepte E., lepe(n) G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 48. þat] as G., f. Eg.Li.; lord is E.Eg., is I. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 52. along E.G. (Gl.) [vgl. 60]. 57. stinte L.Li. 60. long G.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk.). 61. vs is E., is vs G., etc. (Sk.). 68. sweped E. [I. heepe?]. 79. drenched E., drowned G., etc. 81. I shal E., wele I G., I woll Eg., etc. (Sk.). 82. bryngen E. (Gl.). 83. sere (sire) G.H.⁴, sires C.P.L.H.⁴, f. E.Eg. 86. But] And E.

[G 958—982]

[G 983—1009]

- We faille of that which þat we wolden
 haue,
 And in oure madnesse eueremoore we
 raue.
 90 And whan we been togidres euerichoon,
 Euery man semeth a Salomon.
 But euery-thing which þat *shyneth* as
 the gold†)
 Nis nat gold, as þat I haue herd told,
 Nè euery appul that is fair to [e]yē,†)
 95 Nis nat good, what-so men clappe
 or crye.
 ¶Right so fareth it amonges vs.
 Hé þat semeth the wisestē, by Ihesus!
 I's moost fool, whan it comth to the
 preef,
 And he þat semeth trewest is a theef.
 100 That shul ye knowe, er þat I fro yow
 wende,
 By that I of my tale haue maad an
 ende.

¶*Explicit prima pars.**Et sequitur pars secunda.*)*

- Ther was a chanoun of religioun
 Amonges vs, wolde infecte al a toun,
 Thogh it as greet were as was Ny-
 nyuee,
 105 Rome, Alisaundre, Troye, and othere
 three.
 His sleighes and his infinit falsnesse
 Ther koude no man writen, as I gesse,
 Though þat he lyue myghte a thou-
 sand yeer.
 In al this world of falshedē nas his
 peer;
 110 ffor in hise termes so he wolde hym
 wynde,
 And speke hise wordes in so sly a
 kynde,
 Whan he commune shal with any
 wight,

That he wol make hym doten anon-
 right,
 But it a feend be, as hym-seluen is.
 fful many a man hath he bigiled er
 this,
 And wol[e], if that he lyue may a
 while;
 And yet men ride and goon ful many a
 mile
 Hym for to seke, and haue his aqueynt-
 aunce,
 Noght knowynge of his false govern-
 aunce;
 And if yow list to yeue me audience, 2
 I wol it tellen heere in youre presence.
 ¶But worshipful chanons religious,
 Ne demeth nat that I [de]sclaundre
 your(e) hous,
 Al-though [that] my talē of a chanoun
 bee—
 Of euery ordre som shrewe is, pardee! 2
 And God forbedē that al a compaignye
 Sholdē rewe o. synguleer mannes folye!
 To sclaundre yow is no-thing myn en-
 tente,
 But to correcten that is mys, I mente.
 This tale was nat oonly toold for yow, 3
 But eek for othere mo; ye woot wel
 how
 Thát among Cristes Apostles twelue
 Ther nas no traytour but Iudas hym-
 selue.
 Thanne why sholde al the remenant
 haue a blame
 That giltles werē? By yow I seye 3
 the same,
 Saue oonly this, if ye wol herkne me:
 If any Iudas in youre couent be,
 Remoeueth hym bitymes, I yow rede,
 If shame or los may causen any
 drede,

17192. euery E.Eg., al(le) G., etc. (Sk., Gl.); schynyth(-eth) G.Eg.L.H.⁴, semēþ C.Li., seineth E.P. (?). 93. as þat E.H.⁴, as G., etc.; herd it t. C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 94. to E., at G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 95. Nis E., Ne is G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 96. so E., so lo G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 98. cometh G.C. *) Explicit, etc.: nur E. — 17202. was E.Eg., is G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 106. sleighite E.H.⁴; infinit E.G. (Sk., Gl.). 108. lyue myghte E.Eg., myghte l. G., etc. (Sk.). 109. nas E.Eg., nys G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 110. so he wolde E., he so wel G.Eg., he wole . . . so C., etc. 21. tellen C.P.L. (Sk.). 23. desclaundre E. (Gl.) [f. 17 228]. 24. [that] E.Eg., f. G., etc. 27. o E., a G., etc. (Sk.). 29. I mente E., I-ment G., etc. 32. apostel- lis(-es) G.Li. (Sk., Gl.). 33. nas E.P.L., was G., etc. 34. al the r. E., þe r. alle C.P.L.Li., al f. G.Eg.H.⁴; a blame E.Eg.H.⁴, a f. G., etc. (Sk.).

[G 1010—1034]

[G 1035—1061]

40 And beeth no-thing displede, I yow
preye;
But in this cas herketh what I shal
seye.
IN Londoun was a preest annueleer
That ther-inne hadde dwelled many⁴² a
yeer,
Which was so plesaunt and so seruys-
able
45 Vn-to the wyf where-as he was at
table,
That she wolde suffre hym no-thing
for to paye
ffor bord ne clothyng, wente he neuer
so gaye;
And spendyng siluer hadde he right
ynow—
Ther-of no fors! I wol procede as
now,
50 And telle forth my tale of the chanoun
That broghte this preest to confusioun.
¶ This false chanon cam vp-on a day
Vn-to this preestes chambre, wher he
lay,
Bisechyng hym to lene hym a cer-
teyn
55 Of gold, and he wolde quite it hym
ageyn.
'Leene me a marc,' quod he, 'but
dayes three,
And at my day I wol it quiten thee;
And if so be that thow me fynde
fals,
Another day do hangē me by the
hals.'

60 ¶ This preest hym took a marc, and
that as swithe;
And this chanoun hym thanked ofte
sithe,
And took his leue, and wente forth
his weye,
And at the thridde day broghte his
moneye,
And to the preest he took his gold
agayn,

Wher-of this preest was wonder glad 65
and fayn.
¶ 'Certes,' quod he, 'no-thing anoyeth
me
To lene a man a noble, or two, or
thre,
Or what thyng were in my possessioun,
Whan he so trewe is of condicioun,
That in no wise he breke wol[e] his 70
day;
To swich a man I kan neuer seye
nay.'
¶ 'What!' quod this chanoun, 'sholde
I be vntrewe?
Nay, that werē [a] thyng yfallen al
of newel
Trouthe is a thyng that I wol euer
kepe
Vn-to that day in which that I shal 75
crepe
In-to my graue, or ellis God forbede!
Bileueth this as siker as the crede.
God thanke I, and in good tyme be
it sayd
That ther was neuere man yet yuele
apayd
ffor gold ne siluer that he to me lente, 80
Ne neuere falshede in myn herte I
mente.
And, sire,' quod he, 'now of my pry-
uetee,
Syn ye so goodlich han been vn-to
me,
And kithed to me so greet gentillesse,
Som-what, to quyte with youre kyn- 85
denesse,
I wol yow shewe; if that yow list to
leere,
I wol yow teche pleylnly the manere
How I kan werken in philosophie.
Taketh good heedē! ye shul wel seen
at [e]yē
That I wol doon a maistrie er I go.' 90
¶ 'Ye,' quod the preest, 'ye, sir(e), [quod
he] and wol ye so?

17241. herk(e)nyth(-eth) G., etc. (Sk.). 42. an annueleer G.H.'C., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
43. dwelled(e) hadde G.Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 59. do E.G., f. Eg., etc. 64. his E.G.P., this
Eg., etc. 73. [a] thyng E.G. 75. In-to E.Eg. [f. In-to 17276]. 76/77. f. G. 76. or E.Sl.
(für G.), and Eg., etc. (Sk.); forbed E. [vgl. 17294, 17605]. 77. the E.Li., is your Eg., etc.
(Sk.). 86. if that E.Eg., & gif G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 91. [quod he] E.

[G 1062—1088]

[G 1089—1115]

Marie! ther-of I praye yow hertely.

¶ 'At your(e) comandement, sire, trewe-ly,'

Quod the chanoun, 'and ellis God for-beede!'

95 ¶ Loo! how this thief koude his seru-ice beede!

fful sooth it is that swich profred seruysse

Stynketh, as witnessen thise olde wyse;

And that ful soone I wol it verifie

In this chanoun, roote of alle trecherie,

00 That euere-moore delit hath and glad-nesse—

Swiche feendly thoughtes in his herte impresse!—

How Cristes peple he may to mes-chief brynge.

God kepe vs from his false dissymul-ynge!

¶ Noght wiste this preest with whom þat he delte,

05 Nof his harm comynge he no-thing felte.

O sely preest! o sely innocent!

With coueitise anon thou shalt be blent.

O graceles, ful blynd is thy conceit[e]!

No-thing ne artow war of the de-ceit[e]

10 Which that this fox yshapen hath for thee;

Hise wily wrenches thou ne mayst nat flee.

Wherfore to go to the conclusion

That refereth to thy confusion,

Vnhappy man, anon I wol me hye,

15 To tellen thyn vnwit and heigh folye,

And eek the falsnesse of that oother wrecche,

A's ferforth as my konnyng may strecche.

This chanon was my lord, ye wolden weene?

Sir(e) hoost, in feith, and by the heuenes queene!

It was another chanoun, and nat hee, 2

That kan an hundred foold moore subtiltee.

He hath bitrayed folkes many tyme;

Of his falshede it dulleth me to ryme.

Euere whan þat I speke of his falshede,

ffor shame of hym my chekes wexen 2 rede;

Algates they bigynnen for to glowe,

ffor reednesse haue I noon, right wel

I knowe,

In my visage; for fumes diuerse

Of metals, whiche ye han herd me reherce,

Consumed and wasted han my reed- 3 nesse.

Now taak heede of this chanons cursed-nessel

¶ 'Sire,' quod he to the preest, 'lat your(e) man gon

ffor quyk-siluer, that we hadde it anon, And lat hym bryngen ounces two or three.

And whan he comth, as faste shal 3 ye see

A wonder thyng which ye saugh neuere er this.'

¶ 'Sire,' quod the preest, 'it shal be doon ywis.'

He bad his seruant fecchen hym this thyng,

And he al redy was at his biddynge, And wente hym forth, and cam anon 4 agayn

With this quyk-siluer, soothly for to sayn,

And tok[e] thise ounces thre to the

chanoun;

And he hem leyde faire and wel adoun,

And bad the seruant coles for to brynge,

That he anon myghte go to his werk- 4 ynge.

17305. Nof E., Ne of G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 09. ne E.Eg., f. G., etc. 10. for E., to G., etc. (Sk.). 15. heigh G. [vgl. 1798], his E., thy Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 17. as that G.Eg. (Sk.); may E., wele (wol, etc.) G., etc. 23. fals(e)nesse G., etc. 24. þat E.G.Eg. (Sk.), f. C., etc. (Gl.). 30. [I. han and wasted?]; Redenesse P.L. (Gl.). 33. hadde it E.G., it had(d)e Eg., etc. (Sk.). 41. soothly E.G., shortly Eg., etc.

[G 1116—1143]

- ¶ The coles right anon weren yfet,
And this chanoun took out a crosselet
Of his bosom, and shewed it to the
preest.
'This instrument,' quod he, 'which þat
thou seest,
50 Taak[e] in thyn hand, and put thy-
self ther-inne
Of this quyk-siluer an ounce, and heer
bigynne,
In name of Crist, to wexe a philo-
sophe.
Ther been ful fewe to whichè I wolde
profre
To shewen hem thus muche of my
science;
55 ffor ye shul seen heer by experience
That this quyk-siluer wol I mortifye
Right in youre sighte anon, I wol nat
lye,
And make it as good siluer and as fyn
As ther is any in youre purse or
myn,
60 Or elleswhere, and make it malliable,
And elles holdeth me fals and vnable
Amonges folk for euere to appeere.
I haue a poudrè heer, þat costè me
deere,
Shal make al good, for it is cause
of al
65 My konnyng, which þat I [to] yow
shewen shal.
Voyde youre man, and lat hym be
ther-oute,
And shettè the dore whils we been
aboute
Oure pryuetee, that no man vs espie,
Whils that we werke in this philo-
sophie.'
70 ¶ Al as he bad fulfilled was in dede;
This ilke seruant anonright out yede,
And his maister shette the dore anon,
And to hir labour spedily they gon.

[G 1144—1168]

- ¶ This preest, at this cursed chanouns
bidding,
Vp-on the fir anon sette this thyng, 75
And blew the fir, and bisyed hym
ful faste;
And this chanoun in-to the crosselet
caste
A poudre—noot I wher-of that it was
Ymaad, ouper of chalk, ouper of glas,
Or som-what elles was nat worth a 80
flye—
To blynde with the preest, and bad
hym hye
The coles for to couchen al aboute
The crosselet. 'ffor in tokenyng I thee
loue,'
Quod this chanoun, 'thyne owene
handes two
Shul werche al thyng which that shal 85
heer be do.'
¶ 'Graunt mercy,' quod the preest, and
was ful glad,
And couched cole as that the chanoun
bad.
And while he bisy was, this feendly
wrecche,
This false chanoun—the foule feend
hym fecche!—
Out of his bosom [he] took a bechen 90
cole,
In which ful subtilly was maad an
hole,
And ther-inne put was of siluer le-
maille
An ounce, and stopped was, with-outen
faile,
The hole with wex, to kepe the le-
maille in;
And vnderstondeth that this false gyn 95
Was nat maad ther, but it was maad
bifore;
And othere thynges I shal tellen moore
Herafterward, whichè þat he with hym
broghte.

17348. to E.Eg., f. G., etc. (Sk.). 52. the name Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 53. to E.G., f. Eg., etc. (Sk.); whiche that G., etc. (Sk.). 56. I shall Eg., I wele (wol) G., etc. 58. it f. E. 65. [to] E.Eg.; þat f. Eg. 66. Voyde E.Eg., Voydith G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 69. Whil(e)s that E.G.Eg., Whiles C., etc. (Gl.). 77. caste G.C.Li. 79. or of glas E.Li., or ellis of g. P. 85. which(e) that G.H.* (Sk.), þat Eg., which as C., etc.; heer f. C., etc. 87. coles C., etc. (Gl.); that f. C., etc.; the f. E. (Gl.). 90. [he] E. 94. The hole E., This h. G., etc.

[G 1169—1192]

[G 1193—1216]

Er he cam there, hym to bigile he
thoghte;
00 And so he dide, er þat they wente
atwynne;
Til he had terued hym, he koude
nat blynne.
It dulleth me whan that I of hym
speke;
On his falshede fayn wolde I me wreke,
If I wiste how, but he is heere and
there,
05 He is so variaunt, [þat] he abit no-
where.
¶ But taketh heede now, sires, for
Goddess loue!
He took this cole of which I spak
aboue,
And in his hand he baar it pryuely.
And whils the preest couchede bisily
10 The coles, as I tolde yow er this,
This chanoun seyde, 'ffrend, ye doon
amys!
This is nat couched as it oghte be;
But soone I shal amenden it,' quod
he.
'Now lat me medle ther-with but a
while,
15 ffor of yow haue I pitee, by seynt
Gile!
Ye been right hoot, I se wel how ye
swete;
Haue heer a clooth, and wipe away
the wete!
And whiles þat the preest wiped his
face,
This chanoun took his colē with harde
grace,
20 [And] leyde it aboue, vp-on the myd-
deward
Of the crosselet, and blew wel after-
ward,
Til that the coles gonne faste brenne.

¶ 'Now yeue vs drynke,' quod the cha-
noun thenne,
'As swithe al shal be wel, I vnder-
take;
Sitte we down, and lat vs myrie make!' 2
And whan þat this chanounes bechen
cole
Was brent, al the lemaille out of the
hole
In-to the crosselet fil anon adoun,
And so it moste nedes by resoun,
Syn it so euene aboue[n] it couched 3
was.
But ther-of wiste the preest no-thing,
allas!
He demed alle the colēs yliche good,
ffor of that sleighte he no-thing vnder-
stood.
And whan this alkamystre saugh his
tyme:
'Ris vp,' quod he, 'sire preest, and 3
stondeth by me!
And for I woot wel ingot haue ye
noon,
Gooth, walketh forth, and bryng(e) vs
a chalk-stoon;
ffor I wol make it of the same shap
That is an ingot, if I may han hap;
And bryngeth eek with yow a bolle 4
or a panne
fful of water, and ye shul se wel
thanne
How þat oure bisynesse shal thryue
and preue.
And yet, for ye shul han no mysbi-
leeue,
Ne wrong conceit[e] of me in youre
absence,
I ne wol nat been out of youre pre- 4
sence,
But go with yow, and comē with yow
ageyn.'

17400. er þat E.Eg., er than G., er C., etc. 01. terued Eg., terned(e) E.G., torned C., etc.; he koude E., coude he G., etc. (Sk.). 05. [þat] E.C.; bit(te) P.H., bideþ L., abideth Li. 07. this E., his G., etc. (Sk.). 09. couchede G.C. 18. whils E. 19. harde E., sory G.Eg., verb. C., etc. 20. [And]: alle þij. (Sk., Gl.). 23. gif C.L. 30. abouen E. (Sk., Gl.); it E.Eg., f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 33. that E.Eg., the G., etc. (Sk.). 35. stondeþ C.L.Li., stand G., stonde L.H. (Gl.), sit E.Eg. 36. ye I E., we Eg. 37. brynge vs E.Eg., bryngeth G.P.L., bring C., etc. 38. it] oon E. (Sk.), f. Eg. 40. brynge G., etc.; eek E.G.Eg., f. C., etc. [l. or panne?]. 45. ne E.Eg.H., t. G., etc.

[G 1217—1242]

[G 1243—1269]

The chambre-dore—shortly for to
seyn—
They opened, and shette, and wente
hir weye,
And forth with hem they carieden
the keye,
50 And coome ageyn with-out[e] any
delay.
What sholde I tarien al the longe
day?
He took the chalk, and shoop it in
the wise
Of an ingot, as I shal yow deuyse:
¶ I seye he took out of his owene
sleeue
55 A teyne of siluer—yuele moote he
cheeue!—
Which þat was nat but an ounce of
weighte.
And taketh heede now of his cursed
sleight!
¶ He shoop his ingot in lengthe and
[eek] in breede
O'f this teyne, with-uten any drede,
60 So slyly, that the preest it nat espide;
And in his sleue agayn he gan it
hide,
And fro the fir he took vp his ma-
teere,
And in thyngot putte it with myrie
cheere,
And in the water-vessel he it caste,
65 Whan þat hym luste, and bad the
preest as faste:
'Loke what *there is!* put *in* thin hand,
and grope—
Thow fynde shalt ther siluer, as I
hope.*)
He putte his hand *in*, and took vp a
teyne
Of siluer fyn, and glad in euery veyne
70 Was this preest, whan he saugh it was
so.

'Goddess blessing, and his moodres
also,
And alle halwes haue ye, sir(e) cha-
noun!
Seyde this preest, 'and I hir malisoun,
But, and ye vouches-sauf to techen me
This noble craft and this subtilitee, 75
I wol be youre in al that euere I may!'
¶ Quod the chanoun, 'Yet wol I make
assay
The seconde tyme, þat ye may taken
heede,
And been expert of this, and in youre
neede
Another day assaye in myn absence 80
This disciplyne and this crafty science.
Lat take another ounce,' quod he tho,
'Of quyk-siluer, with-uten wordes mo,
And do ther-with as ye han doon er
this
With that oother, which þat now 85
siluer is.'
¶ This preest hym bisieth in al þat
kan
To doon as this chanoun, this cursed
man,
Comanded hym, and faste he blew
the fir,
ffor to come to theeffect of his desir.
And this chanon, right in the meene 90
while,
Al redy was the preest eft to bigile,
And for a contenaunce in his hand
he bar
An holwe stikke—taak keep[e] and be
war!—
In the ende of which an ounce, and
namoore,
Of siluer lemaille put was, as bfore 95
I'n his cole—and stopped with wex
weel,
ffor to kepe in his lemaille euery-
deel.

17450. without(e) Eg.P.Li. 56. ne was but G.Eg., was but C., etc. (ne was nat but Sk., Gl.). 57. taak E. 58. [eek] E. (Sk., Gl.), f. G., etc. 66. Loke f. E.Eg.; What þat heer is E. [vgl. 557]. *) What deuyl of helle schulde it ellis be? Schauynge of syluyr, syluyr is parde einge[m]altet G.C.P.L.H.*Li. (Sk., Gl.), f. E.Eg.Ro. [unedit?]. 70. that it G.C.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 73. this E.Eg., the G., etc. 75. subtilite H.*, sotylete G.L., subtiltee (sotylte) E., etc. 77. chanoun] preest E. 88. he E., f. G., etc. 91. the E., this G., etc. 92. he f. C., etc. 96. In E., Was in G., etc. (Sk., Gl.) (As was Li.).

[G 1270—1293]

[G 1294—1320]

- And whil this preest was in his bi-
synesse,
This chanoun with his stikke gan hym
dresse
00 To hym anon, and his poudre caste
in,
As he dide er—the deuēl out of his
skyn
Hym terve, I praye to God, for his
falshede!
ffor he was euere fals in thoght and
dede—,
And with this stikke aboue the cros-
selet,
05 That was ordeyned with that false iet,
He stired the coles, til relente gan
The wex agayn the fir, as euery man,
But it a fool be, woot wel it moot
nede;
And al that in the stikke was out yede,
10 And in the crosselet hastily it fel.
¶ Now, goode sires, what wol ye bet
than wel?
Whan þat this preest thus was bigiled
ageyn,
Supposynge noght but treuthe, sooth
to seyn,
He was so glad that I^{ne} kan nat
expresse
15 In no manere his myrthe and his
gladnesse;
And to the chanoun he profred eft-
soone
Body and good. 'Ye,' quod the cha-
noun soone,
'Though poure I be, crafty thou shalt
me fynde;
I warne thee, yet is ther moore bi-
hynde.
20 ¶ Is ther any coper her-inne?' seyde
he.
¶ 'Ye,' quod the preest, 'sire, I trowe
wel ther be.'

¶ 'Elles go bye vs som, and that as
swithe.
Now, goode sire, go forth thy wey,
and hy thel'
¶ He wente his wey, and with the
coper cam,
And this chanoun it in hise handes
nam,
And of that coper weyed out but an
ounce.
¶ Al to symple is my tonge to pro-
nounce
As ministre of my wit the doublesse
Of this chanoun, roote of alle cursed-
nesse.
He semed frendly to hem þat knewe
hym noght,
But he was feendly bothe in *werk*
and thoght.
It weerieth me to telle of his falsnesse,
And natheles yet wol I it expresse
To thentente, that men may be war
therby,
And for noon oother cause, trewely.
¶ He putte the ounce of coper in
the crosselet,
And on the fir as swithe he hath it set,
And caste in poudre, and made the
preest to blowe,
And in his werkyng for to stoupe
lowe,
As he dide er, and al nas but a iape; 4
Right as hym listē, the preest he
made his ape.
And afterward in the ingot he it caste,
And in the panne putte it at the laste
Of [the] water; in he putte his owene
hand,
And in his sleue, as ye biforen-hand 4
Herde me tellē, hadde a siluer teyne.
He slyly took[e] it out—this cursed
heynel—
Vnwityng this preest of his false craft,

17502. *terne* Eg., *turne* G., etc. [vgl. 17401]. 05. Iet E.G., *get(te)* Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 11/12. f. H.⁴ (*þāter* = E.), verb. C., etc.; *goode* G.Eg. 14. *ne* E., f. G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 23. *good* E., *goode* G.H.⁴, f. Eg., etc. 31. *werk*] *herte* E.Eg. (Sk.) [vgl. 503]. 34. *then-
tente* that E.G.Eg., *þat entent* C., etc. (Gl.). 36. the ounce E.Eg., his o. G. (Sk.), this o.
C., etc. 44. Of [the] E., With [the] Eg., Of G., etc.; & in G., etc. (Sk.). 45. *be-foryn(-en)*
G.H.⁴, *byfore* Eg.Li., *biforn* E., etc. (Sk.). 46. *hadde* E.Eg., *he h.* G., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[G 1321—1346]

[G 1347—1373]

And in the pannes botme he hath
it laft,
50 And in the water rombled to and fro,
And wonder pryuely took vp also
The coper teyne, noght knowynge this
preest,
And hidde it, and hym hente by the
breest,
And to hym spak, and thus seyde
in his game:
55 'Stoupeth adoun! by God, ye be to
blame!
Helpeth me now, as I didē yow whil-
eer;
Putte in youre hand, and looketh
what is theer!'
¶ This preest took vp this siluer teyne
anon,
And thanne seyde the chanoun, 'Lat
vs gon
60 With thise thre teynes, whichē þat
we han wrought,
To som goldsmyth, and wite if they
been ouht;
ffor, by my feith, I nolde, for myn
hood,
But if that they werē siluer fyn and
good,
And that as swithe preeued it shal bee.'
65 ¶ Vn-to the goldsmyth with thise teynes
thre
They wente, and puttē thise teynes
in assay
To fir and hamer; myghtē no man
seyē 'nay,'
But þat they weren as hem oghte be.
¶ This sotted preest, 'who was gladder
than he?
70 Was neuere brid gladder agayn the
day,
Ne nyghtyngale, in the sesoun of May,
Nas neuere noon that luste bet to
synge,
Ne lady lustier in carolyngē—
Or for to speke of love and wom-
manhede—:

Ne knyght in armes to doon an hardy 75
dede,
To stonde[n] in gracē of his lady
deere,
Than hadde this preest this soory craft
to leere.
And to the chanoun thus he spak,
and seyde:
'ffor loue of God, that for vs alle
deyde,
And as I may deserue it vn-to yow, 80
What shal this receit[e] coste, telleth
now.'
¶ 'Byoure lady,' quod this chanon,
'it is deere!
I warne yow wel; for, saue I and a
frere,
In Engelond ther kan no man it make.'
¶ 'No fors!' quod he, 'now, sire, for 85
Goddess sake,
What shal I paye? telleth me, I preye.'
¶ 'Ywis,' quod he, 'it is ful deere, I
seye;
Sire, at o word, if that thee list it
haue,
Ye shul paye fourty pound, so God
me saue!
And nere the freendshipe þat ye dide 90
er this
To me, ye sholde paye moore, y-wis.'
¶ This preest the somme of fourty
pound anon
Of nobles fette, and took hem euerich-
on
To this chanoun for this ilke receit;
Al his werkynge nas but fraude and 95
deceit.
¶ 'Sir(e) preest,' he seyde, 'I kepē han
no loos
Of my craft, for I wolde it kept werē
cloos,
And, as ye louē me, kepeth it secree;
ffor, and men knewen al my soutiltee,
By God, they wolden han so greet 00
enuye
To me, by cause of my philosophye,

17550. roubleynge G., rombleþ C., etc. (Gl.). 56. I] a E. 63. that E.Eg., f. G., etc. (Gl.). 64. it shal E., shal it G., etc. (Sk.). 70: bgl. 2437. 72. Nas E., Was G., etc.; noon] man E. (Gl.). 76. stonden E. (Gl.). 79. the loue Eg., etc. 81. receite E.P.L. 88. thee] yow G., 3c H.⁴Li. 99. subtilete G.L. (Sk.).

[G 1374—1401]

[G 1402—1428]

I sholde þe deed—ther werē noon
 oother weye.
 ¶‘God it forbeedel’ quod the preest,
 ‘what sey ye?
 Yet hadde I leuere spenden al the
 good
 05 Which þat I haue—or elles wexe I
 wood—
 Than that ye sholden falle in swich[e]
 mescheef.’
 ¶‘ffor youre good wyl, sire, haue ye
 right good preef,’
 Quod the chanoun, ‘and farwel, grant
 mercy!’
 He wente his wey, and neuēr the
 preest hym sy
 10 After that day; and whan þat this
 preest shoolde
 Maken assay, at swich tyme as he
 wolde,
 Of this receit, farwel! it wolde nat be.
 Lo, thus byiaped and bigiled was hel
 Thus maketh he his introduccioun
 15 To brynge folk to *hir* destruccioun.—
 COnsidereth, sires, how þat in ech
 estaat
 Bitwixe man and gold ther is debaat
 So ferforth, that vnnethes is ther noon.
 This multiplying blent so many oon.
 20 That, in good feith, I trowe þat it bee
 The cause grettest of swich scarsetee.
 Philosophres speken so mystily
 In this craft, þat men kan nat come
 therby,
 ffor any wit þat men han now a-dayes;
 25 They mowe wel chiteren as þat doon
iayes,
 And in hir termes sette hir lust and
 peyne,
 But to hir purpos shul they neuere
 atteyne.
 A man may lightly lerne, if he haue
 aught,
 To multiplie, and brynge his good to
 naught.

¶ Lo! swich a lucre is in this lusty 3
 game!
 A mannes myrthe it wol turne vn-to
 grame,
 And empten also grete and heuye
 purses,
 And maken folk for to purchacen
 curses
 Of hem þat han hir good ther-to ylent.
 ffy, for shame! they þat han ben brent, 3
 Allas! kan they nat flee the fires
 heete?
 Ye that it vse, I rede ye it leete,
 Lest ye lese al, for bet than neuere
 is late;
 Neuere to thryue werē to long a date.
 Though ye prolle ay, ye shul it neuere 4
 fynde!
 Ye been as boold as is Bayard the
 blynde,
 That blondreth forth, and peril casteth
 noon;
 He is as boold to renne agayn a stoon
 As for to goon bisides in the weye.
 So faren ye that multiplie, I seye; 4
 If þat youre [e]yē kan nat seen aright,
 Lookē þat youre mynde lakke noght
 his sight!
 ffor though ye looken neuēr so brode,
 and stare,
 Yé shul no-thing wynne on that chaf-
 fare,
 But wasten al that ye may rape and 5
 renne.
 With-draweth the fir, lest it to faste
 brenne—
 Medleth namoore with that art, I mene;
 ffor if ye doon, youre thrift is goon
 ful clene.
 And right as swithe I wol yow tellen
 heere
 What [þat the] philosophres seyn in 5
 this mateere.
 LO thus seith Arnold of the Newe
 Toun,

17605. or E., and G., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 17276]. 15. *hir* f. E.G. 18. *vnnethe* E.Eg.H.⁴ (Gl.); *þer* is C.P.L.H.⁴ 25. as *þat* E.Eg., as G.H.⁴, and *langle* as C., etc.; *þis(e)* *iayes* C.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); *Ioyes* E. 31. *in-to* G.H.⁴, *al(le)* to C., etc. 35. *ffy* E.Eg., *O fy* G., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 49. *no thyng* (nought H.⁴) *wynne* E.G.Eg.H.⁴, *nat wynne* a myte C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 51. *Withdraweth* E., *With-drawe* G., etc. (Sk.). 55. [þat the] f. Sk.Gl.Wr.M.

[G 1429—1457]

[G 1458—1481]

As his Rosarie maketh mencionun;
He seith right thus, withouten any
lye:

‘Ther may no man *mercurie* mortifie,
60 But it be with his brother know-
lechyng’;

How þat he which þat first seyde
this thyng

Of *philosophres* fader [first] was,
Hermes.

He seith how þat the dragon douteles
Ne dyeth nat, but if that he be slayn

65 With his brother, and that is for to
sayn:

By the “dragon” *mercurie*, and noon
oother,

He vnderstood, and *brymstoon* by his
“brother,”

That out of Sol and Luna were ydrawe,
And therfore seyde he, “*Taak* heede
to my sawe!

70 Lat no man bisye hym this art for
seche,

But if þat he thentencionun and speche
Of *philosophres* vnderstonde kan,
And if he do, he is a lewed man;
ffor this science and this konnyng,”
quod he,

75 “Is of the secree of [the] secretes,”
pardee.

¶ Also ther was a disciple of Plato,
That on a tyme seyde his maister to,
As his book ‘*Senior*’ wol berę wnesse,
And this was his demande in sooth-
fastnesse:

80 “Telle me the namę of the priuee
stoon.”

¶ And Plato answerde vn-to hym anoon,
“*Ták[e]* the stoon that *Titanos* men
name.”

¶ ‘Which is that?’ quod he. “*Magna-*
sia is the same,”

Seyde Plato. ‘Ye, sire, and is it thus?’

85 This is “*ignotum per ignotius*,”

What is *Magnasia*, good sire, I yow
preye?

¶ “It is a water that is maad, I sęye,
Of *elementes* foure,” quod Plato.

¶ “Telle me the roote, good sire,” quod
he tho,

‘O’f that water, if it be youre wil[le].’ 90

¶ “Nay, nay,” quod Plato, “certein,
that I nyl[le].

The *philosophres* sworn were euerych-
oon

That they sholden discouere it vn-to
noon,

Nę in no book it write in no manere;
ffor vn-to Crist it is so lief and deere, 95

That he wol nat that it discouered
bee,

But where it liketh to his deitee
Men for tenspire, and eek for to def-
fende

Whom þat hym liketh; lo, this is the
ende.”

¶ Thanę conclude I thus: sith þat God 00
of heuene

Ne wil nat that the *philosophres* neuene
How þat a man shal come vn-to this

ston,

I rede as for the beste: lat it goon.
ffor who-so maketh God his *aduersarie*,
As for to werke[n] any thyng in con- 05

trarie

Of his wil, certes, neuer shal he
thryue,

Thogh that he multiplie terme of lyue.
And there a poynt; for ended is my
tale.

God sende euery trewe man boote
of his bale! Amen.

¶ Heere is ended the Chanouns
yemannes tale.

17660. brother E.L.H.⁴, brother(i)s G., etc. 62. [first] E. 67. Sol, Luna: f. 17056.
75. [the] E.G.; secretes C.P.Li. (Sk., Gl.). 83. *Magnesia* L.Li. (Sk.); id. 86.
85. *ignotius* Li.H.⁴, *ignocius* E., etc. 89. roote E.Eg., rooche G., etc. 90. *ȝif* that it
G. (Sk.); wil, 91. nyl G. 98. Men E.G.Eg., Man C., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 17700. sith E., syn
G.D.H.⁴ Li., *ȝif* C.P.L.; þat f. H.⁴ (Sk.). 03. as vs E.Eg.; let(e) E.Eg.H.⁴ 05. werken
E.G. (Sk., Gl.). 07. his lyve Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. 1029].

[H 1—22]

[H 23—46]

IX. Fragment (H—I).

24. The Maunciples Tale.

a) Heere folweth the Prologe of the Maunciples tale.

10 Woot ye nat wher̃ ther stand a litel
toun

Which þat ycleped is Bobbe-vp-and-
doun

Vnder the Blee in Caunterbury weye?
Ther gan oure hooste for to iape and
pleye,

And seyde, 'Sirẽs, what! Dun is in
the myre!

15 Is ther no man, for preyer̃ ne for
hyre,

That wol[e] awake oure felawe al bi-
hynde?

A theef myghte hym ful lightly robbe
and bynde.

See how he nappeth! see how, for
cokkes bones!

That he wol falle fro his hors atones.

20 Is that a Cook of Londoun, with mes-
chance?

Do hym com̃ forth—he knoweth his
penaunce,

ffor he shal telle a tale, by my fey!
Al-though it be nat worth a botel
hey.

Awak[e], thou Cook!, quod he, 'God
yeũe thee sorwe!

25 What eyleth thee to slepe by the
morwe?

Hastow had fleen al nyght, or artow
dronke?

Or hastow with som quene al nyght
yswonke,

So that thow mayst nat holden vp thyn
heed?

¶ This Cook, þat was ful pale and
no-thing reed,

30 Seyde to oure hoost, 'So God my
soule blesse!

As ther is falle on me swich heu-
nesse—

Noot I nat why—þat me wer̃ leuere
slepe

Thán the beste galon wyn in Chepe.'

¶ 'Wel,' quod the Maunciple, 'if it may
doon ese

To thee, sirẽ Cook, and to no wight 35
displese

Which þat herre rideth in this com-
paignye,

And that oure hoost wole, of his cur-
teisye,

I wol as now excuse thee of thy tale;
ffor, in good feith, thy visage is ful
pale.

Thyne [e]ỹen daswen eek, as that me 40
thynketh,

And, wel I woot, thy breeth ful soure
stynketh,

That sheweth wel thou art nat wel
disposed;

Of me, certeyn, thou shalt nat been
yglosed.

See how he ganeth, lo, this dronken
wight!

As though he wolde swolwe vs anon- 45
right.

Hoold cloos thy mouth, man, by thy
fader kyn!

The deũl of helle sette his foot ther-
in!

Thy cursed breeth infecte wol[e] vs
alle;

ffy, stynkyng swyn! fy, foule mootẽ
thee falle!

A! taketh heed̃, sirẽs, of this lusty 50
man!

Now, sweet̃ sirẽ, wol ye iusten atte
fan?

Ther-to, me thynketh, ye been wel
yshape.

I trowe that ye dronken han wyn-
ape,

And that is whan men pleyen with a
straw.'

And with this speche the Cook wax 55
wrooth & wraw,

17711. ycleped E.G., cleped He., etc. 16. al E.He.H.⁴, arn Eg., here G. (Sk.),
f. C., etc. 18. see how for E.He.G., how f. Eg., etc. (Sk.). 19. That] As L. [Six-Text
and] E.] (Sk., Gl.). 38. as f. E. 45. vs swolwe C.L. (Sk.). 49. thee] thou E. (Gl.).
55. this E.P.L., his He., etc.

[H 47-72]

[H 73-97]

And on the Manciple he gan nodde
 faste
 ffor lak[ke] of speche, and doun the
 hors hym caste,
 Where-as he lay til þat men vp hym
 took.
 This was a fair chyuahee of a Cook!
 60 Allas! he naddē holde hym by his
 ladell
 And er þat he agayn were in his
 sadel,
 Ther was greet showuyng to and fro
 To lifte hym vp, and muchel care
 and wo,
 So vnweeldē was this sory palled goost.
 65 And to the Manciple thanne spak oure
 hoost:
 ¶ 'By cause drynke hath dominacioun
 Vpon this man—by my sauacioun!—
 I trowe lewedly he wolde telle his
 tale;
 ffor, were it wyn, or oold or moysty
 ale,
 70 That he hath dronke, he speketh in
 his nose,
 And fneseth faste, and eek he hath
 the pose.
 ¶ He hath also to do moore than
 ynough
 To kepe[n] hym and his capul out
 of slough;
 And if he falle from his capul eft-
 soone,
 75 Thanne shal we allē haue ynogh to
 doone
 In lifyng vp his heuy dronken cors.
 Telle on thy tale—of hym make I no
 fors!
 ¶ But yet, Manciple, in feith thou art
 so nyce,
 Thus openly repreue hym of his vice.
 80 Another day he wol[e], perauenture,
 Reclayme thee, and brynge thee to
 lure;

I meene, he speke wol[e] of smale
 thynges
 As for to pynchen at thy rekenynges,
 That were nat honeste, if it cam to
 preef.
 ¶ '[No]' quod the Manciple, 'that were 85
 a greet mescheef!
 So myghte he lightly brynge me in
 the snare.
 Yet hadde I leuere payen for the mare
 Which [that] he rit on than he sholde
 with me stryue;
 I wol nat wratthe[n] hym, al-so moote
 I thryue!
 That that I speke, I seyde it in my 90
 bourde.
 And wite ye what? I haue heer in a
 gourde
 A draghte of wyn, ye, of a ripe grape,
 And right anon ye shul seen a good
 iape.
 This Cook shal drynke ther-of, if þat
 I may;
 Vp peyne of deeth, he wol nat seye 95
 me nay!
 ¶ And certeynly—to tellen as it was—
 Of this vessel the Cook drank faste,
 allas!
 What neded hym? He drank ynough
 biforn.
 And whan he hadde pouped in this
 horn,
 To the Manciple he took the gourde 00
 agayn;
 And of that drynke the Cook was
 wonder fayn,
 And thanked hym in swich wise as
 he koude.
 ¶ Thanne gan oure hoost to laughen
 wonder loude,
 And seyde, 'I se wel it is necessarie,
 Wh(er)e þat we goon, good drynke 05
 we with vs carie;
 ffor that wol turne rancour and disese

17756-61. f. P. 56. he gan E.G., gan to Eg., gan he L., bigan he He., etc.
 57. lakke E.He.C. (Sk., Gl.). 60. = bei seinem Geschäft bleiben. 64. vnwelde L.H.⁴,
 vnweeldy E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 68. he lewedly telle wolde (woll) He.Eg.H.⁴, he l. wolde t.
 C. (Sk., Gl.), he wolde l. t. P. 73. kepen E.He.L.; slough E., the sl. He., etc. 84. come
 G.C.P. 85. [No] f. Eg.H.⁴ 88. [that] E.Eg. 89. wratthen E. 94. þat E.P., f. He., etc. (Sk.).
 98. hym E.G., it He., etc. 17805. good] þat E.; with vs to c. Eg., etc.

[H 98—124]

[H 125—149]

Tacord and loue, and many a wrong
apese.

¶ O' Bacus! yblessed be thy name!
That so kanst turnen earnest in-to game;
10 Worship(e) and thank be to thy deitee!
Of that mateere ye gete namoore of
me.

Telle on thy tale, Manciple, I thee
preye.

¶ 'Wel sire,' quod he, 'now herkneth
what I seye!'

b) Heere bigynneth the Manciples tale of the Crowe.

Whan Phebus dwelled heere in this
world adoun,

15 As olde bookes maken mencioune,
He was the mooste lusty bachiler
In al this world, and eek the beste
archer.

He slow Phitoun, the serpent, as he
lay

Slepyng agayn the sonne vpon a day,
20 And many another noble worthy dede
He with his bowe wroghte, as men
may rede.

¶ Pleyen he koude on euery mynstral-
cie,

And syngen, that it was a melodie
To heeren of his cleere voys the soun.

25 Certes, the kyng of Thebes, Amphion,
That with his syngyng walled that
citee,

Koude neuere syngen half so wel as
he.

Therto he was the semelieste man
That is or was, sith þat the world
bigan.

30 What nedeth it hise fetures to dis-
cryue?

ffor in this world was noon so fair
on lyue.

He was ther-with fulfild of gentillesse,
Of honour, and of parfit worthynesse.

¶ This Phebus, that was flour of
bachilrie,

As wel in fredom as in chualrie, . . . 3
ffor his desport, in signe eek of vic-
torie

Of Phitoun—so as telleth vs the storie—
Was wont to beren in his hand a
bowe.

¶ Now hadde this Phebus in his hous
a crowe,

Which in a cage he fostred many a 4
day,

And taughte it speken, as men teche
a iay.

Whit was this crowe as a snow-whit
swan,

And countrefete the speche of euery
man

He koude, whan he sholde telle a
tale.

Ther-with in al this world no nyghtyn- 4
gale

Ne koude, by an hondred thousand
deel,

Syngen so wonder myrily and weel.

¶ Now hadde this Phebus in his hous
a wyf,

Which þat he louede moore than his
lyf,

And nyght and day dide euere his 5
diligence

Hire for to plese, and doon hir(e)
reuerence,

Saue oonly *that*—the sothe if I shal
sayn—

Ialous he was, and wolde haue kept
hir(e) fayn.

ffor hym were looth byiaped for to be,
And so is euery wight in swich de- 5
gree;

But al[] in ydel, for it auailleth noght.
A good wyf, that is clene of werk and
thought,

Sholde nat been kept in noon awayt,
certayn;

17808. O pou B. Eg.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 12. tale f. He.P.L. 14. world E., ertheHe., etc. (Sk., Gl.) [vgl. Ov., Met. II, 534 ff.]. 20. ib. I, 438 ff. 41. speken H.⁴, speke E., etc.; as þat Eg.C. 42. as is a He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 52. the sothe that E.G., that the s. if He., yf the s. that Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 56. in ydel E.G., for naught He., etc. [bejfer?]. 57. of[] in He.G.

[H 150—177]

[H 178—206]

And trewely the labour is in vayn
 60 To kepe a shrewe, for it wol nat bee.
 This holde I for a verray nycetee,
 To spille labour for to kepe wyues;
 Thus writen olde clerkes in hir lyues.
 But now to purpos, as I first bigan.
 65 This worthy Phebus dooth al[l] that he
 kan
 To plesen hir(e), wenyngē for swich
 plesaunce,
 And for his manhede and his gouvēr-
 aunce,
 That no man sholde han put hym
 from hir[e] grace.
 But, God it woot, ther may no man
 embrace
 70 As to destreyne a thyng which þat
 nature
 Hath natureȝelly set in a creature.
 ¶ Taak any bryd, and put it in a cage,
 And do al thyn entente and thy corage
 To fostre it tendrely with mete and
 drynke
 75 Of alle deyntees þat thou kanst bi-
 thyнке,
 And keep(e) it al-so clenly as thou
 may,
 Al-though his cage of gold be neuȝer
 so gay,
 Yet hath this brid, by twenty thousand
 foold,
 Leuere in a fforest, that is rude and
 coold,
 80 Goon ete wormes and swich wrecched-
 nesse;
 ffor euȝer this brid wol doon his bi-
 synesse
 To escape out of his cagē, if he may—
 His libertee this brid desireth ay.
 ¶ Lat take a cat, and fostre hym wel
 with milk
 85 And tendre flessh, and make his couche
 of silk,
 And lat hym seen a mous go by the
 wal,

Anon he weyueth milk, and flessh,
 and al,
 And euery deyntee that is in that
 hous:
 Swich appetit he hath to ete a mous.
 Lo! heere hath lust his dominacioun, 90
 And appetit fleemeth discrecioun.
 ¶ A she-wolf hath also a vileyns kynde;
 The lewedeeste wolf þat she may fynde,
 Or leest of reputacioun [that] wol she
 take
 In tyme whan hir lust to han a make. 95
 ¶ Allē thise ensamples speke I by thise
 men
 That been vntrewe, and no-thing by
 wommen;
 ffor men han euere a likerous ap-
 petit
 On lower thyng to parfourne hir delit
 Than on hir(e) wyues, be they neuȝer 100
 so faire,
 Ne neuȝer so trewe, ne so debonaire.
 flessh is so newefangel, with mes-
 chaunce,
 That we ne konne in no-thing han
 plesaunce
 That sowneth in-to vertu any while.
 ¶ This Phebus, which þat thoghte vpon 105
 no gile,
 Deceyued was for al his iolitee;
 ffor vnder hym another hadde shee,
 A man of litel reputacioun,
 Nat worth to Phebus in comparisoun;
 The moore harm is, it happeth ofte 110
 so,
 Of which ther cometh muchel harm
 and wo.
 ¶ And so bifel, whan Phebus was ab-
 sent,
 His wyf anon hath for hir lemman
 sent.
 Hir lemman? Certes, this [is] a
 knauyssh speche!—
 fforyeueth it me, and that I yow bi- 115
 seche.

17866. for He., that E.G., by Eg., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 72. [Randn.] Exemplum de volucere (84 de Murelego, 92 de lupo) nur E. [vgl. 10926 ff.]. 82. gif G., yf that Eg., when C.L.H.* 84: vgl. Rom. R. 14241 ff. 92: ibid. 7799 ff. 94. [that] E., etc. (him H.*), f. Sk. 97. and] but He.Eg. 17914. [is] f. He. [vgl. 5757, etc.].

[H 207—233]

[H 234—259]

¶ The wise Plato seith, as ye may rede:

'The word moot nede accorde with the dede;

If men shal telle proprely a thyng,
The word moot cosyn be to the werk-
yng.'

20 I am a boystous man; right thus seye I:

Ther nys no difference, trewely,
Bitwixe a wyf þat is, of heigh degree,
If of hir[e] body dishoneste she bee,
A'nd a poure wenche, oother than this:—

25 If it so be, they werke bothe amys—
But þat the gentile, in [hir] estaat aboue,

She shal be cleped 'his lady' as in loue;

And for that oother is a poure woman,

She shal be cleped 'his wenche' or 'his lemman.'

30 And, God it woot, myn owene deere brother,

Men leyn þat oon as lowe as lith þat oother.

¶ Right so bitwixe a titleles tiraunt
A'nd an outlawe, or a thief erraunt,
The same I seye, ther is no difference.

35 To Alisaundre was toold this sentence:

That for the tirant is of gretter myght,
By force of meynce, for to sleen down right,

And brennen hous and hoom, and make al playn,

Lo, therfore is he cleped a 'capitayn;'

40 And for the outlawe hath but smal meynce,

And may nat doon so greet an harm as he,

Ne brynge a contree to so greet mescheef,

Men clepen hym an 'outlawe,' or a 'thief.'

But for I am a man noght textueel,
I wol noght telle of textes neuer-a-
deel;

I wol go to my tale, as I bigan.

Whan Phebus wyf had sent for hir lemman,

Anon they wroghten al hir lust volage.

¶ The white crowe, that heeng ay in the cage,

Biheeld hir werk, and seyde neuer a word.

And whan þat hoom was come Phebus, the lord,

This crowe sang, 'Cokkow, cokkow, cokkow!'

¶ 'What, bryd,' quod Phebus, 'what song syngestow?

Ne werē thou wont so myrily to synge,
That to myn herte it was a reioys-
ynge

To heere thy voys? Allas! what song is this?'

¶ 'By God,' quod he, 'I synge nat amys;

Phebus,' quod he, 'for al thy worthy-
nesse,

ffor al thy beautee and thy gentillesse,
ffor al thy song and al thy myn-
stralcy,

ffor al thy waityng, blered is thyn [e]yē

With oon of litel reputacioun,
Noght worth to thee, as in comparisoun,

The montance of a gnat—so moote I thryue!

ffor on thy bed thy wyf I saugh hym 65
swyue.

¶ What wol ye moore? The crowe anon hym tolde,

By sadde tokenes and by wordes bolde,
How þat his wyf had doon hir lecherye,

17916. Plato: nach Boethius, III, pr. 12 [f. 741f.]. 24/25: f. G. 26. hir E.G. (Gl.) 35ff.: f. Gesta Rom., cp. 146. 60. and al] al f. E.G.H.⁴ 63. as f. E.He.G.Eg. 65. swyue] swy &cetera E., &cetera He.; [Randn.] Nota malum quid E.

[H 260—285]

[H 286—314]

Hym to greet shame and to greet
vileynye,
70 And tolde hym ofte he saugh it with
hise [e]yën.
¶ This Phebus gan awayward for to
wryen,
And thoughte his sorweful herte brast
atwo.
His bowe he bente, and sette ther-
inne a flo,
And in his ire his wyf thanne hath
he slayn—
75 This is theeffect, ther is namoore to
sayn—,
ffor sorwe of which he brak his myn-
stralcie,
Bothe harpe, and lute, and gyterne,
and sautrie;
And eek he brak hise arwes and his
bowe,
And after that thus spak he to the
crowe:
80 ¶ 'Traitour,' quod he, 'with tonge of
scorpioun
Thou hast me broght to my con-
fusioun!
Allas, that I was wrought! why nere
I deed?
O deere wyf! o gemme of lustiheed!
That werē to me so sad, and eek so
trewe,
85 Now listow deed, with face pale of
hewe,
fful gilteles—that dorste I swere,
ywys!—
O rakel hand, to doon so foule amys!
O trouble wit! o ire recchelees,
That vnaused smyteth gilteles!
90 O wantrust, ful of fals suspencion!
Where was thy wit and thy discre-
cion?
O euery man be war of rakelnesse,
Ne trowe no-thing with-outen strong
witness!
Smyt nat to soone, er þat ye witen
why,

And beeth auysed wel and sobrelly, 95
Er ye doon any execucion
Vp-on youre ire for suspencion!
Allas! a thousand folk hath rakel ire
ffully fordoon, and broght hem in the
mire!
Allas! for sorwe I wol my-seluen slee!' 00
¶ And to the crowe, 'O false thief!
seyde he,
'I wol thee quite anon thy false tale!
Thou songe whilom lyk a nyghtyngale;
Now shaltow, false thief, thy song
forgon,
And eek thy white fetheres euerichon, 05
Ne neuere in al thy lyf ne shaltou
speke:
Thus shal men on a traytour been
awreke!
Thou and thyn of-spryng euere shal be
blake,
Ne neuere sweete *noyse* shul ye make,
But euere crie agayn tempest and 10
rayn,
In tokenyng þat thurgh thee my wyf
is slayn!
And to the crowe he stirte, and that
anon,
And pulled hise white fetheres euerych-
on,
And made hym blak, and refte hym
al his song,
And eek his speche, and out at dore 15
hym slong
Vn-to the deuel, which I hym bitake!
And for this caas been alle crows
blake.—
LOrdynge, by this ensamplē I yow
preye
Beth war, and taketh keep[e] what
that I seye:
Ne telleth neuere no man in youre 20
lyf
How þat another man hath dight his
wyf;
He wol yow haten mortally, certeyn.
Daun Salomon, as wise clerkes seyn,

17972. And E.He.G.Eg., him C., etc. (Sk.). 75. ther nys He.P. 99. and E.G., or He., etc. 18009. *noyse*] *voys* E. 19. *kep* G., *kepe* E., etc.; what E.He.H.* (Sk., Gl.), what that G., etc. 23: f. *©*pr. XXI, 23.

[H 315—339]

[H 340—362]

Techethi a man to kepe[n] his tonge
weel—

25 But, as I seyde, I am noght textueel.
But nathelees thus taughte me my
dame:

‘My sone, thenke on the crowe on
Goddess name!

My sone, keep(e) wel thy tonge, and
keep(e) thy freend!

A wikked tonge is worse than a feend.

30 My sone, from a feend men may hem
blesse;

My sone, God, of his endelees good-
nesse,

Walled a tonge with teeth and lippes
eke,

ffor man sholde hym auyse what he
speeke.

My sone, ful ofte for to muche speche

35 Hath many a man been spilt, as
clerkes teche.

Bút for litel speche auyself

Is no man shent, to speke generally.

My sone, thy tonge sholdestow re-
streyn

At alle tymes, but whan thou doost
thy payne

40 To speke of God in honour and
preyere.

The firste vertu, sone, if thou wolt
leere,

Is to restreyn and kepe wel thy
tonge:

Thus lerne children whan þat they
been yonge.

My sone, of muchel spekyng yuele
auysed,

45 Ther lasse spekyng hadde ynough suf-
fised,

Comth muchel harm, thus was me
toold and taught;

In muchel speche synne wanteth
naught.

Wostow wher-of a rakel tonge serueth?

Right as a swerd forkutteth and for-
kerueth

An arm atwo, my deere sone, right so 50

A tonge kutteth freendshipe al atwo.

A iangler is to God abhomyable;

Reede Salomon, so wys and honorable,

Reede David in hise psalmes, reede
Senekke.

My sone, speke nat, but with thyn 55
heed thou bekke;

Dissimule as thou werest deaf, if that
thou heere

A iangler speke of perilous mateere.

The ffleming seith, and lerne it if
thee leste,

That “litel ianglyng causeth muchel
reste.”

My sone, if thou no wikked word hast 60
seyd,

Thee thar nat drede for to be biwreyd.

But he þat hath mysseyd, I dar wel
sayn,

He may by no wey clepe his word
agayn.

Thyng that is seyde, is seyde, and forth
it gooth,

Though hym repente, or be hym leef 65
or looth.

He is his thral to whom þat he hath
said

A tale of which he is now yuele
apayd.

My sone, be war, and be noon auctour
newe

Of tidynges, wher they been false or
trewe.

Wher-so thou come, amonges hye or 70
lowe,

Kepe wel thy tonge, and thenke vp-on
the crowe!

¶ Heere is ended the Maunciples tale
of the Crowe.

18024. kepen E.He. (Gl.). 25. nam He.G. 27. on ... name E., in ... n. H.⁴, a ... n. He., etc. (Sk.). 28 ff.: nad Alb. Brix. XCVIII. 34. Dist. I, 12. 41. Dist. I, 3. 53. Reed E.H.⁴; id. 54 (Sk., Gl.) [Spr. X, 19, 31; XVII, 20; XXVI, 28]. 54: Bf. XV, 3. 59. reste He.G.C. 64: Hor., Epist. I, 18, 71. 68: Dist. I, 12? 69. wher He., wheither (wheper, etc.) E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 71. thynk He.G.D.L.

[I 1—25]

[I 26—53]

25. The Persouns Tale (I).

a) ¶ Heere folweth the Prologe of the Persouns tale.

By that the Maunciple hadde his tale
al ended,

The sonne fro the south lynē was
descended

So lowe that he nas nat, to my sighte,
75 Degreës nyne-and-twenty as in highte.
ffoure of the klokke it was tho, as I
gesse;

ffor elleuēne foot, or litel moore or
lesse,

My shadwe was at thilke tyme as
there,

Of swichē feet as my lengthe parted
were

80 In sixe feet equal of proporcioun.
Ther-with the Moones exaltacioun,
I meene Libra, afwey gan ascende,
As we were entryng at a thropes ende;
¶ ffor which oure hoost, as he was wont
to gye,

85 As in this caas, oure ioly compaignye,
Seyde in this wise: 'Lordynges euerich-
oon!

Now lakketh vs no tales mo than oon.
ffulfilled is my sentence and my de-
cree;

I trowe that we han herd of ech de-
gree.

90 Almost fulfilld is al myn ordinaunce;
I praye to God so yeue hym right good
chaunce

That telleth this tale to vs lustily.

¶ 'Sire preest,' quod he, 'artow a vi-
cary,

Or arte a person? seye sooth, by thy
fey!

95 Be what thou be, ne brek[e] thou nat
oure play;

ffor every man, sauē thou, hath toold
his tale.

Vnbokele, and shewe vs what is in
thy male;

ffor, trewely, me thynketh by thy
cheere

Thou sholdest knytte vp wel a greet
mateere.

Telle vs a fable anon, for cokkes o
bones!

¶ This Persoun answered al atones,
'Thou getest fable noon ytoold for me;

¶ *Paulus ad Thimotheum*
ffor Paul, that writeth vn-to Thymothee,
Repreueth hem that weyueth soothfast-
nesse,

And tellen fables and swich wrecched-
nesse.

Why sholde I sowen draf out of my
fest,

Whan I may sowen whete if þat me
lest?

ffor which I seye, if that yow list to
heere

Moralitee and vertuous mateere,
And thanne þat ye wol yeue me au-
dience,

I' wol fayn, at Cristes reuerence,
Do yow plesaunce leefful, as I kan.
But trusteth wel, I am a Southren man,
I kan nat geeste "Rum Ram Ruf" by
lettre,

Ne, God woot, rym holde I but litel
bette.

And therefore, if yow list, I wol nat
glose,

I wol yow telle a myrie tale in prose
To knytte vp al this feeste, and make
an ende.

And Ihesu, for his grace, wit me sende
To shewe yow the wey, in this viage, 2
Of thilke parfit glorious pilgrymage
That highte Ierusalem celestial.

And if ye vouche-sauf, anon I shal
Bigynne vp-on my tale, for which I
preye

18072. Maunciple auf Raſur He.; al E.He., f. G. (I-endid), etc. 73. is He.C.P.L.H.⁴
75. Zahl hier u. 80 (päter H.⁴; in E.G.H.⁴, of He., etc. 76. ffoure] Ten alle Sij. [nach Tw.:
four auch in Mss.]; tho E.G.Eg., so He., etc.; f. H.⁴ 81. Moones: richtig Saturnes [Tw.].
82. In mena H.⁴ 18096—18145. H.² für G. 18101. answered C., answerde E., etc. (him
answerde Sk.). 03. I. Tim. IV, 7. 04. weyueth E.H.⁴, weyuen He., etc. (Sk.). 11. fayn
E.Eg., ful fayn He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 22: vgl. Offenb. XXI, 2 u. 18 149.

[I 54—75]

[I 75—87]

- 25 Telle youre ays—I kan no better seye.
 ¶ But natheles this meditacioun,
 I putte it ay vnder correccioun,
 Of clerkes; for I am nat textueel,
 I take but *the* sentence, trusteth weel.
 30 Therefore I make a protestacioun
 That I wol stonde to correccioun.
 ¶ Vp-on this word we han assented
 soone;
 ffor as vs semed, it was for to doone
 To enden in som vertuous sentence,
 35 And for to yeue hym space and au-
 dience;
 And bede oure hoost he sholde to
 hym seye
 That alle we to telle his tale hym
 preye.
 ¶ Oure hoost hadde the wordes for
 vs alle:
 ‘Sire preest,’ quod he, ‘now faire yow
 bifalle!’
 40 Seye what yow list, and we wol gladly
 heere.’
 And with that word he seyde in this
 manere:
 ‘Telleth,’ quod he, ‘your meditacioun;
 But hasteth yow! the sonne wol[e]
 adoun.
 Beth fructuous, and that in litel space,
 45 And to do wel, God sende yow his
 gracel’

¶ *Explicit prohemium.*

b) ¶ Heere bigynneth the Persouns
 tale.)*

¶ Ier. 6^o. State super vias & vi-
 dete & interrogate de viis**) an-
 tiquis que sit via bona & ambu-
 late in ea & inuenietis refrigerium
 animabus vestris &c.

¶ Oure sweete Lord God of heuene,
 that no man wol[e] perisse, but wol[e]

that we comen alle to the knoweleche
 of hym and the blissful lif that is per-
 durable, amonesteth vs by the pro-
 phete Ieremie, and seith in this wyse:
 (7) ¶ ‘Stondeth vpon the weyes, and
 seeth, and axeth of olde pathes—that
 is to seyn: of olde sentences—which
 is the goode wey, and walketh in that
 wey, and ye shal fynde refresshyng
 for youre soules &c.’ (8) ¶ Manye been
 the weyes espirituels that leden folk
 to oure Lord Ihesu Crist and to the
 regne of glorie; (9) of whiche weyes
 ther is a ful noble wey and a couen-
 able, which may nat fayle to no
 man, ne to womman that thurgh synne
 hath mysgoon fro the righte wey of
 Ierusalem celestial; (10) and this wey 50
 is cleped Penitence, of which man
 sholde gladly herkennen and enquire
 with al his herte, (1) to wyten what is
 penitence, and whennes it is cleped
 penitence, and in how manye maneres
 been the acciouns or werkynge of
 penitence, and how manye spesces ther
 been of penitence, and whiche thynges
 apertenen and bihouen to penitence,
 and whiche thynges destourben peni-
 tence.

(2) ¶ Seint Ambrose seith that ‘Peni-
 tence is the pleyngynge of man for
 gilt þat he hath doon, and namoore
 to do any-tyng for which hym oghte
 to pleyne.’ (3) ¶ And som doctour
 seith, ‘Penitence is the waymentynge
 of man that sorweth for his synne,
 and pyneth hym-self for he hath mys-
 doon.’ (4) ¶ Penitence with certeyne
 circumstances is verray repentance of
 a man that halt hym-self in sorwe
 and oother peyne for hise giltes.
 (5) And for he shal be verray penitent, 55
 he shal first biwaylen the synnes that

18129. the f. E. 30. a E.Eg.L., f. He., etc. (Sk.). 33—45. Se. für C. 33. vs E.Eg., it He., etc. 36. bede E.He., bad Eg., etc. — *) H.² für G. — 18174. Se. für C. — 18172. — **) semitis He.P.L.H.²H.⁴ [Jer. VI, 16]. — 46. [Bgl. II. Petr. III, 9]; and seith E.Eg., that s. He., etc. (Sk.). 49. couenable E.Eg., ful c. He., etc. (Sk.); no man E., man He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); Ierusalem c.: Bgl. 18122. 50. man E.Eg., men He., etc. 51. spesces . . . of Penitence E.Eg.L., sp. . . . of penaunce Se., sp. . . . of penitences He., etc. 52. Ambr., Appendix, Sermo XXV; gilt E., the g. He., etc. (Sk.).

[I 87—98]

[I 98—109]

he hath doon, and stidefastly pur-
 posen in his herte to haue shrift of
 mouthe, and to doon satisfaccioun;
 (6) and neuere to doon thyng for
 which hym oghte moore biwayle or to
 compleyne, and continue in goode
 werkes, or elles his repentance may
 nat auaille. (7) ffor as seith seint
 Ysidre ¶ 'He is a iaper and a gabber,
 and no verray repentant that eftsoone
 dooth thyng for which hym oghte
 repente.' (8) Wepyng, and nat for to
 stynte to synne, may nat auaylle.
 (9) ¶ But natheles men shal hope that
 euery tyme þat man falleth, be it
 neuer so ofte, þat he may arise thurgh
 penitence, if he haue grace, but cer-
 60 tainly it is greet doute. (o) ffor as
 seith Seint Gregorie 'Vnnethe ariseth
 he out of synne that is charged with
 the charge of yuel vsage.' (1) And
 therefore repentant folk þat stynte for to
 synne, and forlete synne, er þat synne
 forlete hem, hooly chirche holdeth hem
 siker of hir sauacioun. (2) And he
 that synneth, and verrailly repenteth
 hym in his laste, hooly chirche yet
 hopeth his sauacioun by the grete
 mercy of oure Lord Ihesu Crist for
 his repentaunce; but taak the siker
 wey!

(3) ¶ And now, sith I haue declared
 yow what thyng is penitence, now shul
 ye vnderstonde that ther been .iiij. ac-
 ciouns of penitence. (4) ¶ The firste
 accioun of penitence is that a man
 be baptized after that he hath synned.
 65 (5) Seint Augustyn seith, 'But he be
 penytent for his olde synful lyf, he
 may nat bigynne the newe clene lif.'
 (6) for certes, if he be baptized
 withouten penitence of his olde gilt, he

receyueth the mark of baptesme, but
 nat the grace, ne the remission of his
 synnes, til he haue repentance verray.
 (7) Another defaute is this, that
 men doon deedly synne after þat they
 han receyued baptesme. (8) The
 thridde defaute is, that men fallen
 in venial synnes after hir baptesme
 fro day to day. (9) ¶ Ther-of seith
 Seint Augustyn ¶ that 'penitence of
 goode and humble folk is the penit-
 ence of euery day.'

(o) The spesces of Penitence been 7
 .iiij. ¶ That oon of hem is solempne,
 ¶ another is commune, ¶ and the
 thridde is priuee. (1) ¶ Thilke pe-
 nance that is solempne is in two
 maneres, as to be put out of hooly
 chirche in Lente for slaughtre of child-
 ren, and swich maner thyng. (2) ¶ Ano-
 ther thyng is whan a man hath synned
 openly, of which synne the fame is
 openly spoken in the contree; (3) and
 thanne hooly chirche by iuggement
 destreyneth hym for to do open pe-
 aunce. (4) ¶ Commune penaunce
 is that preestes enioynen men in cer-
 teyn caas, as for to goon perauenture
 naked in pilgrimages, or bare-foot.
 (5) ¶ Pryuee penaunce is thilke that 7
 men doon alday for priuee synnes, of
 whiche they shryue hem priuely, and
 receyue priuee penaunce.

(6) Now shaltow vnderstande what
 is bihouely and necessarie to verray
 perfit penitence. (7) And this stant
 on .iiij. thynges: Contricioun of herte,
 Confessioun of mouth, ¶ and Satisfac-
 cioun. (8) ffor which seith Seint Iohn
 Crisostom, ¶ 'Penitence destreyneth
 a man to accepte benygnely euery
 payne that hym is enioyned, with contri-

18156. biwayle E.Eg., to b. He., etc. (Sk.). 58. synne E.Eg., do s. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
 59. euery E.Eg., at e. He., etc. (Gl.). 60. synne E.Eg., his s. He., etc. (Gl.). 61: vgl. 12226.
 62. last day Eg., last ende Se.L.H.²H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.); [über taak, etc.] tene certum E.He.
 63. sith E.Eg., sith þat He.H.⁴, sithen(s) Se., etc.; thre Se.L.H.²H.⁴ 64. accioun of penit-
 ence E., f. He., etc.; is that E.Eg.P., is þat if He.H.²H.⁴, is if Se.L. 72. thyng E.Eg., f.
 He., etc. (Sk.); a man E.Se.H.²H.⁴, man He., etc. 74. men comunly in He.C.P.L.H.⁴
 (Sk.). 75. they . . . hem E., we . . . vs He., etc. (Sk.). 76. is bihouely E.G.Eg., bihoueth
 He., etc. 77. thre G.C., etc. 78. Crisostomus He.G.Eg.C.L. (Gre-); a man E.G.H.⁴, man
 He., etc.

[I 109—122]

[I 123—132]

cioun of herte, and shrift of mouth, with satisfaccioun, and in werkyng of alle manere humyltee;' (9) and this is fruytful penitence agayn .IIJ. thynges in whiche we wratthe oure
 80 Lord Ihesu Crist. (o) This is to seyn: by delit in thynkyng, ¶ by recchelesnesse in spekyng, and by wikked synful werkyng. (1) And agayns thise wikkede giltes is Penitence, that may be likned vn-to a tree. (2) The roote of his tree is contricioun, that hideth hym in the herte of hym þat is verray repentaunt, right as the roote of a tree hydeth hym in the erthe. (3) Of the roote of contricioun spryngeth a stalke, that bereth braunches and leues of confessioun, and fruyt of satisfaccioun; (4) ¶ ffor which Crist seith in his gospel, 'Dooth digne
 85 fruyt of penitence;' (5) for by this fruyt may men knowe this tree, and nat by the roote, that is hyd in the herte of man, ne by the braunches, ne by the leues of confessioun. (6) And therefore oure Lord Ihesu Crist seith thus: 'By the fruyt of hem ye shul knowen hem.' (7) ¶ Of this roote eek spryngeth a seed of grace, the which seed is mooder of sikernes, and this seed is egre and hoot. (8) The grace of this seed spryngeth of God thurgh remembrance of the day of doome and on the peynes of helle. (9) ¶ Of this matere seith Salomon that 'in the drede of
 90 God man forleteth his synne.' (o) ¶ The heete of this seed is the loue of God, and the desiryng of the ioie perdurable. (1) This heete draweth the herte of a man to God, and dooth hym haten his synne. (2) ffor soothly, ther is no-thing that sauoureth so wel to a child as the milk of his norice, ne no-thing is to hym moore abhomynable than thilke milk, when it is medled

with oother mete. (3) Right so the synful man that loueth his synne, hym semeth that it is to him moost sweete of any-thing; (4) but fro that tyme that he loueth sadly oure Lord Ihesu Crist, and desireth the lif perdurable, ther nys to him no-thing moore abhomynable; (5) for soothly, the lawe of God is the loue of God, for which Daid the prophete seith: (6) ¶ 'I haue loued thy lawe & hated wikkednesse and hate; he that loueth God, kepeth his lawe and his word.' (7) ¶ This tree saugh the prophete Daniel in *spirit vp-on* the auysiou of the kyng Nabugodonosor, whan he conseiled hym to do penitence. (8) ¶ Penaunce is the tree of lyf to hem that it receyuen, and he þat holdeth hym in verray penitence is blessed, after the sentence of Salomon.

(9) ¶ In this penitence or contricioun man shal vnderstonde .IIII. thynges; (o) that is to seyn: what is contricioun, 00 and whiche been the causes þat moeuen a man to contricioun, and how he sholde be contrit, & what contricioun auailleth to the soule. (1) ¶ Thanne is it thus: þat contricioun is the verray sorwe that a man receyueth in his herte for his synnes, with sad purpos to shryue hym, and to do penaunce, and neueremoore to do synne. (2) And this sorwe shal been in this manere, as seith seint Bernard: ¶ 'It shal been heuy, and greuous, and ful sharp and poynant in herte.' (3) ¶ ffirst, for man hath agilt his Lord & his creatour; and moore sharp and poynant, for he hath agilt hys fader celestial; (4) and yet moore sharp and poynant, for he hath wrathed and agilt hym that boghte hym, which with his precious blood haþ deliuered vs fro the bondes of synne, and fro

18180. and E.G., f. He., etc. 84: Matth. III, 8 [Joh. b. Täufer spricht! Bg. IV, 17]. 85. ne the leues He.Eg.H.⁴ 86. ye shul E.Eg., shul ye He., etc. [Matth. VII, 16]. 87. a grace E. 88. on the day He.Eg. 89: Spr. XVI, 6. 91. a man E.Eg., man He., etc. 92. is to hym f. E. 93—94. f. G. 96. loueth] loued E. [Bf. CXIX, 112f.]. 97. spirit vp-on f. E.; the kyng E., f. He., etc. (Gl.) [Dan. IV, 10 ff.]. 18201. it is He.C.H.⁴

[I 133—142]

the crueltee of the deuel, and fro the peynes of helle.

05 ¶ The causes that oghte moeue a man to contricioun been .VJ. (6) ¶ ffirst, a man shal remembre hym of hise synnes; but loke he that thilke remembraunce ne be to hym no delit by no wey, but greet shame and sorwe for his gilt. (7) ¶ ffor Iob seith, 'Synful men doon werkes worthy of confessioun.' (8) And therefore seith Ezechie, 'I wol remembre me alle the yeres of my lyf in bitternesse of myn herte.' (9) And God seith in the Apocalypse: ¶ 'Remembreth yow fro whennes þat ye been falle;' (o) for biforn that tyme þat ye synned ye were the children of God, and lymes of the regne of God. (1) But for youre synne ye been woxen thral and foul, and membres of the feend, hate of aungels, sclandre of hooly chirche, and foode of the false serpent, perpetueel matere of the fir of helle; (2) and yet moore foul and abhominable, for ye trespassen so ofte tyme as dooth the hound þat retourneth to eten his spewyng. (3) And yet be ye fouler for youre longe continuyng in synne & youre synful vsage, for which ye be roten in youre synne as a beest in his donge. (4) ¶ Swiche manere of thoghtes maken a man to haue shame of his synne, and no delit; (5) as God seith by the prophete Ezechiel: 'Ye shal remembre yow of youre weyes, and they shuln displese yow.' (6) Soothly, synnes been the weyes that leden folk to helle.

15 (7) ¶ The seconde cause that oghte make a man to haue desdeyn of synne is this: That, as seith seint Peter, 'who-so that dooth synne is thral of synne;' and synne put a man

[I 143—154]

in greet thraldom. (8) And therefore seith the prophete Ezechiel, 'I wente sorweful in desdayn of myself.' (9) And certes, wel oghte a man haue desdayn of synne, and withdrawe hym from that thraldom and vileynye. (o) And, lo, what seith 20 Seneca in this matere? He seith thus: 'Though I wiste that [god] neither God ne man ne sholde neuere knowe it, yet wolde I haue desdayn for to do synne.' (1) And the same Seneca also seith, 'I am born to gretter thynges than to be thral to my body, or than for to maken of my body a thral'; (2) ne a fouler thral may no man ne womman maken of his body than for to yeuen his body to synne. (3) Al were it the fouleste cherl, or the fouleste womman that lyueth, and leest of value, yet is he thanne moore foul[e] & moore in seruitute. (4) Euere fro the hyer degree that man falleth, the moore is he thral and moore to God and to the world *vil* and abhominable. (5) ¶ O, goode 25 God! wel oughte man haue desdayn of synne, sith that thurgh synne, ther he was free, now is he maked bonde. (6) ¶ And therefore seith Seint Augustyn; 'If thou hast desdayn of thy seruant, if he agilde or synne, haue thou thanne desdayn that thou thyself sholdest do synne. (7) Tak[e] reward of thy value, that thou ne be to foul to thy-self. (8) Allas! wel oughten they thanne haue desdayn to been seruauntz & thralles to synne, (9) and soore been ashamed of hemself that God, of his endelees goodnesse, hath set hem in heigh estaat; (o) or yeuen hem wit, strengthe of 30 body, heele, beautee, prosperitee, and boghte hem fro the deeth with his

18 205. sexe G. (Gl.). 06. he E.Eg., f. He., etc. 07: *Job* XXXIV, 25f.; lat.: *res dignas confusione!* 07: *Jer.* XXXVIII, 15 [vgl. 19279]. 09: *Offenb.* II, 5. 12: *Epr.* XXVI, 11; II. *Petr.* II, 22. 14. to haue E.G.L., haue He., etc. 15: *Jerem.* XX, 43. 17: *Job.* VIII, 34; II. *Petr.* II, 19. And certes E.Eg., Certes He., etc. 20. [god] E.He.H., f. G., etc. (Sk.). [God — neither God ne man — Gl.?] 24. to god vile and to þe world abhominable Eg., to the w. f. H.; vil and f. E. 25. greet desdayn He.G.H.⁴

[I 154—167]

[I 168—177]

herte-blood, (1) that they so vnkyndely agayns his gentillesse quiten hym so vileinsly, to slaughtre of hir owene soules. (2) ¶ O, goode God! ye women that been of so greet beautee, remembreth yow of the prouerbe of Salomon! (3) ¶ He seith, 'he likneth a fair womman that is a fool of hir body lyk to a ryng of gold that were in the groyne of a soughe.' (4) ffor right as a soughe wroteth in euerich ordure, so wroteth hir beautee in the stynkyng ordure of synne.

- 35 ¶ The thridde cause that oghte moue a man to contricioun is drede of the day of doome and of the horrible peynes of helle. (6) ¶ ffor, as seint Ierome seith, 'At euery tyme þat me remembreth of the day of doome I quake; (7) for whan I ete, or drynke, or what so that I do, euere semeth me þat the trompe sowneth in myn ere: (8) "Riseth vp, ye that been dede, and cometh to the iuggement!" (9) ¶ O goode God! muchel oghte a man to drede swich a iuggement, 'ther-as we shullen been alle,' as seint Poul seith, 'biforn the seete of oure Lord Ihesu Crist;'
 40 (o) wher-as he shal make a general congregacioun, wher-as no man may been absent: (1) ffor certes, there auaileth noon essoyne ne excusacioun. (2) And nat only that oure defautes shullen be iugged, but eek that alle oure werkes shullen openly be knowe. (3) ¶ And, as seith Seint Bernard, ther ne shal no pledynge auaille, ne sleighte; we shullen yeuen rekenynge of euerich ydel word.' (4) Ther shul
 45 we han a iuge that may nat been deceyed ne corrupt. (5) And why? ffor certes, alle oure thoghtes been discovered as to hym; ne for preyere

ne for meede he shal nat been corrupt. (6) ¶ And therfore seith Salomon, ¶ 'The wratthe of God ne wol nat spare no wight for preyere ne for yifte,' and therfore, at the day of doom, ther nys noon hope to escape. (7) ¶ Wherefore, as seith Seint Anselm, 'fful greet angwyssh shul the synful folk haue at that tyme. (8) Ther shal the stierne and wrothe iuge sitte aboue, and vnder hym the horrible put of helle, open to destroyen hym that moot biknowen hise synnes, (9) whiche synnes openly been shewed biforn God and biforn euery creature. (o) ¶ And in the left syde, mo deueles 50 than herte may bithynke, for to harye and drawe the synful soules to the peyne of helle. (1) ¶ And with-inne the hertes of folk shal be the bitynge conscience, and with-oute forth shal be the world al brennyng. (2) Whider shal thanne the wrecched synful man flee to hiden hym? ¶ Certes, he may nat hyden hym, he moste come forth, and shewen hym.' (3) ¶ ffor certes, as seith seint Ierome, 'The erthe shal casten hym out of hym, and the see also, and the eyr also, that shal be ful of thonderclappes and lightnynges.'

(4) ¶ Now soothly, who-so wel remembreth hym of thise thynges, I gesse þat his synne shal nat turne hym in delit, but to greet sorwe, for drede of the peyne of helle. (5) And therfore 55 seith Iob to God, ¶ 'Suffre, Lord, that I may a while biwaille and wepe, er I go with-oute returnyng to the derke lond, couered with the derknesse of deeth; (6) to the lond of mysese and of derknesse, where-as is the shadwe of deeth, where-as ther is noon ordre or ordinaunce, but grisly drede that euere

18232. [Randn.] Notate vos mulieres et cavete. 33. þat saith he likeneth H.⁴ (Sk.), he s. he l. C., he s. & l. G., He liknep P., he seipe L., he seith likneth E., etc. (Gl.); Sowe He., etc. [Epr. XI, 22]. 34. wroteth she hir(e) He., etc. (Sk.); the E., f. He., etc. 39: Röm. XIV, 10. 41. ne auailleth He.Eg.C.P.L. 43. ne sleighte E.Eg., ne no sl. He., etc. (Sk.). 46: Epr. I, 28? 50. in E.Eg., on He., etc. (Sk.); pyne He.C.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), pit G. 55: Job X, 21f. 56. ordre or E.He., o. of G., o. ne Eg., order H.⁴, oþer C.P.L.

[I 178—187]

[I 188—196]

shal laste.' (7) ¶ Loo, heere may ye seen þat Iob preyde respit a while to biwepe and waille his trespas; for soothly, a day of respit is bettre than al the tresor of the world. (8) ¶ And for as muche as a man may acquiten hym-self biforn God by penitence in this world, and nat by tresor, (9) therfore sholde he preye to God to yeue hym respit a while to biwepe and biwaillen his trespas. (10) ffor certes, al the sorwe that a man myghte make fro the bigynnyng of the world nys but a litel thyng at regard of the sorwe of helle.

(1) ¶ The cause why that Iob clepeth helle 'the lond of derknesse': vnderstondeth that he clepeth it 'lond[e]' or 'erthe,' for it is stable, and neuere shal faille; 'derk,' for he that is in helle hath defaute of light material. (2) ffor certes, the derke light that shal come out of the fyr that euere shal brenne, shal turne hym al to payne þat is in helle; for it sheweth hym to the horrible deueles that hym tormenten. (3) 'Couered with the derknesse of deeth,' that is to seyn: that he þat is in helle shal haue defaute of the sighte of God; for certes, the sighte of God is the lyf perdurable.

(4) ¶ 'The derknesse of deeth,' been the synnes that the wrecched man hath doon, whiche that destourben hym to see the face of God, right as doop a derk clowde bitwixe vs and the sonne; (5) 'Lond of Misese,' by cause that ther been .iiij. maneres of defautes agayn .iiij. thynges that folk of this world han in this present lyf, that is to seyn: honours, delices, and riches. (6) ¶ Agayns honour haue they in helle shame and con-

fusioun; ffor wel ye woot that men clepen 'honour' the reuerence that man doþ to man. (7) But in helle is noon honour ne reuerence; for certes, namoore reuerence shal be doon there to a kyng than to a knaue. (8) ffor which God seith by the prophete Ieremye, 'Thilke folk þat me despisen, shul been in despit.' (9) ¶ 'Honour' is eek cleped greet lordshipe; *ther shal no wight seruen oother but of harm and torment.* (10) 'Honour' is eek clepid greet dignytee & heighnesse, but in helle shul they been al fortroden of deueles. (1) And God seith, 'The horrible deueles shulle goon and comen vp-on the heuedes of the dampned folk.' (2) And this is for as muche as the hyer that they were in this present lyf, the moore shulle they been abated and defouled in helle.

(3) ¶ Agayns the riches of this world shul they han myseuse of pouerte, and this pouerte shal been in foure thynges: (4) In defaute of tresor, of which that Dauid seith, ¶ 'The riche folk that embraceden and oneden al hir herte to tresor of this world, shul slepe in the slepyng of deeth, and no-thing ne shal they fynden in hir handes of al hir tresor.' (5) ¶ And moore-ouer, the myseuse of helle shal been in defaute of mete and drinke. (6) ffor God seith thus by Moyses: 'They shul been wasted with hunger, and the briddes of helle shul deuouren hem with the bitter deeth; (7) and the galle of the dragon shal been hir drynke, and the venym of the dragon hir(e) morsels.' (8) And forther-ouer, hir myseuse shal been in defaute of clothyng; for they shulle be naked in body as of clothyng, saue the fyr in which they brenne, and

18257. the world E., this w. He., etc. (Gl.). 61. of Erthe E.C.L. 63: f. C.P.L. 64. doop E., f. He., etc. 65. manere He.P.L.H.; þre C., etc. 67. there E.G.Eg., f. He., etc. 68: I. Sam. II, 30. 69/70. ther—dignytee f. E. 71. And E.H., As He., etc.; the dampned E., the f. He., etc. (106 XX, 25 [Vulg.]). 73. riches (riches) He., etc. 74: 106. 25. LXXVI, 6. 76. the bitter E., the f. He., etc. (Sk.). [3gl. V. 200f. XXXII, 24 u. 33].

[I 197—206]

[I 207—217]

othere filthes; (9) and naked shul they been of soule, as of alle manere vertues, which þat is the clothyng of the soule. (o) Where been thanne the gaye robes, and the smale shetes, and the softe shertes? (1) Loo, what seith God of hem by the prophete Ysaye? That 'vnder hem shul been strawed motthes, and hir(e) couertures shulle been of wormes of helle.' (2) And forther-ouer, hir myseyse shal been in defaute of freendes; for he nys nat poure that hath goode freendes. (3) But there is no frend; for neither God ne no creature shal been freend to hem, and euerich of hem shal haten oother with deedly hate. (4) 'The sones and the doghtren shullen rebellen agayns fader and mooder, and kynrede agayns kynrede, and chiden and despisen euerich of hem oother,' bothe day and nyght, as God seith by the prophete Michias. (5) And the louynge children, that whilom loueden so fleshly euerich oother, wolden euerich of hem eten oother if they myghte; (6) for how sholden they loue togidre in the peyne of helle, whan they hated ech of hem oother in the prosperitee of this lyf? (7) ¶ ffor truste wel, hir fleshly loue was deedly hate, as seith the prophete Dauid: ¶ 'Who-so that loueth wikkednesse, he hateth his soule†'; (8) and who-so hateth his owene soule, certes, he may loue noon oother wight in no manere, and therefore in helle is no solas ne no freendshipe. (9) But euere the moore fleshly kynredes that been in helle, the moore cursynges, the more chidynges, and the moore deedly hate ther is among hem.

¶ And forther-ouer, they shul haue 9
defaute of alle manere delices; (1) for certes, delices been after the appetites of the .V. wittes, as sighte, herynge, smellynge, sauorynge, and touchyng. (2) But in helle hir sighte shal be ful of derknesse and of smoke, and therfore ful of teeres, and hir herynge ful of waymentyng and of gryntyng of teeth, as seith Ihesu Crist. (3) Hir nosethirles shullen be ful of stynkyng. stynk, and, as seith Ysaye the prophete, 'hir savoryng shal be ful of bitter galle;' (4) and touchyng of al hir body ycouered 'with fir that neuere shal quenche, and with wormes that neuere shul dyen,' as God seith, by the mouth of Ysaye. (5) And for as muche as they shul nat wene that they may dyen for peyne, and by hir deep flee fro peyne, that may they vnderstonden by the word of Iob, that seith 'ther-as is the shadwe of deeth.' (6) ¶ Certes, a shadwe hath the liknesse of the thyng of which it is shadwe, but shadwe is nat the same thyng of which it is shadwe. (7) Right so fareth the peyne of helle; it is lyk deeth for the horrible angwissh, and why? (8) ffor it peyneth hem euere as though they sholde dye anon, but certes, they shal nat dye. (9) ¶ ffor as seith Seint Gregorie, ¶ 'To wrecche caytyues shal be deeth with-oute deeth, and ende with-outen ende, and defaute with-oute failyng. (o) ffor hir deeth shal alwey lyuen, and hir ende shal eueremo begynne, and hir defaute shal nat faille.' (1) ¶ And therfore seith Seint Iohn the Euaungelist, 'They shullen folwe deeth, and they shul nat fynde hym, and they shul desiren to dye, and deeth shal flee fro hem.' (2) ¶ And eek

18 279. as of alle E., and of a. Eg., of a. He., etc. (Sk.). 80. smale . . . softe E., softe . . . smale He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 81: 3rd Ed. XIV, 11. 82. nys E.P., is He., etc. 84: Micha. VII, 6. 86. loue E., louen hem He., etc. (Sk.); ech E.P., euerich He., etc. 87: Ps. X (XI), 6 (Vulg.). 88. in helle f. E. 92. gryntyng E.He., gruntyng C.L.H., grochyng G., gnastyng Eg.P. [Matth. XIII, 42]. 93: 3rd Ed. XXIV, 9 (Vulg.). 94: ib. LXVI, 24; schal be y-couered Wr. M. 95. by the word E.P.L., in the w. He., etc. [Iob X, 22]. 98. they sholde E., men sh. He., etc. 18 300. mo E.He., more G., etc. or: Offenb. IX, 6.

[I 218—228]

[I 228—239]

Iob seith that 'in helle is noon ordre of rule.' (3) And al be it so that God hath creat alle thynges in right ordre, and no-thing with-outen ordre, but alle thynges been ordeyned and nombred; (4) yet nathelees, they that been dampned been no-thing in the ordre, ne holden noon ordre; for the erthe ne shal bere hem no fruyt. (5) ¶ ffor, as the prophete Dauid seith, ¶ 'God shal destroye the fruyt of the erthe as fro hem, ne water ne shal yeve hem no moisture, ne the eyr no refresshyng, ne fyr no light.' (6) ¶ ffor, as seith seint Basile, ¶ 'The brennyng of the fyr of this world shal God yeuen in helle to hem þat been dampned; (7) but the light and the cleernesse shal he yeuen in heuene to hise children, right as the goode man yeueth flesh to hise children and bones to hise houndes. (8) And for they shullen haue noon hope to escape, seith seint Iob atte laste, ¶ that 'ther shal horroure and grisly drede dwellen with-outen ende.' (9) Horroure is alwey drede of harm that is to come, and this drede shal euere dwelle in the hertes of hem that been dampned. 10 (10) And therefore han they lorn al hir hope for .viij. causes: (1) ¶ ffirst, for God, that is hir iuge, shal be with-outen mercy to hem; and they may nat plesse hym, ne noon of hise halwes; ne they ne may yeue no-thing for hir rounsoun; (2) ne they haue no voys to speke to hym; ne they may nat fle fro payne; ne they haue no goodnesse in hem, that they mowe shewe to deliuere hem fro payne. (3) ¶ And therefore seith Salomon, ¶ 'The wicked man dyeth, and whan he is deed, he shal haue noon hope to escape fro payne.' (4) Who-so thanne wolde wel vnderstande the paynes, and bithynke hym weel that he hath deserued thilke

paynes for his synnes, certes, he sholde haue moore talent to siken and to wepe than for to syngen and to pleye. 15 (5) ffor, as that seith Salomon: 'Who-so that hadde the science to knowe the paynes that been establissed and ordeyned for synne, he wolde make sorwe.' (6) 'Thilke science,' as seith seint Augustyn, 'maketh a man to waymenten in his herte.'

(7) ¶ The fourthe point that oghte maken a man to haue contricion is the sorweful remembraunce of the good that he hath left to doon heere in erthe, and eek the good that he hath lorn. (8) ¶ Soothly, the goode werkes þat he hath left, outhur they been the goode werkes that he hath wrought er he fel in-to deedly synne; or elles the goode werkes that he wrought while he lay in synne. (9) ¶ Soothly, the goode werkes that he dide, biforn that he fil in synne, been al mortefied, and astoned, and dilled by the ofte synnyng. (10) The othere goode werkes that he wrought whil he lay in deedly synne, þei been outrely dede as to the lyf perdurable in heuene. (1) ¶ Thanne thilke goode werkes that been mortefied by ofte synnyng, whiche goode werkes he dide whil he was in charitee, ne mowe neuere quyen agayn with-outen ver-ray penitence. (2) And ther-of seith God by the mouth of Ezechiel: ¶ that 'if the rightful man returne agayn from his rightwisnesse, and werke wikkednesse, shal he lyue?' (3) Nay, for alle the goode werkes that he hath wrought ne shul neuere been in remembraunce, for he shal dyen in his synne. (4) ¶ And vp-on thilke chapitre seith seint Gregorie thus: that 'we shulle vnderstonde this principally, that whan we doon deedly synne, it is for noght thanne to re-

18304. the ordre E., ordre He., etc. [Hob l. c.]. 05: vgl. Bf. CVII, 33f. 11. and they may E.G.Eg., ne they may He., etc. (Sk.). 12—41. H.² für G. 13: Epr. XI, 7. 18. outhur E., either He., etc.; hath wrought E.P.L., wrought He., etc. (Sk.). 20. The othere E., That o. He., etc. 21. whil(e) E.He., whiles Eg., etc. 22: Gejer. XVIII, 24.

[I 239—250]

[I 250—259]

hercen or drawn in-to memorie the goode werkes that we han wrought biforn.' (5) ¶ffor certes, in the werkynge of the deedly synne, ther is no trust to no good werk that we han doon biforn, that is for to seyn: as for to haue therby the lyf perdurable in heuene. (6) But nathelees, the goode werkes quyken agayn, and comen agayn, and helpen, and auailen to haue the lyf perdurable in heuene, whan we han contricioun. (7) But soothly, the goode werkes that men doon whil they been in deedly synne, they may neuere quyke agayn. (8) ffor certes, thyng þat neuere hadde lyf may neuere quykene; (9) and nathelees, al be it that they ne auaille noght to han the lyf perdurable, yet auailen they to abregge of the peyne of helle, or elles to geten temporal richesse; (o) or elles that God wol[e] the rather enlumyne and lightne the herte of the synful man to haue repentaunce. (1) And eek they auailen for to vsen a man to doon goode werkes, that the feend haue the lasse power of his soule. (2) And thus the curteis Lord Ihesu Crist wol[e] that no good werk be lost; for in somewhat it shal auaille. (3) But for as muche as the goode werkes that men doon, whil they been in good lyf, been al mortefied by synne folwyng; (4) and eek sith that alle the goode werkes that men doon, whil they been in deedly synne, been outrelly dede for to haue the lyf perdurable: (5) Wel may that man that no good werk ne dooth synge thilke newe frenshe song: 'lay tout perdu mon temps & mon labour.'

(6) ¶ffor certes, synne bireueth a man bothe goodnesse of nature, and eek the goodnesse of grace. (7) ¶ffor soothly, the grace of the *Hooly Goost*

fareth lyk fyr that may nat been ydel, for fyr fayleth anon as it forleteth his wirkyng; (8) and right so grace fayleth anon as it forleteth his werkynge. (9) Then leseth the synful man the goodnesse of glorie, that oonly is bihight to goode men that labouren and werken. (o) Wel may he be sory thanne, that oweth al his lif to God as longe as he hath lyued, and eek as longe as he shal lyue, that no goodnesse ne hath to paye with his dette to God, to whom he oweth al his lyf. (1) ffor, truste wel, he shal yeuen aountes, as seith seint Bernard, of alle the goodes that han been yeuen hym in this present lyf, and how he hath hem despended; (2) noght so muche that ther shal nat perisse an heer of his heed, ne a moment of an houre ne shal nat perisse of his tyme, that he ne shal yeue of it a rekenyng.

(3) The fifthe thyng that oghte moeue a man to contricioun is remembrance of the passioun that oure Lord Ihesu Crist suffred for oure synnes. (4) ffor, as seith seint Bernard: ¶'Whil that I lyue, I shal haue remembrance of the trauailles that oure Lord Crist suffred in prechynge; (5) his werynesse in trauailynge; hise temptaciouns whan he fasted; hise longe wakynges whan he preyde; hise teeres whan that he weep for pitee of good peple; (6) the wo and the shame and the filthe that men seyden to hym; of the foule spityng that men spitte in his face; of the buffettes that men yauen hym; of the foule mowes, and of the repreues that men to hym seyden; (7) of the nayles with whiche he was nayled to the croys, and of al the remenant of his passioun, that he suffred for my synnes, and no-thing for his gilt.

18 325. for to seyn E., to s. He., etc. (Sk.). 26. 2 3l. f. Eg.C.P.L.H.* 27. whil E.Eg., whil(es) þat He., etc. 33. mortefied] amortised He.H.* 35. frenshe E.He., fressh Eg., etc. (f. P.); lay, etc.: vgl. 'Fortune', 7. 36: vgl. 18587. 41. truste He.G.C., -ep L.H.*, trust E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 44. crist E.G., Ihu Christ He., etc. (Gl.) 45. wepte G., etc.

[I 260—270]

[I 270—279]

(8) ¶ And ye shul vnderstonde that in mannes synne is euery manere of ordre or ordinaunce turned vp so down. (9) ¶ ffor it is sooth that God, and resoun, and sensualitee, and the body of man been ordeyned, that euerich of thisse foure thynges sholde haue lordshipe ouer that oother; (10) as thus: God sholde haue lordshipe ouer resoun, and resoun ouer sensualitee, and sensualitee ouer the body of man. (11) But soothly, whan man synneth, al this ordre or ordinaunce is turned vp so down. (12) ¶ And therfore thanne, for as muche as the resoun of man ne wol nat be subget ne obeisant to God, that is his Lord by right: (13) therfore leseth it the lordshipe that it sholde haue ouer sensualitee, and eek ouer the body of man. (14) And why? ffor sensualitee rebelleth thanne agayns resoun, and by that wey leseth resoun the lordshipe ouer sensualitee and ouer the body. (15) ffor right as resoun is rebel to God, right so is bothe sensualitee rebel to resoun and the body also. (16) ¶ And certes, this disordinaunce and this rebellioun oure Lord Ihesu Crist aboghte vp-on his precious body ful deere, and herkneþ in which wise: (17) ¶ ffor as muche thanne as resoun is rebel to God, therfore is man worthy to haue sorwe, and to be deed. (18) This suffred oure Lord Ihesu Crist for man, after that he hadde be bitrayed of his disciple, and distreyned and bounde, so that 'his blood brast out at euery nayl of hisse handes,' as seith seint Augustyn. (19) ¶ And forther-ouer, for as muchel as resoun of man ne wol nat daunte sensualitee whan it may; (20) therfore is man worthy to haue

shame, and this suffred oure Lord Ihesu Crist for man, whan they spetten in his visage. (1) ¶ And forther-ouer, for as muchel thanne as the caytyf body of man is rebel bothe to resoun and to sensualitee, therfore is it worthy the deeth. (2) ¶ And this suffred oure Lord Ihesu Crist for man vp-on the croys, where-as ther was no part of his body free withouten greet payne and bitter passioun. (3) ¶ And al this suffred Ihesu Crist, þat neuere forfeited; *and therfore resonably may be seyd of Ihesu in this manere*: (4) 'To muchel am I peyned for the thynges that I neuere deserued, and to muche defouled for shendshipe that man is worthy to haue.' (5) And therfore may the synful man wel seye, as seith seint Bernard: 'Acursed be the bitterness*) of my synne; for which ther moste be suffred so muchel bitterness.*') (6) ffor certes, after the diuerse dis[con]cordaunces of oure wickednesses was the passioun of Ihesu Crist ordeyned in diuerse thynges; as thus: (7) ¶ Certes, synful mannes soule is bitrayed of the deuel by coueitise of temporeel prosperitee, and scorned by deceit[e] whan he cheseth fleshly delices; (8) and yet is it tormented by impacience of aduersitee, and *byspet* by seruage and subieccioun of synne, and atte laste it is slayn fynally. (9) ¶ ffor this disordinaunce of synful man was Ihesu Crist bitrayed, and after that was he bounde, that cam for to vnbynden vs of synne and payne. (10) Thanne was he by-scorned, that oonly sholde han been honoured in alle thynges and of alle thynges. (11) ¶ Thanne was his visage, that oghte be desired to be seyn of al man-kynde,

18348. of ordre or E.Eg., of o. of L., ordere or G., ordre of He., etc. 49. ben so ordeyned He.C.P.L.H.* (Sk.). [Egl. Lydgate's 'Resoun and Sensualitee']. 53. ouer sensualitee E.G.Eg., in s. He., etc. 58. his blood E.G.Eg., the b. He., etc. 61. is it] it is He.C.H.* 63. and therfore — manere: nur G. [notwendige Ergänzung — des Korrektors od. des Verfassers?] 65. *) — *) f. C.P.L.H.* 66. discordaunces E. 67. delices E.G.Eg., delites He., etc. 68. byspet] dispeir E., by espyte Eg. 70. han been E., a ben G., ben He., etc.; and of E.Eg.L., of He., etc.; f. G.

[I 280—288]

[I 288—296]

in which visage aungels desiren to looke, vileynsly bispet. (2) Thanne was he scourged, that no-thing hadde agilt, and finally thanne was he crucified and slayn. (3) ¶ Thanne was acomplished the word of Ysaye that seith that 'he was wounded for oure mysdedes, and defouled for oure felonies.' (4) ¶ Now sith that Ihesu Crist took vp-on hym-self the peyne of alle oure wikkednesses, (5) muchel oghte synful man wepen and biwayle that for hise synnes Goddes sone of heuene sholde al this peyne endure.

(6) ¶ The sixte thyng þat oghte moeue a man to contricioun is the hope of .IIII. thynges, (7) that is to seyn: foryiffnesse of synne, and the yifte of grace wel for to do, and the glorie of heuene, with which God shal gerdone a man for hise goode dedes. (8) ¶ And for as muche as Ihesu Crist yeueth vs thise yiftes of his largesse and of his souereyn bountee, therefore is he cleped Ihesus Nazarenus rex iudeorum. (9) Ihesus is to seyn 'saueour' or 'saluacioun,' on whom men shul hope to haue foryiffnesse of synnes, which that is properly saluacioun of synnes. (10) And therfore seyde the aungel to Ioseph, 'Thou shalt clepen his name Ihesus, that shal sauen his peple of hir synnes.' (1) And heer-of seith seint Peter, 'Ther is noon oother name vnder heuene that is yeue to any man by which a man may be saued, but only Ihesus.' (2) 'Nazarenus' is as muche for to seye as 'florissynge,' in which a man shal hope that he þat yeueth hym remissioun of synnes shal yeue hym eek grace wel for to do. (3) ffor in the flour is hope of

fruyt in tyme comynge, and in foryiffnesse of synnes hope of grace wel for to do. (4) ¶ 'I was atte dore of thyn herte,' seith Ihesus, 'and cleped for to entre; he that openeth to me, shal haue foryiffnesse of synne. (5) I wol entre in-to hym by my grace, and soupe with hym—by the goode werkes that he shal doon, whiche werkes been the foode of God—; and he shal soupe with me—by the grete ioie that I shal yeuen hym.' (6) ¶ Thus shal man hope, for hise werkes of penaunce, that God shal yeuen hym his regne, as he bihooteth hym in the gospel.

(7) ¶ Now shal a man vnderstonde in which manere shal been his contricioun. I seye that it shal been vniuersal and total; (8) this is to seyn: a man shal be verray repentant for alle hise synnes that he hath doon in delit of his thought; for delit is ful perilous. (9) ffor ther been two manere of consentynges; that oon of hem is cleped consentynge of affeccoun, whan a man is moeued to do synne, and deliteth hym longe for to thynke on that synne; (10) and his reson aperceyueth it wel that it is synne agayns the lawe of God, and yet his reson refreyneth nat his foul delit or talent, though he se wel apertly that it is agayns the reuerence of God. (1) Al-though his reson ne consente noght to doon that synne in dede, yet seyn somme doctours that swich delit that dwelleth longe, it is ful perilous, al be it neuere so lite. (2) ¶ And also a man sholde sorwe namely for al that euere he hath desired agayn the lawe of God, with perfit consentynge of his reson; for ther-of is no doute that it is deedly

18373. that seith that E., f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.); for oure felonies E., by oure f. He., etc. (Gl.) [3ef. LIII, 5]. 77. a man E., man He., etc. 79. for to seyn He.C.P.H.⁴; is f. E. 80. Matth. I, 21. 81. Apostelgesch. IV, 12. 82. for to do E., to do He., etc. 84. Dffenb. III, 20. 85. von hier ab Se. für C. 86. hope . . . that E.G.Eg., hope þat He.P.H.⁴, hope . . . Se.L.; byheteth He.G.H.⁴ 87. a man E.G., man He., etc. [ähnl. Schwankungen auch im folg.]. 89. and thanne deliteth He.G.Eg. 90. it wel E.G.Eg., wel He., etc.; seeth He.H.⁴, 3f. f. Se.P.L. 91. that synne E.G.Eg., the s. He., etc. 92. the consentynge He.P.L., f. G.H.⁴

[I 297—306]

[I 307—315]

synne in consentynge. (3) ffor certes, ther is no. deedly synne that it nas first in mannes thought, and after that in his delit, and so forth in-to consentynge and in-to dede. (4) Wherefore I seye that many men ne repenten hem neuere of swiche thoghtes and delites, ne neuere shryuen hem of it, but oonly of the dede of grete synnes outward.

95 (5) Wherefore I seye that swiche wikked delites and wikked thoghtes been subtille bigileres of hem that shullen be dampned.

(6) ¶ Moore-ouer, man oghte to sorwe for hise wikkede wordes, as wel as for hise wikkede dedes. (7) ffor certes, the repentaunce of a synguler synne, and nat repente of alle hise othere synnes, or elles repenten hym of alle hise othere synnes, and nat of a synguler synne, may nat auaille. (8) ffor certes, God almyghty is al good, and therfore he foryeueth al, or elles right noght. (9) And heer- of seith seint Augustyn, ¶ *'I woot certeynly* that God is enemy to euerich synnere;' (o) and how thanne he that obserueth o synne, shal he haue foryifnesse of the remenaunt of hise othere synnes? Nay! (1) ¶ And forther-ouer, contricioun sholde be wonder sorweful and angwissous, and therefore yeueth hym God pleynty his mercy; (2) and therefore, whan my soule was angwissous with-inne me, I hadde remembraunce of God, that my preyere myghte come to hym. (3) ¶ fforther-ouer, contricioun moste be continueel, and that man haue stedefast purpos to shriuen hym, and for to amenden hym of his lyf. (4) ffor soothly, whil contricioun lasteth, man may euee haue hope of foryifnesse; 05 (5) and of this comth hate of synne, that destroyeth synne, boþe in himself, and eek in oother folk at his

power. (6) ¶ for which seith Dauid, 'Ye that louen God, hateth wikkednesse;' (7) for trusteth wel, to loue God is for to loue that he loueth, and hate that he hateth.

(8) ¶ The laste thyng that man shal vnderstonde in contricioun is this: wher-of auayleth contricioun? (9) ¶ I seye that som-tyme contricioun deliuereth a man fro synne, of which that Dauid seith (o) 'I seye,' quod Dauid—that is to seyn: ¶ I purposed ferme-ly—to shryue me, and thow, Lord, relesedest my synne.' (1) ¶ And right so as contricion auailleth noght withouten sad purpos of shrifte, if man haue oportunitie, right so litel worth is shrifte or satisfaccioun with-outen contricioun. (2) ¶ And moore-ouer, contricion destroyeth the prisoun of helle, and maketh wayk and fieble alle the strengthes of the deueles, and restoreth the yiftes of the Hooly Goost and of alle goode vertues; (3) and it clenseth the soule of synne, and deliuereth the soule fro the payne of helle, and fro the compaignye of the deuel, and fro the seruage of synne; (4) and restoreth it to alle goodes espirituels, and to the compaignye and communyon of hooly chirche. (5) And forther-ouer, it maketh hym that whilom was sone of ire to be sone of grace, and alle thise thynges been preued by hooly writ. (6) And therefore he that wolde sette his entente to thise thynges, he were ful wys; (7) for soothly, he ne sholde nat thanne in al his lyf haue corage to synne, but yeuen his body and al his hert(e) to the seruice of Ihesu Crist, and ther-of doon hym hommage. (8) ffor sooply, oure sweete Lord Ihesu Crist hath spared vs so debonairly in oure folies, that, if he ne hadde pitee of mannes

18 393. f. P.L. 96. as for E.Se.L., and for P., as He., etc. 98. outhere (eyther) he foryeueth He.G.Eg. [vgl. 19311]. 99. I woot certeynly f. E. 18 406: ¶. XXVI, 5? 10: ¶. XXXII, 5. 14. and communyon E.G.Eg.H., of c. Se., and f. He.P.L. 18. sooply E.G.Eg.Se., certes He., etc.

[I 316—326]

soule, a sory song we myghten alle syng.

¶ *Explicit prima pars penitentie. Et sequitur*) secunda pars eiusdem.*

(9) THE seconde partie of Penitence is Confessioun, that is signe of contricioun. (o) ¶ Now shul ye vnderstonde what is confessioun, and wheither it oghte nedes be doon or noon, and whiche thynges been couenable to verray confessioun.

¶ (1) ffirst shaltow vnderstonde that confessioun is verray shewyng of synnes to the preest; (2) this is to seyn: 'verray,' for he moste confessen hym of alle the condicions that bilongen to his synne, as ferforth as he kan. (3) Al moot be seyde, and no-thing excused, ne hyd, ne forwrapped; and noght auaunte thee of thy goode werkes. (4) ¶ And forther-ouer, it is necessarie to vnderstonde whennes that synnes spryngen, and how they encreessen, and whiche they been.

25 ¶ Of the spryngyng of synnes seith seint Paul in this wise: that 'right as by a man synne entred first in-to this world, and thurgh that synne deeth, right so thilke deeth entred in-to alle men that synned.' (6) And this man was Adam, by whom synne entred in-to this world, whan he brak the comaundementz of God. (7) And therefore, he that first was so myghty, that he sholde nat haue dyed, bicaam swich oon, that he moste nedes dye, wheither he wolde or noon, and al his progenye in this world that in thilke man synned. (8) ¶ Looke that in thestaat of innocence, whan Adam and Eue naked weren in Paradys, and no-thing ne hadden shame of hir nakednesse, (9) how that the ser-

[I 326—333]

pent, that was moost wily of alle othere beestes that God hadde makid, seyde to the womman, 'Why comaunded God to yow ye sholde nat eten of euery tree in Paradys?' (o) The 30 womman answerde, 'Of the fruyt,' quod she, 'of the trees in Paradys we feden vs; (1) but sooply, of the fruyt of the tree that is in the myddel of Paradys, God forbad vs for to ete, and nat touchen it, lest per auenture we sholde dyen.' (2) ¶ The serpent seyde to the womman, 'Nay, nay, ye shul nat dyen of deeth; (3) for sothe, God woot that what day that ye eten ther-of youre [e]yën shul opene, and shul been as Goddes, knowyng good and harm.' (4) ¶ The womman thanne saugh that the tree was good to feedyng, & fair to the [e]yën, and delitable to the sighte. 35 (5) She took of the fruyt of the tree, and eet it, and yaf to hir housbonde, and he eet, and anon the [e]yën of hem bothe opened. (6) And whan that they knewe that they were naked, they sowed of fige-leues a maner of breches to hiden hir(e) membres.

(7) ¶ There may ye seen that deedly synne hath first suggestion of the feend, as sheweth heere by the naddre; (8) and afterward the delit of the flesh, as sheweth heere by Eue; and after that the consentyng of resoun, as sheweth heere by Adam. (9) ffor truste wel, though so were that the feend tempted Eue—that is to seyn: the flessh—, and the flessh hadde delit in the beautee of the fruyt defended, (o) yet certes, til that resoun—that is 40 to seyn: Adam—consented to the etyng of the fruyt, yet stood he in thestaat of innocence. (1) ¶ Of thilke

*) incipit He.P.L.H.⁴ 18422. moste E.G.Eg., moot He., etc. 23. thee . . thy E.G.Eg., hym . . hise He., etc. (Sk.). 25. seith E.G.Eg., as s. He., etc. [Rom. V, 12]. 26. comaundement G.Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 27. progenye E.G.Eg., p. þat is He., etc. 28: f. I. 280f. III, 1—7. 31. and nat E., ne Se.L., ne nat He., etc. (Sk.). 33. and ye shul He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 34. thanne E.G.Eg., f. He., etc.; the sighte E.Se.P.L., the f. He., etc. 35. yaf E.G.Eg., yaf it He., etc. 36. a maner E.G.Eg., in m. He., etc. 37. There E.G.Eg., Here He., etc.; adder Eg.Se.L. (Hadder). 39. Eue E.G.Eg., oon He., etc.

[I 333—341]

[I 342—350]

Adam tooke we thilke synne original; for of hym fleshly descended be we alle, and engendred of vile and corrupt matere. (2) And whan the soule is put in oure body, right anon is contract original synne; (3) and that þat was erst but oonly payne of concupiscence, is afterward bothe payne and synne. (4) And therfore be we alle born sones of wratthe and of dampnacioun perdurable, if it nere baptesme that we receyuen, which bynymeth vs the culpe. (5) But, for sothe, the payne dwelleth with vs as to temptacioun, which payne highte concupiscence. (6) Whan it is wrongfully disposed or ordeyned in man, it maketh hym coueite, by coueitse of fleshh, fleshly synne, by sighte of hise [e]yēn as to erthely thynges, and coueitse of hyennes by pride of herte.

(7) ¶ Now, as for to speken of the firste coueitse, that is Concupiscence after the lawe of oure membres, that weren lawefullliche ymaked and by rightful iuggement of God; (8) ¶ I seye, for as muche as man is nat obeisaunt to God, that is his Lord, therfore is the fleshh to hym disobeisaunt thurgh concupiscence, which yet is cleped norrisynge of synne and occasioun of synne. (9) Therfore, al the while that a man hath in hym the payne of concupiscence, it is impossible but he be tempted somtime, and moeued in his fleshh to synne. (10) And this thyng may nat faille as longe as he lyueth; it may wel wexe fieble, and faille by vertu of baptesme, and by the grace of God thurgh penitence. (1) But fully ne shal it neuere quenche, that he ne shal som-tyme be moeued in hymself, but if he were al refreyded by

siknesse, or by malefice of sorcerie, or colde drynkes. (2) ffor lo! what seith seint Paul? ¶ 'The fleshh coueiteth agayn the spirit, and the spirit agayn the fleshh; (3) they been so contrarie, and so stryuen, that a man may nat alwey doon as he wolde.' (4) ¶ The same seint Paul, after his grete penaunce in water and in lond,— in water by nyght, and by day in greet peril & in greet payne; in lond in famyne, in thirst, in coold, and cloothless, and ones stoned almosto to the deeth—(5) yet seyde he, 'Allas, I caytyf man! who shal deliuere me fro the prisoun of my caytyf body?' (6) ¶ And seint Ierome, whan he longe tyme hadde woned in desert, where-as he hadde no compaignye but of wilde beestes, where-as he ne hadde no mete but herbes and water to his drynke, ne no bed but the naked erthe, (7) for which his fleshh was blak as an Ethiopeen for heete, and ny destroyed for coold,—yet seyde he that 'the brennyng of lecherie boyled in al his body.' (8) Wherefore I woot wel sykerly that they been deceyued that seyn that they ne be nat tempted in hir body. (9) Witnesse on Seint Iame the Apostel, that seith that 'euery wight is tempted in his owene concupiscence;' (10) that is to seyn: that euerich of vs hath matere and occasioun to be tempted of the norrisynge of synne that is in his body. (1) And therfore seith Seint Iohn the Euangelist, 'If that we seyn that we be[th] with-out synne, we deceyue vs-selue, and trouthe is nat in vs.'

(2) ¶ Now shal ye vnderstonde in what manere that synne wexeth or encreesseth in man. (3) ¶ The firste thyng is thilke norissynge of

18442/43: 2 Bl. f. H.⁴ 44. born E.G.Eg., yborn He., etc. 46. and this concupiscence vor whan He., etc. (Gl.), whan E.Eg. (Sk.); and coueitse E., and eek c. He., etc. (Gl.). 47. as for E.Se.L., as He., etc. 48/49. 3 Bl. f. Se.P.L. 51. fully ne E.He., ne f. G., etc. 52: Gal. V, 17. 54. in thirst E., and th. He.G.Eg.P., & in þ. L.H.⁴, thruste Se. [II. Ror. XI, 26—27]. 55: Röm. VII, 24. 56. ne hadde E.Eg., ne f. He., etc. 58. ne f. G.Eg.H.⁴ 59: Sat. I, 14. 61. we be He., etc. [I. Ep. Joh. I, 8]; vs-selue E.He., oure s. G., etc.

[1 351—358]

[1 359—366]

- synne of which I spak biforn, thilke fleshly concupiscence. (4) And after that comth the subieccioun of the deuel, this is to seyn: the deueles bely, with which he bloweth in man the fir of fleshly concupiscence.
- 65 (5) And after that a man bithynketh hym whether he wol doon, or no, thilke thing to which he is tempted. (6) And thanne, if that a man withstonde and weyue the firste entisyng of his flesh and of the feend, thanne is it no synne; (7) and if it so be that he do nat so, thanne feelet he anon a flambe of delit, and thanne is it good to be war and kepen hym wel; (8) or elles he wol falle anon in-to consentynge of synne, and thanne wol he do it, if he may haue tyme and place. (9) And of this matere seith Moyses by the deuel in this manere: (o) ¶ "The feend seith, "I wol[e] chace and pursue the man by wikked suggestioun, and I wol[e] hente hym by moeuyng or stiringe of synne. (1) I wol departe my prise or my praye by deliberacioun, and my lust shal been accompliced in delit; I wol drawe my swerd in consentynge." (2) ffor certes, right as a swerd departeth a thyng in two peces, right so consentynge departeth God fro man (3)—"and thanne wol I sleen hym with myn hand in dede of synne"—thus seith the feend; for certes, thanne is a man al deed in soule. (4) And thus is synne accompliced by temptacioun, by delit, and by consentynge; and thanne is the synne cleped *actuel*.
- 70 ¶ ffor sothe, synne is in two maneres: outhir it is venial, or deedly synne. (6) ¶ Soothly, whan man loueth any creature moore than Ihesu Crist, oure creatour, thanne is it deedly

synne; (7) and venial synne is it, if man loue Ihesu Crist lasse than hym *oghte*. (8) ffor sothe, the dede of this venial synne is ful perilous, for it amenuseth the loue that men sholde han to God moore and moore. (9) And therefore, if a man charge hym-self with manye swiche venial synnes, certes, but if so be that he som-tyme discharge hym of hem by shrifte, (o) they mowe ful lightly amenuse in hym al the loue that he hath to Ihesu Crist. (1) And in this wise skippeth venial in-to deedly synne; (2) for certes, the moore that a man chargeth his soule with venial synne, the moore is he enclyned to fallen in-to deedly synne. (3) And therefore lat vs nat be negligent to deschargen vs of venial synnes. (4) ¶ ffor the prouerbe seith that 'manye smale maken a greet.' (5) ¶ And herkne this ensample: A greet wawe of the see comth som-tyme with so greet a violence, that it drencheth the ship. (6) And the same harm dooth som-tyme the smale dropes of water that entren thurgh a litel creuace in-to the thurrok and in the botme of the ship, if men be so negligent, that they ne discharge hem nat by tyme. (7) And therefore, al-though ther be a difference bitwixe thise two causes of drenchynge, algates the ship is dreynt. (8) ¶ Right so fareth it somtyme of deedly synne, and of anoyouse veniale synnes, whan they multiplie in a man so greetly, that *the loue of thilke worldly thynges* [that he loueþ] thurgh whiche he synneth venially is as greet in his herte as the loue of God, or moore. (9) And therfore the loue of euery-thing that is nat biset in God, ne doon principally for Goddes sake, al-though that a man loue it lasse

18464. suggestion Eg.Se.L. 66. entisynges He.G.D.H.⁴ 67. if it E.P., if He., etc. 71. & I wol departe (parte Eg.H.⁴) He., etc. 77. oghte f. E. 82. venial synnes He., etc. (Sk.). 84. maketh He.Se.P.L.H.⁴ 86. doon . . . entreth He.P.L.H.⁴; in-to the botme Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.); they E.H.⁴, men He., etc. 88. veniale E., venials He.L., venyal G., etc.; the loue of: *nicht i. b. 88.*; that he loueþ: *alle 88.* (Sk., Gl.). 89. al though that E.Eg., al þat He., al thow, etc. G., etc.

[I 367—375]

[I 375—384]

than God, yet is it venial synne;
 90 (o) and deedly synne, whan the loue
 of anythyng weyeth in the herte of
 man as muchel as the loue of God,
 or moore. (1) ¶ 'Deedly synne,' as
 seith seint Augustyn, 'is whan a man
 turneth his herte fro God, which that
 is verray souereyn bountee, that may
 nat chaunge, and yeueth his herte to
 thyng that may chaunge and flitte;' and
 certes, that is euery-tyng, saue
 God of heuene. (2) ffor sooth is that,
 if a man yeue his loue, the which þat
 he oweth al to God with al his herte,
 vn-to a creature, certes as muche as
 he yeueth of his loue to thilke crea-
 ture, so muche he bireueth fro God,
 and therfore dooth he synne; (3) for
 he that is dettour to God ne yeldeth
 nat to God al his dette, that is to
 seyn: al the loue of his herte.

(4) ¶ NOW sith man vnderstondeth
 generally which is venial synne, thanne
 is it couenable to tellen specially of
 synnes whiche that many a man per-
 auntere ne demeth hem nat synnes,
 and ne shrueyth hym nat of the same
 thynges, and yet natheles they been
 95 synnes. (5) ¶ Soothly, as thise clerkes
 writen, this is to seyn: that at euery
 tyme that a man eteth or drynketh
 moore than suffiseth to the sustenaunce
 of his body, in certein he dooth synne.
 (6) ¶ And eek whan he speketh moore
 than nedeth, it is synne; ¶ eke whan
 he herkeneth nat benignely the com-
 pleint of the poure; eke whan he is
 in heele of body, and wol nat faste
 whan hym oghte faste, with-uten cause
 resonable; (7) ¶ eke whan he slepeth
 moore than nedeth, or whan he comth
 by thilke enchesoun to late to chirche,
 or to othere werkes of charite; (8) ¶ eke
 whan he vsyth his wyf with-uten so-
 uereyn desir of engendrure to the hon-

our of God, or for the entente to
 yelde to his wyf the dette of his body;
 (9) ¶ eke whan he wol nat visite the
 sike and the prisoner if he may; eke
 if he loue wyf or child or oother
 worldly thyng moore than resoun re-
 quireth; (o) ¶ eke if he flaterre or
 blandise moore than hym oghte for
 any necessitee; (1) ¶ eke if he ame-
 nuse or withdrawe the almesse of the
 poure; (2) ¶ eke if he apparailleth his
 mete moore deliciously than nede is,
 or ete to hastily by likerousnesse;
 (3) ¶ eke if he tale vanytees at chirche
 or at Goddes seruice, or that he be a
 talker of ydel wordes of folye or of
 vileynye, for he shal yelden acountes
 of it at the day of doome. (4) Eke
 whan he biheteth or assureth to do
 thynges that he may nat perfourne;
 (5) ¶ eke whan that he, by lightnesse
 or folie, mysseyeth or scorneth his
 neighebor[e]; (6) ¶ eke whan he hath
 any wikked suspicioun of thyng ther
 he ne woot of it no soothfastnesse:
 (7) Thise thynges and mo with-oute
 nombre been synnes, as seith seint
 Augustyn.

(8) ¶ NOW shal men vnderstonde that
 al be it so that noon erthely man
 may eschue alle venial synnes, (9) yet
 may he restreyne hym by the bren-
 nyng loue that he hath to oure Lord
 Ihesu Crist, and by preyeres, and con-
 fessioun, and othere goode werkes, so
 that it shal but litel greue; (o) ffor,
 as seith seint Augustyn. ¶ 'If a man
 loue God in swich manere, that al that
 euere he dooth is in the loue of God,
 and for the loue of God verrailly, for
 he brenneth in the loue of God:
 (1) looke, how muche that a drope
 of water that falleth in a fourneys
 ful of fyr anyoeth or greueth, so muche
 anyoeth' a venial synne vn-to a man

18490. wexeth E. 91. thyng E.G.Eg., a th. He., etc. 92. of (his) loue as he yeueth He., etc. (Sk.). 94. shrueyth hym He.G.H., sh. hem E., etc. (Gl.). 95. and soothly He.P.H.; at f. He.Se.P.L. 96. nedeth E., hym n. G., it n. He., etc.; 3l. f. Eg.; hym oghte E., oother folk (men) He., etc. (Sk.). 18502. ete E.G.Eg., e. it He., etc. (Sk.). 99. restreyne E., refreyne He., etc. (Sk., Gl.).

[I 385—392]

[I 392—404]

that is perfit in the loue of Ihesu Crist.' (2) ¶ Men may also refreyne venial synne by receyuyng worthily of the precious body of Ihesu Crist; (3) by receyuyng eek of hooly water, by almesdede, by general confessioun of 'Confiteor' at masse and at complyn, and by blessing of bisshopes and of preestes, and oother goode werkes.

Explicit secunda pars Penitentie.

¶ *Sequitur de septem peccatis mortalibus et eorum dependencijs circumstancijs & speciebus.*

¶ *De Superbia.*

(4) Now is it bihouely thyng to telle whiche been the deedly synnes; this is to seyn: chieftaynes of synnes; alle they renne in o lees, but in diuerse maneres. (5) ¶ Now been they cleped chieftaynes for as muche as they been chief and sprynge of alle othere synnes. (6) ¶ Of the roote of thisse .viij. synnes thanne is pride the general roote of alle harmes. (7) ffor of this roote spryngen certein braunches, as Ire, Enuye, Accidie or Slewthe, Auarice, or Couetise to commune vnderstondyng, Glotonye, and Lecherye. (8) And euerich of thisse chief synnes hath hise braunches and hise twigges, as shal be declared in hir(e) chapitres folwyng. (9) And thogh so be that no man kan outrely telle the nombre of twigges and of the harmes that cometh of pride, yet wol I shewe a partie of hem, as ye shul vnderstonde. (10) ¶ Ther is inobedience, auauntynge, ypocrisie, despit, arrogance, inpu-
dence, swellynge of herte, insolence, elacioun, in-
pacience, strif, contumacie, presum-
pcioun, irreuerence, pertinacie, veyne-
glorie, and many another twig that I kan nat declare. (1) ¶ Inobedient

is he that disobeyeth for despit to the comandementz of God, and to hise souereyns, and to his goostly fader. (2) ¶ Auauntour is he that bosteth of the harm or of the bountee that he hath doon. (3) ¶ Ypocrite is he that hideth to shewe hym swich as he is, and sheweth hym swich as he noght is. (4) ¶ Despitous is he that hath desdeyn of his neighebor[e], that is to seyn: of his euene-cristene, or hath despit to doon that hym oghte to do. (5) ¶ Arrogant is he that thynketh þat he hath thilke bountees in hym that he hath noght, or weneth that he sholde haue hem by hise desertes, or elles he demeth that he be that he nys nat. (6) ¶ Inpu-
dence is he that for his pride hath no shame of hise synnes. (7) ¶ Swellynge of herte is whan a man reioyseth hym of harm that he hath doon. (8) ¶ Insolent is he that despiseth in his iuggement alle othere folk as to regard of his value, and of his konnyng, and of his spekyng, and of his beryng. (9) ¶ Elacioun is whan he ne may neither suffre to haue maister ne felawe. (10) ¶ Inpacient is he that wol nat been ytaught ne vndernome of his vice, and by strif werreieth trouthe witingly, and deffendeth his folye. (1) ¶ Contumax is he that thurgh his indignacioun is agayns euerich auctoritee or power of hem that been hise souereyns. (2) Presumpcioun is whan a man vndertaketh an emprise that hym oghte nat do, or elles that he may nat do, and this is called surquidie. (3) ¶ Irreuerence is whan men do nat honour there-as hem oghte to doon, and waiten to be reuerenced. (4) ¶ Pertinacie is whan man deffendeth hise folies, and trusteth to muchel in his

18512. f. G. 14—35. H.² für G.; the E.Se.L., f. He., etc.; manere He.P.L.H.² 15. sprynge He., springers H.⁴ (Sk.), spryngen E., etc. (Gl.). 16: 3. Str. X, 13. 19. Superbia He. am Rande, sonst keine Überschrift u. (f. 6-Text, Sk., Gl.); comen He.Eg.Se. 24. his euene] his f. E. 26. hise synnes E.Eg., his synne He., etc. 32. to do Eg., etc.; surquidrie Se., etc. 33. waiten E.Eg.P., waiteth He., etc. 34. hise folies E., his folye He., etc. (Sk.); in E., to He., etc. (f. Se.).

[I 405—414]

[I 414—422]

35 owene wit. (5) ¶ Veyneglorie is for to haue pompe and delit in his temporeel hynesse, and glorifie hym in this worldly estaat. (6) ¶ Ianglynge is whan men speken to muche biforn folk, and clappen as a mille, and taken no keep[e] what they seye. (7) ¶ And yet is ther a priuee spece of pride, that waiteth first to be salewed er he wole salewe, al be he lasse worth than that oother is, per auenture; (8) and eek he waiteth or desireth to sitte, or elles to goon aboue hym in the wey, or kisse pax, or been encensed, or goon to offryng biforn his neighebor[e], and swiche semblable thynges, agayns his duetee, per auenture; (9) but that he hath his herte and his entente in swich a proud desir to be magnified and honoured biforn the peple.

40 ¶ Now been ther two maneres of pride; that oon of hem is with-inne the herte of man, and that oother is with-oute; (1) of whiche, soothly, thise forseide thynges, and mo than I haue seyde, apertenen to pride that is in the herte of man, and that othere spesces of pride been with-oute. (2) But natheles that oon of thise spesces of pride is signe of that oother, right as the gaye leefsel atte tauerne is signe of the wyn that is in the celer. (3) And this is in manye thynges, as in speche and contenaunce, and in outrageous array of clothyng; (4) for certes, if ther ne hadde be no synne in clothyng, Crist wolde nat so sone haue noted and spoken of the clothyng of thilke riche man in the gospel. (5) And as seith Seint Gregorie, ¶ that 'precious clothyng is cowpable for the derthe of it,

and for his softenesse, and for his strangenesse and degisynesse, and for the superfluitee, or for the inordinat scantnesse of it.' (6) ¶ Allas! may men nat seen, as in oure dayes, the synful costlewe array of clothyng, and namely in-to muche superfluitee, or elles in-to desordinat scantnesse?

(7) AS to the firste synne, *that is* in superfluitee of clothyng, which that maketh it so deere to harm of the peple, (8) nat oonly the cost of embrowdyng, the degise endentyng, barrynge, owndyng, palyng, wyndyng, or bendyng, and semblable wast of clooth in vanitee; (9) but ther is also costlewe furringyng in hir gownes, so muche pownsonyng of chisel to maken holes, so muche daggyng of sheres; (o) forth-with the superfluitee in lengthe of the forseide gownes, trailingyng in the donge and in the mire, on horse and eek on foote, as wel of men as of wommen; (1) that al thilke trailingyng is verrailly as in effect wasted, consumed, thredbare, and roten with donge, rather than it is yeuen to the poure, to greet damage of the forseide poure folk. (2) And that in sondry wise; this is to seyn: that the moore that clooth is wasted, the moore it costeth to the peple for the scantnesse. (3) ¶ And forther-ouer, if so be that they wolde yeuen swich pownsoned and dagged clothyng to the poure folk, it is nat conuenient to were for hir estaat, ne suffisant to beete hir necessitee, to kepe hem fro the distemperance of the firmament.

(4) Upon þat oother side, to speken of the horrible disordinat scantnesse of clothyng, as been thise

18535. his E.G., this(e) He.Eg., f. Se., etc.; heynesses He., richesse Se.L.; this E.Eg., f. He., etc.; estatȝ He.G.Se.P.L. 36. men speken ... clappen ... taken ... they seye E.Eg., a man speketh ... clappeth ... taketh ... he seith He., etc. (man ... clappyn ... they s. G.) [vgl. B. 9076]. 37. worth E.Se.H.⁴, worthy He., etc. 38. 2 B. f. Se., etc. [vgl. B. 449f.]. 44. so soone f. E. (Sk.) [vgl. lat.: ita vlganter?] [f. B. XVI, 19ff.]. 45. or] and E. (Gl.) [vgl. 19220]. 46. men E., man He.G.Eg. (many man H.⁴), B. f. Se.P.L. 47. that is He.Se.P.L. (Sk.); B. f. H.⁴ 48. or barryng He., etc. (Sk.), of b. H.⁴; wyndyng E.G.Eg., f. He., etc. 49. the costlewe He.G.Eg.; pownsonyng E. 50. man ... womman He., etc. (Sk.). 52. moot it coste He., etc.; scarsnesse He., etc.

[I 422—431]

[I 432—441]

kutted sloppes or haynselyns, that thurgh hir shortnesse ne couere nat the shameful membres of man to wikked entente. (5) ¶ Allas! somme of hem shewen the boce of hir shap and the horrible swollen membres, that semeth lik the maladie of *hirnia* in the wrappynge of hir hoses; (6) and eek the buttokes of hem faren as it were the hyndre part of a she-ape in the fulle of the *moone*. (7) ¶ And moore-ouer, the wrecched swollen membres that they shewe thurgh the degisyng, in departynge of hir(e) hoses in whit and reed, semeth that half hir shameful priuee membres weren flayne. (8) ¶ And if so be that they departen hire hoses in othere colours, as is whit and blak, or whit and blew, or blak and reed, and so forth; (9) thanne semeth it, as by variaunce of colour, that half the partie of hir(e) priuee membres were corrupt by the fir of saint Antony, or by *cancere*, or by oother swich meschaunce. (10) ¶ Of the hyndre part of hir buttokes, it is ful horrible for to see; (1) ffor certes, in that partie of hir body ther-as they purgen hir stynkyng ordure, that foule partie shewe they to the peple proudly in despit of honestitee; (2) the which honestitee that Ihesu Crist and hise freendes obseruede to shewen in hir lyue.

(3) NOW of the outrageous array of wommen, God woot that, though the visages of somme of hem seme ful chaast and debonaire, yet notifie they in hir array of *atyr* likerousnesse and pride. (4) ¶ I seye nat that honestitee in clothynge of man or womman is vncouenable, but certes, the superfluitee

or disordinat scantitee of clothynge is repreuable. (5) ¶ Also the synne of aornement or of apparaille is in thynges that apertenen to ridyng, (6) as in to manye delicat horses that been hooden for delit, that been so faire, fatte, and costlewe; (7) and also in many a vicious knaue that is sustened by cause of hem, and in to curious harneys, as in sadeles, in *crouperes*, *peytrels*, and bridles couered with precious clothynge, and riche barres and plates of gold and of siluer; (8) for which God seith by Zakarie the prophete: 'I wol confounde the rideres of swiche horses.' (9) ¶ This folk taken litel reward of the ridyng of Goddes sone of heuene, and of his harneys, whan he rood vp-on the *asse*, and ne hadde noon oother harneys but the poure clothes of hise disciples; (10) ne we ne rede nat that euere he rood on oother beest. (1) I speke this for the synne of superfluitee, and nat for resonable honestitee, whan reson it requireth.

(2) And forther, certes, pride is greetly notified in holdyng of greet meynnee, whan they be of litel profit, or of right no profit; (3) and namely whan that meynnee is felonous and damageous to the peple by hardynesse of heigh lordshipe, or by wey of offices. (4) ffor certes, swiche lordes sellen thanne hir lordshipe to the deuel of helle, whanne they sustenen the wikkednesse of hir meynnee. (5) ¶ Or elles, 75 whan this folk of lowe degree, as thilke that holden hostelries, sustenen the thefte of hir(e) hostilers, and that is in many manere of deceites. (6) ¶ Thilke manere of folk been the

18555. shap(e) and the boce He.Se.P.L.H.⁴ 56. hem / þat faren *beȝgl*. 57. the degisyng E., the f. He., etc. 58. blak . . . blew E.Se.P.L., blew . . . blak He., etc. 60. Of E.G.Eg., Yet of He., etc. (And yet of H.⁴). 62. the which E., which He., etc.; hir (here) E.G.Eg., his He., etc. 63. Now of E., N. as of He.G.Eg.H.⁴, N. as to Se., etc. 64. the desordinat He.Se.P.L. 65. is E.G.Eg., as He., etc. (f. P.). 66. þat they ben He.P.L.H.⁴ 67. in G., to E. (Sk., Gl.), by Eg., f. He., etc.; that is sustened E.G.Eg. (I-)mayntened He., etc.; and f. E.G.Eg. (Sk., Gl.). 68. *Sadharja* XII, 4. 69. This He.G.Eg.H.⁴; the Asse E.G.Se., an A. He.P.H.⁴, 3l. f. Eg.l. 72. forther ouer He., etc. 75. this E.L., this He., etc.; sustenyng E., sustenaunt Eg.

[I 442—448]

flies that folwen the hony, or elles the houndes that folwen the careyne. (7) Swich forseide folk stranglen spiritually hir lordshipes, for which thus seith Dauid the prophete: (8) ¶ 'Wikked deeth moote come vp thilke lordshipes, and God yeue that they moote descenden in-to helle al doun, al doun, for in hir(e) houses been iniquitees and shrewednesses, and nat God of heuene.' (9) And certes, but if they doon amendement, right as God yaf his benysoun to Pharaon by the seruice of *Ioseph*, and to Laban by the seruice of *Iacob*; (o) right so God wol yeue his malisoun to swiche lordshipes as sustenen the wikkednesse of hir seru-auntz, but if they come to amende-ment.

(1) ¶ Pride of the table appeereth eek ful ofte; for certes, riche men been cleped to festes, and poure folk been put away and rebuked. (2) Also in excesse of diuerse metes and drynkes, and namely swiche manere bake-metes and dissh-metes brennyng of wilde fir, and peynted and castelled with papir, and semblable wast, so that it is abusioun for to thynke. (3) And eek in to greet preciousnesse of vessel and curiositee of mynstralcie, by whiche a man is stired the moore to delices of luxurie, if so be that he sette his herte the lasse vp-on oure Lord Ihesu Crist. (4) Certeyn it is a synne, and certainly the delices myghte been so grete in this caas, that man myghte lightly falle by hem in-to deedly synne.

85 The especes that sourden of pride, soothly, when they sourden of malice ymaged, auised, and forncast, or elles of vsage, been deedly synnes,

[I 449—459]

it is no doute. (6) And when they sourden by freletee vnaused and sodeynly withdrawn ageyn, al been they greuouse synnes, I gesse that they ne been nat deedly.

(7) Now myghte men axe wher-of that pride sourdeth and spryng-eth, and I seye: somtyme it spryng-eth of the goodes of nature, and somtyme of the goodes of ffortune, and somtyme of the goodes of grace. (8) ¶ Certes, the goodes of nature stonden outhur in goodes of body, or in goodes of soule. (9) ¶ Certes, goodes of body been heele of body, [as] strengthe, deliurnesse, beautee, gentrie[s], franchise. (o) ¶ Goodes of nature of the soule been good wit, sharp vnderstondyng, subtil engyn, vertu natureel, good memorie. (1) ¶ Goodes of ffortune been riches, hyghe degrees of lordshipes, preisynges of the peple. (2) ¶ Goodes of grace been science, power to suffre spiritueel trauaile, benignitee, vertuous contemplacioun, withstondyng of temptacioun, and semblable thynges; (3) of whiche forseide goodes, certes, it is a ful greet folye a man to priden hym in any of hem alle.

(4) Now, as for to speken of goodes of nature, God woot that somtyme we han hem in nature as muche to oure damage as to oure profit. (5) ¶ As for to speken of heele of body, certes, it passeth ful lightly, and eek it is ful ofte enchesoun of the siknesse of oure soule. (6) /for, God woot, the flesh is a ful greet enemy to the soule, and therfore the moore that the body is hool, the moore be we in peril to falle. (7) ¶ Eke for to pride hym in his strengthe of body, it is an

18578. vp E.Eg., vp on He.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), to G.Se., on P.L.; al doun (cinmal) G.Eg. (Sk.), adown adown He., a-doun Se., etc. [¶]. LV, 16]. 79. as E.G.Eg., so as He., etc.; *Iacob* . . . *Ioseph*: alle Mij. (Sk.: *Laban* . . . *Pharaon*). 80. but if E., but He., etc.; f. P. 84. the cas He.P.L.H.⁴ 85. & auysed desgl. 86. vnaused and E., vnaused Eg., vnaused sodeynly & He., etc. (Sk.). 88. or in E., or He., etc. (3l. f. Eg.). 89. [as] E.Eg. (Sk., Gl.), f. He., etc.; gentries E.Eg. 91. riches He.G.P.H.⁴ (3l. f. Eg.). 95. oure E.G.Eg., the He., etc.

[I 459—470]

[I 470—479]

heigh folye; ffor certes, the flesh coueiteth agayn the spirit, and ay the moore strong that the flesh is, the sorier may the soule be. (8) And, ouer al this, strengthe of the body and worldly hardynesse causeth ful ofte many a man to peril and meschaunce. (9) Eek for to pride hym of his gentrie is ful greet folie; for ofte tyme the gentrie of the body binymeth the gentrie of the soule; (o) and eek we ben alle of o fader and of o mooder, and alle we been of o nature, roten and corrupt, bothe riche and poure. (1) ffor sothe, o manere gentrie is for to preise: that apparailleth mannes corage with vertues and moralitees, and maketh hym Cristes child; (2) for truste wel that ouer what man þat synne hath maistrie, he is a verray cherl to synne.

(3) ¶NOW been ther generale signes of gentillesse, as eschewynge of vice, and ribaudye, and seruage of synne in word, in werk, and conten- aunce, and vsynge vertu, curteisye, and clenness; (4) and to be liberal, that is to seyn: large by mesure; for thilke that passeth mesure is folie and synne.

(5) ¶Another is to remembre hym of bountee that he of oother folk hath receyued. (6) ¶Another is to be benigne to hise goode subgetis, wherfore seith Senek, ¶‘Ther is no-thing moore couenable to a man of heigh estat than debonairetee and pitee. (7) And therefore thise flyes that men clepeth bees, when they maken hir kyng, they chesen oon that hath no prikke wherwith he may styng.’ (8) ¶Another is a man to haue a noble herte and a diligent, to attayne to heighe vertuose thynges. (9) Now

certes, a man to pride hym in the goodes of grace is eek an outrageous folie; (o) for ‘thilke yifte of grace that sholde haue turned hym to goodnesse and to medicine turneth hym to venym and to confusioun,’ as seith Gregorie. (1) Certes also, who-so prideth hym in the goodes of ffortune, he is a ful greet fool; (2) for som-tyme is a man a greet lord by the morwe, that is a caytyf and a wrecche er it be nyght; (3) and som-tyme the richesse of a man is cause of his deþ; somtyme the delice[s] of a man is cause of the greuous maladye thurgh which he dyeth. (4) Certes, the commendacioun of the peple is somtyme ful fals and ful brotel for to triste; this day they preye, to-morwe they blame. (5) God woot, desir to haue commendacioun eek of the peple hath caused deeth to many a bisy man. (6) Now sith that so is that ye han vnderstonde what is pride, and whiche been the speces of it, and whennes pride sourdeth and spryngeth,—

¶*Remedium contra peccatum Superbie.**

(7) NOW shul ye vnderstonde which is the remedie agayns the synne of pride, and that is humylitee or mekenesse. (8) That is a vertu thurgh which a man hath verray knoweleche of hym-self, and holdeth of hym-self no pris ne deyntee, as in regard of hise desertes, considerynge euere his freletee. (9) NOW been ther IIJ. maneres of humylitee, as humylitee in herte, and another humylitee in his mouth; ¶the thridde in hise werkes. (o) ¶The humylitee in herte is in IIJ. maneres: ¶that oon is, whan a

18602. a verray E.G.Eg., a f. He., etc. 03. or rybaudye (-drie) He.Se.P.L. 06. seith E.G.Eg., as s. He., etc. (Sk.) [De clem. I, 3, 3; I, 19, 2]. 07. clepeth E., clepe(n) He., etc. (f. Se.L.). 09/10. hinter 15 He.P.Ro.³ (für L. 13—63), hinter 11/12 Se. 10. yiftes He., etc. (Sk.). 11. who þat He.Se.P.L. 13. delice H.⁴, delites Se.P.Ro., delices E., etc. (Sk., Gl.); (2fe3) is E.G.Eg.H.⁴, ben He., etc. 14. vgl. 887off. 15. the commendacioun He.*) überjchrift (G. am Rande) f. He.P.Ro.H.⁴ 17. the synne of E.Eg.Se., f. He., etc. 19. and E.G., f. He., etc.; is in Mouth He.Se., in m. P.Ro.

[I 480—486]

[I 487—494]

man holdeth hymself as noght worth
biforn God of heuene. (1) Another
is, whan he ne despiseth noon oother
man. (2) ¶ The thridde is, whan he
rekketh nat though men holde hym
noght worth. (3) ¶ The ferthe is, whan
he nys nat sory of his humiliacioun.
(4) ¶ Also the humilitee of mouth
is in IIIJ. thynges: ¶ in attempree
speche, ¶ and in humblesse of speche;
25 (5) ¶ and whan he biknoweth with his
owene mouth that he is swich as hym
thynketh that he is in his herte.
(6) Another is, whan he preiseth the
bountee of another man, and no-tyng
ther-of amenuseth. (7) ¶ Humilitee
eek in werkes is in IIIJ. maneres:
¶ the firste is, whan he putteth othere
men biforn hym. (8) ¶ The seconde is,
to chese the loweste place ouer-al; ¶ the
thridde is, gladly to assente to *good*
conseil. (9) ¶ The ferthe is, to stonde
gladly to the award of hise souereyns,
or of hym that is in hyer degree; cer-
tein, this is a greet werk of humylitee.

¶ *Sequitur de Inuidia.*

30 After Pride wol I speken of the
foule synne of Enuye, which is, as
by the word of the Philosophre,
'sorwe of oother mannes prosperitee';
(1) and after the word of seint Au-
gustyn, it is 'sorwe of oother mannes
wele, and ioie of othere mennes harm.'
(2) ¶ This synne is platly agayns the
Hooly Goost. (3) Al be it so that
euery synne is agayns the *Hooly Goost*,
yet nathelees, for as muche as bountee
aperteneth proprely to the *Hooly Goost*,
and enuye comth proprely of malice,
therfore it is proprely agayn the boun-
tee of the *Hooly Goost*. (4) ¶ Now
hath malice two spesces; that is to

seyen: hardnesse of herte in wik-
kednesse; (5) or elles the flessch of
man is so blynd, that he considereth
nat that he is in synne, or rekketh
nat that he is in synne, which is the
hardnesse of the deuel. (6) ¶ That
oother spece of malice is, whan
a man werreyeth trouthe, whan he
woot that it is trouthe; (7) and eek
whan he werreieth the grace that God
hath yeue to his neighebre; and al
this is by enuye. (8) ¶ Certes, thanne
is enuye the worste synne that is; ffor
soothly alle othere synnes been som-
tyme oonly agayns o special vertu.
(9) But certes, enuye is agayns alle
vertues, and agayns alle goodnesses;
for it is sory of alle bountees of his
neighebor[e], and in this manere it is
diuers from alle othere synnes. (o) ffor
wel vnnethe is ther any synne that it
ne hath som delit in itself, saue oonly
enuye, that euere hath in itself an-
gwissh and sorwe.

(1) ¶ The spesces of enuye been
thise: ther is first sorwe of oother
mannes goodnesse and of his pros-
peritee, and prosperitee is kyndely
matere of ioie; thanne is enuye
a synne agayns kynde. (2) ¶ The
seconde spece of enuye is ioie of
oother mannes harm, and that is pro-
prely lyk to the deuel, that euere
reioyseth hym of mannes harm.
(3) ¶ Of these two spesces comth bak-
bityng, and this synne of bakbityng
or detraction hath certeine spesces,
as thus: ¶ Som man preiseth his neighe-
bor[e] by a wikke entente; (4) for he
maketh alwey a wikked knotte atte
laste ende; alwey he maketh a 'but'
atte laste ende, that is digne of moore
blame than worth is al the preisyng.

18 621. ne E.He., f. G., etc. 22. ne rekketh He.G.Eg.H.⁴ 27. werkes E.Eg.Se., werk He., etc. 28. good f. E. 29. gladly to stonde He.Se.P.Ro.H.⁴; souereyn ... hyer in degree He.P.Ro. 30. which þat He., etc. 31. mannes E.G., mennes He., etc. [vgl. 12055f.]. 32. goost f. E.; beagl. 33. 33. it is] is He.P., is it H.⁴, 3l. f. Ro. 36. speche E.; malice E.Eg.Se., Enuye He., etc.; whan a man E.H.⁴, whan þat a. m. He., etc. 38. oonly f. He.Se.P.Ro. 40. itself ... itself E.G.Eg., hymself ... hymself He., etc. (... self P., it-self H.⁴). 41. mannes ... his E.Eg., menys ... his G., mennes ... hire He., etc. 43. wikked He., etc.

[1 495—504]

[1 504—514]

45 (5) ¶ The seconde spece is that, if a man be good, and dooth or seith a thing to good entente, the bakbiter wol turne al[1] thilke goodnesse vp so doun to his shrewed entente. (6) ¶ The thridde is, to amenuse the bountee of his neighbor[e]. (7) ¶ The fourthe spece of bakbiting is this: that if men speke goodnesse of a man, thanne wol the bakbiter seyn, 'Pardee! swich a man is yet bet than he,' in dispreisinge of hym that men preise. (8) ¶ The fifte spece is this: for to consente gladly, and herkne gladly to the harm that men speke of oother folk. (9) This synne is ful greet, and ay encreeseth after the wikked entente of the bakbiter.

50 After bakbiting cometh gruc[h]chyng or *murmuracioun*, and somtyme it spryngeth of *inpacience* agayns God, and somtyme agayns man. (1) ¶ Agayns God it is, whan a man gruccheth agayn the peynes of helle, or agayns pouerte, or los of catel; or agayn reyn or tempest; (2) or elles gruccheth that shrewes han prosperitee, or elles for that goode men han *aduersitee*. (3) And alle these thynges sholde men suffre patiently, for they comen by the rightful iuggement and ordinaunce of God. (4) Somtyme comth grucchyng of *auarice*, as Iudas gruccheth agayns the Magdaleyne, whan she enoynte the heued of oure Lord Ihesu Crist with hir precious oynement. (5) ¶ This maner murmur is swich as whan man gruccheth of goodnesse þat hym-self dooth, or that oother folk doon of hir owene catel. (6) ¶ Somtyme comth murmur of pride, as whan Simon the

Pharisee grucch[ch]ed agayn the Magdaleyne, whan she approached to Ihesu Crist, and weep at his feet for hir(e) synnes. (7) And somtyme grucchyng sourdeth of *enuye*, whan men discouereth a mannes harm that was priuee, or bereth hym on hond thyng that is fals. (8) ¶ Murmure eek is ofte amonges *seruauntz*, that gruchchen whan hir souereyns bidden hem doon leueful thynges. (9) And for as muche as they dar nat openly witheseye the comaundementz of hir souereyns, yet wol they seyn harm, and grucche, and murmur priuely for verray despit; (10) whiche wordes men clepen 'the 60 deuiles Paternoster,' though so be that the deuyl ne hadde neuere Pater-noster, but that lewed folk yeuen it swich a name. (1) ¶ Somtyme grucchyng comth of ire or priue hate, that noriseth rancour in herte, as afterward I shal declare. (2) Thanne cometh eek bitterness of herte, thurgh which bitterness euery good dede of his neighbor semeth to hym bitter and vnsauory. (3) ¶ Thanne cometh discord, that vnbyndeth alle manere of frendshipe; ¶ *thanne* comth scornynge of his neighbor, al do he neuer so weel. (4) ¶ Thanne comth *accusynge*, as whan man seketh occasioun to anoyen his neighbor, which that is lyk to the craft of the deuyl, that waiteth bothe nyght and day to accusen vs alle. (5) ¶ Thanne comth malignitee, thurgh which a man anoyeth his neighbor priuely, if he may. (6) And if he noght may, algate his wikked wil ne shal nat wante, as for to brennen his hous priuely, or empoysone or sleen hise beestes, and semblable thynges. 65

18 647. ferthe He., etc.; par fey He., etc. (Sk.). 48. this f. He.P.Ro.; to the harm E.G.Eg.H.⁴, to f. He., etc. 51. is it He.Eg.H.⁴; pyne (peyne) He., etc.; or agayn reyn] or f. E. 52. for that E.He., f. Se.P., that G., etc. 54. enoynte E.He., a-noynted, etc. G., etc. [305. XII, 4—5]. 55. maner of He.P.Ro.; men gruchchen . . . hem (men) selue doon He.Se.P.Ro. 56. wepte G., etc. [2uf. VII, 39 f.]. 57. grucchyng E., it He., etc.; id. 61; discouereth E.P., discoueren He., etc. 58. doon E.G., to d. He., etc. [vgl. Matth. XX, 11]. 66. ne may He.G.Eg. (noght f.), P.L.

[I 515—523]

¶ *Remedium contra peccatum
Inuidie.**

- (7) NOW wol I speke of the remedie agayns the foule synne of enuye.
- (8) ¶ffirst is the louyng of God principal, and louyng of his neighebor as hymself; for soothly, that oon ne may nat been withoute that oother. (9) And truste wel that in the name of thy neighebor[e] thou shalt vnderstonde the name of thy brother; (o) ffor certes, alle we haue o fader flesshly and o mooder, that is to seyn: Adam and Eue—and eek o fader espiritueel, and that is God of heuene. (1) ¶Thy neighebor[e] artow holden for to loue, and wilne hym alle goodnesse; (2) and therefore seith God, 'Loue thy neighebor[e] as thy-selue;' that is to seyn: to saluacioun of lyf and of soule. (3) ¶And moore-ouer, thou shalt loue hym in word, and in benigne amonestyng and chastisyng, and conforten hym in hise anoyes, and preye for hym with al thyn herte. (4) ¶And in dede thou shalt loue hym in swich wise, that thou shalt doon to hym in charitee as thou woldest that it were doon to thyn owene persone.
- 75 (5) And therefore thou ne shalt doon hym no damage in wikked word, ne harm in his body, ne in his catel, ne in his soule by entis[s]yng of wikked ensample. (6) ¶Thou shalt nat desiren his wyf, ne none of hise thynges. (7) Vnderstood eek that in the name of neighebor is comprehended his enemy. (8) ¶Certes, man shal louen his enemy by the comandement of God, and soothly, thy freend shaltow loue in God. (9) ¶I seye, thyn enemy shaltow loue for Goddes sake by his

[I 523—533]

comandement. (o) ¶ffor if it were reson pat a man sholde haten his enemy, for sothe, God nolde nat receyuen vs to his loue, that been hise enemys.

- (1) ¶Agayns iij. manere of thynges that his enemy dooth to hym he shal doon iij. thynges, as thus: (2) ¶Agayns hate and rancour of herte, he shal loue hym in herte. (3) ¶Agayns chidyng and wikked wordes, he shal preye for his enemy. (4) ¶And agayn wikked dede of his enemy, he shal doon hym bountee. (5) ffor Crist seith, 'Loueth youre enemys, and preyeth for hem that speke yow harm, and eek for hem that yow chacen and pursewen, and dooth bountee to hem that yow haten.'
- (6) ¶Loo! thus comaundeth vs oure Lord Ihesu Crist to do to oure enemys. (7) ffor soothly, nature dryueth vs to louen oure freendes, and, parfey, oure enemys han moore nede to loue than oure freendes, and they that moore nede haue, certes, to hem shaltow men doon goodnesse. (8) And certes in thilke dede haue we remembraunce of the loue of Ihesu Crist, that deyde for hise enemys. (9) And in as muche as thilke loue is the moore greuouse to perfourne, in so muche is the moore gretter the merite, and therfore the louyng of oure enemy hath founded the venym of the deuyl.
- (o) ffor right as the deuyl is disconfited by humylitee, right so is he wounded to the deeth by loue of oure enemy. (1) ¶Certes, thanne is loue the medicine that casteth out the venym of enuye fro mannes herte.
- (2) ¶The speses of this paas shullen

* Keine Übersicht: He.L., am Rande G.P.H.⁴ 18 667. the foule E., this f. He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 68. louyng of god E., loue of g. He., etc. (Sk.); of hym self / & of his neighebor He.P.L. 70. spirituel He., etc. 72. bothe of lif (bodie Se.) He., etc. (Sk.); and soule He.G.Eg. (to l. . . to s. L.). 73. & benygne He.P.L. 74. that it E.G.Eg., pat He., his Se.H.⁴, f. P.L. 75—99. H.² für G. 78. by E.Eg.H.⁴, for He., etc. 81. manere of thynges E., m. of wronges He., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 84. And f. He., etc.; wikked E.H.⁴, the w. He., etc. (Sk.). 85: Matth. V, 44. 89. in so E., so He., etc.; gretter E., gret He., etc. 90. loue E.Eg.H.⁴, the l. He., etc. 91. casteth E.Eg.H.⁴, chaceth He.Se.P., cacheþ L.H.² 92. large ly declared in He., etc. (declared f. L.H.²).

[I 535—543]

be moore largely in hir chapitres folwyng declared.

¶ *Sequitur de Ira.*

(3) After enuye wol I discryuen the synne of Ire. ffor soothly, who-so hath enuye vpon his neighebor, anon he wol[e] comunly fynde hym a matere of wratthe in word or in dede agayns hym to whom he hath enuye.

(4) And as wel comth ire of pride as of enuye; for soothly, he that is proud[e] or enuyous is lightly wrooth.

95 ¶ This synne of ire, after the discryuyng of seint Augustyn, is 'wikked wil to been auenged by word or by dede.' (6) Ire, after the Philosphre, is the feruent blood of man yquyked in his herte, thurgh which he wol[e] harm to hym that he hateth. (7) ¶ ffor certes, the herte of man, by eschawfyng and moeuynge of his blood, wexeth so trouble, that he is out of alle iuggement of resoun.

(8) ¶ But ye shal vnderstonde that Ire is in two maneres: that oon of hem is good, and that oother is wikked.

(9) ¶ The goode ire is by ialousie of goodnesse, thurgh which a man is wrooth with wikkednesse and agayns wikkednesse, and therefore seith a wys man that 'Ire is bet than pley.' (o) This ire is with debonairetee, and it is wrooth with-outen bitterness, nat wrooth agayns the man, but wrooth with the mysdede of the man, as seith the prophete Dauid, 'Israscimini & nolite peccare.'

(1) NOW vnderstondeth that wikked ire is in two maneres; that is to seyn: sodeyn ire or hastif ire, with-outen auisement and consentynge of resoun. (2) The menyng and the sens of this is, that the resoun of man ne consente nat to thilke sodeyn ire; and thanne it is venial. (3) ¶ Another

[I 543—553]

ire is ful wikked; that comth of felonie of herte, auysed and cast biforn with wikked wil to do vengeance, and therto his resoun consenteth; and soothly, this is deedly synne.

(4) ¶ This ire is so displesant to God, that it troubleth his hous, and chaseth the Hooly Goost out of mannes soule,

(5) and wasteth and destroyeth the liknesse of God—that is to seyn: the vertu that is in mannes soule—and

put in hym the liknesse of the deucl, and bynymeth the man fro God, that is his rightful Lord. (6) This ire is a ful greet plesaunce to the deucl,

for it is the deueles fourneys, that is eschawfed with the fir of helle.

(7) ffor certes, right so as fir is moore mighty to destroyen erthely thynges than any oother element, right so ire is myghty to destroyen alle spiritueel thynges.

(8) ¶ Looke how that fir of smale gledes, that been almost dede vnder asshen, wollen quike agayn whan they been touched with brymstoon;

(9) right so ire wol eueremo quiken agayn whan it is touched by the pride that is couered in mannes herte. (o) ffor 10

certes, fir ne may nat comen out of no-tyng, but if it were first in the same thyng naturelly, as fir is drawn out of flyntes with steel. (1) And right

so as pride is ofte tyme matere of ire, right so is rancour norice and keper of ire. (2) Ther is a maner tree,

as seith seint Ysidre, that, whan men maken fir[e] of thilke tree, and couere the coles of it with asshen,

soothly, the fir of it wol lasten al a yeer or moore. (3) And right so fareth it of rancour; whan it is ones conceyued in the hertes of some men,

certain, it wol lasten perauenture from oon Estre day vnto another Estre day,

and moore. (4) But certes, thilke man

18693. who so E.H.⁴, who so þat He.Eg., who þat P., etc.; a matere E.Eg.Se.H.⁴, a f. He., etc. [vgl. 7587 ff.]. 98. wikke He.H.⁴ 99. wys man] wys He. 18700: Preb. Sal. VII, 6; i. B. IV, 5. of. his reson He.P.L. 07. another desgl. (3l. f. Eg.). 09. eueremore G., etc. (3l. f. H.⁴). 18712—19151. Ch. für He. 13. vnto E.Ch.L., vntill Eg.G.H.⁴, til Se.P. 14. in E., al(le) Ch., etc. (Sk.).

[1 554—564]

[1 564—572]

is ful fer fro the mercy of God in thilke while.

- 15 ¶ In this forseide deueles fourneys, ther forgen IJ. shrewes: Pride, that ay bloweth and encreeseth the fir by chidyng and wikked wordes. (6) ¶ Thanne stant Enuye, and holdeth the hoothe ðren vpon the herte of man with a peire of longe toonges of long rancour. (7) ¶ And thanne stant the synne of Contumelie or strif and cheeste, and batereth and forgeth by vileyns prepuynge. (8) ¶ Certes, this cursed synne anyeth bothe to the man hym-self and eek to his neighebor[e]. (9) ¶ ffor soothly, almoost al the harm that any man dooth to his neighebor[e] comth of wratthe. (10) ffor certes, outrageous wratthe dooth al that euere the deuel hym comaundeth; for he ne spareth neither Crist, ne his sweete mooder. (1) And in his outrageous anger and ðre—allas, alas! ful many oon at that tyme feeleth in his herte ful wikkedly, bothe of Crist and of alle hise halwes! (2) ¶ Is nat this a cursed vice? Yis, certes. Allas! it bynymeth from man his wit, and his resoun, and al his debonaire lif espiritueel, that sholde kepen his soule. (3) ¶ Certes, it bynymeth eek Goddes due lordshipe, and that is mannes soule, and the loue of hise neighebores. (4) It stryeth eek alday agayn trouthe. It reueth hym the quiete of his herte, and subuerteth his soule.

- 25 Of ðre comen thise stynkyng engendrure: ¶ ffirst hate, that is oold wratthe; discord, thurgh which a man forsaketh his olde freend *that he hath loued* ful longe. (6) ¶ And thanne cometh werre and euery manere of wrong that man dooth to his neighebor[e], in body or in catel. (7) Of this

cursed synne of ðre cometh eek man slaughtre. (8) And vnderstond[e] we that homycide—that is manslaughter—is in diuerse wise: ¶ som manere of homycide in spiritueel, and som in bodily. (9) ¶ Spiritueel manslaughter is in VI. thynges: ¶ ffirst by hate, as seint Iohn seith, 'He that hateth his brother is homycide. (10) ¶ Homycide is eek by bakbityng of whiche bakbiters seith Salomon that 'they han two swerdes with whiche they sleen hir(e) neighebores. (1) ffor soothly, as wikke is to bynym his good name as his lyf. (2) ¶ Homycide is eek in yeuyng of wikked conseil by fraude, as for to yeuen conseil to areysen wrongful custumes and taillages; (3) of whiche seith Salomon, ¶ 'Leon rorynge and berhongry been like to the crueel lordshipe,' in withholdyng or abreggyng of the shepe—or the hyre—or of the wages of seruauantz, or elles in vsures or in withdrawyng of the almesse of poure folk. (4) ffor which the wise man seith, ¶ 'ffedeth hym that almoost dyeth for hunger;' (5) for soothly, but if thou feede hym, thou sleest hym, and alle thise been deedly synnes. (6) Bodily manslaughter is, whan thou sleest him with thy tonge in oother manere, as whan thou comdest to sleen a man, or elles yeuest hym conseil to sleen a man.

(7) Manslaughtre in dede is in III. maneres. ¶ That oon is by lawe, right as a iustice dampneth hym that is coupable to the deeth. (8) But lat the iustice be war that he do it rightfully, and that he do it nat for delit to spille blood, but for kepyng of rightwisenesse. (9) ¶ Another homycide is, that is doon for necessitye, as whan a man sleeth another

18721: einmal allas Ch.G.H.⁴; and eke of (f. Ch.) Ch.G.Eg.H.⁴ 22. spiritueel Ch.G.Eg.Se.H.⁴ 25. that he hath loued f. E.Ch.Eg. 29. VI: I. III? [I. Epist. 305. III, 15] 30: Epr. XXV, 18 (?) [vgl. 18643]. 31. bynyme hym his Ch.G.Eg.Se.L. 33. vsures E. vsure Ch., etc. (Sk.); the pouere Ch.Se., 31. f. P.L. [Epr. XXVIII, 15]. 34: Epr. XXV, 21 39. that is E., f. Ch., etc.

[I 572—580]

[I 581—589]

in his defendaunt, and þat he ne may noon ootherwise escape from his owene deeth. (o) But certainly, if he may escape with-outen manslaughter of his aduersarie, and sleeth hym, he dooth synne, and he shal bere penance as for deedly synne. ¶ Eek if a man, by caas or auenture, shete an arwe, or caste a stoon with which he sleeth a man, he is homycide. (2) ¶ Eek if a woman by negligence ouerlyeth hir child in hir slepyng, it is homycide and deedly synne. (3) Eek whan a man destourbeth concepcioun of a child, and maketh a womman outhir bareyne by drynkynge venenouse herbes, thurgh which she may nat conceyue; (4) or sleeth a child by drynkes wilfully, or elles putteth certeine material thynges in hir(e) se-
 45 cree places to slee the child; (5) or elles dooth vnkyndely synne, by which man or womman shedeth hir nature in manere or in place ther-as a child may nat be conceiued; (6) or elles if a woman haue conceyued, and hurt hir-self, and sleeth the child: yet it is homycide. (7) ¶ What seye we eek of wommen that mordren hir children for drede of worldly shame? Certes, an horrible homicidel! (8) ¶ Homycide is eek if a man approacheth to a womman by desir of lecherie, thurgh which the child is perished, or elles smyteth a womman wityngly, thurgh which she leseth hir child. (9) Alle thise been homycides and horrible deedly synnes.

50 Yet comen ther of ire manye mo synnes, as wel in word as in thoght and in dede; (1) as he that arretteth vpon God, or blameth God of thyng of which he is hym-self gilty; or despiseth God and alle hise halwes, as doon thise cursede hasardours in

diuerse contrees. (2) This cursed synne doon they whan they feelen in hir hertes ful wikkedly of God and of hise halwes. (3) ¶ Also whan they treten vnreuerently the sacrament of the auter, thilke synne is so greet, that vnnethe may it been releessed, but that the mercy of God passeth alle hise werkes; it is so greet, and he so benigne.

(4) Thanne comth of ire attrayngre; whan a man is sharply amonested in his shrifte to foreten his synne, (5) thanne wol[e] he be angry, 55 and answeren hokerly and angrily, and deffenden or excusen his synne by vnstedfastnesse of his flessch; (6) or elles he dide it for to holde compaignye with hise felawes; or elles, he seith, the fend enticed hym, or elles he dide it for his youthe; (7) or elles his compleccioun is so corageous, that he may nat forbere; or elles it is his destinee, as he seith, vnto a certein age; or elles, he seith, it cometh hym of gentillesse of hise auncestres, and semblable thynges. (8) ¶ Alle this manere of folk so wrappen hem in hir synnes, that they ne wol nat deliuere hem-self. (9) ffor soothly, no wight that excuseth hym wilfully of his synne may nat been deliuered of his synne, til that he mekely biknoweth his synne.

(o) After this thanne cometh swer- 60 yng, that is expres agayn the commandement of God; and this bifalleth ofte of anger and of ire. (1) God seith, 'Thow shalt nat take the name of thy Lord God in veyn or in ydel.' (2) Also oure Lord Ihesu Crist seith by the word of seint Mathew†: 'Ne wol ye nat swere in alle manere, neither by heuene, for it is Goddes trone; ne by erthe, for it is the bench of his

18740. manslaughter E., deth Se., slaughter Ch., etc. 42. ouyrye G.Eg.H.⁴ 43. venenouse E.G.H.⁴, venemous Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 44. wilfully E., f. Ch., etc. (Gl.). 46. self] child E. 50. comen E.Ch., comyth G., etc. 52. herte Ch., etc.; of hise E.G., hise Ch., etc. 54. his synne E., synne Ch., etc. 55. and deffenden E.H.⁴, or d. Ch., etc. 60: II. Mof. XX, 7 [vgl. 12580]. 62: Matth. V, 33—36 [vgl. 12572].

[1 589—597]

feet; ne by Ierusalem, for it is the citee of a greet kyng; ne by thyn heed, for thou mayst nat make an heer whit ne blak. (3) But seyeth by youre word: "ye, ye," and "nay, nay," and what that is moore, it is of yuel,' seith Crist. (4) ffor Cristes sake ne swereth nat so synfully, in dismembrynge of Crist by soule, herte, bones, and body. (5) ¶ ffor certes, it semeth that ye thynke that the cursede Lewes ne dismembred nat ynough the precious persone of Crist, but ye disembre hym moore. (6) ¶ And if so be that the lawe compelle yow to swere, thanne rule yow after the lawe of God in youre sweryng, as seith Ieremye .4^o. c^o.: (7) ¶ 'Thou shalt kepe .IIJ. condicions: thou shalt swere in trouthe, in doom, and in rightwisnesse.'†) This is to seyn: thou shalt swere sooth, for euery lesynge is agayns Crist, ffor Crist is verray trouthe. (8) And thynke wel this, that euery greet swerere, nat compelled lawefully to swere, the wounde shal nat departe from his hous, whil he vseth swich vnleueful sweryng. (9) Thou shalt sweren eek in doom, whan thou art constreyned by thy domesman to witnessen the trouthe. (10) ¶ Eek thou shalt nat swere for enuye, ne for fauour, ne for meede, but for rightwisnesse, and for declaracioun of it to the worship(e) of God and helpyng of thine euene-cristene. (1) And therefore euery man that taketh Goddes name in ydel, or falsly swereth with his mouth; (2) or elles taketh on hym the name of Crist to be called a cristene man, and lyueth agayns Cristes lyuynge and his techynge, alle they taken Goddes name in ydel. (3) ¶ Looke

[1 597—604]

eek what seint Peter seith, Actuum 4^o.: Non est aliud nomen sub celo &c. (4) 'Ther nys noon oother name,' seith seint Peter, 'vnder heuene yeuen to men in which they mowe be 'saued'—that is to seyn: but the name of Ihesu Crist. (5) ¶ Tak[e] keep[e] eek how that the name of Crist *so precious is*, as seith seint Paul ad Philipenses. 2^o. 'In nomine Ihesu &c.': ¶ that in the name of Ihesu euery knee of heuenely creatures, or erthely, or of helle sholde[n] bowe. (6) ffor it is so heigh and so worshipful, that the cursede feend in helle sholde tremblen to heeren it ynempned. (7) ¶ Thanne semeth it that men þat sweren so horribly by his blessed name, that they despise hym moore booldely than dide the cursede Lewes, or elles the deuel, that trembleth whan he heereth his name.

(8) ¶ NOW certes, sith that sweryng, but if it be lawefully doon, is so heighly deffended, muche worse is forsweryng falsly, and yet nedeles. (9) ¶ What seye we eek of hem that deliten hem in sweryng, and holden it a gentrie or a manly dede to swere grete othes? (10) And what of hem that of verray vsage ne cesse nat to swere grete othes, al be the cause nat worth a straw? Certes, it is horrible synne. (1) ¶ Swerynge sodeynly withoute auysement is eek a synne.

(2) But lat vs go now to thilke horrible sweryng of adiuracioun and coniuracioun, (3) as doon thise false enchantours or nigromanciens in bacyns ful of water, or in a bright swerd, in a cercle, or in a fir, or in a shulderboon of a sheep. (4) I kan nat seye but that they doon cursedly and damnablely agayns Crist and al the feith

18763. thus seith Crist Ch., etc. 65. thenke Se., etc. (i. Ch.); deſgl. 68 (Se.P.L.). 66: Jerem. IV, 2 [vgl. 12 575]. 68: vgl. 12 587 u. 3e. Sir. XXIII, 11. 70. and for declaracioun E., for d. (declarynge G.P.L.H.) Ch., etc. (Sk.); the worshiþe E.Eg.Se., the f. Ch., etc. 72. lyuynge E. u. b. 73: Apoffelgeſch. IV, 12. 75. the name so precious is of Ihesu Crist G., the precious name of Cr. E., etc. (Sk.), (how) pr. is the n. of Cr. Wr.M., f. Se. [Phil. II, 10]. 76. nempned, etc. Ch., etc. 77. horribly Ch., etc. (Sk.) [vgl. dampnably 84]; hym E., it Ch., etc. 80. it is E., this is Ch., etc. (Sk.). 81: f. Ch. 83. the sholder b. Ch.G.Eg.H. [vgl. 12 288 ff.].

[I 605—614]

[I 614—623]

85 of hooly chirche. (5) ¶ What seye we of hem, that bileeuen in diuyn-ailes, as by flight or by noyse of briddes, or of beestes, or by sort, by geomancye, by dremes, by chirkyng of dores, or crakyng of houses, by gnawynge of rattes, and swich manere wrecchednesse. (6) Certes, al this thyng is defended by God and by al hooly chirche, ffor which they been accursed, til they come to amendement that on swich filthe setten hir bileeue. (7) ¶ Charmes for woundes or maladie of men, or of beestes, if they taken any effect, it be perauenture that God suffreth it; for folk sholden yeue the moore feith and reuerence to his name.

(8) NOW wol I speken of lesynges, which generally is fals significacioun of word, in entente to deceyuen his euene-cristene. (9) ¶ Som[e] lesynge is of which ther comth noon auantage to no wight; and som lesynge turneth to the ese and profit of o man, and to disese and damage of another man. 90 (o) ¶ Another lesynge is for to sauē his lyf or his catel. (1) Another lesynge comth of delit for to lye, in which delit they wol forge a long tale, and peynten it with alle circumstaunces, where al the ground of the tale is fals. (2) Som lesynge comth, for he wol[e] sustene his word; ¶ and som lesynge comth of recchelesnesse with-outen auisement, and semblable thynges.

(3) Lat vs now touche the vice of flaterynge, which ne comth nat gladly, but for drede, or for coueitise. (4) ¶ flaterye is generally wrongful preisyng; ¶ flatereres been the deuēles norices, that norissen hise 95 children with milk of losengerie. (5) ffor

sothe, Salomon seith that 'flaterie is wors than detraccion;' for som-tyme detraccion maketh an hauteyn man be the moore humble, for he dredeth detraccion; (6) but certes, flaterye [that] maketh a man to enhauncen his herte and his contenaunce. (7) ¶ flatereres been the deuēles enchauntours; for they make a man to wene of hymself be lyk that he nys nat lyk. (8) They been lyk to Iudas that bitraysen a man to sellen hym to his[e] enemy, that is to the deuēl. (9) ¶ flatereres been the deuēles chapelleyens, that synge euere 'Placebo.' (o) ¶ I rekene 00 flaterie in the vices of ire; for ofte tyme, if o man be wrooth with another, thanne wol[e] he flateres som wight to sustene hym in his querele.

(1) Speke we now of swich cursynge as comth of irous herte. (2) ¶ Malisoun generally may be seyde euery maner power of harm; swich cursynge bireueth man fro the regne of God, as seith seint Paul. (3) And ofte tyme swich cursynge wrongfully retorneth agayn to hym þat curseth, as a bryd that retorneth agayn to his owene nest. (4) ¶ And ouer alle thyng men oghten eschewe to cursen hir(e) children, and yeuen to the deuēl hir engendrure, as ferforth as in hem is; certes, it is greet peril and greet synne.

(5) Lat vs thanne speken of chid- 05 ynge and reproche, whiche been ful grete woundes in mannes herte; for they vnsowen the semes of freendshipe in mannes herte. (6) ¶ ffor certes, vnnethes may a man pleynly been accorded with hym that hath hym openly reuyled and repleued in disclaundre. (7) ¶ This is a ful grisly synne, as Crist seith in the gospel. (8) ¶ And

18785. in E., on Ch., etc. 86. by al E., f. Ch., etc. 87. it bene P., it may be Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 88. signifaunce (-aunt) Ch., etc. 89. disese and E., f. Ch., etc. 90. is Se.P., f. E., etc. 91. Another lesynge Se.P.L., f. E., etc. 92. and som E.P.L., som Ch., etc. 95. Spr. XXVIII, 23 (?). 96. [that] E.Ch.G.Eg., f. Se., etc. 98. lyk to E.G.Se.L., lyk Ch., etc.; that bitrayed [god; and thise flateres bitraysen] a man Sk., Gl., M., Wr. [?]. [Bgl. lat.: . . . ad modum Iude hominem tradit hostibus suis]; betraysyn G., betrayeth Eg., bitrayed E., etc. 18802. of] or E. (Gl.). 06. & desclaundred Ch., etc. 07. Matth. V, 22.

[I 624—631]

[I 631—641]

taak keep[e] now that he þat repreueth his neighebor, outhere he repreueth hym by som harm of peyne that he hath on his body, as 'mesel,' 'croked harlot,' or by som synne that he dooth. (9) ¶ Now, if he repreue hym by harm of peyne, thanne turneth the repreue to Ihesu Crist; for peyne is sent by the rightwys sonde of God, and by his suffrance, be it *meselrie*, or *maheym*, or *maladie*.

- 10 (0) ¶ And if he repreue hym vncharitably of synne, as 'thou dronkelewe harlot,' and so forth, thanne aperteneth that to the reioysynge of the deuel, that euere hath ioye that men doon synne. (1) ¶ And certes, chidyng may nat come but out of a vileyns herte; ¶ ffor after the habundance of the herte speketh the mouth ful ofte. (2) ¶ And ye shul vnderstonde that, looke by any way, whan any man shal chastise another, that he be war from chidyng and repreuyng. (3) ffor trewely, but he be war, he may ful lightly quyken the fir of angre and of wratthe, which þat he sholde quenche, and per-aventure sleeth hym which that he myghte chastise with benignitee. (4) ffor, as seith Salomon, ¶ 'The amyable tonge is the tree of lyf,' that is to seyn: of
- 15 lyf espriteuel; (5) and soothly, a deslauee tonge sleeth the spirites of hym that repreueth, and eek of hym that is repreued. (6) ¶ Loo! what seith seint Augustyn? 'Ther is no-thing so lyk the deueles child, as he that ofte chideth.' (7) ¶ Seint Paul seith eek, 'A seruant of God bihoueth nat to chide.' (8) ¶ And how þat chidyng be a vileyns thyng bitwixe alle manere folk, yet is it certes moost vncouenable bitwixe a man and his wyf; for there is neuere reste; (9) and therfore seith

Salomon, 'An hous that is vncouered and droppynge and a chidyng wyf been lyke.' (0) ¶ A man that is in a droppynge hous in manye places, though he eschewe the droppynge in o place, it droppeth on hym in another place. (1) ¶ So fareth it by a chidyng wyf; but she chide hym in o place, she wol chide hym in another. (2) ¶ And therfore 'bette is a morsel of breed with ioye than an hous ful of delices with chidyng,' seith Salomon. (3) ¶ Seint Paul seith: ¶ 'O ye wommen! be ye subgetes to youre housbondes, and ye men, loueth youre wyues.' Ad Colossenses. 3^o.

(4) Afterward speke we of scornynge, which is a wikked synne, and namely whan he scorneth a man for hise goode werkes. (5) ffor certes, 25 swiche scorneres faren lyk the foule tode, that may nat endure to smelle the soote sauour of the vyne whanne it florisseth. (6) ¶ Thise scorneres been partyng felawes with the deuel; for they han ioye whan the deuel wynneth, and sorwe whan he leseth. (7) They been aduersaries of Ihesu Crist; for they haten that he loueth, that is to seyn: saluacioun of soule.

(8) Speke we now of wikked conseil, for he þat wikked conseil yeueth is a traytour. (9) He deceyueth hym þat trusteth in hym: Vt Achitofel ad Absolonem; but natheless yet is his wikked conseil first agayn hym-self. (0) ffor, as seith the wise man, 'euery 30 fals lyuyng hath his propertee in hym-self, that he þat wol[e] anoye another man, he anoyeth first hym-self.' (1) ¶ And men shul vnderstonde that man shal nat taken his conseil of fals folk, ne of angry folk, or greu-

18809. Maheym E.Eg., Mayme Ch., etc. (Gl.) (f. H.). 10. thow holour thow dronkelewe G.Se.P.L.H. (Sk.). 11: Matth. XII, 34. 12. and E., or Ch., etc. (Sk.). 14: Spr. XV, 4. 17: II. Tim. II, 24. 18. hym which that E., hym that Ch., etc. 17. A Wr. M. Gl., I E., etc., Sk.; bihove Sk. 19: Spr. XXVII, 15 [vgl. 5860]. 22: Spr. XXII, 1. 23. housbondes/as byhoueth in god. And Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.); Colocenses H., Colonienses, etc. [Roloj. III, 18—19]. 29. For he deceyueth Ch., etc. (Sk.) [II. Sam. XV, 31; XVII, 1f.]. 30. his proprete E.Ch., this p. Se.L.H., his propre P., 31. f. G.Eg. [Spr. XXVI, 27?].

[I 641—649]

[I 650—658]

ous folk, *ne of folk* that louen specially to muchel hir owene profit, ne to muche worldly folk, namely in consailynge of soules.

(2) NOW comth the synne of hem that sowen and maken discord amonges folk, which is a synne that Crist hateth outrelly; and no wonder is; ¶for he deyde for to make concord. (3) And moore shame do they to Crist than dide they that hym crucifiede; for God loueth bettre that freendshipe be amonges folk than he dide his owene body, the which that he yaf for vnitee. (4) Therefore been they likned to the deuyl, that euer been aboute to maken discord.

35 (5) NOW comth the synne of double tonge, swiche as speken faire byforn folk, and wikkedly bihynde; (6) or elles they maken semblant as though they speeke of good entencioun, or elles in game and pley, and yet they speke of wikked entente.

(7) NOW comth biwreying of conseil, thurgh which a man is defamed; certes, vnnethe may he restooore the damage.

(8) NOW comth *manace*, that is an open folye; for he that ofte manaceth, he threteth moore than he may perfourne ful ofte tyme.

40 (9) NOW cometh ydel wordes; that is with-outen profit of hym that speketh tho wordes, and eek of hym that herkneth tho wordes. (10) ¶Or elles ydel wordes been tho that been ne-deles, or withouten entente of natureel profit. (1) And al be it that ydel wordes been som-tyme venial synne, yet sholde men douten hem; for we shul yeue rekenynge of hem bifore God.

(2) NOW comth *ianglynge*, that may nat been with-oute synne, ¶and,

as seith Salomon, 'it is a sygne of apert folye.' (3) And therfore a Philosophre seyde, whan men axed hym how that men sholde plesse the peple, and he answerde, 'Do manye goode werkes, and spek fewe iangles.'

(4) After this comth the synne of *iaperes*; that been the deuyles apes; (5) for they maken folk to laughe at 45 hir *iaperie*, as folk doon at the gawdes of an ape. Swiche *iap[er]es* defendeth seint Paul. (6) ¶Looke how that vertuose wordes and hooly woordes conforten hem that trauaillen in the seruice of Crist; (7) right so conforten the vileyns wordes and knakkes of *iaperis* hem that trauaillen in the seruice of the deuyl. (8) ¶Thise been the synnes that comen of the tonge, that comen of ire and of othere synnes mo.

¶*Sequitur remedium contra peccatum Ire.*

(9) The remedie agayns Ire is a vertu that men clepen Mansuetude, that is debonairetee, and eek another vertu þat men callen pacience or sufrance.

¶Debonairetee withdraweth and re- 50 freyneth the stirynges and the moeynges of mannes corage in his herte in swich manere, that they ne skippe nat out by *angre* ne by *ire*. (1) ¶Suffrance suffreth swetely alle the any-aunces and þe wronges þat men doon to man outward. (2) ¶Seint Ierome seith thus of debonairetee: that 'it dooth no harm to no wight, ne seith; ne for noon harm that men doon or seyn he ne eschawfeth nat agayns his resoun.' (3) ¶This vertu som-tyme comth of nature; for, as seith the Philosophre, 'A man is a quyk thyng

18833. ne of folk f. E.Ch.Eg. (Gl.). 33. the which E.P., which Ch., etc. 34. been aboute E.H.⁴, is a. Ch., etc. 42. a synne E.G. (Sk., Gl.), a signe Ch., etc. [Bib. Gen. V, 2]. 45. Iaperes E.G. (Sk.), iapes Ch., etc. [Coph. V, 4]. 46. hooly woordes E.H.⁴, holy Ch., etc. (Sk.). 49. callen E.G.Eg., calleth Ch., clepen Se., etc.; that is] that Ihon de Bonania clepith G. 52. or seyn E.Eg., ne s. Ch., etc.

[I 659—667]

[I 667—676]

by nature, debonaire and trefable to goodnesse; but whan debonairetee is enforced of grace, thanne is it the moore worth.'

(4) ¶ Pacience, that is another remedie agayns ire; it is a vertu that suffreth swetely euery mannes goodnesse, and is nat wrooth for noon harm that is doon to hym. (5) ¶ The philosophre seith that 'pacience is thilke vertu that suffreth debonairely alle the outrages of aduersitee and euery wikked word.' (6) ¶ This vertu maketh a man lyk to God, and maketh hym Goddes owene deere child, as seith Crist. (7) This vertu disconfiteth thyn enemy, ¶ and therfore seith the wise man, 'If thou wolt venquysse thyn enemy, lerne to suffre.' (8) And thou shalt vnderstonde that man suffreth IIIJ. manere of greuaunces in outward thynges, agayns the whiche IIIJ. he moot haue IIIJ. manere of paciencies.

(9) ¶ The firste greuance is of wikkede wordes; thilke suffrede Ihesu Crist with-outen grucchyng ful paciently, whan the Iewes despised and reprieved hym ful ofte. (10) ¶ Suffre thou therfore paciently; for the wise man seith, 'If thou stryue with a fool, though the fool be wrooth, or though he laughe, algate thou shalt haue no reste.' (1) ¶ That oother greuance outward is to haue damage of thy catel. (2) ¶ Ther agayns suffred Crist ful paciently, whan he was despoyled of al that he hadde in this lyf, and that nas but hise clothes. (3) ¶ The thridde greuance is a man to haue harm in his body. ¶ That suffred Crist ful paciently in al his passioun. (4) ¶ The fourthe greuance is in outrageous labour in werkes. (5) Where-

fore I seye that folk that maken hir seruantz to trauaillen to greuously or out of tyme, as on haly dayes, soothly, they do greet synne. (6) Heer agayns suffred Crist ful paciently, and taughte vs pacience, whan he baar vp-on his blissed shulder the croys vp-on which he sholde suffren despitous deeth. (7) ¶ Heere may men lerne to be pacient; for certes, noght oonly cristen men been pacient for loue of Ihesu Crist and for gerdown of the blisful lyf that is perdurable; (8) but certes, the olde payens, that neuere were cristene, commendedden and vseden the vertu of pacience.

(9) A Philosophre† vp-on a tyme, that wolde haue beten his disciple for his grete trespas, for which he was greetly amoeued, [and] broghte a yerde to scoure with the child. (10) And whan this child saugh the yerde, he seyde to his maister, 'What thenke ye do?' 'I wol bete thee,' quod the maister, 'for thy correccioun.' (1) ¶ 'ffor sothe,' quod the child, 'ye oghten first correcte youre-self, that han lost al youre pacience for the gilt of a child.' (2) ¶ 'ffor sothe,' quod the maister, al wepynge, 'thow seyst sooth! Haue thou the yerde, my deere sone, and correcte me for myn inpacience.'

(3) Of pacience comth obedience, thurgh which a man is obedient to Crist, and to alle hem to whiche he oghte to been obedient in Crist. (4) ¶ And vnderstond wel that obedience is perfit whan that a man dooth gladly and hastily, with good herte entierly, al that he sholde do. (5) ¶ Obedience generally is to perfourne the doctrine of God and of his souereyns, to whiche hym oghte to ben obeisaunt in alle rightwisnesse.

18854. it is E.Eg.Se.L., is Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.); is nat] is f. Ch.Eg. 56. goddes E.Eg.H.⁴, his Ch., etc. 57. for to Ch.G. [Cato, Dist. I, 38]. 59. despised hym Ch., etc. (reprieved hym f. G.). 60. Spr. XXIX, 9; [a. Rande] Remedium E.; desgl. 62, 63, 66. 68. commenden He.G.Se.P.L.; vsyn G.Se.L. 69. and: alle 5ff. u. Edd.; scourge Ch. (Sk., Gl.); with E., f. Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 70. this child E., the ch. Ch., etc.; thynke 3e to do G.Eg.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.), wol ye don Se.P.L., 3l. f. Ch. 73. ought ben Ch.P.L.

[I 677—684]

[I 685—692]

¶ *Sequitur de Accidia.*

(6) After the synne of enuye and of ire, now wol I speken of the synne of accidie; for enuye blyndeth the herte of man, and ire troubleth a man, and accidie maketh hym heuy, thoughtful, and wrawful. (7) Enuye and ire maken bitternesse in herte, which bitternesse is mooder of accidie, and bynymeth hym the loue of alle goodnesse. (8) Thanne is accidie the angwysch of troubled herte; and seint Augustyn seith, 'It is anoy of goodnesse and ioie of harm.' (9) ¶ Certes, this is a dampnable synne; for it dooth wrong to Ihesu Crist, in as muchie as it bynymeth the seruice that men oghte doon to Crist with alle diligence, as

80 seith Salomon. (o) But accidie dooth no swich diligence. He dooth alle thyng with anoy, and with wrawnesse, slaknesse, and excusacioun, and with ydelnesse, and vnlust; (1) ffor which the book seith, 'Acursed be he that dooth the seruice of God negligently.' (2) ¶ Thanne is accidie enemy to euerich estaat of man; for certes, the estaat of man is in III. maneres: (3) ¶ Outher it is thestaat of innocence, as was thestaat of Adam biforn that he fil into synne, in which estaat he was holden to wirche, as in herinyng and adowryng of God. (4) ¶ Another estaat is thestaat of synful men, in which estaat men been holden to laboure in preiynge to God for amendement of hir(e) synnes, and that he wol[e] graunte hem to arysen out
85 of hir synnes. (5) ¶ Another estaat is thestaat of grace, in which estaat he is holden to werkes of penitence; and certes, to alle thise thynges is accidie enemy and contrarie; ffor he loueth no

bisynesse at al. (6) ¶ Now certes, this foule *synne* accidie is eek a ful greet enemy to the liflode of the body. (7) ffor it ne hath no purueaunce agayn temporeel necessitee; for it forslaweth, and forsluggeth, and destroyeth alle goodes temporeles by recchelesnesse. (8) The fourthe thyng is, that accidie is lyk to hem that been in the peyne of helle by cause of hir slouthe and of hir heuynesse. (9) ffor they that been dampned been so bounde, that they ne may neither wel do, ne wel thynke. (o) ¶ Of accidie comth 90 first that a man is anoyed and encombred for to doon any goodnesse, and maketh that God hath abhomy nation of swich accidie, as seith seint Iohn.

(1) NOW comth slouthe, that wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne no penaunce. (2) ffor soothly, slouthe is so tendre and so delicaat, as seith Salomon, that he wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne penaunce, and therefore he shendeth al that he dooth. (3) ¶ Agayns this roten-herted synne of accidie and slouthe sholde men exercise hemself to doon goode werkes, and manly and vertuously cacchen corage wel to doon, (4) thynkyng that oure Lord Ihesu Crist quiteth euery good dede, be it neuer so lite. (5) Vsage of labour 95 is a greet thyng, for it maketh, as seith seint Bernard, the laborer to haue stronge armes and harde synwes, and slouthe maketh hem feble and tendre. (6) Thanne comth drede to bigynne to werke anye goode werkes; for certes, he that is enclined to synne, hym thynketh it is so greet an emprise for to vndertake to doon werkes of goodnesse, (7) and casteth

18876—94. H.² für 'G. 76. synne of enuye E.Ch.H.⁴, synnes of e. Eg., etc. (Sk.); of Ire E.H.² (Enuye f.), Ire Ch., etc. (f. P.L.); wrawful E., wrawe Ch., etc. (Sk.). 78. ioie E., anoye Ch., etc., 3l. f. H.⁴ 79. to doo P.L.H.²H.⁴; Ihesu crist Ch.P.L.H.² [Prb. Sal. IX, 10?]. 81: Jer. XLVIII, 10. 82. [Manbn.] Nota & caue E. 84. is estaat E. (Gl.); ryse Ch.Eg.H.⁴, 3l. f. P.L.H.² 86. synne] swyn E. 88. to hem E., hem Ch., etc. 90. as seith seint Iohn Se., etc., f. E.Ch.Eg. [Offenb. III, 16; vgl. lat. Text]. 92: Spr. XXI, 25. 93. hem self(e) & vse hem selfe Ch.Eg.Se. [vgl. 16247]. 94. thynkyng E.Eg.H.⁴, thenkyng Ch., etc.

[I 692—701]

in his herte that the circumstaunces of goodnesse been so greuous and so chargeaunt for to suffre, that he dar nat undertake to do werkes of goodnesse, as seith seint Gregorie.

(8) NOW comth wanhope; that is despeir of the mercy of God, þat comth somtyme of to muche outrageous sorwe, and somtyme of to muche drede; (9) ymaginyng that he hath doon so muche synne, that it wol nat auaillen hym, though he wolde repenten hym and forsake synne; 00 (o) thurgh which despeir or drede he abaundoneth al his herte to euery maner synne, as seith seint Augustin. (1) Which dampnable synne, if that it continue vn-to his ende, it is cleped 'synnyng in the Hooly Goost.' (2) ¶ This horrible synne is so perilous, that he þat is despeired, ther nys no felonye, ne no synne that he douteth for to do, as sheweth wel by Iudas. (3) ¶ Certes, abouen alle synnes thanne is this synne moost displesant to Crist and moost aduersarie. (4) ¶ Soothly, he that despeireth hym is lyke the coward champioun recreant, *that seith 'recreant' withoute nede. Allas, allas! nedelee is he recreant and nedelee* 05 *despeired.* (5) Certes, the mercy of God is euere redy to euery penitent, and is abouen alle hise werkes. (6) ¶ Allas! kan a man nat bithynke hym on the gospel of seint Luc. 15, wher-as Crist seith that (7) 'as wel shal ther be ioye in heuene vpon a synful man that dooth penitence than vp-on 90. and [1]9 rightful men that neden no penitence.' (8) Looke forther in the same gospel the ioye and the feeste of the goode man that hadde lost his sone, whan his sone with repentaunce was retourned to his fader.

[I 702—713]

(9) ¶ Kan they nat remembren hem eek that, as seith seint Luc. 23†, how that the thief that was hanged bisyde Ihesu Crist seyde, "Lord, remembre of me whan thou comest in-to thy regne?" (o) ¶ "ffor sothe," *seyde* Crist, "I seye to thee, to-day shaltow been with me in Paradys." (1) ¶ Certes, ther is noon so horrible synne of man, that it ne may in his lyf be destroyed by penitence, thurgh vertu of the passion and of the deeth of Crist. (2) Allas! what nedeth man thanne to been despeired, sith þat his mercy so redy is and large? Axe and hauer! (3) Thanne cometh Sompnolence, that is slobby slombryng, which maketh a man be heuy and dul in body and in soule. And this synne comth of slouthe. (4) And certes, the tyme that by wey of resoun men sholde nat slepe, that is by *the morwe*, but if ther were cause resonable. (5) ffor soothly, the *morwe-tyde* is moost couenable a man to seye his preyer, and for to thynken on God, and for to honoure God, and to yeuen almesse to the poure that first cometh in the name of Crist. (6) Lo! what seith Salomon? ¶ 'Who-so wolde by the *morwe* awaken and seke me, he shal fynde.' (7) Thanne cometh Negligence or reccheleesnesse, that rekketh of no-thing. (8) And how that ignoraunce be mooder of alle harm, certes, negligence is the norice. (9) ¶ Negligence ne dooth no fors, whan he shal doon a thyng, *whether* he do it weel or baddely.

Of the remedie of thise two synnes, as seith the wise man, that 'he that dredeth God, he spareth nat to doon that him oghte doon.' (1) And he that loueth God, he wol doon diligence to plesse God by hise

18902. sheweth E., shewed Ch., etc. (Sk.). 04. that seith—is he recreant f. E.; seith recreant H.⁴, s. creant Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 05. euery E., the Ch., etc. (Gl.). 06. a man nat E.P., nat a m. Ch., etc. (Sk.) [Suf. XV, 7]. 07. and (nyne) Eg.Se.H.⁴; men that neuere ne dede synne, etc. G. (Gl.), f. E., etc.; that neden] Ne n. id. 08. Suf. XV, 22 ff. 09. ib. XXIII, 42 f. 10. seyde f. E. 12. Matth. VII, 7. 14. the morwe f. E. 15. and to honour Ch.Eg.P.H.⁴ 16. Spr. VIII, 17. 20. oghte doon E.Ch., to d. G., etc.

[I 714—722]

[I 723—731]

werkes, and abaundone hym-self, with al his myght, wel for to doon.

(2) Thanne comth ydelnesse, that is the yate of alle harmes. (3) ¶ An ydel man is lyk to a place that hath no walles; the deuēles may entre on euery syde, and sheten at hym at discouert by temptacion on euery syde. (4) ¶ This ydelnesse is the thurrok of alle wikked and vileyns thoghtes, and of alle iangles, trufles, and alle ordure. (5) ¶ Certes, the heuene is yeuen to hem that wol labouren, and nat to ydel folk. (6) ¶ Eek Dauid seith that 'they ne been nat in the labour of men, ne they shul nat been whipped with men,' that is to seyn in purgatorie. (7) Certes, thanne semeth it they shul be tormented with the deuēl in helle, but if they doon penitence.

(8) Thanne comth the synne that men clepen 'Tarditas,' as whan a man is to laterede or tariynge, er he wole turne to God, and certes, that is a greet folie. (9) He is lyk to hym that falleth in the dych, and wol nat arise. (10) And this vice comth of a fals hope, that he thynketh that he shal lyue longe; but that hope faileþ ful ofte.

(1) Thanne comth lachesse; that is he that, whan he biginneth any good werk, anon he shal forleten it, and stynten, (2) as doon they that han any wight to gouerne, and ne taken of hym namoore keep[e], anon as they fynden any contrarie or any anoy. (3) ¶ Thise been the newe shepherdes, that leten hir sheep wityngly go renne to the wolf, that is in the breres, or do no fors of hir owene gouernaunce. (4) Of this comth pouerte and destruccioun, bothe of spiritueel and temporeel thynges.

(5) Thanne comth a manere could- nesse, that freseth al the herte of a man. (6) Thanne comth vndeocioun, thurgh which a man is blent, as seith Seint Bernard, 'and hath swich langour in soule, that he may neither rede, ne singe in hooly chirche; (7) ne heere, ne thynke of no deuocioun, ne trauaille with hise handes in no good werk, that it nys hym vnsauory and al apalled. (8) ¶ Thanne wexeth he slough and slombry, and soone wol be wrooth, and soone is enclyned to hate and to enuye.' (9) Thanne comth the synne of worldly sorwe, swich as is cleped 'tristicia,' that sleeth man, as seint Paul seith. (10) ffor certes, swich sorwe werketh to the deeth of the soule and of the body also; for therof comth þat a man is anoyed of his owene lif. (1) Wherfore swich sorwe shorteth ful ofte the lif of man, er þat this tyme be come by wey of kynde.

¶ *Remedium contra peccatum Accidie.*

(2) Agayns this horrible synne of accidie and the branches of the same, ther is a vertu that is called 'fortitudo' or strengthe; that is an affecioun thurgh which a man despiseth anoyouse thynges. (3) ¶ This vertu is so myghty and so vigorous, that it dar withstonde myghtily, and wisely kepen hym-self fro perils that been wikked, and wrastle agayn the assautes of the deuēl. (4) ffor it enhaunceth and enforceth the soule, right as accidie abateth it, and maketh it fieble; ffor this 'fortitudo' may endure by long suffraunce the trauailles that been couenable.

¶ This vertu hath manye spesces, 45 and the firste is cleped 'magnanimitie,' that is to seyn 'greet corage. (6) ffor

18922: vgl. 16231ff. 23. lyk a Ch.G.Eg.H.⁴; or sheet Ch., etc. 26: Bf. LXXIII, 5. 29. to hym E.Ch., hym G., etc. 30. a fals E.Ch.H.⁴, fals G., etc. 37. to hym Ch., etc. 39. which as E., whiche that Se.P.L., swich(e) as Ch., etc.; seith (f. Se.) seint Poule Ch., etc. [vgl. II. Rör. VII, 10]. 43. vigorous E.G., vigorous Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 45. and E., f. Ch., etc.; Magnificence E. (Magnanimitie a. Rande), L.

[I 731—739]

[I 739—749]

certes, ther bihoueth greet corage
 agains *accidie*, lest that it ne swolve
 the soule by the synne of sorwe, or
 destroye it by wanhope. (7) ¶ This
 vertu maketh folk to vndertake harde
 thynges and greuouse thynges by hir
 owene wil, wisely and resonably.
 (8) And for as muchel as the deuel
 fighteth agayns a man moore by
 queyntise and by sleighte than by
 strengthe, therfore men shal with-
 stonden hym by wit, and by resoun,
 and by discrecioun. (9) Thanne arn
 ther the vertues of ffeith and hope
 in God and in hise seintes, to acheue
 and acomplise the goode werkes, in
 the whiche he purposeth fermely to
 continue. (10) Thanne comth seuretee
 or sikernes, and that is, whan a man
 ne douteth no trauaille in tyme com-
 ynge of the goode werkes that a
 man hath bigonne. (1) Thanne comth
 Magnificence, that is to seyn: whan
 a man dooth and perfourneth grete
 werkes of goodnesse; (2) and that is
 the ende why that men sholde do
 goode werkes; for in the acomplis-
 synge of grete goode werkes lith the
 grete gerdoun. (3) Thanne is ther
 Constaunce, that is stablenesse of
 corage, and this sholde been in herte
 by stedefast feith, and in mouth, and
 in berynge, and in chiere, and in dede.
 (4) Eke ther been moore speciale re-
 medies agayns *Accidie* in diuerse
 werkes, and in consideracioun of the
 peynes of helle, and of the ioyes of
 heuene, (5) and in trust of the grace
 of the Holy Goost, that wole yeue
 hym myght to perfourne his goode
 entente.

¶ *Sequitur de Auaricia.*

(6) After *Accidie* wol I speke of

Auarice and of *Coueitise*, of which
 synne seith seint Paule that 'the
 roote of alle harmes is *coueitise*.' Ad
 Thimotheum .6^o. (7) ffor soothly, whan
 the herte of a man is confounded in
 it-self and troubled, and that the soule
 hath lost the confort of God, thanne
 seketh he an ydel solas of worldly
 thynges.

(8) *Auarice*, after the descripcion
 of seint Augustyn, is likerousnesse
 in herte to haue erthely thynges.
 (9) ¶ Som oother folk seyn that *auarice*
 is for to purchacen manye erthely
 thynges, and no-thing yeue to hem
 that han nede. (10) ¶ And vnderstood
 that *auarice* ne stant nat oonly in lond
 ne catel, but somtyme in science and
 in glorie, and in euery manere of
 outrageous thyng is *auarice* and *coueitise*.
 (1) ¶ And the difference bi-
 twixe *auarice* and *coueitise* is this:
 ¶ *Coueitise* is for to coueite swiche
 thynges as thou hast nat. (2) And
auarice is for to withholde and kepe
 swiche thynges as thou hast with-oute
 rightful nede. (3) ¶ Soothly, this *auarice*
 is a synne that is ful dampnable;
 for al hooly writ curseth it, and
 speketh agayns that vice; (4) for it
 dooth wrong to Ihesu Crist, for it
 bireueth hym the loue that men to
 hym owen, and turneth it bakward
 agayns alle resoun; (5) and maketh
 that the *auaricious* man hath moore
 hope in his catel than in Ihesu Crist,
 and dooth moore obseruance in kep-
 ynge of his tresor than he dooth to
 seruice of Ihesu Crist. (6) And ther-
 fore seith seint Paul ad Ephe-
 sios 5^o. that 'an *auaricious* man is the
 thraldom of ydolatrie.'

(7) ¶ What difference is bitwixe
 an ydolastre and an *auaricious*

18947. to vndertake E.Se.L., to f. Ch., etc.; wesely E. (willfully H.⁴). 18951—1903.
 H.² fūr G. 54. consideracions Ch.Eg.P.H.² 55. in the truste Ch., etc. 56: vgl. 12272.
 57. troubled E.Se.H.⁴, trowble Ch., etc. 58: likerous Ch., a likerousnesse Eg., etc.
 65. the seruyse Ch.Eg.Se., 3l. f. P., etc. 66. [Ep. V, 5] is the thraldom of] is thral to
 Se.L., hap more hope in (his) praldome of P.H.², is in the th. of Sk. (?) [vgl. lat.: idol-
 lorum servitus].

[I 749—758]

[I 758—767]

man, but that an ydolastre per-aue-
nure ne hath but o mawmet or two, and
the auaricious man hath manye? (8) ffor
certes, euery floryn in his cofre is his
mawmet. (9) And certes, the synne of
mawmettrie is the firste thyng that God
deffended in the ten comaundmentz,
as bereth wnesse Exodi co. 20^o:
(o) ¶ 'Thou shalt haue no false goddes
bifore me, ne thou shalt make to thee
no graue thyng.' (1) Thus is an auari-
cious man that loueth his tresor biforn
God an ydolastre, thurgh this cursed
synne of auarice.

(2) Of coueitise comen thise harde
lordshipes, thurgh whiche men been
distreyned by taylages, custumes, and
cariages, moore than hir duetee or re-
soun is. (3) And eek they taken of
hir(e) bonde men amercimentz whiche
myghten moore resonably ben cleped
extorcions than amercimentz. (4) ¶ Of
whiche amercimentz and raunsonynge
of bondemen somme lordes stywardes
seyn that it is rightful, for as muche
as a cherl hath no temporeel thyng that
it ne is his lordes, as they seyn. (5) But
certes, thise lordshipes doon wrong that
bireuen hir bonde-folk thynges that
they neuere yaue hem. Augustinus,
de civitate libro .9^o. (6) ¶ Sooth is
þat the condicioun of thraldom and the
firste cause of thraldom is for synne.
Genesis 9^o.

(7) ¶ Thus may ye seen that the
gilt deserueth thraldom, but nat na-
ture. (8) Wherefore thise lordes ne
sholde nat muche glorifien hem in
hir lordshipes, sith that by natureel
condicion they been nat lordes of
thralles, but that thraldom comth first
by the desert of synne. (9) ¶ And
forther-ouer, ther-as the lawe seith that

temporeel goodes of boonde-folk been
the goodes of hir lordshipes, (o) ye, 80
that is for to vnderstonde: the goodes
of the emperour to deffenden hem in
hir right, but nat for to robben hem
ne reuen hem. (1) ¶ And therefore seith
Seneca, ¶ 'Thy prudence sholde lyue
benignely with thy thralles.' (2) Thilke
that thou clepest thy thralles been
Goddes peple; for humble folk been
Cristes freendes; they been contubern-
yal with the lord.

(3) ¶ Thenke eek that of swich seed
as cherles spryngen, of swich seed
spryngen lordes. (4) As wel may the
cherl be saued as the lord; the same
deeth þat takeþ the cherl, swich deeth
taketh the lord. (5) Wherefore I rede: 85
do right so with thy cherl as thou
woldest that thy lord dide with thee,
if thou were in his plit. (6) Euery
synful man is a cherl to synne; I
rede thee, certes, that thou, lord, werke
in swiche wise with thy cherles, that
they rather loue thee than drede.
(7) I woot wel ther is degree aboue
degree, as reson is, and skile it is
that men do hir deuoir ther-as it is
due; (8) but certes, extorcions and
despit of youre vnderlynges is damp-
nable.

(9) ¶ And forther-ouer vnderstood
wel that thise conquerours or tirauntz
maken ful ofte thralles of hem that
been born of as roial blood as been
they that hem conqueren. (o) ¶ This 90
name of thraldom was neuere erst
kowth, til that Noe seyde that his
sone Canaan sholde be thral to hise
bretheren for his synne. (1) What
seye we thanne of hem that pilen
and doon extorcions in hooly
chirche? (2) ¶ Certes, the swerd that

18969. in Exodi Ch., etc. [XX, 3—4]. 71. thurgh this E.Eg., th. his Ch., etc.
73. take they Ch., etc.; than Mercymenz Ch.Eg.Se.L.H.⁴; be3gl. 74. 75. Civitate dei Se.L.
(Gl.), f. H.⁴; 9^o: l. XIX (cap. 15). 76. quinto (5^o) Se.P.L.H.² (Sk.) [I. Mof. IX, 25f.].
77. disserued Ch.Eg.H.⁴ 78. of E., ouer Ch., etc. 81: Epist. 47. 83. Thynk E.Eg. (Sk.,
Gl.); cherles spryngeth E. (Sk., Gl.), f. Ch. 84. swich E.Eg., the same Se., etc., 3l. f.
Ch.H.⁴ 86. drede þe Eg., etc. 87. it is E., is Ch., etc. 89. thise E., f. Ch., etc.
90. Cherldom Ch.Eg.H.⁴

[I 767—775]

[I 775—784]

men yeuen first to a knyght, whan he is newe dubbed, signifieth that he sholde deffenden hooly chirche, and nat robben it ne pilen it, and who-so dooth is traitour to Crist. (3) ¶ And, as seith seint Augustyn, 'they been the deueles wolues that stranglen the sheep of Ihesu Crist, and doon worse than wolues.' (4) ffor soothly, whan the wolf hath ful his wombe, he
 95 stynteth to strangle sheep; (5) but soothly, the pilours and destroyours of Goddes hooly chirche ne do nat so; for they ne stynte neuere to pile.

(6) NOW, as I haue seyde, sith so is that synne was first cause of thraldom, thanne is it thus: that thilke tyme that al this world was in synne, thanne was al this world in thraldom and subieccioun. (7) ¶ But certes, sith the time of grace cam, God ordeyned that som folk sholde be moore heigh in estaat and in degree, and som folk moore lough, and that euerich sholde be serued in his estaat. (8) And therefore in somme contrees ther they byen thralles, whan they han turned hem to the feith, they maken hir(e) thralles free out of thraldom. (9) And therefore, certes, the lord oweth to his man that
 100 the man oweth to his lord. (o) The pope calleth hym-self seruante of the seruauntz of God; (i) but for as muche as the estaat of hooly chirche ne myghte nat han be, ne the commune profit myghte nat han be kept, ne pees and reste in erthe, but if God hadde ordeyned that somme men hadde hyer degree, and somme men lower: (2) therefore was souereyntee ordeyned to kepe and mayntene and deffenden hir(e) vnderlynges or hir(e) subgetz in resoun, as ferforth as it lith in hir power, and nat to destroyen hem ne confounde. (3) ¶ Wherefore I seye that thilke lordes that been lyk wolues, that

deuouren the possessionns or the catel of poure folk wrongfully, with-outen mercy or mesure, (4) they shul receyuen, by the same mesure that they han mesured to poure folk, the mercy of Ihesu Crist, but if it be amended.

¶ NOW comth deceit[e] bitwixe 0
marchaunt and *marchant*. (6) ¶ And thou shalt vnderstonde that *marchandise* is in manye maneres; that oon is bodily, and that oother is goostly; that oon is honeste and leueful, and that oother is deshoneste and vnleueful. (7) Of thilke bodily *marchandise* that is leueful and honeste is this: that there-as God hath ordeyned that a regne or a contree is suffisaunt to hymself, (8) thanne is it honeste and leueful that of habundaunce of this contree [that] men helpe another contree that is moore nedy. (9) And therefore ther moote been *marchantz* to bryngen fro that o contree to that oother hir(e) *marchandises*. (o) ¶ That oother *marchandise*, that men haunten with fraude, and trecherie, and deceit[e], with lesynges and false othes, is cursed and dampnable.

(1) *Espiritueel* *marchandise* is proprely *Symonye*, that is, ententif desir to byen thyng *espiritueel*, that is: thyng that aperteneth to the seintuarie of God and to cure of the soule. (2) ¶ This desir, if so be that a man do his diligence to parfournen it, al be it that his desir ne take noon effect, yet it is to hym a deedly synne, and if he be ordred, he is irreguleer. (3) Certes, *Symonye* is cleped of Simon Magus, that wolde han boght, for temporeel catel, the yifte that God hadde yeuen by the *Hooly Goost* to seint Peter and to the Apostles. (4) And therefore vnderstood that bothe he that selleth and he that beyeth thynges

18995. holy chirche(s) godes Ch.Eg.Se., good(es) of h. church P.L.H.²H.⁴ 97. be serued in his estate & in (his) degre Se.P.L.H.²H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 98. byen E.Ch., ben Eg., etc. 19001. that som man Ch.Eg.H.⁴ o8. [that] f.H.⁴ (Wr. M.). 09. *marchaundyse* G., etc.

[1 784—792]

[1 793—801]

espirituels been cleped Symonyals; (5) be it by catel, be it by procuryng, or by fleshly preyere of hise freendes—fleshly freendes, or espiritueel freendes.

(6) ¶fleshly in two maneres: as by kynrede or othere freendes; soothly, if they praye for hym that is nat worthy and able, it is Symonye, if he take he benefice; and if he be worthy and able, ther nys noon. (7) ¶That oother manere is, whan a man or woman preyen for folk to auuncen hem oonly for wikked fleshly affection that they han vn-to the persone, and that is foul Symonye. (8) ¶But certes, in seruice for which men yeuen thynges espirituels vn-to hir seruantz, it moot been vnderstonde þat the seruice moot been honeste, and elles nat; (9) and eek that it be with-outen bargaynyng, and that the persone be able. (o) ffor, as seith Seint Damascie:

¶'Alle the synnes of the world, at regard of this synne, arn as thyng of noght; for it is the gretteste synne that may be, after the synne of Lucifer and Antecrist. (1) ffor by this synne God forleseth the chirche and the soule that he boghte with his precious blood, by hem þat yeuen chirches to hem that been nat digne; (2) for they putten in theues that stelen the soules of Ihesu Crist, and destroyen his patrimoyne. (3) By swiche vndigne preestes and curates han lewed men the lasse reuerence of the sacramentz of hooly chirche; (4) and swiche yeueres of chirches putten out the children of Crist, and putten in-to the chirche the deuiles owene sone.

(5) They sellen the soules that lambes sholde kepen to the wolf, that strangleth hem. (6) And therefore shul they neuere han part of the pasture

of lambes, that is the blisse of heuene.

(7) NOW comth hasardrie with hise apurtenaunces, as tables and rafles, of which comth deceit[e] false othes, chidynges, and alle raunyes; (8) blasphemynge and reneyng of God, and hate of hise neighebores, wast of goodes, mysspendynge of tyme, and somtyme manslaughter. (9) Certes, hasardours ne mowe nat been with-outen greet synne. (o) Of auarice comen eek lesynges, thefte, fals witnessse, and false othes. (1) And ye shul vnderstonde that these been grete synnes and expres agayn the comaundementz of God, as I haue seyde. (2) ¶fals witnessse is in word and eek in dede; ¶in word, as for to bireue thy neighebores goode name by thy fals witnessyng, or bireuen hym his catel or his heritage by thy fals witnessyng; (3) whan thou for ire, or for meede, or for enuye berest fals witnessse, or accusest or excusest hym by thy fals witnessse, or elles excusest thy-self falsly. (4) Ware yow, questmongeres and notaries! ¶Certes, for fals witnessyng was Susanna in ful gret sorwe and payne, and many another mo. (5) ¶The synne of thefte is eek expres agayns Goddes heeste, and in two maneres, corporeel or espiritueel. (6) Corporeel, as for to take thy neighebores catel agayn his wyl, be it by force or by sleighte, be it by met or by mesure; (7) by stelyng eek of false enditementz vpon hym, and in borwyng of thy neighebores catel, in entente neuere to payen it agayn, and semblable thynges. (8) Espiritueel thefte is sacrilege, that is to seyn: hurtyng of hooly thynges, or of thynges sacred to Crist

19015. fleshly freendes f. Ch.Se.P.L. 17. whan man Ch.H.⁴, wh. men G.Eg.; a woman Se.P.L., women G.Eg. 18. thyng espirituel Ch.Eg., 3l. f. H.⁴ 20. thyng E.G.Se., a th. Ch., etc.; Antecrist E.H.⁴, of A. Ch., etc. 27: vgl. 12528ff. 29. synne (pe) whiles they haunten that craffte Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). [Edt?] 30. fals witnessse E.G.Se., & fals w. Ch., etc. 35. and in E.G., in Eg., & that in Ch., etc. (Sk.); or E.Ch.G.Eg., and Se., etc. (Sk., Gl.); spirituel Ch., etc. 36. Corporeel H.⁴, f. E., etc. 37. it agayn E.G., f. Ch., etc.

[I 802—810]

[I 810—818]

in two maneres: by reson of the hooly place, as chirches or chirche-hawes; (9) for which euery vileyns synne that men doon in swiche places may be cleped sacrilege, or euery violence in the semblable places. (o) ¶ Also they that withdrawen falsly the rightes that longen to hooly chirche. (1) And pleylny and generally, sacrilege is to reuen hooly thyng fro hooly place, or vnholly thyng out of hooly place, or hooly thyng out of vnholly place.

¶ *Releuacio**) *contra peccatum Auaricie.*

(2) NOW shul ye vnderstonde that the releeyunge of *auarice* is *Misericorde* and *pitee* largely taken; and men myghten axe why that *misericorde* and *pitee* is releeyunge of *auarice*?

(3) ¶ Certes, the *auaricious* man sheweth no *pitee* ne *misericorde* to the nedeful man; (4) for he deliteth hym in the kepynge of his tresor, and nat in the rescowynge ne releeyunge of his euene-cristene, and therefore speke I first of *misericorde*. (5) ¶ Thanne is *misericorde*, as seith the Philosphre, a vertu by which the corage of man is stired by the mysese of hym that is mysessed. (6) Vpon which *misericorde* folweth *pitee* in parfournynge of charitable werkes of *misericorde*. (7) And certes, thise thynges moeuen a man to *misericorde* of Ihesu Crist, that he yaf hym-self for oure gilt, and suffred deeth for *misericorde*, and forgaf vs oure originale synnes, (8) and therby relessed vs fro the peynes of helle, and amenused the peynes of Purgatorie by penitence, and yeueth grace wel to do, and atte laste the blisse of heuene. (9) The speses of *misericorde* been: as for to lene and for to yeue, and to foryeuen and re-

lesse, and for to han *pitee* in herte, and compassioun of the meschief of his euene-cristene, and eek to chastise there-as nede is. (o) ¶ Another manere of remedie agayns *auarice* is resonable largesse; but soothly, heere bihoueth the consideracioun of the grace of Ihesu Crist and of hise temporeel goodes, and eek of the goodes perdurables that Crist yaf to vs; (1) and to han remembrance of the deeth that he shal receyue—he noot whanne, where, ne how—, and eek that he shal forgon al that he hath, saue oonly that he hath despended in goode werkes.

(2) ¶ But for as muche as som folk been vnmesurable, men oughten eschue fool-largesse, that men clepen wast. (3) ¶ Certes, he that is fool-large ne yeueth nat his catel, but he leseth his catel. (4) Soothly, what thyng that he yeueth for veyne-glorie, as to mynstrals and to folk for to beren his renoun in the world, he hath synne ther-of, and noon almesse. (5) Certes, he leseth foule his good that ne seketh, with the yifte of his good, no-thing but synne. (6) He is lyk to an hors that seketh rather to drynken drouy or trouble water than for to drynken water of the clere welle. (7) And for as muchel as they yeuen, ther-as they sholde nat yeuen, to hem aperteneth thilke malisoun that Crist shal yeuen at the day of doome to hem that shullen been dampned.

¶ *Sequitur de gulâ.*

(8) After *auarice* comth Glotonye, which is expres eek agayn the comandement of God. (9) ¶ Glotonye is vnmesurable appetit to ete or to drynke, or elles to doon ynogh to the vnmesurable appetit and desordeynee co-

19040. Also they] bat oþer maner is as þo H.⁴ [verb.? Bgl. b. fr̃. Text.] *) Releuacio E.G., Remedium Ch.Eg.Se.H.⁴, f. P.L. 47. thynges E.G., f. Ch., etc.; to the Misericorde Ch.P.L.H.⁴; he E.G., f. Ch., etc. 49. & eke for to foryeue (yeue Ch.) Ch.Se.L.H.⁴, f. P.; to chastise E.G., to f. Ch., etc. 50. to vs E.G., vs Ch., etc. 51. and to han E.G., & eke to h. Ch., etc.; where ne how E.G., f. Ch., etc. 54. ther-of E.G., f. Ch., etc.

[I 819—828]

[I 828—836]

60 ueitise to eten or to drynke. (o) ¶ This synne corrupped al this world, as is wel shewed in the synne of Adam and Eue. (1) ¶ Looke eek what seith seint Paul of glotonye! ¶ 'Manye,' seith seint Paul 'goon of whiche I haue ofte seyde to yow, and now I seye it wepynge, that been the enemys of the croys of Crist; (2) of whiche the ende is deeth, and of whiche hir wombe is hir god, and hir glorie in confusioun of hem that so deuouren erthely thynges.' (3) ¶ He that is vsaunt to this synne of glotonye, he ne may no synne withstonde; he moot been in seruage of alle vices, for it is the deuyles hoord ther he hideth hym and resteth. (4) ¶ This synne hath manye speces. ¶ The firste is dronkenesse; that is the horrible sepulture of mannes resoun, and therefore, whan a man is dronken, he hath lost his resoun, and this is deedly synne. (5) ¶ But soothly, whan that a man is nat wont to strong drynke, and perauenture ne knoweth nat the strengthe of the drynke, (6) or hath feblesse in his heed, or hath trauailed, thurgh which he drynketh the moore, al be he sodeynly caught with drynke, it is no deedly synne, but venyal. (7) ¶ The seconde spece of glotonye is, that the spirit of a man wexeth al trouble, for dronkenesse bireueth hym the discrecioun of his wit. (8) ¶ The thridde spece of glotonye is, whan a man deuoureth his mete, and hath no rightful manere of etyng. (9) ¶ The fourthe is, whan, thurgh the grete habundaunce of his mete, the humours 70 in his body been destempred. (o) ¶ The fifthe is foryetelnesse by to muchel drynkyng, for which somtyme a man foryeteth er the morwe what he dide at euen, or on the nyght biforn.

(1) ¶ In oother manere been

distinct the speces of glotonye, after seint Gregorie. ¶ The firste is, for to ete biforn tyme to ete; ¶ the seconde is, whan a man get hym to delicaat mete or drynke; (2) ¶ the thridde is, whan men taken to muche ouer mesure; ¶ the fourthe is curiositee with greet entente to maken and apparailen his mete; ¶ the fifthe is, for to eten to gredily. (3) Thise been the fyue fyngres of the deuyles hand, by whiche he draweth folk to synne.

¶ *Remedium contra peccatum Gule.*

(4) Agayns glotonye is the remedie Abstinence, as seith Galien; but that holde I nat meritorie, if he do it oonly for the heele of his body. (5) Seint Augustyn wol[e] that abs- 75 tinence be doon for vertu and with pacience. (6) 'Abstinence,' he seith, 'is litel worth, but if a man haue good wil ther-to, and but it be enforced by pacience and by charitee, and that men doon it for Goddes sake, and in hope to haue the blisse of heuene. (7) ¶ The felawes of abstinence been: attemperaunce, that holdeth the meene in alle thynges; (8) ¶ eek shame, that eschueth al[le] deshonestee; ¶ suffisance, that seketh no riche metes ne drynkes, ne dooth no fors of to outrageous apparailynge of mete; (9) ¶ mesure also, that restreyneth by resoun the deslauee appetit of etyng; ¶ sobrenesse also, that restreyneth the outrage of drynke; (o) sparynge 80 also, that restreyneth the delicaat ese to sitte longe at his mete and softly, wherfore som folk stonden of hir owene wyl to eten at the lasse leyser.

¶ *Sequitur de Luxuria.*

(1) After glotonye thanne comth Lecherie; for thise two synnes been

19061. loo Ch.Eg.Se.P.L. [Phil. III, 18—19; vgl. 12467 ff.]. 62. deuouren] sauereu P.L.H.⁴ (Sk.). 63. f.H.⁴ 64: vgl. 12496 ff.; sepulcre Ch.P.L. 70. forȝete fulnesse G.Eg.Se., þe Idilnes H.⁴ 72: vgl. 18582. 74. the heele E.G.P. (help) L.H.⁴, hele Ch.Eg.Se. (helthe); the body Ch.G.Eg.Se

[I 837—845]

[I 845—854]

so ny cosyns, that ofte tyme they wol nat departe. (2) God woot, this synne is ful displeaunt thyng to God; ffor he seyde hym-self, 'Do no lecherie,' and therefore he putte grete peynes agayns this synne in the olde lawe: (3) ¶ If womman-thral were taken in this synne, she sholde be beten with staues to the deeth. (4) And if she were a gentil-womman, she sholde be slayn with stones. (5) And if she were a bisshoppes doghter, she sholde be brent, by Goddes comandement. (6) ¶ fforther-ouer, by the synne of lecherie God dreynte al the world at the diluge. (7) And after that he brente .v. citees with thonder-leyt, and sank hem in-to helle.

(8) NOW lat vs speke thanne of thilke stynkyng synne of lecherie that men clepe Auowtrie of wedded folk, that is to seyn: if that oon of hem be wedded, or elles bothe, (9) ¶ Seint Iohn seith that 'auowtiers shullen been in helle in a stank brennyng of fyr and brymston for the stynk of hir ordure. (o) Certes, the brekyng of this sacrament is an horrible thyng; it was maked of God hym-self in *Paradys*, and conformed by Ihesu Crist, as witnesseth Mathew (19⁰) in the gospel: (1) 'A man shal lete fader and mooder, and taken hym to his wif, and they shullen be two in o flesh.' (2) ¶ This sacrament bitokneth the knyttynge togidre of Crist and of hooly chirche. (3) And nat oonly that God forbad auowtrie in dede, but eek he comanded that thou sholdest nat coueite thy neighebores wyf. (4) ¶ 'In this heeste,' seith seint Augustyn, 'is forboden alle manere coueitise to doon lecherie.' (5) ¶ Lo, what seith seint Mathew (.v.⁰) in the

gospel! That 'who-so seeth a womman to coueitise of his lust, he hath doon lecherie with hir(e) in his herte.' (6) Heere may ye seen that nat oonly the dede of this synne is forboden, but eek the desir to doon that synne. (7) This cursed synne anoyeth greuouliche hem that it haunten, ¶ and first to hir soule; for he obligeth it to synne and to peyne of deeth that is perdurable. (8) Vn-to the body anoyeth it greuouly also; for it dreyeth hym, and wasteth, and shent hym; and of his blood he maketh sacrifice to the feend of helle; it wasteth his catel and substaunce. (9) And certes, if it be a foul thyng a man to waste his catel on wommen, yet it is a fouler thyng, whan that for swich ordure wommen dispenden vp-on men hir catel and substaunce. (o) ¶ This synne, as seith 00 the prophete, bireueth man and womman hir goode fame and al hir honour, and it is ful plesaunt to the deuyl; for therby wynneth he the mooste partie of this world. (1) And right as a marchant deliteth hym moost in chafare that he hath moost moost aantage of, right so deliteth the fend in this ordure.

(2) This is that oother hand of the deuyl with .v. fyngres to cacche the peple to his vileynye. (3) ¶ The firste fynger is the fool lookynge of the fool womman and of the fool man, (4) that sleeth, right as the basilikok sleeth folk by the venym of his sighte; for the coueitise of [e]yē folweth the coueitise of the herte. (5) ¶ The se- 05 conde fynger is the vileyns touchynge in wikked[e] manere. (6) And therefore seith Salomon that 'who-so toucheth and handleth a womman, he fareth lyk hym that handleth the scorpioun, þat

19082. thyng f. Ch.Se.L. 85: III. Mof. XXI, 9. 87. leyt E.Eg.H.⁴, lyght Ch., etc. 89. in a stank E.Ch., in a stark G., in a stynk Eg.P., in a stynkyng Se.L., in watir H.⁴, in fire for her (þe) lecherie / in brymstone Eg.Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.) [f. Offens. XXI, 8]. 90. gospel 19: nur Ch. (Randnote E.) [l. c. B. 5]. 95. V. (quinto capitulo) Ch.Se.P.L. [Randnote E] (B. 28). 97. greuouly Ch., etc. 98. wastith hym G., etc. 19102: vgl. 19073. 04. the eyen Ch.Se.P.L. 06: vgl. Epr. VI, 29.

[I 854—864]

[I 865—874]

styngeth and sodeynly sleeth thurgh his enuenymynge; (7) as who-so toucheth warm pych, it shent hise fyngres. (8) The thridde is foule wordes, that fareth lyk fyr, that right anon brenneth the herte. (9) ¶ The fourthe fynger is the kysynge, and trewely, he were a greet fool that wolde kisse the mouth of a brennyng ouene or of a fourneys. (o) And moore fooles been they that kissen in vileynye; for that mouth is the mouth of helle.

(1) And namely thise olde dotardes holours, yet wol they kisse, though they may nat do, and smatre hem.

(2) Certes, they been lyk to houndes; for an hound, whan he cometh by the roser or by othere *bushes*, though he may nat pisse, yet wol[e] he heue vp his leg, and make a contenance to pisse. (3) And for that many man weneth that he may nat synne for no likerousnesse that he dooth with his wyf, certes that opinion is fals. (4) God woot, a man may sleen hym-self with his owene knyf, and make hym-seluen dronken of his owene tonne. (5) Certes, be it wyf, be it child, or any worldly thyng that he loueth biforn God, it is his mawmet, and he is an ydolastre.

(6) ¶ Man sholde louen his wyf by discrecioun, patiently and atemprely, and thanne is she as though it were his suster. (7) ¶ The fifthe fynger of the deueles hand is the stynkyng dede of lecherie. (8) Certes, the .v. fyngres of glotonie the feend put in the wombe of a man, and with hise .v. fyngres of lecherie he gripeth hym by the reynes for to throwen hym in-to the fourneys of helle; (9) ther-as they shul han the fyr and the wormes that euere shul lasten, and wepyng and wailynge, sharp hunger and thurst, (o) and grymnesse of

deueles, that shullen al to-trede hem, with-outen respit and with-outen ende.

(1) ¶ Of lecherie, as I seyde, sourden diuerse spesces, ¶ as ffornicacioun, that is bitwixe man and woman that been nat married, and this is deedly synne and agayns nature.

(2) Al that is enemy and destruccioun to nature is agayns nature. (3) Parfay, the resoun of a man telleth eek hym wel that it is deedly synne, for as muche as God forbad lecherie. (4) And seint Paul yeueþ hem the regne that nys dewe to no wight but to hem that doon deedly synne. (5) Another

synne of lecherie is to bireue a mayden of hir maydenhede; for he that so dooth, certes, he casteth a mayden out of the hieste degree that is in this present lif, and bireueþ hir(e) thilke precious fruyt that the book clepeth 'the hundred fruyt.' (6) I ne kan seye it noon oother weyes in englissh, but in latyn it highte 'Centesimus fructus.'

(7) ¶ Certes, he that so dooth is cause of manye damages and vileynyes, mo than any man kan rekene; (8) right as he som-tyme is cause of alle damages that beestes don in the feeld, that breketh the hegge or the closure, thurgh which he destroyeth that may nat been restoord. (9) ¶ ffor certes, namoore may maydenhede be restoord than an arm that is smyten fro the body may retourne agayn to wexe. (o) She may

haue mercy, this woot I wel, if she do penitence; but neuere shal it be that she nas corrupt. (1) ¶ And al be it so that I haue spoken somewhat of auowtrie, it is good to shewen mo perils that longen to auowtrie, for to eschue that foule synne. (2) Auowtrie in latyn is for to seyn: Approchyng of oother mannes bed, thurgh which

19112. bushes Tw. u. a. Edd., beautees 5ff. (?); make kontenance Ch.P.L. 14: vgl. 9715 u. 19225 ff. 15. or child Ch.P.H.⁴, of ch. L. 16. A man Ch.Se.P.; as it Ch.Se.P.L.H.⁴ 20. grymlynesse Ch.Eg., gris(e)lynesse Se., etc. 23. hym eke Ch.P.L., eek f. Se.H.⁴ 24: f. I. 80r. VI, 9. 25. to bireue E.G.Se., for to b. Ch., etc. [vgl. Mattf. XIII, 8]. 28. brekyn G.Eg.Se.

[I 874—883]

[I 883—889]

tho that whilom weren o fleesh a-
bawndone hir bodyes to othere per-
sones.

(3) ¶ Of this synne, as seith the
wise man, folwen manye harmes;
¶ffirst brekyng of feith, and certes,
in feyth is the keye of Cristendom;

(4) and whan that feith is broken and
lorn, soothly Cristendom stant veyn
and with-uten fruyt. (5) ¶ This synne
is eek a thefte; for thefte generally
is for to reue a wight his thyng agayns
his wille. (6) ¶ Certes, this is the
fouleste thefte that may be, whan a
womman steleth hir body from hir
housbonde, and yeueth it to hir[e]
holour to defoulen hir(e), and steleth
hir soule fro Crist, and yeueth it to
the deuel. (7) This is a fouler thefte
than for to breke a chirche, and stele
the chalice. (8) ffor these auowtiers
breken the temple of God spiritually,
and stelen the vessel of grace, that is
the body and the soule; for which
Crist shal destroyen hem, as seith
Seint Paul. (9) ¶ Soothly, of this
thefte douted gretly Ioseph, whan
that his lordes wyf preyed hym of

vyleinye; (o) whan he seyde, 'Lo, my
lady! how my lord hath take to me
vnder my warde al that he hath in
this world, ne no-thing of hise thynges
is out of my power, but oonly ye,
that been his wyf. (1) And how sholde
I thanne do this wikkednesse and synne
so horribly agayns God and agayns
my lord? God it forbeede!' Allas!
al to litel is swich trouthe now y-founde!
(2) ¶ The thridde harm is the filthe
thurgh which they breken the coman-
dement of God, and defoulen the
auctour of matrimoyne, þat is Crist.
(3) ffor certes, in so muche as the
sacrement of mariage is so noble and

so digne, so muche is it gretter synne
for to breken it. (4) ffor God made
mariage in Paradys, in the estaat of
innocence, to multiplie man-kynde to
the seruice of God. (5) And therefore
is the brekyng moore greuouse, of
which brekyng comen false heires
ofte tyme, that wrongfully occupien
folkes heritages. (6) And therefore wol
Crist putte hem out of the regne of
heuene, that is heritage to goode folk.
(7) ¶ Of this brekyng comth eek ofte
tyme that folk vnwar wedden or syn-
nen with hir owene kynrede; (8) and
namely thilke harlottes that haunten
bordels of these foole wommen, that
mowe be likned to a commune gonge,
where-as men purgen hir ordure.
(9) ¶ What seye we eek of putours
þat lyuen by the horrible synne
of putrie, and constreyne wommen
to yelden to hem a certeyn rente of
hir bodily puterie, (o) ye, somtyme of
his owene wyf or child, as doon these
bawdes? Certes, these been cursed
synnes.

(1) ¶ Vnderstood eek that auowtrie
is set glady in the ten comandementz
bitwixe thefte and manslaughter, for
it is the gretteste thefte that may be;
for it is thefte of body and of soule.
(2) And it is lyk to homycide; for it
kerueth atwo, and breketh atwo hem
that first were makid o flessch, and
therefore, by the olde lawe of God,
they sholde be slayn. (3) But nathe-
lees, by the lawe of Ihesu Crist, that
is lawe of pitee, whan he seyde to
the womman that was founden in
auowtrie, and sholde han been slayn
with stones, after the wyl of the Iewes,
as was hir lawe: (4) 'Go', quod Ihesu
Crist, 'and haue namoore wyl to
synne,' or: wille namoore to do synne.

19135. generally to speke Ch.P.L.H.⁴ 38: I. Mor. III, 17. 40: I. Mor. XXXIX, 7—9.
41. horribly Ch.Eg.P.H.⁴ (Sk.), horrible E., etc. [vgl. 18777]. 42. Actour E. 44. staat Ch.Eg.Se.
45. the brekyng therof G.Se.P.L. (Sk.); the more Ch.G.Se.H.⁴ 48. foole Se.L., folk G.,
foule H.⁴ 49. to hem E.G., hem Ch., etc. 50. of f. Ch.P.L.H.⁴ 19151—19233. Ad.¹ für
He.; gladly f. Ad.G.Eg. 52. lyk to E.G., to f. Ad., etc. [III. Mor. XX, 10]. 53. is the
lawe Ad.Se.P.L. [306. VIII, 11]. 54. will to do synne Ad.P.L.

[I 890-897]

[I 898-905]

55 (5) Soothly, the vengeance of auowtrie is awarded to the peynes of helle, but if so be that it be destourbed by penitence.

(6) Yet been ther mo speses of this cursed synne, as whan that oon of hem is religious, or elles bothe, or of folk that been entred in-to ordre, as subdekne, or preest, or hospitaliers; (7) and euer the hyer that he is in ordre, the gretter is the synne. (8) ¶ The thynges that gretly agreggen hir synne is the brekyng of hir auow of chastitee, whan they receyued the ordre. (9) And forther-ouer, sooth is that hooly ordre is chief of al the tresorie of God, and his especial signe and mark of chastitee, to shewe that they been ioynd to chastitee, which that is moost precious lyf that is.

60 (o) And thise ordred folk been specially titled to God, and of the special meignee of God, for which, whan they doon deedly synne, they been the special traytours of God and of his peple. (1) ffor they lyuen of the peple to *prayen for the peple, and whil thei be suche traitours, her prayours availe nat to the poeple.* (2) Preestes been aungeles, as by the dignitee of hir mysterye; but for sothe seint Paul seith that 'Sathanas transformeth hym in an aungel of light.' (3) Soothly, the preest that hauntesth deedly synne, he may be likned to the aungel of derknesse transformed in the aungel of light; (4) he semeth aungel of light, but for sothe he is aungel of derknesse.

65 (5) ¶ Swiche preestes been the sones of Helie, as sheweth in the book of Kynges, that they weren the sones

of Belial, that is the deuel. (6) Belial is to seyn 'with-outen luge,' and so faren they; hem thynketh they been free, and han no iuge, namoore than hath a free bole that taketh which cow that hym liketh in the town. (7) So faren they by wommen; ffor right as a free bole is ynough for al a toun, right so is a wikked preest corrupcioun ynough for al a parisshe, or for al a contree. (8) Thise preestes, as seith the book, ne konne nat the mysterie of preesthode to the peple, ne God ne knowe they nat. (9) They ne holde hem nat apayd, as seith the book, of soden flessch that was to hem offred, but they tooke by force the flessch that is rawe. (o) ¶ Certes, so thise shrewes ne holden hem nat apayd of roosted flessch and sode flessch with which the peple fedden hem in greet reuerence, but they wole haue raw flessch of folkes wyues and hir doghtres. (1) And certes, thise wommen that consenten to hir harlotrie doon greet wrong to Crist, and to hooly chirche and alle halwes, and to alle soules; (2) for they bireuen alle thise hym that sholde worshipec Crist and hooly chirche, and preye for cristene soules. (3) And therfore han swiche preestes, and hir(e) lemmanes eek that consenten to hir lecherie, the malisoun of al the court cristene, til they come to amendement.

(4) The thridde spece of auowtrie is som-tyme bitwixe a man and his wyf, and that is, whan they take no reward in hir assemblynge but oonly to hir[e] fleshly delit, as seith seint Ierome; (5) and ne rekken of no- 75

19155. so be that E.G., f. Ad., etc. 56. subdekene or (f. G., & Se.L.) dekene or (& G.) preest G.Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 58. he hath receyued Ad.Eg., he receiueþ P.L. 59. soth it is Ad.Eg.Se.; tresorie E.Eg., tresour(e) Ad., etc. 61. ffor they — for the peple f. H.⁴, to (and Ad.) prayen — to the poeple f. E.G. [vgl. lat. Text]. 62. in Aungel Ad.Eg.L.H.⁴ [II. For. XI, 14]. 64. semyth an Aungel . . . is an a. Ad.Se.L. 65. Helie E. (auerf Belie), belial Ad.G., Belie Eg., etc. [I. Rön. XVIII, 18ff.]. 66. that thynken Ad., þay þynke H.⁴, hem þynken (þenke) Eg.P.L.; which Cow that] suche a C. as Ad.Eg., euery c., etc. G. 69. helde G. (Sk.); soden] suche Ad.Eg.; take Ad.G. 70. olde shrewes Ad.Eg.Se.; in] on Ad., with G.Se. 72. hym alle thes(e) Ad.Eg.Se. 73. cristen courte Ad.Eg.Se. 74. bitwixe E.G.H.⁴, betweene Ch., etc. [vgl. 9715].

[1 905—913]

[1 913—920]

thyng but that they been assembled; by cause that they been maried, al is good ynough, as thynketh to hem.

(6) But in swich folk hath the deucl power, as seyde the aungel Raphael to Thobie; for in hir assemblynge they putten Ihesu Crist out of hir herte, and yeuen hem-self to alle ordure.

(7) The fourthe spece is the assemblee of hem that been of hir kynrede, or of hem that been of oon affynyte, or elles with hem with whiche hir fadres or hir kynrede han deled in the synne of lecherie. (8) This synne maketh hem lyk to houndes, that taken no keep[e] to kynrede. (9) ¶ And certes, parentele is in two maneres, outhur goostly, or fleshly: goostly, or for to deelen with hise godsibbes. (o) ffor right so as he that engendreth a child is his fleshly fader, right so is his god-fader his fader espiritueel; (1) for which a womman may in no lasse synne assambelen with hir godsib than with hir owene fleshly brother.

(2) The fifthe spece is thilke abhomynable synne of which that no man vnnethe oghte speke ne write; natheles it is openly reherced in holy writ. (3) This cursednesse doon men and women in diuerse entente and in diuerse manere; but though that hooly writ speke of horrible synne, certes hooly writ may nat been defouled, namoore than the sonne that shyneth on the mixne.

(4) Another synne aperteneth to leccherie that comp in slepynge, and this synne cometh ofte to hem that been maydenes, and eek to hem that been corrupt. (5) And this synne men clepen Polucioun, that comth in IIIJ. maneres: (6) Somtyme of langwis-

syng of body, for the humours been to ranke and habundaunt in the body of man; (7) ¶ somtyme of infermetee, for the fieblesse of the vertu retentif, as phisik maketh mencion; ¶ somtyme for surfeit of mete and drynke; (8) ¶ and somtyme of vileyns thoughtes that been enclosed in mannes mynde whan he gooth to slepe, which may nat been with-oute synne; (9) for which men moste kepen hem wisely, or elles may men synnen ful greuously.

¶ *Remedium contra peccatum luxurie.*

NOW comth the remedie agayns 90
leccherie, and that is generally Chastitee and Continence, that restreyneth alle the desordeyne moeuynge that comen of the fleshly talentes. (1) And eue the gretter merite shal he han that moost restreyneth the wikkede eschawfynges of the ordure of this synne; (2) and this is in two maneres; that is to seyn: chastitee in mariage, and chastitee of widwehode. (3) NOW shaltow vnderstonde that matrimoyne is leefful assemblynge of man and of womman that receyuen, by vertu of the sacrament, the boond (4) thurgh which they may nat be departed in al hir lyf, that is to seyn: whil that they lyuen bothe. (5) This, as seith the 95
book, is a ful greet sacrament; God maketh it, as I haue seyde, in Paradys, and wolde hym-self be born in mariage. (6) And for to halwen mariage, he was at a weddyng, where-as he turned water in-to wyn, which was the firste miracle that he wroughte in erthe biforn hise disciples. (7) ¶ Trewe effect of mariage clenseth fornicacioun, and replenyseth hooly chirche of good lynage. (8) ffor that is the

19176. seith Ad.G.H.⁴ 79. eyther Ad.Eg.H.⁴, oipber P.; hise E.G., her Ad., etc. 80. spirituell fader Ad.Se. 83. 3rd in. f. Ad.G.P.L.H.⁴ 83. mixne] donge hille Ad.H.⁴ 85. IIIJ. E.Ad.G.Eg. (Gl.). 87. for (the) infirmite Ad.Eg.Se.P.L. 89. may] mowe Ad.Eg. 90. alle d. Ad.G.; moevyng ... commeth Ad.Se. 91. enshawfyng Ad.P., -es Se., eschewynges G., chawfynges Eg.; the ordure E.G., the f. Ad., etc. 92. in mariage E.G., of m. Ad., etc.

[I 920—927]

[I 928—936]

ende of mariage, and it chaungeth deedly synne in-to venial synne bitwixe hem that been ywedded., and maketh the hertes al oon of hem that been ywedded, as wel as the bodies.

(9) *This is* verray mariage, that was established by God er that synne bigan, whan natureel lawe was in his right poynt in Paradys; (o) and it was ordeyned that o man sholde haue but o womman, and o womman but o man, as seith Seint Augustyn, by manye resouns.

(1) ¶ffirst, for mariage is figured bitwixe Crist and holy chirche. (2) And that oother is, for a man is heued of a womman, algate by ordinaunce it sholde be so. (3) ffor if a woman hadde mo men than oon, thanne sholde she haue moo heuedes than oon, and that were an horrible thyng biforn God; (4) and eek a womman ne myghte nat plesse to many folk at oones. (5) And also ther ne sholde neuere be pees ne reste amonges hem, for euerich wolde axen his owene thyng. (6) ¶And forther-ouer, no man ne sholde knowe his owene engendrure, ne who sholde haue his heritage; (7) and the womman sholde been the lasse biloued fro the tyme that she were conioynt to many men.

(8) NOW comth how that a man sholde bere hym with his wif, and namely in two thynges; that is to seyn: in suffraunce and reuerence, as shewed Crist, whan he made first womman. (9) ffor he ne made hir(e) nat of the heued of Adam, for she sholde nat clayme to greet lordshipe.

(o) ffor ther-as the womman hath the maistrie, she maketh to muche desray; ther nedon none ensamples of this, the

experience of day by day oghte suffice.

(1) ¶Also certes, God ne made nat womman of the foot of Adam, for she ne sholde nat been holden to lowe; for she kan nat paciently suffre.

(2) But God made womman of the ryb of Adam, for womman sholde be felawe vn-to man. (3) Man sholde bere hym to his wyf in feith, in trouthe, and in loue; (4) as seith seint Paul that 'a man sholde louen his wyf as Crist loued hooly chirche, that loued it so wel, that he deyde for it': so sholde a man for his wyf, if it were nede.

¶Now how that a womman 15

sholde be subget to hir housbonde, that telleth seint Peter: ffirist in obedience. (6) ¶And eek, as seith the decree: a womman that is wyf, as

longe as she is a wyf, she hath noon auctoritee to swere, ne bere witnessse with-oute leue of hir housbonde, that is hir lord; algate he sholde be so by resoun. (7) ¶She sholde eek seruen hym in alle honestee, and been attempre of hir array. (8) I woot wel that they sholde setten hir entente to plesen hir housbondes, but nat by hir queyntise of array.

(9) ¶Seint Ierome seith that 'wyues that been apparailled in silk and in precious purple ne mowe nat clothen hem in Ihesu Crist.' What seith seint Iohn eek in this matere? (o) Seint 20 Gregorie eek seith that 'no wight seketh precious array but oonly for veyne-glorie, to been honoured the moore biforn the peple.' (1) It is a greet folye a womman to haue a fair array outward, and in hir-self foul inward. (2) ¶A wyf sholde eek be mesurable in lookynge, and in berynge, and in lawghynge, and dis-

19 199. This is f. E.G. 19 200. woman sholde haue but Ad.Se. 02. heued E.G., hede Ad., etc.; id. 03. heuedes (3l. f. Ad.); 09. heued E.Eg. 07. conioynt E.Eg., coniuncte Ad., ioyned H.⁴, comeynt G., commytte P., comune Se.L. 10. defray Ad., disaray Se., etc.; of day E.Eg.H.⁴, of f. Ad., etc.; to suffice Ad., I-now s. G.Se. 13. crist lovith Ad.Se.L. 14. vgl. 9260 [Ep^h. V, 25]. 15. subiecte Ad.G.Se., etc. [I. Petr. III, 1]. 16. that is a wiff Ad.H.⁴, f. Se.P.L.; bere E.G.P., to b. Ad., etc. 19. Loo what Ad., loke what Eg.Se.H.⁴, 3l. f. P.L. [Djfenb. XVII, 4; XVIII, 16]. 22. in hir dedes Ad.Se.

[I 937—943]

[I 944—953]

creet in alle hir(e) wordes and hir(e) dedes. (3) And abouen alle worldly thyng, she sholde louen hir housbonde with al hir herte, and to hym be trewe of hir body. (4) ¶ So sholde an housbonde eek be to his wyf; for sith that al the body is the housbondes, so sholde hir herte been, or elles ther is bitwixe hem two, as in that, no parfit mariage.

5 Thanne shal men vnderstonde that for thre thynges a man and his wyf fleshly mowen assemble. (6) ¶ The firste is in entente of engendrure of children to the seruice of God; ffor certes, that is the cause final of matrimoyne. (7) ¶ Another cause is, to yelden euerich of hem to oother the dette of hir(e) bodies; ffor neither of hem hath power ouer his owene body. (8) ¶ The thridde is for to eschewe leccherie and vileynye. ¶ The ferthe is for sothe deedly synne. (9) As to the firste, it is meritorie; the seconde also, for, as seith the decree, that she hath *merite of chastitee* þat yeldeth to hir housbonde the dette of hir body, ye, though it be agayn hir likyng and the lust of hir herte. (10) ¶ The thridde manere is venyal synne, and, trewely, scarsly may ther any of thise be withoute venial synne, for the corrupcion and for the delit. (11) ¶ The fourthe manere is for to vnderstonde, if they assemble oonly for amorous loue, and for noon of the foreseyde causes, but for to accomplice thilke brennyng delit—they rekke neuere how ofte—: soothly it is deedly synne; (2) and yet with sorwe somme folk wol peynen hem moore to doon than to hir appetit suffiseth.

(3) The seconde manere of chastitee is for to been a clene wydewe, and eschue the embracynges of man, and desiren the embracynge of Ihesu Crist. (4) Thise been tho þat han been wyues, and han forgoon hir(e) housbondes, and eek wommen þat han doon leccherie, and been releued by penitence. (5) And certes, 35 if þat a wyf koude kepen hir(e) al chaast by licence of hir housbonde, so þat she yeue neuere noon occasion þat he agilde, it were to hire a greet merite. (6) ¶ Thise manere wommen þat obseruen chastitee in clothyng and in contenance, & been abstinent in etyng and drynkyng, in spekyng, and in dede, (7) they been the vessel or the boyste of the blissed Magdelene, þat fulfilleth hooly chirche of good odour.

(8) The thridde manere of chastitee is virginitee, and it bihoueth þat she be hooly in herte, and clene of body, thanne is she spouse to Ihesu Crist, and she is the lyf of angesles. (9) She is the preisyng of this world, and she is as thise martirs in egalitee; she hath in hir(e) that tonge may nat telle, ne herte thynke. 40 (10) Virginitee baar oure Lord Ihesu Crist, and virgine was hym-selue.

(1) Another remedie agayns leccherie is specially, to withdrawen swiche thynges as yeue occasion to thilke vileynye, as ese, etyng and drynkyng; (2) for certes, whan the pot boyleth strongly, the beste remedie is to withdrawe the fyr. (3) ¶ Slepynge longe in greet quiete is eek a greet norice to leccherie.

(4) ¶ Another remedie agayns leccherie is, þat a man or a woman

19223. thyng E.Eg.Se., thynges Ad., etc. 25. men E.Eg.H.⁴, ye Ad., we G., a man Se.P.L. 27. bodies E.G.Se., bodye Ad., etc.; ouer E., of Ad., etc. 29. merite of chastitee f. E. 30. ther E., f. Ad., etc.; of f. E. 31. if E.G.P., as if H.⁴, and if L., as is Ad.Eg.Se. 233—356. Ch. fūr He. 35. yeue (yave) neuere E.Eg., zeue G.H.⁴, neuere yaff Se., nere Ch.P.L. 36. (chastitee) most be clene in herte as wele in body & in thought & mesurable (in clothyng) Ch.Se.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 37. they E.G., And thanne is she Ch., etc.; of good E.G., full of g. Ch., etc. [Matth. XXVI, 7 ff.; Joh. XII, 3 ff.]. 39. ne herte thynke E.G., f. Ch., etc.

[I 953—961]

[I 961—969]

eschue the compaignye of hem by
whiche he douteth to be tempted.
45 (5) ffor al be it so þat the dede is
withstonden, yet is ther greet tempt-
acioun. (6) Soothly a whit wal, al-
though it ne brenne noght fully by
stikynge of a candele, yet is the wal
blak of the leyt. (7) ¶fful ofte tyme
I rede þat no man truste in his owene
perfeccioun, but he be stronger than
Sampson, & hoolier than *David*, &
wiser than Salomon.

(8) ¶Now after þat I haue declared
yow, as I kan, the seuene deedly syn-
nes and somme of hir(e) braunches
and hir(e) remedies, soothly, if I koude,
I wolde telle yow the ten comande-
mentz. (9) But so heigh a doctrine
I lete to diuines; natheles I hope
to God they been touched in this
tretice, euerich of hem alle.

¶*Sequitur secunda pars Penitencie.*

50 (o) NOW for as muche. as the se-
conde partie of Penitence stant in Con-
fessioun of mouth/, as I bigan in the
firste chapitre, I seye., seint Au-
gustyn seith: (1) ¶‘Synne is every
word and every dede., and al þat
men coueiten agayn the lawe of Ihesu
Crist; (2) and this is for to synne. in
herte., in mouth., and in dede, by
thy fiue wittes., that been.: sighte.,
herynge., smellynge., tastynge/or sa-
uourynge., and feelynge.’ (3) Now is
it good to vnderstonde that. þat
agreggeth muchel euery synne.
(4) ¶Thow shalt considere/ what thow
art þat doost the synne/; wheither thou
be male or femele., yong/or oold.,
gentil or thral., free/or seruant.,

hool/or syk., wedded or sengle., or-
dred / or vnordred., wys or / fool.,
clerk/or seculer.; (5) if she be of 55
thy kynrede /bodily or goostly, or
noon/; if any of thy kynrede haue syn-
ned with hir(e) or noon/., and manye
mo thinges.

(6) ¶Another circumstaunce is
this.: wheither it be doon in fornic-
cioun or in auowtrie, or noon/, incest
or noon/., mayden, or noon., in ma-
nere of homicide/, or noon.; horrible
grete synnes, or smale., and how longe
thow hast continued in synne. (7) ¶The
thridde circumstaunce / is the
place/ ther thou hast do synne.,
wheither in oother mennes hous/or in
thyn owene., in feeld or in chirche/,
or in chirche-hawe., in chirche dedi-
caat/or noon. (8) ffor if the chirche
be halwed., and man or womman spille
his kynde in-with that place by wey
of synne, or by wikked temptacioun/,
the chirche is entredited; (9) and the
preest þat dide swich a vileynye, to
terme of al his lif /he sholde namore
synge masse., and if he dide., he sholde
doon deedly synne /at euery time þat
he so songe masse/. (o) ¶The fourthe 60
circumstaunce is., by whiche me-
diatours/, or by whiche messagers/;
as for enticement, or for consentement
to bere compaignye with felawshipe.;
for many a wrecche, for to bere com-
paignye, shal go to the deuyl of helle.
(1) Wherfore they þat eggen or con-
senten to the synne /been parteners of
the synne/, and of the *damnacioun* of
the synnere.

(2) ¶The fifthe circumstaunce.
is/, how manye tymes þat he hath

10245. dede is E.G., d. be Ch., etc. 46. leyt E.Eg.P.L., light Ch.G.Se., verb. H.⁴
47. David] Danyel E.G. (Gl.) [f. lat. Text]. 50. firste E.G., second Ch., f. Eg., etc.
53. that þat agreggeth (-en) E.G.Eg., the circumstaunces that aggreggen Ch., etc. (Gl.)
[ahnl. b. frs. Text]. 57. ther E.G., where as Se., where Ch., etc. 58. spillen P., spille (spilt)
Ch., etc., 3l. f. H.⁴; (entredited) til it be (were) reconciled by the bysshope Ch.Se.P.L.H.⁴
(Sk., Gl.), f. E.G.Eg. 59. (the preest) sholde be entredited (þat) Ch.P.L.H.⁴, if he were
a pr. (that) Se.; so E.G., f. Ch., etc. 60. or by whiche E., or be sweche G., as by which
H.⁴, as by Ch., etc.; as for E.G.Eg.Se., or for Ch., etc.; shal E., wol(e) Ch., etc. (Sk., Gl.).
61. wherfore E.G., for Ch., etc.; damnacioun] temptacioun E.G. [lat.: damnationis].
62. circumstaunce E.G., f. Ch., etc.

[I 970—979]

[I 979—988]

synned/, if it be in his mynde/, and how ofte þat he hath falle. (3) ffor he þat ofte falleth in synne., he despiseth the mercy of God, and encreaseth hys synne, and is vnkynde to Crist., and he wexeth the moore fieble to withstonde synne, and synneth the moore lightly/. (4) And the latter ariseth/, and is the moore eschew for to shryuen hym/, namely /to hym 55 þat is his confessour/. (5) ffor which that folk/, whan they falle agayn in hir olde folies., outhur they forleten hir olde confessours al outrely., or elles they departen hir shrift in diuerse places. (6) But soothly/, swich departed shrift deserueth no mercy of God of hise synnes. (7) ¶ The sixte circumstaunce/is, why þat a man synneth as by temptacioun, and if hym-self procure thilke temptacioun/, or by the excitynge of oother folk.; (8) or if he synne with a womman by force or by hir owene assent; or if the womman, maugree hir hed, hath been aforced, or noon. (9) This shal she telle.: ffor coueitise/, or for pouerte., and if it was hir procurynge, or noon/, 70 and swiche manere harneys. (o) ¶ The seuenthe circumstaunce/is/, in what manere he hath doon his synne/, or how þat she hath suffred þat folk han doon to hir(e). (1) And the same shal the man telle pleylny with alle circumstaunces., and wheither he hath synned with comune bordel-wommen, or noon; (2) or doon his synne in hooly tymes, or noon., in fastyng(e) tymes, or noon., or biforn his shrifte., or after his latter shrifte.; (3) and hath per-aunture /broken ther-fore his penance enioyned.; by whos help(e) and whos conseil., by sorcerie or craft.—al moste be toold. (4) ¶ Alle thise

thynges., after þat they been grete or smale, engreggen the conscience of man. (5) And eek the preest þat is 75 thy iuge may the better been auysed of his iuggement in yeuyng(e) of thy penaunce/, and that is after thy contricioun/. (6) ffor vnderstond wel þat, after tyme þat a man hath defouled his baptesme by synne., if he wole come to saluacioun., ther is noon other wey /but by penitence and shrifte and satisfaccioun; (7) and namely by the two, if ther be a confessour /to which he may shriuen hym/, and the thridde, if he haue lyf to parfournen it.

(8) Thanne shal man looke and considere /þat, if he wole maken a trewe and a profitable confessioun, ther moste be IIIj. condiciouns. (9) ¶ ffirst it moot been in sorweful bitterness of herte., as seyde the kyng Ezechiel to God/., 'I wol remembre me alle the yeres of my lif in bitterness of myn herte.' (o) This condi- 80 cioun of bitterness hath fyue signes: ¶ The firste is/, þat confessioun moste be shamefast., nat for to couere ne hyden his synne/; for he hath agilt his God and defouled his soule/. (1) And ther-of seith seint Augustyn, ¶ 'The herte trauailleth for shame of his synne/;' and for he hath greet shamefastnesse/, he is digne to haue greet mercy of God. (2) ¶ Swich was the confessioun of the publican, þat wolde nat heuen vp hise [e]yën to heuene/, for he hadde offended God of heuene/; for which shamefastnesse /he hadde anon the mercy of God. (3) And ther-of seith seint Augustyn/. that swich shamefast folk 'been next foryeuenesse and remissioun.' (4) Another signe /is humylitee in confessioun., of which

19264. and namely Ch., etc.; þat is E.G.Eg., that hath been Ch., etc. 67. by whiche t. Ch.P.L.H.⁴ (Sk., Gl.). 71. And (of P.L.) f. Ch.H.⁴ 72. fastyng tyme G.Eg.H.⁴, f. Ch. 76. that tyme G., the t. Eg.Se.L.H.⁴; & be (by) satisfaccioun Ch.Eg.Se.P.H.⁴ 78. & profitable Ch.Se.L. 79. Ezekias Sk., Hezekiah Gl. (Note) [3ef. XXXVIII, 15; vgl. 18208]. 80. for he E.G., but for he Ch., etc. 81. ther-of E., here of Ch., etc. (Sk.). 82. Puplican E.Se.L. (Gl.) [f. 2uf. XVIII, 13]. 83. ther-of E.G., þere H.⁴, therefore Ch., etc. 84. in E.G., of Ch., etc. [I. Petr. V, 6].

[I 988—997]

[I 997—1004]

85 seith seint Peter, 'Humbleth yow vnder the myght of God/.' (5) The hond of God is myghty in confessioun, for ther-by / God foryeueth thee thy synnes; for he allone hath the power/. (6) And this humylitee shal been in herte and in signe outward.; for right as he hath humylitee to God in his herte, right so sholde he humble his body outward to the preest /pat sit in Goddes place. (7) ffor which in no manere—sith pat Crist is souereyn, and the preest meene and mediatour bitwixe Crist and the synnere., and the synnere is the laste., by wey of resoun,—(8) thanne sholde nat the synnere sitte as heighe as his confessour/, but knele biforn hym /or at hise feet, but if maladie destourbe it/. (9) ffor he shal nat taken keep[e]. who sit there/, but in whos place he sitteth//.

90 (o) A man hath trespassed to a lord, and comth for to axe mercy and maken his accord., and set hym down anon by the lord/, men wolde holden hym outrageous, and nat worthy so soone for to haue remissioun ne mercy. (1) ¶ The thridde signe is., how pat thy shrift sholde be ful of teeris, if man may/; and if man may nat wepe with hise bodily [e]yën/, lat hym wepe in herte/. (2) Swich was the confession of seint Peter/; for after pat he hadde forsake Ihesu Crist/, he wente out, and weep ful bitterly. (3) ¶ The fourthe signe is/, pat he ne lette nat for shame to shewen his confessioun. (4) ¶ Swich was the confessioun of the Magdene/, pat ne spared, for no shame of hem pat weren atte feeste, for to go to oure Lord Ihesu Crist/, and biknowe to hym hir(e) synnes. (5) ¶ The fifthe

signe is/, that a man or a womman be obeisant to receyuen. the penaunce pat hym is enioyned for hise synnes; for certes, Ihesu Crist, for the giltes of a man/, was obedient to the deeth.

(6) ¶ The seconde condicion of veray confession /is/, pat it be hastily doon. (7) ffor certes/, if a man hadde a deedly wounde, euere the lenger pat he taried to warisshe hym-self/, the moore wolde it corrupte and haste hym to his deeth, and eek the wounde / wolde be the wors for to heele. (8) ¶ And right /so fareth synne /pat longe tyme is in a man vnshewed. (9) ¶ Certes, a man oghte hastily shewen hise synnes for manye causes., as for drede of deeth, pat cometh ofte sodenly., and no certeyn what tyme it shal be/, ne in what place. (o) And 00 eek the drecchyng of o synne drawep in another/; and eek the lenger pat he tarieth/, the ferther he is fro Crist. (1) And if he abide to his laste day/, scarsly may he shryuen hym/, or remembre hym of hise synnes/, or repenten hym /for the greuous maladie of his deeth. (2) And for as muche as he ne hath nat in his lyf herkned Ihesu Crist, whanne he hath spoken., he shal crie to Ihesu Crist at his laste day/, and scarsly wol he herkne hym. (3) ¶ And vnderstond /that this condicioun moste han foure thynges. (4) ¶ This shrift /moste be purueyed bifore and auysed., for wikked haste dooth no profit/; (5) and pat a man 05 konne shryue hym of hise synnes/, be it of pride, or of enuye, and so forth of the spesces and circumstances.; (6) and pat he haue comprehended in hys mynde the nombre and the greet-

19285. thy f. Ch.P.L.H.⁴ 86. sittyth G.Eg.Se.L.H.⁴ 88. distorbed Ch.Eg.P.H.⁴ 91. how E.G., f. Ch., etc.; man . . . man E.P.L., man . . . he G., men . . . he Ch.H.⁴, men . . . þey Eg., ye . . . ye Se.; his herte Ch.P.L.H.⁴, thin h. Se. 92. Mattf. XXVI, 75. 94. synnes E.G., synne Ch., etc. 95. or woman Ch.Eg.L.; for hise synnes: mut E.; a man E., man G., o man Ch., etc. 96. con E. 97. tarieth Ch.Eg.Se.P.L. 99. no certeyn E.G., not c. H.⁴, in no c. Ch., at no c. Eg., is in no c. Se.P.L. (Sk., Gl.). 19301. to E.G., till Eg., in-to Se., vn to Ch., etc.; repenten hym] hym f. Ch.G.Eg.H.⁴ 02. whanne — crist f. Ch.G. 05. forth of E., f. alle H.⁴, f. with Ch., etc.

[I 1005—1012]

[I 1012—1020]

nesse of hise synnes., and how longe þat he hath leyn in synne.; (7) and eek/þat he be contrit of hise synnes., and in stidefast purpos, by the grace of God, neuere eft to falle in synne.; (8) and eek/þat he drede and coun-trewaite hym-self/, þat he fle the oc-casiouns of synne to whiche he is en-clyned.

(9) ¶ Also/thou shalt shryue thee of alle thy synnes to o man/, and nat a parcel to o man, and a parcel to another./; (o) that is to vnder-stande, in entente/to departe thy confessioun/as for shame or drede.; for it nys but stranglyng of thy soule.

(1) ffor certes, Ihesu Crist is entierly al good; in hym nys noon imper-feccioun., and therefore/outher he foryeueth al parfitly/, or neuera-deel.

(2) ¶ I seye nat þat, if thou be as-signed to the penitauncer for certein synne., þat thou art bounde to shewen hym al the remenaunt of thy synnes, of whiche thou hast be shryuen to thy curaat., but if it like to thee of thyn humylitee/; this is no depart-ynge of shrifte. (3) Ne I seye nat, ther-as I speke of diuisioun of con-fessioun/, þat, if thou haue licence for to shryue thee to a discreet and an honeste preest/where thee liketh, and by licence of thy curaat., that thou mayst wel shryue thee to him of alle thy synnes. (4) But lat no blotte be bihynde/, lat no synne been vntoold/, as fer as thou hast remembraunce.

(5) And whan thou shalt be shryuen to thy curaat., telle hym eek alle the synnes þat thou hast doon/syn thou were last yshryuen/; this is no wik-ed entente of diuisioun of shrifte.

(6) ¶ Also the verray shrifte axeth

certeine condiciouns/; ¶ ffirst/, þat thou shryue thee by thy free wil, noght constreyned., ne for shame of folk/, ne for maladie., ne swiche thynges. (7) ffor it is resoun þat he þat trespasseth by his free wyl., that by his free wyl/he confesse his trespas., and þat noon oother man telle his synne but he hym-self. (8) Ne he shal nat nayte, ne denye his synne, ne wratthe hym agayn the preest for his amonestynge to leue synne.

(9) ¶ The seconde condicioun.is, þat thy shrift be laweful.; that is to seyn/: that thou þat shryuest thee/, and eek the preest þat hereth thy confessioun, been verrailly in the feith of hooly chirche.; (o) and that a man/ ne be nat despeired of the mercy of Ihesu Crist as Caym or Iudas. (1) ¶ And eek a man moot accusen hym-self/of his owene trespas, and nat another/; but he shal blame and wyten hym-self/& his owene malice of his synne/, and noon oother. (2) But nathelees/, if that another man be oc-casioun or encicere of his synne., or the estaat of a persone be swich/ thurgh which his synne is agregged.; (3) or elles þat he may nat pleynty shryuen hym/, but he telle the per-sone/with which he hath synned: (4) thanne may he telle., so þat his entente/ne be nat/to bakbite the per-sone/, but oonly to declaren his con-fessioun.

¶ Thou ne shalt nat eek/make 25 no lesynges in thy confessioun/ for humylitee, per-aventure/to seyn þat thou hast doon synnes of whiche that thou were neuere gilty. (6) ¶ ffor Seint Augustyn seith, ¶ 'If thou, by cause of thyn humylitee/, makest les-

19309. Also E.G.Eg., A. that Ch., etc. 11. or E.G.Eg., or elles Ch., etc. [vgl. 18398]. 12. shryuen to E. (of to) G.Se., sh. att L., sh. of Ch., etc. 13. ne sey(e) Ch.Eg.P.H.⁴; by licence E.G.Eg., by the l. Ch., etc. [vgl. 7677 ff.]. 17. that ... (he) confesse E.G., he mote (most) ... confesse Ch.Eg.Se., f. P.L.H.⁴; and þat E.G., f. Ch., etc.; telle E.G., shal(le) t. Ch., etc. 18. ne denye E.G.Se., or d. Ch., etc.; leue E.G., lete Ch., etc. 22. if that/ if Ch.P.L.; [2.] or E.G.Eg., or that Ch.H.⁴, or if Se., Or þat if P.L. 24. telle E.G., t. it Ch., etc.; ne be E.P.L., be Ch., etc. 25. whiche that E., whiche Ch., etc. 26. thyn E.G., f. Ch., etc.

[I 1020—1028]

[I 1029—1036]

ynges on thy-self/, though thow ne were nat in synne biforn/, yet artow thanne in synne thurgh thy lesynges.'

(7) ¶Thou most eek shewe thy synne/by thyn owene propre mouth/, but thow be woxe dymb/, and nat by no lettre.; for show that hast doon the synne, thou shalt have the shame therefore. (8) ¶Thow shalt nat eek peynte thy confessioun by faire subtile wordes to couere the moore thy synne. (9) ffor thanne bigilestow thy-self/, and nat the preest/.; thow most tellen it pleylnly/, be it neuere so foul ne so horrible.

30 (o) ¶Thow shalt eek shryue thee to a preest þat is discreet to conseil thee., and eek thou shalt nat shryue thee for veyne-glorie/, ne for ypocrisie/, ne for no cause/, but oonly for the doute of Ihesu Crist and the heele of thy soule. (1) Thow shalt nat eek renne to the preest so-deynly to tellen hym lightly thy synne/, as who-so telleth a iape or a tale/, but auyself and with greet deuocioun//. (2) And generally shryue thee ofte//.; if thou ofte falle/, ofte thou arise by confessioun. (3) And though thou shryue thee ofter than ones of synne /of which thou hast be shryuen., it is the moore merite. (4) And as seith seint Augustyn/, thow shalt haue the moore lightly relesyng/and grace of God/, bothe of synne and of payne. (5) And certes, oones a yeere atte leeste wey / it is laweful for to been housled.; for certes, oones a yeere /alle thynges renouellen.

35 (6) ¶Now haue I toold[e] you of verray confessioun.; that is the seconde partie of Penitence.

¶*Explicit secunda pars Penitencie et sequitur tercia pars eiusdem.*

(7) The thridde partie of Penitence is Satisfaccioun, and that stant moost generally in Almesse and in bodily payne. (8) ¶Now been ther thre manere of almesses: ¶Contricion of herte, where a man offreth hymself to God; ¶another is, to han pitee of defeaute of hise neighebores. (9) ¶And the thridde is in yeuyng of good conseil, goostly and bodily, where men han nede, and namely in sustenance of mannes foode. (o) ¶And tak keep 40 þat a man hath nede of these thynges generally; he hath nede of foode, he hath nede of clothyng and herberwe, he hath nede of charitable conseil and visityng in prison[e] and in maladie, and sepulture of his dede body. (1) And if thow mayst nat visite the nedeful with thy persone, visite hym by thy message and by thy yiftes. (2) These been generally almesses or werkes of charitee of hem that han temporeel riches or discrecioun in conseilynge. ¶Of these werkes shaltow heren at the day of doome.

(3) These almesses shaltow doon of thyne owene propre thynges, and hastily, and priuely, if thow mayst. (4) But nathelees, if thow mayst nat doon it priuely, thow shalt nat forbere to doon almesse though men seen it, so that it be nat doon for thank of the world, but oonly for thank of Ihesu Crist. (5) ffor, as witnesseth 45 Seint Mathew, capitulo .v.^o, 'A citee may nat been hyd that is set on a montayne, ne men lighte nat a lanterne, and put it vnder a busschel; but men sette it on a candle-stikke

19 327. therefore E.G., in confession, etc. Se.P.L., f. Ch.Eg.H.⁴ 29. pleylnly E., platly Ch., etc. 30. thee f. E. (Gl.). 35. for certes E.G., f. certainly Se., f. soothly Ch., etc. 36. you E., f. Ch., etc. — De satisfacione: überidyr. Se.P.L. vor 36 [vgl. Sk.]. 37. moost f. Ch.P.L.H.⁴ 38. defeaute E.G., the d. Eg., etc., f. Ch. 39. And E.G.Se., f. Ch., etc.; yeuyng of E.G.P., of f. Ch., etc., y. of f. H.⁴; conseil E.G.Eg., c. & comfort Ch., etc. (Gl.). 40. tak E.G.Eg., t. kep(e) Ch., etc.; in maladie E.G., in f. Ch., etc. 41. and by E.H.⁴, by f. Ch., etc. 42. general Ch., etc.; rechesse Ch.Eg., riches Se.L.H.⁴ 44. doon it] do Ch.Eg.H.⁴ 45. yeue light to E.G., lyghten Ch., etc. [Matth. V, 14—15].

[I 1037—1044]

[I 1045—1052]

to yeue light to the men in the hous.
(6) Right so shal youre light lighten
bifore men, that they may seen youre
goode werkes, and glorifie youre fader
that is in heuene.'

(7) ¶ Now, as to speken of bodily
payne, it stant in preyeres, in wak-
ynges, in fastynges, in vertuose tech-
inges of orisouns. (8) ¶ And ye shul
vnderstonde that orisouns or preyeres
is for to seyn a pitous wyl of herte,
that redresseth it in God, and ex-
presseth it by word outward, (9) to
remoeuen harmes, and to han thynges
espiritueel and durable, and somtyme
50 temporele thynges; (o) of whiche ori-
souns, certes, in the orison of the
Pater-noster hath Ihesu Crist en-
closed moost thynges. (1) ¶ Certes, it
is priuyleged of thre thynges in his
dignytee; for which it is moore digne
than any oother preyere, for that Ihesu
Crist hym-self maketh it; (2) and it
is short, for it sholde be koud the
moore lightly, and for to withholden
it the moore esily in herte, and helpen
hym-self the ofter with the orisoun.
(3) And for a man sholde be the lasse
very to seyn it, and for a man may
nat excusen hym to lerne it, it is so
short and so esy; and for it com-
prehendeth in it-self alle goode pre-
yeres. (4) The exposicioun of this hooly
preyere, that is so excellent and digne,
I bitake to thise maistres of theologie;
55 (5) saue thus muchel wol I seyn, that,
whan thou prayest that God sholde
foryeue thee thy giltes, as thou for-
yeuest hem that agilten to thee, be
ful wel war that thou be nat out of
charitee. (6) ¶ This hooly orisoun
amenueth eek venyal synne, and ther-
fore it aperteneth specially to peni-
tence.

(7) This preyere moste be trewely
seyd, and in verray feith, and that
men preyere to God ordinatly, & dis-
creetly, & deuoutly, and alwey a man
shal putten his wyl to be subget to
the wille of God. (8) ¶ This orisoun
moste eek been seyde with greet hum-
blesse and ful pure, honestly, and nat
to the anoyauce of any man or wom-
man. (9) It moste eek been continued
with the werkes of charitee. (o) It 60
auaylleth eek agayn the vices of the
soule; for, as seith seint Ierome,
'By fastyng been saued the vices of
the flessch, and by preyere the vices of
the soule.'

(1) ¶ After this thou shalt vnder-
stonde that bodily payne stant in
wakyng; for Ihesu Crist seith, 'Waketh
and preyeth, that ye ne entre in wik-
ked temptacioun.' (2) ¶ Ye shul vnder-
standen also that fastyng stant in
thre thynges: in forberyng of bodily
mete and drynke, and in forberyng
of worldly iolitee, and in forberyng
of deedly synne; (3) this is to seyn:
that a man shal kepen hym fro deedly
synne with al his myght.

(4) And thou shalt vnderstanden eek
that God ordeyned fastyng, and to
fastyng appertenen III. thinges:
(5) Largenesse to poure folk; gladnesse 65
of herte espiritueel, nat to been angry
ne anoyed, ne grucche for he fasteth;
and also resonable houre for to ete;
ete by mesure; (6) that is for to seyn:
a man shal nat ete in vntyme, ne sitte
the lenger at his table to ete for he
fasteth.

(7) ¶ Thanne shaltow vnderstonde
that bodily payne stant in dis-
cipline or techyng by word and
by writyng, or in ensample; (8) also
in weryng of heyres, or of stamyn,

19347. & in vertuose Ch.Se.P.L. 48. pitous wyl of herte: lat. pius affectus mentis.
51. for that] for Ch.H.⁴ 55. thou ne be Ch.G.Eg.P. 19356—19412. wieder Ad. für He.
58. honestee G., honesty P. (Gl.). 60. vices] vertues E., vertu G. 61. Matth. XXVI, 41.
62. also E.G., eke Se., f. P.L.H.⁴, ... stant also Ad.Eg. 63. 3l. f. Ad. 65. largesse H.⁴;
hour for to ete . ete by m. H.⁴ [3gl. lat. Text]; ete f. E., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 67. word and E.,
w. or Ad., etc. (Sk.); in ensample E.G.Eg., by e. Ad., etc.

[I 1052—1061]

[I 1061—1070]

or of haubergeons on hir naked flesh, for Cristes sake, and swiche manere penances. (9) But ware thee wel that swiche manere penaunces on thy flesh ne make thee nat or angry or anoyed of thy-self; (o) for better is to caste away thyn heyre than for to caste away the sikernesse of Ihesu Crist. (1) ¶ And therefore seith seint Paul, 'Clothe yow, as they that been chosen of God, in herte of misericorde, debonairetee, suffraunce, and swich manere of clothyng,' of whiche Ihesu Crist is moore apayed than of heyres, or haubergeouns, or hauberkes.

(2) ¶ Thanne is discipline eek in knokkyng of thy brest, in scourgyng with yerdes, in knelynges, in tribulacions; (3) in suffryng paciently wronges that been doon to thee, and eek in pacient suffraunce of maladies, or lesyng of worldly catel, or of wyf, or of child, or othere freendes.

(4) ¶ Thanne shaltow vnderstonde whiche thynges destourben penaunce, and this is in IIIJ. maneres; that is drede, shame, hope, and wanhope, that is desperation. (5) And for to speke first of drede, for which he demeth that he may suffre no penaunce. (6) Ther agayns is remedie for to thynke that bodily penaunce is but short and litel at regard of the payne[s] of helle, that is so crueel and so long, that it lasteth with-outen ende.

(7) ¶ Now again the shame that a man hath to shryuen hym, and namely thise ypocrites that wolden been holden so parfite, that they han no nede to shryuen hem—(8) ¶ agayns that shame sholde a man thynke that,

by wey of resoun, [that] he þat hath nat been shamed to doon foule thynges, certes, hym oghte nat been ashamed to do faire thynges, and that is confessiouns. (9) ¶ A man sholde eek thynke that God seeth and woot alle hise thoughtes and alle hise werkes; to hym may no-tyng been hyd ne couered. (o) Men sholden eek remembren hem of the shame that is to come at the day of doome to hem that been nat penitent, and shryuen in this present lyf. (1) ffor alle creatures in erthe and in helle shullen seen apertly al that they hyden in this world.

(2) ¶ Now for to speken of hope of hem that been necligent and slowe to shryuen hem, that stant in two maneres: (3) That oon is, þat he hopeth for to lyue longe, and for to purchacen muche richesse for his delit, and thanne he wol shryuen hym; and, as he seith, hym semeth thanne tymely nough to come to shrifte. (4) Another is Surquidrie that he hath in Cristes mercy. (5) ¶ Agayns the firste vice he shal thynke that oure lif is in no sikernes, and eek that alle the riches in this world ben in auenture, and passen as a shadwe on the wal. (6) And, as seith seint Gregorie, that it averteth to the grete rightwisnesse of God that neuere shal the payne stynte of hem þat neuere wolde withdrawen hem fro synne hir thanks, but ay continue in synne; (7) ffor thilke perpetuel wil to do synne shul they han perpetuel payne.

(8) ¶ Wanhope is in two maneres: the firste wanhope is in the mercy of Crist; that oother is þat they thynken þat they ne myghte nat

19369. war E.Se. (Sk., Gl.); thee nat or (ouyr G.) E.G., thyn herte bittyr or Ad., etc. (Sk.). 70. sikernes E.G., swetnes(se) Ad., etc. (Gl.). 71. is most Ad.Eg. [Sol. III, 12]. 73. thee E.G., hym Ad., etc.; or child(ren) Ad.Se.P.L. 75. demeth E., weneth Ad., etc. (Sk., Gl.). 76. peynes E. (Gl.); so crueel E.G., so f. Ad., etc. 78. [that] f. Wr. M.; shamed E.Ad., aschamyd G., etc. (Sk.); ouht nat to Ad.G.Se. 79. hise . . . hise E.G.P.L., thy . . . thy Ad., etc. 81. he hydeth Ad.Eg.H.* 82. the hope Ad.Eg.Se.P.L. (Sk., Gl.), f. G.H.*; that stant E.G., it st. Ad., etc., stant H.* 83. hym semeth (self) E.G., he may as hym s. Ad., etc.; tyme Ad.; to come E.G., for to c. Ad., com(e) Eg., etc. 84. of (the) surquiderye G., etc. 85: bgl. 9191. 88. ne E.Ad.P., f. G., etc.

[I 1071—1079]

[I 1079—1087]

longe perseuere in goodnesse. (9) ¶ The firste wanhope comth of that he demeth that he hath synned so greetly and so ofte, and so longe leyn in synne, that he shal nat be saued.

- 90 (o) ¶ Certes, agayns that cursed wanhope sholde he thynke that the passion of Ihesu Crist is moore strong for to vnbynde than synne is strong for to bynde. ¶ Agayns the seconde wanhope he shal thynke that, as ofte as he falleth, he may arise agayn by penitence. (2) And though he neuer so longe haue leyn in synne, the mercy of Crist is alwey redy to receiuen hym to mercy. (3) ¶ Agayns the wanhope þat he demeth that he sholde nat longe perseuere in goodnesse, he shal thynke þat the feblesse of the deuyl may no-thing doon, but if men wol suffren hym. (4) And eek he shal han strengthe of the help(e) of God, and of al hooly chirche, and of the proteccioun of aungels, if hym list.

- 95 ¶ Thanne shal men vnderstonde what is the fruyt of penaunce; and, after the word of Ihesu Crist, it is the endeles blisse of heuene. (6) Ther ioye hath no contrariouste of wo ne greuaunce; ther alle harmes been passed of this present lyf; (7) ther-as is the sikernes fro the peyne of helle; ther-as is the blisful compaignye that reioysen hem eueremo, euerich of othere ioye; (8) ther-as the body of man, that whilom was foul and derk, is moore cleer than the sonne; ther-as the body, that whilom was syk, freele, & fieble, and mortal, is immortal, and so strong, and so hool, that ther may no-thing apeyren it; (9) ther-as ne is neither hunger, thirst,

ne coold, but euery soule replenyssed with the sighte of the parfit knowynge of God. (o) ¶ This blisful regne may men purchase by pouerte espritueel, and the glorie by lowenesse, the plentee of ioye by hunger and thirst, and the reste by traaille, and the lyf by *deeth* and mortificacion of synne.

¶ *Here taketh the makere of this book his leue.**

(1) Now preye I to hem alle that herkne this litel tretys or rede, that, if that ther be any-thing in it that liketh hem, that ther-of they thanken oure Lord Ihesu Crist, of whom procedeth al wit and al goodnesse. (2) And if ther be any-thing that displese hem, I preye hem also that they arrete it to the defaute of myn vnkonnyng, and nat to my wyl, that wolde ful fayn haue seyde bettre if I hadde had konnyng. (3) ffor oure book seith, 'Al that is writen, is writen for oure doctrine,' and that is myn entente. (4) ¶ Wherefore I bi-seke yow mekely, for the mercy of God, that ye preye for me that Crist haue mercy on me, and foryeue me my giltes; (5) —and namely of my translacions and enditynges of worldly vanitees, the whiche I reuoke in my retracciouns: (6) ¶ *as* is the book of Troilus, ¶ the book also of fflame, the book of the XXV. Ladies, ¶ the book of the Duchesse, ¶ the book of saint Valentynes day, of the parlement of brid-des, (7) the tales of Caunterbury, thilke that sownen in-to synne, ¶ the book of the Leoun, and many another book, if they were in my remembrance, and many a song and many a leccherous lay, that Crist, for his grete mercy,

19393. febles(se) E.H.⁴, febylnesse, etc. Ad., etc.; if E.G.Se., f. Ad., etc. 95. fruyt] rewarde Ad., meryt G. 96. contrarie Ad., contrarite G.Eg.H.⁴ 97. evirmore Ad.Se.L., 3l. f. H.⁴ 19400. may] mowe Ad.Eg.; deeth and f. E. *) Preces de Chauceres H.⁴; Hic capit Auctor licenciam Ad., ähnl. L. 01—12. H.² für G. 03: vgl. 16225. 05. Schluß nach jüngerer Si. (18. 36.) Eg. 05—09: (soule) spätere Einschlebung? 06. XV ladies L., 29. l. H.⁴ (nynetene Sk.); Schluß nach Hatton Ms. für Se. (Co.). 07. that Crist E.H.² P.L., Crist Ad.Eg.², of þe which C.Hat.H.⁴

[1 1088—1090]

[1 1091—1092]

foryeue me the synne. (8) ¶ But of the translacion of Boece de consolacione, and oother bookes of Legendes of seintes, and omelies, and moralitee, and deuocioun: that thanke I oure Lord Ihesu Crist, and his blisful mooder, and alle the seyntes of heuene; (9) bisekyng hem þat they from hennes-forth vn-to my lyues ende sende me grace to biwayle my giltes, and to studie to the saluacioun of my soule—(o) and graunte me grace of verray penitence, confessioun, and satis-

faccioun to doon in this present lyf, (1) thurgh the benigne grace of hym þat is kyng of kynges and preest ouer alle preestes, that boghte vs with the precious blood of his herte; (2) so þat I may been oon of hem at the day of doome that shulle be saued. Qui cum patre &cetera.*)

¶ Heere is ended the book of the tales of Caunterbury compiled by Geffrey Chaucer of whos soule Ihesu crist haue mercy. Amen.

19408. blisful E.Ad.Hat., blessed P., etc., f. H.⁴; in heuyn Ad.Hat.H.⁴ 10. penaunce Ad.P.I.H.² 11. ouer E.Hat., off[f] Ad., etc. 12. may] mot Ad.Eg.²H.⁴ *) & spiritu sancto viuus & regnas deus Per omnia secula Amen Ad.P. (bið deus).

III. Anhang.

(Längere lateinische Randglossen.)

- 3u V. 4617. ¶ Ceptra Phoronei fratrum discordie Thebe ¶ flammam Phetontis Deucalionis Aque ¶ In stellis Priami species Audacia Turni ¶ Sensus Vlixheus Herculeusque vigor. [E.He.D.C.P.L.]
- V. 4715. ¶ Vnde Ptholomeus. libro I^o. capitulo 8^o. ¶ Primi motus celi duo sunt, quorum vnus est qui mouet totum semper ab Oriente in Occidentem / vno modo super orbis &c. Item aliter vero motus est qui mouet orbem stellarum currencium contra motum primum / videlicet / ab Occidente in Orientem super alios duos polos, &c. [Id.]
- V. 4729. ¶ Omnes concordati sunt / quod eleccionis sint debiles nisi in diuitibus / habent enim isti licet (?) debilitentur eorum eleccionis radicem. i. natiuitates eorum que confortant omnem planetam debilem in itinere &c. [huc (hec) philosophus C.P.L.] — Id.
- V. 4841. ¶ Nota de inopinato dolore ¶ Semper mundane leticie tristitia repentina succedit /. Mundana igitur felicitas multis amaritudinibus est respersa / extrema gaudii luctus occupat. Audi ergo salubre consilium / In die bonorum ne immemor sis malorum. [E.He.D.C.P.]
- V. 5191. ¶ Quid turpius ebrioso / cui fetor in ore tremor in corpore / qui promit stulta / prodit occulta / cuius mens alienatur / facies transformatur / nullum enim latet secretum ubi regnat ebrietas. — Id. [Zunocenz, De contemptu mundi, II, 19.]
- V. 5346. ¶ O extrema libidinis turpitude que non solum mentem effminat / set eciam corpus eneruat / semper sequuntur dolor & penitentia post &cetera. [Id., ibid.]
- V. 5552. ¶ A mane vsque ad vesperam mutabitur tempus / tenent tympanum & gaudent / ad sonum organi &cetera. [Id., ibid.]
- V. 5555. ¶ Quis vnquam unquam diem totam duxit / in sua dileccione iocundam quem in aliqua parte diei reatus consciencie / vel impetus Ire vel motus concupiscencie non turbauerit / quem liuor Inuidie / vel Ardor Auaricie / vel tumor superbie non vexauerit / quem aliqua iactura vel offensa / vel passio non commouerit &cetera. [Id., ibid.]
- V. 5595. ¶ Qui enim semel iuit ad nupcias / docuit semel esse nubendum. [E., und io im folg.]
- V. 5605. ¶ Non est vxorum numerus diffinitus quia secundum Paulum / Qui habent vxores sic sint tamquam non habentes.
- V. 5610. ¶ Crescite & multiplicamini.
- V. 5628. ¶ Si autem non continent / nubant.
- V. 5631. ¶ Quod si dormierit vir eius liberata est / cui vult nubat in Domino.
- V. 5633. ¶ Si acceperis vxorem non peccasti / et si nupserit virgo non peccauit / set hij qui domino se vouerunt. Ita idem &c.
- V. 5634. ¶ Melius est nubere quam vri. [E.Sl.C.P.L.]
- V. 5636. ¶ Lameth qui primus intrauit bigamiam / sanguinarius & homicida est &c. ¶ Abraham trigamus ¶ Iacob quatriganus.
- V. 5655. ¶ Paulus // de virginibus / preceptum non habeo / consilium autem do &cetera.
- V. 5657. ¶ Inuitat ad cursum, tenet in manu virginitatis brauium, qui potest capere / capiat &cetera.
- V. 5663. ¶ Volo autem omnes homines esse sicut me ipsum.
- V. 5669. ¶ Bonum est homini / mulierem non tangere.
- V. 5685. ¶ Vnusquisque proprium habet donum ex deo; alius quidem sic / alius autem sic /.

- 3u V. 5688. ¶ Qui cantant sequentur Agnum XLIII^{or} Milia.
 — V. 5729. ¶ Eo vocacione qua vocati estis &cetera.
 — V. 5737. ¶ Qui vxorem habet & debitor dicitur. & esse in prepucio & seruus vxoris & qui malorum seruorum est alligatus.
 — V. 5742. ¶ Et iterum seruus vxoris es / noli propter hoc habere tristitiam. ¶ Item si acceperis vxorem non peccasti tribulacionem tamen carnis habebunt huiusmodi &cetera. ¶ Item vir corporis sui non habet potestatem / set vxor. ¶ Item viri diligite vxores verecundas.
 — V. 5781. ¶ Ierephancias quoque Atheniencium vsque hodie / cicute sorbicionem castrari.
 — V. 5885. ¶ Et procurator calamistratus &cetera.
 — V. 5909. ¶ Intra omnes alcior existit qui non curat in cuius manu sit mundus.
 — V. 5922. ¶ similiter & mulieres in habitu ornato cum verecundia & castitate ornent se / non in tortis crinibus aut auro aut margaritis sine veste preciosa &cetera/. Hec Paulus.
 — V. 5944. ¶ eciam odiosa vxor si habeat virum bonum &cetera.
 — V. 5953. ¶ Amor illius inferno & arenti terre & incendio comparata // Vnde illud &cetera. ¶ Infernus & amor mulieris & terra que non saciatur aqua & ignis non dicent satis &cetera.
 — V. 5958. ¶ Sicut in ligno vermis ita perdet virum suum vxor ¶ Nemo melius scire potest / quid sit vxor vel mulier / nisi ille qui passus est.
 — V. 5983. ¶ fallere. flere. nere dedit (statuit) deus in muliere. [C.P.L.]
 — V. 6042. ¶ Valerius libro 6^o, capitulo 3^o // Metellius vxorem suam / eo quod vinum bibisset fuste percussam interemit.
 — V. 6081. ¶ Appelles / fecit mirabile opus in tumultu Darij / vnde in Alexandro libro 6^o [Alexandreis d. Gualtier de Lille (um 1200)]. Ebdem 11956.
 — V. 6193. ¶ Mansor Amphorison. 19 [d. h. Almansoris Propositiones, Aphorismo] ¶ Cumque in ascendente fuerint infortune turpem notam in facie pacietur // In nativitatibus mulierum cum fuerit ascendens aliqua de domibus Veneris / Marte existente in eis / vel e contrario erit mulier impudica // Idem erit / si habuerit capricornum in ascendente // He[c] Hermes in libro fiducie Amphoriso. 24^o.
 — V. 6239. ¶ Ne des mulieri nequam veniam prodeundi. ecclesiastici. 25^o. [V. 25—26.]
 — V. 6246. Vterque cadit ubi alia exaltatur.
 — V. 6287. ¶ In libro Mansor primo // Vnscujusque planetarum. 4. // Exaltacio illo in loco fore dicitur in quo subito patitur ab alio contrarium &cetera / Velut Mercurius in virgine que est casus Veneris // Alter scilicet Mercurius significat scientiam & philosophiam // Alter vero cantus & alacritates & quicquid est sapiferum corpori.
 — V. 6315. ¶ Quid referam Phasipphen / Clitermistram & Eriphilem / quarum prima delicijs fluens quippe vt Regis vxor Tauri dicitur adpetisse concubitus. Alia occidisse virum suum ob amorem Adulterij. // Tercia perdidisse Amphiorax & saluti viri monile Aureum pertulisse &c. // Hec Metellius Marrio secundum Valerium.
 — V. 6367. ¶ Circulus aureus in naribus Suis Mulier formosa & fatua. i. impudica.
 — V. 6767. ¶ Seneca in epistola. ¶ Honesta res est leta paupertas.
 — V. 6768. ¶ Pauper est qui eget / eo quod non habet / sed qu(od) non habet nec appetit habere ille diues est / de quo intelligitur id / Apocalypsis 3^o. dicis quia diues sum. [Seneca, l. c.]
 — V. 6775. ¶ Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator / et nocte ad lumen trepidabit Arundinis vmbra. [Juvenal, l. c.]
 — V. 6777. ¶ 2^{us} Philosophus ¶ Paupertas est odibile bonum / sanitatis mater / curarum remocio / sapientie reparatrix / possessio sine calumpnia. [Vincentius Bellovacensis, Speculum historiale X, 71.]
 — V. 6784. ¶ Vnde & Crates ille Thebanus // ¶ Proiecto in mari non perno auri pondere // Abite, inquit, pessime male cupiditates / ego vos mergam ne ipse mergar a vobis.
 — V. 7462. Melius est animam saginare quam corpus [Lufas, l. c.]. ¶ Victum & vestitum / hiis contenti sumus [Zimoth., l. c.].
 — V. 7550. Omnis virtus vnita / fortior est seipsa dispersa [Boeth. l. c.].
 — V. 7555. ¶ Dignus operarius mercede &cetera [Lufas, l. c.].
 — V. 7571. ¶ Noli esse sicut leo in domo tua / euertens domesticos tuos, opprimens subiectos tibi. [Ecclusiasticus, l. c.].
 — V. 7933. ¶ Inter cetera ad radicem vesuli terra Saluciarum vicis et castellis (etc.) E.He.D. [Petrarca, De obedientia et fide uxoria Mythologia; nach] Boccaccio, Decam. X, 10]. Eo im folg.
 — V. 7968. ¶ Tua inquit [!] humanitas optime Marchio.
 — V. 8073. ¶ fuit haut procul a palacio &c.

- 3u V. 8157. ¶ Vt expeditis curis aliis ad videndum domini sui sponsam cum puellis comitibus prepararet.
- V. 8171. ¶ Quam Walterus cogitabundus incedens eamque compellans nomine.
- V. 8213. ¶ Et insolito tanti hospitis adventu stupidam inuenit.
- V. 8221. ¶ Et patri tuo placet inquit & mihi vt vxor mea sis / & credo ipsum tibi placeat set [!] habeo ex te querere &c.
- V. 8232. ¶ Sine villa frontis aut verbi impugnacione.
- V. 8235. ¶ Nil ego vnquam sciens ne dum faciam set eciam cogitabo quod contra animum tuum sit / nec tu aliquid facies & si ne mori iusseris quod moleste feram.
- V. 8248. ¶ De hinc ne quid reliquiarum fortune veteris nouam inferat / in domum nudari eam iussit.
- V. 8276. ¶ Atque apud omnes supra fidem cara est / vix quod hijs ipsis qui illius originem nouerant persuaderi posset Ianicule natam esse, tantus vite tantus morum decor ea verborum grauitas atque dulcedo, quibus omnium animos nexu sibi magni amoris astrinxerat:—
- V. 8297. ¶ Sic Walterus humili quidem set insigni ac prospero matrimonio honestatis summa dei in pace &c.:—
- V. 8301. ¶ Quodque eximiam virtutem tanta sub inopia latitantem tam perspicaciter deprendisset, vulgus prudentissimus habebatur:
- V. 8304. ¶ Neque vero solers sponsa muliebria tantum ac domestica, set vbi res posceret publica eciam subibat officia:—
- V. 8311. ¶ viro absente lites patrie nobilium discordias dirimens atque componens, tam grauibz responsis tantaque maturitate & iudicii equitate, vt omnes ad salutem publicam demissam celo feminam predicarent:—
- V. 8325. ¶ Ceperit, ut fit interdum, Walterum, cum iam ablactata esset infantula, mirabilis quedam quam laudabilis cupiditas satis expertam, care fidem coniugis experiendi alcius & iterum atque iterum retemptandi:—
- V. 8416. ¶ suspecta viri fama ¶ suspecta facies ¶ suspecta hora ¶ suspecta erat oratio.
- V. 8479. ¶ par alacritas atque sedulitas, solitum obsequium, idem amor, nulla filie mencio.
- V. 8486. ¶ Transiuerant hoc in statu anni 4. dum ecce grauida &c./
- V. 8500. ¶ Et olim ait, audisti populum meum egre nostrum ferre connubium &c.
- V. 8540. ¶ Fac sciam tibi placere quod moriar, volens moriar. [He.D. 8535.]
- V. 8598. ¶ Ceperit sensum de Waltero decolor fama crebescere:— [D. 8605.]
- V. 8913. ¶ Vnum bona fide precor ac moneo, ne hanc illis aculeis agites quibus alteram agitasti, namque et iunior & delicacius nutrita est / pati quantum ego vt reor non valeret:—
- V. 9018. ¶ Hanc Historiam stilo nunc alto retexere visum fuit, non tum ideo vt matronas nostri temporis ad imitandam huius vxoris pacienciam que mihi inimitabilis videtur, quam vt legentes ad imitandam saltem femine constanciam excitarentur vt quod hec viro suo prestitit / hoc prestare deo nostro audeat quilibet vt Iacobus ait Apostolus / Intemptator sit malorum & ipse neminem temptat / probat tamen & sepe non multis ac grauibz flagellis exerceri sinit, non vt animum nostrum sciat, quem scivit antequam crearemur &c.:
- V. 9187. ¶ Vxor est diligenda quia donum dei est // Ihesus filius sirac / domus & diuicie dantur a parentibus / a domino autem proprie vxor bona vel prudens. [E.He.D., aut Albertanus Brixiensis, Liber de Amore; 10 im folg.]
- V. 9203. ¶ fficiamus ei adiutorium & extracta costa de corpore Ade fecit Euam & dixit / propter hec / relinquet homo patrem & matrem & adherabit &cetera et erunt duo in carne vna.
- V. 9238 ff. ¶ Iacob // per consilium matris sue Rebecce, &c.
- V. 9242. Iudith / de manibus Oloferni &cetera.
- V. 9245. Abigail / per suum bonum consilium virum suum Nabal ab ira dauid liberauit.
- V. 9247. Ester &cetera Iudeos per bonum consilium simul cum Mardocheo in regno Assueri.
- V. 9251. ¶ Seneca / sicut nichil est (superius) benigna coniuge / ita nichil crudelius est infesta muliere.
- V. 9253. ¶ Cato / vxoris linguam si fragi est / ferre memento.
- V. 9256. ¶ Bona mulier fidelis custos est / & bona domus [E.D.].
- V. 9259. ¶ Apostolus Paulus ad Ephesianos. Diligite vxores vestras sicut Christus dilexit ecclesiam &cetera.
- V. 9261. ¶ Apostolus. Ita viri debent diligere vxores suas ut corpora sua / quia qui suam vxorem diligit / seipsum diligit / nemo vnquam carnem suam odio habuit / set nutrit & fouet eam / et postea / vnusquisque suam vxorem sicut ipsum diligit.

- Bu V. 10925. ¶ Reditu suo singula gaudent [E.He.D.C.P.; Boeth. III, metr. 2; engl.: alle thynges reioysen hem of hir retornynge ayen to hir nature].
- V. 11037. ¶ Vnde Persius // fonte labra prolui caballino / nec in bicipite parnasos me memini sompniasse [E.He. (unvollst.); Persius, Sat., Prol. I].
- V. 11426. ¶ Pamphilus ad Galatheam / vulneror & clausum porto sub pectore telum &cetera [Pamphilus de amore', mittelalt. Dichtung].
- V. 11680. ¶ 30^a Atheniensium tyranni cum Phidonem necassent / in conuiuio filias eius virgines ad se venire iusserunt & scortorum more nudari / ac super pauimenta patris sanguine cruentatas in pudicis gestibus ludere // que paulisper dissimulato dolore cum temulentos conuiuias cernerent quasi ad requisita nature egredientes, inuicem se complexu precipitauerunt in puteum vt virginitatem morte seruarent [E.He.D.; aus Hieronymus 'Contra Iovinianum', I, cap. 41; besgl. im folg.].
- V. 11695. ¶ Cum 50^a virgines lacedoniorum [!] Messeni violare temptassent / [E.—11771].
- V. 11703. ¶ Aristocles Orcomeni tyrannus adamauit virginem symphalidem que cum patre occiso ad templum diane &cetera.
- V. 11715. ¶ Nam hasdrubalis vxor capta & incensa vrbe, cum se cerneret a Romanis capienda &cetera.
- V. 11721. ¶ primo pono lucreciam / que violata pudicie [!] nolens superviuere maculam corporis cruore deleuit /.
- V. 11725. ¶ Quis valet silencio preterire VII. Milesias virgines que Gallorum &cetera.
- V. 11730. ¶ Senapho [Xenophon] in Ciri maioris scribit / infancia occiso Habradate &cetera.
- V. 11742. ¶ Democionis Ariopagitarum principis virgo filia &cetera.
- V. 11744. ¶ Quo ore laudande sunt Cedasi filie &cetera.
- V. 11747. ¶ Nichanor victis Thebis vnus captiue virginis superatus est.
- V. 11750. ¶ Narrant scriptores Grece & aliam Thebanam virginem &cetera.
- V. 11753. ¶ Quid loquar Nicerati coniugem pie impaciens iniurie viri mortem &cetera.
- V. 11755. ¶ Alcebiades ille socraticus victus &cetera.
- V. 11758. ¶ Alcesten fabule ferunt pro marito Adameto sponte defunctam / et Penolopes pudicia [!] Omeri carmen est.
- V. 11761. ¶ Lacedomia quoque poetarum ore cantatur occiso apud Troiam Protheselao &cetera.
- V. 11764. ¶ Porcia sine Bruto viuere non potuit.
- V. 11767. ¶ Arthemisia quoque vxor Mauseoli insignis pudicij [!] fuisse prohibetur &cetera.
- V. 11769. ¶ Teuta / Illicorum Regina &cetera.
- V. 11771. ¶ Memorandum strato regulus. ¶ Vidi & omnes pene Barbares capitulo xxv^o primi ¶ Item Cornelia &cetera ¶ Imitentur go [!] nupte Theanam / Cleobiliam / Gorgim / Thymodiam / Claudias atque Cornelias / in fine libri primi.
- V. 11781. ¶ Singulas has historias & plures hanc materiam concernentes recitat beatus Jeronimus contra Iovinianum in primo suo libro capitulo 39^o [E.; id. He. V. 11711, D. V. 11708].
- V. 11956 f. 608r; Zufatz: de Zanze in libro Tulij [E.He.D.; Cicero, De orat. III, 26].
- V. 12180. ¶ Iudicum capitulo XI^o // fuit illo tempore lepte Galaandes (Gileabiter) [E.He.D.].
- V. 12423. // Nolite inebriare vino // in quo est luxuria [Ephes. V, 18]. [E.He.D.C.P.]
- V. 12446. ¶ Ieronimus Contra Iovinianum // Quamdiu ieiunauit Adam / in Paradiso fuit / comedit & eiectus est / statim duxit vxorem [Id.; Hieronymus, l. c. II, 19; ebb. b. folg. Zitate].
- V. 12460. ¶ Esca ventri & venter escis. deus autem & hunc & illam destruet / [E.He.D.C.].
- V. 12485. ¶ Qui autem in delicijs est viuens mortuus est [E.He.D.].
- V. 12487. ¶ luxuriosa res vinum / et contumeliosa ebrietas [Id.].
- V. 12522. ¶ Noli vinum dare [E.He.D.P.].
- V. 12529. ¶ Policratici [libro 1^o. Ioannis Sarisburiensis] / Mendaciorum & periuriarum mater est Alea. [Id.].
- V. 12571. ¶ Nolite omnino Iurare [Id.; Matth., l. c.].
- V. 12573. ¶ Ieremie 4^o // Iurabis in veritate in Iudicio & Iusticia [Id.].
- V. 12681. ¶ coram canuto capite consurge [Id.].
- V. 15262. ¶ Et fecerunt filij Israel secundum quod constituerat eis sacerdos domini Eliachim [E.He.D.H.].
- V. 16350. ¶ Gregorius in registro libro [Epist.] 10 / ad Eulogium patriarcham scribit / Indicamus praeterea / quia gravem hic interpretum difficultatem patimur / dum enim non sunt qui sensum de sensu expriment set transferre semper verborum proprietatem volunt / omnem dictorum sensum confundunt / &cetera [He.D.].

- 8u V. 17192. ¶ Non teneas Aurum, &cetera [E.G.]; 17194. ¶ Nec pulcrum pomum
&cetera [E.].
- V. 18287. // Qui diligit iniquitatem / odit animam suam [E.].
- V. 18762 f. 12571; 18767 f. 12573.
- V. 18869. ¶ Nota de inpaciencia cuiusdam Philosophi contra suum discipulum [E.].
- V. 18909. ¶ Nota secundum Lucam de latrone / suspenso cum Cristo [E.].
- V. 18990. ¶ Genesis // Maledictus Canaan seruus seruorum erit / fratribus suis [IX,
25f.; E.].
- V. 19083. ¶ Of diuerse Iuyses to diuerse wommen of estaat for the synne of lecherye [E.].
- V. 19253. ¶ Memorandum. mors intrauit / per fenestras [? E.].
-

IV. Glossar.

Abkürzungen: a. = an; *adj.* = Adjektiv; *adv.* = Adverb; a egl. = altenglisch; Ch. = Chaucer; *comp.* = Komparativ; *conj.* = Konjunktion; *conjv.* = Konjunktiv; b. = der, die, das, bes, dort; *dat.* = Dativ; *dial.* = nördlicher Dialekt; e. = ein, eine, etc.; f. = für; *flekt.* = flektierte Form des Adjektivs; *gen.* = Genitiv; *ger.* = Gerundium; i. = in, im; *imps.* = unpersönliches Verb; *impt.* = Imperativ; *ind.* = Indikativ; *inf.* = Infinitiv; *irr.* = unregelmäßig; *interj.* = Interjektion; m. = männlich; MA. = Mittelalter; megl. = mittelenglisch; *ntr.* = Neutrum; *num.* = Zahlwort; n. = nach; O. = Ort; *pl.* = Plural; *ppr.* = Partizip b. Präsens; *ppt.* = Partizip b. Präteritums; *pr.* = Präsens; *praef.* = Präfix; *prn.* = Pronomen; *prp.* = Präposition; *pt.* = Präteritum; *refl.* = reflexives Verb; s. = Singular; *sb.* = Substantiv; *St.* = Stadt; *st.* = stark; *supl.* = Superlativ; v. = Verb; V. = Vers; *verf.* = verfaßt; *vsb.* = Verbalsubstantiv; z. = zu, zum. — Außerdem ist zu beachten, daß im Glossar die Buchstaben **i** und **u** im Texte (wo sie konsonantische Geltung haben) der Anordnung wegen durch **j** und **v** ersetzt worden sind, und daß die Parenthesen solche Buchstaben umschließen, welche gelegentlich lauten können oder geschrieben werden, aber auch fortfallen dürfen. — Vgl. auch Einleitung § 21.

A 1. *interj.* ah! ha! 2. *prp.* (für in, on) in, an usw. (z. B. a-bedde zu Bett, an-nyght nachts, a-morwe morgens); an (vor Vok. u. h., z. B. an-heigh oben); 3. unbest. Art. u. Zahlw., an (vor Vok. u. h) ein usw.; (vor Zahl) etwa, jo.
aas sb. Eins (Würfelspiel).
abak adv. zurück.
abasshed, abaysed, abayst ppt. bestürzt, verwirrt, bejähmt.
abedde f. a.
abegge v. (teuer) erkaufen, bezahlen, büßen; vgl. abeye.
a-begged ppt. [?] betteln (gehen).
abeye, aby e f. abegge; abo(u)ghte *pt.*, aboght *ppt.*
abhomynable adj. abscheulich, widerwärtig.
abhomynacion sb. Abscheu, Abscheulich-ablucion *sb.* Wäsche. [feil].
aboght(e) f. abeye.
abood sb. Aufenthalt, Verzug.
about e 1. prp. um, herum usw. 2. *adv.* herum, der Reihe nach; im Begriff; zustande.
abegge vb. ab(ber-)kürzen.
abreyde(n) v. erwachen, auffahren; a-brayde *pt.*
abroche(n) v. anzapfen.
abrood adv. ausgebreitet.

abusoun sb. Mißbrauch, Täuschung, Torheit.
abyden st. v. warten, er(ab-)warten; dulden; verweilen, bleiben, anhalten; zurück-abye f. abegge. [treten].
Abygail f. I. Sam. 25.
accident sb. Ufzidens (das Zufällige); Veränderung.
accidie sb. Trägheit.
accomplice v. erfüllen, vollenden.
ac(c)ord sb. Einklang, Eintracht; Vertrag, Bedingung; falle of a. einwilligen. — **accorde(n) v.** stimmen (zu), passen; be-ed zustimmen.
ac(c)ordaunt adj., prp. passend, gemäß.
ac(c)ounte(n) v. berechnen; betrachten.
achaat sb. Einkauf. — **achatour sb.** Käufer.
Acheloy's Achelous (Flußgott).
acheve(n) v. vollenden.
Achitophel Achitophel (II. Sam. 15).
acquitaunce sb. Quittung, Entlassungsschein.
acquite refl. sich erweisen.
actes sb. pl. Akten, Berichte; Geschichte.
actueel adj. wirklich; persönlich.
acustumaunce sb. Gewohnheit; hadde of a. pflegte.
adamant sb. Eisenstein; Demant.
adawed adj. (ppt.) wach.
Adoon Adonis.

adoun *adv.* hinab, nieder.
 adrad *ppt.* erschredt; be a. sich fürchten
 Adriane Ariadne. [[f. drede).
 adversarie *adj.* feindlich; *sb.* Gegner.
 advertence *sb.* Aufmerksamkeit; Besinnung.
 afered (aferd) *ppt.* erschredt, erschrocken;
 be a. sich fürchten, erschrecken.
 affeccioun *sb.* Gefühl, Neigung, Leidenschaft.
 affile(n) *v.* glätten. [schast.
 affray *sb.* Schrecken; Lärm, Streit; -e(n)
v. erschrecken.
 affright *ppt.* erschredt.
 after *ppr.* nach, gemäß, auf; a. oon gleich-
 mäßig; *adv.* nachher, alsbald, sogleich;
 a. (that) *conj.* (je) nachdem.
 afyre *adv.* in Brand.
 agaste(n) *v.* erschrecken; agaste *pt.* (rest.);
 agast *ppt.* erschredt, beängstigt; be a.
 fürchten, sich bangen.
 agayn(s) *ppr.* gegen, wider, entgegen;
 (nahe, gerade) vor; für; *adv.* wieder.
 agilte(n) *v.* unrecht tun, sich vergehen (an).
 ago(n) *ppt.* (fort)gegangen, fort, dahin, ver-
 gangen, verschwunden; *adv.* vor (s. goon).
 agregge(n) *v.* erschweren, vergrößern.
 agreved *ppt.* erzürnt, bekümmert.
 agrief *adv.* zu Herzen (nehmen).
 agryse(n) *v.* (er)schauern; sich krümmen.
 aiel *sb.* Großvater, Ahn.
 aketoun *sb.* Panzerhemd.
 al *prn.* all, ganz; alle *dat. s. & pl.*, aller
gen. pl., auch alder (alderfirst, alder-
 best, etc.); al and som, alle and some
 jeder einzige, insgesamt. — *adv.* ganz;
 al redy ganz bereit, fertig. — *conj.* (auch
 al be [it]) obgleich.
 alambik *sb.* Destillierkolben.
 alaunt *sb.* Dogge.
 alayes *sb. pl.* Zusatz, Mischung.
 albificacioun *sb.* Weißen, Purifikation.
 Alceste Alkestis, Königin in Thessalien;
 vgl. L. G. W. 432, etc.
 Alcione Alcyon (Ov., Met. XI, 410 ff.);
 vgl. B. D. 65 ff.
 alday *adv.* immer, beständig.
 alder *s.* al.
 Aldrian (oder Aldiran): heller Stern im
 alange *adj.* elend. [„Löwen“.
 ale-stake *sb.* Bierfranz (Wirtshauszeichen).
 aleye *sb.* Gasse; Baumgang.
 Alfonse Petrus Alphonse, span. Gelehrter,
 getaufter Jude (um 1100), verf. 'Dis-
 ciplina clericalis'.
 algate(s) *adv.* jedenfalls, freilich, jederzeit.

Algazir Algeira, erobert 1344.
 alighte(n) *v.* absteigen, sich niederlassen;
 alighte *pt.*; alight *ppt.*
 Alisaundre 1. Alexander d. Große. 2. Me-
 zandria (erob. 1356).
 Alison: Frauennamen.
 alkamystre *sb.* Mächemist.
 Alla: König v. Deira (560—588).
 alliance *sb.* Bund, Verwandtschaft, Ehe.
 allowthe = allowe thee (ich) gestehe dir zu,
 gewißlich.
 allye *sb.* Verwandter, Freund; -e(n) *v.*
 (sich) verbinden, verwandt werden; -ied
ppt. befreundet.
 Almageste *sb.* Almagest, astron. Werk d.
 Ptolemäus (s. d.) in arab. Übersetzung.
 almesse *sb.* Almosen, Barmherzigkeit; al-
 mesdede *sb.* Liebeswerk.
 almost *adv.* beinahe, fast.
 Alnath *sb.*: heller Stern.
 Alocen Alhazen, arab. Astronom (11. Jh.).
 (a)long on *ppr.* wegen, infolge von.
 als, also, al so, *adv. & conj.* so, ebenso,
 so wahr wie, ebenfalls, auch. Vgl. as.
 alswa *adv. dial.* = also.
 alyght *s.* alight.
 Alys „Elischen“.
 alyve *adv.* lebendig; im Leben, hinieden.
 amadrides *sb. pl.* Samadryaden.
 ambes as *sb.* Doppelwein (Würfel).
 amblere *sb.* Zelter; ambil *sb.* Paßgang;
 amblyng *ppr.*; wel a. ein guter Paß-
 gänger.
 Ambros Ambrosius, Bischof v. Mailand,
 † 397.*
 amende(n) *v.* bessern, fördern, überwinden,
 übertreffen, erhöhen; -dement *sb.* Erfaß,
 Buße; -dere *sb.* Vermehrter, -in, För-
 derer, -in.
 amenuse(n) *v.* vermindern, verringern.
 amerciment *sb.* Geldbuße.
 ameve(n), -moe-, *v.* bewegt, erregt sein.
 amiddes *adv.* in der Mitte.
 amoneste(n) *v.* ermahnen, mahnen zu;
 -yng(e) *vsb.* Ermahnung.
 amorous *adj.* verliebt; a. loue Verliebt-
 heit, geschlechtl. Liebe.
 amorwe *adv.* des Morgens.
 amoun(e)n *v.* bedeuten.
 Amphion Amphion (Sänger).
 Amphiorax Amphiarax (Seher).
 amyable *adj.* freundlich, „heißsam“.
 amys *adv.* fehl, falsch; doon (fare) a. fehl-
 gehen, sich verfehlen.

*) Stellennachweise aus den Kirchenvätern s. in Skeats Ausgabe.

an j. a.

anle sb. Fußstüchel.

and conj. und; wenn, selbst wenn; freilich;

a. that und zwar.

anes adv. dial. einmal.

Angelus (ad virginem): alte Hymne.

angle sb. Winkel; (astr.) Haus.

anguissous adj. angstvoll, betrübt.

angwiss sb. Angst, Kummer.

anhange(n) v. aufhängen, hängen.

anientisse(n) v. vernichten.

anlaas sb. Dolchmesser.

annexed ppt. eng verbunden.

annueleer adj. jährlich; preest a. Annualat
(d. jährl. Seelenmessen liest).

annunciat ppt. vorher verkündet.

anon adv. gleich, sogleich; a. right stracks;

a. richtiges gleich darauf.

anoy sb. Verdruss; Qual, Leid; -e(n) v.
verdrießen, ärgern, schädigen; -ful, -ous
adj. lästig, ärgerlich.

Anselmus: Erzbischof von Canterbury*)
(1033—1109).

antheme sb. Wechselgesang, Hymne.

Antheus Antäus (Riese).

Ant(h)iochus 1. M. Epiphanes, 176—164.

2. romanhafter König (V. 4502).

antiphoner sb. Gesangbuch.

Antony Antonius; fyr of saint A. Rotlauf,

any irgendein; as a. wie nur. [Rose.]

anyght adv. des Nachts.

aornement sb. Schmutz.

a-paas adv. im Schritt, fürbaß.

apaise(n) v. besänftigen (s. apese).

ap(pal)led ppt. erleicht, bleich; fahl; schal.

apay(e)d ppt. befriedigt, belohnt; yuele a.
beleidigt, gekränkt, geschädigt; been y. a.
übernehmen.

ape sb. Affe, Narr; putte an a., etc. zum
Narrern machen; wyn a. Affenwein.

ap(p)leere j. appiere(n).

aperceyve(n) v. bemerken; -ynges vsb. Be-
obachtungen.

apert adj. offen, offenbar.

apertene(n) v. gehören, gebühren, angehen.

apertinent adj. gehörig.

apese(n) v. besänftigen.

apeyre(n) v. schänden, schmähen, verderben.

apiked ppt. ausgestaffiert.

apostle sb. Apostel: meist Paulus.

apoynte(n) v. bestimmen; refl. sich ent-
schließen.

apparaille sb. Putz; -e(n) v. rüsten, kleiden,
zubereiten; -yng(e) vsb. Zurüstung.

appearance sb. Erscheinung, Trugbild.

appetit sb. Begierde, Lust.

appiere(n), -eer-, v. erscheinen, sich zeigen.
Appollonius: Apollonius v. Tyrus, Held
c. spätgriech. Romans.

appreued ppt. erprobt.

approwour sb. Angeber, Denunziant.

ar j. arn.

arace(n) v. entreißen.

archiwyves sb. pl. Kernweiber.

ar(r)ette(n) v. anrechnen, auslegen als; an-
klagen (vp-on).

arewe adv. in einer Reihe, nacheinander;

areyse(n) v. erheben. [j. rewe 2.]

argoille sb. roher Weinstein.

Argus: hundertäugiger Wächter, von Merkur
in Schlaf versenkt (Ov. Met. I, 624 ff.).

aright adv. recht, richtig, genau, gerade.

arise(n) st. v. sich erheben, etc.; arist 3. s. pr.
= ariseth.

Aristocles: Tyrann von Orchomenos.

Aristotle Aristoteles (im M.A. nur aus
lat. u. arab. Quellen bekannt).

ark sb. Bogen, Bahn (d. Sonne).

armee sb. Kriegszug.

armes pl. Waffen; (als s.) Waffenrod.

armonyak adj. ammoniak-; boole a. Berg-
Armork(e) Armorika. [blau.]

armurer sb. Waffenschmied.

armypotente adj. waffenmächtig, streitbar.

arn pl. pr. von be(e).

Arnold: M. von Willeneube, franz. Arzt u.
Machtmist, † ca. 1313.

Arpies pl. Harphen.

ar(r)ay sb. Ausrüstung, Ausstattung; Klei-
dung; Gepäc; Vorrat; Gerät; Zustand,
Lage, Haltung; Prunk; -e(n) v. ausrüsten,
ausstatten, kleiden; anordnen, einrichten.

ar(r)eeest sb. Haft, Halt; Stütze (f. Lanzen);
make a. festhalten.

arrerage sb. Rückstand.

ars metrik sb. Arithmetik, Rechenkunst.

art sb. Kunst, Kunstgriff, Mittel; Wissen-
schaft, Begriff usw.; V. 6262: Ars ama-
toria, Dichtung Dvids.

artelries sb. pl. Wurfmaschinen.

Arthemisie Artemisia (Gattin d. Mausolus).

artificial adj. künstlich; a. day mittlerer
Tag (Sonnenaufgang bis -untergang).

artow = art thou.

arwe sb. Pfeil.

as adv. u. conj. so, wie, gleich; als, als
daß; als auch; (bei impl.) bitte, doch; (b.
Zeitbest.) eben, für; in anbetracht, in be-
zug auf (as to); as in this caas diesmal,
jetzt, hier; as that sobald als; (rel.)
welcher.

as sb. j. aas.

ascaunce(s) *adv.* etwa, als ob.
 ascencioun *sb.* Aufsteigen, Aufgang; Ausbünstung.
 ascendent *sb.* Aufgangspunkt (Punkt im Tierkreis, der in e. gewissen Augenblick über d. Horizont steigt); Horoskop.
 ashamed *ppt.* geschändet, beschimpft.
 aslake(n) *v.* sinten; beänstigen.
 asonder *adv.* auseinander.
 aspect *sb.* (astr.) Planetenstellung, Aspekt.
 assault *sb.* Angriff, Sturm.
 assay *sb.* Versuch, Probe; -e(n) *v.* versuchen, prüfen.
 assege(n) *v.* belagern.
 assemble(n) *v.* versammeln, vereinigen; (geschlechtl.) verkehren; -ee, -yng Verkehr.
 assent *sb.* Zustimmung, Beipflichtung; by oon a. einstimmig, einhellig; of . . a. im Bunde; -e(n) *v.* zustimmen, einwilligen, zustreiben sein (mit).
 assureth *f.* assure(n).
 asshe *sb.* Asche; asshen *pl.*
 assise *sb.* Schwurgericht.
 assoyle(n) *sb.* auflösen, auflösen; absolbieren; -yng *vsb.* Absolution.
 Assuer(e), -us Asasver.
 ass(e)ure(n) *v.* (ver)sichern, Sicherheit bieten.
 asterte(n) *v.* entrinnen, ent schlüpfen; astert *ppt.*
 astoned, -ied *ppt.* betäubt, gelähmt; erstaunt.
 astored *ppt.* versorgt, versehen.
 astrelabie *sb.* Astrolabium (Höhenmesser d. Gestirne).
 astrologien *sb.* Astrolog, Sterndeuter.
 astronomye *sb.*, *verb.* astromye, Astro-
 nomie, Astrologie.
 aswage(n) *v.* beänstigen, mildern.
 aswowne *adv.* in Ohnmacht.
 at *ppp.* an, zu, bei, nach, von, in Bezug auf.
 atake(n) *st. v.* einholen.
 Atazir *sb.* übler Einfluß (e. Planeten).
 aton *adv.* einzig, zusammen; -es *adv.* so gleich, zugleich.
 atrede(n) *v.* im Rate übertreffen.
 atrenne *v.* im Laufe übertreffen.
 attame(n) *v.* in Angriff nehmen.
 atte = at the.
 at(tempera)unce *sb.* Mäßigung, Mäßigkeit.
 at(tempre) (n) *v.* mäßigen; -ee *adj.*, -ly *adv.* mäßig, maßvoll.
 atteyne(n) *v.* erreichen, bekommen (to), gelangen.
 atthamaunt *sb.* = adamant.
 Attheon Atäon (Ov., Met. III, 138 ff.).
 attray *adj.* verbittert, böshast.

atwo *adv.* entzwei.
 atwynne *adv.* auseinander, getrennt.
 atyr *sb.* Kleidung.
 auctoritee *sb.* Vollmacht, Ansehen; Autorität.
 auctour *sb.* Verfasser, Urheber.
 audience *sb.* Gehör; Gehörweite; Gegenwart; (öffentliche) Versammlung.
 auditour *sb.* Hörer; Revisor, Rechnungsprüfer.
 aught *prn.* etwas; Besigtum; *adv.* etwa; *f.* oght.
 augrym-stones *sb. pl.* Rechensteine.
 Augustyn Augustinus, Bischof zu Hippo (354—430); *verb.*: 'De civitate Dei', 'De vera poenitentia' u. a. (Schriften.*)
 auncetrye *sb.* vornehme Herkunft, gute
 auntre(n) *v.* wagen. [Familie].
 auntrous *adj.* abenteuerlich, waghalsig.
 Aurelian röm. Kaiser (270—75).
 Austyn Augustinus (*f.* o.).
 auter *sb.* Altar.
 availle(n) *imps.* nützen.
 avale(n) *v.* abziehen.
 advantage *sb.* Vorteil, *adj.* vorteilhaft; doon his a. seinen Vorteil suchen.
 avaunce(n) *v.* fördern, förderlich sein, helfen.
 avaut *sb.* Prahlerei; make a. sich rühmen, brüsten; -e(n) *v.* desgl.; -yng(e) *vsb.* Prahlerei.
 aventaille *sb.* Helmgitter, Visier.
 aventure *sb.* Abenteuer, Zufall, Vorfall, Geschick; Gefahr; per a. zufällig, vielleicht (*f.* paraunter); take . . a. d. Vorteil wahrnehmen.
 Averrois Averroës, arab. Philosoph (1126 bis 98).
 avow *sb.* Gelübde; make a. geloben, schwören; -e(n) *v.* geloben; (öffentlich) bekannt machen.
 avowtier *sb.* Ehebrecher; -trye *sb.* Ehebruch, Unzucht.
 avoy *interj.* pfui!
 Avycen Avicenna od. Ibn-Sina, arab. Philosoph u. Arzt (980—1037); *f.* canon.
 avys *sb.* Rat, Überlegung, Meinung; -e(n) *refl.* achtgeben; anschauen; sich hüten, vorsehen; überlegen, bedenken; -ed *ppt.* bedacht, vorsichtig; -ely *adv.* desgl., wohl überlegt; -ement *sb.* Überlegung.
 avysion *sb.* Vision, Gesicht.
 award *sb.* Urteil; -e(n) *v.* bestimmen, überweisen.
 awayt *sb.* Gut, Obhut, Obacht; Lauer, Hinterhalt; -e(n) *v.* warten (auf), aufpassen, beobachten.

awen *dial.* = ow(e)n.

a-werk(e) *adv.* an's Werk; sette a. be-schäftigen.

awaye *adv.* fort, abwesend; irre; away-ward *adv.* zur Seite.

awreke(n) *v.* rächen; awreke, awroken *ppt.*; be a. sich rächen.

axe(n) *v.* = aske(n); a. at jem. befragen (nach), bitten (um); -yng *vsb.* Gesuch.

ay *adv.* immer, stets.

ayeyn *j.* agayn.

Ba *v.* küssen.

baar *j.* bere(n).

Babilan Babylonier, -in. — Babiloigne Babylon.

bachelor, -chil-, *sb.* Junker, Gesell, Jung-gesell; Baccalaureus; -elrye (-il) *sb.* Junkerschaft, junger Adel.

bacyn *sb.* Schlüssel.

bacon *sb.* Speck, geräuchertes Fleisch (V. 6000: als Gegensatz zu frischem Fleisch).

badde *adj.* schlecht, schlimm, böse; -er *comp.*

baillif, -y, *sb.* Rentvogt.

baite(n) *v.* weiden; (on) sich nähren von.

bakbite(n) *v.* verleumden.

bake-mete *sb.* Fastete.

Baldeswelle Baldswell (Ort i. Norfolk).

bal sb. Leib, Trübsal.

balled *adj.* fahl.

Balthasar Belsazar.

bane *sb.* Verhängnis, Todesursache.

banes *dial.* = bones.

Barbarie Barbarenland.

barbre *sb.* Barbar.

bar(e) 1. *adj.* bloß, dürrig, leer; deutlich; 2. *pt.* *j.* bere(n).

bareyne *adj.* bar, dürr, öde, unfruchtbar.

barm *sb.* Schoß; b. -clooth *sb.* Schürze.

Barnabo: B. Visconti, Herzog v. Mailand († 1385).

baronage *sb.* Freiherrnstand, -schaft.

barre 1. *sb.* Barren, Streifen. 2. *v.* streifen.

Basilie Basilius d. Große, Bischof v. Cäsarea (Kirchenvater, 324—79).*)

basilikok *sb.* Basiliſk (fabelhaft).

bataille *sb.* Kampf; -ed *ppt.* gezacht.

baude, -aw-, *sb.* Kuppler, -in; -erye *sb.*

Kuppellei, Unkeuschheit.

baudy *adj.* schmutzig.

bawdryk *sb.* Schultergurt.

Bayard: Pferdename.

bayte *j.* baite.

be *j.* auch bi-

bechen *adj.* buchen.

bed *sb.* Bett, Beet; humble b. niederer Stand; bedde *dat.*, *j.* a-; -dyng(e) *vsb.* Lager; -rede *adj.* bettlägerig, schwer krank.

bede *ppt.* *j.* bidde.

bedes *sb. pl.* Bettſchnüre.

be(e) *j.* been

be(e)de *st. v.* (an)bieten, gebieten; bede *pt.*;

bode(n) *ppt.*

beek *sb.* Schinabel.

beel(e) (frz.) schön; b. amy guter Freund; -e cheere freundliche Bewirtung; bele chose schönes Ding (weibl. Scham).

beem *sb., pl.* bemes 1. Balken. 2. Strahl; vgl. beme.

be(e)n, be(n) 1. *v.* sein, bestehen; be(e)th *pl. pr. & impt.*; be(e)n, be(e), auch ybe, *ppt.* 2. *pl. v.* bee. Biene (auch bees).

beer *j.* bere.

beere *sb.* Bähre.

be(e)st 1. *sb.* Tier, Vieh. 2. best *supl.* zu bet.

beeten(n) *v.* ausbejjern, abhelfen; ansachen; bette *pt.*; vgl. bete.

be(e)th *j.* been.

beggestere *sb.* Bettler, -in.

bekke(n) *v.* nicken.

bele *j.* beel.

belle *sb.* Glode (V. 709: Wirtshaus).

Belmarye Palmyra? Benamarin?

bely *sb.* 1. Bauch; b. -naked splitternaakt. 2. Blasebalg.

beme *sb.* Zinken; vgl. beem.

bende(n) *v.* biegen, spannen; bente *pt.*; bent *ppt.*, gebogen, gewölbt; *j.* bent.

bendyng(e) *vsb.* Versehen mit Schrägstreifen bene *sb.* Bohne. [(=balken).

benedicite(e) *interj.* (verkürzt spr. bendiste) bei Gott! Gott behüt', G. bewahre, G. helfe!

Benedight: Benedikt von Nursia, Gründer d. Mönchsorden (529).

benefice *sb.* Pfründe.

Beneit Benedikt, *j.* o.

bent *sb., -e dat.* Abhang; *j.* bende

benysoun *sb.* Segen.

berd *sb.* Bart; make a b. e. Zopf (Bart) drehen, täuschen.

bere *sb.* Bär.

bere(n) *st. v.* tragen, ertragen; gebären; stoßen, werfen; *refl.* sich benehmen, halten; (witness) ablegen; ba(a)r, beer *pt.*; boren, (y)boren, (y)bore *ppt.*, borne, (y)bore *flekt.*; b. on hond(e) (fälschlich) anklagen, vorwerfen, einreden, weismachen; b. doun unterdrücken, widerlegen; born(e), (y)bore (auch) von Geburt; *j.* soore.

berme *sb.* Bärme.

Bernard 1. B. Gordonius, berühmter Arzt, Prof. in Montpellier (14. Jh.). 2. St. Bernhard (v. Clairvaux (1091—1153); verf. 'Sermones' u. a.

bern(e) *sb.* Scheune.

Berwyk: Berwick-on-Tweed, nördlichste St. Englands.

berye 1. *sb.* Beere. 2. -e(n), -ie *v.* begraben. best *f.* beest.

bet (auch *bettre*) *adv. comp.* besser; *go b.* geh rasch.; *b. than* wel noch mehr.

bete(n) *st. v.* schlagen, schmieden; *bette, pt.*

(y)bet(e)n, (y)bet *ppt.*; vgl. beet(e)n.

beth *f.* bee(n).

bever *sb.* Biber.

Beves: Bevis von Hamtoun, Held e. megl.

Rittergebiets.

beyen(n), bye(n) *v.* kaufen; erkaufen, bezahlen; erlösen; *bo(u)ghte pt.* (y)boght

bi- *f.* auch *by*— [*ppt.*]

bibbed *ppt.* eingesogen, =geschlürft

bibled *ppt.* mit Blut bedekt.

bicched[?]bones Knöchel (zum Würfel-)

biclappe(n) *v.* fangen. [*spiel*].

bidaffed *ppt.* betört.

bidde(n) *st. v.* bitten, beten; gebieten; *bit,*

biddeth 3. *s. pr.*; *bad pt.*; *bede(n) ppt.*;

vgl. beede.

bifalle(n) *st. v.* geschehen; *bifel, bifal pt.*

bifore(e)n, bifo(o)re *prp.* vor; *adv.* vorn, voran; im Vorderhaupt (V. 1876); vorher, ehemals.

bigete(n) *st. v.* erzeugen, *inf. & ppt.*

bigiler *sb.* Verführer.

bigon *ppt.* umgeben; *wel b.* wohlgemut, *wo b.* weherfüllt.

bigonne *f.* u.

bigynne(n) *st. v.* beginnen; *bigan pt.*; *bigonne* 2. *s. & pl. pt.*; *bigonne ppt.*

biholve (*dat.* = auf Seiten); *on . . b.* um

. . . willen.

biheeste *sb.* Verheißung, Versprechen.

biheete(n), -hoote(n) *irr. v.* verheissen, versprechen; *bihighte pt.*, *bihight ppt.*

biholde(n) *st. v.* erblicken; achtgeben (auf), behüten.

bihote *f.* biheete.

bihove(n) *v.* geziemen, gebühren; -ly *adj.*

angemessen; (*f.* böes).

biknowe(n) *st. v.* bekennen; *biknewe pt.*

bileve 1. *sb.* Glaube, Glaubensbekenntnis;

2. -(n) *v.* a) glauben, b) bleiben.

bille *sb.* Zettel, Bittschrift; *b. of somonce* Vorladungsbefehl; *b. of Venus werkes* Liebesbrieflein.

Bilyea Bilia, Gemahlin d. Konjuls Duilius (siegte 260 v. Chr.).

biquethe(n) *st. v., inf. & ppt.* verleihen, vererben.

bireve(n) *v.* rauben, berauben; *birafte* (-reft) *pt.*, *biraft* (-reued) *ppt.*

biseke(n) *v.* ersuchen, (an) flehen; *bisoghte*

bis(e)mare *sb.* Hohn. [*pt.*]

bisette(n) *v.* verwenden, einrichten; *ver-*

bringen, anbringen, setzen; *bisette pt.*;

biset ppt.

biseye *ppt.* von Aussehen, anzuschauen.

bishrewe(n) *v.* verwünschen, verfluchen.

biside(s) 1. *prp.* neben; *of b.* aus der Nähe

von. 2. *adv.* nebenher.

bisie(n) *v.* sich bemühen.

bisy *adj.* geschäftig, lebhaft, eifrig, strebsam;

unruhig, bange; -ness *sb.* Geschäft, Be-

schäftigung, Geschäftigkeit, Tätigkeit, Eifer.

bismotered *ppt.* beschmugt.

bispet *ppt.* bespien (vgl. spetten).

bistad *ppt.* bedroht, angsterfüllt.

bit *f.* bidde.

bitake(n) *st. v.* überlassen, überweisen, emp-

fehlen; *bitook pt.*

biteche(n) *v.* übergeben, weihen.

bithenke(n), bithynken, *v.* bedenken, er-

denken, *refl.* überlegen; *bithoght ppt.*

bitore *sb.* Rohrdommel. [*bedacht*].

bitrayse(n), bytraye(n) *v.* verraten.

bityde(n) *v.* geschehen, zustoßen; *bitid[de]*

bitynge *f.* byte. [*ppt.*]

biwreye(n) *v.* offenbaren, verraten; *bi-*

wreyd *ppt.*

(a-)blakeberyed *ppt.* [?] Brombeeren

suchen, in d. Irre, d. „Nichten“ (gehen).

blaked *ppt.* geschwärzt.

blandise(n) *v.* schmeicheln.

blankmanger *sb.* Sahnenspeise.

blasphemour *sb.* Lästerer.

Blee: Blean Forest (Hügel bei Canterbury).

blende(n) *v.* blenden, täuschen; *blente pt.*;

(y)blent *ppt.*

blere(n) *v.* trüben, blenden; -ed is thyn(e)ye

du wirst hintergangen.

blew 1. *adj.* blau; 2. *pt. v.* blowe(n).

bleynte *pt. v.* blenche(n) stutzen, auffahren,

zurückschrecken; (y)bleynt *ppt.*

blis(se) *sb.* Heil, Glückseligkeit; Pracht;

-ful *adj.* glücklich, segensreich; -sse(n)

v. segnen.

blondre(n) *v.* herumtappen, stolpern.

blosme *sb.* Blüte; -(n) *v.* blühen; -my

adj. blütenreich.

blynne(n) *v.* aufhören.

blyve *adv.* schleunig(st).

bobance *sb.* Prahlerei.

Bobbe-up-and-down „Hops auf und nieder“, D. am alten Wege von London n. Canterbury, jetzt Feld [?].

boce *sb.* Geschmuck; j. boos.

bocher *sb.* Schlächter.

bode(n) *ppt.* j. beede.

body *sb.* Leib, Körper; Person; Hauptteil.

Boece Boethius († 525); verf. 'De consolatione philosophiae', überg. v. Chaucer, u. 'De musica'.

boës *dial.*, 3. *s. pr.* geizig; j. bihove(n).

boght(e) *f.* beye.

Boghton Boughton, D. nahe Canterbury.

boistous *adj.* tauh, verb.; -ly *adv.* ungestüm.

bok(e)ler *sb.* Rundschild; -e(n) *v.* anschauen.

boket *sb.* Eimer.

bole *sb.* Bull, Stier.

bolle *sb.* Schale, Napf.

Bologne 1. Boulogne (V. 465) 2. Bologna.

bolt *sb.* Bolzen; b. upright lang ausgestreckt (j. upright).

bomble(n) *v.* trommeln.

bond 1. *sb.* Band; Bund, Vertrag; Zauber-
knoten. 2. *pt.*, j. bynde(n).

bonde *sb.* Knecht, Diener, -in, Sklave, -in;
b.-folk Leibeigenschaft; b.-man Leib-

boole *f.* armonyak. [eigener.

boon *sb.* Knochen; bones *pl.*; brent *b.*
Weinschwarz; V. 12252 verd. aus domini.

boone *sb.* Bitte, Gesuch; Gabe, Gunst.

boor *sb.* Eber; bores *gen.* & *pl.*

boos *sb.* Budel (j. boce).

boost *sb.* Prahlerei, Aufgeblasenheit, Stolz;
craketh *b.* prahlt laut, kraseelt; -e(n) *v.*

boot *f.* byte(n). [prahlen.

boote *sb.* 1. Hilfe, Heilung, Latsal; do *b.*
wohlthun. 2. Stiefel.

boras *sb.* Borax.

bord *sb.* Tafel; Kost; Bord; bigynne the
b. d. Ehrenplatz an der Tafel einnehmen.

bore(n) *f.* bere(n).

borel, bu., *sb.* großes Zeug; „Lumpen“;
— *adj.* roh, ungebildet; b. man Laie.

borwe 1. *sb.* Pfand, Bürge. 2. -(n) *v.*
borgen.

botel *sb.* 1. Flasche. 2. Bündel.

boterflye *sb.* Schmetterling.

botme *sb.* Boden.

bough *sb.* Zweig, Ast; bowes *pl.*

bouk *sb.* Bauch.

bounde 1. *sb.* Grenze, Schranke. 2. *ppt.*,
j. bynde.

bountee *sb.* Güte, Freundlichkeit, Wohlthat,
bounteous *adj.* wohlthätig. [Tugend.

bour *sb.* Stube, Kammer.

bourde 1. *sb.* Spaß. 2. -(n) *v.* ipaßen.

bowe *sb.* Bogen; j. dogge. — bowes *j.*

bown *adj.* (ppt.) bereit, fertig. [bough.

boydekyn *sb.* Dolch.

boyste *sb.* Büchse.

bracer *sb.* Armlehne.

Bradwardyn Thomas B., Erzbisch. v. Canter-
bury († 1349); verf. 'De causa Dei'.

bragot *sb.* Würzgebräu (aus Bier u. Malz).

brak *f.* breke.

brasile *sb.* roter Farbstoff (aus Brasilholz).

brast *f.* breste(n).

brat *sb.* Lappen, Kleidungsstück, Hülle usw.;
— b.-ful *e.* Schürze voll.

brawn *sb.* Muskel; Fleisch (bes. d. Ebers).

brede 1. *sb.* Breite. 2. -(n) *v.* brüten, auf-
ziehen; bred *ppt.*

breech *sb.* (kurze) Hose.

breem *sb.* Waise, Karawache (?).

breke(n) *st. v.* brechen, unterbrechen; brak
pt.; breeke *constr.*; broke(n) *ppt.*; b.

harm kleine Leiden.

brembul *sb.* Busch mit dornigen Ranken;
wilde Rose; Brombeere.

breme *adj.* & *adv.* heftig.

bren *sb.* Kleie.

brenne(n), bry- *v.* verbrennen, brennen;

brente, brende *pt.*, brent, brend *ppt.*

brere *sb.* Dorstrauch; -s *pl.* Gestrüpp.

brestr *sb.* j. brist.

brestr(e)n *st. v.* bersten, (aus)brechen, stürzen;

brestr 3. *s. pr.*; brast *s.*, broste(n), bruste
pl. pt.; brosten *ppt.*

brethful *adj.* rambvoll.

bretherhede *sb.* Brüderschaft.

brew *pt.* braute (ersam).

breyde(n) *v.* auffahren, erwachen; (herab)-
ziehen; breyde *pt.*; b. out of his wit
verlor den Verstand.

bri- *f.* auch bry-.

brid (bryd) *sb.* Vogel (bes. junger B.); (als
Lieblos.) Täubchen; parlement of briddes:
Chaucers Dichtung.

brigge *sb.* Brücke.

bright *adj.* licht, blank; hold, hehr; -nesse
sb. Glanz.

brike *sb.* Falle, Schlinge.

brist, brestr *sb.* Brust; b. -plate Brustharnisch.

Brixseyde Brixen.

brocage *sb.* Mafferci, Kuppellei.

brode *adv.* breit, weit; deutlich. — *adj.*

Brok *sb.* Gaul (Pferdenname?) [brood.

brokkyng *ppr.* trillernd.

Brom(e)holm: Abtei in Norfoll.

brond *sb.* Brand, Jafel.

broste *f.* breste(n).

brotel *adj.* gebrechlich, hinfällig, unzuverlässig; -*ness* *sb.* Hinfälligkeit usw.
brother *sb.* Bruder, Freund; auch *gen.*
browed *ppt.* gestift.
browdyng *vsb.* Stiderei.
brouke(n) *v.* gebrauchen; behalten.
broyded *ppt.* geflochten. — **broyden** (**brouded**?) *ppt.* gestift.
Brugges Brügge.
bruste *f.* breste(n).
brustle *sb.* Borste.
Brutus Cassius: für eine Person gehalten (?) V. 15393.
brybe(n) *v.* stehlen, betrügen; **briberyes** *sb. pl.* Diebereien.
bryd *f.* brid.
brydel *sb.* Zügel.
bryge *sb.* Zank, Fader.
brynge(n) *v.* bringen; **brynges** 3. *s. pr. dial.*; **broghte** *pt.*; (*y*)**broght** *ppt.*
brynnen *f.* brennen.
buf *interj.* buff! (beim Nülpfen).
bugle-horn *sb.* Büffelhorn, Trinkhorn.
bukke *sb.* Boß; **blowe the -s horn** = sich umsonst bemühen.
bulte(n) 1. *v.* sieben. 2. *f.* buylde(n).
Burdeaux Bordeaux; B. -ward nach B.
burdo(u)n *sb.* Baß.
burel *f.* borel.
burgeys *sb.* Bürger.
burned *ppt.* glänzend, blank, schimmernd.
Burnel: 'Burnellus seu speculum stultorum' v. Nigel Wirreker (12. Jh.).
burthe, **by-**, *sb.* Geburt.
buryeles *sb. pl.* Grabstätten.
Busirus Busiris, König v. Agypten.
busk *sb.* Busch.
but *conj.* & *adv.* außer (wenn), wenn nicht; aber; ob; nur, bloß, rein, just; b. and wenn; b. as nur daß; b. if wenn nicht, als daß, außer wenn.
butiller *sb.* Mundschentf.
buxom *adj.* gehorsam, folgsam, demüthig, entgegenkommend.
buylde(n) *v.* bauen; **bulte** *pt.*
by- *f.* auch **bi-**.
by *prp.* bei; von, durch; an; mit; über, in betreff; *adv.* nahe bei, vorbei; **by and by** nebeneinander, daneben.
byde(n) *st. v.* warten, verweilen, bleiben; **bood** *pt.*; **byden** *ppt.*
bye *f.* beye. — **byyng** *vsb.* Einkauf.
byg, **big**, *adj.* stark, kräftig.
byjape(n) *v.* verspotten, täuschen.
byle *sb.* Schnabel.
bynne *sb.* Kasten.

bynyme(n) *st. v.* fortnehmen, entreißen.
byrthe *f.* burthe.
byscorned *ppt.* verspottet.
byte(n) *st. v.* beißen, fressen, schneiden; **bitynge** *ppr.* scharf geschliffen; **boot** *pt.*; **bite(n)** *ppt.*
C *f.* auch **K**.
ca(a)s *sb.*, auch *pl.* 1. Fall, Zufall, Rechtsfall; *par c.*, *vp-on c.* zufällig; *f.* as. 2. Röcher.
cacche(n) *v.* fangen, fassen, nehmen, erlangen; **caughte** *pt.*; **he c.** ihn erfaßte; **caught** *ppt.*
Cacus: ein Riese.
Cadme Cadmus.
cake *sb.* Gladen, (flacher) Kuchen (auch Brotteig).
calceniynge *vsb.* Verkalken, Drydieren; -**cinacioun** *sb.* Verkalkung, Drydation.
Calixtopee Callisto (Nymphe).
calle 1. *sb.* Haarnez, Haube (?). 2. -**e(n)** *v.* nennen, rufen.
camaille *sb.* Kamel.
Cambises Cambyses, König v. Perrien.
Cambyuskan Dschengis-ghan († 1227).
camuse (ka-) *adj.* stumpf, platt.
Canacee 1. Canace; *f.* Ov. Her. 11. 2. Tochter des Königs Cambyuskan (*f.* o.).
cancer *sb.* Krebs (Sternbild); -**cre** *sb.* Krebsgeschwür.
Cane Kana (Joh. II, 1 ff.).
canon *sb.*: 'Liber canonis' d. Avicenna (*f.* o.).
Cantebregge, -**brigge** Cambridge.
cantel *sb.* Bruchstück.
cape(n) *v.* stieren, gaffen (*f.* gape).
Cappaneus Capaneus, e. der Sieben vor Theben.
cappe *sb.* Kappe, Mütze; **sette c.**: zum Besten haben, 3. Narren machen.
capul, -**il**, *sb.* Gaul; **caples** *pl.*
cardynacle, *sb.* (verb. *f.* cardiacle) Sod-careyne *sb.* Leichnam. [brennen.
carf *pt.* *f.* kerve.
cariage *sb.* Beförderung, Fuhrlohn; -**es** *pl.* Abgaben, Zölle.
carl *sb.* Kerl.
carole *sb.* Tanzlied; -(n) *v.* e. L. singen (u. tanzen).
carpe(n) *v.* schwagen.
carryk *sb.* Karake (Lastschiff).
Cartage Carthago (Cartagena V. 405?).
Cassidorie Magnus Aurelius Cassiodorus, röm. Schriftsteller (480–576); *verb.* u. a. 12 Bch. 'Variarum.'

cast *sb.* Plan, Anschlag, Gelegenheit; *pl.* Schliche; -e(n) *v.* werfen, schleudern; aus-
senden; überlegen, sinnen; berechnen,
schätzen; *refl.* sich hingeben; *caste* *pt.*;
cast (casten) *ppt.*

castelled *ppt.* gezackt.

catel *sb.* Hab und Gut, Besitz.

(a-)caterwawed *ppt.* (auf den) Katersteig
(gehen).

Catoun Dionysius Cato, vers. 'Disticha de
moribus', im M. beliebte Spruch-
sammlung.

cause Ursache, Grund; erste *c.* Urgrund;
by *c.* weil; *c.* why warum, d. Grund ist
cavillacioun *sb.* Spigfindigkeit. [(war).

Caym Rain.

caytif (kai-) *sb.* Glender, Bedauernswerter;
caytyves *pl.*; *adj.* elend, jammervoll.

Cedalus Ccedajus.

ceint (cey-) *sb.* Gürtel.

celer *sb.* Keller; -rer *sb.* Kellermeister.

celle *sb.* Zelle; kleines Kloster, Klosterfiliale;
c. fantasyk *B.* (im Gehirn) als Sitz der
Phantasie.

Cenobia Zenobia, Königin v. Palmyra
(3 Jh. n. Chr.).

centaure *sb.* Tausendgülstenkraut.

Centauros *pl.*? Zentauren.

centre *sb.* Mittelpunkt; -is *pl.* Punkte
(auf dem Weg d. Astrolabiums).

cercle *sb.* Kreis, Ring; Sphäre.

cered *ppt.* mit Wachs überzogen (od. ver-
cerial (*adj.*) ook Steineiche. [schlossen].

ceriously *adv.* ernstlich, gründlich [lat.
seriose?]

certein, -eyn *adj.* gewiß; — *sb.* Gewiß-
heit, Sicherheit; a *c.* eine gewisse Zahl,
Summe, ziemlich viel.

certes *adv.* gewiß, sicherlich, wahrlich.

ceruce *sb.* Bleiweiß.

cesse(n) *v.* aufhören, ablassen.

cetewale *sb.* Zitterer, Badrian.

Ceys Ceyg, Gemahl der Achone (s. o).

chaar *sb.* Wagen.

chace(n) *v.* jagen, treiben; *ch.* forth be-
schleunigen.

chaffare 1. *sb.* Handel, Geschäft, Ware.
2. -(n) *v.* handeln.

challenge(n), -ange(n) *v.* fordern, bean-
spruchen, verlangen; -yng *vsb.* Forde-
rung, Klage.

chalons *sb.* *pl.* Bettdecke aus Chalon(stoff).

chamberere *sb.* Kammerfrau.

chambre *sb.* Zimmer; *ch.* of Venus weibl.
Geschlechtsteil.

champartie *sb.* Gleichgewicht.

chano(u)n *sb.* Kanonikus, Stiftsherr.

chaped *ppt.* beschlagen.

chapeleyn, -e *sb.* Kaplan, =in.

chapitre *sb.* Kapitel, geistl. Gerichtshof.

chapman *sb.* Kaufmann; -hede, -hode
sb. Handelsgeschäft.

charbocle *sb.* Kartunkel.

charge 1. *sb.* Last, Gewicht; Bedeutung,
Wichtigkeit; Verwahrung, Auftrag, Auf-
gabe; Sorge; Vorwurf; of that no *ch.*
doch das nebenbei. 2. -e(n) *v.* beladen;
ermahnen, anempfehlen.

chargeant *adj.* lästig.

charitee *sb.* Barmherzigkeit, Gnade; Fröm-
migkeit, Andacht.

Charles Karl d. Große (V. 15 475).

charmes *sb.* *pl.* Zauberei.

chartre *sb.* Vertrag, Kontrakt.

chaste(n) züchtigen; *chasted* *ppt.* gewarnt,
belehrt.

chasteyn(e) *sb.* Kastanie.

Chaucer: V. 4467, 13 599 ff., 13 823 ff.:
Selbstironie.

chaunce *sb.* Zufall, Geschick; Wurf; good
ch. Glück.

chauncel *sb.* Kirchenchor.

chaunte(n) *v.* singen; -rie *sb.* Stiftung
für Messejungen.

chayer *sb.* Stuhl, Lehnstuhl; Tragsessel.

cheef *sb.* u. *adj.* Haupt...

cheep *sb.* Kauf; greet *ch.* billiger K.;
f. chepe.

cheere, **chiere** *sb.* Antlitz, Miene, Ge-
bärde; Aussehen, Erscheinung; Benehmen;
(freundlicher) Empfang, Bewirtung; ma-
ken *ch.* (freundlich) empfangen, heitere
Miene zeigen.

chees *f.* chese.

cheeste *sb.* Streit, Kampf.

cheeue(n) *v.* enden.

chepe(n) *v.* kaufen, feilschen um; Chepe,
Stadtteil in London, jetzt Cheapside.

cherice(n) *v.* lieben, wert halten; beschützen.

cherl *sb.* Kerl, Bauer, Leibeigner, Knecht;
-yssch *adj.* grob, plump.

cherubynnes *sb.* *gen.* Cherub, Engels.

chese(n) *st.* *v.* wählen, vorziehen; *chees*
impt. u. *pt.*; -yng(e) *vsb.* Wahl.

cheste, **chiste** *sb.* Kasten, Truhe, Sarg.

cheueteyn, **chiefteyn** *sb.* Anführer, Haupt;
adj. hauptsächlich.

chevyssaunce *sb.* Anleihe.

chichivache: Ungeheuer, d. nur gute Frauen
fraß, daher abmagerte.

chidestere *sb.* Zänkerin; f. chyde.

chiere *f.* cheere.

chiertee *sb.* Neigung, Liebe.
 chiknes *sb. pl.* Kiden.
 child *sb.* Kind; Burſche, Junker; -e *dat.*
 (with *ch.* ſchwanger); -hede *sb.* Kindheit.
 chilyndre *sb.* Zylinder, tragbare Sonnenuhr.
 chirche *sb.* Kirche; *ch.-dore* Kirchthür
 (vor der Trauungen ſtandanden); *ch.-*
hawe Kirchhof; *ch.-reve* Kirchenvogt,
 -vorſteher.
 chirkyng(e) *vsb.* Kreiſchen, Gefreiſch.
 chirteth 3. *s. pr.* (chirketh?) zwiſchert.
 chisel *sb.* Meiſſel, Schere.
 chiste *f.* cheſte.
 chit *f.* chyde.
 chitere(n) *v.* zwiſchern, ſchwachen.
 chivalrye *sb.* Ritterlichkeit, Ritterschaft.
 chuk *sb.* Glud; -kke(n) *v.* gluden.
 chyde *v.* ſchelten, ſchimpfen; *chit* 3. *s. pr.*;
 chidde *pt.*
 chymbe 1. *sb.* Rinnne, Rand. 2. *v.* läuten,
 ertönen.
 chymenee *sb.* Herd.
 chyuachie, -ee *sb.* Ritt, Reiterſtück; Feldzug.
 ci- *f.* auch cy-, ſi-.
 Cipion Scipio Africanus; vgl. Macrobeus.
 Cipre Cypern; *f.* Petro.
 Circes Kirke.
 Cirus Kyruſ, König v. Perſien.
 ciser *sb.* ſtarkeſes Getränk (Scherbet?).
 Citherea Kythera (Weiname d. Venus).
 Cithero(u)n Kythaeron (Waldgebirge); im
 M. verwechſelt mit d. Inſel Kythera
 (*f. v.*) als Sig d. Venus.
 citole *sb.* Saiteninstrument, Zither.
 citrinacioun *sb.* zitronengelbe Färbung
 (als günſtiges Zeichen *f. d.* Gelingen d.
 Experimentis).
 citryn *adj.* zitronengelb.
 cladde *f.* clothe(n).
 clamb *f.* clymbe(n).
 clappe 1. *sb.* Geſtapper, Geſchwäh. 2. -(n)
v. flappen, zuſchlagen; klappern, plappern;
 clapte *pt.*
 clarioun *sb.* Zinken.
 clarree *sb.* Würwein.
 Claudius 1. Klient d. Appian Cl. 2. röm.
 Kaiſer (268—70)
 Claudyan Claudius Claudianus, röm. Dich-
 ter (um 400 n. Chr.), verſ. 'De raptu
 Proserpinae'.
 clause *sb.* Satz; ſhortly in a. c. in der
 Kürze; in a. l. c. mit wenigen Worten.
 clawe(n) *v.* fragen, reiben; yclawed *ppt.*
 zertragt.
 cleer *adj.*, -e *pl. u. adv.* rein, hell, glänzend.
 Clemence *sb.* Milde (Gotttheit).

clene *adj.* rein, ſauber, nett; *adv.* rein,
 gänzlich.
 clepe(n) *v.* nennen, ruſen, beruſen; clepte
pt.; (y)clept *ppt.*
 clergeon *sb.* Schülerchen.
 clergial *adj.* gelehrt.
 clerk *sb.* Student, Scholar; Weiſſicher
 Gelehrter, Schriftſteller.
 cley *sb.* Lehm.
 clift *sb.* Spalte, Kerbe; -e *dat.*
 clippe(n) *v.* 1. (Haar)ſchneiden. 2. umarmen.
 Cliternystra Rhytaemneſtra.
 clobbered *ppt.* knotig.
 clom *interj.* pfi!
 clomb(en) *f.* clymbe(n).
 clo(o)s 1. *adj.* geſchloſſen. 2. *sb.* Einzäu-
 nung, Hof.
 clooth *sb.* Tuch, Zeug; Kleid.
 closure *sb.* Einzäunung, Gehege.
 clote-leef *sb.* Klettenblatt
 clothe(n) *v.* (be)kleiden; cladde *pt.*; clad
ppt. (V. 294: eingebunden).
 clothered *ppt.* geronnen, verhärtet.
 clout, clowt *sb.* Lappen, Fegen, Stück Zeug.
 clowe-gylofre *sb.* Gewürznelke, -näglein.
 cloysterer *sb.* Kloſtermönch, Klausner.
 cloystre *sb.* Kloſter, Klauſe.
 clyket, cli- *sb.* Schließſelchen.
 clymbe(n) *st. v.* klettern, ſteigen; clomb
 (clamb) *pt.*; clo(u)mbe *ppt.*
 coagulat *adj.* geronnen.
 cod *sb.* Saß.
 coire *sb.* Kaſten, Kiſte, Truhe.
 coillons *sb. pl.* Hoden.
 cok 1. *sb.* Hahn. 2. *interj.* ſiſiſi!
 cokenay *sb.* Weichling, Memme, „Pinjel“.
 cokewold *sb.* Hahnrei.
 cokkel *sb.* Treſpe, Unkraut.
 cokkes (verb.) Gottes . . ., Poh . . .
 cokkow *sb. & interj.* Kuckuck.
 colblak *adj.* kohliſchwarz.
 coold *adj.* kalt, froſtig; nugloß; -e(n) *v.*
 erkalten.
 coler *sb.* Kragen; -ed *ppt.* mit Halsband
 (verſehen).
 colera, colere *sb.* Galle; — colerik *adj.*
 gallſüchtig, choleriſch.
 colfox *sb.* Brandſchuch.
 collacioun *sb.* Verhandlung.
 Colle: Hundename, „Bello“?
 collect *adj.* geſammelt; c. yeeris Jahres-
 ſummen.
 Cologne Köln (Wallfahrt z. Schrein d.
 hl. drei Könige).
 colour *sb.* Farbe; Anſtrich, Anſchein; Redens-
 art, Flokkel.

colpoun *sb.* Streifen, Bündel.
colt *sb.* Füllen; -es tooth Gang zu Jugend-
 streichen; -ish *adj.* jugendstüch.
columbyn *adj.* taubenartig, Tauben-.
combust *adj.* verbrannt.
come(n) 1. *st. v.* kommen; *cam, coom* *pt.*;
coome(n) *pl.*; *comen* *ppt.*; *com* of *impt.*
 mach schnell!; *ycome* aboute: heran-
 gekommen, erfüllt. 2. *sb.* Kommen.
commendacioun *sb.* Lobpreisung.
commissioun *sb.* Auftrag; Verjüngung, Be-
 stellung.
commun(e) 1. *adj.* gemein, gemeinsam; in
 c. gewöhnlich. 2. *sb.* d. Gemeinen, d.
 gemeine Volk; Gemeinland. 3. -(n) *v.*
 verkehren, umgehen.
compa(a)s *sb.* Umfang, Kreis, Ring; *com-
 passe(n)* *v.* umgeben, planen; -yng *vsb.*
 Umgebung.
comaignable *adj.* gesellig.
comper *sb.* Rumpen, Gebatter.
compleccioun, -exioun *sb.* Gesichtsfarbe,
 Verbesseichaffenheit; Gemütsart.
compleynt *sb.* Mägelied.
complyn *sb.* Komplete (Abendgottesdienst).
composicioun *sb.* Abmachung, Zusammen-
 stellung, Anordnung.
comyn *sb.* Rummel.
con- *i.* auch *com-*.
conceite *sb.* Vorstellung, Einbildung.
conclude(n) *v.* schließen, einschließen; be-
 schließen, abschließen, zum Schluß kommen;
 zusammenfassen.
conclusion *sb.* Schluß, Ende; Beschluß,
 Entschluß; Zweck, Ziel, Ergebnis; Lehre,
 Lehrsatz; *as in c.* schließlich.
condescende(n) *v.* sich herbeilassen, er-
 niedrigen; eingehen (auf), wenden (zu).
condicioun *sb.* Bedingung; Zustand; Eigen-
 schaft, Art, Wesen.
conferme(n) *v.* stärken, festigen; fest an-
 confiture *sb.* Mischung. [lassen.
confort *sb.* Trost, Behagen; *do c.* behaglich
 machen, pflegen; -e(n) *v.* trösten, stärken.
confounde(n) *v.* niederbeugen; verderben,
 verderben.
confus *adj.* bestürzt, betört; -ioun *sb.*
 Verderben, Unheil, Schande; -io *lat.*,
 bezgl. [sicherh. falsch überseht V. 15948].
congregacioun *sb.* Ansammlung.
conjectyng(e) *vsb.* Vermutung.
conscience *sb.* Gewissen; Bewußtsein,
consecrat *adj.* geweiht. [Empfindung.
conseil *sb.* Rat; Ratgeber, Beistand; Ge-
 heimnis; -lle(n) *v.* raten; -llour *sb.*
 Rat, Berater.

consentant *adj.* mitschuldig; -te(n) *v.* über-
 einstimmen, einwilligen; *refl.* sich fügen;
 -ynge (14258) = *lat.* consentaneum
 übereinstimmend, vernunftgemäß.
consequent *sb.* Folge (*lat.* consequens).
considered *prp.* in Betracht.
consistorie *sb.* Gerichtshof.
constable *sb.* (Schloß)vogt; -esse Vögtin.
constance *sb.* Standhaftigkeit.
Constantyn Constantinus Afer (Africanus)
 † 1087, mediz. Schriftsteller: 'Viaticum'
 (überf. a. d. Arab.); 'De coitu'.
construe(n) *v.* erklären, klar machen.
contek *sb.* Streit, Kampf.
contemplaunce *sb.* Betrachtung.
contena(u)nce *sb.* Miene, Antlitz; Haltung,
 Gebaren, Kompliment; Schein, Anschein.
contract *adj.* (*ppt.*) eingegangen in, zu-
 gezogen.
contrarie 1. *sb.* Gegner, Gegensatz (-teil);
 2. *adj.* entgegen. 3. -(n) *v.* widersprechen;
 -ious *adj.* widerspenstig, entgegengesetzt;
 -ioustee *sb.* Gegensatz, Widerspruch.
contree *sb.* Umgegend, Land.
contubernyal *adj.* hausgenösslich.
contumacie *sb.* Halsstarrigkeit; -ax *adj.*
 halsstarrig, trotzig.
convenient *adj.* passend; *convenientz* *pl.*
conversacion *sb.* Umgang, Verkehr.
converte(n) *v.* ändern, abwenden, ab-
 weichen; -tible *adj.* gleichbedeutend.
convoye(n) *v.* geleiten, einleiten.
cop *sb.* Spitze; cope(e) *dat.*
cope *sb.* Chorrod.
coppe, cuppe *sb.* Trinkgefäß, Becher.
cor *i.* *eructavit*.
corage *sb.* Sinn, Gesinnung; Mut, Tat-
 kraft; Neigung, Begier, Begehren usw.;
 -eous *adj.* mutig, heftig, lebhaft.
corde *sb.* Strid, Strang.
cordewane *sb.* Norduanleder.
cordial *sb.* Herzstärkung; "Specificum".
corfew *sb.* Abendbläuten (8 Uhr).
corniculer *sb.* Gehilfe, Sekretär.
corny *adj.* körnig, stark.
coro(u)ne *sb.* Krone, Kranz; -e(n) *v.*
 krönen; -ed *adj.* vollendet.
corosif *adj.* ätzend.
correccioun *sb.* Belehrung; Strafe, Buß-
 geld; Zucht; Zurechtweisung; *correcte(n)*
v. zurechtweisen, belehren, strafen.
corruptable *adj.* vergänglich.
corrumpe(n) *v.* verderben.
corrupcioun *sb.* Fäulnis, Eiter.
cors *sb.* Leib, Person; Leiche.
corse(n), **curse(n)** *v.* verfluchen.

corven *f.* kerven.
 costage *sb.* Kosten, Ausgaben.
 costelewe *adj.* kostspielig.
 cosyn *sb.* Better, Verwandter; *adj.* verwandt, entsprechend; -age *sb.* Bettern, Verwandtschaft.
 cote *sb.* Hütte, Zelle. — co(o)te *sb.* Rock, Kleid; c.-armure (armour) *sb.* Wappenrock.
 couche(n) *v.* legen, (auf)schichten; besetzen; *refl.* sich duken.
 counte(n) *v.* rechnen, schätzen; -tour *sb.* 1. Rechner, Revisor. 2. Kontor.
 countrefete(n) *v.* nachahmen, nachmachen, gleichkommen; -feted *adj.* gekünstelt.
 countretaille *sb.* Gegenseite, Widerhall.
 countrewayte(n) *v.* aufpassen; *refl.* sich in acht nehmen.
 countyng-bord *sb.* Kontortisch.
 coupable (cow-) *adj.* schuldig, strafbar.
 cours *sb.* Lauf, Gang; Zagen; Bahn; Lebenslauf; -er *sb.* Renner, Streitroß.
 courtepy *sb.* kurzer Überrock, Umhang.
 couthe *f.* koude (konne).
 coveiten(n) *v.* begehren, gelüsten; -tise *sb.* Begierde, Habsucht; -tous *adj.* habgierig, begehrtlich.
 covenable *adj.* passend, angemessen; -blely *adv.*
 covenant *sb.* Vertrag, Pakt, Gelübde.
 covent *sb.* Kloster.
 coverchief *sb.* Kopftuch, Kopfschuh, „Bund“.
 covyne *sb.* List, Trug.
 cow *sb.* 1. Kuh; keen *pl.* 2. Dohle (V. 5814; vgl. d. Erzählung v. d. Krähe, V. 17952 ff.).
 coward *adj.* feig; -dye *sb.* Feigheit.
 cowpable *f.* coupable.
 cowplyng *ger.* Paarung; gemeinsamer Gang.
 coy *adj.* still, schüchtern.
 crabbed *ppt.* kräusend.
 cracche(n) *v.* zerkrachen.
 craft *sb.* Kunst, Gewerbe; Geschick; geheime Kraft, Geheimnis; — -ty *adj.* geschickt, geistlich; -ily *adv.* desgl.
 crake(n) *v.* krächzen; *f.* boost.
 crased *ppt.* geborsten.
 crea(u)nce 1. *sb.* Glaube; Kredit. 2. -e(n) *v.* auf Kredit nehmen, borgen.
 creat *adj.* (ppt.) geschaffen.
 crede *sb.* Glaubensbekenntnis, Credo.
 crekes *sb.* *pl.* Risse.
 crepe(n) *v.* kriechen, schleichen; creep (crepte) *pt.*; crope(n) (crept) *ppt.*
 crevace *sb.* Riß, Spalte.
 Crisippus Chrysippus (von Hieronymus — *f.* Jerome — 1. c. erwähnt I, cp. 1.)

Crisostom Chrysostomus, Kirchenvater (ca. 347—407).*)
 cristal stones gläserne Behälter (vgl. V. 700).
 Cristophere St. Christophorus (Brosche mit Bild als Amulett).
 cristyanitee *sb.* Christenvolk.
 croce *sb.* Kreuzstab.
 croked *ppt.* krumm, verschoben.
 crommes *sb.* *pl.* Krümel.
 crop *sb.* Spitze, Gipfel; Sproß, Trieb; -e *dat.*, -pes *pl.* — -en *f.* crepe; — -er *f.* croupe.
 crosselet *sb.*, crosletz *pl.* Schmelztiegel.
 crouche(n) *v.* bekriechen.
 croun (crown) *sb.* Schädel, Scheitel.
 croupe, croper *sb.* Kruppe, Kreuz (Rücken); -er *sb.* Schwanzriemen.
 crowde(n) *v.* treiben, stoßen, schleudern; -dyng *vsb.* Triebkraft, Schwung.
 crowke *sb.* Krucke, Krug.
 croys *sb.* Kreuz.
 crul *adj.* kraus, lockig.
 cryke *sb.* Bucht, Schiffslände.
 cubit *sb.* Elle.
 cucurbit *sb.* Destillierkolben.
 culpe *sb.* Schuld.
 Cupide Cupido; seintes legende of C.: Chaucer's L. of Good Women (V. 4481).
 cuppe *f.* coppe.
 cura(a)t *sb.* Pfarrer.
 curacio(u)n *sb.* Heilung.
 cure *sb.* Sorge, Obhut, Acht; Streben, Eifer; honeste c. Anstandssinn; do c. Sorge tragen.
 curiositee *sb.* Seltsamkeit, Künstelei.
 curious *adj.* seltsam, künstlich; kundig, geistlich; achtzaam.
 cursednesse *sb.* Abscheulichkeit, Berruchtheit, Frevel.
 curteis *adj.* höflich, artig, sittig, bescheiden, freundlich; -sie *sb.* Höflichkeit, Gefälligkeit.
 curtyn *sb.* Vorhang.
 custome *sb.* Gewohnheit; -es *pl.* Zölle, Abgaben.
 cut *sb.* Loß (abgeschchnittenes Stück).
 Cutberd Cuthbert, Bischof von Lindisfarne († 688).
 cynamome *sb.* Zimmet (Schmeichelname).
 cynk, synk *num.* (frz.) fünf (b. Würfelspiel).
 Daf *sb.* Tor, Gauch.
 dagged *ppt.* ausgezackt; -yng(e) *vsb.* Auszacken.
 dagon *sb.* Zipfel.
 daliaunce *sb.* Scherz, Plauderei, Schäkerei.
 Dalida Delilah.

damageous *adj.* schädlich.
 Damascien Johannes Damascenus, arab. Arzt (9. Jh.).
 Damasie Damajus I., Bischof v. Rom (366—84).
 dame *sb.* gnädige Frau; Gebatterin; Mutter, Alte; oure d. Hausfrau, -herrin.
 damoÿsele *sb.* Fräulein.
 dampne(n) *v.* verurteilen, verdammen; -nacioun *sb.* Verdammnis.
 Damyssene (Damass-): Feld, sp. Stadt
 Damaskus, wo Adam geschaffen sein soll.
 Dane Danae.
 Dant Dante Alighieri (1263—1321).
 dappull-gray *adj.* apfelgrau.
 dar *pt.-pr.* wage, erdreiste (mich), darf; dorste *pt.* — dare(n) *v.* sich duden.
 darreyne(n) *v.* seinen Anspruch auf e. geltend machen, streiten um, zum Austrag bringen.
 dart *sb.* Pfeil; Preis (im Wettlauf).
 daswe(n) *v.* starren, stieren.
 daun *sb.* Herr, Meister (Titel).
 daunce *sb.* Tanz; the olde d. v. alte Spiel, d. altbekannte Weise.
 daunger *sb.* Gefahr; Gewalt; Vorsicht, Sparsamkeit; -ous *adj.* schwierig; streng; zurückhaltend, bebenklich, sparsam.
 daw(e)n *v.* tagen, dämmern; -nyng(e) *vsb.* Morgendämmerung.
 dawes *pl.* zu day Tag (gew. daies).
 dayerye *sb.* Molkerei, Milchwirtschaft.
 dayes(e)ye *sb.* Maßliebchen, Gänjesblümchen.
 deba(a)t *sb.* Kampf, Krieg; -ate(n) *v.* kämpfen, streiten.
 debonayr (-aire) *adj.* sanft, demütig; -etee *sb.* Sanftmut, Milde.
 deceyvable *adj.* falsch, (be)trügerisch.
 declynacioun *sb.* Niedergang, (astr.) Declination; Abweichungswinkel (e. Planeten).
 dede 1. *sb.* Tat, Handlung. 2. *adj.* f. deed. 3. *pt.* v. doon (gew. dide).
 dedicaat *adj.* (ppt.) geweiht.
 deduyt *sb.* Vergnügen.
 deed *adj.* tot; dede *flekt. & pl.*; -ly *adj.* u. *adv.* tödlich, tödlich, todwund, Tods.
 deef *adj.* taub; deve *pl.*
 deel *sb.* Teil; every-d. *prn.* alles; *adv.* ganz und gar, vollständig; never-a-d. durchaus nicht, nicht im geringsten.
 de(e)me(n) *v.* urteilen, verurteilen, bestimmen; meinen, vermuten.
 deer *sb.* Tier, Hirsch.
 de(e)re *adj.* lieb, teuer; derre *comp.*; deerelyng *sb.* Liebling, Lieb.

deerne *adj.* heimlich.
 dees, dys *sb. pl.* Würfel.
 defame 1. *sb.* Schande. 2. -(n) *v.* schänden, verleumben (vgl. diffame).
 defaute *sb.* Fehler, Mangel, Frevler.
 defence *sb.* Widerstand.
 defende(n) (deff-) *v.* verbieten, verteidigen; -daunt *sb.* Verteidigung.
 deffie, diffye *v.* Troß bieten, verachten, schmähen.
 defoule(n) *v.* beschmutzen.
 degise *adj.* entstellt, (mobisch) übertrieben; -synesse *sb.* mod. Überreibung, Affektiertheit; -syng *vsb.* affektierte Kleidung.
 degree *sb.* Grad; Stand, Rang; Fall, Lage.
 deigne(n) *v.* geruhen; hym—d nat er verschmähte, war zu stolz.
 deitee *sb.* Gottheit, göttliche Herrschaft.
 dekne *sb.* Diakonus.
 delibere(n) *v.* überlegen.
 delica(a)t *adj.* zart, weichlich; köstlich, kostbar; -casie *sb.* Vergnügen, Übermut.
 delices *sb. pl.* Wonne.
 delit *sb.* Lust, Freude, Vergnügen; -e(n) *v.* sich erfreuen (an); -able *adj.* reizend, entzückend.
 delivere 1. *adj.* rüstig, behend; -rly *adv.*; -rnesse *sb.* Rüstigkeit, Gewandtheit; 2. -e(n) *v.* befreien.
 Delphos (*lat. acc.*) Delphi.
 delys *f.* flour.
 dem- *f.* deem-.
 Demetrius D.icator, König v. Syrien, v. d. Parthern besiegt († 126).
 demeyne *sb.* Herrschaft.
 Democion Demotion, d. Areopagit; f. Tochter tötete sich, als ihr Verlobter fiel (324 v. Chr.).
 demonstratif *adj.* beweiskräftig, unleugbar.
 demonyak *sb.* (vom Teufel) Besessener.
 Demophon Demophoon, Sohn d. Theseus.
 dent, dynt *sb.* Schlage.
 depardieux *interj.* (rzt.) bei Gott!
 departe(n) *v.* (sich) trennen, scheiden; (ver)teilen.
 depe 1. *sb.* Tiefe. 2. *adv.* (zu deep) tief, ernstlich; depper *comp.*
 Depeford Deptford, Städtchen in Kent.
 depper *f.* depe.
 depeynte(n) *v.* abmalen, bemalen; depeint(ed) *ppt.*
 dere(n) *v.* schaden, schädigen, verletzen. — & auch deere.
 derk, dirk *adj.* dunkel, finster, düster; -nesse *sb.* Dunkelheit, Finsternis.
 derre *f.* de(e)re.

Dertemouthe Dartmouth (Seestadt in Devonshire).
 derthe *sb.* Koffspieligkeit.
 des- *f.* auch *dis-*.
 descensories *sb. pl.* Deszenforien (Gefäße z. Ausziehen v. Men).
 desclaundre, *dis-* 1. *sb.* Verleumdung; 2. *-(n)* *v.* verleumben.
 descryve(n) *v.* beschreiben.
 desdeyn *sb.* Verachtung; take, have in d. verjchmähen, jchmähen.
 desherite(n) *v.* enterben.
 deshonestee *sb.* Unanständigkeit.
 desir *-(yr)* *sb.*, *-yng(e)* *vsb.* Sehnsucht.
 deslaved *adj.* ungezügelt, unmäßig.
 desolaat *adj.* bar, bloß; einjam; holde(n) d. meiden.
 desordeynee *adj.*, desordinat *adj.* ungehörig, ausjchweifend.
 despende(n) *v.* ausgeben, aufwenden, vergeuben; -endour *sb.* Ausgeber, Vergeuwer; -ence, -ense *sb.* Ausgabe(n), Aufwand.
 despit *sb.* Hohn, Bosheit; Trotz, Widerwillen; Schmach; -ous *adj.* böshast, verächtlich; trotzig, zornig; jchmachvoll, jchändlich; erbarmungslos.
 desplaye(n) *v.* entfallen.
 desport *sb.* Heiterkeit, Belustigung, Vergnügen.
 desray *sb.* Unordnung, Verwirrung.
 destempred *ppt.* gestört, verdorben.
 destourbe(n) *(dis-)* *v.* führen, hindern.
 destreyne(n) *(dis-)* *v.* quälen; (be)drängen, zwingen; erfassen.
 destroye(n) *v.* vernichten, umbringen; jchädigen.
 destinyee *sb.* Schicksal.
 dette *sb.* Schuld, Verpflichtung; -lees *adj.* schuldenlos; -tour *sb.* Schuldner.
 Deus hic (lat.) Grüß Gott!
 dewe = due.
 deve *f.* deef.
 devel(e) *sb.* Teufel; a. . . d. wey zum T., in drei Teufels Namen!
 devoir *sb.* Pflicht.
 devyne(n) *v.* raten, mutmaßen; *f.* di-
 devys *sb.* Plan, Weisung; at poynt d. jorgfältig; -e(n) *v.* berichten, erzählen; erdenken, planen; raten.
 dextrer *sb.* Streifroß.
 deye 1. *sb.* Milchmagd, Meierin. 2. *-(n)*, dye(n) *v.* sterben; deyde, dyde *pt.*
 deynous *adj.* jrech.
 deyntee 1. *sb.* Lust, Vergnügen; (*pl.*) Vesterbüßen; tolde no d. maß keinen

Wert bei. — 2. *adj.* leder; nett, fein.
 — deyntevous *adj.* leder, köstlich.
 deys *sb.* (erhöhter) Ehrenplatz, Thron.
 Deyscorides Dioskorides, Arzt aus Cilicien (2 Jh. n. Chr.)
 di- *f.* auch *de-* u. *dy-*.
 Dianira, Dianyre Deianira, Gemahlin d. Herkules.
 dich, dych *sb.* Graben; -ed *ppt.* mit e. G. verjehen.
 diffame *sb.* übler Ruf (vgl. defame); -acioun *sb.* Verleumdung.
 diffinicioun *sb.* Begrenzung; (nähere) Bestimmung.
 diffynytyf *adj.* bestimmt, endgültig.
 dighte(n) *v.* (vor)bereiten, (zu)rüsten, beschaffen, besorgen; beschlafen; *refl.* sich begeben, verziehen; dighte *pt.*; dight *ppt.*; ydight geziert.
 digne *adj.* würdig, hehr, heilig; fleiß, hochmütig; -nitee *sb.* Würde, Herrlichkeit.
 dilatacioun *sb.* Ausdehnung, Weiterung.
 diligence *sb.* Fleiß, Eifer; do d. sich bemühen, bestreben.
 direct *adj.* (*ppt.*) gerichtet (an).
 dirk *f.* derk.
 dirryve(n) *v.* abstammen, herleiten.
 dis- *f.* auch *des-*.
 discheuelee *adj.* mit aufgelöstem Haar.
 disciplyne *sb.* geistl. Zucht, Kasteiung (19367 fälschl. = Lehre aufgefaßt).
 disconfityng(e), -fityre *sb.* Niederlage.
 disconfort *sb.* Unmut, Verdruß; -e(n) *v.* entmutigen.
 dis[con]cordaunce *sb.* Zwietracht.
 discovert *adj.* (*ppt.*); at d. ungedekt.
 discrescioun *sb.* Einsicht, Bestand.
 disese *sb.* Not, Qual, Verdruß.
 disfigure 1. *sb.* Verunstaltung. 2. *-(n)* *v.* entstellen.
 dishoneste *adj.* jchimpflich, unteufsch.
 disjoynnt *sb.* Bedrängnis, Notlage.
 disordinaunce *sb.* Geseßwidrigkeit.
 disparage 1. *sb.* Entehrung, Schimpf. 2. *-(n)* *v.* entehren, jchänden.
 dispeir (des-) *sb.* Verzweiflung; -e(n) *v.* (auch *refl.*) verzweifeln.
 displesaunce *sb.* Mißfallen, Argernis; -a(u)nt *adj.* unangenehm, mißfällig.
 dispreyse(n) *v.* herabsehen, tadeln.
 disputisoun *sb.* Wortstreit, Disputation.
 dissimule(n) *v.* sich verstellen, heucheln.
 distemperance *sb.* Rauheit.
 distempre(n) *v.* erzürnen, ärgern.
 diurne *adj.* täglich, Tages-.
 dives *sb.* d. reiche Mann (im Evang.).

divinistre *sb.* Geistlicher, Gottesgelehrter.
 divisioun *sb.* Teilung; Unterschied; Zwist.
 divynails *sb. pl.* Weissagungen.
 divyne(n) (de-) *sb.* sich denken, Vermutungen anstellen.
 doctour *sb.* Doktor; Schriftgelehrter, Kirchenlehrer.
 dogge *sb.* Hund; d. for the bowe Jagdhund.
 doghter *sb.* (auch *gen.*) Tochter; -ren,
 doghty *adj.* tüchtig, mannhaft. [-res *pl.*
 doke *sb.* Ente.
 dok(k)e(n) *v.* kürzen, stußen.
 domes *f.* doom.
 domynacioun *sb.* Herrschaft, Macht, Einfluß; 10668: Vortherrschaft d. Blutes von 9 Uhr abb. bis 3 morg.
 donge 1. *sb.* Dünger, Mist; 2. -e(n) *v.*
 dongeoun *sb.* Burgverlies. [düngen
 doom *sb.* Urteil, Meinung; Gericht; domes *pl.*; domesman *sb.* Richter.
 doon, do *irr. v.* tun, machen; ausführen, ausüben, verrichten, schaffen; zufügen, begeben, erweisen usw.; mit *inf.*: lassen, veranlassen, zwingen; dide *pt.*; doon *ppt.*; (y)do getan, fertig; vorbei, zu Ende; doone *ger.*; for to doone dazu angetan, geeignet; do wey wegtun, unterlassen; of ydon abgenommen; *f.* cure, diligence, fors, etc.
 dormant *adj.* (ppr.) ständig.
 dorste *f.* dar.
 dortour *sb.* Dormitorium, Schlafsaal.
 dotard *adj.* kindisch, verrückt; dote(n) *v.* faseln; make d. verrückt machen.
 doubm, dowmb *adj.* stumm.
 doute *sb.* Zweifel; Furcht, Scheu, Angst; -e(n) *v.* zweifeln; scheuen, fürchten; -lees *adv.* ohne Zweifel.
 douve, -we *sb.* Taube.
 dowaire *sb.* Mitgift, Aussteuer.
 drad(de) *f.* drede.
 draf *sb.* Spreu; d. -sek Strohjad.
 drasty *adj.* bredig.
 drawe(n) *st. v.* ziehen, schleppen; neigen; (zurück)bringen; d. neer sich nähern; drogh, drow *pt.*; (y)drawe(n) *ppt.*
 drecche(n) *v.* drücken; hinschleppen.
 drede 1. *sb.* Furcht; Zweifel; -lees *adj.* furchtlos; unzweifelhaft; dred(e)ful furchtbar; furchtsam, ängstlich. 2. -(n) *v.* (sich) fürchten; ehren; dradde, dredde *pt.*; drad *ppt.*
 drenche(n) *v.* ertrinken; ertränken; dreynthe *pt.*; dreynthe *ppt.*, -e *flekt.*; be d. ertrinken.

dresse(n) *v.* bereiten, herrichten; aufstellen; wenden, richten; anrichten mit, zurichten; *refl.* sich anrichten, wenden, aufstellen; ydressed *pt.* aufgestellt.
 dreye, drye 1. *adj.* trocken, dürr. 2. -(n) *v.* vertrocknen.
 dreynthe *f.* drenche.
 drogges *sb. pl.* Drogen.
 drogh, drow *f.* drawe(n).
 droghte *sb.* Trockenheit, Dürre.
 dronke *f.* drynke(n).
 droof *f.* dryve(n).
 droupe(n) *v.* sinken, herabgezogen werden.
 drovy *adj.* trüb.
 drugge(n) *v.* sich plagen.
 drynke(n) *st. v.* trinken; drank *pt. s.*, dronke *pl. u. ppt.*; (y)dronke *adj.* trunken; dronkelewe *adj.* trunftsüchtig.
 dryve(n) *st. v.* treiben, fahren; schieben; vertreiben; abmachen; droof *pt.*; drive(n) *ppt.*
 duchesse *sb.* Herzogin; book of the D.: Chaucers Gedicht auf d. Tod d. Herzogin v. Lancaster.
 duetee *sb.* Pflicht, Gebühr; Hochschätzung.
 dulle(n) *v.* trüben, verdunkeln; *imps.* es ist lästig, unangenehm, peinlich.
 dun *sb.* Brauner, Rappe; d. is in the myre: ländl. Spiel.
 Dunmowe: D. in Essex; Anspielung auf e. alte Sitte, wonach dort Heleute, die e. Jahr ohne Bant gelebt haben, e. Speckseite erhalten.
 Dunstan: Erzbischof v. Canterbury († 988).
 dure(n) *v.* dauern; verweilen, ausharren.
 duske(n) *v.* sich trüben.
 duszeine *sb.* Duzend.
 dwelle(n) *v.* bleiben, fortfahren; wohnen; -yng *vsb.* Wohnung, Heim.
 dwale *sb.* Schlaftrunk.
 dy (frz.) sage.
 dyapred *ppt.* gebümt.
 dych *f.* dich.
 dye *f.* deye u. dyde *pt.*
 dyere *sb.* Färber.
 dyke(n) *v.* Gräben ziehen, eindämmen.
 dym *adj.* dumpf.
 dynt *f.* dent.
 dys *f.* dees.
 dyvynys *sb. pl.* Geistliche; dyvynytee *sb.* Gottesgelahrtheit, Theologie; *f.* auch div-
 Ecclesiaste *sb.* 1. Prediger, Geistlicher; 2. Prediger Salomo (Wibel).
 ech *prn.*, -e *dat.* jeder.
 echon(e), -oon *prn.* (ein) jeder, jeglicher.

Ector Hektor.

Edward Eduard; seint E.: E. d. Bekenner
(† 1066).

eek, eke *conj.* auch, ebenfalls.

eet f. etc.

effect *sb.* Tat, Wirklichkeit; Sache, Hauptsache; Ergebnis, Erfolg, Folge; in e. tatsächlich; (to) in Bezug auf.

efficiens (*sc. causa*) Wirkung.

eft *adv.* wieder, nachher; -soone(s) *adv.*

alsbald, gleich darauf; künftig, nachmals.

eggen *v.* anreizen, anstiften; -ement *sb.* Anstiftung.

egle *sb.* Adler, Aar.

egre *adj.* scharf, bitter.

egremoyne *sb.* Adermennig.

Egyptien 1. *sb.* Ägypter. 2. ägyptisch;

E. Marie: Heilige, hülte als Einsiedlerin
(5. Zh.).

eighe f. eye.

eir, eyr *sb.* Luft.

eke f. eek.

Ekko Echo (Nymphe; Ov., Met. III, 349).

elaat *adj.* übermütig; elacioun *sb.* Übermut, Anmaßung.

elde *sb.* Alter.

eldres *sb. pl.* Eltern, Vorfahren.

eleccioun *sb.* Wahl (astr.).

Eleyne 1. Helena. 2. St. Helena, Mutter
Konstantins d. Gr.

Eliachim (so Vulgata, Judith IV, 14)
Jesajim (Luther).

Elie Elias (I. Könige, 17 ff.).

Elise Elisa (I. Könige, 19 ff.).

ellebor *sb.* Nieswurz.

elles, -is *adv.* sonst, anders.

elvyss *adj.* foboldartig, unheimlich; weltfremd.

embrace(n) *v.* umarmen, zusammenfassen.

embroude(n) (-browd-) *v.* stiften, verzieren.

embusshement *sb.* Hinterhalt.

emeraude *sb.* Smaragd.

Emeleward (to) nach (der ehem. Provinz)
Amilia hin (Parma usw.).

emforth *prp.* soweit ... reicht.

emperisse *sb.* Kaiserin, Herrscherin.

empeyre(n) *v.* verschlimmern, beflecken.

emplastre(n) *v.* beplastern, überkleben.

empoysone(n) *v.* vergiften; -er(e) *sb.* Giftmischer.

emprente(n) *v.* abdrücken, einprägen;
-tyng *vsb.* Eindruck.

emprise *sb.* Unternehmung, Vorhaben;
kühne Tat, Abenteuer.

empte(n) *v.* leeren.

enbibyng(e) *ppr.* einjagend.

encens *sb.* Weihrauch; -e(n) *v.* W. spenden;
beräuchern.

enchautoun *sb.* Zauberer, Hexenmeister.

enchesoun *sb.* Gelegenheit, Veranlassung;
by e. auf Grund.

encline(n) *v.* neigen, beugen.

encombraunce *sb.* Hindernis; do e. im
Wege sein.

encombren(n) *v.* belasten, bedrängen.

incorporyng(e) *ppr.* einverleibend, ver-
mischend.

encrees *sb.* Zunahme, Zuwachs; Blüte;
Gewinn; encresse(n) *v.* zunehmen,
wachsen, vermehren; gewinnen; hervor-
heben [?].

ende *sb.* Ende; Ziel, Zweck; Schluß, Ab-
schluß; townes, shires, thropes e. Gebiet
einer Stadt u.; miles e. (nach) jeder
zurückgelegten Meile; -ere *sb.* Beender,
-in; -long *adv.* längs, entlang.

endentyng(e) *vsb.* Auszaden.

endettyng *ppt.* verschuldet.

endite(n) *v.* befragen, abfragen; dichten;
berichten; anklagen; -tyng *vsb.* Dichtung;
-ment *sb.* Anklage.

endure(n) *v.* ausdauern, -harren, bleiben.

Enee Aneas; — Eneydos *sb.* Aeneide.

enforce(n) *v.* verstärken; erstarren; *refl.*
sich stützen (auf), sich anstrengen.

enforme(n) *v.* unterrichten, belehren.

engendre(n) *v.* (er)zeugen; entstehen;
-ryng(e) *vsb.* Ergebnis, Produkt; -drure
sb. Zeugung; Erzeugnis, Nachkommen-

engregge(n) *v.* beschweren. [schaft.

engyn *sb.* Erfindungsgabe, Scharfsinn; Ma-
schine; -e(n) *v.* foltern.

enhauce(n) *v.* erheben, erhöhen.

enhorte(n) *v.* ermahnen.

enjoyne(n) *v.* verhängen, auferlegen.

enlumyne(n) *v.* erleuchten.

enlutyn *vsb.* Verkiten.

enoynte(n) *v.* salben; -nte *pl.*, -nt *ppt.*

enprented f. emp-.

enquere(n) *v.* sich erkundigen, nachforschen.

ensample *sb.* Beispiel.

enspire(n) *v.* einflößen, kundschaften.

ensure(n) *v.* versichern.

entencioun *sb.* Absicht; Meinung, Sinn.

entende(n) *v.* beabsichtigen; streben, sich
bestrengen; acht geben (auf); aufwarten
(to).

entente *sb.* Absicht, Plan, Streben; Mei-
nung, Sinn, Gefühl; Verständnis; -tyf
adj. eifrig, beflissen.

enticer *sb.* Verführer; -syng *vsb.* Anreiz,
Verführung.

entierly *adv.* gänzlich.
 entraille *sb.* Eingeweide, Darm.
 entredite(n) *v.* mit dem Interdikt belegen.
 entremette(n) *v. refl.* sich einmischen.
 entune(n) *v.* anstimmen.
 envenyme(n) *v.* vergiften, vergällen;
 -yng(e) *vsb.* Gift.
 enveloped *ppt.* umgarnt.
 envyned *ppt.* mit Wein versorgt.
 equacion *sb.* Gleichung, Proportion.
 equinoxial *sb.* Äquinotialkreis.
 er 1. *adv.* vorher. 2. *ppr.* vor; er that
 noch kein(e), kaum nach; er this vorher.
 3. *conj.* (auch er that) ehe, bevor.
 ercedekene (erche-) *sb.* Archidiacon.
 ere 1. *sb.* Ohr; *pl.* oft erys (-is). 2. -e(n)
v. adern, pflügen.
 Eriphilem Eriphyle (beträt ihren Gatten
 Amphiatas); vgl. Virg., Aen. VI, 445.
 erme(n) *v.* sich betrüben; dost e. machst
 Ermyn *sb.* Armenier. [trüb.
 erraunt *adj.* umherschweifend; theef e.
 Wegelagerer.
 Erro Hero.
 ers *sb.* Arsch, Hinterer.
 erst *adv.* zuerst, vorher; at e. erst.
 eructavit *pf.* d. lat. *v.* eructare, von sich
 geben, eigtl. rülpsen; vgl. Ps. XLV, 2.
 erys f. ere 1.
 eschaunge *sb.* (Geld-)Wechseln.
 eschawfe(n) *v.* erhitzen; entbrennen; -fyng
vsb. Hitze, Gärung.
 eschu, -ew *adj.* scheu, abgeneigt; -ue(n),
 -ewe(n) *v.* scheuen, vermeiden; entinnen.
 ese 1. *sb.* Ruhe; Bequemlichkeit, Erleich-
 terung; Vergnügen, Kurzweil; Gefallen,
 Trost; Verpflegung. 2. -(n) *v.* verpflegen,
 bewirten; trösten, helfen; -ment *sb.* Wohl-
 tat, Trost; -sy *adj.* bequem, eben; ge-
 fällig; mäßig; esily *adv.* bequem; leise.
 espace *sb.* Frist; f. space.
 espece *sb.* Art; f. spece.
 espaille *sb.* Spione (Pl.), Rundschaft.
 espritueel *adj.* geistlich.
 espye 1. *sb.* Spion. 2. -ye(n), -ie(n) *v.*
 erspähen, gewahr werden, erblicken, mer-
 ken, (er)sorschen.
 essoynne *sb.* Rechtfertigung.
 esta(alt) *sb.* Stand, Rang, Stellung; Zu-
 stand; Gebiet; Amtszeit; -lich, -ly *adj.*
 statlich, würdig.
 Estre *sb.* Ostern.
 estres *sb. pl.* Innere, Örtlichkeit.
 Ethiopeen *sb.* Äthiopier, Mohr.
 ete(n) *st. v.* essen, fressen; eet *pl.*; eten *ppt.*
 Euclyde Euklides, griech. Mathematiker.

eve(n) *sb.* Abend; e.-song Abendsang,
 Besperläuten.
 evene *adj. & adv.* gerade, eben, gleich-
 mäßig; gleichmütig, billig; dicht an; bere-
 hym e. vorsichtig, auf der Hut sein. —
 e.-cristene *sb.* Witzgrift.
 everemo, -moore *adv.* für immer, immer-
 dar, immerfort.
 everich (meist vor Vokal u. Subst.); ever-
 ichon (-ychon) *ppm.* jeder, ein jeglicher;
 every (meist vor Konj. u. Adj.); e.-deel
 ew *sb.* Eibe. [f. deel.
 exaltacioun *sb.* Exaltation, höchster Stand
 (e. Planeten; d. h. aströl. Wirksamkeit);
 exaltat *adj. (ppt.)* erhöht.
 exametron *sb.* Hexameter.
 execucioun *sb.* Ausführung; doon e. on
 etwas zur N. bringen, vollstreden; -tour
sb. Vollstrecker.
 expans *adj.* einzeln gezählt, berechnet; vgl.
 collect.
 expounde(n), -owne(n) *v.* deuten, erklären.
 expres *adj. & adv.* ausdrücklich, deutlich;
 -sse(n) *v.* ausdrücken, berichten.
 expulsif *adj.* austreibend, reinigend.
 ey 1. *sb.* Ei. 2. *interj.* ei!
 [e]yē (reimt nur auf -ye) *sb.* Auge; -en *pl.*
 eyle(n) *v.* fehlen, schmerzen; erleiden.
 eyr f. eir.
 eyse *sb.* f. ese; at e. behaglich.
 Ezechie Hiskia (König; f. Jes. XXXVI.).
 Ezechiel Hiesiel.

Face *sb.* Angesicht; (aströl.) Drittel (in e.
 Zeichen d. Tierkreises).
 facound *sb.* Berebbarkeit.
 facultee *sb.* Fähigkeit, Ansehen.
 fader *sb.* Vater; fader, fadres *gen.*
 fadme *sb.* (auch *pl.*) Faden, Klasten.
 fail(l)e 1. *sb.* Feh!, Mangel. 2. -(n) *v.* ver-
 fehlen, mangeln; versagen, aufhören, aus-
 bleiben.
 fair *adj.* schön, hübsch, angenehm; würdig,
 tüchtig; wohlgestaltet, frisch; -e *adv.* schön;
 brav, ehrlich; ordentlich, nett; freundlich;
 — nesse *sb.* Schönheit; Sittlichkeit.
 faire (fay-) *sb.* Markt, Messe.
 faldyng *sb.* grober Stoff, Fries.
 falle(n) *st. v.* fallen, herabsinken; zufällig
 kommen, geraten; werden; beginnen; sich
 einlassen in; geschehen, sich begeben; zu-
 stoßen; gehören; reichen u.; falles 3. s. *pr.*
 (dial.); fil (fel) s. *pt.*, fille *pl.*; falle(n)
ppt.; yfallen in e., den befallen hat.
 fals *adj.*, -e *flekt.* falsch, schlimm, nichts-
 würdig.

falw, falow *adj.* fahl, falb; -es *pl.* Brachland.
fame *sb.* Ruf, Gerücht, Fama (Ch.'s 'Hous of Fame').
famulier *adj.* vertraut, intim.
fan *sb.* Pfahl; justen atte f.: zum Ringelstechen anreiten.
fanne *sb.* Fächer.
fantastyk *adj.* f. celle.
fantasye *sb.* Einbildung; Liebhaberei, Laune, Neigung.
fantome *sb.* Trugbild, Schemen.
fare *sb.* Verfahren, Benehmen; Getue, Lärm, Streit.
fare(n) *v.* fahren, reisen, sich begeben, gehen; verfahren; sich stellen; sich benehmen; I f. ez ergeht (geht) mir; fares 3. s. *pr.* (*dial.*); ferde *pt.*; fare(n) *ppt.*; best sarynge am besten ausgestattet, begabt; far-(fareth)wel fahr= (lebe-, =et) wohl.
farsed *ppt.* vollgestopft.
fast *adj.* fest; be f. festigen; -e 1. *adv.* fest; dicht, nahe; eifrig, lebhaft, schnell; streng, heftig; tüchtig. 2. -e(n) *v.* fassen; faste *pt.*
fauco(u)n *sb.* Falsch, -in; -er *sb.* Falscher.
faught f. fighte(n).
fawe *adj.* gern bereit, froh (vgl. fayn).
fay, fey *sb.* Treu(e), Ehrenwort.
fay(e)rie *sb.* Feenreich, Feenschar; Zauberei.
fayn *adj.* froh, erfreut, (of) freundlich (zu); *adv.* gern.
fayre f. faire.
feblesse, fiebl- *sb.* Schwäche.
fecche(n) *v.* holen, bringen; fette *pt.*; (y)fet *ppt.*
fee *sb.* Besitz; Lohn, Gebühren; f. symple Treigut.
feede(n) *v.* füttern, (er)nähren, pflegen; fedde *pt.*
feeld *sb.* Feld, (Feld)schlacht; felde *pl.*
feele(n) *v.* fühlen; felte, telede *pt.*
feend *sb.* b. Böse; -ly, -lych *adj.* teuflisch.
fe(e)re *sb.* 1. Furcht, Angst. 2. Gefährte; in f. in Gemeinschaft, zusammen, auch yfe(e)re. 3. -(n) *v.* fürchten, erschrecken; fered *ppt.*; be f. (sich) fürchten.
feeste *sb.* Fest; make(n) f. festlich empfangen, bewirten; sich gütlich tun; feestlych *adj.* feistfreudig.
feet 1. *sb. pl.* zu foot. 2. *sb.* Tat, Werk. feffed *ppt.* belehnt.
feith *sb.* Glaube; Treue, Ehrenwort; make(n) f. Vertrauen erwecken.
fel 1. *adj.* wild, grimmig, schrecklich; *flekt.* felle. 2. *pt.*, f. falle(n).

felawe *sb.* Gefährte, Genosse; Nebenbuhler, Gegner; Kerl; -shipe *sb.* Gesellschaft, Gemeinschaft u.
fele *prn. pl.* viele.
felonie (-ye) *sb.* Trebel, Treulosigkeit; -nous *adj.* frevelhaft.
femele *adj. & sb.* weiblich, weibliches Wesen.
femenye *sb.* Weibervolk, Amazonen; -nytee *sb.* Weibsgestalt.
fen *sb.* 1. Sumpf, Moor; 2. Abschnitt; f. canon.
fer *adj. & adv.* fern, weit; ferre *flekt.*; ferre, ferrer *comp.*, ferreste *supl.*
Ferare Fertara.
fered f. feere; ferde f. fare(n).
ferforth, -ly *adv.* weit, sehr, derartig; gründlich, eifrig, vollständig.
ferly *adj.* gefährlich, schrecklich.
fermacies *sb. pl.* Arzneien.
fermerer *sb.* Spittler.
fern 1. *sb.* Farn. 2. *adj.* -e *pl.* entfernt; *adv.* lange her, längst.
ferre, etc. f. fer.
ferthe, fourth *num.* vierter.
ferther *comp.* ferner, weiter, entfernter; vgl. forth.
ferthyng *sb.* Dreier, Heller; bißchen.
fest, fist *sb.* Faust.
festeye(n) *v.* festlich bewirten.
festne(n) *v.* befestigen.
fet(te) f. fecche(n).
fethere(n) *v.* treten (b. Fahn).
feture *sb.* Zug; *pl.* Aussehen.
fetys *adj.*, -isly *adv.* fein, zierlich, sauberlich.
fey f. fay.
feyne(n) *v.* vorgeben, sich verstellen, erdichten; yfeyned *ppt.* umgangen.
feyn(e) *v.* schwächen.
fieble *adj.* schwach; -esse f. febl-.
fiers *adj.* wild, böse.
fighte(n) *st. v.* kämpfen; faught *pt.*; foughten *ppt.*
figure 1. *sb.* Gestalt; Figur, Redewendung, Gleichnis. 2. -(n) *v.* darstellen; -yng(e) *vsb.* bildliche Redeweise.
fille 1. *sb.* Genüge, Herzenslust. 2. *pt. pl.* f. falle(n).
fir (fyr) *sb.* Feuer, -e *dat.*
firre *sb.* Föhre, Tanne.
first(e) *num.* erster; my f. mein erster Gegenstand.
fit *sb.* 1. Stoß, Streich; il f. Mißgeschick. 2. Abschnitt, Teil.
fithle *sb.* Fiedel.
fix *adj.* fest; -e *flekt.*, *sb.* Fixstern.
flambe *sb.* Flamme.

flatour sb. Schmeichler.

flaugh, fleigh, fley f. flee(n).

fle(e), flee(n) v. 1. fliegen; fleigh, fley, flaugh s. *pt.*, flownen *pl. pt.* 2. fliehen, meiden; fledde, fleigh *pt.* 3. sb. Floh; flee(n) *pl.*

flees sb. Flies.

fleete(n) v. schwimmen; fleteth 3. s. *pr.*

flekke(n) *ppt.* gefleckt, gesprenkelt.

fle(e)me(n) v. verbannen, vertreiben; -ere sb. Vertreiber.

Fleming sb. Flamländer (V. 16180: Aufstand gegen die in England angesiedelten flämischen Tuchweber).

flex sb. Flachs.

flikerynge *ppr.* flatternd.

flitte(n) v. vergehen.

flo sb. Pfeil.

flokmele *adv.* scharenweise.

florin sb. (florentinischer) Gulden (etwa = 3 sh.).

flotery *adj.* flatternd, zerzaust.

flour sb. 1. Blume, Blüte; höchster Grad; d. Grösste; Kern; fl.-de-lys Lilie; -e(n) v. blühen. 2. Mehl.

flouen f. flee(n).

floyte(n) v. flöten.

fnese(n) v. schnaufen.

fnorte(n) v. schnarchen.

fole(n) v. fohlen, gebären.

folily *adv.* töricht; f. fool.

folwe(n) v. folgen, befolgen.

fo(o)nd f. fynde.

fonde(n) v. versuchen, sich bemühen.

fonge(n) v. empfangen.

fonne sb. (*dial.*) Narr, Ged.

font sb. Taufbecken; f.-ful sb. bedenklich; f.-stoone sb. Taufstein.

foo sb. Feind; soon, foos *pl.*

fool 1. sb. Narr, Tor. 2. *adj.* töricht; f.-hardy *adj.* tollkühn; f.-large *adj.* verschwenderisch; f.-largesse sb. Verschwendung, übertriebene Freigebigkeit.

foom sb. Schaum; fomy *adj.* schäumend.

foore sb. Spur, Wandel.

foot Fuß; feet, foot (b. Zahlen) *pl.*; foote *dat.*; *id.* sb. Schritt; f.-hoot *adv.* eiligst, jogleich; f.-mantel sb. Schuwmantel.

for 1. *ppr.* für, um; wegen, um . . willen; durch, mit; trotz u.; f. me von mir aus, meinerwegen; for that *conj.* (deswegen) weil; for-thy *adv.* darum; but nat f. dessen ungeachtet; for-why *adv.* weswegen. 2. *conj.* denn, weil; damit; for to (um) zu. 3. Vorstufe = dtsch. ver- od. (sehr).

for-be(e)de(n) st. v. verbieten, verhüten; f.-bad *pt.*; bode *ppt.*; -bere(n) st. v. unterlassen, beiseite lassen, sich enthalten; (ver)schonen; -blak *adj.* tiefsschwarz; -brused (ganz) zerstoßen; -by *adv.* vorbei; -do(on) v. vernichten, zugrunde richten; umbringen; -dronken *ppt.* schwer betrunken; -dried *ppt.* ganz vertrocknet; -fered ernstlich besorgt; -go(o)n v. verlieren, verzichten auf; -kerve(n) v. zer-schneiden; -kutte(n) v. zer-schlagen; -last *ppt.* entlastet; -lesen v. verlieren; -lete(n) v. aufgeben; -old *adj.* sehr alt; -pynd *ppt.* zerquält; -sake(n) st. v. (ver)lassen, entlassen; -slewthe(n), -slewe(n) v. vergewaltigen, verschleppen; -slugge(n) v. verkommen lassen; -straight *ppt.* abgehehrt; -thy f. for i; -thynketh *imps.* (es) tut mir leid; -troden *ppt.* zertreten; -waked *ppt.* überwacht, müde vom Wachen; -wrapped *ppt.* verhüllt, eingewickelt; -yelde(n) v. vergelten; -yeten st. v. vergessen (f. yeten); -yetelnesse sb. Vergesslichkeit; -yiven st. v. vergeben, f. yiven (yeven).

forage sb. Futter; Heu.

force, fors sb. Gewalt; (is) no fors es liegt nichts daran, schadet nichts; I do no f. es kümmert mich nicht; what f. was liegt daran, tut das?

forest-syde sb. Waldesraum.

for(e)ward 1. sb. Abmachung, Vertrag.

2. *adv.* vorwärts, voran.

for(e)wityng *vsb.* Vorherwissen; — forwoot s. *pr.* weiß vorher (f. witen).

forfete(n) v. sündigen.

forked *ppt.* gegabelt; f. berd Zwielfelbart.

forme 1. *adj.* erster; f. fader Vorjahr.

2. sb. Form, Gestalt; (fourme) Lager, Kaffe. 3. -e(n) v. bilden; -ere sb. Schöpfer.

forncast *ppt.* vorbedacht.

fo(u)rneys sb. (Schmelz-)Ofen.

fornicacioun sb. Hurerei.

fors f. force.

forster sb. Forstmann.

forth *adv.* fort, weiter; lay f. blieb liegen; f.-right *adv.* stracks; -er *comp.* (f. ferther) weiter; vorgerückt; f.-mo, -moor(e), -over *adv.* ferner, überdies.

fortune 1. sb. Geschick; Fortuna, Glücksgöttin. 2. -(n) v. Schicksal deuten, lenken; stellen (f. ascendent).

fother sb. Fuder.

foul *adj.* schmutzig; böse, schlimm, schände, übel; häßlich; -e *flekt.* & *adv.*

founde 1. *pt. pl.* f. fynden. 2. **-e(n) v.** gründen, stiften, bieten.
foundre(n) v. straucheln.
fowel sb. Vogel.
foyne(n) v. sechten.
foyson sb. Fülle.
fra (dial.) = fro(m).
frakenes sb. pl. Sommerprossen.
franchise sb. Freisium, Hochherzigkeit.
frankeleyn (-lyn) sb. Freisasse, Gutsbesitzer.
fraternitee sb. (kirchl.) Brüderschaft.
frayneth f. freyne(n).
free adj. frei, freigebig; hold; **frely adv.** freiwillig.
freele adj. gebrechlich; — **freelte, freletee sb.** Gebrechlichkeit, Schwachheit.
fremde adj. fremd.
frenesye sb. Tollheit.
frenges sb. pl. Franzen.
frere sb. Ordensbruder, Bettelmönch.
frese(n) st. v. gefrieren machen, erstarren.
frete(n) st. v. freßen, verzehren; **frete pt. pl.; frete(n) ppt.**
fro (meist vor Konsonant), from (meist vor Vokal) prp. von, aus, u.
frothe(n) v. schäumen.
fructuous adj. fruchtbar.
frutestere sb. Obstverkäuferin.
Frydeswyde: Schutzpatronin einer Dorf- oder Gemeinde.
ful 1. adj. voll; **atte fulle völlig.** 2. **adv.** völlig, sehr, gar.
fulsomnesse sb. Übermaß.
fume sb. Dunst, Blähung; **f.-tere sb.** Erdruch (Pflanze).
fumositee sb. Dunst, Rauch.
fundement sb. Gefäß.
furial adj. höllisch, wütend.
furlong sb. ein paar hundert Schritt ($\frac{1}{8}$ engl. M.); **a f. wey e.** kurze Strecke, kurze Zeit.
furryng(e) vsb. Pelzbesatz.
fusible adj. schmelzbar.
fyn 1. sb. Ende, Zweck, Ziel; **-e(n) v.** enden. 2. **adj.** fein, schön; stark.
fynch sb. Fink; **pulle a f. e.** Vogel rupfen (d. h. e. Mädchen verführen).
fynde(n) st. v. finden; versorgen; **fynt 3. s. pr.; foond s. pt., founde pl. pt.; (y)founde(n) ppt.; fyndyng vsb.** Fürsorge.
fyr f. fir.
fyssh sb. Fisch; Sternbild d. F.; **F.-street** Straße i. d. City von London, am Ufer d. Themse.

Gabbe(n) v. ausplaudern, müßig reden; **-er sb.** Schwäher.
gadre(n) v. sammeln, versammeln.
gaf f. yive(n).
gaillard (gaylard) adj. munter, lustig.
gaineth (gay-) imps. es nützt.
gale(n) v. schreien.
Galgopheye: Ortsname (Gargaphie, Tal in Bötien? f. Ov., Met. III, 156).
Galice Galizien, in Spanien (St. Jago de Compostella).
Galien (-yen) 1. Galenus, berühmter Arzt (geb. 130 n. Chr.). 2. Gallienus, röm. Kaiser (260—68).
galiones (-anes) sb. pl. galenischer Heilstrank (vgl. galon Gallone).
galle sb. 1. Galle. 2. wunde Stelle.
galoches sb. Schuh.
galpe(n) v. gähnen.
galwes sb. pl. Galgen.
galyngale sb. Galtant (Gewürz aus Cypergras?).
game 1. sb. Spiel, Spaß, Vergnügen, Lust. 2. **-(-n) imps.** freuen, gefallen.
gan f. gynne(n).
gane(n) v. gähnen.
gap sb. Öffnung, Durchlaß; **gappe dat.; -e(n) v.** (nach Lust) schnappen; gaffen; **-ynge ppr.** mit offenem Munde, nach Atem ringend; **f. auch cape.**
gargat sb. Gurgel.
garleek sb. Knoblauch.
gas (dial.) 3. s. pr. geht.
gat f. gete(n).
Gatesden: John von Gaddesden, Arzt in Oxford († 1361).
gat-tothed adj. lederzählig (mit auseinanderstehenden Zähnen).
gaude sb. Puß, Schmutz; Spaß, Kniff; **-ed ppt.** gefärbt.
Gaufred: Gottfried von Vinjauf; verf. 'Nova Poetria'.
Gaunt Gent.
gauren v. gaffen, anstaunen.
Gawain: berühmter Ritter von König Artus' Tafelrunde.
Gawle Gallien.
gay- f. auch gai-.
gay adj. lustig, üppig, leichtfertig; gepußt, verziert; glänzend, blank; **-e adv.**
gayler sb. Kerkermeister.
gaytris-beryes sb. pl. Bodsdorn-(Faulbaum-)beeren.
Gazan n. Gasa (Buch d. Richter XVI).
gëa(u)nt sb. Riese.
geen (dial.) ppt. gegangen.

ge(e)re *sb.* 1. Tracht, Rüstung; Zubereitung; Gerät, Zeug. 2. geer(e) (verändertes) Wesen, Benehmen; g.-ful, geery *adj.* veränderlich, wechselnd.

geeste 1. *sb.* Geschichte, (Selben-)Sage; (romantische) Erzählung, Abenteuer; Romayn geestes: Römergesten (mittelaltengl. Geschichtssammlung; V. 6224 = Val. Maximus). 2. -(n) *v.* (Abenteuer) erzählen; — geestour *sb.* Erzähler, Sprecher.

gelde(n) *v.* verschneiden; -dyng *sb.* Wallach. *gent adj.* edel; fein, zierlich; -il *adj.* edel, adlig, vornehm; freundlich, zartfühlend; nett; trefflich, feingebildet; -ile *sb.* vornehme Dame; -ils *sb. pl.* vornehme, feinere Leute; -illesse *sb.* Adel, Edelmut, Würde; Höflichkeit, Gnade, Güte; (feine) Bildung; -illy *adv.* minniglich; höflich; auf seine Art; -(e)rie *sb.* vornehme Besinnung, Abkunft, Vornehmheit, hoher Stand.

Genylon Ganelon (Verräter i. d. Rolands-sage).

geomancie *sb.* Punktierkunst (Wahrsagen aus Figuren).

gerdo(u)n *sb.* Lohn, Preis; -one(n) *v.* belohnen.

gerl, girl *sb.* Mädchen, Dirne (auch Bur-sche); *pl.* junge Leute.

gerland *sb.* Kranz; G-: Hundename(?).

Gernade Granada.

gerner *sb.* Kornspeicher.

Gerounde Giroude (Fl.).

gesse(n) *v.* vermuten, sich denken.

gete(n) *st. v.* erlangen, erwerben, verschaffen; erzeugen; werden; get 3. s. *pr.*; gat *pl.*; (y)gete(n) *ppl.*; ye g. namoore, etc.: weiter will ich nichts sagen, genug hiervon.

gif (*dial.*) *conj.* wenn.

giggynge *ppr.* beriemend.

Gilbertyn: Gilbertus Anglicus, Arzt (13. Jh.).

Gile St. Agidius († 721); Gille: Frauenname (Zulchen?).

gilt(e)les *adj.* schuldlos, unschuldig.

gipser *sb.* Geldtasche.

girde(n) *v.* hauen; girt *ppt.*

girl *f.* gerl; gise *f.* gyse.

giterne (gy-) *sb.* Zither, Laute; -yng *vsb.* Lautenspiel.

glad *adj.* froh; -dde *flekt.*; -ly *adv.* gern, bereitwillig; passend, füglich; -e(n) *v.* erheitern, trösten; -ere *sb.* Erheitrer, -in, [Freude.

glarynge *ppr.* glosend.

glee *sb.* Musik.

gle(e)de *sb.* Blut; glühende Kohle.

gleyre *sb.* Weißes (e. Eis).

glood *f.* glyde(n).

glose 1. *sb.* Glosse, Deutung; Schmeichelei. 2. -(e)n *v.* deuten, umschreiben; schön reden, beschönigen, schmeicheln; be yglosed: Schmeicheleien hören.

glotonye *sb.* Völlerei, Schwelgerei.

glyde(n) *st. v.* gleiten, schreiten, emporsteigen; glood *pt.*; glyden *ppt.*

glymsyng *vsb.* Schimmer.

gnawe(n) *st. v.* (be)nagen; gnaw *pt.*

gnof *sb.* Kerl, Kauz.

go, goon *irr. v.* gehn, sich bewegen usw.; goost, gooth *s.*, gooth, goon *pl. pr.*; yede, wente (*f.* wende) *pt.*; (y)go, gon, goon *ppt.*, *adj.* vorüber, dahin; schon vor; er I go: zum Schluß, schließlich; go ne (or) ride: sich begeben, reisen (*f.* ride) usw.; g. biforn zukommen; g. in hineinschlagen, -bringen; g. out herausfahren; g. vp empordringen.

gobet *sb.* Stuhl, Felsen.

God *sb.* Gott, (öfters) Christus; goddes *gen.*; Herrgotts- (7329); -hede *sb.* Gottheit; -sib (gossib) *sb.* Gevatter, -in, Pate, -in.

gode *f.* good.

gold-hewen *ppt.* aus Gold gehauen; g-lees *adj.* geldlos; g.-smythrye Goldarbeit.

golet *sb.* Kehle.

goliardeys *sb.* Botenreißer.

Golias Goliath.

gon *f.* go, gonne *f.* gynne.

gonge *sb.* Grube, Abtritt.

good *adj.* gut, mader, bieder; *sb.* Gut; Vorteil; -es *pl.* Güter, Gaben; for gode *dat.* im Ernst; -lich, -ly *adj.* gültig, brav, mader; *adv.* gültlich, herzlich gern; -man *sb.* Biedermann; Landwirt; -e men: liebe Leute; -nesse *sb.* gute Eigenschaft, Vorzug; gutes Werk, Tüchtigkeit.

gooldes *sb. pl.* Gold-(Mingel-)blume.

goore *sb.* Zwickel; Zipfel (= Gewand).

goost 1. *sb.* Geist. 2. 3. s. *pr.*, *f.* go.

Gootlond Gotland (Schweden).

gossomer *sb.* Sommerfäden.

goute *sb.* Gicht.

governe(n) *v.* lenken, verwalten, beherrschen; (sich) richten; -naile *sb.* Herrschaft; -naunce *sb.* Herrschaft, Selbstbeherrschung; Lenkung; Geschäftsführung, Verwaltung; Obhut; Betragen; -nour *sb.* Herrscher, Führer, „großer Herr“.

gown(e) *sb.* Rock, Gewand (im M. übliches Geschenk); g.-clooth Tuch zum Gewand.

grace *sb.* Gnade, Guld, Günst; Mitleid; Aussehen; -es *pl.* Dank; hard(e), sorry *g.* Mißgeschick, Unglück; Mißfallen; Mißgestalt, übles Aussehen; for his *g.* ihm zu gunsten; save your *g.* mit Verlaub; -lees *adj.* von Gott verlassen; -cious *adj.* angenehm; -ly *adv.* günstig.

grame *sb.* Gram, Kummer.

gra(u)nge *sb.* Meierei; Kornspeicher.

gras *sb.* 1. Gras; *g.-tyme* Jugendblüte. 2. = grace *V.* 13 735.

graunt mercy (*frz.*) großen Dank.

grave 1. *sb.* Grab. 2. -(n) *v.* begraben, vergraben; eingraben, (ein)grabieren, meißeln; (*y*)grave *ppt.*

grayn, greyn *sb.* Korn, Getreide; Kardamom, Gewürzknäglein; in *g.* echt gefärbt.

grece (*gresse*) 1. *sb.* Felt. 2. *G.* — Griechenland; see of *g.* Mittelmeer.

gree *sb.* 1. Rang, Vorrang. 2. Wohlwollen, Gnade.

greet *adj.* groß, stark; laut; schnell; wichtig, schwer; üppig; grete *flekt.* (*f.* grete *v.*); gretter *comp.*, grettest(e) *supl.*

gre(e)te(n) *v.* (be)grüßen; grette *pt.*

Gregorie Gregor I. d. Große, Papst († 604); *zit.* Schriften: 'Homiliae', 'Moralia', 'In VII. psalm. poenitent. expositio', etc.

grehound *sb.* Windspiel.

grenehede *sb.* Grünheit, Unreife.

Greenewych Greenwich (Kent), zeitweise Wohnsitz Ch.'s.

grette *f.* greete, gretter *f.* greet.

greve 1. *sb.* Hain. 2. -(n) *v.* ärgern, tranken; beschwerlich sein, plagen; schädigen; ygreved *ppt.*; -vaunce *sb.* Ärger, Ärgernis; Qual, Kummer; Beschwerde; -vous *adj.* schwer, ernstlich; schmerzlich; verbittert; -vousliche *adv.*

greyn *f.* grayn.

greythe(n) (*grei-*) *v.* sich rüsten, bereit machen. *[chen.]*

grisly *adj.* gräßlich, grimm, schauerlich.

grone(n) *v.* ächzen, grunzen.

gronte(n) *v.* stöhnen; gronte *pt.*

grope(n) *v.* (be)tasten, untersuchen.

gröt *sb.* Tüttelchen.

gröte *sb.* Großchen (etwa 3—4 Pf.).

ground *sb.* Grund, Sache usw.; Gewebe; -e(n) *ppt.* *f.* grynde.

growe(n) *st. v.* wachsen, werden; grew, growed *pt.*; growe(n) *ppt.*

groyn *sb.* Schnauze, Rüssel; -yng *vsb.* *G.* grucche(n) *v.* murren, grollen. *[murr.]*

gruf *adv.* aufs Gesicht, nieder.

grymnese *sb.* Graufen, Greuel.

grynde(n) *st. v.* mahlen; schleifen; grynt *s. pr.*; (*y*)grynde(n) *ppt.*

grynte(n) *v.* knirschen; grynte *pt.*

grys 1. *adj.* grau. 2. *sb.* graues Pelzwerk.

Guesclin: Bertrand Duguesclin (1320—80), *frz.* Feldherr.

Gy: Sir Guy von Warwick, megl. Romanze.

gyde 1. *sb.* Führer, Lenker. 2. -(n) *v.* führen, leiten, geleiten.

gye(n) *v.* lenken, leiten.

gyle (*gi-*) *sb.* Betrug; withouten *g.* ohne Falsch; -lour *sb.* Betrüger.

gyn *sb.* Kunstgriff; List.

gyngbred *sb.* Honigluchsen.

gyngle(n) *v.* klingen.

gynne(n) *st. v.* beginnen; gan *s. pt.*, gonne *pl. pt.* (oft als Füllwort, wie im spät. Engl. to do).

gypon *sb.* Wams, Waffenrock.

gyse *sb.* Art, Weise, Brauch.

gyte *sb.* Kleid, Rock.

gyterne *f.* gi-.

Haaf *f.* heue(n).

habit *sb.* Kleidung.

Habradate Abbadatez, König von Eufiana.

hab(o)unde(n) *v.* Überfluß haben, reichlich besitzen; -dant *adj.* reich (an); -dantly *adv.* reichlich; -daunce *sb.* Überfluß, Fülle.

ha ha! *interj.* haha! ho!ho! holla!

hakeney *sb.* Klepper.

half *sb.* Seite, Hälfte; halves *pl.*; a Goddes *h.* in Gottes Namen.

haliday (*haly d.*) *sb.* Feiertag.

halke *sb.* Winkel, Ecke.

halse(n) *v.* beschwören, anflehen.

halt *f.* holde(n).

halwe 1. *sb.* Heiliger. 2. -(n) *v.* heiligen, (ein)weihen.

Haly: Ali ben el-Abbas el-Majusi, arab. Naturforscher († 994).

ham (*dial.*) *sb.* Heim.

han *f.* have(n).

hand *f.* hond.

handebrede *sb.* Handbreit; handwork *sb.* Geschöpf.

hap *sb.* Schicksalswendung, Geschick; Glück; **happe(n)** *v.* geschehen.

hard *adj.* hart, grausam (*f.* grace); -e *adv.* fest; -e(n) *v.* härten; yharded *ppt.*; -nesse *sb.* Härte; Beschwerde.

hardy *adj.* kühn, streitbar; -dily *adv.* kühnlich; sicherlich, bereitwillig; -dynesse *sb.* Kühnheit, Berwegenheit, Übermut; Kraftbemüßsein.

harlot *sb.* Schelm; Bube, Kerl; -trie (-trye) *sb.* Zoten, Schmutzerei; Büterei; Niederlichkeit, Unzucht.

harm *sb.* Leid, Schaden; it is h. es ist schade; speke h. verlästern; f. auch broken.

harneys *sb.* Harnisch; Gehent; Gerät, Geschirr; Zeug; -e(n) *v.* herrichten, aus-

harre *sb.* Haspe, Türangel. [statten.

harrow *interj.* hallo! (f. out).

harwe(n) *v.* berauben; . . harwed helle:

(der) zur Hölle fuhr.

hasard *sb.* Würfelspiel; -our *sb.* Spieler; -rye *sb.* Spielsucht.

Hasdrubal: karthag. Feldherr im 3. pun. Kriege (146).

hastif (-y) *adj.* eilig; -liche, -ly *adv.* eiligst; -nesse Übereilung.

ha(u)bergeon *sb.* Panzerhemd.

hauberk (haw-) *sb.* Halsberg, Brustpanzer.

hawk *sb.* Jagdfalke; -e(n) *v.* beizen; -yng *vsb.* Beize; an h. auf die B.

haunche-bon *sb.* Hüftknochen.

haunt *sb.* Aufenthalt; Gebiet; Betrieb; -e(n) *v.* betreiben, sich hingeben; (häufig) besuchen.

hauteyn *adj.* hochmütig; laut.

have, han *v.* haben, besitzen, behalten usw.; *refl.* sich verhalten; have, han *pl. pr.*; had(de) *pt.*; had *ppt.*; h. me excused wolle(t) mich entschuldigen.

hawe *sb.* 1. Hof, Gehöft. 2. Hagebutte;

hawebake gebadene H., d. h. magere Kost.

Hayles Hailes, Abtei i. Gloucestershire.

haynselyn *sb.* Fäde.

hayt *interj.* hü, hott!

he(e) *prn.* er; dieser, jener, derjenige, jemand; hym *dat. & acc.* ihm, ihn usw.; *refl.* sich; they *pl. n.* sie usw.; hem *dat. & acc.* ihnen, sie, *refl.* sich.

heed, heved *sb.* Haupt, Kopf; maugree . . heed trotz, wider . . Willen.

heede *sb.* Gut, Acht; take h. achtgeben.

heeld *f.* holde.

heele *1. sb.* Seil, Glüd, Gesundheit. 2. -(n) *v.* heilen.

heelp *f.* helpe(n), heeng *f.* honge(n).

heep *sb.* Haufe, Schar; hepe *dat.* (?); f. u.

heer *1. sb.* Haar; herys (-es) *pl.* 2. heer(e) *adv.* hier. 3. heere(n) *v.* hören; herde

pt.; herd *ppt.*

he(e)ste *sb.* Geheiß, Gebot.

heete *1. sb.* Hitze, Blut. 2. heete(n), hoten *st. v.* heißen, nennen; verheissen, versprechen; versichern; heet, highte *pt.*; hoote, hoten, hight *ppt.*

heeth *sb.* Heide; Heidekraut.

heigh (heih), hy *adj.* hoch, groß, stark, schwer; streng; arg; froh usw.; heighe, hye *flekt. & adv.*; hyer *comp.*; h. hond Oberhand; on heigh, an-h. oben; in h. and lo(u)gh in allen Stüden, im großen

helde *f.* holde. [und kleinen.

helen(n) *v.* verhüllen, verbergen.

Helie Elia (I. Könige XVIII, 18).

Helowys Héloise, Geliebte Abälards († 1162).

help(e) *sb.* Hilfe; -e(n) *st. v.* helfen; heelp *pt.*; holpen *ppt.*

hem *f.* he; hem-self *f.* self.

hende *adj.* fein, artig.

henne *adv.* hinnen, von hier, dahin; hennes-forth fürberhin.

hente(n) *v.* ergreifen, erschassen, fassen, ertappen; nehmen; h. out fortreißen; h. vp aufheben; hente *pt.*; (y)hent *ppt.*

hepe *sb.* Hagebutte; f. auch heep.

heraud *sb.* Herold.

herb *f.* yve.

herbergage *sb.* Wohnung, Unterkunft, Nachtquartier; -geour *sb.* Quartiermacher, Fourier.

herberwe *sb.* Unterkunft, Aufenthalt; Herberge; Hasen; -wyng *vsb.* Unterkunft, Cinquartierung.

here *prn.* f. hir(e).

herke(n), herkne(n) *v.* hören, horchen, (be)lauschen; h. after zuhören.

Hermanno Heremianus (-mianus?).

Hermes: H. 'trismegistus', mystischer Philosoph u. Alchymist.

Hermyon Hermione, Tochter d. Menelaus. herne *sb.* Winkel.

Herodes: H. der Tetrarch; V. 3382: Rolle d. H. im geistl. Spiel.

heron *sb.* Reiher; -sewes *pl.* junge Reiher. hert *sb.* Hirsz.

herte *sb.* Herz; -lees *adj.* herzlos, feig; *sb.* Feigling; -ly (hertly) *adj. & adv.* herzlich, aufrichtig; -roote *sb.* Herzwurzel, innerstes Herz; -spoon *sb.* Brustbein.

herye(n) *v.* loben, preisen, anbeten; -yng(e) *v.* *vsb.* Lobpreisung, Ruhm.

herys *f.* heer 1.

Hester Esther.

hethen *sb.* Heide; -esse *sb.* Heidenland.

hethyng *sb.* Schimpf.

heve(n) *st. v.* heben; ha(a)f *pt.*

heved *f.* heed.

hevenysshly *adv.* himmlisch.

hevynesse *sb.* Schwere; Schwermut, Trauer, Trübsal, Gram.

hewe 1. *sb.* Farbe; Schein. 2. *-(n) v.* färben. 3. *sb.* (Haus)diener.
hewen *f.* gold.
hey *sb.* Heu.
heyne *sb.* Schurke.
heyre *adj.* hären; *sb.* härenes Gewand (heyre Erbe).
heythen (*diag.*) *adv.* von hinnen.
hid(e), **hidde** *f.* hyde.
hider *adv.* hierher; *h.* (hyder)ward desgl.
hidous *adj.* gräßlich, fürchterlich.
hierde *sb.* Hirt.
highte 1. *sb.* Höhe; *on h.* empor; laut; *maked vp-on h.* erhöht. 2. *pt.*, *hight ppt.*, *f.* heete 2.
hir 1. *prn. poss.* (seltener *hire* als *pl.*), *fem.* & *pl.* ihr, -e, deren. 2. *gen. pl.* ihrer.
hire 1. *prn. pers.* (seltener *hir*, im Reim *here*), *dat.* & *acc.* ihr, sie, *refl.* sich. 2. *subst. poss.* der ihre, auch *hirs*. 3. *sb.*, *f.* hyre.
hirnia *sb.* Darmbruch.
his *m.* & *ntr.* 1. *gen. pers.* sein. 2. *prn. poss.*, *hise pl.*, sein, seine.
historial *adj.* geschichtlich.
hit 1. *f.* hyde. 2. = *it* (*ntr.*).
hochepot *sb.* Mischmaß.
hocker *sb.* Verachtung, Spott; *-ly adv.* verächtlich.
Hogge: Kosenname für Roger (Rüdiger).
holde(n) *st. v.* halten; innehalten; schützen, ansehn; einschlagen (*wey*); *halt* 3. *s. pr.*, *heeld pt.*; (*y*)*holde(n) ppt.*
Holdernesse: Gegend an der Yorkshirer *holm* *sb.* immergrüne Eiche. [Küste.
holour *sb.* Buhler, Wüstling.
holpen *f.* helpe(n).
holt *sb.* Gehölz.
holwe *adj.* & *adv.* hohl.
homicide 1. *sb.* Mörder; Mord. 2. *adj.* mordhüchtig.
hond, **hand** *sb.* Hand; *honde dat.*; *hyer h.* Oberhand; *bere on h.* *f.* bere.
honest(e) *adj.* anständig, ehrbar, angemessen, würdig; *-ee*, *-etee* (*-itee*) *sb.* Anstand, Ehrbarkeit, Würde.
honge(n) (*hange*) *v.* hangen, aufhängen; *heeng pt.*; *hanged ppt.*
hood *sb.* Kapuze.
hool *adj.* heil, gesund; ganz, voll; *-ly adv.* gänzlich, völlig; *-some adj.* heilsam; *-somnesse sb.* Gesundheit.
hoold *sb.* Besitz, Gewalt; Feste.
hoomly *adj.* häuslich, Haus- . . ; schlicht;
-nesse sb. Häuslichkeit, Vertraulichkeit.
hoor *adj.* grau.

hoord *sb.* Schatz, Haufe.
hoost *sb.* 1. Heer. 2. **hoost(e)** *sb.* Wirt.
hoot *adj.* heiß, hitzig, glühend; gefährvoll; inbrünstig; *hoote flekt.*; *vgl.* *heete* 2.
hoppistere *sb.* Tänzerin; *adj.* hüpfend, schwankend.
hopur *sb.* Trichter.
Hornchild Junker Horn; *meql.* Ritterge-
dicht.
horribly *adv.* abscheulich, greulich.
hors *s.* & *pl.* Pferd, Pferde; *-ly adj.* pferde-
gleich, *gleich e. wirtl.* *Pf.*
hose *sb.* Strumpf, Hoje; *-en*, *-es pl.*
hospitalier *sb.* Hospitalmeister.
hostelrye *sb.* Gasthaus, Wirtschaft, Herberge.
hostile(e)r *sb.* Gastwirt; *pl.* Wirtschaftsb-
diente.
hoten *f.* heete(n).
houndfish *sb.* Hai.
houre *sb.* Stunde; (*astrol.*): die jedem Pla-
neten geweihte St.; *kepte . . in heures:*
hielt . . hin bis zur günstigen Stunde
(Aufgang e. günstigen Sterns).
hous *sb.* Haus; (*astrol.*): Stellung e. Pla-
neten in e. Zeichen d. Tierkreises; Kloster;
-bonde sb. Gatte; *-bondrie sb.* Wirt-
schaftlichkeit, Sparamkeit; Hausgerät.
housled *ppt.*; *been h.* das heil. Abend-
mahl empfangen.
how *adv.* & *conj.* wie; *interj.* he!
howpe(n) *v.* schreien, holla! rufen.
howve *sb.* Haube; *sette . . h.:* zum besten
haben; vgl. *cappe.*
Hugelyn Ugolino (Dante, Inferno XXXIII).
Hugh Hugo; *H. v. Lincoln:* angebl. auf
e. Tafelche beruhende Legende (1255?).
Hulle Hull, bef. Hafenstadt.
humblesse *sb.* Demut, Bescheidenheit;
humiltee sb. desgl.
humour *sb.* Feuchtigkeit, Saft.
hunte, *-er sb.* Jäger; *-resse sb.* Jägerin.
hurte(n) verletzen, verwunden; (*y*)*hurt ppt.*
hurtle(n) *v.* stoßen, rennen.
hust *interj.* still! pst!
hy *f.* heigh.
hyde(n) *v.* verbergen; *hit* 3. *s. pr.*; *hidde pt.*;
*(y)**hid ppt.*
hyder *f.* hi-.
hye 1. *sb.* Eile. 2. *-(n) v.* eilen, *refl.* sich
beeilen; eiligst bringen. 3. *adv.* *f.* heigh.
hynderest *supl.* hinterste.
hyne *sb.* Knecht.
hynesse *sb.* Hoheit, Würde.
hypes *sb. pl.* Lenden.
hyre (*hi*-) *sb.* Lohn, Pacht; *sette to h.*
verpachten.

Iceche(n) v. juden.

ich *prn.* (zuweilen vor h), **ik** (*dial.*, vor

Bofal) **ich**; vgl. theech, theek.

il *adj.*, **ille** *flect.* (*dial.*) übel; unerfahren.

ilhayl (*dial.*) Unheil (treffe dich).

Ilion (Ylion): als Burg v. Troja betrachtet.

ilke *prn.*; this, that i. (dieser, jener) selbe; vgl. thilke.

impertinent *adj.* nebensächlich.

importable (in-) *adj.* unerträglich.

impossible (in-) 1. *adj.* unmöglich. 2. *sb.* Unmöglichkeit.

impresse(n) v. eindringen, (sich) einprägen.

in 1. *prp.* in mit *Dat.* u. *Uff.*; bei, auf usw.

2. *sb.* Behausung, Wohnung; Gasthaus; inne f. u.

induracioun *sb.* Verhärtung.

infect *adj.* (*ppt.*) (als) ungültig (erklärt).

infortune *sb.* Mißgeschick; -**nat** *adj.* unglücklich.

ingot (yng-) *sb.* Gußform.

iniquitee *sb.* Ungerechtigkeit, Bosheit; Sünde, Vaster.

inne 1. *adv.* & *prp.* in, hinein, darin. 2. -(n) v. einquartieren.

Innocent (Papsi) Innocenz (III.); *verf.* 'De contemptu mundi'.

inobedience *sb.* Ungehorsam; -**ent** *adj.* ungehorsam.

inordinat *adj.* unmäßig, anstößig.

inwith *prp.* in, innerhalb, binnen.

ire *sb.* Zorn; -**ous** *adj.* zornig.

iren *sb.* Eifen.

irreguleer *adj.* & *sb.*; is i. handelt der Ordensregel zuwider.

is 3. s. *pr.* ist; (*dial.*) = am, art.

Isiphilee *spyspyle* (Geliebte Jafons; f. L.G.W. 1466 ff.).

Isope *Wop.*

Jakke Hans; **J.-fool** *sb.* Hansnarr; **J.-of-Dovere** *sb.* Doverhecht (?); **J. Straw**: Führer i. Bauernaufstand (1378—81).

jealous *adj.* eifersüchtig; -**ie** (-**ye**) *sb.* Eifer-
jambeux *sb. pl.* Beinshienen. [*sucht.*]

Jame Jakobus d. Apostel; vgl. Galice.

jane *sb.* Groschen, Deut; eigentlich kleine gemeinliche Münze.

Jan(e)kyn Hänzchen (Spottname).

jangle(n) v. schwaizen; -**er(e)** *sb.* Schwäzker, -**eresse** *sb.* Schwäzkerin; -**erie** (-**ye**) *sb.*, -**yng(e)** Geschwätzigkeit; -**es** *sb. pl.* eitle Worte, Geschwätz.

jape 1. *sb.* Spaß, Scherz, Poße. 2. -(n) v. betören; -**er(e)** *sb.* Spaßmacher, Poßen-

reißer; -**erye** *sb.* Spötterei, Narrenz-poßen.

jargon *sb.* Geschwätz.

jaspres *sb.* Jaspis.

jealous *adj.* eifersüchtig, gehässig, gierig.

jeet *sb.* Bagat, Zet.

Jepte Jephthah (Richter XI, 29 ff.).

Jerome Hieronymus, Kirchenvater (um 400); f. Schrift 'Contra Jovinianum', zitiert V. 6256 und mehrfach benutzt (5595 ff. u. ö.).

jet *sb.* Art, Mode; Kniff.

Jewerye *sb.* Judenviertel.

Joab: Davids Feldhauptmann (II. Sam. II, 28 ff.).

Job Iob.

Joce Jodokus, Heiliger v. Ponthieu († 669).

jogelour *sb.* Gaukler; -**rye** *sb.* Gaukelspiel.

jolif, -**y** (vor *Conj.*) *adj.* munter, heiter, frisch.

jolinesse *sb.* Vergnügen, Festlichkeit.

jolitee *sb.* Frohsinn; Vergnügen; Übermut;

josse *interj.* (frz.) heran! [*Glanz.*]

journée *sb.* Tagereise, -**ey** *sb.* Reise, Fahrt.

Jovinian 1. f. Jerome. 2. angebl. röm. Kaiser (Gesta Romanorum LIV).

joynant *adj.* (*ppr.*) angrenzend; was j. grenzte, stieß an.

Jubaltare Gibraltar.

jubbe *sb.* Krug, Gefäß (4 Gall. enthaltend).

Judicum (*lat. gen. pl.*): Buch d. Richter.

juge *sb.* Richter; 19166: irrüml. für *lat.* (absque) jugo.

Julian St. J., Patron d. Gastfreundschaft.

Julius J. Cäsar.

jupartie *sb.* Gefahr, Wagnis.

jurdones *sb. pl.* Nachttöpfe.

juste(n) *tsostieren* (turnieren), anreiten (f. fan); -**es** *sb. pl.* Tjost (als s.).

justice *sb.* Gerechtigkeit; Richter, Richterjuwize, *juyse* *sb.* Urteil; Gericht. [*amt.*]

Juyl *sb.* Juli.

Kaityf f. caytif.

kamuse f. ca-.

kan *pt.-pr.* kann, fenne, weiß, verstehe; **konne(n)** *pl.* & *conjv.*; koude (kouth)

pt.; koud *ppt.*; **konne(n)** *inf.*; — **konnyng** 1. *vsb.* Fähigkeit, Kenntnis. 2. *adj.* kundig, verständig; -**ly** *adv.*; **kowth** (kouth)

(*ppt.*) *adj.* bekannt, kund.

katapuce *sb.* Euphorbie (?).

kaynard *sb.* Nimmernutz, Taugenichts.

Kayrrud (bret.) „Die rote Stadt“.

kechyl *sb.* Küchlein.

keen *f.* cow 1.

keep *sb.* Acht; take *k.* achtgeben, sich kümmern, gewahrt werden.

kembe(n) *v.* k ämmen; auspußen; kembde *pt.*; (y)kemd *ppt.*; kemp *adj.* zottig.

Kenelm: Sohn d. Königs Kenulphus (Cenwulf, † 819) *v.* Mercia.

Kent *f.* Thomas.

kepe(n) *v.* halten, behalten; achtgeben, (be)hüten, bewahren; Wert legen (auf), sich kümmern (um); es kümmert (mich); kepte *pt.*; kept *ppt.*; — keper(e) *sb.* Aufseher, Behüter, -in, Wärter.

kers *sb.* Kreisse (= d. Geringste).

kerve(n) *st. v.* (zer)schneiden, schnitzen; vor-schneiden, zerlegen (Mint d. Bagen); carf *pt.*; (y)corven (kor-) *ppt.*; -ere *sb.* Wilschnitzer; -vyng *vsb.* Schnitzerei.

kesse, keste (kent.) *f.* kisse(n).

kike(n) *v.* 1. ausschlagen. 2. (k1-) fiden, kirtle (-el) *sb.* Unterfleid. [guden.

kisse(n), kesse(n) *n.* küssen; kiste, keste *pt.*; kist *ppt.*; they ben k. sie haben sich geküßt.

kihe(n) *v.* künden; zeigen, beweisen; *f.* kyd.

kitte *pt.* (v. kутten) (zer-)schnitt.

knakkes *sb. pl.* Streiche, Mädchen.

knarre *sb.* Knorr(en); -ry *adj.* knorrig.

knave *sb.* Knabe; Knecht, Burtsche; k.-child männliches Kind; -iss *adj.* roh.

knee *sb.* Knie; knees, knowes *pl.*

knobbos *sb. pl.* Bußstein, Beulen.

knotte *sb.* Knoten; Haken; Knotenpunkt, Kern; -tty *adj.* knotig, ästig.

know(e)liche, -leche 1. *sb.* Bekanntschaft, Renntnis. 2. -(n) *v.* bekennen; -chyng *vsb.* Renntnis, Wissen.

knowes *f.* knee.

knighthede, -hod *sb.* Rittertum.

knytte(n) *v.* (ver)knüpfen, verbinden; *refl.* sich vereinigen; (astrol.): in Konjunktion sein; k. up entwirren; abschließen; knyt *ppt.* (11546: einig).

konne(n), konnyng, koud(e), kowth *f.* kan. korven *f.* kerven.

krona *sb.* Kere.

kultour *sb.* Pflugschar.

kyd *ppt.* bekannt; kyde *sb.* Zicklein.

kymelyn *sb.* Mulde, Wanne.

kyn *sb.* Geschlecht, Abstammung; som kynnes (*gen.*) von irgendeiner Art.

kynde 1. *sb.* Natur; Art, Geschlecht; Samen. 2. *adj.* natürlich; gütig, freundlich; -ly *adj.* & *adv.* natürlich, naturgemäß.

kynrede *sb.* Verwandtschaft, Sippe; Ab-kyte *sb.* Weihe (Vogel). [stammung.

La(a)s *sb.* Schnur, Band, Schlinge.

labbe 1. *sb.* Blapperer, Dhrenbläser. 2. -(n) *v.* (aus)plappern.

laborous *adj.* mühsam; -boure(n) *v.* sich bemühen, wirken, bearbeiten.

Lacedomye Lacedämon.

lace(n) *v.* schnüren, binden.

lacerte *sb.* Muschel.

lachesse *sb.* Richtigkeit, Aufschub.

lad(de) *f.* lede(n).

Ladomya *f.* Laodomya.

lady (auch *gen.*) *sb.* Herrin, Dame; book of the XXV. Ladies: ungenaue Bezeichnung d. L.G.W.

last(e) *f.* leve(n) 2.

lak *sb.* Mangel, Fehltritt; *dat.* lakke (?).

lake *sb.* 1. See, Teich. 2. feine Leinwand.

Lameth Lamedh (1. Mos. IV, 19).

lampe *sb.* Platte, Scheibe; Lampe.

Lamuel(-wel) *f.* Spr. Sal. XXXI, 4.

langour *sb.* Siedtum, Verschmachten.

langwisse(n) *v.* erschlaffen, verschmachten. Laodomya Laodamia, Gattin des Proteus.

lappe *sb.* Zipfel; Umhüllung; Schoß.

large *adj. & adv.* breit, weit; weit-schweifig; freigebig, reichlich; *sb.* at . . 1. in Freiheit, nach Belieben; -ly *adv.* im weiten Sinne; -esse, -nesse *sb.* Freigebigkeit, Wohltätigkeit.

lasse (lesse) *comp.* weniger, geringer; 1. and moore klein und groß; *f.* lite(l).

last *sb. s. & pl.* Last (Gewicht).

laste 1. *supl.* d. letzte; atte 1. zuletzt, schließlich; at . . 1. bei . . Ende (*f.* late). 2. -(n) *v.* dauern, reichen; last 3. *s. spr.*; laste *pt.*

lat(en) *f.* le(e)te. — late *adj. & adv.* spät; unlängst.

laterede *adj.* säumig.

lathe *sb. (dial.)* Schuppen.

latoun *sb.* Messing.

Latumysus [?] (nach andern Pacuvius; vgl. Cic., De orat. II, 69).

laude *sb.* Lob, Preis, Wertschätzung; *pl.* Frühmette.

laughe(n) *st. v.* lachen; lough *pt.*; laughen *ppt.*

Launcelet (-ot) Lanzelot, Held d. Tafelrunde; de lake: du lac.

launchegay *sb.* maurische Lanze.

launcheth 3. *s. pr.* läßt gleiten.

launde *sb.* Waldblichtung.

laurer *sb.* Lorbeer(baum).

lauriat *adj.* mit Lorbeer gekrönt.

laus *adj.* los; *f.* loos 2.

labour *sb.* Waschbeden.

lawe *sb.* Gesetz, Gebot; Glaube (Konfession).
 lawriol *sb.* Lorbeer-Seidelbast, Kirchlorbeer.
 laxatif (-yues *pl.*) *sb.* Abführmittel.
 lay 1. *sb. a*) Lieb, Leich; *b*) Gesetz, Glaube.
 2. *pt.*, *f.* lye(n).
 laynere *sb.* Riemen.
 lazar *sb.* Aussätziger.
 le(c)cherous *adj.* lüßtern, unjüthlich; -rye
 sb. Wollust, Buhlerei; -chour *sb.* Lüß-
 ling (vgl. likerous, etc.).
 leche *sb.* Arzt; -craft *sb.* Heilkunst.
 lede(n) 1. *v.* führen, fahren, bringen; let
 3. *s. pr.*; ladde (ledde) *pt.*; (y)lad *ppt.*
 2. leden *adj.* bleiern. 3. *sb.* Redeweise,
 Sprache; -e *dat.*
 leed *sb.* Blei; (bleierner) Kessel.
 leef (lief) 1. *sb.* Blatt; leves *pl.* 2. *adj.*
 lieb; leeve *flekt.*; vgl. lief; I am, have I.
 es ist mir I.; levere *comp.* lieber; have
 (hadde) I. möchte lieber.
 leefful *f.* leeful.
 leefsel *sb.* Busch (als Wirtshauszeichen);
 vgl. leuesel.
 leek *sb.* Lauch, „Pissferling“; lekes *pl.*
 leep *f.* lepe.
 leere(n) 1. *v.* lehren, lernen; lered (*ppt.*)
 gelehrt; vgl. lerne(n). 2. *sb.* Fleisch.
 lees *sb.* Band, Schlinge, Koppel.
 leeste *supl.* geringste; atte 1. (weye) we-
 nigstens.
 leet *f.* lete(n).
 leeve *v.* glauben; leevestow 2. *s. pr.*; vgl.
 leef u. leve(n).
 lef *f.* leve(n).
 legge, leith *f.* leye(n).
 lekes *f.* leek.
 lemaille *f.* li-
 lemes *sb. pl.* 1. Flammen. 2. Glieder; *f.*
 lym.
 lemman *sb.* Liebchen, Schatz; Buhle,
 Buhlerin.
 lendes *sb. pl.* Lenden.
 lene 1. *adj.* mager, dürr. 2. -(n) *v. a*) lei-
 hen; lente *pt.*; (y)lent *ppt.*; *b*) neigen.
 leng *comp. adv.*, lenger *adj. & adv.* länger;
 f. long(e).
 lent *f.* lene 2.
 lenvoy = l'envoi (*frz.*) *sb.* Geleit.
 leonyn *adj.* löwengleich.
 leos (gr. λεώς) *Wolk.*
 leoun *sb.* Löwe.
 lepe(n) *st. v.* springen; leep *pt.*
 Lepe *St.*, unweit Cadix.
 lered *f.* leere.
 lerne(n) *v.* lernen, erfahren; lehren; -ed
 (*ppt.*) gelehrt; vgl. leere.

lese(n) *st. v.* verlieren; -yng(e) *vsb.* Ver-
 lust; loste *pt.*; lost, lorn *ppt.*
 lesse *f.* lasse.
 lessoun *sb.* Lektion; Bibeltext.
 lest, list, lust 1. *sb.* Lust, Freude, Wunsch.
 2. *v.* (auch lyst) *imps.* es gelüstet, be-
 liebt, gefällt; leste, liste *conj. pr. & pt.*
 lesyng *vsb.* Lüge; vgl. lese(n).
 let *f.* lede(n) & lette(n)
 lete(n) *st. v.* lassen, überlassen, verlassen,
 unterlassen; lat *impt.*; leet *pt.*; laten,
 lat *ppt.*
 lette 1. *sb.* Verzug, Aufschub. 2. -(n) *v.*
 hindern, aufhalten, abhalten, stören; ab-
 stehen; zögern; lette, letted *pt.*; let *ppt.*
 Lettow *Titauen.*
 lett(e)rure *sb.* Gelehrsamkeit, Bücherweisheit.
 lettre *sb.* Buchstabe; Stabreim; (auch *pl.*)
 Brief; Liste.
 letuarie *sb.* Latwerge.
 leve 1. *sb.* Erlaubnis, Urlaub. 2. -(n) *v.*
 lassen, verlassen, unterlassen, ablassen von,
 übrig lassen; aufgeben; aufhören; lef, leve
 impt.; laste, leste *pt.*; last, left *ppt.*; ylast
 zurückgelassen.
 leveful, leefful *adj.* erlaubt, zulässig.
 levene *sb.* Blizstrahl.
 levere *f.* leef 2.
 levesel *sb.* Buschwerk, Laube; vgl. leefsel.
 lewed *adj.* unwissend, ungebildet, töricht;
 Ioder, schlüpfzig; a I. man e. Laie; -ly
 adv. einfältig, schwach, dürftig; -nesse
 sb. Rohheit; Unjim, Torheit.
 leye(n), legge(n) *v.* legen; wetten, ver-
 pfänden; decken (table); leith 3. *s. pr.*;
 leyde *pt.*; (y)leyd *ppt.*; I. on drauflos-
 gehen; *f.* lowe.
 leyser *sb.* Muße; günstige Gelegenheit.
 leyt *sb.* Bliz, Flamme.
 li- *f.* auch ly-
 lia = Leah (I. Moj., 29 f.), als Begriff der
 Geschäftigkeit.
 libel *sb.* schriftliche Erklärung.
 Libra *sb.* (astron.) Wage [V. 18082 irrthüm-
 lich statt Taur(us), Stier?].
 licenciat *sb.* Licentiat (Mönch, der d. Lizenz
 hat, überall d. Rechte zu hören).
 liche (ly-) *adj. & adv.* gleich; *f.* lik, ylike.
 licour *sb.* Feuchtigkeit, Saft; I. of the vyne
 Rebensaft.
 lief *adj.* *f.* leef; *sb.* Lieb, Liebling, Schatz;
 good I. Herzlieb.
 lifly, liflode *f.* lyf.
 lift *adj.* linst.
 lige *adj.* lehn(pflichtig); I. lord Lehnsherr;
 I. man Lehnsmann; liges *pl.* Untertanen.

ligeance *sb.* Lehnstreue.

ligge(n) *f.* lye(n).

light 1. *sb.* Licht, Helle; -e *dat.* 2. *adj.*; -e *flekt.* a) licht, hell; b) leicht, leichtfertig; heiter, freudig; -ly *adv.* 3. -e(n) *v.* a) erhellen, (er)leuchten; anzünden; b) erleichtern; erheitern, erfreuen; absteigen; sich herablassen; lighte *pt.*; -ne(n) *v.* anzünden; -nesse *sb.* Gewandtheit.

ligne *sb.* Linie, Reihe; Geschlecht.

lik, lyk *adj. & adv.* gleich; like (ly-) *flekt.*; likker *comp.* passender; -ne(n) *v.* vergleichen.

like(n) (ly-) *v.* (imps.) gefallen, belieben.

likerous *adj.* lecher, nachhaft; (ver)lockend; lüstern, begehrlisch; begierig; -nesse *sb.* Leckerhaftigkeit, Begierde; Lüsternheit; unzüchtige Handlung.

likly *adj.* wahrscheinlich; -hede, -nesse *sb.* Wahrscheinlichkeit.

limaille (le-) *sb.* (Metall-)Späne.

lipse(n) *v.* lipse(n).

lisse 1. *sb.* Linderung. 2. -(n) *v.* lindern.

list(e) *f.* lest(e).

liste(n), listne(n) *v.* hören, lauschen.

listow *f.* lye(n).

lite, -el *adj. & adv.* klein, gering; wenig; a 1. ein wenig, kurze Zeit; *f.* lasse.

lith 1. *sb.* Glied. 2. *pr.*, *f.* lye 1.

litherly *adv.* unnütz.

lixt *f.* lye 2.

lo- *f.* auch loo-

lode *sb.* Ladung; -menage *sb.* Lottentunst.

loft *sb.* Luft; -e *dat.*; on 1. droben, empor.

logge 1. *sb.* Hütte, Verschlag. 2. -(n) *v.* wohnen, logieren.

logyk *sb.* Logik (d. h. philosoph. Unterricht).

loke(n) *v.* einschließen; loken *ppt.*

lollere *sb.* Lollard (Anhänger Wiclefs).

lond = land.

long *adj.* lang; -e *flekt. & adv.* lange; leng(er) *comp.* *f.* o.; -e(n) *v.* 1. gehören, passen. 2. sich sehnen; -yng(e) *vsb.* Sehnsucht; vgl. (a)long.

loode-sterre *sb.* Leitstern (Polarstern).

looke(n) *v.* aussehn, blicken; sehen, achtgeben; -yng *vsb.* Blick.

loone *sb.* Anleihe; Gabe, Gnade.

loore *sb.* Lehre, Glaube; Gelehrsamkeit; Fähigkeit.

loos 1. *sb.* Ruf, Ruhm. 2. *adj.* los; *f.* laus.

looth *adj.* leid; verhaßt; lothest *supl.* d. ärgste.

lord Herr, Beherrscher (astrol.: Planet, der eine Stunde regiert); Baron.

lordynges *sb. pl.* Herrschaften.

lordshipe *sb.* Herrschaft; Schutz; Gebiet.

lorel *sb.* Lump.

loru *f.* lese(n).

los *sb.* Verlust.

losengeour *sb.* Schmeichler; -gerie *sb.* Schmeichelei.

lotyng *ppr.* sich verbergend.

lou- *f.* auch low-.

lough 1. *pt.*, *f.* laughe(n). 2. *adj.*, *f.* low.

louryng *ppr.* finstet.

love 1. *sb.* Liebe; Geliebte(r), Buhle; 1-coler *sb.* zierlicher (?) Kragen (od. lowe c. 2.); 1-day *sb.* Veröhnungstag; 1-drury *sb.* Minnedienst; 1-knotte *sb.* Liebesknoten, Bandschleife; 1-likyng(e) Liebeslust; 1-longyng(e) Liebessehnen; -ly *adj.* liebevoll, zärtlich. 2. -(n) *v.* lieben; lowyere (-vere) *sb.* Liebhaber, Verliebter.

loves *sb. pl.* Brote.

low, lough *adj.*, -e *adv.* niedrig, tief; go 1. sich beugen; leye 1. (sich) erniedrigen, bücken; zunichte machen; -ly *adj.* bescheiden.

lowke *sb.* Helfershelfer.

lowsy *adj.* laufig, lumpig.

lowte(n) *v.* sich verbeugen.

Loy Elgins, fränk. Heiliger, Schutzherr d. Gold- u. Hufschmiede.

Lucan: M. Annaeus Lucanus, röm. Dichter (39—65); verf. 'Pharsalia' (von Ch. nicht direkt benutzt).

luce *sb.* Hecht.

lucre *sb.* Gewinn; 1. of vileynye schändliche Gewinnsucht.

Lucresse Lucretia, von Tarquinius geschändet (*f.* Ch.s L.G.W. 1680 ff.).

Lucye, richtiger Lucilia (in 'Epistola Valerii, etc.'; *f.* Valerius).

Lucyna Lucina: Beinamen d. Diana als Geburtshelferin.

Lumbard *sb.* Lombarde; Geldverleiher, Bankier (in M.A.); -ye Lombardei; stede of L.: in M.A. geschätzte Pferderasse.

lunarie *sb.* Mondviole, Silberblatt.

lure *sb.* Lockpfeife; brynge to 1. ködern; -(n) *v.* ködern, ködern.

lussburghes *sb. pl.* Luxemburger (d. h. schlechte) Münze.

lust *sb.* Lust usw.; *f.* lest; -y *adj.* lustig, frisch, munter, fröhlich, heiter; fed, dreist; gierig; -ynesse *sb.* Lustbarkeit; Pracht;

lustithe(e)d *sb.* Lustbarkeit, Lust, Genuß.

ly- *f.* auch li-.

lyard *adj.* rotgrau; 1. boy Grauchen.

Lybeux = li beau(s) desconnu(s), Held e. megl. Rittergedichts.

lyche *f.* liche u. yliche.

lych-wake *sb.* Leichenwacht.

lycorys *sb.* Latrife.

lye(n), ligge(n) (ly-) 1. *st. v.* liegen, sich befinden *uſw.*; lith 3. *s. pr.*; lay *pt.*; leyn *ppt.* 2. lye(n) *v.* lügen; lixt 2. *s. pr.* 3. lye *sb.* Lüge.

Lyeys Dieß, St. in Armenien (erob. 1367). lyf, lif *sb.* Leben, Lebensbeschreibung; lyves *gen. & pl.*; 1. creature lebendes Geſchöpf; lyve *dat.*; on l., alyve am Leben; vgl. lyve(n); lifly *adv.* lebenswahr; -lode *sb.* Lebensunterhalt.

Lygurge Lyfurgus (nach Teseide auf Arcites Seite).

lym *sb.* 1. (i) Glied (*f. lemes*). 2. (i) Leim, Rast; lym(e)rod *sb.* Leimrute (*b. h.* Schrägbalen im Wappen).

lymyte(n) *v.* bestimmen; -tacioun *sb.* Bezirk; -tour *sb.* Bettelmönch (mit Lizenz für e. bestimmten Bezirk).

lynage *sb.* Geschlecht, Abstammung.

lynde *sb.* Linde.

lyne *sb.* Linie, Reihe; Geschlecht; -ed *ppt.* gefüttert.

Lynyan: Giovanni di Lignano, ital. Rechtsgelehrter († 1383).

lyst 1. *sb.* Gehör, Ohr. 2. *v. f. lest*. 3. -es (li-) *sb. pl.* (als *s.*) Schranken (beim Turnier).

lytarge, (li-) *sb.* Bleiweiß.

lyve(n) *v.* leben; -vyng(e) *vsb.* Lebensweise, Dasein.

lyvere *sb.* 1. einer, d. lebt (auch = Leben). 2. Leber. 3. -ee (gleichartige) Tracht. Lyvia Livia, Gattin d. Drusus († 23 n. Chr.).

Maad *f.* make.

maat *adj.* matt; niedergebrüdt; make *m.* setzen, besiegen.

Mabely Frauenname? (= ma belle?).

mace *sb., s. & pl.* Keule(n).

Machabee Makkabäer.

Macrobeus: Macrobius Theodosius, röm. Schriftsteller (um 400); verf. e. Kommentar zu Ciceros 'Somnium Scipionis'.

madde(n) *v.* von Sinnen sein.

Madrian Mathurin, frz. Heiliger (od. Martinus?).

magyk *sb.* Magie; *m. natureel*: geheime Wirkung natürlicher Kräfte (vgl. H.F. V. 1265 ff.).

maheym *sb.* Verstümmelung, Lähmung; *f. mayme*.

Mahoun Mahomet; vgl. maumet.

maille *sb.* Kettenpanzer.

maister (may-) *sb.* Meister, Magister; Herr, Gebieter, Oberhaupt; *m.-strete* Hauptstraße; -tresse *sb.* Herrin; Hofdame, Erziehlerin; -trie (-ye) *sb.* Meisterschaft, Meisterstück; Herrschaft, Gewalt; Ansehen; Kunstfertigkeit.

make 1. *sb.* Genosse, -in; Ehgenosß, Gatte, -in; Gegner. 2. -(n) *v.* machen, tun, veranlassen; *m. joye*: freudig begrüßen; *m. melodye*: anstimmen; *m. sorwe*, wo: wehklagen; *m. a thyng e. Document* aufsetzen; *f. avaut*, berd, feeste, etc.; *mak-ed*, made *pt.*; (y)maked, (y)maad *ppt.*

male *sb.* 1. Ranzen, Mantelsack. 2. männliches Wesen.

malefice *sb.* Zaubel.

malencolyk *adj.* melancholisch, schwermütig; -lie *sb.* Melancholie, Schwermut.

malisoun *sb.* Fluch.

Malkyn, Malyn(e) (Namenname *f.* Matilda) Mäze (?); (wohl auch) Malle.

malliable *adj.* geschmeidig.

Malvesye *sb.* Malvajier (gr. Wein).

man *sb.* Mann, Mensch, *prn.* man; *mannes gen.*; *men pl.* (auch = man), *mennes gen.*; *manhede*, -hod *sb.* Mannhaftigkeit;

mannysh adj. menschlich; mannartig.

manace 1. *sb.* Drohung. 2. -(n) *v.* (an-)dröhen.

man- *f.* auch maun-.

mandement *sb.* Vorladung, Mandat.

mane techel phares: *f.* Daniel V, 25—28. manere *sb.* Art, Weise; Benehmen, (gute) Sitte; *māner* (ohne of) Art; oft bloße Verstärkung e. Pron.; *z. B.* no m. keinerlei; *swich m.* dierartig *uſw.*

mansioun *sb.* Wohnst.; (astrof.) Haus (Stellung e. Planeten in e. Zeichen d. Tierkreises, wo er d. größten Einfluß haben soll); (tägliche) Stellung (*b. Mon-des*); vgl. hous.

mansuetude *sb.* Sanftmut.

(in) manus tuas: *f.* Ps. XXXI, 6; Luk. XXIII, 46.

manýe 1. *sb.* Wahnsinn. 2. *mānye prn. pl.* viele.

mapul *sb.* Horn.

marc *f.* mark.

marchal *sb.* Marchall, Oberaufseher.

Marcian: Martianus Capella, röm. Schriftst. (Ans. d. 5. Jhs. n. Chr.); verf. 'De nuptiis Mercurii et Philologiae'.

Marcien *adj.* d. Mars geweiht.

Mardochee *n.* Mardachai (Esther II, 5 ff.). mare *sb.* Mähre, Stute; V. 4053: Anspie-

lung auf bekannte Fabel.

mareys *sb.* Sumpf.
 Marie (spr. Marie u. Marīe); als Ausruf:
 (Jesus) Maria! Fürwahr!
 mark *sb.* 1. Abzeichen; Stamm. 2. (die)
 Mark (Wert im 14. Jh.: 13 sh. 4 d.).
 3. M.—: Marius d. Apostel.
 market-beter(e) *sb.* Kaufbold.
 markys *sb.* Markgraf; -esse Markgräfin.
 marleput *sb.* Mergelgrube.
 Marte (ital.) Mars.
 martireth 3. s. pr. martert.
 mary *sb.* (das) Mark; -bones Markknochen.
 mate(e)re(-ire) *sb.* Sache, Stoff, Gegenstand.
 matrimoine *sb.* Ehestand.
 Maudelayne, Magdaleyne Magdalene.
 maugree (maw-) *prp.* trotz; f. heed.
 maumet (maw-) *sb.* Abgott, Göze; -mettrie
 Heidentum, Götzendienst.
 maunciple *sb.* Hausverwalter, Schaffner
 (e. Collegiums).
 Maure Maurus (Schüler Benedikts).
 Mawny (Glosse, V. 15471): Sir Oliver
 Mauny (74. wikked nest = mal nid).
 may *pl.-pr.* mag, kann, darf; mowe(n)
conj. & *pl. pr.*; myghte *pt.*
 mayde(n) *sb.* Mädchen, Jungfer; m.-child
 kleines Mädchen; maydenhede *sb.* Jung-
 fräulichkeit, Jungfernschaft.
 maynteyne(n) *v.* behaupten, durchsetzen.
 mayster f. mai-.
 maze 1. *sb.* Wirrwarr. 2. (-n) *v.* irren; ver-
 wirrt (betäubt) sein.
 mazednesse *sb.* Betäubung.
 mazelyn *sb.* Becher aus Majerholz.
 mede *sb.* 1. Wiese (meede). 2. Met; f.
 meeth.
 medle(n) *v.* mischen; sich einmischen, ab-
 geben (mit); -ee *adj.* mischfarbig.
 meede *sb.* 1. Lohn, Sold. 2. Wiese (f. mede).
 meel *sb.* Mahl.
 meene 1. *sb.* Mitte; Mittel; Vermittlung,
 -ler. 2. *adj.* mittel; me(e)ne while mitt-
 lertweile. 3. (-n) *v.* meinen, beabsichtigen,
 bedeuten; mente *pt.*
 meest(e) *supl.* größte, höchste; f. moost.
 meeth *sb.* Met; f. mede.
 meignee f. meynee.
 meke 1. *adj.* & *adv.* sanft. 2. (-n) *refl.*
 sich demütigen.
 Melan Mailand.
 mele *sb.* Mehl.
 melle, mille *sb.* Mühle.
 memorie *sb.* Erinnerung, Gedächtnis, Be-
 men(nes) f. man. [wußtsein.
 mencion *sb.* Erwähnung, Bericht; make
 m. erwähnen.

mendynant *sb.* Bettelmönch.
 mercenarie *sb.* Mietling.
 Mercenrike Mercia, aegl. Königreich (Mit-
 telland).
 merciabie *adj.* gnädig, barmherzig.
 Mercurie 1. Merkur a) als Gott (vgl.
 Marcian), b) als Planet. 2. m— Queck-
 silber; m. crude: rudis Mercurius.
 mere *sb.* Mähre; f. mare.
 meritorie *adj.* verdienstlich.
 merk *sb.* Bild.
 mersshy *adj.* fumpfig, morastig.
 merveille (-veyle) *sb.* Wunder, Verwun-
 derung; -lous *adj.* wunderbar, -bar.
 mery(e), murye, myrye *adj.* & *adv.* fröh-
 lich, heiter, lustig, freundlich; üppig;
 murierly *comp.* *adv.*
 mescha(u)nce (mys-) *sb.* Unheil, Miß-
 geschick, Schande; Mißbrauch, Unfug;
 with m. o Schande! Unheil komme über..
 (vgl. sorwe).
 mescheef, -ief *sb.* Unglück, Unfall, Schade.
 mesel *sb.* Mißfälliger, Außsätiger; -rie
sb. Mißsucht, Ausfatz.
 message *sb.* Botschaft, Auftrag; Bote;
 -er *sb.* Bote.
 mester, myst(i)er *sb.* Gewerbe, Beruf,
 Stand, Art.
 mesuage *sb.* Wohnhaus, Grundstück.
 mesure *sb.* (Längen-)Maß; (rechtes) Maß,
 Mäßigkeit; -rable *adj.* mäßig, bescheiden.
 met 1. *sb.* Hohlmaß. 2. *ppl.*, f. mete 3.
 Metamorphosios *gen.* v. metamorphosis:
 Dichtung Ovids.
 mete 1. *sb.* Speise, Gericht, Mahl. 2. *adj.*
 geeignet, tauglich. 3. (-n) v. a) (ē) treffen,
 begegnen, wiedersehen; mette *pt.*, (y)met
ppl., ymette *pl.*; wel met gut, daß wir
 uns treffen; b) (æ) träumen; mette *pt.*;
 met *ppl.*
 Metellius Metellus; f. Glosse.
 mewe, muwe *sb.* Gehege; Vogelhaus.
 meynee, meig-, *sb.* Dienerschaft, Gefolge,
 Troß, Heerschar, Kumpanei.
 Michias Micha d. Prophet.
 middel *sb.* Mitte; Taille.
 Middelburgh: Hafenstadt auf d. Insel Wal-
 deren.
 Milesie Milet (Kleinasien).
 ministre *sb.* Diener, Beamter; Vermittler,
 Werkzeug.
 mirre *sb.* Myrrhe.
 mis- f. mys-.
 misericorde *sb.* Barmherzigkeit, Mitleid.
 miteyn *sb.* Kaufhandschuh.
 mixne *sb.* Mißhaufe.

mo (eigtl. *ntr.*) *comp. adj. & adv.* mehr, noch andere, sonst; *tymes mo* öfter; *f. moore* u. *namo*.
moebles *sb. pl.* bewegliche Habe.
moeve(n) *v.* bewegen, erregen; -*vere* *sb.* Bewegter; erste m. Urheber; -*yng(e)* *vsb.* Regung; erste m.: 'primum mobile', d. h. d. äußerste der 9 Sphären (vgl. *speere*).
mollificacioun *sb.* Erweichung.
moone (*moone*) *sb.* 1. Mond, Mondstellung (vgl. *mansion*). 2. Klage.
monstre *sb.* Ungeheuer; Zauberei.
montance *sb.* Betrag, Wert, Größe.
mooder *sb.* Mutter; *modres gen. & pl.*
moone *f. mo-*
moore *comp.* mehr, größer (vgl. *lasse*); *adv.* auch Umschreibung d. *comp.*; *f. mo & na-*; *moost(e)* *supl.* meiste, größte, höchste; *adv.* auch Umschr. d. *supl.* Vgl. *meest*.
moorne(n) *v.* trauern; -*yng(e)* *vsb.* Trauer.
moot *pt.-pr.* muß, mag; *most* 2. *s. pr.*; *moote* *pl. & conjtv.*, *moste* *pt.*, auch *conjtv.*; so *mo(o)te* I so wahr ich möge, ich hoffe zu usw.
moralitee *sb.* Sittlichkeit; moralische Erzählung.
mordre 1. *sb.* Mord. 2. -(n) *v.* morden.
mormal *sb.* Geschwür, Brand.
morne *sb.* Morgen (*f. morwe*).
mortefye (*morti-*) *v.* ertöten; (*chem.*) verwandeln.
mortreux *sb.* Potpourri (suppenartige Mischung aus Fleischstücken u. Ingredienzen).
morwe, -*nyng* *sb.* Morgen.
mosel *sb.* Maulkorb.
moste *f. moot* u. vgl. *moore*.
mote 1. *sb.* Stäubchen. 2. *conjtv.* *f. moot*.
motlee *sb.* scheckige Tracht.
motyf *sb.* Grundgedanke; *greet* m. schwerer Verdacht.
mowe 1. *sb.* Frage. 2. *pl. pr. f. may*.
mowle(n) *v.* vermodern, verfallen.
Moyes Moses.
moyste *adj.* geschmeidig; faßtig.
much(e) (*l*) *adj. & adv.* viel, groß; sehr; in so (*for as*) m. insofern.
mullok *sb.* Rehricht, Abfall.
multiplie(n) *v.* (sich) vermehren; (alchem.) Gold machen; -*cacioun* *sb.* Goldmachemurmuracioun *sb.* Murren. [kunst.
murthe, **myrthe** *sb.* Frohsinn, Freude; Spaß; lustige Geschichten.
murye *f. merye*.
muscle *sb.* Muskel.
muwe *f. mewe*.

my- *f.* auch *mi-*.

my (vor Konj.), **my(n)** (vor Vof. u. h.) *prn.* mein; *myne* *sbst.* d. meine usw.

Myda Midas.

mynde *sb.* Geist, Sinn; Erinnerung, Gedächtnis; *have* (*in*) m. bedenken, denken an.

mynour *sb.* Bergmann.

mynstral *sb.* Spielmann; -*cie* *sb.* Spielmannskunst, Saitenspiel; Musik; (*musik.*) Instrument.

myracle *sb.* Wunder; Mirafel (geistl. Spiel); Wundergeschichte.

myre *sb.* Schlamm, Schmutz; *f. dun.*

myrie *f. merye*, **myrthe** *f. murthe*.

mys *adj.* übel, verfehlt.

mysaventure *sb.* Mißgeschick; -*avyse(n)* *refl.* sich versehen, übel beraten sein; -*bileeue* *sb.* Mißtrauen; -*boden* *ppt.* beschimpft, mißhandelt; -*born* *ppt.* schlecht betragen; -*carie* *v.* sich verlaufen; -*chaunce* *f. mes-*; -*conceive(n)* *v.* falsch auffassen; -*deme(n)* *v.* falsch urteilen; -*departe(n)* *v.* ungerecht verteilen; -*doon* *v.* sich vergehen (gegen); -*ese*, -*eyse* *Nummer*, Qual, Glend; -*esed* *ppt.* gequält; -*fillle* *conjtv. pt.* d. Mißgeschick befiel; -*goon* *ppt.* verirrt; -*governance* *sb.* Mißverhalten, Frevel; -*gye(n)* *refl.* sich iren; -*hap* *sb.* Unglück; -*happe(n)* *v.* mißglücken, Unglück haben; -*happy* *adj.* unglücklich; -*lay* *pt.* lag verkehrt, schief; -*seye(n)* *v.* sich verreden, ungeschickt ausdrücken; beschimpfen, verleumden; -*spek(e)n)* *v.* etw. Ungehöriges sagen; -*spend-yng(e)* *vsb.* Vergeubung; -*take(n)* *v.* sich vergehen; -*troste(n)* (-*truste*) *v.* mißtrauen; -*tyde(n)* *v.* Mißgeschick haben.

myster *f. mester*.

mysterie *sb.* Amt.

myte *sb.* 1. Hefler. 2. Milbe.

N' für *ne* vor Vofal: *nam* = *ne* am, *nin* = *ne* in; vor *h*: *nath* = *ne* hath, *nadde* = *ne* hadde; vor *w*: *nas* = *ne* was, etc.

na (*dial.*) *prn.* kein; *f.* auch *namo*, etc.

Nabugodonosor Nebufadnezar.

naddre *sb.* Natter.

nafors *f. force*.

nakerers *sb. pl.* Kesselpaufen.

nale: *atte n.* = *at then* (*dat.*) *ale* beim Bier.

nam 1. 3. *s. pt.* (*v. neme*) nahm. 2. = *ne* am.

nameliche, -*ly* *adv.* besonders, zumal.

namo, **namoore** *prn.* *& adv.* nicht(s) mehr, nichts weiter, kein anderer.

narette f. arette.

narwe *adj. & adv.* eng, dicht; klein; genau.

nat 1. *adv.* nicht; f. naught, noght. 2. = ne at.

nathelees *adv.* nichtsdestoweniger, trotzdem.

nativitee *sb.* Geburt.

naught, noght nichts; *adv.* nicht (betont), keineswegs; f. nat; n. but nur.

nay *adv.* nein, nicht doch; *sb.* no n. kein Zweifel, Widerspruch.

nayte(n) *v.* verneinen.

ne 1. *adv.* nicht (vor Verb, öfters mit zweiter Negation). 2. *conj.* noch; ne . . ne (nor) weder . . noch; vgl. n'. 3. (*dial.*) *prn.* = no; vgl. neen.

nece *sb.* Nichte, Nuhme.

negligence *sb.* Nachlässigkeit, Versäumnis; -gent *adj.* nachlässig, faumselig.

nede 1. *sb.* Bedürfnis, Geschäft, Not. 2. *adv.*, -ly, -s *adv.* notwendig(er Weise), durchaus. 3. -(n) *v.* nötig sein; bedürfen, brauchen; meist *imps.*; nedede *pt.*; ned-es-cost *adv.* notgedrungen.

neen (*dial.*) *prn.* fein.

neer *adj. & adv. comp.* näher, pos. nahe; f. ny.

neet *sb.* Kindevieh; netherd *sb.* Rinderhirt.

neigh f. ny.

neighebor *sb.* Nachbar; Nächster.

nempne(n) *v.* nennen, angeben, anführen; ynempned *ppt.*; f. nevene.

nercotikes *sb. pl.* Betäubungsmittel.

nerre = ne were.

netherd f. neet.

nevene *v.* nennen, erwähnen.

never(e) (öfters einsilb.: ner) *adv.* nie(mals), nimmer; n.-a-deel f. deel; n. the lasse *adv.* nichtsdestoweniger, dennoch; n. the-mo nimmermehr; n. so noch so.

newe 1. *adj. & adv.* neu; aufs neue, wieder, neulich, kürzlich; of n. neuerdings; n. and n. immer wieder. 2. -(n) *v.* erneuern; -fangel *adj.* auf Neues bedacht, abwechselungsüchtig; -fangelnesse *sb.* Abwechslung.

Newegate: Gefängnis (in London).

Nicerates (*gen.*) Niferates, Sohn des Nicias (um 404 v. Chr.).

Nichanore Nikanor 1. (V. 11748) Feldherr Alexanders d. Gr. 2. (V. 15287) Feldherr d. Antiochus (II. Maff. VIII, 9 ff.).

nigromancien *sb.* Schwarzkünster.

noble 1. *adj.* edel. 2. *sb.* Nobel (Goldmünze: 6 sh. 8 d.). 3. -(n) *v.* berebeln; -esse *sb.* Edelsinn, Würde, Herrlichkeit, Hoheit; -eye *sb.* Adel, Vornehme; Würde, Hofstaat.

Noe Noah.

noide = ne wolde.

nones (-ys): for the n. (eigtl. for then-nes; vgl. nale) zu diesem Zweck, bei der Gelegenheit; hierfür, dabei, dazu (Stillwort).

noon *prn.* kein (vor Vokal u. h, no vor Konf.); or n. oder nicht.

noot = ne woot; noote f. note.

norice 1. *sb.* Amme, Pflegerin. 2. -(n), -sse(n), -ssh(e)n *v.* nähren; (auf)erziehen; (y)norissed *ppt.*; -yng(e) *vsb.* Nährkraft; Wachstum; Erziehung.

nortelrie *sb.* Erziehung.

Northfolk Norfolk.

nosethirles *sb. pl.* Nasenlöcher.

not *sb.* Ruß; n.-heed Stucktopf, rund geschnittenes Haar.

notabilitee *sb.* Merkwürdigkeit.

note (noo-) *sb.* 1. Note, Stimme, Weise. 2. Geschäft. 3. N- St. Neot, Mönch in Glastonbury, † 877.

note-muge *sb.* Muskatnuß.

Noth [?] Nothus (Südwind), Süd. [Vgl. Boeth., 1. c.]

nothyng 1. *prn.* nichts. 2. *adv.* garnicht, durchaus nicht, keineswegs; n. but nur.

notifie(n) *v.* ankündigen, ausdrücken.

nought f. noght.

novelrie *sb.* Neuheit.

nowche *sb.* Spange, Bierat; f. ouche.

Nowel *sb.* 1. Weihnacht. 2. V. 3816 ff.

für Noe (Noah).

nowthe *adv.* nun; as n. für diesmal.

noyse *sb.* Geräusch, Musik, Lärm.

ny, neigh 1. *adj.* nahe; nye *flekt.*; neer *comp.*; nexte *supl.* 2. ny *adv.* beinahe; kurz; genau. 3. *prp.* nahe, bei.

nyce *adj.* töricht, närrisch, toll; kleinlich; -tee *sb.* Torheit, Einfalt, dummes Zeug.

nyfles *sb. pl.* Schnidschnad.

nygardye *sb.* Knauferei.

nyghttale *sb.* Nachtzeit.

nyghtspel *sb.* Nachtgespensterbann.

nyl = ne wil (wol), nyn = ne in, nys = ne is, nyste = ne wiste.

O 1. *num.* (vor Konf.), f. oon; o thyng eins, das eine. 2. *interj.* oh!

obeisa(u)nce *sb.* Gehorsam, Ehrfurcht; -saunt *adj.* gehorsam; obeye(n) *v.* gehorchen; *refl.* sich beugen (vor).

observe(n) *v.* achten, schonen; (sich) behüten (vor); -vaunce *sb.* Beobachtung, Achtung, Pflicht; Fußbigung; *pl.* Gebräuche, Verpflichtungen.

octogamy *sb.* achtmalige Verheirathung.
 Odenake Odenathus.
 of 1. *prp.* von, durch; an; während; mit; aus, wegen; über, in bezug auf, nach.
 2. *adv.* ab, fort, herunter; *i. come.*
 offensioun *sb.* Angriff, Beschädigung.
 offertorie *sb.* Opfergefang.
 office *sb.* Amt, Beruf; Verwendung, Dienstleistung; house of o. Wirtschaftsgebäude;
 -er(e) *sb.* Beamter; Wärter; Diener, -in.
 offryng *vsb.* Opfer, Opfergabe.
 of-shouwe(n) *v.* zurückstoßen, -treiben.
 oft *adj.* viel, häufig; -e *flekt.*; o. tyme(s) oftmals. 2. -e(n) *adv.* häufig, oftmals; dringend, heftig; *often comp.*
 oght (ought, ouht) *prn.* (irgend) etwas, etw. Brauchbares, Wertvolles; *adv.* etwa;
 oghte *f.* owe.
 old(e) *f.* oo-.
 Olifaunt Elefant (Name e. Riesen in Rittergedichten).
 olyver 1. *sb.* Ölbaum. 2. O-: Freund Roland's; *vgl.* Mawny.
 Oloferne, -us Holofernes.
 omelie *sb.* Homilie, Lehrpredigt.
 Omer Homer.
 on 1. *prp.* auf, an, in; über, in betreff;
f. a. 2. *adv.* an (haben usw.).
 oned *ppt.*, oneden *pt.* vereinigt(en); *f.* oon.
 ones *adv.* einmal, einft, einzig; at o. zugleich.
 oo *interj.* ho!
 oold *adj.* alt, früher; wohlbekannt; olde *flekt.*; elder, eldest *comp. & supl.*
 oon *num. & prn.* eins; ein (betont vor Total u. h); *subst.* einer (ohne of vor *supl.*, z. B. 8088); allein; gleich, derselbe; after o. gleichmäßig (gut); in o. immerfort, gleichmäßig; many o. so mancher; o. and o. neben einander; that o. der eine, *f.* o.
 oother *prn.* andere; (ech ...) o., that o. der andere; othere *pl.*, otheres *gen.*;
 o. weys, -wise *adv.* anders, auf andere Art.
 openers *sb.* Mäpfel.
 open-heveded *adj.* barhäuptig.
 opie *sb.* Opium.
 oppose(n) *v.* entgegenstellen; (für appose?) anfragen, verhören.
 opposicion *sb.* (astrof.) Gegenschein.
 oppresse(n) *v.* unterdrücken; berauben, schänden; -ssioun *sb.* Gewaltthätigkeit.
 oratorie *sb.* Kapelle, Betstube.
 (w)ord *sb.* Anfang.
 ordeyne(n) *v.* ordnen, anordnen, einrichten, beordnen.

ordinaat *adj.* geordnet; ordentlich; -na(u)nce *sb.* Ordnung; Anordnung, Verordnung; Einrichtung, Verabredung; Geleit; Vorsicht; Vorschrift.
 ordre 1. *sb.* Ordnung; (Mönchs-)Orden; Rang. 2. -(n) *v.* ordnen; ordinieren, weihen.
 ordure *sb.* Schmutz, Kot, Schmutzerei.
 Oreb Horeb (Berg).
 Orewelle Drivvel, Hafenstadt in Essex.
 organ *sb.*, orgues *pl.* Orgel.
 oriens (lat., *sc. causa*) Ursache; -ent *sb.* Osten, Morgenland.
 original *sb.* Ursprung, *adj.* ursprünglich.
 oriso(u)n *sb.* Gebet.
 Orliens Orleans.
 orlogge *sb.* Uhr.
 orpyment *sb.* Operment, Rauschgelb (Schwefelarsenit).
 osanne *interj.* hosanna!
 Oseneay Osenah, Abtei b. Oxford.
 Osewald Oswald.
 otes *sb. pl.* Hafer.
 other *f.* oo-.
 ouche *sb.* Spange; *f.* nowche.
 ought(e), ouht *f.* oght(e).
 oules *sb. pl.* Pfriemen (Holzwerkzeug).
 out 1. *adv.* aus, her-, hinaus. 2. *interj.* he! ach! o. and harrow Zetermordio!
 3. — of *prp.* aus, außer, ohne.
 outh 1. *adv.* heraus. 2. -(n) *v.* äußern; auslegen, anbieten.
 out-hees *sb.* Lärmgeschrei.
 outh 1. *prn.* jeder (von beiden); o.-while *adv.* bisweilen. 2. *conj.* oder, (... or) entweder (... oder).
 outrage *sb.* Übermaß; Anmaßung, Gewaltthätigkeit; -eous *adj.* übermäßig, übertrieben; anmaßend.
 outrely *adv.* gänzlich, völlig; geradezu; dringend.
 outreye(n) *v.* sich hinreißen lassen, in Klagen ausbrechen.
 outridere *sb.* Ausreiter (als Aufseher).
 out-taken *ppt.* ausgenommen.
 out[re]ste *supl.* äußerste.
 over *prp.* über, über ... hinaus; *adv.* übermäßig, gar zu; overest *supl.* oberster; over-al *adv.* überall; -byde(n) *v.* überleben; -caste(n) *v.* trüben; -lad *ppt.*; wol been o. läßt sich einschüchtern; -lye(n) *v.* liegen über, ertrüben; -macche(n) *v.* überwältigen; -sloppe *sb.* Überjade; -sprede(n) *v.* überziehen, (sich) verbreiten über; -spradde *pt.*; -sprynge(n) *v.* überragen; -thwart *adv.* querüber.

Ovyde: der röm. Dichter Ovid, wiederholt zitiert, bes. Metamorphosen, 'Ars amatoria', 'Remedia amoris'.

owe(n) *v.* besitzen, schulden; o(u)ghte *pt.* (oft *imps.* mit *dat.*) gebührte, geziemte, sollte.

owen(e) *adj.* eigen, lieb.

owher *adv.* irgendwo.

owndyng(e) *vsb.* wellenförmiges Auszucken.

oynement *sb.* Salbe.

oynon *sb.* Zwiebel.

Pa *f.* ba.

paas *sb.* Schritt; Gang, Unternehmen; Stufe; *f.* a-paas.

pace *f.* passe.

Padowe Padua.

page *sb.* Knecht; Bube, Page, Knappe.

Palatye Palathia (*i.* Anatolien).

paleys *sb.* Palast.

Palymerie Palmyra (*i.* Syrien).

palynge(e) *vsb.* mit (herald.) Pfählen versehen.

Pamphilles, richtig Pamphilus ('De amore').

pan *sb.* Hirnschale, Schädel.

panade *sb.* Hirschkänger, Kurzsäwert.

Panik: Ort (de Panico: Petrarca, Panago: Boccaccio).

panne *sb.* Pfanne.

papeer, papir *sb.* 1. Papier; Rechnungsbuch. 2. Pfeffer (V. 16992).

papejay *sb.* Grünspecht.

parage *sb.* Abstunft, Verwandtschaft.

parament (pare-) *sb.* Schmuck, Staat.

par amour (*frz.*) 1. *adv.* aus Liebe, zur Minne. 2. *paramour sb. a)* Liebshaft, Minnedienst; *b)* Sinnenslust; *c)* Bühler, Buhle.

paraventure (per-), (zugesog.) paraunter *adv.* vielleicht, zufällig, gar, von ungefähr.

par cas *f.* caas.

parcel *sb.* Teil.

pardee (*frz.*) *interj.* bei Gott! wahrhaftig!

pardon *sb.* Ablass; -er *sb.* Ablassrämer.

parentele *sb.* Verwandtschaft.

parlay *interj.* meiner Treu!

parfit, per- *adj.* vollendet, völlig, (sittlich) vollkommen.

parfournen(n) *v.* ausführen, vollenden, erfüllen; *p. vp* vervollständigen.

parishens *sb. pl.* Pfarrfinder, Gemeinde.

paritorie *sb.* Mauertraut.

parlement *sb.* Bundestag; Beschluß; *p. of briddes:* Ch.s Dichtung (Vogelparlament).

Parnaso Parnassus.

part, -e *sb.* Teil, Anteil; Partei, Seite; -fach; -e(n) *v.* (ein)teilen; scheiden, sich trennen; -yng felawe Teilnehmer, Genosse; -ie, -ye *sb.* Teil, Partei; -y 1. *sb.* Teil. 2. *adv.* teilweise.

Parthes *pl.* Parther.

partrich *sb.* Rebhuhn.

parvys *sb.* Vorhalle (e. Kirche; Ambulatorium d. Rechtsanwälte).

pass(e)n, pace(n) *v.* vorübergehen, schreiten; (dahin)scheiden; übertreffen; *p. over* hinweggehen über, beiseite lassen; -ant, -ynge *adj. (ppr.)* hervortragend, ausgezeichnet; außerordentlich.

pastee *sb.* Paßete.

Paul(e), Poul, Powl Paulus (d. Apostel).

pax (*lat.*) *sb.* Friede (Bild od. Täfelchen zum Küssen *f. d.* Gemeinde).

paye(n) *v.* bezahlen, belohnen, befriedigen; payd, vpayed *ppt.* (= zufrieden).

payen 1. *adj.* heidnisch. 2. *sb.* Heide.

payndemayn *sb.* feines Weißbrot, Semmel. pecok-arwes *sb. pl.* Pfeile mit Pfauenfedern.

Pedmark Penmark, St. i. d. Bretagne.

peer(e) *sb.* e. Gleichwertiger; thy *p.* (der) dir gleichkommt, deinesgleichen.

peert *adj.* dreist.

pees *sb.* Friede, Ruhe; holde . . *p.* schweigen, ruhig sein; *h. in p.* schweigen lassen, abgehen von.

Pegasee Pegasus.

pekke 1. *sb.* Maße (1/4 Scheffel). 2. *v.* picken.

Pemond Piemont.

penant *sb.* Büßer; -aunce *sb.* Buße; Pein,

penitauncer *sb.* Bußprediger. [Dual.

penne *sb.* (Schreib-)Feder; -er *sb.* Schreibzeug.

Penneus Peneus (Flußgott).

penoun *sb.* Standarte.

penyble *adj.* sorgsam, dienstbereit.

per *f.* auch par-.

percely *sb.* Petersilie.

perce(n) *v.* durchdringen, durchbohren.

Perce *f.* pers.

per-chaunce *adv.* von ungefähr.

perche *sb.* (Eis-)Stange.

Percyvell Parzival, Held e. megl. Rittergedicht.

pere *sb.* Birne; perejonette *sb.* Frühbirne.

peregryn *adj.* fremd; faucon *p.* Wandersal.

peril *sb.* Gefahr, Verantwortung; *vp(on)* peril (of) bei . . (Schwur).

perisse(n), -isshe(n) *v.* umkommen, ver-Perkyn Peterchen. [verben.

perled *ppt.* mit Perlen (aus . .) besetzt.
Perotheus Pirithous, Freund d. Theseus.
perree, -ye *sb.* kostbares Gestein, Kleinod.
pers *sb.* hellblauer Stoff (aus Persien);
 Perse Persien; Perser; -sien *adj.* persisch; *sb.* Perser.

Persius Flaccus P., röm. Satiriker (34 bis 62).

person *sb.* Pfarrer; -e *sb.* Person.

pertinacie *sb.* Halsstarrigkeit.

Peter 1. der Apostel; als Ausruf: beim heil'gen Petrus! 2. **Petro** a) Peter d. Graufame, König v. Spanien (1350—62, † 69); b) Peter, König v. Cypern (1352 bis 69). 3. **Petrus** Comestor (12. Jh.), verf. 'Historia scholastica'; f. Alfonse u. vgl. Piers.

Petra(r)k Francesco Petrarca, ital. Dichter (1314—74); verf. Sonette usw. u. e. lat. Version der Griseldasage, Ch.'s Quelle f. d. Clerk's T.

peyne 1. *sb.* Pein, Marter, Qual; Strafe; Mühe. 2. -(n) *v. refl.* sich bemühen, anstrengen.

peynthe(n) *v.* malen, bemalen; schminken; (y)peynt(ed) *ppt.*; -ture *sb.* Malerei, Farbe.

peytrel *sb.* Brustblatt (Pferdegeschirr).

Phasipha Pasiphaë, Mutter d. Minotaurus.

Phebus Phoebus Apollo.

Phidon: e. Athener.

Phillis Phyllis (erhängte sich an e. Mandelbaum; Sage von Ch. behandelt i. L.G.W. 2394 ff.).

Philologie f. Marcan.

philosophie *sb.* Philosophie; Alchymie (Forschung nach d. Stein der Weisen), schwarze Kunst; -phre *sb.* Philosoph; Alchymist, Adept, Schwarzkünstler.

Philostrate Philostrat (vgl. Boccaccios Epos 'Filostrato', Quelle z. Ch.'s Troilus).

phiscien *sb.* Arzt; phisik *sb.* Arzneikunde; Medizin, Heilmittel; Naturlehre.

Phisiologus Physiologus: mittelalterl. Beschreibung von Tieren nebst moral. Deutungen, ursprüngl. in lat. Versen, dann in versch. Spr. übersezt.

phislyas = physices?

Phitonyssa: Hege von Endor (I. Sam. XXVIII, 7).

Phitoun Pythou (Ov., Met. I, 430 ff.).

Pierides: Töchter d. Pierus; ihren Wettkampf mit d. Musen f. Ov., Met. V, 295 ff.; hier (4512) mit d. Musen verwechselt.

Piers Pē (Verkürzung v. Peter).

pigge *sb.* Ferkel; **piggesnye** *sb.* Ferkeläuglein (Koswort; etwa Mäuschen?).

pighthe *pt.* (inf. picche) stürzte, warf.

Pigmalion Pygmalion, Bildhauer (Ov., Met. X, 243 ff.).

Pilate Pilatus (in den geistl. Spielen).

pile(n) 1. *v.* plündern; -lour *sb.* Plünderer. 2. abschaben; -led (py-) *ppt.* schäbig, fahl.

pilwe *sb.* Rißen; -beer *sb.* Rißenüberzug.

pipe 1. *sb.* Röhre. 2. -(n) *v.* pfeifen; go p. in an yvy leef: flöten gehen, sich zum Fenster scheren; pipyng *ppr.* zischend (heiß).

Pirrus Pyrrhus, Sohn d. Achilles.

Pisces (lat.) *pl.* Fische (Sternbild).

pissemeye *sb.* Ameise.

pistel *sb.* Epistel; Spruch.

pit (put) 1. *sb.* Grube, Grab; **pittes** *gen.* 2. *dial.* = put, *ppt.*, gebracht.

pitaunce *sb.* Bissen.

pittee *sb.* Mitleid; Schade; f. renne(n); -tous *adj.* mitleidig, barmherzig; traurig, kläglich, jammervoll; (f. pietous) fromm, ehrerbietig.

Pize Piza.

placebo (lat.) 1. Anfang einer Hymne, nach Psalm CXVI, 9 (p. Domine, in regione virorum). 2. P-Name d. gesälligen Bruders d. Januarius.

plage *sb.* Gegend.

plane 1. *sb.* Platane. 2. -(n) *v.* glätten; p. away auflösen.

plantayne *sb.* Wegerich, Wegeblatt.

pla(u)nte *sb.* Pflanze; Ableger, Stedkreis.

plat 1. *adj. & adv.* glatt, einfach, klar; flach. 2. *sb.* flache Seite.

plate *sb.* Panzerplatte.

Plato: d. griech. Philosoph (nach Boethius zit.; 17676 mit Salomon verwechselt).

playn, **pleyn** 1. *sb.* Ebene. 2. *adj. & adv.* eben; einfach, offen, deutlich; this is the short and p. furz und gut; make p. (dem Erdboden) gleich machen; vgl. pleyn.

pledge(n) *v.* streiten.

pledge *sb.* Pfand.

plenteuous *adj.* reichlich.

plesa(u)nce *sb.* Gefallen, Gefälligkeit, Freundlichkeit, Wohlgefallen; Belieben; Vergnügen, Lust.

plesynges *vsb. pl.* Genuß.

pley *sb.* Spiel, dram. Aufführung; Scherz, Tändelei; -e(n) *v.* spielen, scherzen, tänzeln; vorkäuschen; (refl.) sich belustigen.

pleyn *adj. & adv.* voll, vollständig, -gütig, -kommen; vgl. playn.

Plein-damour: Heliö e. unbekannten Romanze.
 pleyne(n) v. klagen, beklagen; -nte sb., -nyng(e) *vsb.* Klage, Wehklagen.
 plighte(n) 1. v. verpflichten; plighte *pt.*, plight *ppt.* 2. *pt.* (v. plicchen?) zog, riß, zerriß; plyght *ppt.*
 plit sb. Lage, Zustand; -e *dat.*
 plogh sb. Pflug; p.-harneys sb. Pfluggerät.
 plowman sb. Pflüger, Landmann.
 plye(n) v. biegen, formen.
 poetries sb. *pl.* Dichtungen.
 Poilleys *adj.* apulisch (Apulien im M. wegen Pferdezucht berühmt).
 point, poynt sb. Punkt, Spitze; Sache, Hauptache, Ziel; -es *pl.* Besatz, Anhängel; p.-devys f. devys; in p. im Begriff; in good p. wohlgenährt.
 poke 1. sb. Beutel, Sack. 2. -(n) v. anstoßen, puffen.
 pokettes sb. *pl.* Beuteln.
 polax sb. Streitag.
 polcat sb. Kitz.
 polyve sb. Kloben, Flaschenzug.
 pomel sb. Rundung, Scheitel; -y *adj.* (rund) gefleckt, schedig.
 Pompei Pompejus.
 poore f. poure.
 popeler sb. Pappel.
 popelote sb. Püppchen.
 Poperyng Poperingue (i. Flandern).
 popet sb. Puppe.
 poppere sb. Dolchmesser.
 poraille sb. armseliges Paß, Gefindel.
 Porcia Portia, Gattin d. Brutus.
 porfurie sb. Porphyrlatte.
 port sb. Benehmen, Sitten.
 porthors sb. Brevier.
 portreitour sb. Maler; -ture sb. Malerei, Gemälde; f. pur-.
 pose 1. sb. Schnupfen; on the p. verschnupft. 2. -(n) v. annehmen, d. Fall sehen.
 possessioner sb. Wohlhabender.
 post sb. Stütze; Pfeiler.
 potage sb. Brühe, Suppe.
 potente sb. Krüchstock.
 potestat sb. Machthaber.
 pothecarie sb. Apotheker.
 poudre sb. Pulver; p.-marchant sb. Gewürzmischung (aus Ingwer, Muskatnuß usw.).
 Poul f. Paul(e); Seinte Poules (*gen.*): Kathedrale in London; Powles wyndow Kirchenfenster (als Muster).
 poupe(n), pow- v. blasen, pusten.

poure, poore, povere 1. *adj. & adv.* arm; sb. d. Arme; -liche, -ly *adv.* ärmlich, dürftig. 2. poure(n) v. stieren, gucken.
 povérte sb. Armut.
 pow- f. auch pou-.
 power sb. Macht, Vollmacht, Vermögen.
 pow(n)sone(n) v. durchlöchern, punzen.
 poynt f. point.
 poyntel sb. Schreibstift.
 praktike sb. Brauch, Kunst; -sour sb. Praktiker.
 pray(e), preye 1. sb. Beute. 2. -e(n) v. bitten, beten; yprayed *ppt.* eingeladen; -ere sb. Bitte, Gebet.
 preambel sb. Eingang, Vorrede; preambulacioun sb. Eingehen, Einleitung.
 prechour sb. Prediger.
 preci(o)us *adj.* kostbar; wählerisch, zimperlich, geziert; -nesse sb. Kostbarkeit.
 predicacioun sb. Predigt.
 preef sb. Probe, Beweis; Erfahrung.
 prees sb. Menge, Gedränge, Getriebe (f. presse); -sse(n) v. drängen, drücken.
 pre(e)ve 1. sb. Probe usw. 2. -e(n) (prov-) v. prüfen, erproben, bewähren; be-, erweisen; nachweisen; (y)preved *ppt.*
 preferre(n) v. vorangehen, d. Vorrang verbieten (vor).
 preis sb. Lob; -ere sb. Lobredner; -yng(e) *vsb.* Lobpreisung.
 prente sb. Abdruck.
 prentys sb. Lehrling; -hood sb. Lehrzeit.
 presse sb. Presse; Form; Schrank.
 preye f. praye.
 preyneth (proyneth?) 3. s. *pr.* pußt.
 pride, pry- sb. Stolz, Vermeessenheit, Frechheit (f. proud); -lees *adj.* ohne Stolz.
 prie f. pry(e).
 prighte f. prike(n).
 prikasour sb. scharfer Reiter, Sporenheld.
 prike(n) v. stechen; reizen, antreiben; stoßen; spornen, scharf reiten, sprennen; prighte, pryked *pt.*; prikke sb. Spitze, Stachel; bedenkliche Lage, Notlage.
 primer sb. (erstes) Gebetbüchlein.
 (in) principio (*lat.*): erste Worte d. Johannes-evangeliums.
 pris, prys sb. Preis; Lob, Ruhm, Achtung, Wert; -e sb. Beute, Gewinn.
 prisoun sb. Gefängnis, Kerkerhaft; Verdammnis.
 prive(e), pry- 1. *adj. & adv.* heimlich, geheim, geheimnisvoll, verschwiegen; versteckt; -ly *adv.* insgeheim. 2. sb. Abtritt; -vete sb. Geheimnis, Heimlichkeit; Häuslichkeit; in p. unter (sich).

proces *sb.* Lauf, Verlauf; Vorgang, Geschiehte; -sse *dat.*
 procreacioun *sb.* Zeugung.
 procutour (für procuratour) *sb.* Anwalt.
 professioun *sb.* Bekenntniß, Gelübde.
 profre(n) *v.* bieten, antun; drängen.
 progressioun *sb.* Fortschritt, fortschreitende Entwicklung.
 prohemye *sb.* Einleitung, Vorrede.
 prolle(n) *v.* herumstreifen, umherstöbern.
 proporcioneles *sb. pl.* Verhältniszahlen, Proportionen.
 propre *adj.* eigen, besonder; wider, schmutz, nett; -ly *adv.* eigentlich; angemessen, natürlich; -etee *sb.* Eigentümlichkeit, Eigenschaft.
 prose *sb.* Prosa (V. 4516: die folg. Berzählung ist spätere Änderung d. Dichters).
 protestacioun *sb.* Einspruch.
 Protheselaus Protefilaus (Ov., Met. XII, 68).
 P[ro]tholomee Ptolemäus, griech. Astronom u. Geograph (2. Jh. n. Chr.); vgl. Almageste.
 proud *adj.* stolz, frech, vermessen, hoffärtig.
 prove *f.* preeve.
 provost *sb.* Bürgermeister.
 prow *sb.* Nutzen, Vorteil, Gewinn.
 prowess *sb.* Rechtschaffenheit; Tüchtigkeit (V. 6711 vgl. ital. 'probitate').
 Pruce Preußen (Zug d. Deutsch-Ritterordens).
 pryde *f.* pri-
 pry(e)n *v.* gucken, spähen.
 pryme *sb.* Prime (eigentlich 6—9 Uhr morgens, gewöhnlich = 9 Uhr); half wey p. 7½ Uhr; p. large nach 9 Uhr usw.
 prymerole *sb.* Primel.
 prys *f.* pris; pryuee *f.* pri-
 publican *sb.* Zöllner.
 publice(n), -iss- *v.* verkünden.
 Puella *sb.*: in d. Punktierkunst e. Gestalt, die d. rückläufigen Mars bezeichnet.
 pulle(n) *v.* ziehen, rupfen; yulled *ppt.* gezupft; *f.* fynch.
 pulpet *sb.* Kanzel.
 pultrye *sb.* Geflügel.
 purchase(n) *v.* erwerben, kaufen; gewinnen, erlangen; bewahren; -chas *sb.* Erwerb, Gewinn; -chasour *sb.* Erwerber; -chacyng *vsb.* Erwerbung, Kaufgeschäft.
 pure *adj.* rein; fogar; -ed *ppt.* gereinigt, rein.
 purge(n) *v.* reinigen; entleeren, sich entledigen; -gacioun *sb.* Entleerung, Abfluß.
 purpos *sb.* Absicht, Voratz; to p. zur

Sache, dazu; cam hym to p. entsprach seiner Absicht.
 purs *sb.* Tasche, Geldbeutel; Kasse.
 pursue(n), -sewe(n) *v.* nachgehen, ersuchen, verfolgen; -sute *sb.* Anklage.
 purtreye(n) *v.* zeichnen, malen; ausmalen; *f.* por-
 purveye(n) *v.* versorgen, versehen, vorsehen; -a(u)n(e) *sb.* Vorsehung, Fürsicht; Fürsorge, Vorsehung, Zurüstung; Vorrat.
 put *f.* pit.
 put(e)rie *sb.* Hurerei; -tour *sb.* Kuppler, Hurenwirt.
 putte(n) *v.* setzen, stellen, bringen usw.; putte *pt.*; put *ppt.*
 py- *f.* auch pi-
 pye *sb.* 1. Pastete. 2. Ekstier.
 pyk *sb.* Hecht; -erel *sb.* Hechtlein.
 pyke(n) *v.* (sich) sauber machen, aufstutzen; -purs *sb.* Taschendieb.
 pyler *sb.* Pfeiler.
 pyment *sb.* Würzwein.
 pyn *sb.* Adel, Broüche; Stift, Bolzen, Pflock; hangeth on a ioly p. ist lust'ger Baume.
 pynche(n) *v.* kneifen; ziwaden, tabeln; -ed *ppt.* gekniffen, gefaltet.
 pyne 1. *sb.* Pein, Qual. 2. -(n) *v.* peinigen, pyrie *sb.* Birnbaum. [foltern.]

Qua(a)d *adj.* übel, schlecht; quade *pl.*
 quaille *sb.* Wachtel.
 quake(n) *v.* zittern, beben; quook *pt.*; quaked *ppt.*
 quakke *sb.* Heiserkeit.
 qualm *sb.* Seuche.
 quarter-night *sb.* Viertel d. Nacht, d. h. 9 Uhr abends.
 que(e)ne *sb.* 1. Königin. 2. Dirne.
 queerne *sb.* Handmühle.
 quelle(n) *v.* töten, schlachten.
 quenche(n) *v.* löschen, erlöschen; queynte *pt.*; (y)queynt *ppt.*
 querele *sb.* Streit.
 questemonger *sb.* Untersuchungsdeputierter.
 questio quid juris (lat.) d. Frage (ist), was Rechts ist?
 questiou *sb.* Frage, Besprechung, Aufgabe.
 queynt 1. *adj.* seltsam, fremd(artig); künstlich; närrisch; schlau; queynte *flekt.*; -tise *sb.* Seltsamkeit; Geziertheit; Schlaueheit.
 2. *ppt.*, *f.* quenche(n).
 queynte 1. *sb.* weibl. Scham. 2. *pt.*, *f.* quenche(n). 3. *adj.*: *f.* o.
 qui cum patre, etc.: Formel am Schluß e. Predigt; *f.* 19412.

quite(n), quy- v. (zurück)zahlen; heimzahlen, vergelten, erstatten, erlösen; *refl.* sich entleiben, abfinden; (y)quit *ppt.*; *adj.* frei; -ly *adv.*

quod *pt.* (b. quethen) sagte, sprach (eingequonyam *sb.* weibl. Scham. [schaltet). quook *f.* quake.

quyk *adj.* lebendig, belebt; quykkest *supl.*; -e(n) v. beleben, sich erholen, lebendig werden; yquyked *ppt.* entzündet.

quynble *sb.* Sopran, Fistelfstimme (eine Quinte höher).

quyrboilly *sb.* gesottenes Leder.

Raa *sb.* (*dial.*) Reh.

raby *sb.* Rabbi.

rad(de) *f.* rede(n).

raffles *sb. pl.* Würfelspiel.

raft(e) *f.* reve(n).

rage 1. *sb.* Mut, Raserei, Toben; heftige Gemütsbewegung. 2. -(n) v. rasen, toben; tolsen, ausgelassen sein, schäkern; -rye *sb.* Ausgelassenheit, Schäkerei.

rake(n) v. sich einscharren; -stele *sb.* Gartenstiel.

rakel *adj.* vorschnell; -nesse *sb.* Übereilung.

ram *sb.* Widder (als Preis im Ringkampf); Steinbock (Sternbild); -missh *adj.* bodenartig, stinkend.

rampe(n) v. sich stürzen, springen.

rancour *sb.* Bitterkeit, Groll.

rape and renne v. rasen und reißen.

rate(n) v. ausschelten.

rathe *adv.* früh; -r *comp.* früher, eher; lieber.

Rauf Ruz (Rudolf).

raughte *f.* reche.

raunso(u)n *sb.* Lösegeld; Abbitte; -yng(e) *vsb.* Loskaufung.

ravyne *sb.* Räuberei.

ravyng *vsb.* Raserei, Verzweiflung.

ravysshe(n) v. entführen, entladen; entzünden; -sedest 2. s. *pt.*; -sshed *ppt.* verzündt.

Raziz Rhases (Razi), arab. Arzt (850—923); *vers.* Liber medicinalis Almansoris (vgl. Glossen 6193 ff.).

real *adj.* königlich, fürstlich (*f.* roial).

reawme *sb.* Königreich, Reich; vgl. reme.

rebeke *sb.* Weibstüd, Bettel.

rebuke(n) v. kurz abfertigen.

recche(n), rekke(n) v. (auch *imps.* mit *dat.*) sich kümmern, sorgen, achten; es kümmert; roghte *pt.*; — recchelees *adj.* unbekacht, achtlos, nachlässig; -nesse *sb.* Unbedachtsamkeit.

receit *sb.* Rezept.

reche(n) v. reichen, erreichen; raughte *pt.* reclayme(n) v. zurückföden (b. Fäfen).

reconnyssaunce *sb.* Schuldschein.

record *sb.* Ruf; Zeugnis; of r. bezeugt; -e(n) v. erinnern an, im Gedächtnis behalten.

recours *sb.* Rückkehr, Zuflucht; have r. zurückföhren, sich wenden (an).

recreant *adj.* verzagt; seith r. gibt den Kampf auf, erklärt sich als besiegt.

rede(n) v. 1. raten; lesen, verlesen; lernen, studieren; radde, redde *pt.*; rad *ppt.*; reede *impt.* 2. *sb.* Räte (4776 = Blut).

2. *adj.* *f.* reed.

redily *adv.* bereitwillig, schleunig.

redoutyng *vsb.* Verehrung.

redresse(n) v. wiederherstellen, wiederaufrichten; bessern.

reed 1. *sb.* Rat, Ratgeber. 2. *adj.* rot; rede *flect.*; vgl. rede(n).

refreyde(n) v. erkalten.

refreyne(n) v. zügeln, bezähmen.

rest(e) *f.* reve.

refut *sb.* Zuflucht, Rettung.

regard, reward *sb.* Rücksicht; Hinblick, Vergleichen.

regne *sb.* Reich, Gebiet, Herrschaft.

reherce(n) v. wiederholen, wiedergeben; aufzählen, erwähnen; -saille *sb.* Aufzählung; -syng *vsb.* Gegenrede.

rekene(n) v. rechnen, aufzählen; be yrekened (*ppt.*) in Betracht kommen; -yng(e) *vsb.* Rechnung, Rechenschaft.

rekke *f.* recche(n).

relees *sb.* Unterlaß; -les(s)e(n) v. erlassen, entbinden, erlösen, vergeben.

relente(n) v. erweichen, schmelzen.

releeve(n) v. erleichtern, entschädigen, unterstützen, erlösen; -yng *vsb.* Hilfsmittel.

relevacio *sb.* (lat.) Erleichterung, Lösung.

religioun *sb.* Religion; geistlicher Stand, Mönchsorden; -ious *adj.* geistlich, e. Orden angehörig.

reme *sb.* Reich; vgl. reawme.

remembre(n) v. erinnern; *refl.* & *imps.* sich erinnern.

remewe(n), -moeve(n) v. fortchaffen, (sich) entfernen.

ren *sb.* Lauf; with a r. gelaufen; renne(n) *st.* v. laufen, rennen, eilen; pitee renneth, etc. Mitleid regt sich; r. in a blame sich e. Tadel zuziehen; ran *pt.*, ronne(n) *pl.* *pl.*: (y)ronne(n) *ppt.* (2165: gebauscht, 2691: geronnen); *f.* rape.

renably *adv.* vernünftig.

rende(n) *v.* zerreißen; *rente* *pt.*; (y) *rent* *ppt.*; *rentynge* *ppr.*
reneye(n) *v.* verleugnen, abschwören.
renges *sb. pl.* Rang, Reihe.
renouvelle(n) *v.* (sich) erneuern.
rente 1. *sb.* Einkommen, Einkünfte, Zins, Wechsel. 2. *pt.*, *f.* **rende(n)**; *rentynge* *ebb.*
repair *sb.* Bekehr, Besuch; **-e(n)** *v.* zurück-
replecioun *sb.* Überladung. [fehren.
replete *adj.* angefüllt, vollgeseugen.
re(p)licacioun *sb.* Widerrede; **-plye** *v.* widerprechen, einwenden.
reportour *sb.* Berichterstatter, Jenfor.
repreve 1. *sb.* Vorwurf, Tadel, Schande. 2. **-(n)** *v.* tadeln; **-vabe** *adj.* tadelnswert.
requere(n) *v.* ersuchen um, erbitten.
resalgar *sb.* Realgar (roter Schwefel-
rescowyng(e) *vsb.* Errettung. [senif].
rescus *sb.* Rettung, Befreiung.
rese(n) *v.* beben.
reso(u)n *s.* Vernunft, Grund; Rede, Ausspruch; *is* *r.* es ist recht, richtig; *by* *r.* of wegen.
respit *sb.* Aufschub, Frist; *withoute* *r.* unverzüglich, sogleich; **-e(n)** *v.* Aufschub gewähren.
reste 1. *sb.* Raft, Ruhe; Rüste. 2. **-(n)** *v.* raften, ruhen.
restreyne(n) *v.* bezähmen, beschränken.
retentif *adj.* zurückhalten.
retinue *sb.* Gefolge; Dienst.
rethor *sb.* Redner, Gelehrter; **-yk** *sb.* Rede-
retraccioun *sb.* Widerruf. [kunst.
reule 1. *sb.* (Ordens-)Regel. 2. **-(n)** *v.* beherrschen, leiten.
reuthe, **routhe** *sb.* Mitleid; Jammer.
reve 1. *sb.* Bogt, Verwalter. 2. **-(n)** *v.* rauben, entreißen; *rafte*, *reste* *pt.*; (y) *raft*, *rest* *ppt.*
revel *sb.* Lustbarkeit, Jubel, Schwelgerei; **-our** *sb.* Schwelger, Bruder Liederlich; **-ous** *adj.* vergnügungssüchtig; **-rye** *sb.* Belustigung.
reverberacioun *sb.* Zurückschlag, Widerhall.
reward *f.* regard.
rewe 1. *sb.* Reihe; *by* *r.* d. *R.* nach. 2. **-(n)** *v.* (on) sich erbarmen, gnädig sein; *imps.* leid tun; **-ful** *adj.* betrübt, traurig.
rewel-boon *sb.* Walroßbein (?).
reye *sb.* Roggen.
reyn *sb.* Regen; **-e(n)** 1. *v.* regnen. 2. **-(e)** *sb.* Zügel. 3. *sb.* Reich, Herrschaft. 4. **-es** *sb. pl.* Nieren, Lenden.
reyse(n) *v.* 1. reisen, e. Kriegszug machen. 2. aufsteigen; (sich) erheben; errichten, erbauen; beschwören, zitieren.

ri- *f.* auch *ry-*.
ribaudye *sb.* Zote, Schmutzerei.
ribibe *sb.* Bettel.
ribible, **ru-** *sb.* Fiedel, (dreifaltige) Geige.
Richard: R. Löwenherz († 1199).
ride(n), **ry-** *st. v.* reiten; *rit* 3. *s. pr.*; *rood* *s. pt.*; *ride(n)*, *ry-* *pl. pt. & ppt.*; *r.* or *go*: gehen; *zu* Fuß u. Roß; (sich) begeben, weilen; *r. out* ausreiten (auf Abenteuer od. zur Aussicht; *vgl.* *outrydere*); *ridyng* *vsb.* Auszug zu Pferde, Lust od. Turnier.
right 1. *sb.* Recht; *at* alle *rightes* nach allen Regeln. 2. *adj.* recht, richtig, rechtmäßig. 3. *adv.* recht, gar, gerade, eben, wirklich, gänzlich usw.; **-ful** *adj.* rechtmäßig; **-wis** *adj.* gerecht; **-wisnesse** *sb.* Gerechtigkeit, Rechtfchaffenheit.
riot, **ry-** *sb.* Schwelgerei, Sauf u. Braus; **-our** *sb.* Schwelger, Beschumpan; **-ous** *adj.* ausschweifend, licherlich.
rist *f.* *ryse(n)*.
rit *f.* *ride(n)*.
roche *sb.* Fels.
(the) Rochele La Rochelle, frz. Hafenstadt (V. 12509: Anspielung auf den in deren Gegend wachsenden leichteren Wein).
rode *sb.* Gesichtsfarbe; **-dy** *adj.* rötlich.
Rodogone: Tochter d. Darius (tötete ihre Amme, weil diese zu einer zweiten Heirat riet).
Roger Rüdiger; v. 15504: Ruggieri degli Ubaldini, Erzbischof v. Pisa, Feind Ugoroghte *f.* *recche*. [linos.
roial *adj.*, **roialliche**, **-ally** *adv.* königlich, fürstlich; **-alte** *sb.* Hoheit, Fürstlichkeit; (königliches) Gepränge; *vgl.* *real*.
rolle(n) *v.* wälzen; *r. up and down* hin u. her überlegen, erwägen; *f.* *roule*.
romance *sb.* Roman.
Roman, **-ayn** römisch, Römer; *f.* *geeste*.
romble(n) *v.* tosen; rühren (*vgl.* *rumbel*).
rome(n) *v.* wandern.
rommer *f.* *rowm*.
rong 1. *sb.* (Leiter-)Sprosse. 2. *pt.* *f.* *rynge(n)*. (y) *ronnen* *f.* *renne(n)*.
Ronyan, **-on**: St. Ronan, schott. Heiliger (7.—8. Jh.).
rood *f.* *ride(n)*.
roode-beem *sb.* Kreuzbalken (über d. Eingang z. Letzner).
roos *f.* *ryse*.
roost *sb.* Braten.
roote *sb.* Wurzel; Grundstoff; (astrol.): Wurzeldatum, Nativitätszahl.
rore(n) *v.* schallen; brüllen, stöhnen; **-yng** *vsb.* Geheul.

Rosarie: Rosarius philosophorum, alchym. Werk; f. Arnold.

Rose: Roman de la Rose, im M. be- liebte allegorische Dichtung, von Wilh. de Lorris begonnen, von Joh. de Meung beendet (1310); von Ch. übersetzt.

rosier sb. Rosenstrauch.

rote sb. 1. Saiteninstrument, (kleine) Harfe.

2. Übung; by r. auswendig.

roten ppt. versaut, verweilt, verrottet;

r.-herted *adj.* im Innersten verdorben.

rotie(n) v. faulen machen, verderben.

rou- f. auch row-.

Rouchestre Rochester, St. in Kent (etwa i. Mitte d. Weges n. Canterbury).

rouke(n) v. lauern.

roule(n) f. (rolle) v. wälzen; r. aboute her- umschweifen.

Rouncivale: Zweigniederlassung d. Hospi- tals zu Ronceval (Spanien) in London, auch andern engl. Orten.

rouncy sb. Mietzgaul.

rounde 1. adv. rund, voll(tönend); bequem.

2. (-n) v. sich runden, wölben.

roundel sb. Rundlied (stroph. Gedicht mit Wiederholung einzelner Verszeilen).

route 1. sb. Schar, Gesellschaft, Zug. 2. (-n) v. gesellen, (sich) versammeln. 3. v. (row-) schnarchen.

routhe f. reuthe; r.-lees *adj.* erbarmungslos.

rowe adv. rauh, grimmig (rough *adj.* rauh).

rowm adj. geräumig; rommer *comp.*

rowne(n), rou- v. raunen, flüstern.

roy f. roi-.

Rubeus: Figur, d. rechtsläufigen Mars be- zeichnend; vgl. Puella.

rubible f. ri-.

rubifyng ppr. rötend.

rubriche sb. Titel, Vorchrift.

Ruce, Russye Rußland.

rude adj. roh, rauh, grob; ungebildet, nie- drig; -liche *adv.*

rue f. rewe.

Rufus: griech. Arzt aus Ephesus (um 100 rugged *adj.* zerzaust. [n. Chr.).

rumbel, -bul sb. Tosen, Säusen; Lärm; -blyng *vsb.* Poltern.

rum ram ruf: an sich sinnlose Ausdrücke, zur Verpottung d. Stabreims.

Russell (eigtl. Rötling) = dtsh. Reinefe.

Russye f. Ruce.

ry- f. auch ri-.

rym sb. Reim, Vers; r. dogerel Knüttel- vers; -e(n), -eye(n) v. reimen, dichten, Verse machen; berichten; -yng *vsb.* Reim- funkt, Reimerei.

ryng sb. Ring, Rode; -e(n) *st. v.* läuten, klingen, klingen; widerhallen; rong *pt.*

rys sb. Reis, Zweig.

ryse(n) st. v. sich erheben, aufstehen; rist (vp) 3. s. pr.; roos *pt.*; risen *ppt.*

ryve(n) st. v. spalten, durchbohren.

ryver, ri- sb. Fluß; Jagdgebiet am Fluß.

Sad adj. satt; ernst, fest, ruhig, verständig, beständig, zuverlässig; sadde *flekt. & adv.*; -ly *adv.* ernstlich, gründlich, tüchtig usw.; -nesse *sb.* Ernst, Beständigkeit, gefestigtes Wesen.

saffroun 1. sb. Safran. 2. (-on) v. (gelb) färben, würzen.

saked ppt. eingesaft.

sal 1. (dial.) f. shal. 2. *sb.* (lat.) Salz; s.-peter Salpeter; s.-preparat gereinig- tes Salz; s.-tartre Weinstein.

sale (dial.) sb. Seele.

salewe(n), -ue(n) v. grüßen.

salt(e) adj. salzig.

Saluces Saluzzo (D. südl. v. Turin).

salvacioun, sava- sb. Rettung, Heil; Sicherheit.

salwes pl. Weidenzweige, -gestecht.

Sampson Simson.

sang 1. (dial.) sb. Gesang. 2. *pt.*, f. synge(n).

sangwyn 1. adj. blutrot. 2. *sb.* Stoff v. blut- roter Farbe.

sanz (frz.) prp. ohne.

sapience sb. Weisheit; pl. Geistesgaben.

Sapor: S. I., König v. Persien (240—71).

sarge sb. Sarge, Wollentstoff.

Sarray Serei od. Tzareff, St. im südl. Rußland (bei Satepta).

Satalye Attalia, St. in Kleinasien (erob. 1352).

satisfaccioun sb. Genugtuung, Buße.

Saturne Saturn, röm. Gottheit; als Planet (astrol.) von üblem Einfluß; alchym. als Blei bezeichnet.

sauf 1. adj. wohlbehalten, sicher; -ly *adv.* unbedenklich, ohne Gefahr. 2. *sauf, save prp.* außer; s. your grace mit Verlaub.

saugh f. see(n).

sautrie sb. Psalterium, Harfe.

savacioun f. salv-.

save 1. sb. Salbei. 2. (-n) v. (er)retten, erhalten, aufrecht halten. 3. *prp.* f. sauf.

savour sb. Wohlgeschmack, Geruch, Duft; -ly *adv.* mit Wohlgeschmack; -e(n) v. schmecken, kosten; -yng(e) *vsb.* Geschmack.

sawcefleem adj. voll Pidel, Pusteln.

sawe 1. sb. Ausspruch, Rede. 2. *pt.* f. see(n).

say f. see(n).

Sayne Seine (Fluß).

scabbe sb. Räude.

scaffold sb. Schaugerüst, Bühne.

scaled (ppt.) adj. schorrig, abschuppig.

scantnesse sb. Knappheit, Kürze.

scape(n) v. entinnen, sich entfernen.

Scariot (Judas) Jschariot, Verräter.

scars adj. sparfam, farg; -ly adv. kärglich;

-nesse sb. Sparfamkeit, Margeit.

scathe sb. Schade, Leid.

Scithero (absichtl. verb.) Cicero.

Scithia Skythien (als Wohnsitz d. Amazonen).

sclaundre sb. übler Ruf, Schande.

sclendre (sk-) adj. hager, dürr; dürrtig.

scule sb. Schule; gelehrte Sch. (im M.A.

bes. d. Theologen); Gelahrtheit; Art und

Weise; sc.-mateere Gegenstand d. Dis-

putation; sc.-termes gelehrte Ausdrücke;

-er sb. Schüler; Scholar, Student;

-eye(n) v. studieren.

scorne(n) v. verspotten.

Scot: Pferdename (Hans?).

scoure(n) v. scheuern, abreiben; züchtigen

(18869 l. scourge?).

scrippe sb. Tasche.

scrit sb. Schriftstück.

seche(n), seke(n) v. suchen, auffuchen,

untersuchen, nachsuchen, durchforschen;

soghte pt.

secree 1. sb. Geheimnis; s. of secretes,

lat. Secreta Secretorum (ein im M.A.

dem Aristoteles zugeschriebenes Buch).

2. adj. u. adv. geheim, verschwiegen; -ly

adv. inäheim; -nesse sb. Heimlichkeit.

secte sb. Glaubensbekenntnis; Sippchaft.

secul(e)r adj. weltlich; sb. Laie.

see 1. sb. Meer; grete S. d. Mittelländ.

Meer. 2. sb. Sitz. 3. -(n) v. sehen, aus-

sehen; God yow s. Gott schütze euch!

s. biforn vorhersehen; saugh, saw, say,

seigh, sy s. pt.; sawe 2. s. pt.; saugh(e),

sawe, sye(n) pl. pt.; saye, seye, seyn

ppt.; (y)se(e)ne adj. sichtbar; to seene ger.

se(e)ge sb. Belagerung.

seek, sek f. sik.

seel sb. 1. Heil (vgl. sely). 2. Siegel

(10447 Salomos Wundersiegel); Mal.

se(e)ld, seelde, seelden adj. & adv. selten;

wenig.

seet 1. sb. Sitz; Thron; se(e)te dat. 2. pt.,

seeth f. sethe(n). [f. sitte(n).

seigh f. see(n).

seint heilig, sanft; -e eigtl. voc.; -tuarie

sb. Heiligtum.

seke f. seche.

selde f. see-.

selle(n) 1. v. verkaufen, eintauschen; -er

sb. Verkäufer. 2. sb. Schwelle, Flur (a. d.

Haustrür).

sely adj. selig, unschuldig; einfältig, arm-

(selig); gut, brav.

semblant sb. Schein, Anschein.

semely adj. & adv. artig, nett; lieblich;

ansehnlich.

semes sb. pl. Säume.

semy (lat.) halb; s.-cope sb. halblanger

Chorrod; (with a) s.-soun halblaut.

semyng(e) vsb. Anschein; to my s. wie es

mir scheint.

Semyrame Semiramis.

sencer sb. Weihrauchsaß; sensynge ppr.

beräuchernd.

sendal sb. Zindel (leichter Seidenstoff).

sende(n) v. senden, schicken; sent 3. s. pr.;

sende, sente pt.; sent ppt.

sene f. see(n).

Senec, Seneca, Senek(ke): häufig zitiert,

feltener der ältere S. (dessen 'Contro-

versiae'), öfter L. Annäus S. (Lehrer

Neros); echte Schriften: 'De ira', 'De

clementia', 'Epistolae'; angebliche: 'De

moribus', 'De quattuor virtutibus'; meist

zitiert die ihm fälschl. zugeschriebenen

'Sententiae' des Publilius Syrus.

senge(n) v. (ver)sengen; tösten; seynd ppt.

sengle adj. einzeln, ledig.

Senior: Titel e. alchym. Buches, vollst.:

Senioris Zadith fil. Hamuelis tabula

chymica.

sensualitee sb. Sinnlichkeit, Fleischelust.

sentence sb. Sinn, Bedeutung, Inhalt;

Urteil; Spruch, Ausspruch, Ausdruck.

Septe Ceuta (Nord-Afrika).

sepulture sb. Begräbnis, Grab, Grabmal.

Serapion: arab. Arzt (11. Jh.).

sergeant sb. Dienstmann, Profoß, Scherge;

s. of the lawe Rechtsgelehrter, -anwalt.

sermon sb. Rede, Schriftwort; -e(n) v.

reden, erörtern; -yng vsb. Gerede, Er-

örterung.

serve(n) v. (be)dienen; fördern; behandeln;

verfahren mit; yserved ppt.; -vage sb.

Knechtschaft; -vant sb. Knecht, Diener,

Liebhaber; -vitour sb. Diener; -vitude

sb. Dienstbarkeit, Knechtschaft; -vysable

adj. dienstfertig, dienstbar; -vice-, -vyse

sb. Dienst, Bedienung, Aufwartung.

serye sb. Reihe, Aufzählung.

sessioun sb. Gerichtstag.

sethe(n) st. v. siedeln, forhen; seeth pt.;

soden ppt.

sette(n) *v.* setzen, aufsetzen; einfassen; ansetzen, festsetzen; annehmen; richten; achten, geben (auf); *refl.* sich setzen; *s.* at nought für nichts achten; *s.* at werk zu schaffen machen; *s.* on . . knees auf d. Knie fallen; *s.* . . in oon alles daran setzen; *set* 3. *s.* *pr.*; *sette* *pt.*; (*y*)*set* *ppt.*; *be* *set* sich setzen, sitzen; *j.* cappe.

seur *adj.* sicher, gewiß; -ely *adv.*; -etee *sb.* Sicherheit, Bürgschaft; *j.* sur-

seven-nyght *sb.* Woche, acht Tage.

sewe(n) *v.* folgen, verfolgen.

sewes *sb. pl.* Saucen, Delikateessen.

sexteyn *sb.* Äußer.

seye(n) 1. *v.* sagen; *to seyn(e)* *ger.* 2. *pt. pl.*, *j.* see(n). *seynd* *j.* senge(n).

seyle(n) *v.* jегeln; (*y*)*seyled* *ppt.*

shaar *sb.* Pflugschar.

shadde *j.* shede(n).

shadwe *sb.* Schatten; -wed *ppt.* beschattet.

shal *pt.-pr.* soll; werde (als Fut., auch mit Ergänzung *e.* Insin., *z.* B. 1360); *shul*, *shullen* (*shal*) *pl. pr.*; *shul* 2. *s.* *conjlv.*; *sholde* *pt.*

shame 1. *sb.* Scham; Schande, Schimpf; *for sh.* of his degree: um seinen Stand nicht zu entehren; -es *gen.* = schimpflich. 2. -(n) *v.* beschämen, *e.* Schimpf antun; *imps.* (*m. dat.*), *be* *shamed* sich schämen; *sh.-fast* *adj.* verschämt; *sheu*, *feusch*; *sh.-fastnesse* *sb.* Verschämtheit, Scheu, Schüchternheit; *sh.-ful* *adj.* schändlich, unanständig.

shap *sb.* Gestalt; männl. Glied; -ly *adj.* geeignet; -e(n) *st. v.* schaffen, gestalten; *erinnen*, *einrichten*, *veranstellen*; *verhängen*, *bestimmen*; *refl.* sich bereit machen, sich anschicken, beabsichtigen; *shoop* *pt.*, *shopen* *pl.*; (*y*)*shape(n)* *ppt.*

shawe *sb.* Gehölz, Dickicht.

she *prn.* sie (*sem.*); diese, jene; die betreffende; *she-ape* Affin; *she-wolf* Wölfin.

shede(n) *v.* gießen, vergießen; *shadde*, *shedde* *pt.*

sheef *sb.* Bündel.

sheeld *sb.* Schild; Taler (*frz.* écu); *sheeld*, -es *pl.*; *vgl.* shilde.

she(e)ne *adj.* schön, glänzend.

she(e)te(n) *v.* gießen.

shende(n) *v.* schänden, beschimpfen; schelten; schaden, (be)schädigen, verderben, zerstören; besudeln; *shent*, *shendeth* 3. *s.* *pr.*; *shente* *pt.*; (*y*)*shent* *ppt.*, -e *pl.*; *shendships* *sb.* Schande.

shepe *sb.* Lohu.

shepne, **shipne** *sb.* Schuppen, Stallgebäude.

sherte *sb.* Hemd.

shete 1. *sb.* Bettlaken. 2. *v.*, *j.* sheete(n).

shette(n) *v.* schließen, verschließen; *shette* *pt.*; *shet* *ppt.*, *yshette* *pl.*

shewe(n) *v.* zeigen; sich zeigen; vorgeben.

shifte(n) *v.* zuteilen, verleihen.

shil *adj.* schrill, gellend; *shille* *pl.*

shilde(n) *v.* verhüten, behüten, bewahren.

shipman *sb.* Seemann, Schiffskapitän.

shipne *j.* shep-

shire *sb.* Grafschaft, Gau; *shirreve* *sb.* Grafschaftsrichter, Bezirksamtman.

shiten *adj.* (*ppt.*) schmutzig.

sho *sb.* Schuh; *shoon*, *shoos* *pl.*

shode *sb.* Schopf, Scheitel.

sholder-boon *sb.* Schulterblatt.

shonde *sb.* Schande.

shoon *j.* sho u. shyne.

shoop *j.* shape(n).

short *adj.* kurz, klein, gering; -e(n) *v.* kürzen.

shot *sb.* Geschöß; -windowe *sb.* Guckfenster.

shour *sb.* Regenschauer.

shouwe(n) *v.* schieben, stoßen; *shove* *ppt.* vorgeföben.

shrede(n) *v.* zerschneiden; *shredde* *pt.*

shrewe 1. *sb.* Bösewicht, Schurke; Narr, Verrücker; böses Weib, Zänkerin, Drache. 2. -(n) *v.* verfluchen, verwünschen; -ed *adj.* (*ppt.*) verflucht, nichtswürdig; -edly *adv.* arglistig, böshaft; -ednesse *sb.* Schändlichkeit, Bosheit.

schriftfader *sb.* Weichtäter.

shrighte *pt.*, *j.* skrike(n).

shrymp *sb.* Antips.

shryned *ppt.* eingeschreint.

shryve(n) *refl.* beichten; (*y*)*schryve(n)* *ppt.*; *be* *sh.* d. Beichte ablegen.

shyne 1. *sb.* Schienbein. 2. -(n) *st. v.* scheinen; *shoon* *pt.*

shymeryng *vsh.* Schimmer.

shyvere 1. *sb.* Schnitt, Scheibe. 2. -(n) *v.* (zer)splittern.

Sidynghorne *Sittingbourne*, *St.* ca. 40 *ML.* v. London.

sight(e) 1. *sb.* Blick, Anblick, Schau, Ansicht; Gesicht, Sehkraft; Vorsehung. 2. *pt.*, *j.* sike(n).

significacioun *sb.* Anzeichen, Vorbedeutung; -cavit (*lat.*) (erstes Wort im) Verhaftungsbefehl (gegen einen Ergommunizierten).

sik 1. *adj.* (seek, sek, syk) fied, krank; -e *flekt.*; -ly übel, widerwillig. 2. *sb.* Seufzer. 3. -e(n) *v.* seufzen; *siked*, *sighte* *pt.*

siker *adj.* sicher, gewiß; -ly *adv.* sicherlich; -nesse *sb.* Sicherheit, Vertrauen.
 similitude *sb.* (Seines)gleichen; Vergleich; Mitlegefühl.
 Simon, Sy- 1. Jünger d. Herrn. 2. d. Phariseer *ö.* (Lut. VII, 36 ff.). 3. *ö.* „Magus“ (Apostelgesch. VIII, 18 ff.); vgl. Symekyn, Symonyas.
 sire *sb.* Herr, Meister; Ritter; Vater; Pater (als Titel auch vor Namen v. Geistlichen); i. Sing. zuw. als Anrede einer Mehrzahl.
 sith 1. *sb.* Mal; -e, -es *pl.* 2. sith, sithen, sitthe, s. that *conj.* seit, seitdem; da (ja); *adv.* dann, darauf, nachher.
 sitte(n) *st. v.* sitzen, wohnen; *imps.* geziemen, anstehn; *refl.* sich niedersetzen, -lassen; sit 3. s. *pr.*; sat, seet *pt.*; seten *ppt.*
 skile *sb.* Vernunft, Grund, Begründung; it is (greet) sk. es ist (sehr) vernünftig, recht; skilful *adj.* vernünftig, verständig, weislich; -ly *adv.* mit Recht.
 skippe(n) *v.* hüpfen, sich schwingen; springen, sich stürzen.
 sklendre *f.* sclendere.
 skrike(n) *v.* kreischen, laut aufschreien; shrigte *pt.*
 skynke(n) *v.* einschenken.
 slak *adj.* schlaff, langsam, säumig; slakke *flect.*, -re *comp.*; -e(n) *v.* ab-, nachlassen, aufhören; beseitigen.
 slawe(n), slayn *f.* slee(n).
 slee(n) *st. v.* erschlagen, töten; slough, slow *pt.*; (y)slawe(n), (y)slayn *ppt.*; sleer *sb.* Mörder.
 sleep 1. *sb.* Schlaf. 2. *pt.*, *f.* slepe(n).
 sleigh *f.* sly.
 sleighte, sly- *sb.* List, Kniff, Kunstgriff, Geschicklichkeit.
 slepe(n) *v.* schlafen; sleep, slepte *pt.*; -py *adj.* schlafpendend.
 slewthe *f.* slouthe.
 slider *adj.* schlüpfrig; slidynge *f.* slyden.
 slit *f.* slyde(n).
 slitte(n) *v.* spalten, durchstechen.
 slogardrie, -dye *sb.* Trägheit; sloppy *adj.* träg.
 slombry *adj.* schläfrig.
 slong *pt.* (v. slyngen) schleuderte.
 sloo *sb.* Schlehe.
 sloppe *sb.* loses Wams.
 slough, slow 1. *sb.* Schlamm, Morast. 2. *pt.*, *f.* slee. 3. *adj.* langsam, matt.
 slouthe, slewthe *sb.* Faulheit, Langsamkeit.
 sluttish *adj.* schlumpig, liederlich.

sly, sleigh *adj.* schlau, listig; bedächtig; künstlich, sinnreich.
 slyde(n) (sly-) *v.* entgleiten, entschwinden; slit 3. s. *pr.*; -ynge *ppr.*, *adj.* trügerisch.
 slyk 1. *adj.* glatt. 2. *ppr.* (dial.) solch.
 smal *adj.* klein, gering; schlanf, schmal; knapp; hoch (Ton); *adv.* wenig, gering, klein.
 smart *f.* smert.
 smatre(n) *v.* besudeln.
 smert (smart) *adj.* schmerzlich, bitter; heftig, lebhaft; -e 1. *sb.* Schmerz. 2. *pl. adj.* 3. *adv.* schmerzlich, hart, empfindlich.
 4. -(n) *v.* schmerzen, quälen, bedrücken.
 smok *sb.* Hemd; -lees *adj.* ohne Hemd.
 smoot *f.* smyte(n).
 smoterlich *adj.* schmutzig, anrücklich.
 smyler(e) *sb.* Schmeichler, Verräter.
 smyte(n) *st. v.* schlagen, erschlagen, zuschlagen, hauen; smyt 3. s. *pr.*; smoot *pt.*
 smythe(n) *v.* schmieden.
 snewed *pt. imps.* schneite; gab reichlich (?).
 snowte *sb.* Schnauze, Maul.
 snybbe(n) *v.* rüffeln, schelten.
 so(o) 1. *adv.* so. 2. *conj.* wenn, so; so wahr wie, möge usw.; (mit *conjv.*) bitte, doch, wolte usw. (vgl. as); so that wenn nur.
 sobrelly *adv.* ernsthaft, ruhig; -nesse *sb.* Nüchternheit.
 socour *sb.* Beistand; Retter.
 soden *f.* sethe(n).
 sodeyn *adj.* plötzlich; -liche, -ly *adv.*
 soken(e) *sb.* Abgabe, Mühschwang.
 sokyngly *adv.* tropfenweise, allmählich.
 sola(a)s *sb.* Trost, Erholung; Unterhaltung, Vergnügen, Lust, Spaß; -ace(n) *v.* trösten; unterhalten, belustigen.
 solempne *adj.* feierlich, würdevoll; prächtig, prunkvoll; -nitee *sb.* Feierlichkeit; Pracht, Prunk.
 Soller-halle *sb.*: eigtl. Söllerhaus, ehem. College in Cambridge, vermutl. Clare od. King's Hall (jetzt Trinity College?).
 som *ppr.* irgend ein, etwas; som . . som der eine . . der andere; s.-de(e)l *adv.* etwas, ein wenig; gewissermaßen; s.-tyme einst, vormals, dereinst; bißweilen; *f.* al.—som(m)e 1. *pl. pr.* einige usw. 2. *sb.* Summe.
 somonce *sb.* Vorladung; som(o)nour *sb.* Gerichtsbote, Bitttel; som(p)ne(n) *v.* vorladen; auffordern.
 sompnolence *sb.* Schlauschucht.
 sond *sb.* Sand. — sonde *sb.* Schidung, Fügung; Gabe; Bottschaft, Bote.

sone *sb.* Sohn. — sonne *sb.* Sonne; ebenso *gen.* — so(o)ne *adv.* bald; sonnest *supl.* songe, soong *f.* syng(e)n). [baldigst.]

soor, -e 1. *sb.* Wunde, Schmerz. 2. *adj.*, -e *pl.* wund, schmerzhaft; heftig; bekümmert. 3. -e *adv.* schmerzlich, heftig, gar sehr; bere(n) *s.* übelnehmen, vorwerfen. 4. -e(n) *v.* aufsteigen, emporfliegen.

soote *f.* sweete.

sooth 1. *adj.* wahr; -ly *adv.* wahrlich, wirklich. 2. *sb.* (sothe) Wahrheit; for sothe wahrlich; -fastnesse *sb.* Wahrheit; Wirklichkeit, Sicherheit.

sooty *adj.* beruht.

sop(e) *sb.* eingetunkte Broden.

sope(e)r *sb.* Abendmahlzeit; *f.* soupe(n).

sophyme *sb.* Spitzfindigkeit.

sort *sb.* Loz, Schicksal; Art, Gattung.

sorwe 1. *sb.* Sorge, Kummer, Gram, Ärger; with *s.* leider, zum Schaden, übel ergeh' es dir; o Jammer! make(n) *s.* trauern; -ful *adj.* kummervoll, traurig. 2. -(n) *v.* sich grämen, trauern.

sory *adj.* traurig, kläglich; übel; *f.* grace.

soster *f.* suster.

sothe *f.* sooth 2.

sotil *f.* soutil.

sotted *adj.* (ppt.) betört.

sou- *f.* auch sow-.

soughe, sowe *sb.* Sau.

souke(n), sow- *v.* saugen; ausaugen, verprassen.

soul *adj.* einsam. — soule *sb.* Seele.

soun *sb.* Ton, Klang, Schall; *f.* sowne(n).

soupe(n) *v.* zu Abend speisen; *f.* soper.

souple, sow- *adj.* geschmeidig, nachgiebig.

sourde(n) *v.* entspringen, entstehen.

sours *sb.* Quelle; Aufschwung.

soutere *sb.* Flichschuster.

Southren *adj.* jüdlisch; S. man Südengländer (der Stabreim verwarf).

Southwerk Southwerk, jüdl. Vorstadt Londons, jetzt Stadtteil.

soutil, sotil, subtil *adj.* fein, dünn, zierlich; schlau, listig, heimtückisch; geistlich, kunstreich; -tee, subtil(i)tee *sb.* Schlauheit, List, Tücke, Kniff; Wiß, Kunst.

sovereyn 1. *adj.* höchst, hauptsächlich; vorzüglich, vollkommen; Haupt . . , Vöbings . . . 2. *sb.* Herr, Gebieter, Vorgesetzter.

sow- *f.* auch sou-.

sowdan *sb.* Sultan; -nesse *sb.* Sultanin.

sowded ppt. gefestigt, verbunden.

sowe 1. *sb.* *f.* soughe. 2. -(n) *v.* a) nähen; b) säen; ysowed ppt.

sowled ppt. befeelt.

sowne(n) *v.* (vgl. soun) tönen, ertönen lassen; anstimmen; anspielen, hindeuten auf; *s.* in (to) ausfliegen in, zielen auf, übereinstimmen mit, neigen zu, anstreben.

space *sb.* Raum; Zeit(raum), Muße, Weile, Frist; Richtung.

spare(n) *v.* schonen, achten; sparen, kürzen; verzichten; sich schonen, zurückhalten; -yng(e) vsb. Zurückhaltung.

sparhawk *sb.* Sperber.

sparre *sb.* Sparren, Balken.

sparth *sb.* Streitart.

sparwe *sb.* Sperling.

spaynel *sb.* Wachtelhund.

spece *sb.* Art, Gattung.

spectacle *sb.* Brille, Augenglas.

spedeful *f.* u.

speede(n) *v.* eilen; beschleunigen; fördern, Glück spenden; verrichten, vollbringen, gelingen; erreichen usw.; refl. sich beeilen; spedde *pt.*, (y)sped ppt.; I hadde . . . ysped es wäre mir . . . ergangen; spedeful *adj.* vorteilhaft, günstig.

speere *sb.* Sphäre. (Nach Ptolemäus umgaben 9 Sphären die feststehende Erde, 1.—7. die der Planeten, 8. die d. Fixsterne, 9. d. primum mobile). — spere *sb.* Speer.

speke(n) *st. v.* sprechen; sp. good loben; spak *s. pt.*, speeken *pl. pt.*; spoke(n) ppt.

spel *sb.* Spruch, Erzählung; spelle *dat.*

spence *sb.* Speisekammer.

spete(n) *v.* spuden; spette(n) *pt.*

spewe(n) *v.* (aus)speien.

spice *sb.* Gewürz; -ed *adj.* (ppt.) heikel, ängstlich; -erye *sb.* Spezerei.

spille(n) *v.* umkommen, verderben; zugrunde richten.

spitously *adv.* heftig, zornig, böshaft; *f.* despitous.

spore *sb.* Sporn; sporne(n), spur- *v.* stolpern; fortstoßen.

spousaille *sb.* Hochzeit; spouse(n) *v.* (ver)heiraten.

spoute(n) vp *v.* ausspeien, auswerfen.

sprad(de) *f.* u.

sprede(n) *v.* ausbreiten, verbreiten; bededen, behängen; spradde *pt.*; (y)sprad, yspred

spreynd *f.* spryng(e)n 2. [ppt.]

spryng(e)n *v.* 1. *st.* springen; entspringen, entsprossen; aufgehen, emporsteigen; sproong *s. pt.*, spronge(n) *pl. pt.*, ppt.; springe, -yng(e) *sb.* Ursprung. 2. *schw.* sprengen; besprengen, austreuen; (y-)spreynd ppt.

squame *sb.* Schuppe; iren-s. *s. pl.* Hammer-
schlag.
squaymous *adj.* eitel.
squier *sb.* Junker, Page, Knappe; -e(n)
v. geleiten.
squyre *sb.* Winkelmaß.
staat *sb.* Zustand, Stand; statly *adj.* statt-
lich, würdig.
stablis(n) *v.* festsetzen.
Stace *P.* Papinius Statius, röm. Dichter
(ca. 45–96); *vers.* 'Thebais'.
staf-slynge *sb.* Stodschleuder.
stal *f.* stele(n).
stalke 1. *sb.* Stiel, Stengel, Stamm;
Stütze; Halm („Splitter“). 2. *v.* -(n)
vorsichtig gehen, schleichen.
stamyn *sb.* Stamin, rauher Wollstoff.
stampe(n) *v.* (zer)stampfen.
stank *sb.* Psuhl.
stant *f.* stonde(n).
stape(n) *adj.* (ppt.) vorgerückt.
starf *f.* sterve(n).
startlyng *adj.* (ppr.) auffspringend, wild.
stede, stide *sb.* Statt; in st. of anstatt;
-fast *adj.* standhaft, beständig; -fastnesse
sb. Standhaftigkeit, Beständigkeit.
steede *sb.* Streitroß.
steer 1. *sb.* Stier, junger Ochse. 2. -e *sb.*
Steuer; st.-lees *adj.* steuerlos.
stele 1. *sb.* Stiel. 2. -(n) *st.* v. stehen;
sich (fort)schleichen; st. upon heimlich vor-
bringen gegen, e. beschleichen mit; stal
pt.; stole(n) *ppt.*
stente(n) (i. Reim), stynte(n) *v.* aufhören,
ablassen, verlassen, Einhalt tun, abhalten,
hemmen; enden; stente, stynte, stynted
pt.; stent, (y)stent *ppt.*
stepe 1. *adj. pl.* (steep) groß, starr, glän-
zend. 2. (8) -(n) *v.* steigen, schreiten;
st. on . . feet (sich) auf d. Beine machen.
sterlynges *sb. pl.* echte Münzen.
sterre *sb.* Stern.
stert *sb.* Sprung; -e(n) *v.* springen, stür-
zen, auffahren; entfliehen; sterte, stürte
pt.; stert, stirt, ystert *ppt.*, (4424 ein-
gedrungen?).
sterve(n) *st. v.* sterben; starf *pt.*; storven *ppt.*
stevens *sb.* Stimme; Zeitpunkt, Stunde
(als Verabredung).
stibourn(e) *adj.* hartnäckig, widerspenstig.
stide *f.* stede.
stierne *adj.* streng, grimmig, gräßlich.
stif *adj.* stramm, straff; stark, tüchtig.
stike(n) *v.* stechen, erstechen; steden (blei-
ben), aufsteden; (y)stiked *ppt.*
stikke *sb.* Stod; Pfahl.

Stilbon Chilon (vgl. Joh. v. Salisbury,
Polycraticus, I, 5).
stile, sty- *sb.* 1. Stil. 2. Steige, Baumstufe.
stillatorie *sb.* Destilliertolben.
stire(n) *v.* anregen, anspornen; -yng(e) *vsb.*
Regung.
stirt(e) *f.* stert(e).
stok *sb.* Stamm; stokkes *pl.* Holzstücke,
Knüttel; -e(n) *v.* stechen, stoßen.
stole 1. *sb.* Stola. 2. *ppt.*, *f.* stele(n).
stomak *sb.* Magen; Eßlust; Empfindung,
Mitgefühl.
stomble(n) *v.* straucheln.
stonde(n) *st. v.* stehen, st. bleiben, beharren;
stant, stoneth 3. *s. pr.*; stood *pt.*;
stonde(n) *ppt.*; st. agayn widerstehen;
st. at verbleiben bei, sich fügen; st. by
entstehn für; st. in bestehen in; st. to er-
tragen, auf sich nehmen, sich unterwerfen.
stongen *f.* styng(e).
stoore(e) 1. *sb.* Vorrat; telle no st. keinen
Wert legen. 2. *adj.* stark, stark.
storial *adj.* geschichtlich; st. thyng geschichtl.
Überlieferung.
storven *f.* sterve(n).
stot *sb.* Gaul; Schindmähre.
stounde *sb.* Stunde, Weile, Augenblick;
in a st. einstmals, in kurzer Zeit.
stoupe(n) *v.* sich bücken.
stour *sb.* Kampf, Sturm.
Stratford atte Bowe *D.* nordöstl. v. Lon-
don (St. at Bow), jetzt Stadtteil.
straughte *f.* strecken.
stra(u)nge *adj.* fremd; seltsam; schwierig;
make it st. Schwierigkeiten machen; -nesse
sb. Sonderbarkeit; Entfremdung.
straw 1. *sb.* Stroh, Strohhalme; Deut (etw.
Geringes); vgl. stree; pleyen with a st.
schäffrig werden. 2. -e(n) *v.* bestreuen,
ausstreuen.
strecche(n) *v.* austreten; straughte *pt.*;
streight *ppt.*; als *adv.*: geradeweg,
stracks.
stree *sb.* Stroh; *f.* straw.
stre(e)m *sb.* Strom; stremes *pl.* Ströme
(b. Lichts), Strahlen.
streen *sb.* Geblüt, Geschlecht.
streight *f.* strecche(n).
streit *adj.* eng, knapp, straff; -e *flekt. &*
adv.; streyt(e) swerd gezücktes Schwert.
stremes *f.* streem.
streng *sb.* Sehne. — strenger *f.* stro(o)ng.
strepe(n) *v.* (ab)streifen, berauben, ent-
fleiben.
streyne(n) *v.* drücken, pressen, zwingen;
seihen.

strif, stryf *sb.* Streit, Zank; Streitsache, Standal; *f.* stryve(n).
 strike 1. *sb.* Strähne. 2. -(n) *v.* streichen.
 strogelest *f.* strugle(n).
 stromd *sb.* Strand; -es *pl.* Gestade.
 stroof *f.* stryve(n).
 strook *sb.* Schlag, Streich; strokes *pl.*
 stro(o)ng *adj.* stark; mächtig; schwer, hart; arg, schlimm; stronge *flect.*; strenger *comp.*
 Strother: ehem. Castle Strother i. Northumberland.
 stroute(n) *v.* sich ausstreizen.
 strugle(n), stro- *v.* ringen.
 stryf *f.* strif.
 stryve(n) *st. v.* streiten, ankämpfen, sich sträuben; stroof *pt.*; -vyng *vsb.* Streiterei, Streitsucht.
 stubbe *sb.* Baumstumpf.
 stubbel-goos *sb.* Stoppelgans.
 studie 1. *sb.* Studium; Studierstube; Einnen, Träumerei. 2. -(n) *v.* studieren; sich bemühen; nachsinnen, bedenken.
 sturdy *adj.* fest; streng, störrig; -diness *sb.* Strenge, Starrsinn.
 stuwe *sb.* Fischteich.
 sty- *f.* auch sti-.
 sty *sb.* Stall, Schweinestoben.
 Stymphalides Stymphalid.
 styng(e)n *st. v.* stechen; (y)stongen *ppt.*
 stynte *f.* stente(n).
 styropes *sb. pl.* Steigbügel.
 styth *sb.* Umboß.
 styves, -wes *sb. pl.* Bordell(e).
 styward *sb.* Verwalter, Hofmeister.
 subdekene *sb.* Subdiaconus.
 subget 1. *adj.* untertan. 2. *sb.* Untertan, Untergebener; -getis, -gitz *pl.*
 subjeccioun *sb.* Unterwürfigkeit, Dienstbarkeit; Einflüsterung (?); *f.* suggestioun.
 sublyme(n) *v.* sublimieren, (durch Hitze) versüßlichen, verbunsten; -matorie *sb.* Sublimatorium, Gefäß z. Sublimieren.
 substaunce *sb.* Substanz, Stoff; Wesen, Sache; Vermögen.
 subtil *f.* soutil,
 suffisa(u)nce *sb.* Genüge, Genügsamkeit; Zufriedenheit, Heil; hoomly *s.* Hauskost; -saunt, -ceant *adj.* ausreichend, genügend; fähig.
 suffrable *adj.* geduldig, nachsichtig; -ance *sb.* Geduld, Langmut, Nachsicht.
 suggestioun *sb.* Anzeige; Eingebung, Einflüsterung.
 superfluitee *sb.* Übermaß, Völlerei.
 superlatyf *adj.* höchst.

supportacioun *sb.* Unterstützung.
 suppressed *ppt.* überrascht.
 surcote *sb.* Überrod.
 surement, -tee *sb.* Sicherheit, Unterpfand.
 surfeet *sb.* Überfättigung.
 surgien *sb.* Wundarzt.
 surplys *sb.* Thorrock, -hemd.
 surquid(r)ie *sb.* übermäßiges Selbstvertrauen, Vermessenheit.
 Surrye Syrien; -en *adj. & sb.* syrisch, Syrer.
 sursanure *sb.* oberflächliche Heilung.
 surveiaunce *sb.* Überwachung.
 suspeccioun *sb.* Verdacht; -ious *adj.* verdächtig.
 suspect 1. *sb.* Verdacht, Argwohn. 2. *adj.* verdächtig.
 susteene(n) *v.* aufrecht erhalten, unterhalten, -stützen; ertragen, dulden; -tenaunce *sb.* Unterhalt, Nahrung.
 suster (soster) *sb.* Schwester, Schwägerin; Schatz; -ren, -res *pl.*
 suyte *sb.* Folge; gleiche Art (Stoff, Farbe).
 swa (*dial.*) *adv.* so.
 swal *f.* swelle(n).
 swalwe *sb.* Schwalbe.
 swap(p)e(n) *v.* (of) abhandeln; (adoun) niederstürzen; swapte *pt.*
 swatte *f.* swete(n).
 swayn *sb.* Burche, Knecht.
 sweete, swoote, soote *adj.* süß, hold, sanft, lieblich; entzündend.
 sweigh *sb.* Schwung.
 swelle(n) *st. v.* (an)schwellen; swal *pt.*; swollen *ppt.*; als *adj.*: grollend; swelling(e) of herte: Schadenfreude.
 swelte(n) *v.* verschmachten, ohnmächtig werden; swelte *pt.*
 swelwe(n), swolwe(n) *v.* verschlingen.
 swerd *sb.* Schwert.
 swe(e)re(n) *st. v.* schwören, beschwören; etw. beschwören, Einspruch erheben.
 swoor *pt.*, *pl.* swore(n); swore, (y)sworn *ppt.*; sw. broother Blutsfreund, Waffenbruder.
 swete(n) *v.* schwitzen; swatte *pt.*
 Swetonius(us) C. Suetonius Tranquillus, röm. Schriftsteller (ca. 75—160), Verf. 'Vita Caesarum' u. a.
 swevene *sb.* Traum.
 swich *prn.* solch; -e *pl.*
 swithe *adv.* schnell, schnellig; as sw. baldigst, schnelligst.
 swo(u)gh *sb.* 1. Geheul (d. Windes); Stöhnen, Ächzen. 2. Ohnmacht, Bewußtlosigkeit.
 swollen *f.* swelle(n); swolwe *f.* swelwe(n).

swonke(n) f. swynke(n).

swoot sb. Schweiß. — swoote f. sweete.

swore, -n f. sweere(n)

swowne 1. sb. Ohnmacht; a-, in sw. ohn-
mächtig. 2. -(n) v. in Ohnmacht fallen;
-nyngc adj. ohnmächtig; sb. Ohnmacht.

swynk sb. (schwere) Arbeit, Mühe; -e(n)
st. v. (angestrengt) arbeiten, sich anstrengen;
erarbeiten; (y) swonke(n) ppt.; -ere
sb. Arbeiter.

swyve(n) v. beschlafen, schänden; Unzucht
treiben.

sy(e) f. see(n).

syb adj. verwandt.

syde sb. Seite; forest-s. Waldesjaum.

syk f. sik.

syklatoun sb. Eiflat, golddurchwirkter Seidenstoff.

Sym(e)kyn Simchen (Abt. v. Simon).

Symond Simon.

Symonyal sb. Symonist; -onye Simonie;
vgl. Simon 3.

symphoney sb. Drehleier.

Symplicius Gallus: richt. Sulpicius G.,
röm. Konsul (166 v. Chr.).

syn 1. prp. seit. 2. conj. (auch syn that)
seitdem, da (ja).

syngc(n) st. v. jingen; jammern; sang, soong
s. pt.; songe 2. s. pt.; -e(n) pl. pt.; (y) songe
ppt.

synk f. cynk.

synke(n) st. v. jinken; versenken; sank pt.

Synon Sinon (nicht Erbauer d. hölzernen
Pferdes!); thp. Verräter.

synwe sb. Sehne.

Syrak Jesus (Sohn d.) Sirach.

sys num. (frz.) sechs (b. Würfeln).

syve sb. Sieb.

T vor Vokalen, bes. Infinit., für to (z. B.
ramenden).

taa (dial.) = take.

taas sb. Haufe.

tabard sb. Heroldsrock; Rittel.

table sb. Tafel, Tisch; at t. zu Tisch, d. h.
als Gastgänger; f. auch dormant; pl. Schreib-
tafel; Brettspiel; t-s tolletanes: Tafeln
v. Toledo (astron. Tabellen, i. 13. Jh.
nach d. Meridian v. Toledo berechnet).

taffata sb. Taffet.

taillage, tayl- sb. Abgabe, Steuer.

taille sb. Kernholz, Schuldregister; -yng(e)
vsb. Abrechnung (13340: im Ehebett).

takel sb. Gerät, Zeug.

take(n) st. v. nehmen, annehmen, entneh-

men; empfangen; bringen, (über)reichen,
geben; treffen; auffassen, beziehen (auf);
refl. sich begeben; t. on . . auf (sich) neh-
men, unternehmen; took s. pt., toke(n)
pl.; (y)take(n) ppt.; is t. of bezieht sich
auf.

Talbot: Sundename.

tald (dial.) s. pt. = to(o)ld.

tale 1. sb. Erzählung, Geschichte, Bericht;
Geschwäg. 2. -(n) v. erzählen, schwaßen.

talent sb. Reigung, Begierde.

tappe sb. Zapfen; (angezapftes) Faß;
-estere sb. Schenkin.

tapyer sb. Tapezierer, Teppichmacher.

tarditas sb. (lat.) Säumigkeit, Langsamkeit.

tare sb. Unkraut; sette not a t. sich nichts
(daraus) machen; counte, etc.: keine
taube Ruß geben.

targe sb. Schild, Artische.

tarie(n) v. zögern; aufhalten; -yyng(e) vsb.
Verzug.

Tars Tartarei (?).

tartre sb. Weinstein.

tasseled adj. (ppt.) bequastet; t. with
grene mit grünen Quasten verziert.

Taur(us), Tawr Stier (im Tierkreise).

taverner sb. Schenkwirt.

tayl sb. Schwanz, Hinterteil, Rehrseite;
unterer Teil.

teche(n) v. lehren, unterrichten; t. to nach-
weisen, hinweisen auf; taughte pt.; (y)-
taught ppt.

tehee interj. hihi!

temperaunce sb. Mäßigung.

temple sb. Tempel; bes. (V. 567) ehem.
Templerhaus in London, sp. Sitz v. Rechts-
kollegien.

tempre(n) v. mäßigen; (alchym.) tempe-
rieren.

temps sb. (frz.) Zeit.

tene sb. Ärger, Verdruß.

tentifly adv. aufmerksam, sorgsam.

tercelet sb. Falkenmännchen.

terciane sb. Wechselstieber.

Termagant: i. b. Rittergedichten Göze der
Heiden od. Sarazenen.

Tertullan D. Septimius Tertullianus, christ-
licher Schriftsteller des 2. Jhs., verf. ver-
schiedene Schriften über Ehe, Keusch-
heit usw.

terve(n) v. schinden, das Fell abziehen.

teste sb. Probetiegel.

testere sb. Kopfharnisch (b. Pferde).

testif adj. hitzig, eigenwillig.

tete sb. Biße.

Teuta: Königin der Illyrier.

text *sb.* Text; Zitat, Ausspruch; Wortlaut;
 -tueel *adj.* im Zitierten genau, geübt;
 teyne *sb.* Platte. [belesen]
 th, þ, öfters für the (Art.) od. the(e) (*prn.*
 vor Vokal), z. B. th'encens, th'alighte, etc.
 thair 1. = the air. 2. *dial.* f. hir, *pl.* ihre.
 thakke(n) *v.* klopfen.
 thank *sb.* Dank; kan th. weiß, schulde D.;
 his (hir, etc.) thankses (*gen.*) freiwillig,
 bereitwillig.
 than *adv.* meist = denn, als, nach Komp.;
 thanne *adv.* meist = dann, darauf.
 thar *pt.-pr.,* meist *imps.* mit *dat.,* brauche,
 darf, es ist nötig, daß.
 that (pat) 1. *prn. dem.* jener; *pl.* tho;
 th. oon, th. oother d. eine, d. andere.
 2. *prn. rel.* der, welcher, (das) was; fehlt
 auch als *nom.* (z. B. 3188/89); mit folg.
prn. poss. = *gen. rel.* 3. *conj.* daß; in
 Verbind. mit andern Konjunkt.: if that,
 syn that, etc.; so sehr (schnell), wie; wo.
 thedam *sb.* Gedeihen; yvel th. Unheil,
 übel ergehe es ...
 thee 1. *prn. pers.* f. thow. 2. -(n) *v.* gedeihen,
 wohl ergehen; theeche, theeek = thee
 ich, ik; so th., so mote I thee so (wahr)
 es mir (einst) wohl ergehe, bei meiner
 Seligkeit, b. m. Seel'!
 theef *sb.* Dieb, Räuber; Schurke, Schächer;
 theves *pl.*
 Thelophus Telephus, König v. Mysien,
 von Achills Speer verwundet (Ov., Trist.
 V, 2, 15 f.).
 thenche(n), thenke(n) *v.* denken (on),
 bedenken, ersinnen; (öfters dafür) thynk-
 e(n) *imps.* dünken; thoghte *pt.,* thoght
ppt. (f. beide).
 thenne, -s 1. *adv.* von dannen; sodann
 (f. thanne). 2. *adj.,* f. thynne.
 Theodomas Theodamas (f. Statius, The-
 baïs VIII, 343).
 Theofraste Theophrastus, verf. 'Liber
 aureolus de nuptiis', zit. von Hieronymus;
 f. Jerome.
 ther, -e *adv.* da, dort; wo, wohin, worin;
 darum; *conj.* während, insofern usw.;
 th. aboute *adv.* dort herum, daran, da-
 für; -as *adv.* dort wo, daselbst; *conj.* in-
 sofern, wohingegen; -biforn *adv.* vorher;
 come -by *adv.* dazu gelangen; -fo(o)re
adv. deshalb, darüber, dazu; -of *adv.* da-
 von, darum; -oute *adv.* draußen; -to
adv., -with *adv.* dazu, obendrein, zugleich;
 -with-al(le) darauf, damit, überdies usw.
 thewes *pl.* Tugenden, Sitten.
 thider, th.-ward *adv.* dorthin.

thikke *adj.* dick, rundlich, dorb; *adv.* dicht
 (gedrängt); -herd *adj.* (*ppt.*) dicht be-
 haart.
 thilke *prn.* jener, derselbe, solch ein (f. ilke).
 thirled *ppt.* durchbohrt.
 this *prn.* dieser, jener (schon bekannte);
 mitunter = this is (z. B. 11205); thise
pl.; adv. hier.
 tho 1. *pl. v.* that (f. o.). 2. *adv.* da, nun,
 damals.
 tho(u)gh (that) *conj.* obgleich, wenn auch usw.;
 daß, wenn.
 thoght *sb.* Gedanke, Sinn, Sorge; -ful
adj. bedächtig, schwermütig.
 thole(n) *v.* erdulden.
 Thomas 1. Thomas a Becket, Erzbischof
 v. Canterbury, ermordet 1170, sp. St. Th.
 v. Kent, populärster Heiliger Englands;
 f. Wateryng. 2. St. Th., der Apostel,
 angebl. Gründer d. Christl. Sekte in In-
 dien, berühmt als Baumeister. 3. bürgerl.
 Name (V. 7352 ff.).
 thombe *sb.* Daumen.
 thunder-dent (dynt) Donnererschlag; th.-leyt
sb. Blitz(stahl).
 thorgh f. thurgh.
 thow, thou *prn.* du; kontra. mit voran-
 gehender 2. s. als (t)ow: hastow, art-
 ow, etc.; thee *acc. & dat.,* f. th'.
 thral 1. *sb.* Sklave, -in, Diener, -in. 2. *adj.*
 untertan, niedrig; th.-dom *sb.* Unter-
 tändigkeit, Knechtschaft.
 thraste f. threste(n).
 threed *sb.* Faden; thredbar *adj.* faden-
 trepe(n) *v.* nennen. [scheinig.
 thresshe(n) *v.* dreschen.
 thresshfold *sb.* Schwelle.
 threste(n) *v.* bringen, schieben; thraste *pt.*
 threite(n) *v.* drohen.
 thriddle *num.* dritter.
 thries *num.* dreimal.
 thrift *sb.* Gedeihen, Erfolg, Heil; -ty *adj.*
 vorteilhaft, nützlich, ordentlich; -tily *adv.*
 sparsam, sorgsam, vorsichtig; gebühlich.
 thrittene *num.* dreizehn; -ty *num.* dreißig.
 throng 3. s. pt. (thryngen) drang.
 throop *sb.* Dorf, Weiler; thropes *gen. & pl.*
 throte *sb.* Kehle; th.-bolle *sb.* Kehlkopf,
 Adamsapfel.
 throwe 1. *sb.* kurze Zeit, Weile, Augenblick;
 Mal. 2. -(n) *st. v.* werfen, drängen; threw
pt., (y)throwe *ppt.*
 thrustel *sb.* Drossel; -tlecok *sb.* Drossel-
 männchen.
 thryve(n) *st. v.* gedeihen, wohl ergehen; so
 th. I bei meiner Seel'! fürwahr! (f. thee 2).

thurgh (thorgh) *prp.* durch, vermöge, wegen; *th.-fare sb.* Durchgang; *th.-girt ppt.* durchbohrt; *th.-out adv.* ganz durch usw.
 thurrok *sb.* Boden, Kieistraum, Lagerraum.
 thurst(e)n *imps.* dürsten.
 thwitel *sb.* (großes) Messer.
 Thymalao Timolaus.
 Thymothee Timotheus 1. Schüler d. Paulus (Briefe an E.). 2. Feldherr d. Antiochus (vgl. Nicanore).
 thyng *sb.* Ding, Sache; Gegenstand, Angelegenheit; Beisiz; Wesen; (a) *th.* etwas; owene *th.* Eigentum; for any *th.* auf jeden Fall, um jeden Preis; make a *th.*: e. Urkunde aufsetzen, verfassen; dichten; thyng, thynges *pl.* (12997 Gebete).
 thyнке(n) *f.* denke(n).
 thynne (thenne) *adj.* dünn, dürftig, leer.
 tidyves *pl.* (s. tidyf) kleine Vögel (Baumfönige?).
 tikel *adj.* wadlig.
 til 1. *prp.* zu, nach, gegen usw., bef. vor *dat.* für to vor *total.* 2. *adv.* (*dialect.*) hin. 3. *conj.* (auch til that) bis (daß).
 tilie(n) *v.* (be)adern.
 tipped *ppt.* (mit Eisen) beschlagen; t. blak mit schwarzer Spitze (versehen).
 tiptoon *pl.* Zehnpfoten.
 tithes *sb. pl.* Zehnten (Kirchenabgaben).
 titled *ppt.* berechtigt, vorbehalten.
 titleles *adj.* unrechtmäßig.
 to 1. *prp.* zu, nach, gegen, bis, auf (bef. vor *konj.*, vgl. til); vor *dat.* & *inf.* (vgl. for to); *f.* auch *t.*; -*for* *prp.* & *adv.* voran; -*gidre adv.* zusammen, einander; -*morn adv.* morgen; -*yeere adv.* heuer, dies Jahr. 2. *adv.* zu (sehr), dazu, drauf los (? V. 13598). 3. *praef.* = *zer-*; -*breke(n) st. v.* (zer)brechen; -*breste(n) sb. v.* zermalmen; -*broste(n) ppt.*; -*glyde(n) v.* zerfließen; -*hewe(n) st. v.* zerhauen; t. -*hewe(n) ppt.*; -*race(n) v.* zerreißen; -*rende(n) v.* zerreißen; t. -*rente pt.*, t. -*rent ppt.*; -*scattered ppt.* zerstreut; -*shrede(n) v.* zerhacken; -*stoupe(n) v.* sich stemmen; -*swynke(n) v.* zerarbeiten (od. to sw.); -*tere(n) st. v.* zerreißen; t. -*tar pt.*; t. -*tore(n) ppt.*; -*trede(n) st. v.* zertreten.
 tode *sb.* Kröte.
 toft *sb.* Büschel.
 toght *adj.* straff.
 tok(e)ne *sb.* Zeichen, Marke; in tokenyng zum Zeichen (daß).
 tolletanes *f.* table.
 tombestere *sb.* Tänzerin.
 too *sb.* Zeh; toon, toos *pl.*

toord *sb.* Dred.
 top *sb.* Spitze; Schopf.
 tormentise *sb.* Marter, Folter; -*trie sb.* torn *sb.* Dienst. [Qual.
 toty *adj.* schwindlig.
 touchyng(e) 1. *vsb.* Gefühl. 2. *prp.* in betreff.
 tough *adj.* steif, hartnäckig; maketh it t. macht sich tüchtig heran.
 toun, town *sb.* Ortschaft, Dorf, Stadt; -e *dat.*
 tour Turn, Burg; d. Tower in London (V. 3254); grete t. Hauptturm, Bergfried; -et *sb.* Türmchen.
 tourettes *pl.* Ringe (am Halsband).
 toute *sb.* Steiß.
 tow 1. *sb.* Berg, Fede. 3772: hatte noch mehr Stoff usw. (geheime Absichten). 2. *f.* thow.
 towaille *sb.* Handtuch.
 trad *f.* trede(n).
 tragedie *sb.* Tragödie, d. h. Geschichte mit traurigem Ausgang (14756 ff.; vgl. Boeth. II, pr. 2).
 traitorie *sb.* Verräterei.
 Tramysene: maurisches Gebiet (Tramajen?) in Marokko.
 translate(n) *v.* verwandeln.
 trappe 1. *sb.* Falle. 2. -(n) *v.* (an)schirren, ausrüsten; -*pure sb.* Pferdedecke (aus kostbaren Stoffen).
 travaille 1. *sb.* Mühe, Beschwerde, Qual. 2. -e(n) *v.* (schwer) arbeiten, sich abmühen, sorgen, wirken; -yng(e) *vsb.* Kindesnöte, Geburtswehen.
 trave *sb.* Holzrahmen (für unruhige Pferde), Fessel.
 travers *sb.* (Zwischen-)Vorhang.
 trays *sb.* Geschirr.
 traysoun *sb.* Verrat, Täuschung.
 trecherie, -ye *sb.* Verräterei, Betrug.
 trede(n) *st. v.* treten, steigen; sich paaren; tret 3. *s. pr.*; trad *pt.*; trode(n) *ppt.*; tredefowel *sb.* Trethahn.
 tree *sb.* Baum; Holz; Kreuz (Christi); Galgen.
 tregetour *sb.* Gaufler, Zauberer.
 trench *sb.* Einschnitt, Schneise.
 trental *sb.* Trentale, (dreißig) Seelenmesse(n).
 tresse *sb.* Flechte; -ed *ppt.* geflochten.
 tretable *adj.* folgsam, gefügig.
 trete(n) *v.* (ver)handeln, berichten, reden; -ee *sb.* Vertrag, Verabredung, Unterhandlung.
 tretys, -ice 1. *sb.* Vertrag, Verhandlung; Abhandlung. 2. *adj.* wohlgestaltet, anmutig.

trewe 1. *sb.* Treue, Glaube. 2. *adj.* treu, wahr, echt; -ly *adv.* wahrlich; t.-love *sb.* treue Liebe; würziges Kraut(?).

treye (frz.) *num.* drei (b. Würfeln).

triacle *sb.* Theriak (Univerfalheilmittel),

tribulacion *sb.* Drangfal. [Balsam.

tricen *v.* triezen, reißen.

trille(n) *v.* drehen.

trippe(n) *v.* trippeln.

triste(n), truste(n) *v.* trauen, vertrauen; triste, truste *pt.*

tristicia *sb.* (lat.) Schwermut, üble Laune.

Troilus: Held der nach ihm benannten ep. Dichtung Chs.

trompe, trompe 1. *sb.* Trompete, Posaune; Trompeter, Zinkenist. 2. -(n) *v.* trompeten, blasen.

tronchoun *sb.* Sanzenstumpf.

Trophee Trophaeus (fingierter Autorenname? Vates Chaldaeorum?).

trotte(n) *v.* traben; umherwandeln.

Trotula: Gattin e. Arztes i. Salerno (11. Jh.).

trouble *adj.* gestört, verwirrt, betrübt, trüb.

trouthe *sb.* Wahrheit, Wahrhaftigkeit; Gelöbniß, Ehrenwort; by my t. meiner Treu!

trowe(n) *v.* trauen, glauben; I t. wohl, traun.

Troye, -oie Troja; vgl. Ilion.

truße *sb.* Nichtigkeit; Rederei.

Trumpyngtoun Trumpington, D. b. Cam-trye *adj.* außerlesen. [bridge.

tryne *num.* dreiteilig (16275 d. h. Erde, Meer, Himmel).

tryp(e) *sb.* Stücken, Brocken.

(y)tukked *ppt.* geschürzt.

tulle(n) *v.* loden.

Tullius: Cicero; Zitate bes. aus 'De officiis'; auch 'De senectute', 'De amicitia', 'De oratore' etc.

Turkeys *adj.* türkisch.

turne(n) *v.* (sich) drehen, wenden; kehren; drehfeln; verwandeln; (y)turned *ppt.*

turneiynge(e) *vsb.* Turnier.

Turnus T., König d. Rutuler, v. Aeneas erschlagen (Aen. XII, 919 ff.).

turtel (-le) *sb.* Turteltaube; ebenso *gen.*

turves *sb. pl.* Rasenstücke (s. turf).

tusked *ppt.* mit Hauern bewehrt.

tuwel *sb.* Voch.

twa *num.* (dial.) zwei.

twenty *num.* zwanzig; öfters ungef. Zahl-angabe = e. Duzend; a. tw. deuel wey in drei Tausend Namen; tw. thousand = tausende. [zween.

tweye, tweyne *num.* (ursprüngl. masc.)

twight *ppt.* (inf. twicchen) gerudt; wel tw. e. tüchtiger Rud.

twist(e) 1. *sb.* Zweig, Ast. 2. -(n) *v.* zwicken, quälen; drücken; twist(e) *pt.*

twyes *num.* zweimal.

twyne *sb.* Zwirn.

twynne(n) *v.* (sich) trennen, scheiden; (sich) befreien, ablaffen.

tyde 1. *sb.* Zeit, Zeitabschnitt (b. 12 Stunden); Gezeit (Ebbe u. Flut). 2. -(n) *v.* bestimmt sein, widerfahren; tydes 3. s. *pr.* (dial.).

typet *sb.* Kragen, Kapuze.

Tyro (lat. abl.) Thyrs, St. in Kleinasien; j. Appollonius.

U (v vor Konj. = u).

un-avyded *ppt.* unberlegt; -bokele(n) *v.* aufschnallen, öffnen; -brent *ppt.* unverbrennt; -constreyned *ppt.* ungezwungen; -covenable *adj.* unschädlich; -cowple(n) *v.* losgelassen werden; -curteisly *adv.* unschädlich; -devocioun *sb.* Unfrömmigkeit, Gottlosigkeit; -do(on) *v.* aufstun, öffnen; -feestlich *adj.* unfeistlich, übermattet; -hardy *adj.* mutlos; -heeel *sb.* Mißgeschick; -konnynge *adj.* (ppr.) unerfahren, unwissend; *vsb.* Unverstand, Unfähigkeit; -kouth *adj.* unbekannt, fremdartig; -kynde, -kyndely *adj.* un- (wider-) natürlich; -leueful *adj.* unerlaubt, -statt- haft; -likly *adj.* ungleich, -erfreulich; -mesurable *adj.* unmäßig; -(n)ethe(s) *adv.* kaum, mit Mühe; -ordred *adj.* (ppt.) keinem (geistl.) Orden angehörig; -reste *sb.* Unruhe; do u. beunruhigen; -sad *adj.* haltlos, unstät; -savory *adj.* unschmackhaft, unangenehm; -se(e)ly *adj.* unglücklich, erfolglos; -set *adj.* (ppt.) unvorhergesehen; -shette(n) *v.* (auch *pt.*) aufschließen; -shewed *ppt.* verborgen; ungebeicht; -slekked *adj.* *ppt.* ungelöst; -thank *sb.* Undank; u. come, etc. verwünscht sei etc.; -thriftyly *adv.* dürftig; -tressed *adj.* (ppt.) ungeschlochten, aufgelöst; -trewe *adj.* unwahr; -trust *sb.* Mißtrauen; -war *adj.* unerwartet, unwissentlich, unbeachtet; -weelde *adj.* schwerfällig, ungeschlacht; -wemmed *adj.* (ppt.) unbesleckt; -wist *adj.*, -witynge *ppr.* unbewußt; -wit *sb.* Torheit; -yolden *ppt.* ohne sich ergeben zu haben.

under-growe *adj.* (ppt.) klein von Wuchs; -meles *pl.* (früher) Nachmittags; -noom *pt.* (-neme?) vernahm, verspürte; -nome *ppt.* unterwiesen; -pighte *pt.* (vgl. pighte) füllte (aus von innen); -spore(n) *v.* hin- unterstieben; -stonde(n) *st.* *v.* verstehen, begreifen, merken, hören; -stood *pt.*,

-sonde(n) *ppt.*; -take(n) *st. v.* unternehmen, wagen; behaupten, versichern, vermuten; I u.: gewiß, wohl.
 undren *sb.* Vormittag (Zeit von etw. 9—12 Uhr; nach andern: Besperzeit?).
 un-to *ppr.* zu etc., *j. to*; bis zu.
 up 1. *ppr.* auf, bei. 2. *adv.* auf, oben, empor; uppe offen; up and down hin und her; auf u. nieder, weit u. breit, überall; up so down von oben nach unten. — up-caste *pt.* warf ans Land; -goon *pr.* erschallen; -hente *pt.* hob auf (*j. henten*); -haf *pt.* *j. heve(n)*; -plyght *ppt.* ausgehoben (*j. plighte 2*); -right(e) *adv.* aufrecht, aufwärts, gerade; weit offen; (lag) ausgestreckt (auf d. Rücken); *j. bolt*; -rist 3. *s. pr.* geht, steht auf (*j. rysen*); -riste *sb.* Ausgang; -ronne *ppt.* aufgestiegen (*j. rennen*); -sterre *pt.* sprang, fuhr auf; -yaf *pt.* gab von sich (*j. yeven*); -yolden *ppt.* aufgegeben (*j. yelden*).
 upon 1. *ppr.*, *j. on*. 2. *adv.* an usw.
 Urban: II. 1., Bischof v. Rom, † 230.
 urinal *sb.* Uringlas.
 use(n) *v.* gebrauchen, benutzen, genießen; üben, pflegen; gewohnt, ergeben sein. — usage *sb.* Gebrauch, Gewohnheit; Erfahrung; -aunt, -yng *adj.* (*ppr.*) gewohnt.
 us *prn.* uns; -selve wir, unsäselb; (to)-ward gegen uns.
 usure *sb.* Zins, Wucher.
 Valentynes (seint) day: d. 14. Februar (an dem angebl. die Handlung d. 'Parl. of briddes' spielt).
 Valeria: 'Messalarum soror', etc. (Hieronymus). — Valerian *j.* 16359 ff.
 Valerie Valerius, angebl. Verf. d. 'Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum de non ducenda uxore', bei Hieronymus (*j. Jerome*).
 Valerius Val. Maximus, röm. Schriftsteller (unter Tiberius), verf. 9 Bücher 'factorum et dictorum memorabilium'. [Wahn.]
 vanitee (-ny-) *sb.* Eitelkeit, Einbildung, vassellage *sb.* Lehndienst, Rittertum.
 vavasour *sb.* Ackerlehnsmann, (Unter-)veluëttes *sb. pl.* Sammetstoffe. [Wassall.]
 venerie *sb.* Weidwerk.
 Venerien *adj.* von Venus beeinflusst.
 venge(n) *v.* rächen; -(e)aunce *sb.* Rache, Strafe.
 ventusyng *vsb.* Schröpfen.
 venym *sb.* Gift, Eiter; Bosheit; -ous *adj.* giftig, böshaft.
 verdegrees *sb.* Grünspan.

vernage *sb.* (feuriger) toskanischer Wein.
 vernycle *sb.*: Nachbildung v. Christi Schweiß-tuch (d. Hlg. Veronika).
 vernysshen(n) *v.* firnissen; „einseifen“ (= herauschen).
 verray *adj.* wahrhaft, wirklich; rein; jogar; -ly *adv.*
 vers, *s. & pl.*, Vers, Verse; -sifiour *sb.* Versmacher, Dichter.
 vertu *sb.* Tugend; Kraft, Trieb; Zauber-kraft; thurgh *v.* kraft, vermöge.
 verve *sb.* Alp, Mahr (?).
 vessel *sb.* Gefäß; auch kollektiv = Gefäße.
 vestiment *sb.* Gewand.
 Vesulus (Mount) Monte Viso.
 veyne 1. *sb.* Vene, Ader; v.-blood *sb.* Aderlaß. 2. *adj.* (*fem.*) eitel; -glorie *sb.* Ruhmredigkeit.
 veze *sb.* Ungeßtim, Andrang.
 Via Ap(p)ia: Heerstraße südl. v. Rom; daran Katakomben d. ältesten Christen (von Ch. für Ortsnamen gehalten).
 viage *sb.* Reise, Fahrt.
 vicair *sb.* Amtsverweser; -cary, -ker *sb.* Pfarrvikar.
 vigilies *sb. pl.* Vigilien (Vorabend e. Festes).
 viker *j.* vicair.
 vileyns *adj.* schändlich, schmächtig; niedrig, gemein; unzüchtig, sündhaft; -nye *sb.* Schande, Schimpf, Schmach; Ungehörigkeit, Schändlichkeit; Niedrigkeit; speke, seye *v.* übel reden, beschimpfen, schmähen.
 vinolent *adj.* mit Wein gesüßt, trunken.
 viole *sb.* Pfirole, Stätschen.
 virelay *sb.* Ringelied (mit eigenartiger Reimstellung).
 Virgile Virgil, der röm. Dichter, Führer Dante's auf seiner Fahrt durch Hölle u.
 viritoot *sb.* Trab (?). [Fegfeuer.]
 virytrate *sb.* Heze.
 visage 1. *sb.* Gesicht, Antlitz. 2. -(n) *v.* die Stirn bieten, entgegenreten.
 visoun *sb.* Traumgesicht, Vision.
 visitacioun *sb.* Besuch.
 vitaille 1. *sb.* Lebensmittel, Mundvorrat, Viskalien. 2. -(n) *v.* verproviantieren, mit Lebensmitteln versorgen; -ier *sb.* Viskalienhändler.
 vitremyte *sb.* (Glas)haube (?).
 Vitulon Vitellio, polnischer Mathematiker (13. Jh.).
 voidit *sb.* Urteil, Gutachten.
 volage *adj.* leichtfertig, buhlerisch.
 volatyl *sb.* Geflügel.
 volupe(e)r *sb.* Haube, Nachtmühe.
 vouche-sauf *v.* belieben, geruhen, gestatten.

voyde(n) *v.* entleeren, räumen; entfernen, fortjchaffen; yvoyded *ppt.*
voys *sb.* Stimme; Ruf; Zustimmung.

Waet 3. *s. pr. (dial.)* weiß.

wacche *sb.* Wacht, Wächter.

Wade: nord. Geld (Wate i. Gudrunliede Vff.); W's Boot: Zauberboot, Anspielung auf alte, verlorene Sage; wade(n) *v.* durchwaten; schreiten; dringen.

wafre *sb.* Waffel; wafere *sb.* Waffelhändlerin.

waget *sb.* blaue Farbe.

wagges 3. *s. pr. (dial.)* schwankt.

wake 1. *sb.* Wacht; *f.* lych-w.; w.-pleyes *pl.* Zeichenspiele; 2. -(n) *st. v.* wachen; (er)weden; wook *pt.*; -ynges *pl.* Nachtwachen.

walet *sb.* Kanzen, Quersack.

walked (*ppt.?*); go w. zu Fuß gehen, wandern.

walwe(n) *v.* sich wälzen.

Walys Bales.

wan 1. *adj.* bleich; düster. 2. *pt.*, *f.* wyne(n).

3. *praef.* = ohne, miß; *f.* w.-hope, etc.

wane(n), -ye(n) *v.* schwinden, abnehmen.

wange *sb.* Wange, Rinnebaße; wang-tooth *sb.* Badenzahn.

wanhope *sb.* Hoffnungslosigkeit, Verzweiflung; -trust *sb.* Mißtrauen; *f.* wan 3.

wantown *adj.* schalkhaft; wollüstig; -nesse *sb.* Lüsternheit, Geziertheit.

wanye *f.* wane.

war *adj.* klug, verständig; gewahr; to be w. achtgeben, bemerken; sich hüten, warnen lassen; ahnen; *f.* ware(n).

warde *sb.* Gewarthsam, Haft; Obhut.

wardecors *sb.* Leibwächter.

warderere *interj.* (frz.) gib hinten acht!

wardeyn *sb.* Güter, Wächter; Vorsteher, wardrobe *sb.* Kammer. [Direktor.

ware 1. *sb.* Ware. 2. -(n) *v. refl.* sich hüten, in acht nehmen; merken. 3. W-St. nördl. b. London.

warente(n) *v.* schützen, sichern.

warisshe(n), -ice(n) *v.* heilen; genejen.

warne(n) *v.* ankündigen, ansagen; warnen; vorherjagen.

warnestoore(n) *v.* befestigen.

waryangle *sb.* Reumtöter, Würger.

warye(n) *v.* versluchen.

wasshe(n) *st. v.* waschen, reinigen; wessh *pt.*; wasshe(n) *ppt.*

wastel-bred *sb.* Kuchenbrot.

wastour *sb.* Verschwender, =in.

water *sb.* Wasser; by w. zu W. (V. 400:

b. h. er warf sie über Bord); to w. zu W. werden; -yng *vsb.* Tränke; w. of Seint Thomas: Gewässer am zweiten Meilenstein auf d. Wege nach Canterbury.

watte (eigl. Abfürzung v. Walter) boh! (?). wax *f.* waxe(n).

wayk *adj.* schwach.

waymente(n) *v.* wehklagen.

wayte(n) *v.* warten, abwarten, erwarten; aufpassen, beobachten; erwägen, gedenken.

webbe *sb.* Weber.

wedde 1. *dat. (n. wed)*; to w. zum Pfande.

2. -(n) *v.* heiraten.

weder *sb.* Wetter.

we(e)de *sb.* Gewand.

weel *adv.* (meist betont u. i. Reim) wohl, gut, glücklich, tüchtig usw.; wel (bes. vor andern Abb.) wohl, gut, viel, sehr, weit; wel ny beinahe; w.-farynge gut ausgestattet.

we(e)lde(n) *v.* in der Gewalt haben, überwältigen, bezwingen, beherrschen; welte, weelded *pt.*; -yng(e) *vsb.* Gewalt.

weene *f.* wene(n).

weep *f.* wepe(n).

weerieth 3. *s. pr.* ermüdet.

weet *adj.* naß; wete *pl.*

weex *f.* wexe(n).

wehee *interj.* hihi! (wiehern).

weighte *f.* wighte.

weilaway, weylaway *interj.* wehe! o weh!

wel *f.* weel.

welde, welte *f.* weelde(n).

wele *sb.* Glück, Seligkeit; Wohlstand; Jubel; -ful *adj.* glücklich, selig.

welked *adj. (ppt.)* weß.

welkne *sb.* Wolke, Himmel.

welle *sb.* Quelle; Brummen; Ursache, Ursprung.

wem *sb.* Fleck, Schaden; wemmelees *adj.* unbesetzt.

wende(n) *v.* sich wenden; gehen, schreiten, (weiter) ziehen; vergehen; wente *pt.* (*f.* goon); went *ppt.*; bgl. wene(n).

we(e)ne(n) *v.* mähnen, meinen; erwarten; wende *pt.*; wend *ppt.*

wepe(n) *st. v.* weinen; weep, wepte *pt.*; wopen *ppt.*

wep(e)ne *sb.* Waffe.

werche(n), werke(n) *v.* (be)wirken, handeln, tun, schaffen, arbeiten; verfahren, betreiben, ausführen; errichten; antun, zufügen; wroghte *pt.*; (y)wroght *ppt.*; werkes (*dial.*) 3. *s. pr.* macht (-en) zu schaffen; -er *sb.* Täter, Vollbringer; -yng *vsb.* Treiben, Tat.

were(n) 1. 2. *s. pt., pl. pt., conjv. pt.* von
 bee(n). 2. *v. (sich) wehren.* 3. *v. tragen,*
 anhaben; **wered(e)** *pt.; wered ppt.*
werk *sb.* Werk, Arbeit; Mühe, Sorge; *f.*
 sette(n); -e(n), -er *f.* werche(n).
werne(n) *v.* verweigern.
werre *sb.* Krieg; -eye(n) (-ei) *v.* Krieg
 führen, bekriegen, bekämpfen, sich wider-
 wers(e) *comp.* schlimmer, schlechter. [*setzen.*
werte *sb.* Warze.
wesele, wez- *sb.* Wiesel (14225 fälschl.
 für frz. vivre = Biber).
wessh *f.* wasshe(n).
wete 1. *sb.* Nässe. 2. *pl. adj., f.* weet.
wette(n) *v.* nassen, anfeuchten; *ywet ppt.*
wex *sb.* Wachs.
wexe(n) *st. v.* wachsen, zunehmen; werden;
 wax, weex *pt.; (y)woxe(n) ppt.*
wey- *f.* auch wei-.
wey, -e 1. *sb.* Weg, Reise; Art, Weise
 (*f.* furlong, leeste, oother). 2. *adv.* weg.
weye(n) *v.* wiegen. [*fort.*
weyve(n) *v.* (ab)weichen, meiden, ver-
 schmähen, verlassen.
wezele *f.* wes-.
wha (*dial.*) *prn.* = who.
whan, -ne *adv. & conj.* wann, wenn; als.
what 1. *prn. interr. & rel.* was, was für
 ein; what . . . that derjenige . . . welcher,
 welcher . . . auch immer; what . . . what
 teils . . . teils. 2. *interj.* he! ei! 3. *adv.* nun.
whether 1. *prn.* welcher (von beiden).
 2. *conj.* ob (. . . oder); vgl. wher 2.
whelkes *sb. pl.* Fidel, Auswüchse.
whelp *sb.* Junges (e. Tiers), Hündlein.
whenne, -es *adv.* von wannen, woher.
wher, -e 1. *adv.* wo, wohin; *wher-as* *adv.*
 woselbst; *conj.* wohingegen, während.
 2. *conj., zugez.* aus whether (*f.* o.) ob usw.;
 wh.-so ob . . . auch.
whete *sb.* Weizen.
which *prn. interr. & rel.* welcher, der (auch
 v. Personen), was; *whiche* *dat. & pl.*;
 which a was für ein; the wh., wh. that
rel.; the whiche (that) *flekt.*; wh. as
 welcher . . . nur.
whider *adv.* wohin; *wh.-ward* *adv.* desgl.
while 1. *sb.* Weile; Mühe; quite. . wh. sich
 rächen (an). 2. *conj.* während; (the)
 whiles (*gen.*), *whil, whil* that desgl.;
whilom (*dat. pl.*) *adv.* vor Zeiten, (der-)
 einst, einmal; *whil-eer* *adv.* vorher, vor-
whilk *prn. (dial.)* = which. [*maß.*
whippeltree *sb.* Kornelröschenbaum.
whistle *sb.* Gurgel, Pfeife.
whit *adj.* weiß; *white* *flekt. & adv.; sb.*

Weißwein; whyte paternoster: Zauber-
 formel; whitnesse *sb.* Weiße, (das)
 Weiß (Farbe d. Lilie).
who *interr. wer; whos* *gen., whom* *dat.*
 & *acc.* (diese auch *rel.*).
whyne(n) *v.* winsten, wiehern.
widwehode *sb.* Witwenstand; *f.* wydwe.
wight 1. *sb.* Wicht, Robold; Person; Mensch,
 Wesen; Weibchen, Augenblik; every w.
 jedermann; no w. niemand. 2. *adj.* ge-
 wandt, flink.
wighte, weighte *sb.* Gewicht; Last.
wikke, -ed *adj.* böse, schlimm, schlecht,
 fälsch; w. nest = frz. mau (mal) nid;
f. Mawny.
wil, wyl, wille *sb.* Wille, Wunsch; Begehr,
 Belieben; Bereitschaft, Absicht; *wil* *pr. s.*
f. wol; wilful *adj., -ly* *adv.* freiwillig,
 bereitwillig; hartnäckig; -fulness *sb.*
 Eigenwille, Halsstarrigkeit; *wille(n)* *v.*
 wollen, begehren; *wilne(n)* *v.* wünschen,
 bereit sein.
wilde, wy- *adj.* wild, toll; w. fir 1. Rot-
 laus (Krankheit). 2. griechisches (unaus-
 lösliches) Feuer (V. 5955). 3. brennende
 Spirituosen (V. 18582).
Wilkyu Wille (Deminutiv v. William).
William Wilhelm; V. 324 B. d. Eroberer.
wirche(n), wirke(n) *v.* wirken, berichten,
 handeln usw.; *f.* werche(n); *wirkyng*
vsb. Tätigkeit.
wise, wyse 1. *sb.* Weise, Art; double w.
 zwiefach. 2. *adj. pl., f.* wys.
wisly *adv.* gewiß(lieh), wahr(lieh); *f.* wys;
 wisely *f.* wys.
wisse(n) *v.* weisen, belehren, unterrichten;
wist(e) *f.* wite(n). [*leiten.*
wit *sb.* Wig, Geist, Verstand, Sinn; Urteil,
 Überlegung.
wite *f.* wyte.
wite(n) *pt.-pr.* wissen, kennen, erfahren;
woot *s. pr., wite(n)* *pl. pr.; wiste* *pt.,*
wist (*wyst*) *ppt., wist* *adj.* bekannt; -yng
vsb. Wissen; -yngly *adv.* wissenschaftl.
with *prp.* mit, bei; von, durch usw.; -al,
 -alle *adv.* zugleich, zumal, dabei; -holde(n)
v. fest-, zurückhalten; behalten, aufhalten;
 -holde(n) *ppt.*; -seye(n) widerprechen;
 ableugnen; -stonde(n) *v.* widerstehen.
witnesse *sb.* Zeugnis; w. (ob. *conjv. pr.*
 v. witnessen) on: dafür zeugt, daß be-
 wlatson *adj.* abscheulich. [*weist.*
wo 1. *sb.* Weh, Leid, Jammer, Schmerz.
 2. *adj.* weh, leid, bekümmert; -bigon
 weh (ums Herz), weherfüllt; -ful *adj.*
 kummervoll, jammerhaft.

wode *sb.* Holz; Wald; -bynde *sb.* Geißblatt; -(oo) craft *sb.* Weidmannsbrauch; -dowe *sb.* Waldtaube; vgl. wood.
 wol, wil *pt.-pr.* will, wünsche, beabsichtige (anzutun usw.); werden (als Fut.); wolt, wilt 2. *s. pr.*; wol(e), wil, woln *pl. pr.*; wole *conjv. pr.*; wolde *pt.* wollte, wünschte, möchte; wo(o)ld *ppt.*; vgl. wille(n).
 wombe *sb.* Leib, Bauch, Wanst.
 womman *sb.* Frau; w.-hede *sb.* Weiblichkeit; w. -ly *adj.* weiblich; w.-thral *sb.* Sklavin; wommen *pl.*, -es *gen.*
 wonder 1. *sb.* Wunder. 2. *adj. & adv.* wunderbar, erstaunlich, höchst; -ly *adv.*
 wone 1. *sb.* Gewohnheit, Brauch. 2. -(n) *v.* wohnen, haufen; gewöhnen; be woned gewohnt sein, pflegen; -yng *vsb.* Wohnung, -stätte; vgl. woon.
 wonger *sb.* (Kopf-)Reifen.
 wonne(n) *f.* wyne(n).
 wood *adj.* wütend, rasend, zornig; wahnsinnig, -witzig; -ly *adv.* heftig; -nesse *sb.* Wut, Zorn; Wahnsinn; wo(o)de(n) *v.* rasen, toben, irre reden; vgl. wode.
 woon *sb.* Einsamkeit, Versteck; wones *pl.* Behausung (*f.* wone).
 woot *f.* wite(n).
 wopen *f.* wepe(n).
 word *sb.* Wort usw.; *f.* auch ord.
 world *sb.* Welt; Weltanschauung; Lebensworm *sb.* Wurm, Insekt; Schlange. [lust.
 worship(e) *sb.* Würde, Ansehen; -ful *adj.* würdig, ehrenvoll.
 wort *sb.* 1. Kraut, Gemüse. 2. Bierwürze.
 worth 1. *sb.* Wert; -y *adj.* würdig; wader, brav. 2. *adj.* wert. 3. 3. *s. pr.* wird (*v.* worthen); w. upon steigt auf.
 wowke, wyke *sb.* Woche.
 wowe(n) *v.* freien, werben.
 woxen *f.* wexe(n).
 wrak *sb.* Wrack.
 wrang (*dial.*) *adj.* *f.* wrong.
 wrappe(n) *v.* einhüllen.
 wrastle(n) *v.* ringen, kämpfen.
 wratthe(n) *v.* erzürnen.
 wraw *adj.* ärgerlich; -ful *adj.* verdrießlich, unnützig; -nesse *sb.* Verdrießlichkeit, Unmut.
 wrecche 1. *sb.* Elender, -e, Unglücklicher, -e. 2. *adj.*, -ed *adj.* elend, jammervoll, unglücklich; -ednesse *sb.* Elend; elendes Zeug, Unsinn.
 wreche *sb.* Rache, Strafe.
 wreke(n) *st. v.* rächen; wreke(n) *ppt.*

wrenches *sb. pl.* Ränke, Anisse.
 wrethe *sb.* Kranz.
 wreye(n) *v.* verraten, enthüllen.
 wrighte *sb.* Handwerker.
 write(n) *st. v.* schreiben, beschreiben; writ 3. *s. pr.* (auch *sb.*: Schrift); wroot *pl.*, -write *conjv. pt.*; write(n) *ppt.*
 wrihting *vsb.* Drehung.
 wroght(e) *f.* werchen, wirchen.
 wrong 1. *sb.* Unrecht usw. 2. *adj.* unrecht, falsch. 3. (oo) *pt. f.* wrynge(n).
 wrooth *adj.* zornig, böse; feindlich; wrothe wrote(n) *v.* (auf)wühlen. [*pl.*
 wrye(n) *v.* 1. einhüllen, bedecken; (y)wrye *ppt.* 2. sich wenden, drehen.
 wrynge(n) *st. v.* ringen, (sich) winden; drücken; wro(o)ng *pt.*
 wy- *f.* auch wi-
 wy *interj.* ei! hui!
 wyd *adj.* weit, geräumig; wyde *pl. & adv.*, -where *adv.* weit und breit.
 wydwe *sb.* Witwe; *f.* widwe-
 wyf *sb.* Frau, Weib, Ehefrau, Hausfrau; wyves *gen. & pl.*, wyve *dat.*; wyfhode *sb.* Ehestand; -lees ehelos, ohne Frau; -ly *adj.* frauenhaft, ehelich.
 wyke *f.* wowke.
 wyl *f.* wil. — wyle *sb.* List.
 wylwe (wylugh) *sb.* Weide(nbaum).
 wypul *sb.* Kopftuch, Nonnenjuchleier.
 wynde(n) *st. v.* (sich) winden, drehen; einwickeln, -hüllen; wyndas *sb.* Winde; -yng(e) *vsb.* Windung.
 wyne(n) *st. v.* gewinnen, erobern; erwerben, verdienen, erlangen; wan *pt.*; (y)wonne(n) *ppt.*; -yng *vsb.* Gewinnst, Vorteil.
 wynsyng(e) *adj.* (*ppr.*) flüchtig, scheu.
 wynter *sb.* Winter; Jahr; many wyntres space manches Jahr hindurch.
 wys *adj.* 1. (y) weiß, klug; wise, wyse *flekt.*; *sb.* (der) Weise; wisely *adv.* weise; tüchtig. 2. (y) *adj. & adv.* gewiß, sicher; wisly *adv.* (*f. o.*); wyse *sb. f. o.* (-i-).
 wyte, wite 1. *sb.* Vorwurf, Schuld. 2. -(n) *v.* anklagen, tadeln.

Y a) als Vokal (*f.* auch i-).

y-Vorsilbe = ge-, häufig vor *ppt.*, auch vor *inf.*; *f.* meist das Simplex; y-barred *pt.* gestreift; -bleynt *f.* bleynte; -clenched genietet; -corve(n) *f.* kerve(n); -coupled gepaart; -coyned geprägt; -cristned getauft; -dight geschmückt, geziert; -do *f.* do(on); -dropped beneht; -fetered

gefeßelt; -flatered umschmeichelt; -forged geprügt; -fostred ernährt, errogen; -fynde *inf.* f. fynde; -glewed angeleimt; -grounde f. grynde(n); -growen gewachsen; -heere *inf.* f. heere(n); -herd behaart; -knowe(n) *inf.* erkennen, unterscheiden; *ppt.* gekannt; -lad f. lede(n); -lymed geleimt, gefangen; -meynd gemischt; -piked ausgelesen; -plesed bestriedigt; -purfiled verbräunt; -reke zusammengescharrt; -satled geklärt; -scald(ed) verbrüht; -se *inf.* f. see(n); -sene *adj.* (*ppt.*) sichtbar (*ebb.*); -stert f. sterte(n); -sweped gefegt; -swonke f. swynke(n); -teyd gebunden, geschnürt; -thanked gedankt; -trespassed gesündigt; -warned gewarnt; -wounded verwundet; -wympled (wel) mit (schönen) Kopfstuch.

ydel *adj.* müßig, träge; in y. vergebens, umsonst, unnütz; -nesse *sb.* Müßiggang.
ydiot *sb.* einfältiger Mensch; make an y. of betören, zum besten haben.

ydole *sb.* Göße; -lastre *sb.* Gözendiener.
yē f. (e)ye.

yfayth (= in f.) *adv.* traun.

yfeere *adv.* zusammen.

yle *sb.* Insel.

ylliche, ylyk, -e *adj. & adv.* gleich; vgl. lik.
Ylion f. 1.

yimage *sb.* Bildwerk; (astrolog.) Figur;
-ginacioun *sb.* Vorstellung, Einbildung;
-ginatyf *adj.*; been y. sich vorstellen, vermuten; -gine(n) v. sich einbilden, ausfindig machen, erdenken; -ginyng *vsb.* Abbildung.

Ymeneus Hymen(äus), Gott d. Vermählung.
ympe *sb.* Sproß, Reis.

yngot f. ing-.

ynogh, ynow *adj. & adv.* genug, hinreichend; ynowe *pl.*

Ypermystra Hypermetra; f. L. G. W. 2562 ff.

Ypocras 1. Hippokrates, berühmter griech. Arzt (geb. um 400 v. Chr.). 2. y-*sb.*: e. Art Würzwein, nach H. benanntes Herzstärkungsmittel.

ypocrisie, -ye *sb.* Heuchelei; -crite, -yte *sb.* Heuchler, Gleisner.

Ypolita Hippolyta, Amazonenfönigin.

Ypotys: legendhafte Erzählung (mit Iomedon, d. Helden e. Nittergedichts, verwechselt?).

Ypres Ypern (Flandern).

Ysaye Jesaja, d. Prophet.

Ysidre Isidorus, Bisch. v. Sevilla, ca. 570 bis 640; zit. Schriften: 'Sententiarum libri', 'Etymologicarum liber' u. a.

Ytaille Italien.

Yve Ivo (zwei Heilige d. Namens: Bisch. f. [7. Jh.] u. Presbyter f. [13. Jh.]).

yvel 1. *adj.* übel; -e *adv.* 2. *sb.* Übel.

yvy *sb.* Pfeu; f. pipe(n); herb-yve *sb.* Erbesen.

ywis *adv.* gewiß, sicherlich, wahrlich; vgl. wys 2.

b) als Konsonant (vgl. g-).

yaf f. yeve(n).

ye 1. *prn. nom.* ihr; yow (-u) *acc. & dat.*

2. *adv.* ja, fürwahr, nun.

yeddynges *pl.* Gesang von Liedern.

yede *pl.* ging, kam; f. go.

yeer *sb.* Jahr; yeer, yeres *pl.*

yelde(n) *st. v.* geben, auf-, hin-, herausgeben; abstatten; God yelde G. vergelt's; yolden *ppt.*; -dyng(e) *vsb.* Ertrag.

yeldehalle *sb.* Rathaus (Sitz d. Gilden).

yelp(e)n v. prahlen.

yelw(e), -ow *adj.* gelb, blond.

yeman *sb.* Freisasse, freier Bauer; (freier) Dienstmann, Schütze; -ly *adv.* nach Schützenart; f. yomanrye.

ye(er)d 1. *sb.* Hof, Garten. 2. -e *sb.* Gerte, Rute, Stab; Elle (Maß).

yerne *adj. & adv.* frisch, lebhaft; eilig.

yeve(n), yive(n) [jo i. Reim] *st. v.* geben; yif *impt.*; yaf (gaf) *pt. s.*, yaven *pl.*; yeve(n) (yiven) *ppt.*; -ere *sb.* Geber.

yexe(n) v. schluden, schluchzen.

yif, yive(n) f. yeve(n).

yifte *sb.* Gabe, Geschenk.

yis *adv.* ja.

yit *adv.* noch (jezt); as y. bisher.

yolden f. yelde(n).

yolle(n) v. brüllen, gellen.

yomanrye *sb.* freie Bauernschaft; estaat of y. Stand als freier Bauer; f. yeman.
yon *prn.* jener; -d *adv.* dort; -der *prn.* & *adv.* jener; dort.

yo(o)re *adv.* vormals, früher, lange (her); y. ago vor langer Zeit; ful y. schon längst; of tyme y. in früherer Zeit.

youlyng *vsb.* Geheul, Jammergeschrei.

youre *prn.*, *adj. & sb.* euer, d. eurige; -es yow f. ye. [*prn. sb.*]

Zakarie Sacharia, d. Prophet.

Zanzis Zeuxis, griech. Maler (— 400 v. Chr.).

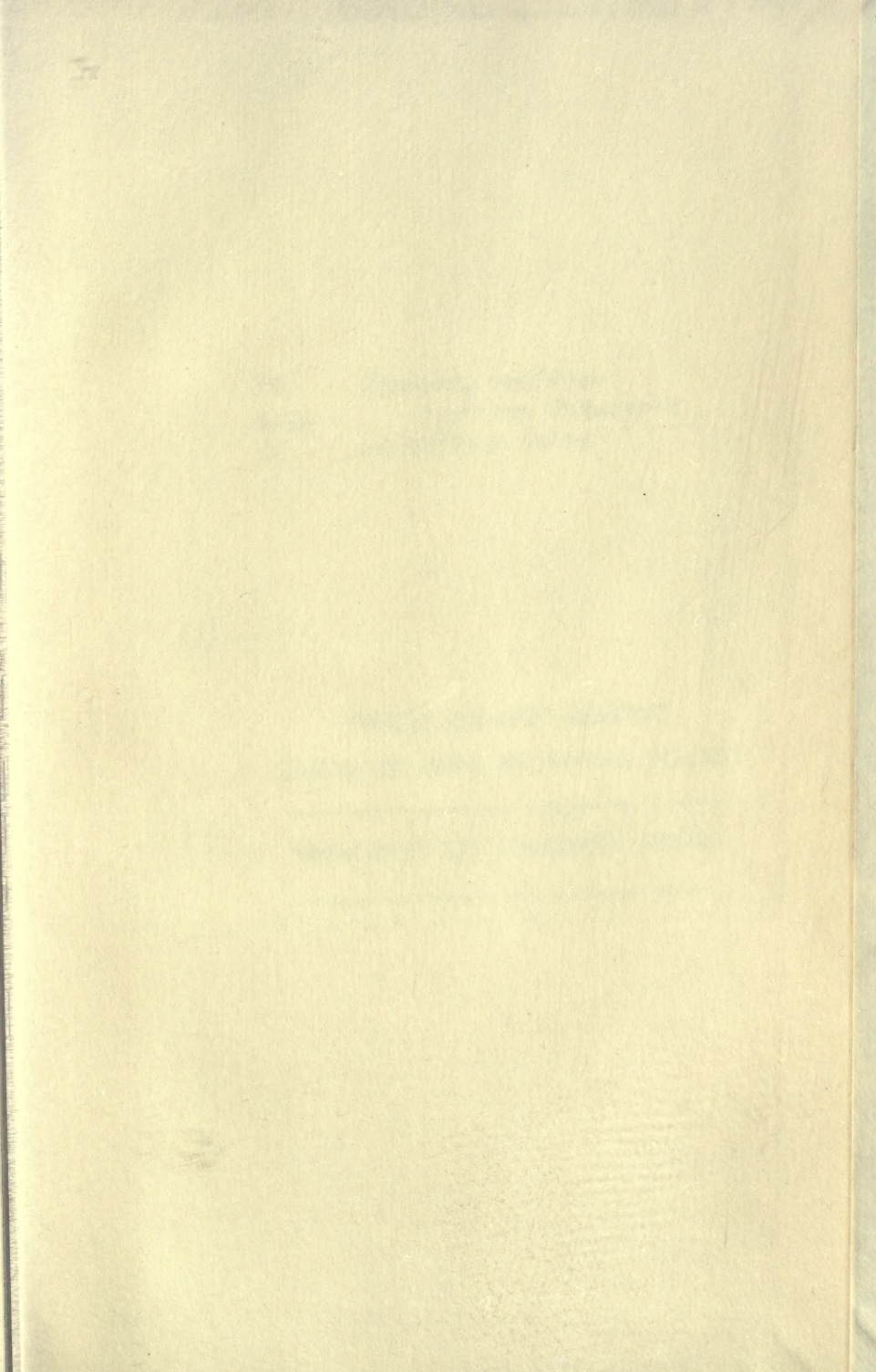
Berichtigungen und Ergänzungen.

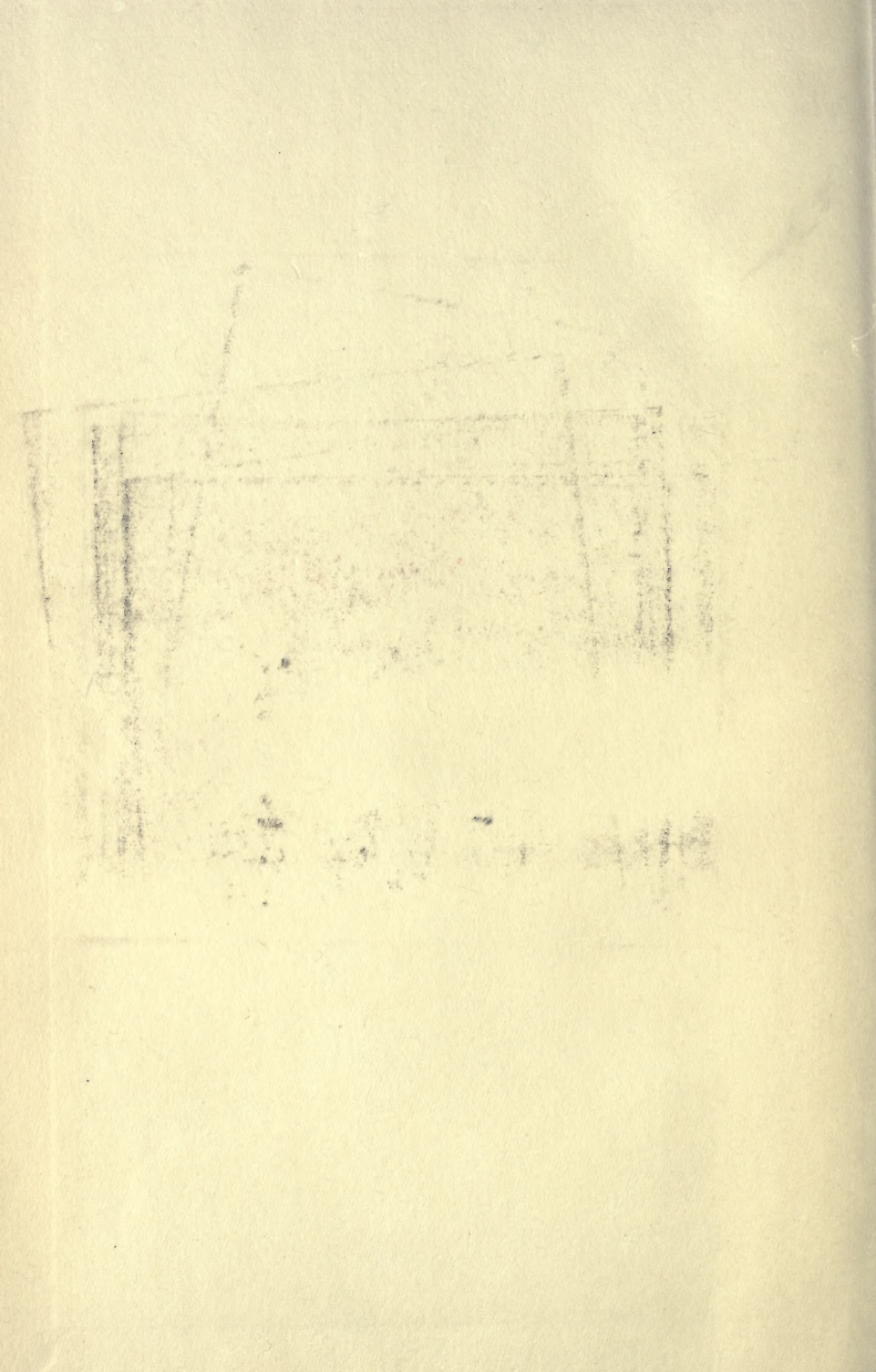
Einleitung. § 4: Zl. 7 l. 23 (24 incl. Gen. Prol.); Zl. 10 l. 12918 ff. § 14: Engl. stud. 47, 338 ff. § 21: v. Dürings. — Text. a) Druckfehler und Textbesserungen. 1049: *yelwè* (G.). 1945: *Ne* [of]. 3044: *that*. 3086: *moste*. 4291: *graspeth*. 4568: *Soiourned*. 4847: *pat*. 5318: 2^{tes} *child* zu streichen. 6287, 6315, 8325, 9253, 18990, 19083, 19253: †) fehlt. 5814: *Shal*. 6987 *ffor*. 7449: *to* f. vor *Crist*. 7469: *with hym*. 8608: *is an*. 10078: a f. vor *gentil-womman*. 10725: *Amydde*. 11475: *yvoyded*. 12413: *thoughte*. 13596: doppelt gezählt. 13871: (1) f. 14109: 2^{tes} *of* zu str. S. 275, Zl. 4: l. (3). S. 277 oben: 14229. 14433 l. (3) st. (o). 15028: *man*. 15060: *nathelees*. Über 15479: *de Cipro*. 15860: *man*. Über 16259: *Inuocacio*. 16906: *leeste*. 17080: *Ylike*. 17736: *heere*. 18146: (6) f. 18603: *gentillesse*. 18728: *is spiritueel*. 18741: (1) f. vor *Eek if a man*. 19016: *the benefice*. 19391: (1) f. vor *Agayns the seconde*. — b) Grammatisch u. graphisch: 1410: *al[l]*. 2853: *good[e]*. 4447/8: *los[se]*. 5404: *spak[e]*. 6126: *oft[e]n*. 9929: *many[e]*. 13939, 14220, '664: *al[le]*. 14145: *profit[e]*. 14493, '600, 18637: *neighebor[e]*. 15933: *long[e]*. — End-e hinzuzusetzen: 1187, 1705, 5495, 6722, 9100, 11848 l. bitwixe. 1521: *manye*. 3112, 3673: *moote*. 3307: *wente*. 5053: *oure*. 8558: *Hise*. 14006: *some*. — Große Anfangsbuchstaben: 3117, '25: *Knyghtes*. 6411 ff., 7227 ff.: *ffrere*. 6809: *Somonour*. 7172: *Lord*. 15565: *Monk*. — Klein: 1374: *hereos* (*heres* CPL., *hercos* H.⁴) [= ἑρως; maladye of h. Liebeskrankheit; s. auch Glossar]. — c) Interpunktion; Komma fehlt hinter: 2282 *debonaire*, 5962 *honde*, 6015 *neer*, 7246 vor *er*; hinter 9554 *reson*, 10992 *spekest*, 11963 *moone*, 13774 *heed*,. Zu streichen hinter: 12902 *sire*, 19173 *leccherie*. — Komma statt ;: 2129 *hym-self*, 18844 *iaperes*, 19260 *messagers*,. Punkt f. 8800. — Anführungsstriche f. hinter: 7771 *grief*, 8191 *-lawe?*, 12461 *bothe*, 17965 *swyue*, 18945 *corage*. — Bindestriche f.: 24 *in-to*, 1080 *op-sterde*, 1243, 2474, 2844 *som-tyme*, 2505 *There-as*, 2642 *vn-to*, 9800 *gentil-man*, 10433 *four-and-twenty*, 11166 *Where-as*, 12051 *out-sprong*, 13171, 17705 *any-thing*, 13898 *Al-though*, 14461 *ouer-large*, 18865 *haly-dayes*, 18973 *bonde-men*. — Abbrechung: 3 *lic-our*, 813 *gouern-our*, 5509 *hon-our*, 6471 *clam-our*; 248 *vit-aïlle*, 1609, 1853 *bat-aïlle*; 490 *suffis-aunce*, 1315, 7306 *pen-aunce*, 1316 *obseru-aunce*, 4408 *acquit-ance*, '20 *susten-ance*, 4636 *auant-age*, '59 *baron-age*, 4786 *herit-age*; 4393 *conuert-ible*, 3841, 4126 *an-swerd(e)*, 14597 *requir-yng*, 18341 *Bern-ard*. — d) Metrische Zeichen zu ergänzen. a) -e verstummt: 245, 11635: *haue*. 808: *Telle*. 1528: *hadde*. 2777, 3202: *Allone*. 2992: *mæuere*. 3803: *where*. 3923: *millere*. 50: *haly-dayes*. 4976: *ytake*. 6466: *ridyng*. 6717: *lynage*. 6924: *acquyntyntance*. 7170: *bifore* (od. *the*). 8328: *sadnesse*. 9046, 12217: *heere*. 9552: *marriage*. 9850: *seye*. 11377: *hyeste*. '919: *made*. 12007: *Swiche*. '231: *Come*. '876: *felaweship(e)*. '957: *fowel*. 13652: *bereth*. 14681: *bryngeth*. 16330: *blyndnesse*. — β) -e lautet: 1706: *cridè*. 2134: *kempè*. 2405: *tomorwè*. 3953: *hadde*. 6238: *blyndè*. 11348: *plantè*. '736: *manye*. '874: *euerè*. 13590: *yongè*. 14752: *herknè*. 15469: *owenè*. 16627: *humblè*. 17472: *allè*. — γ) Verschleifungen: 1109: *By eterne*.

6253: *Valerie* and. 16234: *contrarie* *hir(e)* Besser (?): 1499: *rise[n]* .. *looketh*.
 4504: *That is so*. 5411: [*to*] *receyuen*. 6085, 6107: *housbonde*. — Lesarten zu V.
 1401: 16553, 562. 1761: vgl. 5080, 9862, etc. 2007: 07: vgl. 6351. 3032: vgl. 1886,
 etc. 3442: [vgl. ... 3839]. 4082: (*Iohan H.*⁴). 4338: *besgl.* .. 16707/09. 4457: [vgl.
 6624]. 4631: vgl. 3855, etc. 5060 (st. 4060). 5080: vgl. 1761, 9862, etc. 5135: vgl.
 8320. 5280: [vgl. 11673]. 5764: [vgl. ... 7871]. 6172: [vgl. 6600]. 6441: vgl. 9619.
 7587: 87: [vgl. 18693 ff.] (fälschl. bei 84). 7783: [vgl. 9375] (fälschl. bei 74). 8871 ff.:
 [vgl. 18614]. 9071—6 hinter 9088. 10103: [vgl. 6441, etc.]. 11673: 5280, etc. 12442:
 vgl. 19060 f. 12528: vgl. 19027 f. 12574: [vgl. 18761]. 12599: vgl. 12654. 12775:
 vn-to. 12915: 15: vgl. 9191. 13081 ff.: 81 ff.: vgl. 15698 ff. 13134: 34 (nicht 35).
 13491 ff.: [Offenb. XIV, 3—4]. 13937: [vgl. 14040]. 14103: [vgl. Mähner II, etc.].
 l. 14668. 15229: (= 15237). 15937/8: [vgl. 12295/6]. 16299: 99: vgl. 5061/2.
 16533: [pat]. 18208: 08 [vgl. 19279]. 18336: vgl. 18587 ff. 18614: vgl. 8871 ff.
 18761: 61 (st. 60). 19113: 13 f. (st. 14). — Glossar: *array*: auch *Tracht*. *blisse(n)*:
 auch *blesse(n)*. *boot* 1. sb. Boot. 2. pt. f. byte(n). *compleynt(e)*: auch *Klage*. *costlewe*.
flayn ppt. geschunden. *haire* f. hey-. *haly* f. hali. *hereos*: s. o. V. 1374. *hevynesse*:
 auch *Schwerfälligkeit*. *lewed*: auch *roh*, *gemein*. — Nachtrag. S. 256, oben: B st. F.

C. F. Wintersche Buchdruckerei.







PR Chaucer, Geoffrey
1866 Geoffrey Chaucer's
K6 canterbury tales

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
